

**THE BOOK OF  
MORMON**

**XHOSA – ENGLISH  
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. [bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/](http://bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/)

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to [ben.crowder@gmail.com](mailto:ben.crowder@gmail.com).

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

# INcwadi kaMormoni

Ingxelo Ethatyathwe  
Kumacwecwe kaNifayi  
Ngokubhalwa Ngesandla  
sikaMormoni phezu  
Kwamacwecwe

Ngako oko, sisishwankathelo sembali yabantu bakaNifayi, kananjalo nesamaLeymenayithi—Sibhalelwe amaLeymenayithi, ayintsalela yendlu kaSirayeli; kananjalo kumaYuda nakwabeeNtlanga—Sibhalwe ngendlela yomyalelo, kananjalo nangomoya wesiprofetho nowesityhilelo—Sibhalwe saza satywinwa, saza safihlwa phezulu eNkosini, ukuze singabinako ukutshatyalaliswa—Ukuze size ngaphambili ngesipho namandla kaThixo ukuze siguqulwe—Satywinwa ngesandla sika Moronayi, saza safihlwa phezulu eNkosini, ukuze size ngaphambili ethubeni ngabo abeeNtlanga—Inguqulelo yayo iya kuza ngesipho sikaThixo.

Isishwankathelo sithatyathwe kuyo iNcwadi kaEtere kanjalo, esiyimbali yabantu bakaYerede, abasazwayo ngelixa iNkosi iphambanisa ulwimi lwabantu, ngeli lixa babesakha inkcochoyi yokufikelela ezulwini—Esikukubonisa kuyo intsalela yendlu kaSirayeli ngezinto ezinkulu iNkosi ezenzele ooyise; kwaye nokuze babe nokuyazi iminqophiso yeNkosi, yokokuba abakhutshelwanga ngaphandle ngonaphakade—Kananjalo nokuqinisekisa amaYuda nabeeNtlanga okokuba UYESU unguye UKRESTU, UTHIXO WAPHAKADE, ozibonakalisa kuzo zonke izizwe—Kwaye ngoku, ukuba kukho iziphosiso ziimpazamo zabantu; ngako oko, musa ukugweba izinto zikaThixo, ukuze ufumaneke ungenachaphaza phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaKrestu.

*EYOKUQALA INGUQULELO UKUSUKA  
KUMACWECWE UKUYA ESINGESINI  
NGUJOSEPH SMITH, OMNCI.*

# The Book of Mormon

An Account Written by the  
Hand of Mormon upon Plates  
Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

*TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.*

## UBungqina baMangqina amaThathu

Makwazeke kuzo zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu, abo oya kuthi lo msebenzi ufike kubo: Ukuba thina, ngobabalo lukaThixo uBawo, neNkosi yethu uYesu Krestu, siwabonile amacwecwe aqulethe le mbali, eyimbali yabantu bakaNifayi, kanjalo neyamaLeymenayithi, abazalwana babo, kanjalo neyabantu bakaYerede, ababevela kwinkcochoyi ebe kuthethwe ngayo. Kwaye siyazi kanjalo okokuba aguqulwa ngesipho nangamandla kaThixo, kuba izwi lakhe layibhengeza kuthi; ngako oko siyazi ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba umsebenzi uyinyani. Kwaye siyangqina kanjalo okokuba siyibonile imikrolo ephezu kwamacwecwe; kwaye iboniswe kuthi ngamandla kaThixo, kwaye ingengawo awabantu. Kwaye sivakalisa ngamazwi azolileyo, okokuba ingelosi kaThixo yehla yeza ivela ezulwini, kwaye yawazisa yawabeka phambi kwamehlo ethu, ukuze siwabone amacwecwe, kwaye nemikrolo ekuwo; kwaye siyazi okokuba kungobabalo lukaThixo uBawo, nolweNkosi yethu uYesu Krestu, ukuba sibone kwaye sinike ubungqina bokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani. Kwaye kungummangaliso emehlweni ethu. Nangona kunjalo, izwi leNkosi lasiyalela ukuba maze sinike ubungqina ngayo, ngako oko, sibe nokuthobela imiyalelo kaThixo, sinika ubungqina ngazo ezi zinto. Kwaye siyazi okokuba sinyanisekile kuKrestu, siya kulihlamba igazi labo bonke abantu kwizambatho zethu, size sifumaneke singenachaphaza phambi kwesihlalo-somgwebo sikaKrestu, kwaye siya kuhlala naye ngonaphakade emazulwini. Kwaye uzuko malube kuYise, nakuye uNyana, nakuye uMoya oyiNgcwele, abanguThixo omnye. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY  
DAVID WHITMER  
MARTIN HARRIS

## The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY  
DAVID WHITMER  
MARTIN HARRIS

## UBungqina baMangqina asiBhozo

Makwazeke kuzo zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu, abo oya kuthi lo msebenzi ufike kubo: Okokuba uJoseph Smith, Omnci., umguquli walo msebenzi, usibonisile amacwecwe esekuthethwe ngawo, anenkangeleko yegolide; kwaye ngobuninzi bawo amasebe awaguquleyo uSmith esekuthethwe ngaye sibe nokuwaphatha ngezandla zethu; saza sayibona nayo imikrolo leyo, iyonke inenkangeleko yomsebenzi wamandulo, nomsebenzi ocikizekileyo. Kwaye ngako oku sinika ubungqina ngamazwi azolileyo, bokokuba uSmith esekuthethwe ngaye usibonisile, kuba siwabonile sawaphakamisa, kwaye siyazi ngokuqinisekileyo ukuba uSmith esekuthethwe ngaye unawo amacwecwe esithethileyo ngawo. Kwaye sinika amagama ethu ehlabathini, ukuze singqine ehlabathini oko sithe sakubona. Kwaye asixoki, uThixo engqina ngako oku.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, OMNCI.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, OMKHU.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

## The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER

JACOB WHITMER

PETER WHITMER, JUN.

JOHN WHITMER

HIRAM PAGE

JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.

HYRUM SMITH

SAMUEL H. SMITH

# INcwadi yoKugala kaNifayi Ukulawula Nobufundisi Bakhe

*Ingxelo kaLibayi nenkosikazi yakhe uSaraya, noonyana bakhe abane, ababizwa (ukusuka komdala) uLeymeni, uLemuweli, uSem noNifayi. INkosi ilumkisa uLibayi ukuba aphume elizweni laseYerusalem, kuba uprofetha ebantwini ngokunxulumene nobugwenxa babo kwaye bafuna ukubutshabalalisa ubomi bakhe. Uthabatha ubambo lweentsuku ezintatbu esinga entlango nosapho lwakhe. UNifayi uthabatha abakbuluwa bakhe baze baphindele kwilizwe laseYerusalem besiya kufuna imbali yamaYuda. Ingxelo yeembandezelo zabo. Bazimanya neentombi zikaIsbmayeli. Bathabatha iintsapho zabo basinga entlango. Iimbandezelo neenkxwaleko zabo entlango. Indlela yebambo zabo. Bafika kumanzi amaninzi. Abakbuluwa bakaNifayi bayamvukela. Uyabathoboza, waza wakha inqanawa. Loo ndawo bayithiya igama elithi yiNdyebo. Barwela amanzi amaninzi ukuya elizweni ledinga, nanjalonjalo. Oku kungokwengxelo kaNifayi; okanye ngamanye amazwi, mna, Nifayi, ndabhala le mbali.*

## 1 Nifayi 1

- 1 Mna, Nifayi, ekubeni ndizelwe ngabazali abalungileyo, ke ngoko ndafundiswa ngazo zonke izinto ezaziwa ngubawo; nasekubeni ndibone iinkxwaleko ezininzi endleleni yemihla yam, nangona kunjalo, nasekubeni ndithandwe ngokugqithisileyo yiNkosi ngayo yonke imihla yam; ewe, ekubeni ndinolwazi olukhulu ngokulunga neemfihlelo zikaThixo, ke ngoko ndibhala imbali yezinto endizenzileyo ngemihla yam.
- 2 Ewe, ndenza imbali ngolwimi lukabawo, olunemfundiso yamaYuda nolwimi lwamaYiputa.
- 3 Kwaye ndiyazi okokuba le mbali ndiyenzayo iyinyani; kwaye ndiyenza ngesandla sam; kwaye ndiyenza ngokubhekisele kulwazi lwam.

# The First Book of Nephi His Reign and Ministry

*An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.*

## 1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

- 4 Kuba kwenzekile okokuba ekuqalekeni konyaka wokuqala wolawulo lukaZedekiya, ukumkani wakwaYuda, (ekubeni ubawo, uLihayi, ethe wahlala eYerusalem yonke imihla yakhe); kwaza kuloo nyaka kanye kwafika abaprofeti abaninzi, beprofetha ebantwini ukuba mabaguquke, kungenjalo isixekokazi saseYerusalem kufuneka sitshatyalaliswe.
- 5 Ngako oko, kwenzekile okokuba ubawo, uLihayi, njengoko wayehamba esiya kuthandaza eNkosini, ewe, nangentliziyo yakhe yonke, ethandazela abantu bakhe.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile njengoko wayethandaza eNkosini, kwavela intsika yomlilo yaza yahlala phezu kolwalwa phambi kwakhe; kwaye waza wabona weva okuninzi; ngenxa yezinto azibonileyo nazivileyo, wangcangcazela wankwantya kakhulu.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waphindela endlwini yakhe eYerusalem; waza waziphosa emandlalweni wakhe, onganyelwe nguMoya nazizinto azibonileyo.
- 8 Ekubeni onganyelwe njalo nguMoya, wathwalelwa kumbono, nasekubeni wabona amazulu evuleka, wacinga okokuba ubona uThixo ehleli phezu kwetrone yakhe, engqongwe lihlokondiba elingenakubaleka leengelosi zikwimo yokuvuma ingoma nokudumisa uThixo wazo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabona Omnye esihla ephuma kumbindi wezulu, waza wabona okokuba ukukhazimla kwakhe kwakungaphaya kokwelanga emini emaqanda.
- 10 Waza wabona kananjalo nabanye abalishumi elinambini bemlandela, kwaye ukukhanya kwabo kwakusodlula okweenkwenkwezi esibhakabhakeni.
- 11 Baza behla baza babheka phambili ebusweni bomhlaba, waza owokuqala weza wema phambi kukabawo, waza wamnika incwadi, wamyalela okokuba afunde.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba wayefunda, wazaliswa nguMoya weNkosi.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

- 13 Waza wafunda esithi: Yeha, yeha, kuwe Yerusalem, kuba ndiwabonile amasikizi akho! Ewe, zaye zininzi izinto ezafundwa ngubawo malunga neYerusalem—okokuba kufuneka itshatyalaliswe, kwakunye nabemi bayo; abaninzi kufuneka betshabalele ngekrele, kanti abaninzi kufuneka bethatyathiwe bathinjelwe eBhabhilon.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ubawo efunde waza wabona izinto ezininzi nezinkulu nezimangalisayo, wamemeza izinto ezininzi eNkosini; ezinje ngezi: Mikhulu kwaye iyamangalisa imisebenzi yakho, Owu Nkosi Thixo Somandla! Itrone yakho iphezulu emazulwini, kwaye amandla, akho nokulunga, neenceba ziphezu kwabo bonke abemi bomhlaba; kwaye, ngenxa yokuba unenceba, awunakubavumela ukuba abo beza kuwe batshabalale!
- 15 Kwaye yayingolu hlobo intetho kabawo ekudumiseni uThixo wakhe; kuba umphefumlo wakhe wabanovuyo, nentliziyo yakhe yonke yayizele, ngenxa yezinto awayezibonile, ewe, awayeziboniswe yiNkosi.
- 16 Ke kaloku, mna Nifayi, andenzi ngxelo ipheleleyo ngezinto ezabhalwa ngubawo, kuba wayebhale izinto ezininzi awazibona kwimibono nasemaphupheni; kananjalo ubhale izinto ezininzi awaziprofethayo waza wazithetha kubantwana bakhe, kwaye endingasayi kwenza ngxelo ipheleleyo ngazo.
- 17 Kodwa ndiza kuyenza ingxelo yenkqubo yam ngemihla yam. Qaphelani, ndenza isishwankathelo sembali kabawo, emacwecweni endiwenze ngezandla zam, ngako oko, emva kokuba ndishwankathele imbali kabawo kungoko ndiya kwenza ingxelo yobomi bam.
- 18 Ke ngoko, ndinqwenela ukuba nazi, okokuba emveni kokuba iNkosi ibonise imimangaliso emininzi kubawo, uLihayi, ewe, enxulumene nokutshatyalaliswa kweYerusalem, qaphelani wahamba waya phakathi kwabantu, waqalisa ukuprofetha ebaselela ngezinto athe wazibona nezo azivileyo.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.



19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaYuda aye ahlekisa ngaye ngenxa yezinto awathi wangqina ngazo ngawo; kuba ngokwenene wangqina ngenkohlakalo yawo namasikizi awo; wangqina ukuba izinto azibonileyo nezo azivileyo, kwakunye nezinto azifunde encwadini, zibonakalisa ngokucacileyo ngokuza kukaMesiya, kwakunye nenkululeko yehlabathi.

20 Kwaye kuthe xa amaYuda esiva ezi zinto amqumbela, ewe, kwafana nakubaprofeti bakudala, ababebagxotha, bebaxuluba ngamatye, bebabulala; naye bazungula ubomi bakhe, bafuna ukumbulala. Kodwa qaphelani, mna Nifayi, ndiza kunibonisa okokuba iinceba ezinemfesane zeNkosi ziphezu kwabo bonke abo ithe yabanyula, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, ngokuthi ibenze babe namandlakazi kwanokuze babe namandla okuhlangula.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

## 1 Nifayi 2

- 1 Kuba qaphelani, kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathetha kuye ubawo, ewe, kwanasephupheni, yaza yathi kuye: Usikelelwe wena Lihayi, ngenxa yezinto ozenzileyo; nangenxa yokuba uye wathembeka wabaxelela aba bantu izinto ebendikuyalele zona, qaphela ke, bafuna ukuthabatha ubomi bakho.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yayalela ubawo, kwanasephupheni, okokuba athabathe usapho lwakhe aze ahambe asinge entlango.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba athobele ilizwi leNkosi, ngako oko wenza njengoko iNkosi imyalela.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wahamba wasinga entlango. Waza wayishiya indlu yakhe, nelizwe lelifakhe, negolide yakhe, nesilivere yakhe, nezinto zakhe ezinexabiso, akathabathanga nto, ngaphandle kosapho lwakhe, nomphako, neentente, waza wahamba wasinga entlango.
- 5 Waza wehla wafika emideni ekufuphi nonxweme loLwandle oluBomvu; wahamba entlango kwimida ekufuphi ngakumbi noLwandle oluBomvu; kwaye waye wahamba entlango kunye nosapho lwakhe, olwaluquka umama wam, uSaraya, nabakhuluwaba, ababenguLeymeni, uLemuweli, noSem.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ehambe iintsuku ezintathu entlango, waxhoma iintente kwintlambo ekufuphi nomlambo wamanzi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wakha isibingelelo samatye, waza wenza umnikelo eNkosini, waza wenza umbulelo eNkosini uThixo wethu.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba walibiza igama lomlambo, Leymeni, kwaye wawuthululela kuLwandle oluBomvu, nentlambo leyo yayisemideni kufuphi nechweba lomlambo.
- 9 Kwaye kuthe xa ubawo ebona okokuba amanzi omlambo athululela emthonjeni woLwandle oluBomvu; waye wathetha kuLeymeni, esithi: Owu wanga ungafana nalo mlambo, ompompozela lonke ixesha emthonjeni wabo bonke ubulungisa!

## 1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

- 10 Waza wathetha kanjalo nakuLemuweli: Owu wanga ungafana nale-ntlambo, ungagungqi kwaye uzinze, kwaye ungashenxi ekuyigcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi!
- 11 Ngoku oku wakuthetha ngenxa yokuqina kweentamo zikaLeymeni noLemuweli; kuba qaphelani baye bambombozela ngezinto ezininzi ngakuyise wabo, ngenxa yokuba waye eyindoda yemibono, kwaye wayebakhuphe kwilizwe laseYerusalem, ukuba bashiye ilizwe lelifa labo, negolide yabo, nesilivere yabo, nezinto zabo ezinxabiso, ukuba batshabalale entlango. Baza bathi oku wathi wakwenza ngenxa yeengcinga zobudenge bentliziyo yakhe.
- 12 Baza njalo ke uLeymeni noLemuweli, ekubeni ingabo abadala, bambombozela ngakuyise wabo. Bambombozela kuba bengazazi iinkqubo zaloo Thixo wabadalayo.
- 13 Babengakholwa nokuba iYerusalem, eso sixekokazi, sinokutshatyalaliswa ngokwamazwi abaprofeti. Kwaye babefana namaYuda aseYerusalem, awayezungula ukuthabatha ubomi bukabawo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ubawo athethe nabo kwintlambo kaLemuweli, enamandla, kwaye ezaliswe nguMoya, yade imizimba yabo yangcangcazela phambi kwakhe. Waza wabathoboza, ukuze bangabinako nokumphikisa; ngako oko benza ngokwemiyalelo yakhe.
- 15 Waza ubawo wahlala ententeni.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndingoyena mncinane kakhulu, kodwa ndimkhulu ngomzimba, kwaye ndinomnqweno omkhulu wokwazi iimfihlelo zikaThixo, ngako oko, ndakhala eNkosini; kwaye qaphela yandifikela, yayithambisa intliziyo yam ukuze ndiwakholelwe onke amazwi athethwa ngubawo; ngako oko andikhange ndimvukele njengabakhuluwa bam.
- 17 Kwaye ndathetha noSem, ndimazisa izinto iNkosi endicacisele zona ngoMoya wayo oyiNgcwele. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akholelwe ngamazwi am.

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

- 18 Kodwa, qaphela, uLeymeni noLemuweli abafunanga ukuwamamela amazwi am; ndaza ndilusizi ngenxa yokuba lukhuni kweentliziyo zabo, ndakhala eNkosini ngabo.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathetha nam, isithi: Usikelelwe wena, Nifayi, ngenxa yokholo lwakho, kuba undifune ngenyameko, nokuthobeka kwentliziyo.
- 20 Kwaye kangangokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, niya kuphumelela, niya kukhokelelwa elizweni lesithembiso; ewe, nalo ilizwe endililungiselele nina; ewe, ilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezulu kunawo onke amanye amazwe.
- 21 Kwaye kangangokuba abakhuluwa bakho beya kuvukela ngokuchasene nawe, baya kusikelwa ngaphandle kubo ubuso beNkosi.
- 22 Kwaye kangangokuba uya kuyithobela imiyalelo yam, uya kwenziwa umlawuli notitshala phezu kwabantakwenu.
- 23 Kuba qaphela, ngaloo mhla baya kuthi bandivukele, ndiya kubaqalekisa kwa ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, kwaye abayi kuba namandla phezu kwembewu yakho ngaphandle kokuba kanjalo baya kundivukela.
- 24 Kwaye ukuba baya kuthi bandivukele, baya kuba sisibetho kwimbewu yakho, ukubavuselela ezindleleni zenkumbulo.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

## 1 Nifayi 3

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndibuye ekuthetheni neNkosi, ndiye ententeni kabawo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba wathetha nam, esithi: Qaphela ndiphuphe iphupha, apho iNkosi ibindiyalela ukuba wena nabakhuluwa bakho niya kubuyela eYerusalem.
- 3 Kuba qaphela, uLabhan unembali yobuzwe yamaYuda kwakunye nomlibo wookhokho bam, kwaye zikrolwe kumacwecwe obhedu.
- 4 Ngako oko, iNkosi indiyalele ukuba wena nabakhuluwa bakho kufuneka niye endlwini kaLabhan, nifune iimbali, nihle nazo nize apha entlango.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela abakhuluwa bakho bayambombozela, bathi inzima le nto ndiyifuna kubo; kodwa qaphela asindim ofuna loo nto kubo, kodwa ngumyalelo weNkosi.
- 6 Ke ngoko hamba, nyana wam, kwaye uya kuthandwa ngokukodwa yiNkosi, kuba awumbombozelanga wena.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathi kubawo: Ndiya kuhamba ndizenze izinto eziyalelwe yiNkosi, kuba ndiyazi ukuba iNkosi ayiniki miyalelo kubantwana babantu, ingabalungiselelanga indlela yokufezekisa into ebayalele yona.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuva la mazwi ubawo waba novuyo olukhulu, kuba wayesazi ukuba ndisikelelwe yiNkosi.
- 9 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, nabantakwethu sathabatha uhambo lwethu entlango, kunye neentente, zethu senyukela elizweni laseYerusalem.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekubeni sinyukele elizweni laseYerusalem, mna nabantakwethu sathetha-thethana.
- 11 Saya senza amaqashiso—nguwuphi kuthi oza kuya angene endlwini kaLabhan. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iqashiso liwele kuLeymeni; waza uLeymeni waya wangena endlwini kaLabhan, wathetha naye njengoko wayehleli endlwini yakhe.
- 12 Uye wanqwenela ukuba uLabhan amnike iimbali ezikrolwe kumacwecwe obhedu, aqulathe umlibo kabawo.

## 1 Nephi 3

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.

For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.

And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.

Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.

And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.

And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.

And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

- 13 Kwaye qaphela, kwenzeka ukuba uLabhan abenomsindo, amgxothe phambi kwakhe; angavumi ukumnika iimbali ezo. Ngako oko, wathi kuye: Qaphela ungumphangi, kwaye ndiza kukubulala.
- 14 Kodwa uLeymeni waye wasaba phambi kwakhe, waza wasixelela izinto ezenziwe nguLabhan, kuthi. Saze saqalisa ukuba lusizi kakhulu, kwaye abantakwethu babesele beza kuphindela kubawo entlango.
- 15 Kodwa qaphela ndathi kubo: Njengoko iNkosi iphila, kwaye nathi siphila, asiyi kwehlela kubawo entlango de sibe siyifezekisile into eyalelwe kuthi yiNkosi.
- 16 Ngako oko, masithembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi; ke ngoko masihle siye elizweni lelifa likabawo, kuba qaphelani washiya igolide nesilivere, nalo lonke uhlobo lobutyebi. Kwaye konke oku wakwenza ngenxa yemiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 17 Kuba wayesazi ukuba iYerusalem kufuneka itshatyalalisiwe, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu.
- 18 Kuba qaphelani, bawala amazwi abaprofeti. Ngako oko, ukuba ubawo unokuhlala elizweni ekubeni eyalelwe ukuba asabe kwelo lizwe, qaphelani, naye uya kutshabalala. Ngako oko, kuyimfuneko ukuba asabe kwelo lizwe.
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani, bubulumko kuThixo ukuba sizifumane ezi mbali, ukuze silondolozele abantwana bethu ulwimi loobawo bethu;
- 20 Kananjalo sibe nokubalondolozela amazwi athethwa ngemilomo yabo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele, athe aziswa kubo ngoMoya namandla kaThixo, ukususela oko ihlabathi laqalayo, kude kube leli lixa lakalokunje.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kwentetho enje ndabaphembelela abantakwethu, ekubeni bathembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sihle siye elizweni lelifa lethu, sathi saqokelela ndawonye igolide yethu, nesilivere yethu, nezinto zethu zexabiso.
- 23 Kwaye emva kokuba siqokelele ezi zinto ndawonye, sahamba senyuka, saphinda saya endlwini kaLabhan.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siye kungena kwaLabhan, sinqwenela ukuba anikezele kuthi iimbali ezazikrolwe emacwecweni obhedu, endaweni yoko thina siya kumnika igolide yethu, nesilivere yethu, nazo zonke izinto zethu zexabiso.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa uLabhan ebona izinto zethu, ezazininzi kakhulu, wazinqwenela, kangangokuba wasigxothela ngaphandle, waza wathumela izicaka zakhe ukuba zisibulale, ukuze akwazi ukufumana izinto zethu.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sizisabe izicaka zikaLabhan, kwaye sanyanzeleka ukuba sishiye izinto zethu, zaza zawela ezandleni zikaLabhan.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sisabele entlango, zathi zeza izicaka zikaLabhan azabinako ukusifumana, saza sazifihla emqolombeni.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLeymeni abenomsindo kum, nakubawo kananjalo; noLemuweli naye wabanjalo, kuba wayemamela amazwi kaLeymeni. Ngako oko uLeymeni noLemuweli bathetha ngamazwi alukhuni kuthi, baninawa babo, basibetha nangentonga.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile njengoko babesibetha ngentonga, qaphela, ingelosi yeNkosi yeza yema phambi kwabo, yaye yathetha nabo, isithi: Kutheni nibetha umninawa wenu ngentonga? Anazi yinina ukuba iNkosi imonyule ukuba abengumlawuli phezu kwenu, oku kungenxa yobugwenxa benu? Qaphelani niya kunyuka nihambe niye eYerusalem kwakhona, kwaye neNkosi iya kumnikela uLabhan ezandleni zenu.

30 Kwaye emva kokuba ingelosi ithethile nathi, yemka.

31 Kwaye emva kokuba ingelosi imkile, uLeymeni noLemuweli baqalisa ukumbombozela kwakhona, besithi: Ingenzeka njani into yokuba iNkosi inikele uLabhan ezandleni zethu? Qaphelani, uyindoda enamandla, kwaye angayalela amashumi amahlanu, ewe, angawabulala kwanawo amashumi amahlanu; ke uza kusiyekela ntoni thina?

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

## 1 Nifayi 4

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndithethe nabakhuluwa bam, ndisithi: Masinyukeni sibuyele eYerusalem, kwaye masithembeke ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi; kuba qaphelani inamandla ukudlula umhlaba wonke, ingathini ke ukungabi namandla ukudlula uLabhan namashumi akhe amahlanu, ewe, okanye nawo amashumi-shumi akhe amawaka?
- 2 Ke ngoko masihambeni sinyuke; masomelele njengoMoses; kuba ngokwenene wathetha namanzi oLwandle oluBomvu kwaye ohlukana ngapha nangapha, kwaye noobawo bethu bawela, baphuma ekuthinjweni, emhlabeni owomileyo, nemikhosi kaFaro yalandela yaza yarhaxwa emanzini oLwandle oluBomvu.
- 3 Ngoku qaphelani niyazi ukuba oku kuyinyani; kwaye niyazi kanjalo okokuba ingelosi ithethile nani; ngako oko ningathini ukuthandabuza? Masihambeni sinyuke; iNkosi inako ukusikhulula, nanjengoko yenza koobawo bethu, nokumtshabalalisa uLabhan, nanjengoko yenza kumaYiputa.
- 4 Ngoku ndakuba ndithethe la mazwi, babesenomsindo, baqhubeka kwakhona ngokumbombozela; nangona kunjalo bandilandela sada safika ngaphandle kweendonga zaseYerusalem.
- 5 Kwaye kwakusebusuku; ndabenza ukuba mabazimele ngaphandle kweendonga. Kwaye emva kokuba bezimele, mna, Nifayi, ndachwechwa ndaza ndangena esixekweni ndahamba ndabheka phambili ngasemzini kaLabhan.
- 6 Kwaye ndakhokelwa nguMoya, ndingazazi kwangaphambili izinto endimele ukuzenza.
- 7 Nangona kunjalo ndabheka phambili, kwathi xa ndisondele endlwini kaLabhan ndabona umntu, kwaye wayewele emhlabeni phambi kwam, kuba wayenxile yiwayini.
- 8 Kwaye kuthe xa ndifika kuye ndafumanisa ukuba nguLabhan.
- 9 Kwaye ndalibona ikrele lakhe, ndalikhupha kwisingxobo salo; nesiphatho salo sasenziwe ngegolide ecwengileyo, laye lenziwe ngobuchule obukhulu, ndabona nokuba imela yalo yayenziwe ngentsimbi eyona yomeleleyo yexabiso eliphezulu.

## 1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.



- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndandinyanzelwe nguMoya ukuba ndimbulale uLabhan; kodwa ndathi entliziyweni yam: Andizange nanini na ndiphalaze igazi lomntu. Ndarhwaqela ndanga andingembulali.
- 11 Waze uMoya waphinda wathi kum: Qaphela iNkosi imnikezele ezandleni zakho. Ewe, kwaye nam ndandisazi ukuba ebefuna ukubuthabatha ubomi bam; ewe, kwaye ebengafuni ukumamela imiyalelo yeNkosi; kananjalo wathi wahlutha izinto zethu.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzeka ukuba uMoya uphinde uthi kum: Mbulale, kuba iNkosi imnikezele ezandleni zakho;
- 13 Qaphela iNkosi ibulala abakhohlakeleyo ukuze ifezekise iinjongo zayo zobulungisa. Kulungile ukuba kufe umntu omnye kunokuba isizwe siye siphela ngokuphela size sitshabalalele ekungakholweni.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku, ndakuba mna, Nifayi, ndiwavile la mazwi, ndakhumbula amazwi eNkosi eyawathetha kum entlango, isithi okokuba: Kangangokuba imbewu yakho iya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, iya kuphumelela elizweni lesithembiso.
- 15 Ewe, ndacinga kwakhona ukuba abanako ukuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi ngokomthetho kaMoses, ngaphandle kokuba banokuba nawo umthetho.
- 16 Kwaye ndandisazi kananjalo okokuba umthetho wawukrolwe kumacwecwe obhedu.
- 17 Kwaye kwakhona, ndandisazi ukuba iNkosi inikezela uLabhan ezandleni zam ngesi sizathu—sokokuba ndikwazi ukufumana ezi mbali ngokwemiyalelo yayo.
- 18 Ke ngoko ndathobela izwi loMoya, ndabamba uLabhan ngeenwele zentloko, ndamnqumla intloko ngekrele lakhe.
- 19 Kwaye emva kokuba ndimnqumle intloko ngekrele lakhe, ndathabatha izambatho zikaLabhan ndazinxiba emzimbeni wam; ewe, ndithi nesuntswana lazo zonke; ndagaxela nesikrweqe sakhe sokuzikhusela esinqeni sam.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

20 Kwaye emva kokuba ndikwenzile oku, ndaya phambili kwigumbi likaLabhan lokulondoloza indyebo. Kwaye xa ndandisiya endaweni kaLabhan yolondolozo, qaphela, ndabona isicaka sikaLabhan ebesinazo izitshixo zegumbi lolondolozo lwendyebo. Ndasiyalela ngelizwi elifana nelikaLabhan, ukuba siye nam egumbini lolondolozo lwendyebo.

21 Kwaye sicinge ukuba ndiyinkosi yaso, uLabhan, kuba sibone izambatho kwakunye nekrele endiligaxele esinqeni sam.

22 Kwaye sathetha nam malunga namadoda amakhulu amaYuda, kuba sona sisazi ukuba inkosi yaso, uLabhan, ibiye kuwo ngobo busuku.

23 Ndaza ndathetha naso ngokungathi bendinguLabhan.

24 Kwaye ndathetha naso kanjalo ukuba kufuneka ndiphathe imikrolo, ebikumacwecwe obhedu, ndiyise kubakhuluwa bam, ababemi ngaphandle kweendonga.

25 Ndaza ndasiyalela ukuba sindilandele.

26 Kwaye sona, ngokucinga ukuba ndithetha ngabazalwana bebandla, nokuba ngenene ndingulo Labhan endimbuleleyo, ngako oko sandilandela.

27 Kwaye sathetha nam amaxesha amaninzi malunga namadoda amakhulu amaYuda, ngeli lixa ndisiya kubantakwethu, ababengaphandle kweendonga.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLeymeni oyike kakhulu xa endibona, kanjalo uLemuweli noSem. Besaba phambi kwam; kuba babecinga ukuba ndandinguLabhan, kwaye ke becinga ukuba undibulele kwaye ngoku ebefuna ukubabulala nabo.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibakhwaze, baza bandiva; ngako oko bayeka ukusaba phambi kwam.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa isicaka sikaLabhan sibona abantakwethu saqalisa ukungcangcazela, sasisele siza kusaba phambi kwam ukubuyela esixekweni saseYerusalem.

31 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, njengokuba, ndiyindoda enkulu ngesithomo, kwaye kanjalo ndinikwe amandla amakhulu yiNkosi, ke ngoko ndiye ndasibamba isicaka sikaLabhan, ndasimisa, ukuze singesabi.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndathetha naso, ndisithi ukuba sinokuwamamela amazwi am, njengoko iNkosi iphila, nanjengoko nam ndiphila, kwanokuba sinokuwamamela amazwi ethu, singabusindisa ubomi baso.
- 33 Kwaye ndathetha naso, kwa ngesifungo, ndisithi masingoyiki; siya kuba ngumntu okhululekileyo njengathi ukuba singahamba nathi ukusinga entlango.
- 34 Kwaye ndathetha naso kanjalo, ndisithi: Ngokwenene siyalelwe yiNkosi ukwenza oku; nokuba asimele sikhuthale kusini na ukugcina imiyalelo yeNkosi? Ke ngoko, xa unokwehla nathi usinge entlango kubawo uya kubanendawo kunye nathi.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uZorami akhuthazeke akuva amazwi endawathethayo. Ngoku uZorami yayiligama laso isicaka; waza wathembisa ukuba uza kwehla asinge entlango kubawo. Ewe, kwaye wenza nesifungo sokuba uza kuhlala nathi ukususela ngelo lixa ukuya phambili.
- 36 Ngoku sasinqwenela ukuba ahlale nathi ngesi sizathu, sokokuba amaYuda angabinako ukwazi ngokusaba kwethu ukusinga entlango, kungenjalo ayeya kuisukela asitshabalalise.
- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekubeni uZorami enze isifungo kuthi, uloyiko lwethu lwaba luyaphela ngokunxulumene naye.
- 38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sithabathe amacwecwe obhedu kunye nesicaka sikaLabhan, sisinge entlango, saza sahamba sabheka ententeni kabawo.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

## 1 Nifayi 5

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba sehlile sangena entlango ukuya kubawo, qaphela, yena wazaliswa luvuyo, nomama wam kanjalo, uSaraya, uye wavuya kakhulu, kuba okwenene wayesele ezilile ngenxa yethu.
- 2 Kuba wayecinga ukuba sitshabalele entlango; kwaye wayekhalazela ubawo, emxelela ukuba uyindoda yemibono; esithi: Qaphela usikhuphe elizweni lelifa lethu, noonyana bam abasekho, nathi siyatshabalala apha entlango.
- 3 Kwaye wathetha ngolu hlobo umama xa ekhalazela ubawo.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ubawo naye athethe, athi: Ndiyazi ukuba ndiyindoda yemibono; kuba ukuba bendingazibonanga izinto zikaThixo ngemibono ngendingakwazanga ukulunga kukaThixo, kodwa ngendahlala eYerusalem, ndize nditshabalale nabazalwana bam.
- 5 Kodwa qaphela, ndizuze ilizwe lesithembiso, ngazo ezi zinto ndiyavuya; ewe, ndiyazi ukuba iNkosi iza kubakhulula oonyana bam ezandleni zikaLabhan, iza kuphinda ibazise behle beze kuthi apha entlango.
- 6 Kwaye wayethetha ngolu hlobo ubawo, uLihayi, ethuthuzela umama, uSaraya, ngokubhekisele kuthi, kwakuxa sasinyuka entlango sisiya kwilizwe laseYerusalem, sisiya kufuna imbali yamaYuda.
- 7 Kwaye kuthe xa sibuyela ententeni kabawo, qaphela bazala luvuyo, nomama wam wathuthuzeleka.
- 8 Kwaye wathetha esithi: Ngoku ndiyazi ngokwenene ukuba iNkosi imyalele umyeni wam ukuba asabe asinge entlango; ewe, kwaye ndiyazi nokokuba ngokwenene iNkosi ibakhusele oonyana bam, kwaye yabakhulula ezandleni zikaLabhan, yaza yabanika amandla okufezekisa into ababeyialelwe yiNkosi. Waze wathetha ngamazwi ngolu hlobo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bavuye ngokugqithisileyo, baze banikela amadini neminikelo enyukayo eNkosini; baza benza imibulelo kuThixo kaSirayeli.

## 1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

10 Kwathi emva kokuba benze umbulelo kuThixo kaSirayeli, ubawo, uLihayi, wathabatha iimbali ezazikrolwe emacwecweni obhedu, waye waziphonononga ukusuka ekuqaleni.

11 Waze wabona ukuba aquletse iincwadi ezintlanu zikaMoses, ezazinika ingxelo yokudalwa kwehlabathi, kwakukwakho neka-Adam noEva, ababengabazali bethu bokuqala;

12 Kwakukwakho nembali yamaYuda ukusuka ekuqaleni, kwanokuza kufika ekuqalekeni kolawulo lukaZedekiya, ukumkani wakwaYuda;

13 Kwakukwakho neziprofetho zabaprofeti abangcwele, ukusuka ekuqaleni, kwanokuza kufika ezantsi ekuqalekeni kolawulo lukaZedekiya; kwaye kanjalo neziprofetho ezininzi ezithethwe ngomlomo kaYeremiya.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ubawo, uLihayi, afumane kanjalo umlibo wookhokho bakhe kumacwecwe obhedu; ngako oko wazazi ukuba usisizukulwana sikaYosefu; ewe, kwalo Yosefu wayengunyana kaYakobi, owathengiswa eYiputa, kwayena owalondolozwa sisandla seNkosi, ukuze alondolozwe uyise, uYakobi, nosapho lwakhe lonke, ekutshabalaleni ngenxa yendlala.

15 Baye kanjalo bakhutshwa ekuthinjweni ezweni laseYiputa, kwanguloo Thixo wabalondolozayo.

16 Kwaye njalo ubawo, uLihayi, wafumana umlibo wooyise. Kwaye noLabhan kanjalo waye esisizukulwana sikaYosefu, ngako oko yena nooyise babegcina iimbali.

17 Kwaye ngoku ubawo esakubona zonke ezi zinto, wazaliswa nguMoya, waqalisa ukuprofetha malunga nembewu yakhe—

18 Ukuba la macwecwe obhedu amele ukufikelela kuzo zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nakubantu ababeyimbewu yakhe.

19 Ngako oko, wathi la macwecwe obhedu awasokuze atshatyalaliswe; kwaye awasokuze abe mfiliba nangaliphina ixesha. Kwaye waprofetha izinto ezininzi ezinxulumene nembewu yakhe.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kude kube ngoku, mna nobawo siyigcinile imiyalelo esasiyiyalelwe yiNkosi.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

- 21 Kwaye sizizuzile iimbali njengoko iNkosi yayisiyalele, saye saziphonononga sazifumana ukuba ziyanqweneleka; ewe, kwaye zinexabiso elikhulu kuthi, kangangokuba singayilondolozela abantwana bethu imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 22 Ngako oko, yaba bubulumko eNkosini ukuba simele ukuwaphatha sihambe nawo, xa sasihamba entlango sisiya elizweni lesithembiso.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

## 1 Nifayi 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, mna Nifayi, andiniki mlibo woobawo kule nxalenye yembali yam; ndingenako nangaliphina ixesha ukuyinika nanini na ngokwala macwecwe ndiwabhalayo; kuba sewunikiwe kwimbali egcinwe ngubawo; ngako oko andiyibhali kulo msebenzi.
- 2 Kuba kwanele kum ukuthi sisizukulwana sikaYosefu.
- 3 Kwaye akubalulekanga kum ukuba ndicoselele ukunika ingxelo epheleleyo ngazo zonke izinto zikabawo, kuba azinako ukubhalwa kula macwecwe, kuba ndinqwenela indawo yokuba ndikwazi ukubhala ngezinto zikaThixo.
- 4 Kuba umnqweno wam ngokupheleleyo kukuba ndithundeze abantu ukuba baze kuThixo ka-Abraham, nakuThixo kaIsake, nakuThixo kaYakobi, ukuze basindiswe.
- 5 Ngako oko, andizibhali izinto ezivuyisa ihlabathi, kodwa ezivuyisa uThixo kwakunye nabo abangengabo abehlabathi.
- 6 Ngako oko, ndiza kunika umyalelo kwimbewu yam, ukuba ingawazalisi la macwecwe ngezinto ezingenaxabiso kubantwana babantu.

## 1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

## 1 Nifayi 7

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ndinqwenela ukuba nazi, ukuba emva kokuba ubawo, uLihayi, egqibile ukuprofetha malunga nembewu yakhe, kwenzeka ukuba iNkosi ithethe naye kwakhona, isithi okokuba akumlungelanga, uLihayi, ukuba athabathe usapho lwakhe kuphela ukusinga entlango; kodwa kufuneka oonyana bakhe bathabathe iintombi zibe ngabafazi, ukuze bakhulisele iNkosi imbewu elizweni lesithembiso.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi imyalele ukuba mna, Nifayi, nabantakwethu, simele kukuphinda sibuyele elizweni laseYerusalem, sibuye noIshmayeli nosapho lwakhe sehle sisinge entlango.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, kwakunye nabantakwethu, siphinde siye phambili entlango sinyuke siye eYerusalem.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sinyuke siye endlwini kaIshmayeli, kwaye, saye sababalwa emehlweni kaIshmayeli, kangangokuba saye sathetha naye ngamazwi eNkosi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi iyithambise intliziyo kaIshmayeli, kananjalo nabendlu yakhe, kangangokuba bahamba nathi behla ukusinga entlango sisiya ententeni kabawo.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba sihamba entlango, qaphela uLeymeni noLemuweli, neentombi ezimbini zikaIshmayeli, noonyana ababini bakaIshmayeli neentsapho zabo, basivukele; ewe, bavukela ngokuchasene nam, Nifayi, noSem, noyise wabo, uIshmayeli, nenkosikazi yakhe, kwaye nezinye iintombi zakhe ezintathu.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile kuvukelo olo lwabo, banqwenele ukuphindela elizweni laseYerusalem.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndababuhlungu bubulukhuni beentliziyo zabo, ke ngoko, ndathetha nabo, ndisithi, ewe, nakuLeymeni noLemuweli: Qaphelani, ningabakhuluwa bam, kwenzeka njani ukuba nibe neentliziyo ezilukhuni kangaka, neengqondo ezimfameke kangaka, nide nifune ukuba mna ndingumninawa wenu, kube yimfuneko ukuthetha nani, ewe, ndibe ngumzekelo kuni?
- 9 Kwenzeka njani ukuba ningawamameli amazwi eNkosi?

## 1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?



- 10 Kwenzeka njani ukuba nilibale ukuba niyibonile ingelosi yeNkosi?
- 11 Ewe, kwenzeka njani ukuba nilibale izinto ezinkulu kangaka esenzele zona iNkosi, ngokusikhulula ezandleni zikaLabhan, kanaanjalo sibe nokufumana imbali?
- 12 Ewe, kwenzeka njani ukuba nilibale ukuba iNkosi inako ukubenzela abantwana babantu zonke izinto ngokwentando yayo, ukuba babonisa ukholo kuyo? Ngako oko, masithembeke kuyo.
- 13 Kwaye ukuba siyathembeka kuyo, siya kulifumana ilizwe lesithembiso; kwaye niya kuba nolwazi kwithuba elizayo ukuba amazwi eNkosi aya kuzalisekiswa malunga nokutshatyalaliswa kweYerusalem; kuba zonke izinto ezithethileyo iNkosi malunga nokutshatyalaliswa kweYerusalem kumele zizaliseke.
- 14 Kuba qaphelani, uMoya weNkosi uyeka msinyane ukuzamana nabo; kuba qaphelani, babala abaprofeti, noYeremiya bamlahlele entolongweni. Kwaye bafuna ukuthabatha ubomi bukabawo, kangangokuba bamgxothele ngaphandle elizweni.
- 15 Ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni ukuba niphindela eYerusalem niya kutshabalala nani kunye nabo. Kwaye ngoku, ukuba niyazikhethela, hambani ninyuke niye elizweni, kwaye nikhumbule amazwi endiwathethe kuni, athi ukuba niyahamba nani kanjalo niya kutshabalala; kuba uMoya weNkosi undinyanzela ukuba ndithethe njalo.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Nifayi, ndithethe la mazwi kubantakwethu, baba nomsindo kum. Kwaye kwenzeka ukuba bandiphathe ngezandla, kuba qaphela, baba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye bandibopha ngeentambo, kuba babefuna ukuthabatha ubomi bam, ngokuthi bandishiye entlango ndidliwe zizilo zasandle.
- 17 Kodwa kwaye kwenzeka ukuba ndithandaze eNkosini, ndithi: Owu Nkosi, ngokokholo lwam olukuwe, ungandikhulula ezandleni zabantakwethu; ewe, kwaye ungandinika namandla okuba ndiziqhawule nezi ntambo ndibotshwe ngazo.

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba ndithethe la mazwi, qaphela, iintambo zakhululeka ezandleni nasezinyaweni zam, ndaza ndema phambi kwabakhuluwa bam, ndaza ndathetha nabo kwakhona.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baphinde babenomsindo kum bafune ukundibamba ngezandla; kodwa qaphela, omnye weentombi zikaIshmayeli, ewe, kwakunye nonina wayo, kunye nomnye woonyana bakaIshmayeli, babacenga abakhuluwa bam, kangangokuba baye bazithambisa iintliziyo zabo; baza bayeka ukuzama ukuthabatha ubomi bam.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babe lusizi, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo, kangangokuba bade baqubude phambi kwam, baze bandicenge ukuba ndibaxolele ngezinto abazenzileyo ngokuchasene nam.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibaxolele ngokunyanisekileyo ngako konke abakwenzileyo, kwaye ndabayala ukuba bathandaze eNkosini uThixo wabo ukuze baxolelwe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba benze njalo. Kwaye emva kokuba begqibile ukuthandaza eNkosini saphinda saqhubeka ngohambo lwethu ukuya ngasententeni kabawo wethu.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sehle sifike ententeni kabawo wethu. Kwaye emva kokuba mna nabakhuluwa bam nayo yonke indlu kaIshmayeli sehlele safika ententeni kabawo, baye benza imibulelo eNkosini uThixo wabo; baza banikela idini neminekelo etshisiweyo kuye.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

## 1 Nifayi 8

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siqokelele ndawonye zonke iintlobontlobo zeembewu, kunye ezazo zonke iintlobo zeenkozo, kanaanjalo ezeembewu zeziqhamo zazo zonke iintlobo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile ngelixa ubawo ehleli entlango, waye wathetha nathi, esithi: Qaphelani, Ndiphuphe iphupha; okanye, ngamanye amazwi, ndibone umbono.
- 3 Kwaye qaphelani, ngenxa yento endithe ndayibona, ndinesizathu sokuvuya eNkosini ngenxa kaNifayi kwakunye naye uSem; kuba ndinesizathu sokucinga ukuba bona, kwaye kanjalo nabaninzi bembewu yabo, baya kusindiswa.
- 4 Kodwa qaphelani, Leymeni kwanawe Lemuweli, ndinoloyiko olugqithisileyo ngenxa yenu; kuba qaphelani, ndikhumbula ndibona ephupheni lam, intlango esithukuthezi emnyama.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone indoda, yaye inxibe isambatho esimhlophe; yaye yeza yema phambi kwam.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ithethe nam; indiyalele ukuba ndiyilandele.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengoko ndiyilandela ndizibone ukuba ndikwilizwe elimnyama nelisithukuthezi elingumqwebedu.
- 8 Kwaye emva kokuba ndihambe isithuba seeyure ezininzi ebumnyameni, ndaqalisa ukuthandaza eNkosini ukuba ibenenceba kum, ngokunxulumene nobukhulu beenceba zakhe ezinemfesane.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ndithandazile eNkosini ndabona ithafa elikhulu eliphangaleleyo.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone umthi osiqhamo sawo esinqwenelekayo esimbangela ukuba umntu onwabe.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibheke phambili, ndithabathe nditye kwisiqhamo sawo; kwaye ndaqaphela ukuba sinambitheka ngakumbi, ngaphezu kwazo zonke endakha ndazingcamla ngaphambili. Ewe, kwaye ndaqaphela ukuba isiqhamo sawo saye simhlophe ukudlula bonke ubumhlophe endakha ndabubona.

## 1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

12 Kwaye ndakube ndithabathile ndatya kwisiqhamo sawo sawuzalisa umphefumlo wam ngovuyokazi olugqithisileyo; ngako oko, ndaqalisa ukunqwenela ukuba nosapho lwam kanjalo lungathabatha lutyekuso; kuba ndandisazi ukuba sasinqweneleka ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye iziqhamo.

13 Ndisakuphosa amehlo am macala onke, ukuba mhlawumbi ndingalubhaqa usapho lwam kanjalo, ndaqaphela umlambo wamanzi, kwaye wawubaleka ecaleni, kwaye wawukufuphi nomthi lowo endandithabathe ndatya kuwo isiqhamo.

14 Kwaye ndaye ndakhangela ukuze ndifumane apho wawuvela ngakhona; kwaye ndayibona intloko yawo kude mganyana, kwaye kwintloko yawo ndaqaphela unyoko uSaraya, noSem, noNifayi; kwaye babemi bengathi abazazi apho mabaye khona.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibakhwebe; ndaye ndatsho kanjalo kubo ngelizwi elikhulu ukuthi yizani kum, kwaye nithabathe nitye kwisiqhamo, esasinqweneleka ngaphezu kwazo zonke iziqhamo.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba beze kum, kwaye bathabatha batya kanjalo kwisiqhamo sawo.

17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndinqwenele ukuba uLeymeni noLemuweli beze bathabathe batye kanjalo kwisiqhamo eso; ngako oko, ndaphosa amehlo am ngakwintloko yomlambo, ukuba mhlawumbi ndingababona.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibabone, kodwa abazange beze kum bathabathe batye kwisiqhamo.

19 Kwaye ndaqaphela intonga yesinyithi, kwaye yayolulekele ecaleni kodonga lomlambo, kwaye ikhokelela kumthi lowo endandimi ngakuwo.

20 Kwaye ndaqaphela kanjalo indlela ecutheneyo nemxinwa, eyayisiza ecaleni ngakwintonga yesinyithi, nakuwo umthi lowo endandimi ngakuwo; kwaye yayikhokelela kanjalo ngakwintloko yomthombo, ukuya kwithafa elikhulu neliphangaleleyo, ngokungathi yayilihlabathi.

21 Kwaye ndabona izihlwele zabantu ezazingenako ukubaleka, isininzi saso sasifunzele phambili, ukuze sibe nokufikelela kwindlela eyayikhokelela kumthi lowo endandimi ngakuwo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba beze phambili, kwaye baqhubeka endleleni eyayikhokelela emthini.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kuphakame inkungu yobumnyama; ewe, neyona inkulu negqithisileyo inkungu yobumnyama, kangangokuba abo babeqhubekile endleleni baye balahlekana nendlela yabo, baze babhadula kwaye balahleka.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiqaphele abanye ababefunzele phambili, baye beza phambili kwaye babebambelele nkqi esiphelweni sentonga yesinyithi; baye bafunzela phambili becanda phakathi kwenkungu yobumnyama, betshele kwintonga yesinyithi, bade beza phambili kwaye bathabatha batya kwisiqhamo somthi.
- 25 Kwaye emva kokuba bethabathile batya kwisiqhamo somthi baye baphosa amehlo abo macala onke ngokungathi babeneentloni.
- 26 Kwaye nam kananjalo ndawaphosa amehlo am macala onke, ndaqaphela, kwelinye icala lomlambo wamanzi, isakhiwo esikhulu kwanesiphangaleleyo; kwaye sasimi ngokungathi sisemoyeni, siphakamele ngaphezu komhlaba.
- 27 Kwaye sasizaliswe ngabantu, ngokuhlangeneyo abadala nabatsha, kunye amadoda nabafazi; kwaye nendlela yesinxibo sabo yayicikizeke ngokugqithisileyo; kwaye babekwimo yokuhlekisa kwaye besalatha ngeminwe yabo ngakwabo bathi beza kwaye bathabatha batya kwisiqhamo.
- 28 Kwaye emva kokuba bengcamle kwisiqhamo baye babaneentloni, ngenxa yabo babebagxeka; baza bawela kwiindlela ezingavumelekanga baza balahleka.
- 29 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, andiwathethi onke amazwi kabawo.
- 30 Kodwa, ndingabanga mde ekubhaleni, qaphelani, wabona ezinye izihlwele zifunzele phambili; kwaye zeza kwaye zabambelela kwisiphelo sentonga yesinyithi; kwaye zafunzela phambili endleleni yazo, zaqhubeka zibambelele nkqi kwintsimbi yesinyithi, zade zeza phambili zaye zawa phantsi zaze zathabatha zatya kwisiqhamo somthi.
- 31 Waye wabona kanjalo ezinye izihlwele zivavanya indlela yazo esingisa ngakweso sakhiwo sikhulu siphangaleleyo.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of iron, even until they did come forth and partake of the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld, on the other side of the river of water, a great and spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air, high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young, both male and female; and their manner of dress was exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of mocking and pointing their fingers towards those who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other multitudes pressing forward; and they came and caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they did press their way forward, continually holding fast to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way towards that great and spacious building.

- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaninzi barhaxwe kwinzulu yomlambo, kwaye abaninzi baye balahleka emehlweni akhe, bebhadula kwiindlela ezingaqhelekanga.
- 33 Kwaye sabasikhulu isihlwele esathi sangena kweso sakhiwo singaqhelekanga. Kwaye emva kokuba sithe sangena kweso sakhiwo saye sandolatha ngomnwe wokugxeka nakubo kanjalo abo babethabatha besitya kwisiqhamo; kodwa asizange sibakhathalele.
- 34 La ngamazwi kabawo: Isininzi esabakhathalelayo, saye sakreqa.
- 35 Kwaye uLeymeni noLemuweli abazange bathabathe batye kwisiqhamo, watsho ubawo.
- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ubawo ethethe onke amazwi ephupha okanye ombono wakhe, awaye emaninzi, wathi kuthi, ngenxa yezi zinto azibone kumbono, woyika ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa kaLeymeni noLemuweli; ewe, woyika hleze babe nokukhutshelwa ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi.
- 37 Kwaye wababongoza ngoko ngayo yonke imvakalelo yomzali onenkathalo, ukuba maze bawamamele amazwi akhe, ukuze mhlawumbi iNkosi inganenceba kubo, kwaye ingabakhupheli ngaphandle; ewe, ubawo waye wabashumayeza.
- 38 Kwaye emva kokuba ethe wabashumayeza, waye waprofetha kanjalo kubo ngezinto ezininzi, wabayalela ukuba bagcine imiyalelo yeNkosi; kwaye wapheza ukuthetha nabo.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into that strange building. And after they did enter into that building they did point the finger of scorn at me and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit, said my father.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

## 1 Nifayi 9

- 1 Kwaye ubawo wazibona, kwaye waziva, kwaye wazithetha zonke ezi zinto, ngethuba ehleli ententeni, kwintlambo kaLemuweli, kwanazo ezinye izinto ezinkulu nezininzi ngakumbi endingenako ukuzibhala phezu kwala macwecwe.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko sendithethile ngokunxulumene nala macwecwe, qaphela asingawo amacwecwe endenza phezu kwawo ingxelo epheleleyo yembali yabantu bam; kuba amacwecwe endenza phezu kwawo ingxelo epheleleyo yabantu bam ndiwanika igama likaNifayi; ngako oko, abizwa ngokuba ngamacwecwe kaNifayi, abizwa ngegama lam; kwaye la macwecwe kanjalo abizwa ngokuba ngamacwecwe kaNifayi.
- 3 Nangona kunjalo, ndifumene umyalelo eNkosini okokuba kufuneka ndenze la macwecwe, ngenjongo ekhethekileyo yokuba kubekho ingxelo ekroliweyo yobulungiseleli babantu bam.
- 4 Phezu kwamanye amacwecwe kufanele kukrolwe ingxelo yolawulo lookumkani, neemfazwe neembambano zabantu bam; ngako oko la macwecwe aphahelele ngokungakumbi nobulungiseleli; kwaye amanye amacwecwe aphahelele ngokungakumbi nolawulo lookumkani neemfazwe neembambano zabantu bam.
- 5 Ngako oko, iNkosi indiyalele ukuba ndenze la macwecwe ngobulumko obukuyo, injongo leyo endingayaziyo.
- 6 Kodwa yona iNkosi yazi zonke izinto ukusuka ekuqalekeni; ngako oko, iyayilungiselela indlela yokuphumeza yonke imisebenzi yayo phakathi kwabantwana babantu; kuba qaphelani, inawo onke amandla ukuze iwazalisekise onke amazwi ayo. Kwaye kunjalo. Amen.

## 1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

## 1 Nifayi 10

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndiyaqhubeka ngokunika ingxelo yenkqubo yam phezu kwala macwecwe, nolawulo nobulungiseleli bam; ngako oko, ukuqhubeka nengxelo yam, mandithethe nje ngezinto zikabawo kwakunye nezabakhuluwa bam.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, kwaye kwenzeka ukuba emva kokuba ubawo egqibile ukuthetha amazwi ephupha lakhe, kananjalo ebayala ngokuba nayo yonke inkuthalo, wathetha nabo ngokunxulumene namaYuda—
- 3 Ukuba emva kokuba beya kutshatyalaliswa, kwanaso eso sixekokazi iYerusalem, kwaye nabaninzi bathatyathelwa ekuthinjweni eBhabhilon, ngokwentando nangexesha elifanelekileyo leNkosi, kumele babuyele kwakhona, ewe, bade babuyiswe ekuthinjweni; kwaye emva kokuba beya kubuyiswa ekuthinjweni baya kulibanga kwakhona ilizwe lelifalabo.
- 4 Ewe, nakumakhulu amathandathu eminyaka ukusuka kwixesha ubawo washiya elaseYerusalem, iNkosi uThixo iya kuphakamisa umprofeti phakathi kwamaYuda—kwanoMesiya, okanye, ngamanye amazwi, uMsindisi wehlabathi.
- 5 Kwaye wathetha kanjalo ngokunxulumene nabaprofeti, ngobuninzi obungako bamanani athi angqina ngezi zinto, ngokunxulumene nalo Mesiya, athe wathetha ngaye, okanye lo Mkhululi wehlabathi.
- 6 Ngako oko, lonke uluntu lwalulahlekile kwaye lukwimo yokuwa, kwaye luya kuba njalo ngaphandle kokuba baya kuxhomekeka kulo Mkhululi.
- 7 Kwaye wathetha kananjalo ngokunxulumene nomprofeti oya kuza ngaphambi koMesiya, ukulungiselela umendo weNkosi—
- 8 Ewe, uya kude abheke phambili kwaye adanduluke entlango: Wulungiseni umendo weNkosi, zityenenezeni iindlela zayo; kuba kumi omnye phakathi kwenu eningamaziyo; kwaye unobungangamsha kunam, omitya yeembadada zakhe ndingafanelekanga nokuyikhulula. Kwaye wathetha kangako ubawo ngokunxulumene nale nto.

## 1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.



- 9 Kwaye ubawo wathi uya kubhaptiza eBhetabhara, phesheya kweYordan; kwaye wathi kanjalo uya kubhaptiza ngamanzi; kwanokokuba uya kubhaptiza uMesiya ngamanzi.
- 10 Kwaye emva kokuba ebhaptize uMesiya ngamanzi, uya kumqonda kwaye anike ubungqina bokuba ubhaptize iMvana kaThixo, eya kuthabathela kuyo izono zehlabathi.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ubawo ethethe la mazwi waye wathetha nabakhuluwa bam ngokunxulumene nevangeli eya kushunyayelwa phakathi kwamaYuda, kwaye kanjalo nangokunxulumene nokunyamalala kwamaYuda ekungakholweni. Kwaye emva kokuba bembulele uMesiya, oya kuthi eze, kwaye emva kokuba ebulewe uya kuthi avuke kwelabafileyo, kwaye uya kuzibonakalisa, ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwabeeNtlanga.
- 12 Ewe, kwa naye ubawo wathetha kakhulu ngokunxulumene nabeeNtlanga, kananjalo ngokunxulumene nendlu kaSirayeli, ukuba baya kuthelekiswa nomthi womnquma, omasebe awo aya kuqetshulwa kwaye asasazwe phezu kobuso bomhlaba.
- 13 Ngako oko, wathi kunyanzelekile ukuba sikhokelelwe ngamxhelo mnye kwilizwe lesithembiso, ukuze kuzaliseke ilizwi leNkosi, okokuba siya kusasazwa phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba.
- 14 Kwaye emva kokuba indlu kaSirayeli iya kusasazwa iya kuphinda ihlanganiswe kunye kwakhona; okanye, lilonke, emva kokuba abeeNtlanga beyizuzile ivangeli epheleleyo, amasebe endalo omthi womnquma, okanye iintsalela zendlu kaSirayeli, ziya kumiliselwa, okanye zize kulwazi loMesiya oyinyani, iNkosi yazo noMkhululi wazo.
- 15 Kwaye ubawo waprofetha wathetha ngolu hlobo kubakhuluwa bam, kanjalo nezinye izinto ezininzi endingazibhaliyo kule ncwadi; kuba ndibhale ezininzi zazo kangangoko bekuyimfanelo kum kwenye incwadi yam.
- 16 Kwaye zonke ezi zinto, endithethe ngazo, zenziwa ngethuba ubawo ebehleli ententeni, kwintlambo kaLemuweli.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiwavile onke amazwi kabawo, ngokunxulumene nezinto awazibonayo kumbono, kwakunye nezinto awazithethayo ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, mandla lawo wawafumana ngokholo kuNyana kaThixo—kwaye uNyana kaThixo wabe enguMesiya oya kuza—mna, Nifayi, ndanqwenela kanjalo ukuba ndibe nokubona, ndive, ndize ndazi ngezi zinto, ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, asisipho sikaThixo kubo bonke abo bamfuna ngenyameko, ngamaxesha akudala nanje ngexesha aya kuthi azibonakalise kubantwana babantu.
- 18 Kuba ukwanguye izolo, namhla, nangonaphakade; kwaye indlela ilungiselelwe bonke abantu ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ukuba bathi baguquke kwaye beze kuye.
- 19 Kuba lowo ufuna ngenkuthalo uya kufumana, kwaye neemfihlelo zikaThixo ziya kutyhilwa kubo, ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, njengoko kunjalo kula maxesha nakuwo amaxesha akudala, kwa njengoko kwakunjalo kumaxesha akudala nakumaxesha azayo; ngako oko, umgaqo weNkosi ungumjikelo omnye wanaphakade.
- 20 Ke ngoko khumbula, Owu bantu, ngazo zonke izenzo zenu niya kuziswa ekugwetyweni.
- 21 Ngako oko, ukuba nifuna ukwenza ngenkohlakalo ngemihla yobulingwa benu, ke niya kufunyanwa ningacocekanga phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaThixo; kwaye ayikho into engacocekanga enokuhlala noThixo; ngako oko kufuneka nikhutshelwe ngaphandle ngonaphakade.
- 22 Kwaye uMoya oyiNgcwele undinika igunya lokuba ndizithethe ezi zinto, kwaye ndingaziphikisi.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

## 1 Nifayi 11

- 1 Kuba kwenzekile emva kokuba ndathi ndanqwenela ukwazi ngezinto athe ubawo wazibona, kwaye ndikholelwa ukuba iNkosi yayinako ukuzenza zazeke nakum, ndathi xa ndandihleli ndiziguquguqula entliziyweni yam ndaphakanyiselwa kude eMoyeni weNkosi, ewe, ukuya kwintaba ephakame ngokugqithisileyo, endingazange ndayibona ngaphambili, kwaye endingazange ndalubeka unyawo lwam phezu kwayo ngaphambili.
- 2 Waza uMoya wathi kum: Qaphela, unqwenela ntoni?
- 3 Ndaza ndathi: Ndinqwenela ukuzibona izinto athe ubawo wazibona.
- 4 Waza uMoya wathi kum: Uyakholwa na ukuba uyihlo wawubona umthi lowo athethe ngawo?
- 5 Ndaze ndathi: Ewe, uyazi ukuba ndiyakholwa kuwo onke amazwi kabawo.
- 6 Kwaye ekubeni ndithethe la mazwi, uMoya wadanduluka ngelizwi elikhulu, usithi: Hosana kuyo iNkosi, uThixo osenyangweni, kuba unguThixo phezu kwehlabathi liphela, ewe, nangaphezu konke. Kwaye usikelelekile wena, Nifayi, ngokuba uyakholwa kuNyana kaThixo osenyangweni; ngako oko, uya kuzibona izinto othe wazinqwenela.
- 7 Kwaye qaphela le nto iya kunikelwa kuwe nje ngomqondiso, ukuze emva kokuba uwubonile umthi othwele isiqhamo awasingcamlayo uyihlo, uya kubona kanjalo indoda isihla iphuma ezulwini, kwaye uya kungqina ngayo; kwaye emva kokuba ungqinile ngayo uya kunika ubungqina bokuba inguNyana kaThixo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoya wathi kum: Khangela! Ndaze ndakhangela ndabona umthi; kwaye ufana nomthi lowo ubawo wayewubonile; kwaye ubuhle bawo babungaphaya, ewe, ukudlula bonke ubuhle; kwaye nobumhlophe bawo babubudlula ubumhlophe obunje ngekhephu eliqhutywa ngumoya.

## 1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ndiwubonile umthi, ndathi kuwo uMoya: Ndiyaqaphela ukuba undibonisile umthi oxabiseke ngaphezulu kunayo yonke.

10 Waza wathi kum: unqwenela ntoni?

11 Ndaza ndathi kuwo: Ukwazi inguqulelo yawo—kuba ndathetha nawo nje ngokuba umntu ethetha; kuba ndaqaphela ukuba waye unokumila komntu; kodwa, nangona kunjalo, ndandisazi ukuba yayinguMoya weNkosi; kwaye wawuthetha nam njengendoda ithetha nenye.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yathi kum: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela ngokungathi ndikhangele kuyo, ndaza andayibona; kuba yayimkile phambi kobusobam.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndikhangele ndabona isixekokazi saseYerusalem, kananjalo nezinye izixeko. Kwaye ndasibona isixeko saseNazarete; kwaye kwisixeko saseNazarete ndabona intombi engazani nandoda, kwaye yaye intle kunene kwaye imhlophe.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiwabone amazulu evuleka; yaza ingelosi yehlela ezantsi yaza yema phambi kwam; yaza yathi kum: Nifayi, ubona ntoni?

15 Ndaza ndathi kuyo: Intombi engazani nandoda, ebukeka ngokugqithisileyo kwaye intle ngaphezulu kunazo zonke iintombi ezingazani nandoda.

16 Yaza yathi kum: Uyakwazi na ukuzithoba kukaThixo?

17 Ndaza ndathi kuyo: Ndiyazi okokuba uyabathanda abantwana bakhe; nangona kunjalo, andiyazi intsingiselo yazo zonke izinto.

18 Yaza yathi kum: Qaphela, intombi engazani nandoda oyibonayo ingunina woNyana kaThixo, esenyameni.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone ukuba iphakanyiselwa kude eMoyeni; kwaye emva kokuba iphakanyiselwe kude eMoyeni okwethutyana ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Khangela!

20 Ndaye ndakhangela ndaza ndabona kwakhona intombi engazani nandoda, iphethe usana ezingalweni zayo.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condemnation of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

- 21 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Qaphela iMvana kaThixo, ewe, kwanaye uNyana kaBawo waNaphakade! Uyayazi intsingiselo yomthi lowo wawubonayo uyihlo?
- 22 Ndaza ndayiphendula, ndisithi: ewe, iluthando lukaThixo, oluzalisa ngapha nangapha ezintliziyweni zabantwana babantu; ngako oko, luyinto enqwenelekayo ngaphezu kwazo zonke izinto.
- 23 Yaza yathetha nam, isithi: Ewe, kwaye luyeyona nto ivuyisa kakhulu emphefumlweni.
- 24 Kwaye emva kokuba iwathethile la mazwi, yathi kum: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela, ndaza ndabona uNyana kaThixo esiya phambili phakathi kwabantwana babantu; ndaza ndabona abaninzi besiswa ezinyaweni zakhe kwaye bemnqula.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone ukuba intonga yesinyithi, abeyibonile ubawo, yaye ililizwi likaThixo, eyayikhokelela kumthombo wamanzi aphilayo, okanye kumthi wobomi; amanzi lawo amele uthando lukaThixo; ndaza ndabona kanjalo ukuba umthi wobomi wawumele uthando lukaThixo.
- 26 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum kwakhona: Khangela ubone ukuzithoba kukaThixo!
- 27 Ndaye ndakhangela ndaza ndabona uMkhululi wehlabathi, abekhe wathetha ngaye ubawo; ndaza ndabona kanjalo umprofeti owayeza kulungiselela indlela ngaphambi kwakhe. Yaza iMvana kaThixo yabheka phambili yaza yabhaptizwa nguye; kwaye emva kokuba ibhaptiziwe, ndawabona amazulu evuleka, waza uMoya oyiNgcwele wehla uphuma ezulwini waza wahlala phezu kwakhe unje ngehobe.
- 28 Ndaye ndaqaphela ukuba ubheka phambili ulungiselela ebantwini, usemandleni kwaye unozuko olukhulu; kwaye izihlwele zazihlanganisene kunye ukuze zimve; ndaza ndaqaphela ukuba zimkhuphela ngaphandle phakathi kwazo.
- 29 Ndaza kanjalo ndaqaphela abanye abalishumi elinambini bemlandela. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bathatyathelwa kude eMoyeni bemka phambi kobuso bam, ndaza andaphinda ndibabone.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi ithethe nam kwakhona, isithi: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela, ndaza ndabona amazulu evuleka kwakhona, ndaza ndabona iingelosi zisehlela phezu kwabantwana babantu; kwaye zibalungiselela.

31 Kwaye yathetha nam kwakhona, isithi: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela, ndaza ndabona iMvana kaThixo ibheka phambili phakathi kwabantwana babantu. Ndaza ndaqaphela izihlewe zabantu abayimilwelwe, kwaye babebandezekile lulo lonke uhlobo lwezifo, naba noomtyholi noomoya abangcolileyo; yaza ingelosi yathetha kwaye yandibonisa zonke ezi zinto. Kwaye baphiliswa ngamandla eMvana kaThixo; kwaye oomtyholi noomoya abangcolileyo bakhutshelwa ngaphandle.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi ithethe nam kwakhona, isithi: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela ndaza ndayibona iMvana kaThixo, okokuba yayithatyathiwe ngabantu; ewe, uNyana kaThixo ongunaphakade wagwetywa lihlabathi; kwaye ndabona ndaza ndanika ubungqina.

33 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndabona ukuba yaphakanyiselwa phezulu emnqamlezweni yaza yabulawa ngenxa yezono zehlabathi.

34 Kwaye emva kokuba ibulewe ndazibona izihlewe zomhlaba, okokuba zihlanganisene kunye ukulwa nabapostile beMvana; kuba abalishumi elinambini babebizwa njalo yingelosi yeNkosi.

35 Kwaye isihlewe somhlaba sasihlanganisene kunye; ndaza ndaqaphela ukuba sasikwisakhiwo esikhulu kwaye esiphangaleleyo, njengeso sakhiwo esathi sabonwa ngubawo. Yaza ingelosi yeNkosi yathetha nam kwakhona, isithi: Qaphela ihlabathi nobulumko balo; ewe, qaphela indlu kaSirayeli ihlanganisene kunye ukulwa nabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone ndize ndinike ubungqina bokuba isakhiwo esikhulu nesiphangaleleyo sasilikratshi lehlabathi; kwaye sawa, kwaye ukuwa kwaso kwakugqithisile kakhulu. Yaza ingelosi yeNkosi yathetha nam kwakhona, isithi: Kuya kuba njalo ke ukutshatyalaliswa kwezizwe zonke, izalamane, iilwimi nabantu, abaya kuthi balwe nabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

## 1 Nifayi 12

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi ithi kum: Khangela, kwaye ubone imbewu yakho, kanjalo nembewu yabakhuluwa bakho. Ndaza ndakhangela ndabona ilizwe lesithembiso; ndaza ndabona izihlwele zabantu, ewe, ngokokude kubengathi ngamanani amaninzi kangangentlabathi yolwandle.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiqaphele izihlwele zihlanganisene kunye ukulwa idabi, esinye ngokuchasene nesinye; ndaza ndaqaphela iimfazwe, kwaye namarhe eemfazwe, nokuxhelana okukhulu ngekrele phakathi kwabantu bam.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiqaphele izizukulwana ezininzi zidlula, ngokohlobo lweemfazwe neembambano elizweni; ndaza ndaqaphela izixeko ezininzi, ewe, kangangokuba andibanganako ukuzibala.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone inkungu yobumnyama ebusweni belizwe lesithembiso; ndaza ndabona imibane, ndaze ndeva neendudumo, neenyikima, nazo zonke iintlobo zeziphithiphithi zeengxolo; ndaza ndawubona umhlaba namawa, okokuba akrazuka; ndaza ndabona iintaba zidilika zisiba ziingceba; ndaze ndabona amathafa omhlaba, okokuba ayecandekile; kwaye ndabona nezixeko ezininzi okokuba zazizikile; kwaye ndabona ezininzi okokuba zazitshiswe ngumlilo; kwaye ndabona ezininzi okokuba zadilikela emhlabeni ngenxa yokunyikima kwawo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ndibone ezi zinto, ndawubona umphunga wobumnyama, okokuba waye wagqitha kubuso bomhlaba; kwaye qaphela, ndabona izihlwele ezithe azawa ngenxa yezigwebo ezikhulu nezoyikekayo zeNkosi.
- 6 Kwaye ndawabona amazulu evuleka, neMvana kaThixo isehla iphuma ezulwini; yaza yehla yaza yazibonakalisa kubo.
- 7 Kwaye ndabona kanjalo kwaye ndinika ubungqina bokuba uMoya oyiNgcwele wehla phezu kwabanye abalishumi elinambini, kwaye bamiswa nguThixo baze bonyulwa.
- 8 Yaza ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Qaphela abafundi abalishumi elinambini beMvana, abonyulwe ukuze balungiselele kuyo imbewu yakho.

## 1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

- 9 Yaza yathi kum: Uyabakhumbula na abapostile beMvana abalishumi elinambini? Qaphela ngabo abo abaya kugweba izizwe ezilishumi elinambini zakwaSirayeli; ngako oko, abalishumi elinambini abalungiseleli bembewu yakho baya kugwetywa ngabo; kuba nina ningabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 10 Kwaye aba balungiseleli abalishumi elinambini enibabonayo baya kugweba imbewu yakho. Kwaye, qaphela, bangamalungisa ngonaphakade; kuba ngenxa yokholo lwabo kuyo iMvana kaThixo iingubo zabo zenziwa mhlophe egazini layo.
- 11 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela, ndaza ndabona izizukulwana ezithathu zidlulela ebulungiseni; kwaye iingubo zazo zazimhlophe ngokokude zifane nezo zeMvana kaThixo: Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Aba benziwe mhlophe egazini leMvana, ngenxa yokholo lwabo kuyo.
- 12 Ndaza mna, Nifayi, ndabona kanjalo abaninzi besizukulwana sesine abathi badlulela ebulungiseni.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone izihlewe zomhlaba zihlanganisene kunye.
- 14 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Qaphela imbewu yakho, kwaye kanjalo nembewu yabakhuluwa bakho.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndikhangele ndaza ndabona abantu bembewu yam behlanganisene kunye bezizihlewe ngokuchaseneyo nembewu yabakhuluwa bam; kwaye babehlanganisene kunye ukulwa idabi.
- 16 Yaza ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Qaphela umthombo wamanzi anyhuku-nyhuku athe wawabona uyihlo; ewe, kwa nawo umlambo awathi wathetha ngawo; nobunzulu bawo bubunzulu besihogo.
- 17 Kwaye iinkungu zobumnyama zizihendo zomtyholi, ezimfamekisa amehlo, kwaye ziqaqadekise iintliziyo zabantwana babantu, zize zibakhokelele kude kwiindlela eziphangaleleyo, ukuze batshabalale kwaye balahleke.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.



18 Kwaye isakhiwo esikhulu nesiphangaleleyo, awathi wasibona uyihlo, ziingcinga zokuzingca kwaye nekratshi labantwana babantu. Kwaye umsantsa omkhulu nowoyikekayo uyabohlula; ewe, kwanalo ilizwi lobulungisa likaThixo waNaphakade, noMesiya oyiMvana kaThixo, othi uMoya oyiNgcwele unike ubungqina ngaye, ukususela ekuqalekeni kwehlabathi kude kube leli lixa, nokusuka kweli lixa ukuya phambili nangonaphakade.

19 Kwaye ngeli lixa ingelosi yathetha la mazwi, ndaqaphela kwaye ndabona ukuba imbewu yabakhuluwa bam yayinembambano nembewu yam, ngokwelizwi lengelosi; kwaye nangenxa yekratshi lembewu yam, nezihendo zomtyholi, ndaqaphela okokuba imbewu yabakhuluwa bam yabongamela abantu bembewu yam.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaqaphela, ndabona abantu bembewu yabakhuluwa bam okokuba bayoyisa imbewu yam; kwaye babheka phambili bezizihlwele phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

21 Kwaye ndababona behlanganisene kunye bezizihlwele; kwaye ndabona iimfazwe kwanamarhe eemfazwe phakathi kwabo; kwaye kwiimfazwe namarhe eemfazwe ndabona izizukulwana ezininzi zidlula.

22 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Qaphela aba baya kuya bephelela ekungakholweni.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiqaphele, emva kokuba besiya bephelela ekungakholweni baba ngabantu abantsundu, kwaye abacekisekayo, kwaye benyhuku-nyhuku, bezele bubunqenerha kwanalo lonke uhlobo lwamasikizi.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

## 1 Nifayi 13

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi ithethe nam, isithi: Khangela! Ndaza ndakhangela ndabona izizwe ezininzi nezikumkani.
- 2 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Uqaphela ntoni? Ndaza ndathi: Ndiqaphela izizwe ezininzi nezikumkani.
- 3 Yaza yathi kum: Ezi zizizwe nezikumkani zabeeNtlanga.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone phakathi kwezizwe zabeeNtlanga ukumiselwa kwebandla elikhulu.
- 5 Yaza yathi ingelosi kum: Qaphela ukumiselwa kwebandla elilelona limasikizi ngaphezu kwawo onke amanye amabandla, elibulala abangcwele bakaThixo, ewe, baze babatshutshise kwaye libabophelele libacinezele, baze bababophelele ngedyokhwe yesinyithi, baze babazise ezantsi ekuthinjweni.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndilibone eli bandla likhulu kwaye limasikizi; ndaza ndabona ukuba umtyholi waye engumseki walo.
- 7 Kwaye ndabona kanjalo igolide, nesilivere, neesilika neengubo ezibomvu, neleneni eyolukwe ngokucikizekileyo, nazo zonke iintlobo zezambatho ezixabisekileyo; kwaye ndabona namahenyukazi amaninzi.
- 8 Yaza ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Qaphela igolide, nesilivere, neesilika, neengubo ezibomvu, neleneni eyolukwe ngokucikizekileyo, nezambatho ezixabisekileyo, namahenyukazi, ziyiminqweno yalo eli bandla likhulu nelimasikizi.
- 9 Kwaye kanjalo babatshabalalisa abangcwele bakaThixo ukuze bazuze udumo lwehlabathi, kwaye nokokuba babathobele ezantsi ekuthinjweni.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndikhangele ndaza ndabona amanzi amaninzi; kwaye abohlula abeeNtlanga kwimbewu yabakhuluwa bam.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi ithi kum: Qaphela umsindo kaThixo iphezu kwembewu yabakhuluwa bakho.

## 1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

12 Ndaza ndakhangela ndabona indoda phakathi kwabeeNtlanga, eyayohlulwe kwimbewu yabakhuluwa bam ngamanzi amaninzi; ndaza ndabona uMoya kaThixo, ukuba wehla waza wasebenza kuyo indoda; yaza yabheka phambili phezu kwamanzi amaninzi, kwaye nakuyo imbewu yabakhuluwa bam, eyaye ikulo ilizwe lesithembiso.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone uMoya kaThixo, okokuba waye wasebenza kwabanye beeNtlanga; baza bahamba baphuma ekuthinjweni phezu kwamanzi amaninzi.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone izihlewele ezininzi zabeeNtlanga zikulo ilizwe lesithembiso; ndaza ndabona nomsindo kaThixo, okokuba wawuphezu kwembewu yabakhuluwa bam; kwaye babesasazwe phambi kwabeeNtlanga baza babethwa.

15 Kwaye ndabona uMoya weNkosi, okokuba wawuphezu kwabo abeeNtlanga, baye bachuma kwaye balizuzwa ilizwe lelifa labo; kwaye ndabona okokuba babemhlophe, kwaye bebahle kakhulu kwaye bebukeka, befana nabantu bam phambi kokuba babulawe.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiqaphele okokuba abeeNtlanga abo babehambile baphuma ekuthinjweni bazithoba phambi kweNkosi; kwaye amandla eNkosi aba nabo.

17 Ndaza ndaqaphela okokuba unina wazo iiNtlanga ezazihlanganisene kunye phezu kwamanzi, nasemhlabeni kanjalo, ukuze zilwe idabi ngokuchasene nabo.

18 Ndaza ndaqaphela ukuba amandla kaThixo ayenazo, kwaye kanjalo umsindo kaThixo wawuphezu kwazo zonke ezo ezazihlanganisene kunye ukuze zilwe idabi ngokuchasene nabo.

19 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndaqaphela ukuba abeeNtlanga ababephumile ekuthinjweni bakhululwa ngamandla kaThixo ezandleni zazo zonke ezinye izizwe.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiqaphele ukuba baye baphumelela elizweni; kwaye ndabona incwadi, yaze yahanjiselwa phambili phakathi kwabo.

21 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Uyayazi intsingiselo yayo incwadi?

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

22 Ndaza ndathi kuyo: Andiyazi.

23 Yaza yathi: Qaphela iphuma emlonyeni womYuda. Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndayibona; yaza yathi kum: Incwadi leyo uyibonayo yimbali yamaYuda, equlathe iminqophiso yeNkosi, eyathi yayenza kuyo indlu kaSirayeli; kwaye kanjalo ikwaqulathe iziprofetho ezininzi zabaprofeti abangcwele; kwaye iyimbali efana nemikrolo leyo ephezu kwamacwecwe obhedu, ngaphandle nje kokuba engemaninzi; nangona kunjalo, aqulathe iminqophiso yeNkosi, eyathi yayenza kuyo indlu kaSirayeli; ngako oko, anexabiso elikhulu kubo abeeNtlanga.

24 Yaza ingelosi yeNkosi yathi kum: Uyibonile na incwadi ukuba iphuma emlonyeni womYuda; kwaye xa yayiphuma isuka emlonyeni womYuda yayiqulathe ivangeli epheleleyo yeNkosi, abathe abapostile abalishumi elinambini banika ubungqina ngayo; kwaye banika ubungqina ngokunxulumene nenyano ekuyo iMvana kaThixo.

25 Ngako oko, ezi zinto ziphuma zivela kumaYuda zimsulwa zisiya kwabeeNtlanga, ngokunxulumene nenyano ekuye uThixo.

26 Kwaye emva kokuba zihambile zeza ngaphambili ngesandla sabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana, ukusuka kumaYuda ukuya kwabeeNtlanga, ubona ukumiselwa kwelo bandla likhulu nelimasikizi, elona limasikizi ngaphezu kwawo onke amabandla; kuba qaphela, bayisusile kuyo ivangeli yeMvana inxalenye eninzi ecacileyo kwaye nenexabiso elikhulu; kanjalo neminqophiso emininzi yeNkosi bayisusile.

27 Kwaye konke oku bakwenze ukuze babe nokuzigqwetha iindlela ezilungileyo zeNkosi, ukuze babe nokumfamekisa amehlo kwaye bazenze lukhuni iintliziyo zabantwana babantu.

28 Ngako oko, uyabona ukuba emva kokuba incwadi ihambile yeza ngaphambili iphuma ezandleni zebandla elikhulu nelimasikizi, kuye kwabakho izinto ezininzi ezicacileyo nezixabisekileyo ezisisiweyo kuyo incwadi, eyincwadi yeMvana kaThixo.

And I said unto him: I know not.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29 Kwaye emva kokuba ezi zinto zicacileyo kwaye zixabisekileyo zisusiwe iyahamba ibheke phambili kuzo zonke izizwe zabeeNtlanga; kwaye emva kokuba ihambile yabheka phambili kuzo zonke izizwe zabeeNtlanga, ewe, nangaphaya kwamanzi amaninzi othe wwabona kunye nabeeNtlanga abathi bahamba baphuma ekuthinjweni, uyabona —ngenxa yezinto ezininzi ezicacileyo nezixabisekileyo ezithe zasuswa encwadini, ezazicacile ukuze ziqondakale kubantwana babantu, ngokunxulumene nokukucacileyo okukuyo iMvana kaThixo—ngenxa yezi zinto zisusiweyo zakhutshwa kuyo ivangeli yeMvana, abaninzi ngokugqithisileyo bayakubeka, ewe, kangangokuba uSathana unamandla amakhulu elikhulu phezu kwabo.

30 Nangona kunjalo, uyabona ukuba abeeNtlanga abathi bahamba baphuma ekuthinjweni, baza baphakanyiselwa phezulu ngamandla kaThixo ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye izizwe, phezu kobuso belizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezulu kunawo onke amanye amazwe, eli lilizwe ethe iNkosi uThixo yanqophisana noyihlo ukuze imbewu yakhe ilifumane njengelizwe lelifa labo; ngako oko, uyabona ukuba iNkosi uThixo ayiyi kubayekela abeeNtlanga ukuba bawutshabalalise kwaphela umxube wembewu yakho, abaphakathi kwembewu yabakhuluwa bakho.

31 Engasayi kubayekela abeeNtlanga ukuba bayitshabalalise imbewu yabakhuluwa bakho.

32 Ingasayi kubayekela iNkosi uThixo abeeNtlanga ukuba bahlale ngonaphakade kweso simo soyikekayo sobumfama, eso ubabona bekuso, ngenxa yenxenyane ecacileyo kwaye nexabiseke kakhulu yevangeli yeMvana ethe yafihlwa lelo bandla limasikizi, okubonileyo ukumiselwa kwalo.

33 Ngako oko ithi iMvana kaThixo: Ndiya kuba nenceba kubo abeeNtlanga, ngokokude ndiyihambele intsalela yendlu kaSirayeli ngesigwebo esikhulu.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi yeNkosi yathetha nam; isithi: Qaphela, ithi iMvana kaThixo, emva kokuba ndiyivelele intsalela yendlu kaSirayeli—kwaye le ntsalela endithetha ngayo yimbewu kayihlo—ngako oko, emva kokuba ndiyivelele ngesigwebo, ndaza ndababetha ngesandla sabeeNtlanga, kwaye emva kokuba abeeNtlanga bethe bakhubeka ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yenxenye eyiyeyona icacileyo nexabisekileyo yevangeli yeMvana ethe yabanjwa lelo bandla limasikizi, elingunina wamahenyukazi, itsho iMvana—Ndiya kuba nenceba kubo abeeNtlanga ngaloo mhla, kangangokuba ndiya kuzisa phambili kubo, ngamandla angawam, ubuninzi bevangeli yam, eya kuba icacile kwaye inexabiso, itsho iMvana.

35 Kuba, qaphela, itsho iMvana: Ndiya kuzibonakalisa kuyo imbewu yakho, ukuze bazibhale izinto ezininzi endiya kuthi ndizenze kubo, eziya kuba zicacile kwaye zinexabiso; kwaye emva kokuba imbewu yakho iya kuba itshatyalalisiwe, kwaye isiya iphelela ekungakholweni, kwaye kanjalo nembewu yabakhuluwa bakho, qaphela, ezi zinto ziya kufihlwa phezulu, ukuze zize ngaphambili kubo abeeNtlanga, ngesipho namandla eMvana.

36 Kwaye kuzo ezi zinto kuya kubhalwa ivangeli yam, itsho iMvana, neliwa lam nosindiso lwam.

37 Kwaye basikelelekile abo baya kufuna ukuzisa ngaphambili iZiyon yam ngaloo mhla, kuba baya kubanaso isipho namandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; kwaye ukuba bathe banyamezela kwada kwaba sesiphelweni baya kuphakanyiswa ngomhla wokugqibela, kwaye baya kusindiswa ebukumkanini banaphakade beMvana; kwaye abo baya kuvakalisa uxolo, ewe, iindaba zovuyo olukhulu, hayi ukuya kubabahle kwabo phezu kweentaba.

38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone intsalela yembewu yabakhuluwa bam, kwaye kanjalo nencwadi yeMvana kaThixo, eyathi yaphuma isuka emlonyeni womYuda, okokuba yeza iphuma kwabeeNtlanga ukuya kwintsalela yembewu yabakhuluwa bam.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39 Kwaye emva kokuba iphumile ukuza kubo ndabona ezinye iincwadi, ezathi zeza ngaphambili ngamandla eMvana, ukusuka kwabeeNtlanga ukuza kubo, ukuqinisekisa abeeNtlanga nentsalela yembewu yabakhuluwa bam, nawo amaYuda awaye esasazwe phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba, okokuba iimbali zabaprofeti nezabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana ziyinyani.

40 Kwaye ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Ezi mbali zokugqibela, uzibonileyo phakathi kwabeeNtlanga, ziya kuzinzisa ubunyani bezo zokuqala, ezi zezabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana, kwaye ziya kwazisa ngezicacileyo nezixabisekileyo izinto ezazisusiwe kuzo; kwaye ziya kwenza kwaziwe kuzo zonke izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu, okokuba iMvana kaThixo inguNyana kaBawo onguNaphakade, kwaye inguMsindisi wehlabathi; kwaye nokokuba bonke abantu mabeze kuye, okanye abanakho ukusindiswa.

41 Kwaye mabeze ngokunxulumene namazwi aya kuthi azinziswe ngomlomo weMvana; kwaye amazwi eMvana aya kuthi aziswe kuzo iimbali zembewu yakho, kwa nakuzo iimbali zabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana; ngako oko zombini ziya kuthi zizinziswe kunye; kuba mnye uThixo kwaye mnye noMalusi kuwo wonke umhlaba.

42 Kwaye liyeza ilixa aya kuthi azibonakalise kuzo zonke izizwe, kunye kumaYuda kwaye kanjalo nabeeNtlanga; kwaye emva kokuba ezibonakalisile kumaYuda kananjalo nakwabeeNtlanga, uya kuthi ke azibonakalise nakwabeeNtlanga kananjalo nakumaYuda, kwaye abokugqibela baya kuba ngabokuqala, kwaye nabokuqala baya kuba ngabokugqibela.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

## 1 Nifayi 14

- 1 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, okokuba abeeNtlanga baya kuthi bayiphulaphule iMvana kaThixo ngaloo mhla iya kuthi izibonakalise kubo ngezwi, kwa nangamandla, kwisenzo ngasinye, ekuzisuseni izikhubekiso zabo—
- 2 Kwaye abangaziqaqadekisiyo iintliziyo zabo ngakuyo iMvana kaThixo, baya kuthi babalelwe kuyo imbewu kayihlo; ewe, baya kubalelwa kuyo indlu kaSirayeli; baze babe ngabantu abasikelelekileyo phezu kwelizwe lesithembiso ngonaphakade; abasayi kuphinda bathotyelwe phantsi ekuthinjweni; kwaye indlu kaSirayeli ayisayi kuphinda ibhidaniswe.
- 3 Kwaye eso sihogo sikhulu, sombelwa bona lelo bandla likhulu nelimasikizi, elamiselwa ngumtyholi kwakunye nabantwana bakhe, ukuze akhokelele imiphefumlo yabantu ezantsi esihogweni—ewe, eso sihogo sombelwa ukutshabalalisa abantu siya kuzaliswa ngabo basombayo, ukuze batshabalale ngokupheleleyo, itsho iMvana kaThixo; ingeyiyo intshabalalo yomphefumlo, ngaphandle nje kokuba uya phoselwa kweso sihogo singena siphelo.
- 4 Kuba qaphela, oku kunxulumene nokuthinjwa ngumtyholi, kanaanjalo ngokunxulumene nobulungisa bukaThixo, phezu kwabo bonke abaya kuthi basebenze ngenkohlakalo nesikizi phambi kwakhe.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi yathetha nam, Nifayi, isithi: Uqaphele na okokuba ukuba abeeNtlanga bayaguquka kuya kulunga ngakubo; kwaye uyazi kanjalo ngokunxulumene neminqophiso yeNkosi kuyo indlu kaSirayeli; kwaye uvile kanjalo ukuba lowo uthe akaguquka kufuneka etshabalele.
- 6 Ke ngoko, yeha kubo abeeNtlanga ukuba bathi baziqaqadekise iintliziyo zabo ngakuyo iMvana kaThixo.

## 1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.



- 7 Kuba liyeza ilixa, itsho iMvana kaThixo, endiya kuthi ndisebenze omkhulu kwaye nomangalisayo umsebenzi phakathi kwabantwana babantu; umsebenzi oyakuba ngonaphakade, nokokuba kukwelinye icala lesandla okanye kwelinye —nokokuba kukubaqinisekiselwa eluxolweni nobomi obungunaphakade, okanye ekubakhululeni ekuqadekeni kweentliziyo zabo kwaye nasekumfanyekisweni kweengqondo zabo ukuze bathotyelwe ezantsi ekuthinjweni, kananjalo kwintshabalalo, kunye okwenyama nokoMoya, ngokunxulumene nokuthinjwa ngumtyholi, lowo bese ndithethile ngaye.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba ingelosi ithethe la mazwi, yaye yathi kum: Uyayikhumbula na iminqophiso kaBawo kuyo indlu kaSirayeli? Ndathi kuyo, Ewe.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ithi kum: Khangela, kwaye ubone elaa bandla likhulu kwaye limasikizi, elingunina wamasikizi, omseki walo ingumtyholi.
- 10 Yaza yathi kum: Qaphela kukho mabini nje kuphela amabandla; elinye libandla leMvana kaThixo, kwaye elinye libandla likamtyholi; ngako oko, lowo ungenguye owebandla leMvana kaThixo ungowelo bandla likhulu, elingunina wamasikizi; kwaye lilihenyukazi lawo wonke umhlaba.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakhangela ndaze ndalibona ihenyukazi lawo wonke umhlaba, kwaye lalihleli phezu kwawo amanzi amaninzi; kwaye lalinobukhosi phezu kwawo wonke umhlaba, phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndalibona ibandla leMvana kaThixo, kwaye amanani alo aye embalwa, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi ehenyukazi elihleli phezu kwamanzi amaninzi; nangona kunjalo, ndabona ukuba ibandla leMvana, elalingabangcwele bakaThixo, kanjalo babephezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba; kwaye ubukhosi babo phezu kobuso bomhlaba babubuncinane, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yalo ihenyukazi elikhulu endalibonayo.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone ukuba unina omkhulu wamasikizi waye wahlanganisa kunye izihlwele phezu kobuso bawo wonke umhlaba, phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe zabeeNtlanga, ukuze zilwe ngokuchasene nayo iMvana kaThixo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiwabone amandla leMvana kaThixo, okokuba ehla phezu kwabangcwele bebandla leMvana, kwaye naphezu kwabantu bomnqophiso weNkosi, ababesasazwe phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba; kwaye babexhotyiswe ngobulungisa nangamandla kaThixo ngobuqaqawuli obukhulu.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone ukuba umsindo kaThixo wathululeka phezu kwalo ibandla elikhulu nelimasikizi, kangangokuba kwabakho iimfazwe namarhe eemfazwe phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe nezalamane zomhlaba.
- 16 Kwaye njengoko kwaqalisa ukubakho kweemfazwe namarhe eemfazwe phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe ezazizezakhe unina wamasikizi, ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Qaphela, umsindo kaThixo phezu kwakhe unina wamahenyukazi; kwaye qaphela, uyazibona zonke ezi zinto—
- 17 Kwaye xa uthu wafika umhla eya kuthi umsindo kaThixo uthululeke phezu konina wamahenyukazi, olibandla elikhulu kwaye nelimasikizi lomhlaba wonke, omseki walo ingumtyholi, ke, ngaloo mhla, umsebenzi kaBawo uya kuqalisa, ukulungiselela indlela yokuzalisekisa iminqophiso yakhe, athe wayenza kubantu bakhe abangabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ingelosi yathetha nam, isithi: Khangela!
- 19 Ndaza ndakhangela ndabona indoda, kwaye yayi nxibe isambatho esimhlophe.
- 20 Yaza ingelosi yathi kum: Qaphela omnye wabapostile abalishumi elinambini beMvana.
- 21 Qaphela, uya kubona kwaye ayibhale intsalela yezi zinto; ewe, kanaanjalo nezinto ezininzi ebezithe zakho.
- 22 Kwaye uya kuthi abhale kanjalo ngokunxulumene nokuphela kwehlabathi.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

- 23 Ngako oko, izinto aya kuthi azibhale zibubulungisa kwaye ziyinyani; kwaye qaphela zibhaliwe kuyo incwadi owayibonayo iphuma emlonyeni womYuda; kwaye ngeli lixa yayiphuma emlonyeni womYuda, okanye, ngeli lixa incwadi yayiphuma emlonyeni womYuda, izinto ezazibhaliwe zazicacile kwaye zimsulwa, kwaye zixabiseke ngokugqithisileyo kwaye zilula ukuze ziqondakale kubo bonke abantu.
- 24 Kwaye qaphela, izinto lo mpostile weMvana aya kuthi azibhale zizinto ezininzi othe wazibona; kwaye qaphela, intsalela usaya kuyibona.
- 25 Kodwa izinto oya kuthi uzibone emva koku akuyi kuzibhala, kuba iNkosi uThixo imise umpostile weMvana kaThixo ukuba aze azibhale.
- 26 Kananjalo nakwabanye ababekho, zonke izinto uzibonisile kubo, kwaye bazibhalile; kwaye zitywiniwe ukuze zize ngaphambili zimsulwa, ngokunxulumene nobunyani obukuyo iMvana, ngexesha elifanelekileyo layo iNkosi, kuyo indlu kaSirayeli.
- 27 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndeva kwaye ndanika ubungqina, bokuba igama lompostile weMvana lalinguYohane, ngokwelizwi le ngelosi.
- 28 Kwaye qaphela, mna, Nifayi, ndalelwe ukuba ndiyibhale intsalela yezinto endithe ndazibona kwaye ndaziva; ngako oko izinto endithe ndazibhala zindanele; kwaye ndibhale nje inxenywe encinane yezinto endathi ndazibona.
- 29 Kwaye ndinika ubungqina bokuba ndazibona izinto awathi wazibona ubawo, kwaye ingelosi yeNkosi yathi yazazisa kum.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku ndiyapheza ukuthetha ngokunxulumene nezinto endathi ndazibona ngethuba endandiphakanyiselwe kude eMoyeni; kwaye ukuba zonke izinto endazibonayo azibhalwanga, izinto endithe ndazibhala ziyinyani. Kwaye kunjalo. Amen.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

## 1 Nifayi 15

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, bendiphakanyiselwe kude eMoyeni, ndaze ndazibona zonke ezi zinto, ndabuyela ententeni kabawo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndibone abakhuluwa bam kwaye babephikisana omnye nomnye ngokunxulumene nezinto athe ubawo wazithetha kubo.
- 3 Kuba ngenene wathetha izinto ezininzi nezinkulu kubo, ezaye zinzima ukuziqonda, ngaphandle kokuba umntu abuze eNkosini; kwaye ke bona beqaqadekile ezintliziyweni zabo, ke ngoko abazange bakhangele Nkosini njengoko babefanele.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndeva buhlungu ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyiyo zabo, kananjalo, nangenxa yezinto endathi ndazibona, kwaye ndisazi ukuba ngokungenakuncedwa kwakumele zenzeke ngenxa yenkohlakalo enkulu yabantwana babantu.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndoyisakale ngenxa yeembandezelo zam, kuba ndandicinga ukuba iimbandezelo zam zazinkulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke, ngenxa yentshabalalo yabantu bam, kuba ndandikubonile ukuwa kwabo.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ndifumene amandla ndaye ndathetha nabakhuluwa bam, ndinqwenela ukwazi kubo unobangela weempikiswano zabo.
- 7 Baza bathi: Qaphela, asinako ukuwaqonda amazwi athe ubawo wawathetha ngokunxulumene namasebe endalo omthi womnquma, kananjalo ngokunxulumene nabeeNtlanga.
- 8 Ndaza ndathi kubo: Nikhe nabuza na eNkosini?
- 9 Baza bathi kum: Asikhange; kuba iNkosi ayisazisi thina into enjalo.
- 10 Qaphela, ndathi kubo: Kungani ukuba ningayigcini imiyalelo yeNkosi? Kungani ukuba nibe niya kutshabalala, ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyiyo zenu?

## 1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

- 11 Anizikhumbuli izinto ethe yazithetha iNkosi?  
—Ukuba aniyi kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zenu, nize nindibuze ngokholo, nikholelwa okokuba niya kufumana, ninenkuthalo ekugcineni imiyalelo yam, ngokwenene ezi zinto ziya kwenziwa zazeke kuni.
- 12 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, indlu kaSirayeli yathelekiswa nawo umthi womnquma, ngoMoya weNkosi owawukuye ubawo wethu; kwaye qaphelani asithanga saqetshulwa kuyo indlu kaSirayeli, kwaye asililo kusinina isebe lendlu kaSirayeli?
- 13 Kwaye ngoku, into asingisele kuyo ubawo malunga nokumiliselwa kwamasebe endalo ngexesha elimisiweyo labeeNtlanga, yile, yokuba ngemihla yamva, xa imbewu yethu iya kube isiya iphelela ekungakholweni, ewe, kangangethuba leminyaka emininzi, kwaye nezizukulwana ezininzi emva kokuba uMesiya eya kubonakala ngesiqu kubantwana babantu, iya kuthi ke ivangeli epheleleyo kaMesiya ifike kwabeeNtlanga, kwaye ukusuka kwabeeNtlanga iye kwintsalela yembewu yethu—
- 14 Kwaye ngaloo mhla intsalela yembewu yethu iya kuthi yazi ukuba iyeyendlu kaSirayeli, kwaye nokokuba ingabantu bomnqophiso weNkosi; kwaye ke iya kuthi yazi kwaye ifikelele kulwazi ngookhokho bayo, kananjalo kulwazi lwevangeli yoMkhululi wayo, eyayifundisiwe kooyise bayo nguye; ngako oko, iya kufikelela kulwazi ngoMkhululi wayo kwaye nawonawona manqaku emfundiso yakhe, ukuze yazi indlela enokuthi ize kuye ngayo kwaye isindiswe.
- 15 Kwaye ke ngaloo mhla ayisayi kugcoba kusini na kwaye imdumise uThixo wayo wanaphakade, iliwa layo nosindiso lwayo? Ewe, ngaloo mhla, ayisayi kuzuza komelela nokondleka kuwo umdiliya wenyani? Ewe, ayisayi kuza kuwo umhlambi oyinyani kaThixo?
- 16 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Ewe; iya kukhunjulwa kwakhona phakathi kwendlu kaSirayeli; iya kumiliselwa kuyo, ilisebe lendalo lomthi womnquma, kuwo umthi womnquma wenyani.

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

17 Kwaye oku kuko oko ubawo abesingisele kuko; kwaye uthetha ukuthi ayinako ukwenzeka kude kube semva kokuba isasaziwe ngabo abeeNtlanga; kwaye uthetha ukuthi iya kuza ngabo abeeNtlanga, ukuze iNkosi ibonise amandla ayo kubo abeeNtlanga, ngenxa yokuba iya kwaliwa ngamaYuda, okanye, yindlu kaSirayeli.

18 Ngako oko, ubawo wethu akathethanga ngembewu yethu kuphela, kodwa kanjalo nangayo yonke indlu kaSirayeli, ebhekisa kumnqophiso ofanele ukuba uzaliseke ngemihla yokugqibela; umnqophiso lowo iNkosi yawenza kubawo wethu uAbraham, isithi: Kuyo imbewu yakho ziya kusikeleleka zonke izalamane zomhlaba.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndithethe kakhulu nabo ngokunxulumene nezi zinto; ewe, ndathetha nabo ngokunxulumene nokubuyiselwa kwamaYuda ngemihla yokugqibela.

20 Kwaye ndabalisa amazwi kaIsaya, awathethayo ngokunxulumene nokubuyiselwa kwamaYuda, okanye indlu kaSirayeli; kwaye emva kokuba ebuyiselwe awasayi kube baphinde ababhidaniswe, engasayi kuphinda asasazwe kwakhona. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndithethe amazwi amaninzi kubantakwethu, baza baxola kwaye baye bazithoba phambi kweNkosi.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baphinda bathethe nam kwakhona, besithi: Yintoni intsingiselo yale nto awathi ubawo wayibona ephupheni? Yintoni intsingiselo yomthi athe wawubona?

22 Ndaza ndathi kubo: Yayimele umthi wobomi.

23 Baza bathi kum: Yintoni intsingiselo yentonga yesinyithi awathi wayibona ubawo wethu, eyayikhokelela emthini?

24 Ndaza ndathi kubo yayililizwi likaThixo; kwaye abo baya kuthi balive ilizwi likaThixo, baze babambelele nkqi kulo, abasokuze batshabalale; kwanazo izihendo neentolo zomlilo zotshaba azingeze zibongamele ukuze bamfanyekiswe, bakhokelelwe kude entshabalalweni.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

25 Ngako oko, mna, Nifayi, ndaye ndabayala ukuba balinyamekele ilizwi leNkosi, ewe, ndaye ndabayala ngawo onke amandla omphefumlo wam, nangabo bonke ubuchule endandinabo, ukuba baze balinyamekele ilizwi likaThixo kwaye bakhumbule ukugcina imiyalelo yakhe ngamaxesha onke kuzo zonke izinto.

26 Baza bathi kum: Yintoni intsingiselo yomlambo wamanzi awathi wawubona ubawo wethu?

27 Ndaza ndathi kubo amanzi athi wawabona ubawo yayibubunyhuku-nyhuku; kwaye kangangohlobo eyayigutyungelwe ngayo ingqondo yakhe zezinye izinto akazange abe nokububona ubunyhuku-nyhuku bamanzi.

28 Ndaza ndathi kubo yayingumsantsa owoyikekayo, owawohlule abakhohlakeleyo kumthi wobomi, kananjalo kubo abangcwele bakaThixo.

29 Ndaza ndathi kubo yayimele esa sihogo soyikekayo, eso yathi ingelosi kum sasilungiselelwe abakhohlakeleyo.

30 Ndaza ndathi kubo ubawo wethu wabona kananjalo ukuba ubulungisa bukaThixo nabo buya bohlobo abakhohlakeleyo kwabangamalungisa; kwaye ukukhanya kwabo babufana nokukhanya kwedangatye lomlilo, elinyukela phezulu kuThixo ngonaphakade kanaphakade, kwaye alinaso isiphelo.

31 Baza bathi kum: Ingaba le nto ayithethi ukuthuthumba komzimba ngemihla yokulingwa, okanye ayithethi imo yokugqibela yomphefumlo emva kokufa komzimba wasenyameni, okanye ayithethi ngezinto ezizezasenyameni?

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndathi kubo yayimele izinto zombini ezasenyameni nezomoya; kuba umele ufike umhla wokuba bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, ewe, kwa nayo imisebenzi eyayisenziwa ngumzimba wenyama ngemihla yabo yokulingwa.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

- 33 Ngako oko, ukuba bathe bafa besenkohlakalweni yabo kufuneka bakhutshelwe ngaphandle kanjalo, ngokwezinto zasemoyeni, eziphathelele ebulungiseni; ngako oko, kufanele baziswe ukuze beme phambi koThixo, ukuze bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo; kwaye ukuba imisebenzi yabo ibe ibubunyhuku-nyhuku bamele kukubanyhuku-nyhuku; kwaye ukuba banyhuku-nyhuku kumele ukuba abanako ukuhlala ebukumkani bukaThixo; ukuba kunjalo, ubukumkani bukaThixo bumele bubenyhuku-nyhuku kanjalo.
- 34 Kodwa qaphela, ndithi kuni, ubukumkani bukaThixo abukho nyhuku-nyhuku, kwaye akukho nanye into engacocekanga enakho ukungena ebukumkani bukaThixo; ngako oko kumele kubekho indawo yobunyhuku-nyhuku elungiselelwe loo nto inyhuku-nyhuku.
- 35 Kwaye ikhona indawo elungiselelweyo, ewe, kwasona eso sihogo soyikekayo esele ndithethile ngaso, kwaye umtyholi ngumlungisi waso; ngako oko imo yokugqibela yemiphefumlo yabantu kukuhlala ebukumkani bukaThixo, okanye kukukhutshelwa ngaphandle ngenxa yoba bulungisa ebendithethe ngabo.
- 36 Ngako oko, abakhohlakeleyo bayasuswa kumalungisa, kwaye kanjalo kulaa mthi wobomi, osiqhamo sawo sixabiseke kwaye siqweneleka ngakumbi ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye iziqhamo; ewe, kwaye sisesona sikhulu ngakumbi kuzo zonke iziphos zikaThixo. Kwaye ndathetha njalo ke kubantakwethu. Amen.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be cast out because of that justice of which I have spoken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the righteous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is most precious and most desirable above all other fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God. And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.



## 1 Nifayi 16

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiphezile ukuthetha nabakhuluwa bam, qaphela bathi kum: Usazise izinto ezinzima, ngaphezulu kunokuba sinako ukuzithwala.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndathi kubo ndandisazi ukuba ndathetha izinto ezinzima ngokuchasene nabakhohlakeleyo, ngokunxulumene nenyano; kwaye ndibonisa ubulungisa kwabo bangamalungisa, kwaye ndangqina okokuba bamele ukuba baphakanyiswe ngomhla wokugqibela; ngako oko, abanetyala bayibona inyaniso inzima, kuba ibasika kanye embindini.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku bantakwethu, ukuba beningamalungisa kwaye nivuma ukuyiva inyaniso, kwaye niyinyamekele, ukuze nihambe nithe tye phambi koThixo, ke beningayi kumbombozela ngenxa yenyano, nithi: Uthetha izinto ezinzima ngokuchasene nathi.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndaye ndabayala abantakwethu, ngayo yonke inkuthalo, ukuba bayigcine imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bazithoba phambi kweNkosi; kangankokuba ndaba novuyo kwaye nethemba elikhulu ngabo, lokokuba babeya kuhamba ezindleleni zobulungisa.
- 6 Ngoku, zonke ezi zinto zathethwa kwaye zenziwa ngelixa ubawo wayehleli ententeni kwintlambo awayibiza iLemuweli.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathabatha enye yeentombi zikaIshmayeli ukuba ibe ngumfazi; kanjalo, nabantakwethu bathabatha kwiintombi zikaIshmayeli ukuze zibe ngabafazi; kwaye noZorami wathabatha intombi enkulu kaIshmayeli ukuba ibe ngumfazi.
- 8 Kwaye njalo ubawo wayizalisekisa imiyalelo yeNkosi ebe imnike yona. Kananjalo, mna, Nifayi, ndandisikelewe yiNkosi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lathetha nobawo ngobusuku, laza lamyalela ukuba ngengomso athabathe uhambo lwakhe ukusinga entlango.

## 1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekubeni ubawo evukile ngentsasa, waza wabhaka phambili kumnyango wentente, ngokumangala okukhulu abone ibhola engqukuva ekwenziwa kunqabileyo iphezu komhlaba; kwaye yayiyeyobhedu olungcwengileyo. Kwaye ngaphakathi kwebhola kwaye kukho iintonga zokuluka ezimbini; kwaye enye yayolathe kwicala emasihambe ngalo ukusinga entlango.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sihlanganise ndawonye nayiphina into esasimele ukuyithwala ukusinga entlango, kwaye yonke imiphako yethu eyayisele, esaye siyiniwe yiNkosi; saza sathabatha imbewu yazo zonke iintlobo esaye sinakho ukuzithwala ukusinga entlango.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siye sizithabathe iintente zethu size sihambe ukusinga entlango, sinqumla umlambo iLeymeni.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sahamba kangangesithuba seentsuku ezine, phantse ngendlela yasemzantsi-mzantsi-mpuma, size siphinde sizigxumeke iintente zethu kwakhona; saza sayibiza indawo ngegama eliyiShaza.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba size sithabathe iintolo nezaphetha zethu, size sabheka phambili ukusinga entlango ukuya kubulalela iintsapho zethu ukutya; kwaye emva kokuba sibulalele iintsapho zethu ukutya sabuyela kwakhona kwiintsapho zethu entlango, kwindawo eyiShaza. Kwaye saphinda sabheka phambili entlango, silandela kwa indlela enye, sihamba kwezona ndawo zichume ngakumbi zasentlango, ezaye zikwimida ekufuphi noLwandle oluBomvu.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siye sahamba kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi, sibulala ukutya endleleni, ngeentolo nangezaphetha zethu nangamatye nangezilingi zethu.

16 Kwaye siye salandela indlela esiyalathiswa yibhola, eyasikhokelela kwezona ndawo zichume ngakumbi entlango.

17 Kwaye emva kokuba sihambe kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi, sazixumeke iintente zethu kangangethutyana, ukuze sibenakho ukuziphumza kwakhona kwaye sifumanele neentsapho zethu ukutya.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Nifayi, ndabheke phambili ukuya kubulala ukutya, qaphela, ndaye ndasaphula isaphetha sam, esasenziwe ngentsimbi engcwengileyo; kwaye emva kokuba ndisaphule isaphetha sam, qaphela, abantakwethu baba nomsindo kum ngenxa yokuphulukana nesaphetha sam, kuba asizange sifumane kutya.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sabuyela kwiintsapho zethu ngaphandle kokutya, kwaye babediniwe kakhulu, ngenxa yohambo lwabo, babebulaleke kakhulu ngenxa yokulambela ukutya.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLeymeni noLemuweli noonyana bakaIshmayeli baqalisa ukumbombozela ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yeembulaleko zabo neenkxwaleko entlango; kananjalo ubawo waqalisa ukumbombozela ngakuyo iNkosi uThixo wakhe; ewe, kwaye bonke babelusizi ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba bade bambombozela ngakuyo iNkosi.

21 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndibandezekile nabantakwethu ngenxa yokuphulukana nesaphetha sam, kwaye nezabo izaphetha ziphelelwe yimitsi, kwaye kwaqalisa ukuba nzima ngokugqithisileyo, ewe, kangangokuba asizange sibenako ukufumana ukutya.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndithethe kakhulu nabantakwethu, ngenxa yokuba bazenza lukhuni iintliziyi zabo kwakhona, kangangokuba bade bakhalaza ngakuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndithi ndenze isaphetha ngomthi, netolo ngentonga eyolulekileyo; ngako oko, ndaye ndazixhobisa ngesaphetha notolo, nesilingi namatye. Ndaza ndathi kubawo: Ndiye ngaphi ukuya kufuna ukutya?

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye abuze eNkosini, kuba babeye bazithoba ngenxa yamazwi am; kuba ndathetha izinto ezininzi kubo ngamandla omphefumlo wam.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuye ubawo; waza wohlwaywa kunene ngenxa yokumbombozela kwakhe ngakuyo iNkosi, kangangokuba wathotyelwa ezantsi enzulwini yosizi.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lathi kuye: Khangela kuyo ibhola, uze ubone izinto ezibhaliweyo.
- 27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba esakuba ubawo ezibonile izinto ezo ezazibhaliwe kuyo ibhola, waba noloyiko waza wangcangcazela ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye nabantakwethu kanjalo noonyana bakaIshmayeli nabafazi bethu.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndaziqaphela izalathisi ezazikuyo ibhola, ukuba zithi zisebenze ngokokholo kwaye nangenyameko nangenkuthalo esasiyinikela kuzo.
- 29 Kwaye kwakubhaliwe kuzo kanjalo umbhalo omtsha, owawucacile ukuze siwufunde, owasinika ukuqonda ngokunxulumene neendlela zeNkosi; kwaye yayibhalwa kwaye iguqulwe amaxesha ngamaxesha, ngokokholo nenkuthalo esasiyinikela kuzo. Kwaye njalo siyabona ukuba ngeendlela ezincinane iNkosi inokuzisa izinto ezinkulu.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathi ndaya phambili ndenyukela kweyona ndawo iphezulu yentaba, ngokwezalathiso ezazinikiwe kuyo ibhola.
- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabulala izilo zasendle, kangangokuba ndaye ndafumana ukutya kweentsapho zethu.
- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabuyela ezintentsi zethu, ndithwele izilo ezo endandizibulele; kwaye ngoku bakubona ukuba ndikufumene ukutya, olunjani ukuba lukhulu uvuyo lwabo! Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bazithoba phambi kweNkosi, baza banikela imibulelo kuyo.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye saphinda sathabatha uhambo lwethu, sihamba phantse ngala ndlela yasekuqaleni; kwaye emva kokuba sihambe kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi saye sazixumeke iintentsi zethu kwakhona, ukuze sihlale okwethutya.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uIshmayeli wafa, waza wangcwatywa kwindawo eyayibizwa ngokuba yiNahom.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iintombi zikaIshmayeli zazila zababuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yokulahlekelwa nguyise wazo, nangenxa yeenkxwaleko zabo entlango; baze bambombozela ngakuye ubawo, kuba wayebakhuphe kwilizwe laseYerusalem, besithi: Ubawo wethu ufile; ewe, kwaye sibhadule kakhulu entlango, kwaye sinyamezele iinkxwaleko ezininzi, indlala, unxano, nokudinwa; kwaye emva kwazo zonke ezi mbandezelo kufuneka sitshabalale entlango yindlala.
- 36 Baye bambombozela njalo ngakuye ubawo, kananjalo nangakum; kwaye babenqwenela ukubuyela kwakhona eYerusalem.
- 37 Waza uLeymeni wathi kuLemuweli nakubo oonyana bakaIshmayeli: Qaphelani, masimbulale ubawo wethu, kananjalo nomninawa wethu uNifayi, ozithabathele kuye ukuba abe ngumlawuli wethu notitshala wethu, thina singabakhuluwa bakhe.
- 38 Ngoku, uthi iNkosi ithethe naye, kananjalo iingelosi ziye zamlungiselela. Kodwa qaphelani, siyazi ukuba uyasixokisa; kwaye usixelela ezi zinto, kwaye wenza izinto ezininzi ngobuqhetseba bobuqhinga bakhe, ukuze alahlekise amehlo ethu, ecinga, mhlawumbi, angasikhokelela kude kwintlango engaqhelekanga; aze emva kokuba esikhokelele kude, acinge ukuzenza ukumkani nomlawuli phezu kwethu, ukuze enze ngathi ngokwentando nolonwabo lwakhe. Kwaye emva kwale ndlela wathi umntakwethu uLeymeni wazivuselela emsindweni iintliziyo zabo.
- 39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi ibe nathi, ewe kwanalo ilizwi leNkosi leza kwaye lathetha amazwi amaninzi kubo, kwaye labohlwaya ngokugqithisileyo; kwaye emva kokuba bohlayiwe lilizwi leNkosi bawuthothisa umsindo wabo, baza baguquka kwizono zabo, kangangokuba iNkosi yasisikelela kwakhona ngokutya, ukuze singatshabalali.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

## 1 Nifayi 17

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siphinde kwakhona sathabatha uhambo lwethu entlango; kwaye sathi sahamba phantse ngasempuma ukusuka kwelo lixa ukuya phambili. Kwaye sathi sahamba saza sadubada kwiimbandezelo ezininzi entlango; kwaye amakhosikazi ethu athi azala abantwana entlango.
- 2 Kwaye zazibalasele iintsikelelo zeNkosi phezu kwethu, kuba nangona sasiphila ngenyama ekrwada entlango, amakhosikazi ethu aba namasi okuncancisa abantwana bawo amaninzi, kwaye babomelele, ewe, kangangokude bafane namadoda; kwaye aqalisa ukulunyamezela uhambo lwawo ngaphandle kokumbombozela.
- 3 Kwaye njalo siyabona ukuba imiyalelo kaThixo kufuneka izalisekile. Kwaye ukuba abantwana babantu bathi bayigcine imiyalelo kaThixo uyabondla, kwaye abomeleze, kwaye ababonelele ngendlela abanokuthi ngayo bayiphumeze into leyo abebayalele yona; ngako oko, waye wasibonelela ngeendlela zokuphila ngelixa esathi saphambukela entlango.
- 4 Kwaye sathi saphambukela kangangethuba leminyaka emininzi, ewe, kwanayo iminyaka esibhozo entlango.
- 5 Kwaye saye safika kwilizwe esathi salibiza ngokuba yiNdyebo, ngenxa yeziqhamo zalo ezininzi kwaye kanjalo nobusi basandle; kwaye zonke ezi zinto zalungiselelwa yiNkosi ukuze singatshabalali. Kwaye sabona ulwandle, esalubiza ngokuba yiIreyantumi, ethi, xa itolikwa, amanzi amaninzi.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba siye sigxumeke iintente zethu ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle; kwaye nangona sanyamezela iimbandezelo ezininzi nobunzima obukhulu, ewe, kangangokuba zininzi asinako ukuzibhala zonke, saba nokugcoba okugqithisileyo sakuba sifike elunxwemeni lolwandle; saza sayibiza indawo ngokuba yiNdyebo, ngenxa yeziqhamo zayo ezininzi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, ndikulo ilizwe eliyiNdyebo kangangethuba leentsuku ezininzi, ilizwi leNkosi lafika kum, lisithi: Phakama, kwaye uye entabeni. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaphakame kwaye ndenyukela entabeni, ndaza ndadanduluka eNkosini.

## 1 Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathetha nam, isithi: Uza kwakha inqanawe, ngohlobo endiya kuthi ndikubonise lona, ukuze ndibathwale abantu bakho ukuwela la manzi.
- 9 Ndaza ndathi: Nkosi, ndingaya ngaphi ukuze ndifumane isinyithi esikrwada ukuze ndisinyibilikise, ukuze ndenze izixhobo zokusebenza zokwakha inqanawe ngokohlobo othe wandibonisa lona?
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yandixelela apho mandiyekhona ukuze ndifumane isinyithi esikrwada, ukuze ndenze izixhobo zokusebenza.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiyenzenze imfutho yokuvuthela umlilo, ngezikhumba zezilo kwaye emva kokuba ndenze imfutho, ukuze ndibe nento yokuvuthela umlilo, ndayendangqubanisa amatye amabini kunye ukuze ndenze umlilo.
- 12 Kuba iNkosi kude kube ngoku ibingekasivumeli ukuba sibase imililo, njengoko sasihamba entlango; kuba yathi: Ndiya kukwenza ukutya kwenu kube mnandi, ukuze ningakupheki;
- 13 Kwaye kanjalo ndiya kuba kukukhanya kwenu entlango; kwaye ndiya kuwulungisa umendo phambi kwenu, ukuba nithe nayigcina imiyalelo yam; ngako oko, kangankokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kukhokelelwa ngakulo ilizwe lesithembiso; kwaye niya kuyazi ukuba nikhokelwe ndim.
- 14 Ewe, kwaye iNkosi yatsho kanjalo ukuba: Emva kokuba nifikile kulo ilizwe lesithembiso, niya kuyazi ukuba mna, Nkosi, ndinguThixo; kwaye nokokuba mna, iNkosi, ndanikhupha entshabalalweni; ewe, okokuba ndanikhupha kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem.
- 15 Ngako oko, mna, Nifayi, ndazama ngamandla ukuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi, ndaza ndabayala abantakwethu ekunyanisekeni nasenkuthalweni.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiye ndazenza izixhobo zokusebenza ngesinyithi esikrwada endathi ndasinyibilikisa ukusisusa eliweni.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we should make much fire, as we journeyed in the wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land; and ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have arrived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the commandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore which I did molten out of the rock.

- 17 Kwaye bathi abantakwethu bakubona ukuba ndandisele ndiza kwakha inqanawe, baqalisa ukumbombozela ngakum, besithi: Umninawa wethu usisiyatha, kuba ucinga ukuba angakha inqanawe; ewe, kwaye ucinga kanjalo ukuba angawawela la manzi makhulu.
- 18 Baya benjenjalo abakhuluwa bam ukukhalaza ngakum, kwaye babenqwenela nokuba bangasebenzi, kuba babengakholelwa ukuba ndingayakha inqanawe; babengakholewa nokuba ndiyalelwe yiNkosi.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndibelusizi ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yokuqaddeka keentliziyo zabo; kwaye ngoku bakubona ukuba ndiqalisa ukubalusizi baba nolonwabo ezintliziweni zabo, kangangokuba bandivuyela, besithi: Besisazi ukuba ubungenakho ukwakha inqanawe, kuba besisazi okokuba ubungenayo intelekelelo; ngako oko, akunakho ukuwuphumeza umsebenzi omkhulu kangaka.
- 20 Kwaye ufana nobawo wethu, okhokelwa ziingcingane zobudenge bentliziyo yakhe; ewe, usikhokelele ukuba siphume elizweni laseYerusalem, size sibhadule entlango le minyaka mininzi; kwaye amakhosikazi ethu abulalekile, emakhulu kukukhulelwa; kwaye azele abantwana entlango kwaye anyamezela zonke izinto, ngaphandle nje kokufa; kwaye ngekwakulungile ukuba ayebhubhile ngaphambi kokuba aphume eYerusalem kunokuba anyamezele ezi mbandezelo.
- 21 Qaphela, le minyaka mininzi sibandezelekile entlango, ixesha elo engesasonwabele izinto zethu nelizwe lelifa lethu; ewe, kwaye ngesasonwabile.
- 22 Kwaye siyazi ukuba abantu ababekwilizwe laseYerusalem babengabantu abangamalungisa; kuba babeyigcina imithetho nezigwebo zeNkosi, nayo yonke imiyalelo yayo, ngokwemithetho kaMoses; ngako oko, siyazi ukuba bangabantu abangamalungisa; kwaye ubawo wethu uye wabagweba, waza wasikhokelela kude ngenxa yokuba siye sawamamela amazwi akhe; ewe, nomninawa wethu ufana naye. Kwaye emva kolu hlobo lwentetho abantakwethu bambombozela baza basikhalazela.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to murmur against me, saying: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me, and were desirous that they might not labor, for they did not believe that I could build a ship; neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.



23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathetha nabo, ndisithi: Niyakholelwa okokuba oobawo bethu, ababengabantwana bakaSirayeli, ngebabekhokelwe ukuphuma ezandleni zamaYiputa ukuba babengawamamelanga amazwi eNkosi?

24 Ewe, niyacinga ukuba ngebabekhokelwe ukuphuma ebukhobokeni, ukuba iNkosi yayingayalelanga uMoses ukuba abakhokele baphume ebukhobokeni?

25 Ngoku niyazi ukuba abantwana bakaSirayeli babesebukhobokeni; kwaye niyazi ukuba babethwaliswe imisebenzi, eyayibuhlungu ukuyinyamezela; ngako oko, niyazi ukuba kufanele ukuba kuyinto elungileleyo kubo, ukuba bakhutshwe baphume ebukhobokeni.

26 Ngoku niyazi ukuba uMoses wayeyalelwe yiNkosi ukwenza loo msebenzi mkhulu kakhulu; kwaye niyazi ukuba ngelizwi lakhe amanzi oLwandle oluBomvu ohluleka ngapha nangapha, kwaye bawelela emhlabeni owomileyo.

27 Kodwa niyazi ukuba amaYiputa ayeliselwa kuLwandle oluBomvu, awayeyimikhosi kaFaro.

28 Kwaye niyazi kanjalo ukuba babesondliwa ngemana entlanga.

29 Ewe, kwaye niyazi kanjalo ukuba uMoses, ngelizwi lakhe ngokwamandla kaThixo awaye ekuye, wabetha iliwa, kwaza kwaphuma kulo amanzi, ukuze abantwana bakaSirayeli baphelise unxano.

30 Kwaye nangona babengamelani nokukhokelwa, iNkosi uThixo wabo, uMkhululi wabo, ehamba phambi kwabo, ebakhokela emini kwaye ebakhanyisela ngobusuku, kwaye ebenzela zonke izinto ekwakuyimfuneko ukuba abantu bazifumane, baziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo kwaye bazimfamekisa iingqondo zabo, kwaye bamenyelisa uMoses noThixo oyinene nophilayo.

31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokwelizwi layo yaye yabatshabalalisa; kwaye njengokwelizwi layo yaye yabakhokela; kwaye njengokwelizwi layo yaye yabenzela zonke izinto; kwaye akuzange kubekho nanye into eyenziwayo ingenziwanga ngelizwi layo.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

32 Kwaye emva kokuba bewuwelile umlambo iYordan yabenza banamandlakazi kude kuye ekukhupheleni ngaphandle abantwana belizwe, ewe, ekubasazeleni kwintshabalalo.

33 Kwaye ngoku, nicinga ukuba abantwana beli lizwe, ababekulo ilizwe lesithembiso, abakhutshelwa ngaphandle ngoobawo bethu, nicinga ukuba babengamalungisa? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi.

34 Nicinga ukuba oobawo bethu ngebabonyuliwe ngaphezu kwabo ukuba babe ngamalungisa? Ndithi kuni, Hayi.

35 Qaphelani, iNkosi inyama iyibalela ntweni nye; lowo ulilungisa uyathandwa nguThixo. Kodwa qaphela, aba bantu balikhanyela lonke ilizwi likaThixo, kwaye babebuvuthelwe ubugwenxa; kwaye nengqumbo kaThixo ephelileyo yayiphezu kwabo; kwaye iNkosi yaliqalekisa ilizwe ngokuchasene nabo, yaza yalisikelelela oobawo bethu; ewe, yaliqalekisa ngokuchasene nabo ukuya entshabalalweni yabo, yaza yalisikelelela oobawo bethu kude kuye ekuzuzeni kwabo amandla phezu kwalo.

36 Qaphelani, iNkosi yadala umhlaba ukuze umiwe; yaza yadala abantwana bayo ukuze bawubange.

37 Kwaye uphakamisa isizwe esingamalungisa, aze atshabalalise izizwe zabakhohlakeleyo.

38 Kwaye ukhokelela amalungisa kumazwe axabisekileyo, kwaye abakhohlakeleyo uyabathabalalisa, aze aliqalekise ilizwe kubo ngenxa yabo.

39 Ulawula ephezulu emazulwini, kuba liyitrone yakhe, kwaye lo mhlaba usisihlalo seenyawo zakhe.

40 Kwaye uyabathanda abo bamamkelayo ukuze abe nguThixo wabo. Qaphelani, wabathanda oobawo bethu, waza wanqophisana nabo, ewe, kwanaye uAbraham, uIsake, noYakobi; waza wayikhumbula iminqophiso awayenzayo; ngako oko, wabaphuthuma kulo ilizwe laseYiputa.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

- 41 Kwaye waye waboluleka entlango ngentonga yakhe; kuba bazenza lukhuni iintliziyo zabo, njengoko nani nizenzile; yaza iNkosi yaboluleka ngenxa yobugwenxa babo. Yathumela iinyoka ezitshisayo eziphaphazelayo phakathi kwabo; yaza emva kokuba belunyiwe yalungiselela indlela yokuba maze baphiliswe; kwaye umsebenzi ekwakufuneka bewenzile yayikukujonga; kwaye ngenxa yokungabi nabunzima bendlela, okanye ukuba lula kwayo, baba baninzi abatshabalalayo.
- 42 Baye baziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo amaxesha ngamaxesha, kwaye bamenyelisa uMoses, kwaye kanjalo noThixo; nangona kunjalo, niyazi ukuba bakhokelwa ngamandla akhe angenamlinganiselo ukuya kulo ilizwe lesithembiso.
- 43 Kwaye ngoku, emva kwazo zonke ezi zinto, lifikile ilixa apho bathe baba nenkohlakalo, ewe, phantse baba bavuthiwe; kwaye andazi kodwa banokuba ngale mihla bakufuphi nokutshatyalaliswa; kuba ndiyazi ukuba umhla umele ngokwenene ufike wokuba batshatyalaliswe, ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa, abaya kukhokelelwa ekuthinjweni.
- 44 Ngako oko, iNkosi iyalele ubawo ukuba emke asinge entlango; kananjalo amaYuda ayefuna ukuthabatha ubomi bakhe; ewe, nani kanjalo nifune ukuthabatha ubomi bakhe, ngako oko, ningababulali ezintliziweni zenu kwaye nifana nabo.
- 45 Niyakhawuleza ukwenza ubugwenxa kodwa nihamba kade ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wenu. Niyibonile ingelosi, kwaye yathetha nani; ewe, nilivile ilizwi layo amaxesha ngamaxesha; kwaye ithethe nani ngezwi elincinane, elizolileyo kodwa nibe ningaphaya kokuvakalelwa, ukuze ningabi namvakalelo ngamazwi ayo; ngako oko, ithethe nani njengezwi lendudumo, elathi lawenza umhlaba ukuba uzama-zame ngokungathi ungohlukana phakathi.
- 46 Kwaye niyazi kanjalo ukuba ngamandla elizwi lakhe elinamandla onke angawenza umhlaba udlule; ewe, kwaye niyazi ukuba ngelizwi lakhe angazenza iindawo ezirhabaxa zibe mpuluswa, zize iindawo ezimpuluswa ziqhekeke. Owu, ke, kutheni, ukuba nibe lukhuni kangaka ezintliziweni zenu?

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simple-ness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

- 47 Qaphelani, umphefumlo wam ukrazukile kukuthuthunjelwa ngenxa yenu, kwaye nentliziyo yam ixhwalekile; ndinoloyiko hleze niphoselwe ngaphandle ngonaphakade. Qaphelani, ndizaliswe nguMoya kaThixo, kangangokuba umzimba wam awunamandla.
- 48 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ndakube ndithethe la mazwi babanomsindo kum, baza banqwenela ukundiphosa enzulwini yolwandle; kwaye bathi xa besiza phambili ukuze babeke izandla zabo kum ndaye ndathetha nabo, ndisithi: Egameni likaThixo uSomandla, ndiniyalela okokuba ningandichukumisi, kuba ndizaliswe ngamandla kaThixo, ngokude adle inyama yam; kwaye nabani na oya kuthi abeke isandla sakhe phezu kwam uya kubuna nanjengengcongolo eyomileyo; kwaye akayi kuba ntoyanto phambi kwamandla kaThixo, kuba uThixo uya kumbetha.
- 49 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathi kubo maze bangaphindi bambombozele ngokuchasene noyise wabo; bangaphindi bandibandeze ukusebenza kwabo, kuba uThixo undiyalele ukuba ndakhe inqanawa.
- 50 Ndaza ndathi kubo: Ukuba uThixo ebendiyalele ukwenza zonke izinto bendinako ukuzenza. Ukuba unokundiyalele ukuba ndithi kula manzi, yiba ngumhlaba, aya kuba ngumhlaba; kwaye ukuba ndingatsho, ingenzeka.
- 51 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba iNkosi inamandla amakhulu kangaka, kwaye yenza imimangaliso emininzi kangaka phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kungani ukuba ingabinakho ukundiyalele mna, ukuba ndakhe inqanawe?
- 52 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndathetha izinto ezininzi kubantakwethu, kangangokuba bathobeka kwaye abazange babenako nokuba nambambano nam, abazange balinge nokubeka izandla zabo phezu kwam nokundichukumisa oku nangeminwe yabo, kangangeentsuku ezininzi. Ngoku babengenako nokulinga ukwenza oku hleze babune phambi kwam, wawunjalo ke ukuba namandla uMoya kaThixo; kwaye wenza njalo kubo.

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

- 53 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathi kum: Yolulela isandla sakho kwakhona kubantakwenu, kwaye abasayi kubuna phambi kwakho, kodwa ndiya kubothusa, itsho iNkosi, kwaye oku ndiya kukwenza, ukuze bazi ukuba ndiyiNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 54 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba ndasolulela isandla sam kubantakwethu, kwaye abazange babune phambi kwam; kodwa iNkosi yathi yabagungqisa, nanjengokwelizwi ibe ilithethile.
- 55 Kwaye ngoku, bathi: Siyazi ngokwenene ukuba iNkosi inawe, kuba siyazi ukuba ngamandla eNkosi athe asigungqisa. Kwaye bawa phantsi phambi kwam, kwaye babelungele ukundinqula, kodwa andibavumelanga, ndisithi: Ndingumntakwenu, ewe, kwanaye umninawa wenu; ngako oko, nqulani iNkosi uThixo wenu, kwaye nibeke uyihlo nonyoko, ukuze imihla yenu yolulwe kwilizwe eya kuthi iNkosi uThixo wenu ininike lona.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

## 1 Nifayi 18

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bayinqule iNkosi, kwaye bahamba nam; saza sasebenza ngemithi yohlobo olunqabileyo. Yaza iNkosi yandibonisa amaxesha ngamaxesha uhlobo emandiyisebenze ngalo imithi yenqanawa.
- 2 Ngoku mna, Nifayi, andizange ndisebenze ngemithi ukulandela uhlobo olufundwe ngabantu, ndingazange ndiyakhe inqanawa ngokohlobo lwabantu; kodwa ndayakha ngokohlobo eyathi iNkosi yandibonisa lona; ngako oko, yayingelulo uhlobo lwabantu.
- 3 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndaya entabeni rhoqo, kwaye ndathi ndathandaza rhoqo eNkosini; ngaso eso sizathu iNkosi yathi yandibonisa izinto ezinkulu.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ndiyigqibile inqanawa, ngokwelizwi leNkosi, abakhuluwa bam bayiqaphele ukuba ilungile, kwaye nokusetyenzwa kwayo kwakucwenge ngokugqithisileyo; ngako oko bathi bazithoba kwakhona phambi kweNkosi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lafika kubawo, okokuba masiphakame kwaye sehle siye enqanaweni.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso, emva kokuba silungise zonke izinto, iziqhamo ezininzi nenyama yasentlango, nobusi ngobuninzi, nemiphako njengokohlobo olo iNkosi yaye isiyalele ngalo, saye sehla sangena enqanaweni, nemithwalo yethu yonke neembewu zethu, nayo nantoni na esasize nayo, wonke umntu ngokobudala bakhe; ngako oko, sathi sonke sehla sangena enqanaweni, kunye nabafazi bethu nabantwana bethu.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku, ubawo wayezele oonyana ababini entlango; omdala wayebizwa ngokuba nguYakobi noYosefu omncinane.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba sonke siye sehla ukungena enqanaweni, kwaye sayithabatha nemiphako yethu nezinto ebesiyalelwe ngazo, saza sabheka phambili elwandle saza saqhutyelwa phambili ngumoya ukuya kwilizwe lesithembiso.

## 1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

9 Kwaye emva kokuba siqhutyelwe phambili ngumoya kangangeentsuku ezininzi, qaphelani, abantakwethu kunye noonyana bakaIshmayeli kwaye kanjalo nabafazi babo baqalisa ukuzonwabisa, kangangokuba baqalisa ukudanisa, baza bavuma iingoma, kwaye bethetha ngobukrwada obukhulu, ewe, bade balibala ukuba ngawaphi na amandla abaziswe ngawo kule ndawo, ewe, banyukela phezu ngobukrwada obugqithisileyo.

10 Ndaza mna, Nifayi ndaqalisa ukoyika ngokugqithisileyo hleze iNkosi ibe nomsindo kuthi, ize isibethe ngenxa yobugwenxa bethu, ukuze siginywe kubunzulu bolwandle; ngako oko, mna, Nifayi, ndaqalisa ukuthetha nabo ngokuzola okukhulu, kodwa qaphela babanomsindo kum, besithi: Asinako ukuba umninawa wethu abe ngumlawuli phezu kwethu.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLeymeni noLemuweli bandithabathe baze bandibophelele ngeentambo, kwaye bandiphatha ngoburhabaxa obukhulu; nangona kunjalo, iNkosi yayivumela ukuze ibonise amandla ayo, ukuze kuzaliseke amazwi ayo eyawathethayo ngokunxulumene nabakhohlakeleyo.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba bendibophelele ndade andakwazi nokushukuma, isalatha-mbombo, esasilungiswe yiNkosi, sayeka ukusebenza.

13 Ngako oko, babengazi apho mabayiqhubele ngakhona inqanawa, kangangokuba kwavuka uqhwithela olukhulu, ewe, isaqhwithi esikhulu kwaye nesoyikekayo, saza saqhutyelwa ngasemva phezu kwamanzi kangangethuba leentsuku ezintathu; baza baqalisa ukoyika ngokugqithisileyo hleze beyele elwandle; nangona kunjalo abazange bandikhulule.

14 Kwaza ngosuku lwesine, siqhutyelwa ngasemva, uqhwithela lwaqalisa ukuba ndlongo-ndlongo ngokugqithisileyo.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sasimalunga nokuginywa enzulwini yolwandle. Kwaye emva kokuba siqhutyelwe ngasemva phezu kwamanzi kanganethuba leentsuku ezine, abakhuluwa bam baqalisa ukubona ukuba izigwebo zikaThixo zaziphezu kwabo, nokuba baza kutshabalala ngaphandle kokuba bangaguquka kubo ubugwenxa babo; ngako oko, beza kum, bazikhulula izibopho ezazisezihlahleni zam, kwaye qaphela zazidumbile ngokugqithisileyo; kananjalo amaqatha am ayedumbe kakhulu, kwaye zinkulu iintlungu zawo.

16 Nangona kunjalo, ndaye ndakhangelela kuThixo wam, ndaza ndamdumisa ebudeni bemini yonke; kwaye andizange ndimbombozele ngakuyo iNkosi ngenxa yeembandezelo zam.

17 Ngoku ubawo, uLihayi, wayethethe izinto ezininzi kubo, kananjalo nakoonyana bakaIshmayeli; kodwa, qaphela, bathi bafutha izisongelo ezininzi ngakuye nabanina othi andithethelele; kwaye abazali bam bebethwa bubudala ngeminyaka, kwaye beve ubuhlungu nokubindeka ngenxa yabantwana babo, baye bawiswa phantsi, ewe, naphezu koomandlalo babo bokugula.

18 Ngenxa yentlungu nosizi olukhulu, nobugwenxa babantakwethu, babesebeziswe kufuphi nasekuthatyathweni baphume ngeli lixa ukuya kuhlangu noThixo wabo; ewe, iinwele zabo ezingwevu zazisele ziza kuthotyelwa phantsi zilale ezantsi eluthulini; ewe, babekufuphi nasekuphoselweni ngosizi engcwabeni lamanzi.

19 Kwaye uYakobi noYosefu kanjalo, beselula, besaswele ukondliwa kakhulu babekhathazekile ngenxa yeembandezelo zikanina; nomfazi wam kanjalo ngeenyembezi zakhe nemithandazo, nabantwana bam kanjalo, abazange bazithambise iintliziyo zabantakwethu ukuze babe nokundikhulula.

20 Kwaye kwakungekho nto ngaphandle kwamandla kaThixo, owaboyikisa ngentshabalalo, eyayinokuthambisa iintliziyo zabo; ngako oko, bakubona ukuba babesele beza kuginywa enzulwini yolwandle baguquka kwinto ababeyenzile, kangangokuba bandikhulula.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against anyone that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.



- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba bendikhulule, qaphela, ndasithabatha isolatha-mbombo, kwaye saye sasebenza ngokweminqweno yam. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndathandaza eNkosini; kwaye emva kokuba ndithandazile imimoya yapheza, kwaye noqhwithela lwaphela, kwaza kwabakho inzolo enkulu.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndayiqhuba inqanawa, ukuze sihambe kwakhona ukusingisa ngakwilizwe lesithembiso.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba sihambe ngenqanawe kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi saye safika kulo ilizwe lesithembiso; saza saya phambili kulo ilizwe, kwaye sathi sazigxumeka iintente zethu; saza salibiza ngokuba lilizwe lesithembiso.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye saqalisa ukulima umhlaba, saza saqalisa ukutyala iimbewu; ewe, saza sazifaka zonke iimbewu zethu emhlabeni, esaye size nazo ukusuka kwilizwe laseYerusalem. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaye ikhula yahluma ngokugqithisileyo; ngako oko, sasisikelelwe ngendyebo.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye safumanisa kulo ilizwe lesithembiso, njengoko sasihamba entlango, okokuba kwakukho izilo zazo zonke iintlobo ehlathini, kunye imazi yenkomo nenkunzi yenkomo, ne-esile nehashe, nebhokhwe, nebhokhwe yasendle, kwaye nazo zonke iintlobo zezilo zasendle, ezaye zinokusetyenziswa ngumntu. Kwaye saye safumana lonke uhlobo lwesinyithi esikrwada, kunye ezegolide, nezesilivere, nezekopolo.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

## 1 Nifayi 19

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi indiyalele, ngako oko ndaye ndenza amacwecwe esinyithi esikrwada ukuze ndikrole phezu kwawo imbali yabantu bam. Kwaye phezu kwamacwecwe endawenzayo ndaye ndakrola imbali kabawo, kwaye kanjalo neehambo zethu entlango, neziprofetho zikabawo; kwaye kanjalo nezininzi ezizezam iziprofetho ndizikrole phezu kwawo.
- 2 Kwaye ndandingazi ngeli lixa ndandiwenza ukuba ndiya kuyalelwa yiNkosi ukuba ndenze la macwecwe; ngako oko, imbali kabawo, nomlibo wooyise, nenxenye engakumbi yazo zonke iinkqubo zethu entlango zikrolwe phezu kwaloo macwecwe okuqala esele ndithethile ngawo; ngako oko, izinto ezenzekayo ngaphambi kokuba ndenze la macwecwe, zezenyaniso, ezikhankanywa ngakumbi phezu kwamacwecwe okuqala.
- 3 Kwaye emva kokuba ndenze la macwecwe ngokomyalelo, mna, Nifayi, ndafumana umyalelo wokuba ubufundisi neziprofetho, ezicace ngakumbi nenxenye yazo exabisekileyo, zimele zibhalwe phezu kwala macwecwe; nokokuba izinto ezazibhaliwe kufanele zigcinelwe ukufundisa imfundiso yabantu bam, abaya kulawula ilizwe, kanjalo nezinye iinjongo zobulumko, iinjongo ezo ezaziwa yiNkosi.
- 4 Ngako oko, ndaza mna, Nifayi, ndathi ndayenza imbali phezu kwamanye amacwecwe, anika ingxelo, okanye anika ingxelo engakumbi yeemfazwe neembambano neentshabalalo zabantu bam. Kwaye oku ndikwenzile, kwaye ndayalela abantu bam into amaze bayenze emva kokuba ndimkile; nokokuba la macwecwe amele ukuze anikezelwe ukwehla ukusuka kwesinye isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye, okanye ukusuka komnye umprofeti ukuya komnye, kude kube yeminye imiyalelo evela eNkosini.
- 5 Kwaye ingxelo yokwenza kwam la macwecwe iya kunikwa emva koku; kwaye ke, qaphela, ndiyaqhubeka ngokunxulumene noko besele ndikuthethile; kwaye oku ndikwenza ukuze izinto ezingcwele ngakumbi zibe nokugcinelwa ulwazi lwabantu bam.

## 1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Nangona kunjalo, andibhali nantoni na phezu kwamacwecwe ngaphandle kwaleyo ndicinga ukuba ingcwele. Kwaye ngoku, ukuba ndenza impazamo, nabo ngokwabo abakudala babephazama, ingengakuba ndiyazithethelela ngenxa yabanye abantu, kodwa ngenxa yobuthathaka obukum, ngokwasenyameni, ndiya kuzithethelela.

7 Kuba izinto abathi abanye abantu bazithabathe nje ngezinto zexabiso elikhulu, kunye enyameni nasemphefumleni, abanye bazithabatha njengento engento kwaye bazinyathele phantsi kweenyawo zabo. Ewe, kwanaye ngokwakhe uThixo kaSirayeli abantu bathi bamnyathela phantsi kweenyawo zabo; ndithi, bamnyathela phantsi kweenyawo zabo kodwa ndiza kuthetha ngamanye amazwi —bamthabatha njengento engento, kwaye abaliphulaphuli ilizwi leengcebiso zakhe.

8 Kwaye qaphelani uyeza, ngokwamazwi engelosi, ngamakhulu amathandathu ukusuka ngelixa ubawo wayishiyayo iYerusalem.

9 Kwaye ihlabathi, ngenxa yobugwenxa balo, liya kumgweba njengento engento, ngako oko lamtyakatya, kwaye wabandezeleka lilo; kwaye lambetha, kwaye wabandezeleka lilo. Ewe, lamtshicela, kwaye wabandezeleka lilo, ngenxa yenceba yakhe yothando nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe kubantwana babantu.

10 Kwaye uThixo woobawo bethu, abakhokelwayo ukuphuma eYiputa, baphuma ebukhobokeni, kunjalo belondolozwe entlango nguye, ewe, uThixo ka-Abraham, noIsake kwaye noThixo kaYakobi, wazinikezela, ngokwamazwi engelosi, njengomntu, ezandleni zabantu abakhohlakeleyo, ukuze aphakanyiswe, ngokwamazwi kaZenokhi, kwaye nokuba abethelelwe emnqamlezweni, ngokwamazwi kaNeyum, kwaye nokuba angcwatywe engcwabeni, ngokwamazwi kaZenoshe, awathi wawathetha ngokunxulumene neentsuku ezintathu zobumnyama, eziya kuba ngumqondiso onikiweyo ngokufa kwakhe kwabo baya kuba ngabemi kwiziqithi zolwandle, zinikelwe ngokukhethekileyo ngakumbi kwabo bangabendlu kaSirayeli.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

- 11 Kuba wathetha njalo ke umprofeti: INkosi uThixo ngokwenene iya kuyihambela yonke indlu kaSirayeli ngaloo mhla, abanye ngelizwi lakhe, ngenxa yobulungisa babo, baya kuba novuyo olukhulu nosindiso, kwaye abanye ngeedudumo nemibane yamandla akhe, ngesaqhwithi, ngomlilo, nangomsi, nangomphunga wobumnyama, nangokuvuleka komhlaba, nangeentaba eziya kunyuselwa phezulu.
- 12 Kwaye zonke ezi zinto ngokwenene ziya kufika, utsho umprofeti uZenoshe. Kwaye amawa omhlaba kumele ukuba akrazuke; kwaye ngenxa yeencwina zomhlaba, abaninzi ookumkani beziqithi zolwandle baya kubangelwa ngoMoya kaThixo, ukuba badanduluke bathi: UThixo wendalo ubandezelekile.
- 13 Kwaye ke abo baseYerusalem, utsho umprofeti, baya kuthuthunjiswa ngabo bonke abantu, ngenxa yokuba bebethelela emnqamlezweni uThixo kaSirayeli, baze bazijikela ecaleni iintliziyo zabo, bekhanyela imiqondiso nemimangaliso namandla nozuko lukaThixo kaSirayeli.
- 14 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba bezijikela ecaleni iintliziyo zabo, utsho umprofeti, kwaye bemcekisile oNgcwele kaSirayeli, baya kubhadula enyameni, baze batshabalale, baze babe ngumzekelo ombi nento yokuhlekisa, kwaye bathiywe phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe.
- 15 Nangona kunjalo, xa uthe wafika loo mhla, utsho umprofeti, xa beya kuthi bangabuyi bazijikele ecaleni iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene noNgcwele kaSirayeli, ngoko uya kuyikhumbula iminqophiso awathi wayenza nooyise.
- 16 Ewe, ngoko uya kuzikhumbula iziqithi zolwandle; ewe, kwaye bonke abantu abangabendlu kaSirayeli, ndiya kubahlanganisela ngaphakathi, itsho iNkosi, ngokwamazwi omprofeti uZenoshe, ukusuka kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba.
- 17 Ewe, kwaye wonke umhlaba uya kulubona usindiso lweNkosi, utsho umprofeti; sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi nabantu baya kusikeleleka.
- 18 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndibabhalele ezi zinto abantu bam, ukuze mhlawumbi ndibe nokubakhuthaza ekubeni bayikhumbule iNkosi uMkhululi wabo.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

- 19 Ngako oko, ndithetha nayo yonke indlu kaSirayeli, ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba babe nokuzifumana ezi zinto.
- 20 Kuba qaphela, ndineemvakalelo zokomoya, ezithi zindidube kangangokuba onke amalungu am abuthathaka, ngenxa yabo abo baseYerusalem; kuba ukuba iNkosi ibe ingenanceba, ngokuthi indibonise ngokunxulumene nabo, kwanjengoko yayenzile kubaprofeti bakudala, ndinge nditshabalele nam kanjalo.
- 21 Kwaye ngokwenene yababonisa abaprofeti bakudala zonke izinto ezinxulumene nabo; kananjalo yathi yababonisa nabaninzi ngokunxulumene nathi; ngako oko, bekufanele ukuba nathi sazi ngokunxulumene nabo kuba zibhaliwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu.
- 22 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndaye ndazifundisa ezi zinto kubo abakhuluwa bam; kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabafundela izinto ezininzi, ezaye zikroliwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu, ukuze bazi ngokunxulumene nezenzo zeNkosi kwamanye amazwe, phakathi kwabantu bakudala.
- 23 Kwaye ndaye ndabafundela izinto ezininzi ezaye zibhaliwe kuzo iincwadi zikaMoses; ukuze ndibe nokubathundeza ngokupheleleyo ukuze bakholelwe kuyo iNkosi uMkhululi wabo ndaye ndabafundela oko kwakubhaliwe ngumprofeti uIsaya; kuba ndazifanekisa zonke izibhalo kunye nathi, ukuze zibe luncedo nemfundiso kuthi.
- 24 Ngako oko ndathetha ngolu hlobo kubo, ndisithi: Waveni amazwi omprofeti, nina bayiyo intsalela yendlu kaSirayeli, isebe ebelithe laqetshulwa, waveni amazwi omprofeti, awayebhalelwe kuyo yonke indlu kaSirayeli, kwaye niwafanekise kunye nani, ukuze nibe nethemba kwakunye nabo bazalwana benu enathi naqetshulwa kubo; kuba wabhala ngale ndlela umprofeti.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

## 1 Nifayi 20

- 1 Phulaphulani kwaye nive oku, Owu ndlu kaYakobi, ababizwa ngegama likaSirayeli, kwaye nabathi beza ngaphambili bephuma kumanzi akwaYuda, okanye bephuma kumanzi obhaptizo, abafunga ngegama leNkosi, baze bamkhankanye uThixo kaSirayeli, kanti abangafungi nganyaniso nangabulungisa.
- 2 Nangona kunjalo, bazibiza ngokuba bangabesixeko esingcwele, kodwa abahlelanga bona kuye uThixo kaSirayeli, oyiNkosi yeMikhosi; ewe, iNkosi yeMikhosi ligama lakhe.
- 3 Qaphelani, ndizivakalisile izinto zangaphambili kwasekuqaleni; kwaye zaphuma zeza ngaphambili ngomlomo wam, kwaye ndazibonakalisa. Ndaye ndazibonakalisa ngesaquphe.
- 4 Kwaye ndazenza ngenxa yokuba ndandikwazi ukuba uneenkani, yaye intamo yakho ingumsipha wesinyithi, kwaye nebunzi lakho lilubhedu;
- 5 Kwaye ndivakalisile kuwe kwa ukusuka ekuqalekeni; ngaphambi kokuba kwenzeka ndakubonisa kuwe; kwaye ndakubonisa ngoloyiko lokuba hleze uthi—Isithixo sam sizenzile, kwaye umfanekiso wam oqingqiweyo, nomfanekiso wam onyityilikisiweyo ubayalele.
- 6 Ukubonile kwaye ukuvile konke oku; kwaye ke ingaba akusayi kukuvakalisa? Kwaye nokokuba ndikubonise izinto ezintsha ukususela kweli lixa, kwanazo izinto ezifihlakeleyo, kwaye wawufudula ungazazi.
- 7 Zidaliwe ngoku, kwaye zingasuki ekuqaleni, kwanangaphambi komhla owathi wangaziva zazivakalisiwe kuwe, hleze uthi—Qaphela bendizazi.
- 8 Ewe, kwaye akuzange uve; ewe, wawungazazanga; ewe, ukususela ngelo lixa indlebe yakho yayingavulekanga; kuba ndandisazi ukuba uya kuziphatha ngokungathembakali, kwaye wawubizwa ngokuba ungumoni kwasesizalweni.
- 9 Nangona kunjalo, ngenxa yegama lam ndiya kuwurhoxisa umsindo wam, kwaye ukuze ndibongwe ndiya kuzibamba ngakuwe, ukuze ndingakusikeli ngaphandle.
- 10 Kuba, qaphela, ndikucokisile, ndikonyule ezikweni lenkxwaleko.

## 1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

11 Ngenxa yam, ewe, ngenxa yam ndiya kukwenza oku, kuba andisayi kuyekela ukuba igama lam lingcoliswe, kwaye andisayi kunikezela uzuko lwam komnye.

12 Ndiphulaphule, Owu Yakobi, noSirayeli babiziweyo bam, kuba ndinguye; ndingowokuqala, kwaye ndingowokugqibela kanjalo.

13 Isandla sam sisibekile kanjalo isiseko somhlaba, kwaye isandla sam sokunene siwangxabalazile amazulu. Ndiyawabiza aze aphakame kunye.

14 Nonke nina, zihlanganiseni, nize nive; ngubani phakathi kwabo ozivakalisileyo ezi zinto kubo? Uthandiwe yena yiNkosi; ewe, kwaye iya kulizalisekisa ilizwi layo ethe yalivakalisa ngabo; kwaye uya kwenza intando yakhe ngeBhabhilon, kwaye ingalo yakhe iya kufikelela phezu kwamaKaledi.

15 Kanjalo, itsho iNkosi; mna Nkosi, ewe, ndithethile; ewe, ndimbizile ukuba avakalise, ndimzisile, kwaye uya kuyenza indlela yakhe iphumelele.

16 Yizani nina kufuphi nam; andithethanga emfihlakalweni; ukususela ekuqalekeni, ukusuka ngelixa eyathi yavakaliswa ndiyithethile; kwaye iNkosi uThixo, noMoya wayo, undithumile.

17 Kwaye itsho njalo iNkosi, uMkhululi wakho, oNgcwele kaSirayeli; ndimthumile, iNkosi uThixo wakho ekufundisa ukunceda, okukhokelela kuyo indlela ofanele ukuhamba ngayo, uyenzile.

18 Owu akwaba wawuyiphulaphule imiyalelo yam—njalo uxolo lwakho obeluya kuba njengomlambo, kwaye nobulungisa bakho bube njengamazaza olwandle.

19 Nembewu yakho kanjalo ibiya kuba njengentlabathi; inzala yombilini wakho ibe njengamahlalutye ayo; igama lakhe alifanelanga ukuba libe lasikelwa ngaphandle nakutshatyalaliswa phambi kwam.

20 Phumani ngaphandle kweBhabhilon, wabalekeni amaKaledi, ngelizwi lengoma vakalisani, nixele oku, nithethe kwisiphelo somhlaba; yithini: INkosi isikhulule isicaka sayo uYakobi.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

- 21 Kwaye abazange banxanwa; wabakhokelela  
ngaphandle kweentlango; wabenzela ukuba amanzi  
ampompoze ephuma eliweni; waliqhekeza iliwa  
kanjalo aze amanzi atsaza ukuphuma.
- 22 Kwaye nangona konke oku akwenzileyo,  
kwakunye nokungaphezulu akubikho luxolo itsho  
iNkosi, kwabo bakhohlakeleyo.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the  
deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock  
for them; he clave the rock also and the waters  
gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and  
greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto  
the wicked.



## 1 Nifayi 21

- 1 Kwaye kwakhona: Phulaphula, Owu wena ndlu kaSirayeli, nonke nina baqetshulweyo naza naqhutyelwa ngaphandle ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabelusi babantu bam; ewe, nonke nina baqetshulweyo, nasasazelwa kude, abangabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli. Mamelani, Owu ziqithi, mamelani kum, nize niphulaphule nina bantu abakude; iNkosi indibize kwasesizalweni; ilikhankanye kwasezibilinini zikama igama lam.
- 2 Kwaye uwenze umlomo wam wanjengekrele elibukhali; esithunzini sesandla sakhe undifihlile waza wandenza itolo elibengezelisiweyo; kumphongolo wakho undifihlile.
- 3 Waza wathi kum: Ungumkhonzi wam, Owu Sirayeli, endiya kuzukiswa ngaye.
- 4 Ndaza ndathi ke mna, ndisebenzele ilize, ndiwasebenzisele amandla am kokungento nangelize; ngokwenene isigwebo sam siseNkosini, kwaye nomsebenzi wam ukuye uThixo wam.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, yathi iNkosi—eyandibumba kwasesizalweni ukuze ndibe ngumkhonzi wayo, ukuze ndibuyisele uYakobi kuyo kwakhona—nokuba uSirayeli akakahlanganiswa, kodwa ndiya kuhlala ndizukile emehlweni eNkosi, kwaye uThixo wam uyakuba ngamandla am.
- 6 Waza wathi: Kuyinto elula ukuba ube ngumkhonzi wam ukuze uvuse izizwe zikaYakobi, uze ubuyisele intsalela kaSirayeli. Ndiya kukunikezela kanjalo ukuba ube kukukhanya kubo abeeNtlanga, ukuze ubelusindiso lwam kude kuye kwiziphelo zomhlaba.
- 7 Itsho njalo ke iNkosi, uMkhululi kaSirayeli, oNgcwele wakhe, kulowo abantu bamcekisayo, kulowo izizwe zimthiyileyo, kumkhonzi wabalawuli: OoKumkani baya kubona baze besuke beme, iinkosana kanjalo ziya kunqula, ngenxa yeNkosi enyanisekileyo.
- 8 Itsho njalo ke iNkosi: Ngexesha elamkelekileyo ndikuvile, Owu ziqithi zolwandle, kwaye ngomhla vosindiso ndikuncedisile; kwaye ndiya kukulondoloza, ndize ndikunike umkhonzi wam njengomnqophiso wabantu, ukumisela umhlaba, ukuze ubenze bawadle ilifa amanxiwa angamafa;

## 1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

- 9 Ukuze ubenokuthi kumabanjwa: Hambani nimke; kubo abo bahleli ebumnyameni: Zibonakaliseni. Baya kudla ezindleleni, kwaye namadlelo abo aya kuba kuzo zonke iindawo eziphakamileyo.
- 10 Abasayi kulamba bengasayi kunxanwa, nobushushu kwanelanga azisayi kubabetha; kuba lowo ube nenceba kubo uya kubakhokela, kwanangayo imithombo yamanzi uya kubakhokela.
- 11 Kwaye ndiya kuzenza zonke iintaba zam zibe yindlela, kwaye imendo zam ziya kuphakanyiswa.
- 12 Kwaye ke, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, qaphela, aba baya kuba bevela kude; kwaye yabona, aba basuka emantla nasentshona; kwaye aba basuka kwilizwe laseSinim.
- 13 Vuma ingoma, Owu mazulu; uze uvuye, Owu mhlaba; kuba iinyawo zabo basempumalanga ziya kuzinziswa; baze bagqabhuke engomeni, Owu zintaba, kuba abasayi kuphinda babethwe; kuba iNkosi ibathuthuzele abantu bayo, kwaye iya kuba nenceba kwabo babandezekileyo bayo.
- 14 Kodwa, qaphela, iZiyon ithe: INkosi yam indishiyile, kwaye iNkosi yam namfesane—kodwa iya kuthi ibonakalise ukuba ayindilibalanga.
- 15 Kuba umfazi angamlibala na umntwana wakhe amanyisayo, aze angabi naluvlwano kunyana wesizalo sakhe? Ewe, basenako ukulibala, kanti mna andisayi kunilibala, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 16 Qaphela, ndikukrolile phezu kwentende yezandla zam; iindonga zakho ziphambi kwam ngamaxesha onke.
- 17 Abantwana bakho baya kukhawuleza ngokuchasene nabo bakutshabalalisayo; kwaye abo bathi bakwenza umqwebedu baya kuba phambili kunawe.
- 18 Phakamisela amehlo akho ngapha-nangapha uze ubone; bonke aba bahlanganisene kunye, kwaye baya kuza kuwe. Kwaye njengoko ndiphila, itsho iNkosi, ngokwenene uya kuzambathisa ngabo bonke, njengesihombiso, kwaye ubabhinqe njengoko umtshakazi ebhinqa.
- 19 Kuba umqwebedu wakho neenkangala zeendawo zakho, nelizwe lentshabalalo yakho, liya kuxinana kakhulu nangalo eli lixa ngenxa yabemi; kwaye abo bathi bakuginya baya kuba kude.

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall come from far; and lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all these gather themselves together, and they shall come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away.

- 20 Abantwana oya kuthi ubenabo, emva kokuba ulahlekelwe ngabo bokuqala, baya kuthi ezindlebeni zakho kwakhona: Indawo icuthene kakhulu kum; ndinike indawo ukuze ndihlale.
- 21 Uya kuthi ke entliziyweni yakho: Ndibazalelwe ngubani aba, ndalahlekelwa nje ngabantwana bam, kwaye ndikhedamile, umthinjwa, kwaye ndisiwa ngapha nangapha? Kwaye ngubani ondikhulisele bona? Qaphela, ndandishiyeke ndindedwa; aba, bebekade bephi?
- 22 Itsho njalo ke iNkosi uThixo: Qaphelani, ndiya kusiphakamisela phezulu isandla sam kwabeeNtlanga, ndize ndimisele ibhanile yam ebantwini; kwaye baya kubafunqula oonyana benu ezingalweni zabo, kwaye iintombi zenu ziya kutyathwa emagxeni abo.
- 23 Kwaye ookumkani baya kuba ngabondli babo, baze ookumkanikazi babo babanyise; baya kuqubuda phantsi kuni ubuso babo bujonge ngasemhlabeni, baze bakhothe uthuli lweenyawo zakho; kwaye uya kuyazi ukuba ndim iNkosi; kuba abayi kuba nazintloni abo bathi bandilindele.
- 24 Kuba ingaba ixhoba liya kuthatyathwa kwabo banamandlakazi, okanye abathinjwa abagcina imithetho bakhululwe?
- 25 Kodwa itsho njalo ke iNkosi, kwanabo abathinjwa babanamandlakazi baya kuthatyathwa bamkiswe; kwaye ixhoba labo boyikekayo liya kuhlangukwa; kuba ndiya kubambana naye obambana nawe, kwaye ndiya kubasindisa abantwana bakho.
- 26 Kwaye ndiya kubadlisa inyama yabo abo bakucinezelayo; baya kunxiliswa ligazi labo ngokungathi yiwayini emnandi; kwaye yonke inyama iya kuyazi ukuba mna, Nkosi, ndinguMsindisi noMkhululi wakho, Onamandlakazi kaYakobi.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

## 1 Nifayi 22

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, ndizifundile ezi zinto ezazikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu, abantakwethu beza kum baza bathi kum: Zithetha ntoni ezi zinto uthe wazifunda? Qaphela, zingaba nokuqondakala ngokunxulumene nezinto ezizezomoya, eziya kuthi zenzeke ngokunxulumene nomoya kwaye ingekuko okwenyama?
- 2 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndathi kubo: Qaphelani zazibonakaliswe kumprofeti ngelizwi lo Moya; kuba ngoMoya zonke izinto ziyaziswa kubo abaprofeti, eziya kwenzeka kubo abantwana babantu ngokunxulumene nasenyameni.
- 3 Ngako oko, izinto endithe ndazifunda ngazo zizinto eziphathelele nezinto kunye ezenyama nezomoya; kuba kukhangeleka ngathi indlu kaSirayeli, ngokukhawuleza okanye kamva, iya kusasazwa phezu kobuso bomhlaba, kwaye naphakathi kwazo zonke izizwe.
- 4 Kwaye qaphelani, kukho abaninzi abasele belahlekile kulwazi lwabo baseYerusalem. Ewe, inxenye eninzi yazo zonke izizwe ikhokelelwe kude; kwaye zingasazwa ngapha nangapha phezu kweziqithi zolwandle; kwaye apho bakhoyo akukho namnye kuthi owaziyo, ngaphandle nje kokuba sisazi ukuba bakhokelelwa kude.
- 5 Kwaye okoko bathi bakhokelelwa kude, ezi zinto zaprofofethwa malunga nabo, kanjalo malunga nabo bonke abaya kuthi emva koku basasazwe kwaye babhidaniswe, ngenxa yakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli; kuba baya kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene naye; ngako oko, baya kusasazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe baze bathiywe ngabo bonke abantu.
- 6 Nangona kunjalo, emva kokuba beya kwanyiswa ngabeeNtlanga, kwaye neNkosi isiphakamisile isandla sayo phezu kwabeeNtlanga kwaye wabamisela njengebhanile, kwaye nabantwana babo babafunqula ezingalweni zabo, neentombi zabo bazithwala phezu kwamagxa abo, qaphelani ezi zinto kuthethwa ngazo zezomzuzwana; kuba injalo iminqophiso yeNkosi noobawo bethu; kwaye ithetha thina ngemihla ezayo, kwa nabo bonke abazalwana bethu abo bangabendlu kaSirayeli.

## 1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7 Kwaye oku kuthetha ukuba liyeza ilixa lokuba emva kokuba yonke indlu kaSirayeli isasaziwe yaza yabhidaniswa, kuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuphakamisa isizwe esinamandla phakathi kwabeeNtlanga, ewe, kwa naphezu kobuso beli lizwe; kwaye ngabo imbewu yethu iya kusasazwa.
- 8 Kwaye emva kokuba imbewu yethu isasaziwe iNkosi uThixo iya kuqhubeka ukwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwabeeNtlanga, oya kuba nexabiso elikhulu kuyo imbewu yethu; ngako oko, ifanekiswa nokondliwa kwabo ngabeeNtlanga nokufunqulwa kwabo ezingalweni zabo nasemagxeni abo.
- 9 Kananjalo iya uba nexabiso nakubo abeeNtlanga; kwaye ingekuko kwabeeNtlanga kuphela kodwa nakuyo indlu kaSirayeli iphela, ekwaziseni ngeminqophiso kaBawo wezulu kuAbraham, ethi: Kuyo imbewu yakho izalamane zomhlaba ziphela ziya kusikeleleka.
- 10 Kwaye ndinqwenela, bazalwana bam, ukuba zenazi ukuba izalamane zomhlaba zonke azinako ukusikeleleka ngaphandle kokuba ziyihlube ingalo yayo emehlweni ezizwe.
- 11 Ngako oko, iNkosi uThixo iya kuqhubeka ukuyityhila ingalo yayo emehlweni ezizwe zonke ziphela, ekuziseni iminqophiso yayo nevangeli yayo kubo abo abangabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 12 Ngako oko, iya kubabuyisa kwakhona baphume ekuthinjweni, kwaye baya kuhlanganiswa kunye elizweni lelifa labo; kwaye baya kukhutshwa ekufihlakaleni nasebumnyameni; kwaye baya kuyazi ukuba iNkosi inguMsindisi wabo noMkhululi wabo, Onamandla kaSirayeli.
- 13 Kwaye igazi lelo bandla likhulu nelimasikizi, elilihenyukazi lawo wonke umhlaba, liya kubuyela phezu kwezabo iintloko; kuba baya kulwa iimfazwe ngaphakathi kwabo, lize ikrele elisezandleni zabo liwele phezu kwezabo iintloko, kwaye baya kunxiliswa lelabo igazi.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

14 Kwaye zonke izizwe eziya kuthi zilwe iimfazwe ngokuchasene nawe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, ziya kujikelana ezinye nezinye, kwaye ziya kuwela kuwo umngxuma ezaziwombele ukubhabhisa abantu beNkosi. Kwaye bonke abalwa ngokuchasene neZiyon baya kutshatyalaliswa, kwaye nelo henyukazi likhulu, elithe lagqwetha iindlela zeNkosi, ewe, elo bandla likhulu nelimasikizi, liya kudilikela eluthulini kwaye hayi ukuba sikhulu kwesiwo salo.

15 Kuba qaphelani, utsho umprofeti, ilixa liyeza ngokukhawuleza lokuba uSathana engasayi kuba namandla ezintliziyweni zabantwana babantu; kuba uyeza umhla kwakamsinyane oya kuthi bonke abanekratshi nabo benza ngokukhohlakeleyo baya kuba njengeendiza; kwaye umhla uyeza wokuba kufuneka betshisiwe.

16 Kuba ilixa liyeza kwakamsinya lokuba ingqumbo kaThixo ezeleyo iya kuthululelwa phezu kwabo bonke abantwana babantu; kuba akayi kubavumela abakhohlakeleyo ukuba batshabalalise amalungisa.

17 Ngako oko, uya kuwalondoloza amalungisa ngamandla akhe, nokuba kungathi kwenzeka ukuba ingqumbo yakhe engenasithintelo kufuneka ifikile, kwaye amalungisa alondolozwe, nasekubeni kutshatyalaliswe iintshaba zabo ngomlilo. Ngako oko, amalungisa akamele abe naloyiko; kuba utsho njalo umprofeti, aya kusindiswa, nokuba kungade kube kungokomlilo.

18 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam, ndithi kuni, ezi zinto kumele zifike kwakamsinya; ewe, nokuba kungegazi, nomlilo, nomphunga womsi kumele ufike; kwaye kumele kube ngaphezu kobuso balo mhlaba; kwaye iza ebantwini ngokwasenyameni ukuba baya kuthi baziqadekise iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene noyiNgcwele kaSirayeli.

19 Kuba qaphelani, amalungisa akasayi kutshabalala; kuba ngokwenene kumele lifike ilixa lokuba bathi bonke abalwa ngokuchasene neZiyon basikelwe ngaphandle.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

20 Kwaye iNkosi ngokwenene iya kubalungiselela indlela abantu bayo, ukuze kuzaliseke amazwi kaMoses, awathi wawathetha, esithi: INkosi uThixo wenu iya kuniphakamisela umprofeti, njengam; niya kumphulaphula kuzo zonke naziphina izinto aya kuthi azithethe kuni. Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba bonke abo bangasayi kumphulaphula loo mprofeti baya kusikelwa ngaphandle basuke phakathi kwabantu.

21 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndivakalisa kuni, ukuba lo mprofeti awathi wathetha ngaye uMoses yayingoNgcwele kaSirayeli; ngako oko, uya kuwisa isigwebo ngobulungisa.

22 Kwaye amalungisa akamele abe naloyiko, kuba angabo bangasayi konganyelwa. Kodwa bubukumkani bomtyholi, obo buya kuthi bakhiwe phakathi kwabantwana babantu, ubukumkani obo bumiswe phakathi kwabo basenyameni—

23 Kuba ilixa liya kufika ngokukhawuleza lokokuba onke amabandla awakhelwe ukuze enze ingeniso, nawo onke awakhelwe ukuzuza amandla phezu kwenyama, nalawo akhelwe ukuze abe nodumo emehlweni ehlabathi, nalawo alangazelela iinkanuko zenyama nezinto zehlabathi, nokwenza lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa; ewe, lulonke, onke lawo angawobukumkani bomtyholi ngawo lawo amele kukoyika, kwaye aduduzele, kwaye angcangcazele; ngawo lawo kumele aziswe ezantsi eluthulini; ngawo lawo amele ukuba atshatyalaliswe aphele njengeendiza; kwaye oku kungokwamazwi omprofeti.

24 Kwaye ilixa liyeza ngokukhawuleza lokokuba amalungisa akhokelwe njengamankonyana asesitalini, kwaye oNgcwele kaSirayeli umele alawule ngobukhosi, nokomelela, namandla, nangozuko olukhulu.

25 Kwaye uya bahlanganisa abantwana bakhe ukusuka kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba; kwaye uyazibala izimvu zakhe, kwaye ziyamazi; kwaye kuya kubakho ubuhlanti obunye nomalusi omnye; kwaye uya kuzidlisa izimvu zakhe, kwaye kuye ziya kufumana idlelo.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

- 26 Kwaye ngenxa yobulungisa babantu bakhe, uSathana akanawo amandla; ngako oko, akanako ukukhululwa kangangethuba leminyaka emininzi; kuba akanawo amandla phezu kweentliziyo zabantu, kuba bahleli ngobulungisa, kwaye oNgcwele kaSirayeli uyalawula.
- 27 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, mna, Nifayi, ndithi kuni zonke ezi zinto kumele zifike ngokwasenyameni.
- 28 Kodwa, qaphela, zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu baya kuhlala ngokukhuselekileyo kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli ukuba banokuthi baguquke.
- 29 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndiyapheza; kuba andingekhe ndibe nobugagu bokuthetha ngakumbi ngokwakaloku nje ngokunxulumene nezi zinto.
- 30 Ngako oko, bantakwethu, ndingathanda ukuba nicingisise okokuba izinto ezibhaliweyo phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu ziyinyani; kwaye ziyangqina ukuba umntu umele ayithobele imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 31 Ngako oko, animele nicinge ukuba mna nobawo sithi kuphela abathe bazingqina, kunjalo sazifundisa. Ngako oko, ukuba niya kuyithobela imiyalelo, kwaye ninyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, niya kusindiswa ngomhla wokugqibela. Kwaye kunjalo ke. Amen.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.



# INcwadi yeSibini kaNifayi

*Ingxelo ngokufa kukaLibayi. Abantakwabo Nifayi bayamvukela. INkosi ilumkisa uNifayi ukuba aphume asinge entlango. Iibambo zakhe entlango, njalo-njalo.*

## 2 Nifayi 1

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile ukuba emva kokuba mna, Nifayi, ndiphezile ukubafundisa abantakwethu, ubawo wethu, uLihayi, naye kanjalo wathetha izinto ezininzi kubo, ebachazela ngobukhulu bezinto abazenzelwe yiNkosi ngokubakhupha elizweni laseYerusalem.
- 2 Kwaye wathetha nabo malunga neemvukelo zabo phezu kwamanzi, neenceba zikaThixo ngokusindisa ubomi babo, ukuze bangaginywa lulwandle.
- 3 Kwaye wathetha kanjalo kubo malunga nelizwe lesithembiso, abathe balizuza—ngokuba nenceba kweNkosi ngokusilumkisa ukuba sisabe siphume kwilizwe laseYerusalem.
- 4 Kuba, qaphelani, watsho, ndibone umbono, endaziyo kuwo ukuba iYerusalem itshatyalalisiwe; kwaye ukuba besihleli eYerusalem nathi kanjalo singe sitshabalele.
- 5 Kodwa, watsho, nangona sineenkxwaleko zethu, silifumene ilizwe lesithembiso, ilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezulu kunawo onke amanye amazwe; ilizwe ethe iNkosi uThixo yenza umnqophiso nam ukuba libe lilizwe lelifa lembewu yam. Ewe, iNkosi inqophise eli lizwe kum, nakubantwana bam ngonaphakade, kwaye kanjalo bonke abo baya kukhokelwa bakhutshwe kwamanye amazwe ngesandla seNkosi.
- 6 Ngako oko, mna, Lihayi, ndiprofetha ngokokusebenza koMoya okum, okokuba akukho namnye oya kuthi eze kulo eli lizwe ngaphandle kokuba aziswe sisandla seNkosi.

# The Second Book of Nephi

*An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.*

## 2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Ngako oko, eli lizwe lingcwalisiwe kulowo iya kuthi imzise. Kwaye ukuba baya kuthi bamkhonze ngokwemiyalelo ebanike yona, liya kuba lilizwe lenkululeko kubo; ngako oko, abayi kuze bathotyelwe ezantsi ekuthinjweni; ukuba kubenjalo, iya kuba kungenxa yobugwenxa; kuba ukuba ubugwenxa buyanda liya kuqalekiswa ilizwe ngenxa yabo, kodwa kuwo amalungisa liya kusikeleleka ngonaphakade.

8 Kwaye qaphelani, kububulumko ukuba eli lizwe lingaziswa kulwazi lwezinye izizwe ngokwakaloku nje; kuba qaphelani, izizwe ezininzi ziya kulizalisa ilizwe, ukuze kungabikho ndawo yelifa.

9 Ngako oko, mna, Lihayi, ndizuze isithembiso, sokokuba kangangokuba abo baya kuthi iNkosi uThixo ibakhuphe kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem bayigcine imiyalelo yayo, baya kuphumelela phezu kobuso beli lizwe; kwaye baya kunqatyswa kuzo zonke ezinye izizwe, ukuze balibange ilizwe libe lelabo. Kwaye ukuba baya kuthi bayigcine imiyalelo yayo baya kusikeleleka phezu kobuso beli lizwe, kwaye akuyi kubakho namnye oya kubakhathaza, noya kulithabatha ilizwe lelifa labo; kwaye baya kuhlala bekhuselekile ngonaphakade.

10 Kodwa qaphelani, lakufika ilixa lokuba baye bephelela ekungakholweni, emva kokuba befumene iintsikelelo ezinkulu kangaka esandleni seNkosi—benolwazi nokudalwa komhlaba, kwanabantu bephela, beyazi imisebenzi emikhulu kwanemangalisayo yeNkosi ukususela ekudalekeni kwehlabathi; benamandla abawanekiweyo okwenza zonke izinto ngokholo; benayo yonke imiyalelo ukususela ekuqaleni, kwaye beziswe ngokulunga kwakhe okungenasiphelo kweli lizwe lixabisekileyo lesithembiso—qaphelani, ndithi, ukuba umhla uya kuthi ufike wokuba bamkhanyele oNgcwele kaSirayeli, uMesiya wokwenyani, uMkhululi wabo noThixo wabo, qaphelani, izigwebo zakhe onobulungisa ziya kuhlala phezu kwabo.

11 Ewe, uya kubazisela ezinye izizwe, kwaye azinike amandla, kwaye uya kuwahlutha kubo amazwe ebango labo, kwaye uya kubenza ukuba basasazwe baze babethwe.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

- 12 Ewe, xa esinye isizukulwana sidlulela kwesinye kuya kubakho iimpalalogazi, nezibetho ezikhulu phakathi kwabo; ngako oko, boonyana bam, ndinga ningakhumbula; ewe, ninga ningawaphulaphula amazwi am.
- 13 Owu ukuba beninokuvuka; nivuke kubuthongo obunzulu, ewe, kwanabo ubuthongo besihogo, kwaye niwavuthulule amatyathanga awoyikekayo enibotshelelwe ngawo, ekungamatyathanga abophelela abantwana babantu, ukuze bathatyathelwe kude ekuthinjweni behle ukuya kwinyoba yanaphakade yenkxwaleko nosizi.
- 14 Vukani! kwaye niphakame eluthulini, kwaye niwaphulaphule amazwi omzali ongcangcazelayo, omalungu eniza kuthi kwakamsinya niwalalise phantsi engcwabeni elibandayo nelithe cwaka, apho kungekho mhambi ubuyayo; kungentsuku zingephi ndize ndihambe indlela yomhlaba uphela.
- 15 Kodwa qaphelani, iNkosi iwukhulule umphefumlo wam kwisihogo; ndibubonile ubuqaqawuli bayo, kwaye ndirhangqiwe jikelele ngonaphakade ezingalweni zothando lwayo.
- 16 Kwaye ndinqwenela ukuba nize nikhumbule ukuqwalasela imimiselo kwanezigwebo zeNkosi; qaphelani, oku bekuyinkxalabo yomphefumlo wam ukusukela ekuqaleni.
- 17 Intliziyo yam ibisindeka lusizi amaxesha ngamaxesha, kuba bendinoloyiko, hleze ngenxa yobulukhuni beentliziyo zenu iNkosi uThixo wenu iphume ngengqumbo yayo ephелеleyo phezu kwenu, ukuze nisikelwe ngaphandle kwaye nitshatyalaliswe ngonaphakade;
- 18 Okanye, ukuze isiqalekiso size sihlale phezu kwenu kangangethuba lezizukulwana ezininzi; kwaye niya kuhanjelwa ngekrele, nangendlala, kwaye nithiywe, kwaye nikhokelwe ngokwentando nokuthinjwa komtyholi.
- 19 Owu boonyana bam, akwaba ezi zinto bezingayi kwehla phezu kwenu, kodwa nibe nokuba ngabantu abakhethekileyo nabantu abathandiweyo yiNkosi. Kodwa qaphelani, makwenzeke intando yayo; kuba iindlela zayo zezobulungisa ngonaphakade.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

- 20 Kwaye ithethe yathi: Kangangokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kuphumelela elizweni; kodwa kangangokuba ningasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kusikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni bam.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku ukuze umphefumlo wam ube novuyo kuni, kwaye nokuba intliziyo yam ilishiye eli hlabathi ichwayitile ngenxa yenu, ukuze ndingathotyelwa ezantsi ngentlungu nosizi ukuya engcwabeni, phakamani eluthulini, boonyana bam, kwaye nibe ngamadoda, kwaye nizimisele ninengqondo enye nentliziyo enye, nimanyene kuzo zonke izinto, ukuze ningehleli ezantsi ekuthinjweni;
- 22 Ukuze ningaqalekiswa ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu; kwaye kanjalo, ukuze ningaziziseli ingqumbo yoThixo olilungisa phezu kwenu, niye entshabalalweni, ewe, intshabalalo yanaphakade yomphefumlo kunye nomzimba.
- 23 Vukani, boonyana bam; vathani isikrweqe sobulungisa. Wakhululeni amatyathanga enibotshelelwe ngawo, kwaye nize phambili niphume emfihlakalweni, kwaye niphakame eluthulini.
- 24 Musani ukuphinda nimvukele umninawa wenu, onezimvo ezithe zanozuko, kwaye othe wayigcina imiyalelo ukususela kwilixa esathi sayishiya iYerusalem; kwaye othe waba sisixhobo sokusebenza ezandleni zikaThixo, ukusizisa phambili elizweni lesithembiso; kuba ukuba bekungekho ngaye, ngesitshabalele entlango yindlala; nangona kunjalo, nivume ukuthabatha ubomi bakhe; ewe, kwaye uve usizi olukhulu ngenxa yenu.
- 25 Kwaye ndinoloyiko olugqithisileyo nokungcangcazela ngenxa yenu, hleze abe uya kuphindela ahlukiseke; kuba qaphelani, nimtyhole ngokuthi ufuna amandla negunya phezu kwenu; kodwa ndiyazi ukuba ebengafuni mandla nagunya phezu kwenu, kodwa ebefuna uzuko lukaThixo, nentlalo-ntle yenu yanaphakade.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

- 26 Kwaye nimbombozele ngenxa yokuba ethethe ngokucacileyo kuni. Nithi usebenzise ubukhali; nithi ube nomsindo kuni; kodwa qaphelani, ubukhali bakhe ibibubukhali bamandla elizwi likaThixo, abengaphakathi kuye; kwaye oko nithi ngumsindo ibe iyinyaniso, emalunga naleyo ikuye uThixo, abengenakho ukuyinqanda, ebonakalisa ngokukhalipha malunga nobugwenxa benu.
- 27 Kwaye kuyimfuneko okokuba amandla kaThixo abekuye, ukuze abenakho ukuniyalela ukuba nithobe. Kodwa qaphelani, ibingenguye, kodwa ibe inguMoya weNkosi obe ukuye, othe wavula umlomo wakhe ukuba athethe ukuze angabinakho ukuwuvula.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku nyana wam, Leymeni, kananjalo noLemuweli noSem, kananjalo noonyana bam abangoonyana bakaIshmayeli, qaphelani, ukuba niya kuliphulaphula ilizwi likaNifayi anyi kutshabalala. Kwaye ukuba niya kumphulaphula ndinishiya nentsikelelo yam, ewe, kwanayo intsikelelo yam yokuqala.
- 29 Kodwa ukuba anyi kumphulaphula ndiyayithabatha intsikelelo yam yokuqala, ewe, kwanayo intsikelelo yam, kwaye iya kuhlala phezu kwakhe.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku, Zorami, ndithetha nawe: Qaphela, usisicaka sikaLabhan; nangona kunjalo, ukhutshiwe elizweni laseYerusalem, kwaye ndiyazi ukuba ungumhlobo ngenene kunyana wam, uNifayi, ngonaphakade.
- 31 Ngako oko, ngenxa yokuba uthe wanyaniseka inzala yakho iya kusikelelwa nenzala yakhe, ukuze zihlale isidala phezu kobuso beli lizwe ziphumelele; kwaye akukho nto, ngaphandle kobugwenxa phakathi kwabo, eya kubenzakalisa okanye iphazamise ukuphumelela kwabo phezu kobuso beli lizwe ngonaphakade.
- 32 Ngako oko, ukuba uya kuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi, iNkosi ilingcwalisile eli lizwe ukuze ikhuseleke imbewu yakho kunye nembewu yonyana wam.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

## 2 Nifayi 2

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, Yakobi, ndithetha nawe: Ulizibulo lam ngemihla yenkxwaleko yam entlango. Kwaye qaphela, ebuntwaneni bakho uhlutshwe ziimbandezelo nosizi olukhulu, ngenxa yobukrwada babantakwenu.
- 2 Nangona kunjalo, Yakobi, zibulo lam entlango, uyabazi ubungangamsha bukaThixo; kwaye uya kuzingcwalisa iimbandezelo zakho ukuze zibe yinzuzo kuwe.
- 3 Ngako oko, umphefumlo wakho uya kusikeleleka, kwaye uya kuhlala ukhuselekile kunye nomkhuluwa wakho, uNifayi; kwaye imihla yakho uya kuyichithela ekukhonzeni uThixo wakho. Ngako oko, ndiyazi ukuba ukhululwe, ngenxa yobulungisa boMkhululi wakho; kuba ubonile ukuba ekuzalisekeni kwexesha uya kuza azise usindiso ebantwini.
- 4 Kwaye ulubonile uzuko lwakhe ebutsheni bakho; ngako oko, usikelelekile kwanjengabo abo aya kuthi akhonze kubo esenyameni; kuba uMoya ukwanguwo, izolo, namhla, nangonaphakade. Kwaye indlela ilungisiwe ukususela ekuweni komntu, kwaye usindiso aluhlawulelwa.
- 5 Kwaye abantu bafundisiwe ngokwaneleyo ukuba bakwazi okulungileyo kokubi. Kwaye umthetho unikiwe kubantu. Kwaye ngokomthetho akukho nyama iya kulungiselelwa; okanye, ngokomthetho abantu basikelwe ngaphandle. Ewe, ngokomthetho wenyama basikelwa ngaphandle; kananjalo, ngokomthetho womoya bayatshabalala kuko okulungileyo, kwaye babelusizi ngonaphakade.
- 6 Ngako oko, inkululeko iza kwaye ikho ngaye uMesiya oNgcwele; kuba uzele lubabalo nenyano.
- 7 Qaphela, uzinikela ukuba abe lidini lesono, ukuphendula iimfuno zomthetho, kubo bonke abanentliziyo eyaphukileyo nomoya otyumkileyo; kwaye akukho nawuphi ongomnye onako ukuphendula iimfuno zomthetho.

## 2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

- 8 Ngako oko, kubaluleke kakhulu kangakanani ukwenza ezi zinto zaziswe kubemi bomhlaba, ukuze bazi ukuba ayikho inyama enako ukuhlala ebusweni bukaThixo, ngaphandle kokuba kube kungalowo ukufaneleyo, kwaye unenceba, nobabalo lukaMesiya oNgcwele, obeka phantsi ubomi bakhe ngokwasenyameni, kwaye ayithabathe kwakhona ngamandla oMoya, ukuze kubekho uvuko lwabafuleyo, abe engowokuqala oya kuthi avuke.
- 9 Ngako oko, uziziqhamo zokuqala kuye uThixo, kangangokuba uya kwenza uxolelwaniso lwabo bonke abantwana babantu; kwaye bonke abakholwayo kuye baya kusindiswa.
- 10 Kwaye ngenxa yoxolelwaniso lwabo bonke, bonke ubantu beza kuThixo; ngako oko, bayema kubukho bakhe, baze bagwetywe nguye ngokwenyaniso nobungcwele obukuye. Ngako oko, iimfuno zomthetho athe oNgcwele wazinikela, ukuze kuwiswe isohlwayo eso esimiselweyo, isohlwayo eso simiselweyo siphikisana nolo lonwabo lumiselweyo, ukuphendula iimfuno zentlawulelo—
- 11 Kuba kuyimfuneko, ukuba kubekho inkcaso kuzo zonke izinto. Ukuba akunjalo, zibulo lam lasentlango, ubulungisa abunako ukwenzeka, nankohlakalo, nabungcwele nalusizi, nakulunga nakungalungi. Ngako oko, zonke izinto kuyimfuneko ukuba zibe yimbumba entweni enye; ngako oko, ukuba kumele ibe ngumzimba omnye kuyimfuneko ukuba uhlale ufile, ungenabomi nakufa, nakonakala nakungonakali, nalonwabo nalusizi, naluvo nakungavakalelwa.
- 12 Ngako oko, kuya kufuneka ukuba ibe idalelwe into engento; ngako oko bekungayi kubakho njongo nasizathu ekudalweni kwayo. Ngako oko, oko bekuya kufuneka kubutshabalalise ubulumko bukaThixo neenjongo zakhe zanaphakade, kananjalo namandla nenceba, nobulungisa bukaThixo.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

- 13 Kwaye ukuba niya kuthi akukho mthetho, niya kuthi kanjalo akukho sono. Ukuba niya kuthi akukho sono, niya kuthi kanjalo akukho bulungisa. Kwaye ukuba akuyi kubakho bulungisa akuyi kubakho lonwabo. Kwaye ukuba akuyi kubakho bulungisa nalonwabo akuyi kubakho sohlwayo nalusizi. Kwaye ukuba ezi zinto azikho akukho Thixo. Kwaye ukuba akukho Thixo nathi asikho namhlaba; kuba bekungayi kubakho kudalwa kwazinto, nazinto zakwenza nakwenziwa; ngako oko, zonke izinto beziya kuba ziya ziphela zingabikho.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku, boonyana bam, ndizithetha ezi zinto kuni ukuze nincedeke kwaye nifunde; kuba ukhona uThixo, kwaye udale zonke izinto, kunye amazulu nomhlaba, nazo zonke izinto ezikuzo, kunye izinto zokwenza nezinto zokwenziwa.
- 15 Kwaye ukuze afezekise iinjongo zakhe zanaphakade zokulungelwa koluntu, emva kokuba edale abazali bethu bokuqala, kwaye nezilo zasendle neentaka zezulu, kwaye lilonke, zonke izinto ezidalweyo, kwakuyimfuneko ukuba kubekho inkcaso; kwanaso isiqhamo esalelweyo ngokuchasene nomthi wobomi; esinye sasimnandi esinye sikrakra.
- 16 Ngako oko, iNkosi uThixo yanika umntu ukuba akwazi ukuzenzela. Ngako oko, umntu ebengenako ukuzenzela ngaphandle kokuba ulukuhliwe yenye okanye yenye.
- 17 Kwaye mna, Lihayi, ngokwezinto endizifundileyo, kuyimfuneko ukuba ndicinge ukuba ingelosi kaThixo, ngokwezinto ezibhaliweyo, yawa isuka ezulwini; ngako oko, yaba ngumtyholi, ekubeni efune oko kwakukubi phambi koThixo.
- 18 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba wawa esuka ezulwini, waza walusizi ngonaphakade, waye wafuna ukuba lonke uluntu lube lusizi. Ngako oko, wathi kuEva, ewe, nayo loo nyoka yakudala, engumtyholi, enguyise wabo bonke ubuxoki, ngako oko wathi: Thabatha utye kwisiqhamo esalelweyo, kwaye akusayi kufa, kodwa uya kuba njengoThixo, wazi okulungileyo nokubi.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.



19 Kwaye emva kokuba uAdam noEva bethabathile batya kwisiqhamo esalelweyo bakhutshelwa ngaphandle komyezo we-Eden, ukuze balime umhlaba.

20 Kwaye bazala abantwana; ewe, kwanayo intsapho yomhlaba uphela.

21 Kwaye imihla yabantwana babantu yolulwa, ngokwentando kaThixo, ukuze babe nokuguquka ngelixa besesenyameni; ngako oko, imo yabo yaba yimo yobulingwa, nobomi babo bandiswa, ngokwemiyalelo iNkosi uThixo awabanikayo abantwana babantu. Kuba wanika umyalelo wokuba bonke abantu mabaguquke; kuba wababonakalisa bonke abantu ukuba babelahlekile, ngenxa yokona kwabazali babo.

22 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ukuba uAdam wayengathanga wona ngewayengawanga, kodwa ngewayehleli emyezweni we-Eden. Kwaye zonke izinto ezazidaliwe zaziya kuhlala kwakulo mo ezazikuyo emva kokuba zidaliwe; kwaye zaziya kuhlala ngonaphakade, kwaye zingabi nasiphelo.

23 Kwaye babengayi kufumana bantwana, ngako oko babeya kuhlala kwimo yobunyulu, bengena kuvuya, kuba babengazi lusizi; bengenzi kulunga, kuba babengazi sono.

24 Kodwa qaphelani, zonke izinto zenziwe ngobulumko balowo wazi zonke izinto.

25 UAdam wawa ukuze abantu babekho, kwaye abantu bakho, ukuze bafumane uvuyo.

26 Kwaye uMesiya uya kuza ekuzalisekeni kwexesha, ukuze abe nokukhulula abantwana babantu ekuweni. Kwaye ngenxa yokuba bekhululwe ekuweni bangabakhululekileyo ngonaphakade, bekwazi okulungileyo kokubi; ukuze bazenzele kwaye bangenzelwa, ngaphandle kokuba kungesohlwayo somthetho ngomhla omkhulu nomhla wokugqibela, ngokwemiyalelo athe uThixo wayinika.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

- 27 Ngako oko, abantu bakhululekile ngokwasenyameni; kwaye zonke izinto bazinikiwe eziluncedo ebantwini. Kwaye bakhululekile ukukhetha inkululeko nobomi obungunaphakade, ngoMthetheleli omkhulu wabantu bephela, okanye ukukhetha ukuthinjwa nokufa, ngokokuthinjwa namandla omtyholi; kuba ufuna ukuba bonke abantu babe nokuba lusizi njengaye.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku, boonyana bam, ndinga ningakhanga kulo Mthetheleli mkhulu, kwaye niphulaphule imiyalelo yakhe emikhulu; kwaye ninyaniseke kuwo amazwi akhe, kwaye nikhetha ubomi obungunaphakade, ngokwentando yoMoya wakhe oyiNgcwele;
- 29 Kwaye ningakhethi ukufa kwanaphakade, ngokwentando yenyama nobubi obukuyo, ethi inike umoya womtyholi amandla okuthimba, ukukuthobela ezantsi esihogweni, ukuze akulawule kobakhe ubukumkani.
- 30 Ndithethe la mazwi ambalwa kuni nonke, boonyana bam, ngemihla yokugqibela yokulingwa kwam; kwaye ndikhetha inxenye elungileyo, ngokwamazwi omprofeti. Kwaye andinayo enye injongo ngaphandle kwempilontle yanaphakade yemiphefumlo yenu. Amen.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 3

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ndithetha nawe, Yosefu, thunjana lam. Wazalelwa kwintlango yeembandezelo zam, ewe, ngemihla yeentsizi zam ezinkulu unyoko wakuzala.
- 2 Kwaye inga iNkosi ingalingcwalisela kuwe kanjalo eli lizwe, eli lilizwe elinexabiso elikhulu, libe lilifa lakho nelifa lembewu yakho kunye nabakhuluwa bakho, ukuze nikhuseleke ngonaphakade, ukuba niya kuthi niyigcine imiyalelo yoNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, Yosefu, thunjana lam, endalikhupha kwintlango yeembandezelo zam, inga iNkosi ingakusikelela ngonaphakade, kuba imbewu yakho ayiyi kutshatyalaliswa kwaphela.
- 4 Kuba qaphela usisiqhamo sesinqe sam; kwaye mna ndisisizukulwana sikaYosefu owathatyathwa wathinjelwa eYiputa. Kwaye yayimikhulu kakhulu iminqophiso yeNkosi eyathi yayenza kuYosefu.
- 5 Ngako oko, uYosefu ngokwenene wawubona umhla wethu. Kwaye wafumana isithembiso eNkosini, sokuba kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakhe iNkosi uThixo iya kuphakamisa isebe elinobulungisa kuyo indlu kaSirayeli; ingenguye uMesiya, kodwa isebe elaliya kuqhetshulwa lisuke, nangona kunjalo, liya kukhunjulwa kwiminqophiso yeNkosi yokuba uMesiya uya kubonakala kubo ngemihla yokugqibela, esemoyeni wamandla, ukuze abakhuphe ebumnyameni abazise ekukhanyeni—ewe, baphume emfihlakalweni yobumnyama kwaye baphume nasekuthinjweni baye enkululekweni.
- 6 Kuba uYosefu ngokwenene wangqina, esithi: Imboni iya kuyiphakamisa iNkosi uThixo wam, eya kuba yimboni ekhethekileyo kwisiqhamo sesinqe sam.
- 7 Ewe, uYosefu ngokwenene wathi: Itsho njalo iNkosi kum: Imboni ekhethekileyo ndiya kuyiphakamisa iphuma kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho; kwaye iya kunikwa isidima esikhulu phakathi kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho. Kwaye kuyo ndiya kunikela umyalelo wokuba uya kwenza umsebenzi kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho, abazalwana bakho, oya kuba lixabiso elikhulu kubo, nasekubabuyiseleni kulwazi ngeminqophiso endayenzayo nooyihlo.

## 2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

- 8 Kwaye ndiya kunikela kuye umyalelo wokuba akasayi kwenza nawuphina ongomnye umsebenzi, ngaphandle komsebenzi lowo endiya kumyalela wona. Kwaye ndiya kumenza mkhulu emehlweni am; kuba uya kwenza umsebenzi wam.
- 9 Kwaye uya kuba mkhulu njengoMoses, endithe ndiya kumphakamisela kuwe, ukuze akhulule abantu bam, Owu, ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 10 Kwaye ndiya kuphakamisa uMoses, ukuba akhulule abantu bakho baphume kwilizwe laseYipta.
- 11 Kodwa ndiya kuphakamisa imboni iphume kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho; kwaye kuyo ndiya kunikela amandla okuzisa ngaphambili ilizwi lam lize kwimbewu yesinqe sakho—kwaye ingabi kukuzisa ilizwi lam kuphela, itsho iNkosi, kodwa ukubaqinisekisa ngelizwi lam, eliya kuba seliphumile ukuza ngaphambili phakathi kwabo.
- 12 Ngako oko, isiqhamo sesinqe sakho siya kubhala, kwaye nesiqhamo sesinqe sikaYuda siya kubhala, kwaye oko kuya kubhalwa sisiqhamo sesinqe sakho, kwaye kanjalo oko kuya kubhalwa sisiqhamo sesinqe sikaYuda, kuya kuhluma kunye, ukuze kubhidaniswe iimfundiso zobuxoki kwaye kupheliwe iimbambano, kwaye kumiselwe uxolo phakathi kwesiqhamo sesinqe sakho, nokubazisa kulwazi looyise ngemihla yamva, nakulwazi kanjalo lweminqophiso yam, itsho iNkosi.
- 13 Kwaye ebuthathakeni bakhe uya komelezwa, ngaloo mhla xa umsebenzi wam uya kuqalisa phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bam, ukuze ubuyiselwe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, itsho iNkosi.
- 14 Kwaye wenjenjalo ukuprofetha uYosefu, esithi: Qaphela, loo mboni iya kusikelelwa yiNkosi; kwaye abo bafuna ukuyitshabalalisa baya konganyelwa; kuba esi sithembiso, endithe ndasifumana eNkosini, malunga nesiqhamo sesinqe sam, siya kuzaliseka. Qaphela, ndiqinisekile ngokuzaliseka kwesi sithembiso.
- 15 Kwaye igama lakhe uya kuthiywa ngam; kwaye uya kube ethiywe ngegama likayise. Kwaye uya kuba njengam; kuba into leyo, eya kuthi iNkosi iyizise ngaphambili ngesandla sayo, ngamandla eNkosi iya kuzisa abantu bam elusindisweni.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

- 16 Ewe, waprofetha njalo uYosefu: Ndiqinisekile ngale nto, nanjengokuba ndiqinisekile ngesithembiso ngoMoses; kuba iNkosi iye yathi kum, ndiya kuyilondoloza imbewu yakho ngonaphakade.
- 17 Kwaye iNkosi iye yathi: Ndiya kuphakamisa onguMoses; kwaye ndiya kumnika amandla entongeni; kwaye ndiya kumnika intelekelelo ekubhaleni. Kodwa andiyi kulikhulula ulwimi lwakhe, aze athethe kakhulu, kuba andiyi kumenza abe namandlakazi ekuthetheni. Kodwa ndiya kumbhalela umthetho wam, ngomnwe wesandla sam; kwaye ndiya kumnika isithethi.
- 18 Kwaye iNkosi ithe kum kanjalo: Ndiya kuphakamisela kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho imboni; kwaye ndiya kumnika isithethi. Kwaye mna, qaphela, ndiya kumnika ukuba abe namandla ekubhaleni imibhalo yesiqhamo sesinqe sakho, ukuze iye kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho; kwaye isithethi sesinqe sakho siya kuyivakalisa.
- 19 Kwaye amazwi aya kuwabhala aya kuba ngamazwi aluncedo ngokobulumko bam ukuba aye phambili kwisiqhamo sesinqe sakho. Kwaye kuya kuba ngathi isiqhamo sesinqe sakho simemezile kubo ukusuka eluthulini; kuba ndiyalwazi ukholo lwabo.
- 20 Kwaye baya kumemeza ukusuka eluthulini; ewe, baya kumemeza inguquko kubo abazalwana babo, nasemva kokuba izizukulwana ezininzi sezadlula kubo. Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba isimemezo sabo siya kuya kubo, kwa nangokucaca kwamazwi abo.
- 21 Ngenxa yokholo lwabo amazwi abo aya kuqhubela phambili ephuma emlonyeni wam ukuya kubazalwana babo abasisiqhamo sesinqe sakho; kwaye ubuthathaka bamazwi abo ndiya kubenza bube namandla elukholweni lwabo, ukuze bakhumbule iminqophiso yam endayenza kooyise.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, nyana wam Yosefu, waprofetha ngolu hlobo ubawo wamandulo.
- 23 Ngako oko, ngenxa yalo mnqophiso usikelelekile; kuba imbewu yakho ayisayi kutshatyalaliswa, kuba baya kuweva amazwi encwadi.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24 Kwaye kuya kuphakama omnye onamandla phakathi kwabo, oya kwenza okulunge kakhulu, kunye emazwini nasekwenzeni, esisixhobo sokusebenza ezandleni zikaThixo, enokholo olugqithisileyo, ukwenza imimangaliso enamandlakazi, kwaye enze loo nto inkulu emehlweni kaThixo, ukuze kuzaliseke ukubuyiselwa okukhulu kuyo indlu kaSirayeli, nakuyo imbewu yabantakwenu.

25 Kwaye ngoku, usikelelekile, Yosefu. Qaphela, usemncinane, ngako oko waphulaphule amazwi omntakwenu, uNifayi, kwaye kuya kwenzeka kuwe nanjengokwamazwi endiwathethileyo. Uze uwakhumbule amazwi oyihlo ofayo. Amen.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them, who shall do much good, both in word and in deed, being an instrument in the hands of God, with exceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even according to the words which I have spoken. Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 4

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, mna, Nifayi, ndithetha malunga neziprofetho athe ubawo wathetha ngazo, malunga noYosefu, owayethatyathelwa eYiputa.
- 2 Kuba qaphela, ngokwenene waprofetha malunga nembewu yakhe yonke. Kwaye iziprofetho athe wazibhala, azikho ninzi kakhulu ngakumbi. Kwaye waprofetha malunga nathi, kwaye nezizukulwana zethu ezisezayo; kwaye zibhalwe kumacwecwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu.
- 3 Ngako oko, emva kokuba ubawo ephezile ukuthetha malunga neziprofetho zikaYosefu, waye wabiza abantwana bakaLeymeni, oonyana bakhe kunye neentombi zakhe, waza wathi kubo: Qaphelani, boonyana bam, neentombi zam, abangoonyana neentombi zezibulo lam, ndinga ninganika indlebe kumazwi am.
- 4 Kuba iNkosi uThixo ithe: Kangangokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kuphumelela elizweni; kwaye kangangokuba ningasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kusikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni bam.
- 5 Kodwa qaphelani, boonyana neentombi zam, andinako ukwehla ndiye engcwabeni lam ngaphandle kokuba ndishiye intsikelelo phezu kwenu; kuba qaphelani, ukuba nikhuliswe ngendlela enifanele ukuba nihambe ngayo aniyi kuze niyityeshele.
- 6 Ngako oko, ukuba niqalekisiwe, qaphelani, ndishiya intsikelelo yam phezu kwenu, ukuze isiqalekiso sisuswe kuni kwaye sibekwe phezu kweentloko zabazali benu.
- 7 Ngako oko, ngenxa yentsikelelo yam iNkosi uThixo ayiyi kuniyekela ukuba nitshabalale; ngako oko, iya kuba nenceba kuni nakuyo imbewu yenu ngonaphakade.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba emva kokuba ubawo ephezile ukuthetha noonyana neentombi zikaLeymeni, wenza ukuba oonyana neentombi zikaLemuweli ukuba ziziswe phambi kwakhe.

## 2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9 Kwaye wathetha nabo, esithi: Qaphelani boonyana neentombi zam, abangoonyana neentombi zonyana wam wesibini; qaphelani, ndishiya kuni intsikelelo efanayo naleyo endiyishiye koonyana neentombi zikaLeymeni; ngako oko, anisayi kutshatyalaliswa kwaphela; kodwa ekupheleni imbewu yenu iya kusikelelwa.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba akube ephezile ubawo ukuthetha nabo, qaphela, uye wathetha noonyana bakaIshmayeli, ewe, kwanayo indlu yakhe iphela.
- 11 Kwaye emva kokuba ephezile ukuthetha nabo, waye wathetha noSem, esithi: Usikelelekile wena, nembewu yakho; kuba uya kulidla ilifa ilizwe njengomntakwenu uNifayi. Kwaye imbewu yakho iya kubalwa kunye nembewu yakhe; kwaye uya kufana kanye nomntakwenu, nembewu yakho ifane kanye nembewu yakhe; kwaye uya kusikeleleka kuyo yonke imihla yakho.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ubawo, uLihayi, ethethile kuyo indlu yakhe iphela, ngokweemvakalelo zentliziyo yakhe noMoya weNkosi owawukuye, waye woluphala. Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba waye wafa, waza wangcwatywa.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba azibanga ninzi iintsuku emva kokuba efile, uLeymeni noLemuweli noonyana bakaIshmayeli baba nomsindo kum ngenxa yezoluleko zeNkosi.
- 14 Kuba mna, Nifayi, ndanyanzeleka ukuba ndithethe nabo, ngokwelizwi layo; kuba ndandithethe izinto ezininzi kubo, kwaye nobawo kanjalo, phambi kokufa kwakhe; ezininzi zazo zibhaliwe phezu kwamanye amacwecwe am; kuba inxenye engakumbi yembali ibhalwe kwamanye amacwecwe am.
- 15 Kwaye phezu kwala ndibhala izinto zomphefumlo wam, kwaye nezininzi izibhalo ezikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu. Kuba umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa zizibhalo, kwaye nentliziyo yam iyazikisa ukucinga ngazo, kwaye ndiyazibhala ukuze bazifunde kwaye zibe luncedo lwabantwana bam.
- 16 Qaphela, umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa zizinto zeNkosi; kwaye nentliziyo yam iyazikisa ukucinga ngamaxesha onke ngezinto endithe ndazibona kwaye ndaziva.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.



17 Nangona kunjalo, ndingenakumelana nokulunga okukhulu kweNkosi, ekundiboniseni imisebenzi yayo emikhulu nemangalisayo, intliziyo yam iyadanduluka: Owu mntundini olusizi endinguye! Ewe, intliziyo yam iselusizini ngenxa yenyama yam; umphefumlo wam ubuhlungu ngenxa yobugwenxa bam.

18 Ndirhangqiwe ngapha nangapha, ngenxa yezilingo nezono ezithi ngokulula zindikhathaze.

19 Kwaye ndakulangazelela ukugcoba, intliziyo yam iyancwina ngenxa yezono zam; nangona kunjalo, ndiyamazi endithembele kuye.

20 UThixo wam ube ngumxhasi wam; uye wandikhokela ukuphuma ezimbandezelweni zam entlango; kwaye undilondolozile phezu kwamanzi enzonzobila enkulu.

21 Undizalise ngothando lwakhe, ngokude luyigqibe inyama yam.

22 Uzibhidanisile iintshaba zam, wada wazenza ukuba zingcangcazele phambi kwam.

23 Qaphela, usivile isikhalo sam emini, kwaye undinike ulwazi ngemibono ngexesha lasebusuku.

24 Kwaye emini ndikhulule ngokukhalipha ngemithandazo enamandlakazi phambi kwakhe; ewe, ilizwi lam ndilithumele phezu enyangweni; kwaye iingelosi zehla zandilungiselela.

25 Kwaye phezu kwamaphiko oMoya wakhe umzimba wam waye wathwalelwa kude phezu kwentaba ephakame ngokugqithisileyo. Kwaye amehlo am abone izinto ezinkulu, ewe, nezinkulu kakhulu ukuba zibonwe ngumntu; ke ngoko ndaye ndaxelelwa ukuba mandingazibhali.

26 Owu ke, ukuba ndibone izinto ezinkulu kangaka, ukuba iNkosi ngokuzithoba kwayo kubantwana babantu ithe yahambela abantu ngengeba engaka, kungani ukuba intliziyo yam yenze isijwili nomphefumlo wam uzulazule kwintlambo yosizi, nenyama yam ibune namandla am athothe, ngenxa yeembandezelo?

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

- 27 Kwaye kungani ukuba ndizinikele esonweni, ngenxa yenyama yam? Ewe, kungani ukuba ndivumele izilingo, ukuze umtyholi afumane indawo entliziyweni yam ukuze atshabalalise uxolo lwam kwaye abandezele umphefumlo wam? Kungani ukuba ndibe nomsindo ngenxa yotshaba lwam?
- 28 Vuka, mphefumlo wam! Ungaphindi ujinga esonweni. Gcoba, Owu ntliziyo yam, kwaye ungaphindi ulunike indawo utshaba lomphefumlo wam.
- 29 Musa ukuba nomsindo kwakhona ngenxa yeentshaba zam. Musa ukuyekelela mandla am ngenxa yeembandezelo zam.
- 30 Gcoba, Owu ntliziyo yam, kwaye wenze isijwili eNkosini, kwaye uthi: Owu Nkosi, ndiya kukudumisa ngonaphakade; ewe, umphefumlo wam uya kugcoba kuwe, Thixo wam, neliwa losindiso lwam.
- 31 Owu Nkosi, ingaba uya kuwukhulula na umphefumlo wam? Ingaba uya kundihlangula ndiphume ezandleni zeentshaba zam? Ungandenza ukuba ndigungqe kwakucela isono?
- 32 Akwaba amasango esihogo angavalwa ngamaxesha onke phambi kwam, ngenxa yokuba intliziyo yam yaphukile kwaye nomoya wam utyumkile! Owu Nkosi, yanga akungewavali amasango akho obulungisa phambi kwam, ukuze ndihambe endleleni yentlambo esezantsi, ukuze ndibe ngqingqwa kwindlela ethe tye!
- 33 Owu Nkosi, unga ungandirhanga jikelele ngengubo yobulungisa bakho! Owu Nkosi, unga ungandivelisela indlela yokuba ndiphuncule phambi kweentshaba zam! Uya kuyenza indlela yam ithi tye na phambi kwam! Unga akungebeki sikhubekiso endleleni yam—kodwa undicocele indlela yam phambi kwam, kwaye ungayibiyeli indlela yam, kodwa ubiyele eyotshaba lwam.
- 34 Owu Nkosi, ndithembele kuwe, kwaye ndiya kuthembela kuwe ngonaphakade. Andiyi kubeka themba lam kwingalo yenyama; kuba ndiyazi ukuba uqalekisiwe lowo ubeka ithemba lakhe kwingalo yenyama. Ewe, uqalekisiwe lowo ubeka ithemba lakhe ebantwini okanye owenza inyama ibe yingalo yakhe.
- And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?
- Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.
- Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.
- Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.
- O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?
- May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!
- O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.
- O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

35 Ewe, ndiyazi ukuba uThixo uya kunika ngokungakumbi kulowo ucelayo. Ewe, uThixo wam uya kundinika, ukuba andiceli okuphosakeleyo; ke ngoko ndiya kuliphakamisela phezulu ilizwi lam kuwe; ewe, ndiya kwenza isijwili kuwe, Thixo wam, oliliwa lobulungisa bam. Qaphela, ilizwi lam liya kunyukela phezulu kuwe ngonaphakade, liwa lam noThixo wam wanaphakade. Amen.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 5

- 1 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndakhala kakhulu kuyo iNkosi uThixo wam, ngenxa yomsindo wabantakwethu.
- 2 Kodwa qaphelani, umsindo wabo waye wakhula ngokuchasene nam, kangangokuba baye bafuna ukuthabatha ubomi bam.
- 3 Ewe, baye bambombozela ngokuchasene nam, besithi: Umninawa wethu ucinga ukuba uza kulawula phezu kwethu; kwaye sifumene iimbandezelo ezininzi ngenxa yakhe; ngako oko, ngoku kufuneka simbulale, ukuze singabandezeleki ngakumbi ngenxa yamazwi akhe. Kuba qaphela, asimfuni ukuba abe ngumlawuli wethu; kuba kulilungelo lethu, bakhuluwa bakhe, ukulawula phezu kwaba bantu.
- 4 Ngoku andiwabhali phezu kwala macwecwe onke amazwi ababombombozela ngawo ngokuchasene nam. Kodwa kundanele ukuba ndithi, babefuna ukuthabatha ubomi bam.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba iNkosi indilumkise, ukuba mna, Nifayi, kufanele ndimke kubo kwaye ndisabele entlango, kunye nabo bonke abanako ukuhamba nam.
- 6 Ngako oko, kwenzekile okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndithabathe usapho lwam, kanjalo noZorami nosapho lwakhe, noSem, umkhuluwa wam kunye nosapho lwakhe, noYakobi noYosefu, abaninawa bam, kwakunye noodadewethu, kwaye nabo bonke abo babenakho ukuhamba nam. Kwaye bonke abo babenakho ukuhamba nam babengabo babekhohlelwa kwizilumkiso nezityhilelo zikaThixo; ngako oko, bawaphulaphula amazwi am.
- 7 Kwaye sazithabatha iintente zethu nazo naziphina izinto esasinako ukuba sizithabathe, kwaye sahamba entlango kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi. Kwaye emva kokuba sihambe kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi saye sazigxumeka iintente zethu.
- 8 Kwaye abantu bam banqwenela ukuba igama lendawo leyo siyibize Nifayi; ngako oko, saye sayibiza Nifayi.
- 9 Kwaye bonke abo babenam bagqiba ekubeni bazibize ngokuba ngabantu bakaNifayi.

## 2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

- 10 Kwaye sathi saqwalasela ukuzigcina izigwebo, nemithetho, nemiyaalelo yeNkosi kuzo zonke izinto, ngokomthetho kaMoses.
- 11 Kwaye iNkosi yayinathi; kwaye sathi saphumelela ngokugqithisileyo; kuba saye satyala imbewu, kwaye saye savuna kwakhona ngobuninzi. Kwaye saqalisa ukufuya impahla emfutshane, nemihlambi yeenkomo, neentlobo zonke zezilwanyana.
- 12 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndandithabathe nembali kanjalo eyayikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu; kwanebhola, okanye isalathambombo, esasilungiselelwe ubawo ngesandla seNkosi, ngokwakoko kubhaliweyo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye saqalisa ukuphumelela ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye sanda elizweni.
- 14 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndaye ndalithabatha ikrele likaLabhan, ngokohlobo lwalo ndaye ndenza amakrele amaninzi, hleze nangayiphina indlela abantu ngoku ababebizwa amaLeymenayithi baze basihlasele kwaye basitshabalalise; kuba ndandiyazi intiyo yabo kum nabantwana bam nabo babebizwa abantu bam.
- 15 Kwaye ndaye ndabafundisa abantu bam ukwakha izakhiwo, nokusebenza ngazo zonke iindidi zemithi, nezesinyithi, nezekopolo, nezobhedu, nezentsimbi eyomeleleyo, nezegolide, nezesilivere, kwaye nezentsimbi ekrwada exabisekileyo, ezazifumaneka ngobuninzi.
- 16 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, ndaye ndakha itempile; ndaze ndayakha ngokohlobo lwetempile kaSolomon ngaphandle nje kokuba yayingakhiwanga ngezinto ezininzi kangako ezixabisekileyo; kuba zazingenakho ukufumaneka elizweni, ngako oko, yayingenakho ukwakhiwa njengayo itempile kaSolomon. Kodwa uhlobo lokwakhiwa kwayo lwalwufana netempile kaSolomon; kwaye uhlobo lokwenziwa kwayo lwalucwenge ngokugqithisileyo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba, mna, Nifayi, ndababangela abantu bam ukuba bakhuthale, kwaye basebenze ngezandla zabo.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

18 Kwaye kwenzeka ukuba banqwenela ukuba ndibe ngukumkani wabo. Kodwa mna, Nifayi, ndandinqwenela ukuba bangabinayo ikumkani; nangona kunjalo, ndabenzela kangangoko kwakusemandleni am.

19 Kwaye qaphela, amazwi eNkosi aye ezalisekisiwe kubantakwethu, eyathi yawathetha ngokunxulumene nabo, ukuba ndibe ngumlawuli kwakunye notitshala wabo. Ngako oko, bendingumlawuli kwakunye notitshala wabo, malunga nemiyalelo yeNkosi, kwade kwaba lelo lixa abathi bafuna ukuthabatha ubomi bam.

20 Ngako oko, ilizwi leNkosi lazalisekiswa awalithetha kum, ethetha oku: Kangangokuba bengayi kuwaphulaphula amazwi akho baya kusikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni beNkosi. Kwaye qaphela, baye basikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni bayo.

21 Kwaye yenza ukuba isiqalekiso size phezu kwabo, ewe, kwasona isiqalekiso esibuhlungu, ngenxa yobugwenxa babo. Kuba qaphela, baye bazenza likhuni iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene nayo, zaza zanjengenyengane; ngako oko, njengokuba babemhlophe, kwaye bebahle ngokugqithisileyo kwaye bebukeka, khona ukuze bangabi namtsalane kubantu bam iNkosi uThixo yathi yabenza ukuba babe nolusu olumnyama.

22 Kwaye itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Ndiya kubenza ukuba bacekiseke kubo abantu bakho, ngaphandle kokuba baya kuthi baguquke kubugwenxa babo.

23 Kwaye iya kuqalekiswa imbewu yalowo uthe wazivanga nembewu yabo; kuba nabo baya kuqalekiswa kwangeso siqalekiso. Kwaye iNkosi yakuthetha, kwaze kwenzeka.

24 Kwaye ngenxa yesiqalekiso sabo esasiphezu kwabo baye babangabantu abangamavila, bezele yintlonti kwanenkohliso, kwaye babezingela izilo ezingamaxhoba entlango.

25 Kwaye iNkosi uThixo yathi kum: Baya kuba sisibetho kwimbewu yakho, ukubavuselela ekubeni bandikhumbule; kwaye kangangokuba bengayi kundikhumbula, kwaye bawaphulaphule amazwi am, baya kubacinezela bade babatshabalalise.

26 Kwaye kwenzeka okokuba mna, Nifayi, ndimisele uYakobi noYosefu, ukuze babe ngababingeleli neetitshala kulo lonke ilizwe labantu bam.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

- 27 Kwaye kwenzeka okokuba sihlale ngohlobo lolonwabo.
- 28 Kwaye iminyaka engamashumi amathathu idlule ukusuka kwilixa lokushiya kwethu iYerusalem.
- 29 Kwaye mna, Nifayi, andiyekanga ukubhala imbali phezu kwamacwecwe, endathi ndayenza yabantu bam kude kube ngoku.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi uThixo yathi kum: Yenza amanye amacwecwe; kwaye uya kukrola izinto ezininzi ezilungileyo emehlweni am, ukunceda abantu bakho.
- 31 Ngako oko, mna, Nifayi, ukuze ndithobele imiyalelo yeNkosi, ndahamba ndaza ndenza la macwecwe endithe ndakrola phezu kwawo ezi zinto.
- 32 Kwaye ndakrola oko kukholekileyo kuThixo. Kwaye ukuba abantu bam bayakholiseka zizinto zikaThixo baya kukholiseka yimikrolo yam ephezu kwala macwecwe.
- 33 Kwaye ukuba abantu bam banqwenela ukwazi inxenye ethile engakumbi yembali yabantu bam mabaphengulule kwamanye amacwecwe am.
- 34 Kwaye kuyandanelisa ukuba ndithi amashumi amane eminyaka agqithile, kwaye sele sineemfazwe neembambano nabantakwethu.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven many things upon them which are good in my sight, for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God. And if my people are pleased with the things of God they will be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they must search mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away, and we had already had wars and contentions with our brethren.

## 2 Nifayi 6

- 1 Amazwi kaYakobi, umninawa kaNifayi, awathi wawathetha kubantu bakaNifayi:
- 2 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, mna, Yakobi, endithe ndabizwa nguThixo, kwaye ndamiselwa ngokohlobo olungcwele lwakhe, kwaye ndingcwalisiwe ngumkhuluwa wam uNifayi, lowo nikhangele kuye njengokumkani okanye umkhuseli, kwaye enixhomekeke kuye ngokhuseleko, qaphelani niyazi ukuba ndithethe nani izinto ezininzi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 3 Nangona kunjalo, ndithetha nani kwakhona; kuba ndinqwenela intlalo-ntle yemiphefumlo yenu. Ewe, inkxalabo yam inkulu ngani; kwaye nani ngokwenu niyazi ukuba isoloko injalo. Kuba ndiniyale ngayo yonke inkuthalo; kwaye ndinifundisile amazwi kabawo; kwaye ndithethile nani malunga nazo zonke izinto ezibhaliweyo, ukususela ekudalweni kwehlabathi.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ndiza kuthetha nani malunga nezinto ezikhoyo, nezisaya kuza; ngako oko, ndiza kunifundela amazwi kaIsaya. Kwaye ngamazwi umkhuluwa wam abenqwela ukuba zendiwathethe kuni. Kwaye ndithetha kuni ukuze ninedakale, ukuze nifunde kwaye nilizukise igama loThixo wenu.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, amazwi endiza kuthi ndiwafunde ngalowo uIsaya awawathethayo malunga nayo yonke indlu kaSirayeli; ngako oko, asenokufaniswa nani, kuba ningabendlu kaSirayeli. Kwaye kukho izinto ezininzi ezithethiweyo nguIsaya ezinokufaniswa nani, kuba ningabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, la ngamazwi: Yatsho njalo ke iNkosi uThixo: Qaphelani, ndiya kusiphakamisela phezulu isandla sam kubo abeeNtlanga, kwaye ndimisele ibhanile yam ebantwini; kwaye baya kubafunqula oonyana benu ezingalweni zabo, kwaye neentombi zenu ziya kutyathwa emagxeni abo.

## 2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.



- 7 Kwaye ookumkani baya kuba ngabondli babo, baze ookumkanikazi babo babanyise; baya kuqubuda phantsi kuni ubuso babo bujongise ngasemhlabeni, baze bakhothe uthuli lweenyawo zenu; kwaye niya kuyazi ukuba ndim iNkosi; kuba abasayi kuba nazintloni abo bathi bandilindele.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku mna, Yakobi, ndinqwenela ukuthetha nje noko ngokunxulumene nala mazwi. Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi indibonisile ukuba abo babeseYerusalem, apho sasivela khona, batshatyalalisiwe kwaye bambi bathatyalhelwa ekuthinjweni.
- 9 Nangona kunjalo, iNkosi indibonisile ukuba baya kubuya kwakhona. Kwaye indibonisile kanjalo ukuba iNkosi uThixo, oyiNgcwele kaSirayeli, imele izibonakalise kubo isenyameni; kwaye emva kokuba izibonakalisile baya kumbetha ngeziniya baze bambethelele emnqamlezweni, ngokwamazwi engelosi eyathi yawathetha kum.
- 10 Kwaye emva kokuba beziqaqadekisile intliziyo zabo baza baziqinisa iintamo zabo ngokuchasene noyiNgcwele kaSirayeli, qaphelani, izigwebo zakhe oyiNgcwele kaSirayeli ziya kuza phezu kwabo. Kwaye uyeza umhla abaya kubethwa kwaye babandezeleke.
- 11 Ngako oko, emva kokuba beqhutyelwe ngapha nangapha, kuba itsho njalo ingelosi, abaninzi baya kubandezeleka enyameni, kwaye abasayi kuyekelwa ukuba batshabalale, ngenxa yemithandazo yabanyanisekileyo; baya kusasazwa, babethwe, kwaye bathiywe; nangona kunjalo, iNkosi iya kuba nenceba kubo, ukuze bathi xa beya kuza kulwazi loMkhululi wabo, baya kuhlangukelwa kunye kwakhona kumazwe elifa labo.
- 12 Kwaye basikelelekile abeeNtlanga, abo athe umprofeti wabhala ngabo; kuba qaphelani, ukuba kunokwenzeka ukuba baya kuguquka kwaye bangalwi ngokuchasene neZiyon, kwaye bangazimanyi nalo eloo bandla likhulu kwaye limasikizi, baya kusindiswa; kuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuyizalisekisa iminqophiso yayo ethe yayenza kubantwana bayo; kwaye kungesi sizathu athe umprofeti wazibhala ezi zinto.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.

- 13 Ngako oko, bona abalwa ngokuchasene neZiyon nabantu bomnqophiso weNkosi baya kukhotha uthuli ezinyaweni zabo; kwaye abantu beNkosi abasayi kuba nazintloni. Kuba abantu beNkosi ngabo bathi bayilindele; kuba basakulindele ukuza kukaMesiya.
- 14 Kwaye qaphelani, ngokwamazwi omprofeti, uMesiya uya kuqalisa kwakhona okwesibini ukubabuyisela; ngako oko, uya kuzibonakalisa kubo ngamandla nangozuko olukhulu, ukuze azitshabalalise iintshaba zabo, xa uthe wafika loo mhla xa beya kuthi bakholwe kuye, kwaye akukho namnye okholwayo kuye aya kumtshabalalisa.
- 15 Kwaye abo bangakholwayo kuye baya kutshatyalaliswa, kunye ngomlilo noqhwithela, nangeenyikima, nangeempalalo-gazi, nangezifo ezosulelayo, nangendlala. Kwaye baya kuyazi ukuba iNkosi inguThixo, oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 16 Kuba ingaba ixhoba liya kuthatyathwa kwabanamandlakazi, okanye umthinjwa ogcina umthetho akhululwe?
- 17 Kodwa itsho njalo iNkosi: Kwanabo abathinjwa babo abanamandlakazi baya kuthatyathwa bamkiswe, kwaye ixhoba lalowo woyikekayo liya kuhlangukwa; kuba uThixo onaMandlakazi uya kubahlangula abantu bakhe bomnqophiso. Kuba itsho njalo iNkosi: Ndiya kubambana kunye nabo babambana nawe—
- 18 Kwaye ndiya kubadlisa abo banicinezelayo ngeyabo inyama; kwaye baya kunxiliswa lelabo igazi lo ngokungathi yiwayini emnandi; kwaye yonke inyama iya kuyazi ukuba mna Nkosi ndinguMsindisi noMkhululi wakho, Omnye oMandlakazi kaYakobi.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

## 2 Nifayi 7

- 1 Ewe, kuba itsho njalo iNkosi: Ingaba ndinibekele kude na, okanye ingaba ndinilahlele kude ngonaphakade na? Kuba itsho njalo iNkosi: Liphi na iphepha loqhawulo-mtshato likanyoko? Ndikunikezele kubani, okanye nguwuphi na kwendibatyalayo endikuthengise kuye? Ewe, ndinithengise kubani na? Qaphelani, nizithengisile ngobugwenxa benu, kwaye ngenxa yokona kwenu wagxothwa unyoko.
- 2 Ngako oko, xa ndandifika, kwakungekho mntu; xa ndandibiza akuzange kubekho namnye usabelayo. Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, ingaba na isandla sam sifutshane nangaluphi uhlobo ukuze singabinakho ukukhulula, okanye andinamandla okuhlangulana? Qaphelani, ngokukhalima kwam ndiyalomisa ulwandle, ndiyenze imilambo yabo ibe yintlango kwaye iintlanzi zabo zinuke ngenxa yokuba amanzi etshile, kwaye zife ngenxa yokunxanwa.
- 3 Ndiwombathisa amazulu ngobumnyama, kwaye ndenze ingubo erhwexayo ibe sisigubungelo sawo.
- 4 INkosi uThixo indinike ulwimi lwabafundileyo, ukuze ndikwazi ukuthetha ilizwi ngelixa elifanelekileyo kuwe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli. Xa nina nidiniwe iyavuka intsasa nentsasa. Iyayivusa indlebe yam ukuze ndive njengabafundileyo.
- 5 INkosi uThixo wam iyivulile indlebe yam, kwaye andizange ndivukele, ndingazange ndabuya mva.
- 6 Ndawunikela umhlana wam kubabethi, kwaye nezidlele zam kubo abo babedlathula iindevu. Andizange ndibufihle ubuso bam ehlazweni nasekutshicelweni.
- 7 Kuba iNkosi uThixo uya kundinceda, ke ngoko andiyi kubhidaniswa. Ke ngoko ndibubeke ubuso bam njengelitye lenyengane, kwaye ndiyazi ukuba andisayi kuba nazintlani.
- 8 Kwaye iNkosi ikufuphi, kwaye iyandigwebela. Ngubani na oya kubambana nam? Masimeni kunye. Ngubani na olutshaba lwam? Mvumeleni eze kufuphi nam, kwaye ndiya kumbetha ngamandla omlomo wam.

## 2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

9 Kuba iNkosi uThixo iya kundinceda. Kwaye bonke abo baya kundigweba, qaphelani, bona bonke baya kuguga njengesambatho, kwaye inundu liya kubadla libagqibe.

10 Ngubani na phakathi kwenu oyoyikayo iNkosi, olithobelayo ilizwi lesicaka sayo, ohamba ebumnyameni kwaye engena kukhanya?

11 Qaphelani nonke nina baphemba umlilo, abazirhangqa jikelele ngeentlantsi, hambani ekukhanyeni komlilo wenu kwaye nakwiintlantsi enithe naziphemba. Oku niya kukufumana ngesandla sam—niya kulala phantsi niselusizini.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

## 2 Nifayi 8

- 1 Ndiphulaphuleni, nina balandela emva kobulungisa. Khangelani kwiliwa enaqetshulwa kulo, kwaye nakumngxuma womhadi lowo nanombiwe kuwo.
- 2 Khangelani kuAbraham, uyihlo, kwaye nakuSara, lowo wanizalayo; kuba ndambiza yedwa, kwaye ndamsikelela.
- 3 Kuba iNkosi iya kuyithuthuzela iZiyon, iya kuyithuthuzela yonke imiqwebedu yayo; kwaye ayenze intlango yayo ifane ne-Eden, kwaye nenkqantosi yomyezo yayo ifane nomyezo weNkosi. Ukugcoba, novuyo kuya kufumaneka kuyo, ukunika imibulelo nesandi selizwi lwengoma.
- 4 Ndiphulaphuleni, bantu bam; kwaye ndinikeni indlebe, Owu sizwe sam; kuba umthetho uya kuphuma uvela kum, kwaye ndiya kusenza isigwebo sam sibe njengesibane sabo abantu.
- 5 Ubulungisa bam bukufuphi; usindiso lwam luze ngaphambili, kwaye ingalo yam iya kubagweba abantu. Iziqithi ziya kundikhonza, kwaye baya kuthembela kwingalo yam.
- 6 Phakamiselani amehlo enu emazulwini, kwaye nikhangele ezantsi emhlabeni; kuba amazulu aya kuthi shwaka njengomsi, kwaye umhlaba uya kuguga njengesambatho; kwaye abo bawuhleliyo baya kufa kwangolo hlobo. Kodwa usindiso lwam luya kuba ngonaphakade, kwaye ubulungisa bam abuyi kubhangiswa.
- 7 Ndiphulaphuleni, nina nibaziyo ubulungisa, abantu endithe ndawubhala ezintliziyweni zabo umthetho wam, maze ningaloyiki ungcikivo lwabantu, ningazoyiki nazo izenyeliso zabo.
- 8 Kuba amanundu aya kubadla abagqibe njengesambatho, kwaye nempehla iya kubadla njengoboya. Kodwa ubulungisa bam buya kuba ngonaphakade, kwaye usindiso lwam lusuke kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana.
- 9 Vuka, vuka! Vatha ukomelela, Owu ngalo yeNkosi; vuka nje ngemihla yamandulo. Akunguye na lowo owaxabela uRahabhi, waze wayosela inamba enkulu?

## 2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

- 10 Akunguye na lowo walomisayo ulwandle, amanzi enzulu enkulu; lowo wenza iinzulu zolwandle zayindlela ukuze abahlawulelweyo bawebele ngaphaya?
- 11 Ke ngoko, abakhululiweyo beNkosi baya kubuya, kwaye beze bevuma ingoma yeZiyon; novuyo lwanaphakade nobungcwele buya kuhlala phezu kweentloko zabo; kwaye baya kuzuza ukugcoba novuyo; usizi nokuzila ziya kubaleka zimke.
- 12 Ndinguye, ewe, ndinguye okuthuthuzelayo. Qaphela, ungubani na wena, ukuba ungyoyika umntu, oya kuthi afe, kwaye nonyana womntu, oya kuthi enziwe abe njengengca?
- 13 Uze uyilibale iNkosi umenzi wakho, eyathi yawolula amazulu, yaza yazibeka iziseko zomhlaba, kwaye woyika ngalo lonke ixesha imihla yonke, ngenxa yoburhalarhume bombandezeli, ngokungathi sele elungele ukutshabalalisa? Kwaye buphi uburhalarhume bombandezeli?
- 14 Umthinjwa oselubhacweni uyakhawuleza, ukuze akhululwe, kwaye nokuba aze angafeli emhadini, nokokuba isonka sakhe singapheli.
- 15 Kodwa ndiyiyo iNkosi uThixo wakho, emaza ayo agqumayo; iNkosi yeMikhosi ligama lam.
- 16 Kwaye ndiwabekile amazwi am emlonyeni wakho, kwaye ndikugqumile esithunzini sezandla zam, ukuze ndilime amazulu kwaye ndibeke iziseko zomhlaba, ndize ndithi kuyo iZiyon: Qaphelani, ningabantu bam.
- 17 Vuka, vuka, phakama, Owu Yerusalem, ethe yasela esandleni seNkosi indebe yoburhalarhume bayo—usele intlenge yendebe eyoyikekayo ikhanyiwe—
- 18 Kwaye kungekho namnye umkhokelayo phakathi kwabo bonke oonyana athe wabazala; kungekho namnye othe wamthabatha ngesandla, kubo bonke oonyana athe wabakhulisa.
- 19 Aba babini oonyana baze kuwe, ngubani na oya kuba nosizi nguwe—kukudakumba kwakho nentshabalalo, nendlala nekrele—kwaye ngubani na endiya kukuthuthuzela ngaye?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

- 20 Oonyana bakho bawe isiduli, ngaphandle kwababini; balele ekungeneni kwazo zonke izitrato; njengenkunzi edlongodlongo emnatheni, bazele buburhalarhume beNkosi, kukukhalima koThixo wakho.
- 21 Ke ngoko yiva le nto ngoku, wena ubandezelekileyo, kwaye unxila, kwaye kungeyiyo iwayini:
- 22 Itsho njalo iNkosi yakho, iNkosi noThixo wakho ebacengelayo abantu bayo; qaphelani, ndiyithabathile esandleni senu indebe eyoyikekayo, intlenge yendebe yoburhalarhume bam; akusayi kuze uphinde uyisele kwakhona.
- 23 Kodwa ndiya kuyibeka ezandleni zabo banibandezelayo; abathi emphefumlweni wakho: Qubuda phantsi, ukuze sihambe sigqithe—kwaye wawubeka umzimba wakho njengomhlaba nanjengesitrato kwabo babehamba begqitha.
- 24 Vuka, vuka, vatha ukomelela kwakho, Owu Ziyon; vatha izambatho zakho ezibukekayo, Owu Yerusalem, isixeko esingcwele; kuba ukususela ngoku akusayi kuphinda kuze kuwe abangolukanga naba zinqambi.
- 25 Zivuthulule eluthulini; phakama, hlala phantsi, Owu Yerusalem; zikhulule kwizibophelelo zentamo yakho; Owu mthinjwa wentombi yayo iZiyon.

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God pleadeth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

## 2 Nifayi 9

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndizifundile ezi zinto ukuze nazi malunga neminqophiso yeNkosi athe wanqophisana ngayo kunye nayo yonke indlu kaSirayeli—
- 2 Athe wathetha ngayo kumaYuda, ngomlomo wabaprofeti abangcwele, kwanasekuqalekeni ukuhla, ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana, kude kufike ilixa lokuba beya kubuyiselwa kulo ibandla eliyinyani nomhlambi kaThixo; xa beya kuhlangukelwa ekhaya kumazwe elifa labo, kwaye baya kuzinziswa kuwo onke amazwe abo esithembiso.
- 3 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndizithetha kuni ezi zinto ukuze nibe nokugcoba, kwaye niziphakamisele phezulu iintloko zenu ngonaphakade, ngenxa yeentsikelelo eya kuthi iNkosi uThixo izithobe phezulu kwabantwana benu.
- 4 Kuba ndiyazi ukuba niphengulule ngakumbi, abaninzi benu, ukuze nazi ngezinto ezisezayo; ngako oko ndiyazi ukuba niyayazi ukuba inyama yethu kufuneka iguge kwaye ife; nangona kunjalo, sikuyo imizimba yethu siya kumbona uThixo.
- 5 Ewe, ndiyazi ukuba niyayazi ukuba ngomzimba uya kuzibonakalisa kwabo baseYerusalem, apho sasivela khona; kuba kuyimfuneko ukuba kube phakathi kwabo; kuba kufanelekile ukuba uMdali omkhulu aziyekele abe phantsi komntu esenyameni, kwaye afele bonke abantu, ukuze bonke abantu babephantsi kwakhe.
- 6 Kuba njengoko ukufa kwehla phezulu kwabo bonke abantu, ukuze kuzaliseke icebo lenceba loMdali omkhulu, kumele kubekho amandla ovuko, kwaye uvuko lumele luze emntwini ngenxa yokuwa; kwaye ukuwa kweza ngenxa yokona; kwaye ngenxa yokuba abantu bawa baye basikelwa ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi.
- 7 Ngako oko, kumele kube yintlawulelo engenamda—ngaphandle kokuba ibe yintlawulelo engenamda oku konakala akunako ukuvatha ukungonakali. Ngako oko, isigwebo sokuqala esehla phezulu komntu bekuya kufuneka sihlale singenaxesha lasiphelo. Kwaye ukuba kunjalo, le nyama ibiya kulala phantsi ibole kwaye ivuthulukele kunina wayo umhlaba, ingaze ivuke.

## 2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.



- 8 Owu ubulumko bukaThixo, inceba yakhe nobabalo! Kuba qaphela, ukuba inyama ibingayi kuphinda ivuke oomoya bethu bebeya kuba phantsi kwalaa ngelosi yawayo yasuka phambi kobuso bukaThixo waNaphakade, yaza yaba ngumtyholi, ingaze iphinde ivuke.
- 9 Kwaye oomoya bethu bebeya kufana naye, kwaye sibe ngoomtyholi, iingelosi zomtyholi, size sivalelwe ngaphandle kubuso bukaThixo wethu, kwaye sihlale noyise wobuxoki, siselusizini, njengaye; ewe, kulowo wakhohlisa abazali bethu bokuqala, owathi wazimilisa okwesithunywa sokukhanya, kwaye aphembelele abantwana babantu kumayelenqe afihlakeleyo okubulala nazo zonke iintlobo zemisebenzi yobumnyama efihlakeleyo.
- 10 Owu obunjani ubulungisa boThixo wethu, osilungiselela indlela yokuphuncuka kwizandla zelo rhamncwa loyikekayo; ewe, elo rhamncwa, ukufa nesihogo, endikubiza ukufa komzimba, kananjalo ukufa komoya.
- 11 Kwaye ngenxa yendlela yentlangulo kaThixo wethu, oNgcwele kaSirayeli, oku kufa, endithethe ngako, okukokomzuzwana, kuya kubakhulula abafileyo bako; ukufa oko okulingcwaba.
- 12 Kwaye oku kufa ndithethe ngako, oku kukufa ngokomoya, kuya kubakhulula abafileyo bako; ukufa okukokomoya kusionhogo; ngako oko, ukufa nesihogo kumele kukhulule abafileyo bazo, kwaye isihogo kumele sikhulule abathinjwa baso bekumoya, kwaye nengcwaba limele likhulule abathinjwa balo bomzimba, kwaye imizimba noomoya babantu baya kubuyiselwa omnye komnye; kwaye kungamandla ovuko lwakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 13 Owu ukuba likhulu kwecebo loThixo wethu! Kuba kwelinye icala, iparadesi kaThixo kumele ikhulule oomoya bamalungisa, kwaye nengcwaba likhulule imizimba yamalungisa; kwaye umoya womzimba ubuyiselwe kuwo kwakhona, baze bonke abantu babe nokungonakali, kwaye bangabi nakufa, kwaye bayimiphefumlo ephilayo, benolwazi olugqibeleleyo benjengathi enyameni, ngaphandle nje kokuba ulwazi lwethu luya kugqibelela.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.

- 14 Ngako oko, siya kuba nolwazi olugqibeleleyo lwawo onke amatyala ethu, nokungacoceki kwethu, nobuze bethu; kwaye amalungisa aya kubanolwazi olugqibeleleyo ngolonwabo lwawo, nobulungisa bawo, bembathiswe ubunyulu, ewe, kwa nangaso isambatho sobulungisa.
- 15 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba xa abantu bonke beya kube bedlule koku kufa kokuqala baye ebomini, ngenxa yokuba beye bangabi nakufa, kumele bavele phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba soNgcwele kaSirayeli; kuze ke kufike umgwebo, kwaye ke kufuneka bagwetywe malunga nomgwebo ongcwele kaThixo.
- 16 Kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo, njengoko iNkosi iphila, kuba iNkosi uThixo iyithethile, kwaye ililizwi lakhe lanaphakade, elingenakudlula, lokuba abo bangamalungisa baya kuhlala besengamalungisa, kwaye abo banyhuku-nyhuku baya kuhlala besenyhuku-nyhuku; ngako oko, abo banyhuku-nyhuku bangumtyholi neengelosi zakhe; kwaye baya kuhamba baye kuphoswa emlilweni wanaphakade, olungiselelwe bona; kwaye nentuthumbo yabo injengedike lomlilo nesalfure, edangatya layo linyukela phezulu ngonaphakade kanaphakade kwaye alinasiphelo.
- 17 Owu ubukhulu nobulungisa bukaThixo wethu! Kuba uya wafezekisa amazwi akhe, kwaye aphume emlonyeni wakhe, kwaye umthetho wakhe kumele uzaliseke.
- 18 Kodwa, qaphela, amalungisa, abangcwele bakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli, abo bathi bakholwa kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli, abo bathe bayinyamezela iminqamlezo yehlabathi, kwaye balicekisa ihlazo lalo, baya kubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo, obabulungiselelwe bona ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, kwaye uvuyo lwabo luya kuzaliseka ngonaphakade.
- 19 Owu ubukhulu benceba kaThixo wethu, oNgcwele kaSirayeli! Kuba uyabakhulula abangcwele bakhe kwelo rhamncwa loyikekayo umtyholi, nokufa, nesihogo, kwaye nelo dike lomlilo nesalfure, eliyintuthumbo engenasiphelo.
- 20 Owu ubukhulu bobungcwele boThixo wethu! Kuba uyazazi zonke izinto, kwaye akukho nanye into angayaziyo.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our nakedness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, being clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and then cometh the judgment, and then must they be judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the devil and his angels; and they shall go away into everlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for them from the foundation of the world, and their joy shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he knows it.

- 21 Kwaye uza ehlabathini ukuze abe nokusindisa bonke abantu ukuba baya kuliphulaphula ilizwi lakhe; kuba qaphelani, unyamezela iintlungu zabantu bonke, ewe, iintlungu zazo zonke izidalwa eziphilayo, bekunye amadoda, abafazi, nabantwana abangabosapho luka-Adam.
- 22 Kwaye ukunyamezela oku ukuze uvuko luze phezu kwabo bonke abantu, ukuze bonke babe nokuma phambi kwakhe ngomhla omkhulu womgwebo.
- 23 Kwaye uyalela bonke abantu ukuba baguquke, kwaye babhaptizwe egameni lakhe, benokholo olugqibeleleyo kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli, okanye abanako ukusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo.
- 24 Kwaye ukuba abaguquki baze bakholelwe egameni lakhe, baze babhaptizwe egameni lakhe, baze banyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, kumele bagwetywe; kuba iNkosi uThixo, oyiNgcwele kaSirayeli, iyithethile.
- 25 Ngako oko, unike umthetho; kwaye apho kunganikwanga mthetho akukho sohlwayo sinikwayo; kwaye apho kungekho sohlwayo akukho sigwebo; kwaye apho kungekho sigwebo iinceba zakhe oyiNgcwele kaSirayeli zinebango phezu kwabo, ngenxa yentlawulelo; kuba bahlangulwe ngamandla akhe.
- 26 Kuba intlawulelo izalisekisa iimfuno zobulungisa phezu kwabo bonke abo bangenawo umthetho abawunikiweyo, ukuze bakhululwe kwelo rhamncwa loyikekayo, ukufa nesihogo, nomtyholi, nedike lomlilo nesalfure, eliyintuthumbo engenasiphelo; kwaye babuyiselwa kulaa Thixo owabanika umphefumlo, onguye oyiNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 27 Kodwa yeha kulowo uwunikiweyo umthetho, ewe, onayo yonke imiyalelo kaThixo, njengathi, kwaye lowo uyophulayo, kwaye nalowo uyichithayo imihla yakhe yokulingwa, kuba iyoyikeka imo yakhe!

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

28 Owu elo cebo lobuqhetseba longendawo! Owu ukuba lilize, kwaye nobuthathaka, kwaye nobuyatha babantu! Xa sukuba befundile bacinga ukuba banobulumko, kwaye bangaliphulaphuli icebiso likaThixo, kuba balibekela ecaleni, becinga ukuba bayazazela, ngako oko, ubulumko babo bubuyatha kwaye obungenaluncedo kubo. Kwaye baya kutshabalala.

29 Kodwa ukuba ngabafundileyo kulungile, ukuba baya ziphulaphula iingcebiso zikaThixo.

30 Kodwa yeha kwabo bazizityebi, abazizityebi ngokwezinto zehlabathi. Kuba ngenxa yokuba bezizityebi bayabacekisa abangamahlwempu, kwaye babatshutshise abanobulali, kwaye iintliziyo zabo ziphezu kobutyebi babo; ngako oko, ubutyebi babo bunguthixo wabo. Kwaye qaphela, ubutyebi babo buya kutshabalala kunye nabo kanjalo.

31 Kwaye yeha kwabo bazizithulu abangafuniyo ukuva; kuba baya kutshabalala.

32 Yeha kwabo bazimfama abangafuniyo ukubona; kuba baya kutshabalala kanjalo.

33 Yeha kwabo bangolukanga ngentliziyo, kuba ulwazi lobugwenxa babo luya kubatshabalalisa ngomhla wokugqibela.

34 Yeha kuye olixoki, kuba uya kuphoswa ezantsi esihogweni.

35 Yeha kulowo ungumbulali obulala ngabom, kuba uya kufa.

36 Yeha kubo abo benza uhenyuzo, kuba baya kuphoswa ezantsi esihogweni.

37 Ewe, yeha kubo abo banqula izithixo, kuba umtyholi wabatyholi uya vuyiswa ngabo.

38 Kwaye, lilonke, yeha kubo bonke abafela ezonweni zabo; kuba baya kubuyela kuThixo, kwaye babubone ubuso bakhe, baze bahlale besezonweni zabo.

39 Owu, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, khumbulani ukoyikeka kokona ngokuchasene naloo Thixo uNgcwele, kwaye kanjalo ukoyikeka kokuziyekela ekulukuhlweni ngulowo unobuqhinga. Khumbulani, ukucinga ngokwenyama kukufa, kwaye ukucinga ngokomoya bubomi obungunaphakade.

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

40 Owu, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, nikani indlebe kuwo amazwi am. Khumbulani ubungangamsha bakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli. Musani ukuthi ndithethe izinto ezinzima ngokuchasene nani; kuba ukuba nenza njalo, niya kuyinyelisa inyaniso; kuba ndithethe amazwi oMenzi wenu. Ndiyazi ukuba amazwi enyaniso anzima kuko konke okungacocekanga; kodwa abangamalungisa abawoyiki, kuba bayayithanda inyaniso kwaye abagungqi.

41 Owu ke, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, yizani kuyo iNkosi, eyiNgcwele. Khumbulani ukuba iindlela zakhe zibubulungisa. Qaphelani, indlela yomntu icuthene, kodwa ihleli emendweni othe tye phambi kwakhe, kwaye umgcini wesango nguye oNgcwele kaSirayeli; kwaye akabekanga sicaka kulo; kwaye ayikho enye indlela ngaphandle kokuba kube kungesango; kuba akanakukhohliswa, kuba iNkosi uThixo ligama lakhe.

42 Kwaye lowo unkqonkqozayo, uya kuvulelwa; kwaye izilumko, nabafundileyo, nabo bazizityebi, abazikhukhumalisayo ngenxa yemfundo yabo, nobulumko babo, nobutyebi babo—ewe, ngabo abo abacekisayo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baziphosele kude ezi zinto, kwaye bazijonge ngokwezidenge phambi koThixo, kwaye bahlele ezantsi ebunzulwini bentobeko, akasayi kubavulela.

43 Kodwa izinto zezilumko nabo bazilumkeleyo ziya kufihlwa kubo ngonaphakade—ewe, olo lonwabo luthelwalungiselelwa abangcwele.

44 Owu, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, khumbulani amazwi am. Qaphelani, ndiyazikhulula izambatho zam, kwaye ndiyazivuthulula phambi kwenu; ndithandaza uThixo wosindiso lwam ukuba andikhangele ngeliso lakhe elibona konke; ngako oko, niya kuthi nazi ngomhla wokugqibela, xa sukuba bonke abantu beya kugwetywa ngokwemisebenzi yabo, okokuba uThixo kaSirayeli wangqina ukuba ndabuvuthulula ubugwenxa benu emphefumleni wam, kwaye nokokuba ndime ndinenkazimlo phambi kwakhe, kwaye ndimsulwa egazini lenu.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

- 45 Owu, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, zifulatheleni izono zenu; niwavuthulule amatyathanga alowo onokunibophelela aniqinise; yizani kuloo Thixo uliliwa losindiso lwenu.
- 46 Yilungiseni imiphefumlo yenu niyilungiselela loo mini izukileyo xa ubulungisa buya kunikezelwa kumalungisa, kwanawo umhla womgwebo, ukuze ningabi nakufinyela luloyiko olukhulu; ukuze ningalikhumbuli ngokugqibeleleyo ityala lenu eloyikekayo, nize ninyanzeleke ukuba nidanduluke: Zingcwele, zingcwele izigwebo zakho, Owu Nkosi Thixo Somandla—kodwa ndiyalazi ityala lam; ndawophula umthetho wakho, kwaye iziphoso zam zezam; kwaye umtyholi ebendifumene, ukuze ndibe lixhoba losizi lwakhe oloyikekayo.
- 47 Kodwa qaphelani, bazalwana bam, ingaba na kuyimfuneko ukuba ndinivusele kubunyani oboyikisayo bezi zinto? Bendingayihlupha imiphefumlo yenu ukuba iingcinga zenu bezimsulwa? Bendinganicacisela malunga nokucaca kwenyaniso ukuba benikhululwe esonweni?
- 48 Qaphelani, ukuba nibe ningcwele bendiya kuthetha nani ngobungcwele; kodwa njengokuba ningekho ngcwele, kwaye nikhangele kum njengo titshala wenu, kumele ukuba kube yimfuneko ukuba ndinifundise iziphumo zesono.
- 49 Qaphelani, umphefumlo wam usithiyile isono, kwaye intliziyo yam iyavuyiswa bubulungisa; kwaye ndiya kulidumisa igama elingcwele likaThixo wam.
- 50 Yizani, bazalwana bam, nonke nina ninxaniweyo, yizani emanzini; kwaye lowo ungenayo imali, makeze athenge kwaye atye; ewe, uthenge iwayini nobisi ngaphandle kwemali nangaphandle kwexabiso.
- 51 Ngako oko, musani ukusebenzisa imali kuloo nto ingenaxabiso, okanye umsebenzi wakho ngaloo nto ingenako ukukwanelisa. Ndiphulaphuleni ngenkuthalo, kwaye niwakhumbule amazwi endiwathethileyo; kwaye nize kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli, kwaye nizondle ngoko kungaboliyo, nokungena konakaliswa, kwaye niyenze imiphefumlo yenu ikuvuyele ukutyeba.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous, even the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with awful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy, holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my transgressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me, that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things? Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart delighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember the words which I have spoken; and come unto the Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which perisheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your soul delight in fatness.

52 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, khumbulani amazwi oThixo wenu; thandazani kuye amaxesha onke ngemini, kwaye ninikele imibulelo kulo igama lakhe elingcwele ngobusuku. Mazivuye iintliziyo zenu.

53 Kwaye nikubone ukuba mikhulu kweminqophiso yeNkosi, nokuba kukhulu kweentobeko zakhe kubantwana babantu; nangenxa yobungangamsha bakhe, yobabalo lwakhe nenceba yakhe, usithembisile ukuba imbewu yethu ayisayi kutshatyalaliswa kuphele, ngokwasenyameni, kodwa uya kuyilondoloza; nakwizizukulwana ezizayo iya kuba lisebe elinobulungisa kuyo indlu kaSirayeli.

54 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinga ndingathetha ngokungakumbi nani; kodwa ngengomso ndiya kunichazela intsalela yamazwi am. Amen.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night. Let your hearts rejoice.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 10

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Yakobi, ndithetha nani kwakhona, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, malunga neli sebe linobulungisa ebendithethe ngalo.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, izithembiso esithe sazizuzo zizithembiso eziza kuthi ngokwasenyameni; ngako oko, njengoko bekubonakalisiwe kum ukuba abaninzi kubantwana bethu baya kutshabalala enyameni ngenxa yokungakhohla, nangona kunjalo, uThixo uya kuba nenceba kwabaninzi; kwaye abantwana bethu baya kubuyiselwa, ukuze babe nokuzo koko kuya kuthi kubanike ulwazi oluyinyani loMkhululi wabo.
- 3 Ngako oko, njengoko nditshilo kuni, kumele ukuba kube kufanelekile ukuba uKrestu—kuba ngobusuku obudluleyo ingelosi yathetha nam ukuthi eli liya kuba ligama lakhe—eze phakathi kwamaYuda, phakathi kwabo bangabona bayinxenye yenkohlakalo yehlabathi; kwaye baya kumbethelela emnqamlezweni—kuba njalo kuyintando kuye uThixo wethu, kwaye asikho esinye isizwe emhlabeni esinakho ukumbethelela emnqamlezweni uThixo waso.
- 4 Kuba ukuba imimangaliso enamandlakazi inokuthi yenziwe phakathi kwenzinye izizwe zingaguquka, kwaye zazi ukuba unguThixo wazo.
- 5 Kodwa ngenxa yobubingeleli bobuxoki nobugwenxa, bona abaseYerusalem baya kuziqinisa iintamo zabo ngokuchasene naye, aze abethelelwe emnqamlezweni.
- 6 Ngako oko, ngenxa yobugwenxa babo, iintshabalalo, iindlala, izifo ezibulalayo, kwanempalalogazi ziya kuza phezu kwabo; kwaye abo bangasayi kutshatyalaliswa baya kusasazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe.
- 7 Kodwa qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Xa sukuba ufika umhla abaya kuthi bakholelwe kum, okokuba ndinguKrestu, ke ndinqophisene nooyise okokuba baya kubuyiselwa besesenyameni, phezu komhlaba, kuwo amazwe elifa labo.

## 2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.



- 8 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba baya kuhlanganiselwa ngaphakathi ukubuya; ekusasazweni ixesha elide, ukusuka kwiziqithi zolwandle, nakwiimbombo zone zomhlaba, kwaye izizwe zabeeNtlanga ziya kuba namandla amakhulu emehlweni am, utsho uThixo, ngokubazisa kumazwe elifa labo.
- 9 Ewe, izikumkani zabeeNtlanga ziya kuba ngabondli kubo, baze ookumkanikazi bazo baya kubanyisa, ngako oko, izithembiso zeNkosi zibalulekile kubo abeeNtlanga, kuba ukuthethile, kwaye ngubani na onokumphikisa?
- 10 Kodwa qaphela, eli lizwe, watsho uThixo, iya kuba lilizwe lelifa lakho, nabeeNtlanga baya kusikeleleka phezu kwelizwe.
- 11 Kwaye eli lizwe liya kuba lilizwe lenkululeko kubo abeeNtlanga, kwaye akusayi kubakho zikumkani phezu kwelizwe, eziya kuphakanyiswa kubo abeeNtlanga.
- 12 Kwaye ndiya kuliqinisa eli ilizwe ngakuzo zonke ezinye izizwe.
- 13 Kwaye lowo ulwa ngokuchasene neZiyon uya kutshabalala, utsho uThixo.
- 14 Kuba lowo uphakamisa ukumkani ngokuchasene nam uya kutshabalala, kuba mna, iNkosi, ukumkani wezulu, ndiya kuba ngukumkani wabo, kwaye ndiya kuba kukukhanya kubo ngonaphakade, abathi baweve amazwi am.
- 15 Ngako oko, ngesi sizathu, ukuze iminqophiso yam izaliseke endithe ndayenza kubantwana babantu, endiya kuthi ndiyenze kubo ngeli lixa besenyameni, kumele ndiyitshabalalise imisebenzi yobumnyama efihlakeleyo, neyokubulala, neyamasikizi.
- 16 Ngako oko, lowo ulwa ngokuchasene neZiyon, kunye umYuda noweNtlanga, kunye umthinjwa nokhululekileyo, kunye indoda nomfazi, baya kutshabalala; kuba bangabo abo bangabahenyuzi balo lonke ihlabathi; kuba abo bangekho ngakum bachasene nam, utsho uThixo wethu.
- 17 Kuba ndiya kuzizalisekisa izithembiso zam endithe ndayenza kubantwana babantu, kuba ndiyakwenza kubo ngeli lixa besenyameni—

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

18 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, utsho njalo uThixo wethu: Ndiya kuyibandezela imbewu yakho ngesandla sabeeNtlanga; nangona kunjalo, ndiya kuzithambisa iintliziyo zabeeNtlanga, ukuze bafane nobawo kubo; ngako oko, abeeNtlanga baya kusikeleleka kwaye babalelwe phakathi kwendlu kaSirayeli.

19 Ngako oko, ndiya kulingcwalisa eli lizwe kuyo imbewu yakho, kwaye nakwabo baya kubalelwa phakathi kwembewu yakho, ngonaphakade, ibe lilizwe lelifa labo; kuba lilizwe elikhethekileyo, utshilo uThixo kum, ngaphezulu kunawo onke amanye amazwe, ngako oko ndiya kufuna okokuba bonke abantu abahlala kulo ukuba baze banqule mna, utsho uThixo.

20 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, xa sibona ukuba uThixo wethu onenceba usinike ulwazi olungakumbi kangaka malunga nezi zinto, masimkhumbule, sizibekele ecaleni izono zethu, kwaye singazithokombiseli ezantsi iintloko zethu, kuba asiphoselwanga kude; nangona kunjalo, siqhutyelwe ngaphandle kwilizwe lelifa lethu; kodwa sikhokelelwe kwilizwe elilunge ngakumbi, kuba iNkosi ilenze ulwandle lwaba yindlela yethu, kwaye siphezu kwesiqithi solwandle.

21 Kodwa zinentsingiselo izithembiso zeNkosi kubo abo baphezu kweziqithi zolwandle; ngako oko njengokuba ixela iziqithi, kuyimfuneko ukuba zibe ngaphezulu kunoku, kwaye zimiwe kanjalo ngabazalwana bethu.

22 Kuba qaphela, iNkosi uThixo ikhokelele kude amaxesha ngamaxesha ukusuka kwindlu kaSirayeli, ngokwentando nolonwabo lwayo. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, iNkosi iyabakhumbula bonke abo babeqetshulwe, ngako oko iyasikhumbula nathi kanjalo.

23 Ke ngoko, thakazelisani iintliziyo zenu, kwaye nikhumbule okokuba nikhululekile ukuba nizenzele —nikhethe indlela yokufa ngonaphakade okanye indlela yobomi obungunaphakade.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

24 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, zinikeleni kuyo intando kaThixo, kwaye ingabi yintando yomtyholi neyenyama; kwaye khumbulani, emva kokuba nizinikele kuThixo, ukuba kukulo kwaye kungalo kuphela ubabalo lukaThixo ukuba nisindiswe.

25 Ngako oko, wanga uThixo anganivusa ekufeni ngamandla ovuko, kananjalo ekufeni kwanaphakade, ngamandla entlawulelo, ukuze nibe nokwamkeleka kubukumkani bukaThixo banaphakade, ukuze nibe nokumdumisa ngobabalo olunyulu. Amen.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 11

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, uYakobi wathetha izinto ezininzi ezingakumbi kubo abantu bam ngelo xesha; nangona kunjalo zezi zinto kuphela endithe ndenza ukuba mazibhalwe, kuba izinto endithe ndazibhala zindonele.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndibhala amazwi angakumbi kaIsaya, kuba umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa ngamazwi akhe. Kuba ndiya kuwafanekisa amazwi akhe nabantu bam, kwaye ndiya kuwathumela phambili kubo bonke abantwana bam, kuba wambona ngokwenene uMkhululi wam, kwanjengokuba nam ndambona.
- 3 Kwaye umntakwethu, uYakobi, kanjalo umbonile njengokuba nam ndimbonile; ngako oko, ndiya kuwathumela amazwi abo kubo abantwana bam ukungqina kubo ukuba amazwi am ayinyani. Ngako oko, ngamazwi wabathathu, uThixo uthe, ndiya kulizinzisa ilizwi lam. Nangona kunjalo, uThixo uthumela amangqina angakumbi, kwaye uyawangqina onke amazwi akhe.
- 4 Qaphelani, umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa kukubonisa kubo abantu bam ngenyaniso yokuza kuka Krestu; kuba, kungale njongo umthetho kaMoses uthe wanikwa; kwaye zonke izinto ezithe zanikwa nguThixo ukususela ekuqalekeni kwehlabathi, ebantwini, zingumfuziselo wakhe.
- 5 Kwaye umphefumlo wam kanjalo uyavuyiswa yiminqophiso yeNkosi eyathi yawenza koobawo bethu; ewe, umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa lubabalo lwakhe, nasebulungiseni bakhe, namandla, nenceba kwisebo lakhe elikhulu lanaphakade lokukhulula ekufeni.
- 6 Kwaye umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa kukubonisa kubo abantu bam ukuba ngaphandle kokuba uKrestu abe uya kuza bonke abantu kufuneka batshabalale.
- 7 Kuba ukuba akunakubakho Krestu akunakubakho Thixo; kwaye ukuba akanakubakho uThixo asikho nathi, kuba ngeyingekho indalo. Kodwa ukhona uThixo, kwaye unguKrestu, kwaye uyeza ekuzalisekeni kwelakhe ixesha.

## 2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

8 Kwaye ngoku ndibhala amanye kumazwi kaIsaya,  
ukuze nabani na kubantu bam abaya kuthi  
bawabone la mazwi babe nokuziphakamisela  
phezulu iintliziyo zabo kwaye bagcobele bonke  
abantu. Ngoku la ngamazwi, kwaye  
ningawafanekisa nani kwaye nabo bonke abantu.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that  
whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up  
their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are  
the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto  
all men.

## 2 Nifayi 12

- 1 Ilizwi awathi uIsaya, unyana ka-Amotsi, walibona ngokunxulumene noYuda neYerusalem:
- 2 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngemihla yokugqibela, xa sukuba intaba yendlu yeNkosi iya kuqinisekiswa ezincotsheni zazo iintaba, kwaye iphakanyiswe phezu kwazo iinduli, kwaye zonke izizwe ziya kuba ngumsinga ukuya kuyo.
- 3 Kwaye abaninzi abantu baya kuya kwaye bathi, Yizani nina, kwaye masinyuke siye entabeni yeNkosi, kuyo indlu kaThixo kaYakobi; kwaye uya kusifundisa ngee-ndlela zakhe, kwaye siya kuhamba ngomendo wakhe; kuba eZiyon kuya kuphuma umthetho, nelizwi leNkosi liphume eYerusalem.
- 4 Kwaye uya kugweba phakathi kwezizwe, aze akhalimele abantu abaninzi: kwaye baya kuwakhanda amakrele abo abe zizikhali zekhuba, nemikhonto yabo ibe zizitshetshe zokuthena —isizwe asiyi kuphakamisa krele kwesinye isizwe, bengayi kube baphinde bafunde mlo.
- 5 Owu ndlu kaYakobi, yizani nina kwaye masihambeni ekukhanyeni kwayo iNkosi; ewe, kuba nonke nilahlekile, ingulowo kwezakhe iindlela ezikhohlakeleyo.
- 6 Ke ngoko, Owu Nkosi, ubashiyile abantu bakho, indlu kaYakobi, ngenxa yokuba bezaliswe ziimpembelelo zasempumalanga, kwaye baphulaphula koosiyazi njengamaFilisti, kwaye bebambene ngezandla nabantwana bezinye iintlanga.
- 7 Ilizwe labo kanjalo lizele yisilivere negolide, kungekho nasiphelo kubutyebi babo; nelizwe labo kanjalo lizele ngamahashe, kungekho nasiphelo kwiinqwelo zabo zokulwa.
- 8 Ilizwe labo kanjalo lizele zizithixo; banqula umsebenzi wezandla zabo, into leyo eyenziwe yiminwe yabo.
- 9 Kwaye umntu nje akathobeli, kwanesikhulu asizithobi, ke ngoko, musa ukumxolela.
- 10 Owu nina bakhohlakeleyo, ngenani kulo iliwa, kwaye nizifihle eluthulini, ngenxa yokoyika iNkosi nozuko lobukhosi bayo luya kunibetha.

## 2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

11 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba iinkangeleko zempakamo yabantu ziya kuthobeka, nobukhakhamelela babantu buya kuthotyelwa phantsi, kwaye yiNkosi kuphela eya kuphakanyiswa ngaloo mhla.

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

12 Kuba umhla weNkosi yeMikhosi uyeza kwakamsinya phezu kwazo zonke izizwe, ewe, phezu kwakhe wonke ubani; ewe, phezu kwabanekratshi nabaphakamileyo, kwaye naphezu kwakhe nabanina onyusiweyo, kwaye uya kuthotyelwa phantsi.

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

13 Ewe, kwaye umhla weNkosi uya kufika phezu kwayo yonke imisedare yaseLebhanon, kuba mide kwaye inyukele phezulu; naphezu kwayo yonke imioki yaseBhashan;

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

14 Naphezu kwazo zonke iintaba eziphakamileyo, naphezu kwazo zonke iinduli, naphezu kwazo zonke izizwe eziphakanyisiweyo, naphezu kwabo bonke abantu;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

15 Naphezu kwayo nayiphi inqaba ephakamileyo, nangaphezu kwalo naluphina udonga olubiyelweyo;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

16 Naphezu kwazo zonke iinqanawa zolwandle, naphezu kwazo zonke iinqanawa zaseTarshishe, naphezu kwayo yonke imifanekiso enqwenelekayo.

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

17 Kwaye impakamo yomntu iya kuthotyelwa phantsi, kwaye nobukhakhamelela babantu buya kubekelwa ezantsi; kwaye yiNkosi kuphela eya kuphakanyiswa ngaloo mhla.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

18 Kwaye nezithixo uya kuzibhangisa ngokupheleleyo.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

19 Kwaye ziya kuya emingxunyeni yamawa, nasemiqolombeni yomhlaba, kuba uloyiko lweNkosi luya kuza phezu kwabo nozuko lobukhosi bayo luya kubabetha, xa sukuba ephakama ukuwugungqisa ngokoyikekayo umhlaba.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

20 Ngaloo mhla umntu uya kuzilahla izithixo zakhe zesilivere, nezithixo zakhe zegolide, abethe wazenzela ngokwakhe ukuze azinqule, kuzo iintuku nakuwo amalulwane;

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

21 Ukuze angene kuzo iimfanta zamawa, nasezincotsheni zamawa azingxondorha, kuba uloyiko lweNkosi luya kufika phezu kwabo nobukhosi bozuko lwakhe buya kubabetha, xa sukuba ephakama ukuwugungqisa ngokoyikekayo umhlaba.

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

22 Myekeni umntu, okuphefumla kwakhe  
kusemathatheni akhe; kuba yintoni na aya kuthi  
axabiseke ngayo?

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils;  
for wherein is he to be accounted of?



## 2 Nifayi 13

- 1 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi, iNkosi yeMikhosi, ithabatha isuse kuyo iYerusalem, nakuYuda, isixhaso nenkxaso, isixhaso sonke sesonka, nenkxaso yonke yamanzi—
- 2 Indoda eligorha, nendoda yempi, umgwebi, nomprofeti, nomvumisi, nendoda enkulu;
- 3 Umthetheli wamashumi amahlanu, nendoda ebekekileyo, nephakathi, nesilumko esinobungcibi, nengqondi yokukhwintsa.
- 4 Kwaye ndiya kubanika abantwana babe ziinkosana zabo, neentsana ziya kulawula phezu kwabo.
- 5 Kwaye abantu baya kucinezeleka, bonke omnye ngomnye, kwaye elowo nalowo ngummelwane wakhe; umntwana uya kuziphatha ngokukratsha ngakuyo indoda enkulu, nabangenambeko kwababekekileyo.
- 6 Xa umntu eya kuthi abambe umntakwabo wendlu kayise, aze athi: Unazo iingubo, yiba ngumlawuli wethu, kwaye musa ukuyekela lo monakalo uze phantsi kwesandla sakho—
- 7 Ngaloo mhla uya kufunga, esithi: Andiyi kuba ngumphilisi; kuba kweyam indlu akukho sonka nazingubo; musani ukundenza umlawuli wabantu.
- 8 Kuba iYerusalem yonakele, noYuda uwile, ngenxa yokuba iilwimi zabo nezenzo zabo bezichasene neNkosi, ukuxhokonxa amehlo obuqaqawuli bakhe.
- 9 Imbonakalo yenkangeleko yobuso babo ithi ingqine ngokuchasene nabo, kwaye ithi ichaze ngesono sabo ukuba zikwa njengeSodom, kwaye abanakho ukuyifihla. Yeha kuyo imiphefumlo yabo, kuba bazivuze ngobubi ngokwabo!
- 10 Yithi kwabangamalungisa kulungile ngakubo; kuba baya kudla iziqhamo zezenzo zabo.
- 11 Yeha kwabakhohlakeleyo, kuba baya kutshabalala; kuba umvuzo wezandla zabo uya kuba phezu kwabo!
- 12 Kwaye abantu bam, abantwana ngabacinezeli babo, kwaye nabafazi bayalawula phezu kwabo. Owu bantu bam, abo banikhokelayo baya nilahlekisa kwaye batshabalalisa umendo weendlela zenu.

## 2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

13 INkosi iphakamile yema ukuze ithethelele, kwaye iyema ukuze igwebe abantu.

14 INkosi iya kungena emgwebeni kunye namadoda amakhulu abantu bayo kwaye neenkosana zabo; kuba nisigqibile isidiliya nobutyebi beentsizana ezindlwini zenu.

15 Nithetha ukuthini? Nibatyumze abantu bam, nibusile ubuso beentsizana, itsho iNkosi uThixo weMikhosi.

16 Ngaphezu koko, ithi iNkosi: Ngenxa yokuba iintombi zayo iZiyon zizizikhakhamela, kwaye zihamba zitsho ngeentamo ezolulelwe phambili namehlo atshawuzayo, zihamba zicothoza xa zihamba, kwaye zisenza isigampe ezinyaweni zazo—

17 Ke ngoko iNkosi iya kuzibetha ngebhula elukhakhayini iintombi zeZiyon, kwaye iNkosi iya kuzihluba amalungu azo anqabileyo.

18 Ngaloo mhla iNkosi iya kubuthabatha ibususe ubuhle bezihombo zemixokelelwane, nezigqubuthelo, neentsimbi zomqala ezimiliswe okwenyanga;

19 Amakhonkco nezacholo, nezikhafu;

20 Izankwane, nezihombo zemilenze, neeqhiya, neziqholo, namajikazi;

21 Imisesane, namakhonkco empumlo;

22 Izambatho ezinqabileyo zezivatho, needyasi ezingenamikhono, neeqhiya zelineni entle, nezipeliti zokuphatha iinwele;

23 Izipili, nelineni ecwengileyo, neminqwazi, nezigubungelo.

24 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, endaweni yevumba elimnandi kuya kubakho ukunuka; kwaye endaweni yombhinqo, isikroba; kuze endaweni yeenwele ezilungiswe kakuhle, inkqayi; kwaye endaweni yesihombiso sesifuba, umbhinqo orhwexayo; ukutshiswa endaweni yobunzwakazi.

25 Amadoda akho aya kuwa ngekrele kunye namagorha akho emfazweni.

26 Kwaye amasango akhe aya kwenza isijwili kwaye abelusizi; kwaye uya kuba yinkangala, kwaye uya kuhlala phantsi eluthulini.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

## 2 Nifayi 14

- 1 Kwaye ngaloo mhla, abafazi abasixhenxe baya kubambelela ndodeni-nye, besithi: Siya kudla esethu isonka, kwaye sambathe ezethu iingubo; kuphela nje sivumele sibizwe ngegama lakho ukuze kusuke ukungcikiveka kwethu.
- 2 Ngaloo mhla isebe leNkosi liya kubukeka kwaye libe nobuqaqawuli; isiqhamo somhlaba sibalasele kwaye sibe sihle kubo abo basabayo kwaSirayeli.
- 3 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, abo baseleyo eZiyon baze basale eYerusalem baya kubizwa ngokuba bangcwele, bonke ababhalwe phakathi kwabaphilayo eYerusalem—
- 4 Xa sukuba iNkosi ibuhlambile ubunyhuku-nyhuku beentombi zayo iZiyon, kwaye ilihlambulule igazi leYerusalem phakathi kwayo ngomoya wokugweba nangomoya wokutshisa.
- 5 Kwaye iNkosi iya kudala phezu kwayo yonke indawo yokuhlala yentaba yeZiyon, naphezu kweendibano zabo, ilifu nomsini emini nokukhazimla kwamadangatye omlilo ngobusuku; kuba ngaphezu kwabo bonke ubuqaqawuli bayo iZiyon buya kuba lukhuseleko.
- 6 Kwaye kuya kubakho umnquba womthunzi emini ebushushwini, nendawo yokuzimela, nekhusi kulo uqhwithela, isiphango nasemvuleni.

## 2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

## 2 Nifayi 15

- 1 Kwaye ke ndiya kumvumela othandeka kunene wam ingoma yakhe owam oyintanda, ngokubhekisele kwisidiliya sakhe. Othandeka kakhulu kum unesidiliya kuyo induli echuma kakhulu.
- 2 Kwaye wasibiyela, waza wawahlanganisa wawakhupha amatye aso, kwaye wasityala ngeyona ikhethekileyo imidiliya, waza wakha inqaba embindini waso, kananjalo wenza isixovule kuso; kwaye walindela ukuba sivelise iidiliya, sasuka savelisa iidiliya ezingezizo.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, Owu bemi bayo iYerusalem, namadoda akwaYuda, gwebani, ndiyanibongoza, phakathi kwam nesidiliya sam.
- 4 Yintonina engendiyenzile engakumbi kuso isidiliya sam endingayenzanga kuso? Ngako oko, ndakuba ndikhangela ukuze sivelise iidiliya savelisa iidiliya ezingengezizo.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku yiyani kuso; ndiza kunazisa into endiza kuyenza kuso isidiliya sam—ndiza kulususa uthango lwaso, kwaye siya kubhuqwa zizilwanyana; kwaye ndiya kuludiliza udonga lwaso, kwaye siya kugqushwa zizilwanyana;
- 6 Kwaye ndiya kuzenza umqwebedu; asiyi kuthenwa singayi kuhlakulelwa; kodwa kuya kukhula amakhakhaka nameva; ndiya kuyalela kanjalo amafu ukuba angayinisi imvula phezu kwaso.
- 7 Kuba isidiliya sayo iNkosi yeMikhosi yindlu kaSirayeli, kwaye amadoda akwaYuda asisityalo sakhe esinandiphekayo; kwaye walindela isigwebo, kwaye qaphelani, wabona incinezelo; ubulungisa, kodwa qaphelani, weva isikhalo.
- 8 Yeha kubo abahlomela indlu kwenye indlu, kude kungabikho ndawo, ukuze bahlale bodwa embindini womhlaba!
- 9 Ezindlebeni zam, yathi iNkosi yeMikhosi, ngokwenene izindlu ezininzi ziya kuba yinkangala, kwaye nezixeko ezinamandla nezihle zingabi nabemi.
- 10 Ewe, iikhale ezilishumi zesidiliya ziya kuvelisa ibhate enye, nehomere yembewu yenze iefa.

## 2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briars and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

- 11 Yeha kubo abavuka ngentseni, ukuze basukele isiselo esinxilisayo, abathi baqhubeke kude kube sebusuku, ize iwayini ibatshise!
- 12 Kwaye uhadi, nomrhubhe, ingqongqo, nogwali, newayini zizidlo zabo; baze bangawunanzi umsebenzi weNkosi, bengayinanzi nemisebenzi yezakhe izandla.
- 13 Ke ngoko, abantu bam baye ekuthinjweni, ngenxa yokuba bengenalalo ulwazi; kwaye namadoda abo abekekileyo ayalamba, kwaye isihlwele sabo somile lunxano.
- 14 Ke ngoko, isihogo sizandisile, kwaye sawuvula umlomo waso ngokungena mlinganiselo; kwaye nobuqaqawuli babo, nesihlwele sabo, nobungangamsha babo, nalowo ugcobayo, uya kwehlela kuso.
- 15 Kwaye umntu ophantsi uya kuthotyelwa ezantsi, kwaye nesikhulu siya kuthotywa, kwaye namehlo abanekratshi aya kuthotywa.
- 16 Kodwa iNkosi yeMikhosi iya kunyuswa ngenxa yobulungisa, kwaye uThixo lowo ungcwele uya kungcwaliswa ebulungiseni.
- 17 Ke ziya kuthi izimvu zidle ngokohlobo lwazo, kwaye neendawo eziyimiqwebedu zabatyebileyo ziya kudliwa ngabaphambukeli.
- 18 Yeha kubo abarhuqa ubugwenxa ngeentambo zamampunge, kwaye nesono ngokungathi kungomqokozo wenqwelo.
- 19 Abathi: Makawungxamise, awukhawulezise umsebenzi wakhe, ukuze siwubone; kwaye mawusondele umyalelo wakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli kwaye ufike, ukuze siwazi.
- 20 Yeha kwabo bathi ububi bulungile, kwaye nokulungileyo bububi, ababeka ubumnyama njengokukhanya, nokukhanya njengobumnyama, abamisa ubukrakra njengobumnandi, nobumnandi njengobukrakra!
- 21 Yeha kwabalumkileyo kwawabo amehlo kwaye nabanengqiqo kokwabo ukubona!
- 22 Yeha kwabo abangamagorha okusela iwayini, kwaye namadoda anamandla okuxuba isiselo esinxilisayo;

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

- 23 Abathi bagwebele okhohlakeleyo ngenjongo yembuyekezo baze babuthabathe ubulungisa balo ilungisa kulo!
- 24 Ke ngoko, njengokuba umlilo utshisa iindiza, kwaye nedangatye lisidla umququ, ingcambu yabo iya kuba kukubola, neentyatyambo zabo ziya kunyukela phezulu njengothuli; ngenxa yokuba bawulahlele kude umthetho weNkosi yeMikhosi, baza balicekisa ilizwi lakhe oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 25 Ke ngoko, umsindo weNkosi uphenjelelwe kubantu bayo, kwaye isolulele phambili isandla sayo ngokuchasene nabo, kwaye ibabethile; neenduli zaye zanyikima, nezidumbu zabo zazikrazukile embindini wezitrato. Kuyo yonke loo nto umsindo wakhe akawubuyisanga mva, kodwa isandla sakhe usasolulele phambili.
- 26 Kwaye uya kuphakamisela phezulu ibhanile kuzo izizwe ezikude, kwaye uya kuzibiza ngekhwelo ukusuka kwisiphelo somhlaba; kwaye qaphela, ziya kubuya ngesantya esikhawulezileyo; akukho namnye oya kutyhafa noya kukhubeka phakathi kwabo.
- 27 Akhukho namnye oya kozela noya kulala; nombhinqo wezinqe zabo awusayi kukhululeka, nemitya yeembadada zabo ayisayi kuqhawuka;
- 28 Abantolo zabo ziya kuba bukhali, nezaphetha zabo zonke zogotywa, namanqina amahashe abo aya kuqwalaselwa njengenqwithelo, kwaye namavili abo abe njengesivunguvane, umgqumo wabo ube njengengonyama.
- 29 Baya kugquma njengamathole eengonyama; ewe, baya kugquma, baze bazibambe ixhoba, baze balithwale ngokulula, kwaye akuyi kubakho ulihlangulayo.
- 30 Kwaye ngaloo mhla baya kugquma ngokuchasene nabo njengomgqumo wolwandle; kwaye ukuba bakhangelana kulo ilizwe, qaphelani, bubumnyama nosizi, nokukhanya kwalo kwenziwe mnyama emazulwini.

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

## 2 Nifayi 16

- 1 Ngomnyaka wokufa kokumkani u-Uziya, ndabona kananjalo iNkosi ihleli phezu kwetrone, inyukile kwaye iphakanyiselwe phezulu, amasondo eengubo zayo ezalise itempile.
- 2 Ngentla kwayo kumi iiserafi; iyileyo inamaphiko amathandathu; ngamabini yayizigqume ubuso bayo, kwaye ngamabini izigqume iinyawo zayo, kwaye ngamabini yaye iphaphazela.
- 3 Kwaye enye yaye yadanduluka kwenye, yaza yathi: Ingcwele, ingcwele, ingcwele, iNkosi yeMikhosi; umhlaba wonke uzaliswe bubuqaqawuli bayo.
- 4 Yaza yashukuma imigubasi yesango ngenxa yezwi lalowo wadandulukayo, nendlu yazaliswa ngumsi.
- 5 Ndathi ke mna: Yeha phezu kwam! kuba nditshatyalalisiwe; ngenxa yokuba ndiyindoda emilebe iyinqambi; kwaye ndihleli phakathi kwabantu abamilebe iyinqambi; kuba amehlo am ambonile uKumkani, iNkosi yeMikhosi.
- 6 Yaphaphazela ke enye yeerafi yeza kum, iphethe ilahle elivuthayo esandleni sayo, eyayilithabathe ngeziphatho ezazisesibingelelweni;
- 7 Kwaye yalibeka emlonyeni wam, yaza yathi: Yabona, eli lahle liyichukumisile imilebe yakho; kwaye ubugwenxa bakho bususiwe, kwaye nesono sakho sihlanjululwe.
- 8 Kananjalo ndeva ilizwi leNkosi, lisithi: Ngubani na endingamthumayo, kwaye ngubani na oya kusiyele? Ndathi ke: Ndikho; thuma mna.
- 9 Yaza yathi: Hamba uze uxelele aba bantu—Phulaphulani ngenene, kodwa abazange babe nakuqonda; kwaye nibone ngenene, kodwa abazange babe nakubona.
- 10 Zityebise iintliziyo zabo aba bantu, uze uzenze iindlebe zabo zibe zizithulu, uze uwavale amehlo abo—hleze babone ngamehlo abo, baze beve ngeendlebe zabo, baze baqonde ngentliziyo yabo, baze baguquke baze baphiliswe.
- 11 Ndathi ke mna: Nkosi, kode kube nini na? Waza wathi: Zide izixeko zidilizwe kungekho mmi, nezindlu zingabi namntu, kwaye nelizwe libe yinkangala ngokupheleleyo;

## 2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

12 Kwaye neNkosi ide ibe ibashenxisele kude abantu, kuba kuya kubakho ukuncama okukhulu phakathi kwelizwe.

13 Kodwa kusaya kubakho isahlulo seshumi, kwaye siya kubuya, kwaye siya kudliwa, ngokungathi singumthi womterebhinti, nanjengom-oki osiphunzi sawo sikuwo noxa amagqabi sele ewile; ke ngoko imbewu engcwele iya kuba sisiphunzi sawo.

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.



## 2 Nifayi 17

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile ngemihla ka-Ahazi unyana kaYotam, unyana kaUziya, ukumkani wakwaYuda, ukuba uRetsin, ukumkani wama-Aram, noPeka unyana kaRemaliya, ukumkani wakwaSirayeli, enyuke esingise ngaseYerusalem ukuze alwe imfazwe kunye nayo, kodwa akazange abe nokuyoyisa.
- 2 Kwaye yaxelelwa indlu kaDavide ngabangcethezi besithi: Ama-Aram nobakwelakwa-Efrayim bamanyene. Yaza intliziyo yakhe yadidizela, nentliziyo yabantu bakhe, njengemithi yehlathi ididizeliswa ngumoya.
- 3 Yathi ke iNkosi kuIsaya: Yiya phambili ngoku uyokukhawulela uAhazi, wena kunye noSheyariyashubi unyana wakho, ekupheleni komjelo wedami elisemantla omendo womgaqo ongasentsimini yomxovuli weengubo;
- 4 Uze uthi kuye: Lumka, kwaye uzole; musa ukoyika, ungabi nentliziyo etyhafileyo ngenxa yezo ziphunzi zibini zezikhuni zomlilo ziqhumayo, ngenxa yoburhalarhume bomsindo kaRetsin edibene noAram, nowonyana kaRemaliya.
- 5 Ngenxa yokuba uAram, uEfrayim, kwaye nonyana kaRemaliya, bathe baceba ububi ngawe, besithi:
- 6 Masihambe sinyuke siye kwelakwaYuda simvukele kwaye simcaphukise, sizenzele ithanda kuye, size sibeke ukumkani embindini wakhe, ewe, unyana kaThabhele.
- 7 Itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Alisayi kusebenza, kwaye lingayi kwenzeka.
- 8 Kuba intloko yama-Aram yiDamasko, nentloko yeDamasko, nguRetsin; kwaye phakathi kweminyaka emashumi mathandathu neminyaka emihlanu amaEfrayim aya kuqhekezwa ukuze angabi luhlanga.
- 9 Kwaye intloko yamaEfrayim kukwaSamari, nentloko yakwaSamari ngunyana kaRemaliya. Ukuba nithe anakholwa ngokwenene aniyi kumiselwa.
- 10 Ngaphezu koko, iNkosi yathetha kwakhona kuAhazi, isithi:

## 2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

11 Zicelele umqondiso kuyo iNkosi uThixo wakho; wucele enokuba kusenzulwini yomhlaba, okanye kuphezulu enyangweni.

12 Kodwa uAhazi wathi: Andisayi kucela, ndingasayi kuyilinga iNkosi.

13 Waza wathi: Phulaphulani ngoku, Owu ndlu kaDavide; kuyinto encinane kuni ukudinisa abantu, ukuba nide nidinise uThixo wam kanjalo?

14 Ke ngoko, iNkosi ngokwayo iza kuninika umqondiso—Qaphelani, intombi engazani nandoda iya kumitha, kwaye iya kuzala unyana, ize imthiye igama elinguImanuveli.

15 Uya kutya amasi nobusi, ukuze akwazi ukwala okubi kwaye akhethe okulungileyo.

16 Kuba ngaphambi kokuba umntwana abe nokukwazi ukwala ububi kwaye akhethe okulungileyo, ilizwe elo ulithiyileyo liya kuncanywa ngabo bobabini ookumkani balo.

17 INkosi iya kuzisa phezu kwakho, naphezu kwabantu bakho, naphezu kwendlu kayihlo, imihla engazange ibekho ukususela ngomhla awathi uEfrayim walishiya elakwaYuda, ukumkani wase Asiriya.

18 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngawo loo mhla ukuba iNkosi iya kubethela ikhwelo impukane ekwindawo ekude yaseYiputa, kwanayo inyosi ekuwo umhlaba waseAsiriya.

19 Kwaye ziya kuza, kwaye zonke ziphela ziya kuphumla kwiintlambo eziyinkangala, nasemiqolombeni yamawa, nakuwo onke ameva, nakuwo onke amatyholo.

20 Kwangawo lo mhla iNkosi iya kucheba ngesitshetshe esiqeshiweyo, sabo bangaphaya komlambo, ngokumkani waseAsiriya, intloko, noboya beenyawo; kwaye siya kuzitshabalalisa neendevu.

21 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla, umntu uya kondla ithokazi lenkomo nezimvu ezimbini;

22 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, ngokwehlisa okukhulu kwazo uya kudla amasi; ngamasi nobusi uya kuthi wonke umntu adle oko kuseleyo elizweni.

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign—Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

- 23 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla, zonke iindawo kuya kubakho, apho kwakukho khona iwaka lemidiliya ngewaka leesilivera, kuya kuba lukhakakhaka nameva.
- 24 Ngeentolo nezaphetha amadoda aya kusondela, ngenxa yokuba wonke umhlaba uyakuba lukhakakhaka nobobo.
- 25 Kwaye zonke iinduli ebeziya kugatywa ngamagaba, akusayi kubakho loyiko lwalukhakakhaka nalubobo; kodwa ziya kuba zezokukhaphhelela iinkomo, nokunyashwa yimpahla emfutshane.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

## 2 Nifayi 18

- 1 Ngaphezu koko, ilizwi leNkosi lathi kum: Thabathela kuwe umqulu omkhulu, uze ubhale kuwo ngosiba lwabantu, ngokunxulumene noMahere-shalal-hash-bazi.
- 2 Kwaye ndathabathela kum amangqina anyanisekileyo ukuze abhale ingxelo, u-Uriya umbengeleli, noZekariya unyana kaYebherekiya.
- 3 Ndaza ndamngena umprofetikazi; waza wamitha waza wazala unyana. Yathi ke iNkosi kum: Mbize igama lakhe, Mahere-shalal-hash-bazi.
- 4 Kuba qaphela, umntwana akayi kuba nalulwazi lokuthi; Bawo wam, nomama wam, ngaphambi kokuba ubutyebi baseDamasko namaxhoba aseSamari abe athatyathiwe phambi kokumkani waseAsiriya.
- 5 INkosi kanaanjalo yathetha nam kwakhona, isithi:
- 6 Ngenxa yokuba aba bantu bewacekisa amanzi aseShilowa ahamba ngokuzola, baze bagcobele uRetsin nonyana kaRemaliya;
- 7 Ke ngoko qaphelani, ngoku, iNkosi izisa phezu kwabo amanzi omlambo, anamandla namaninzi, kwanaye ukumkani waseAsiriya kwaye nalo lonke uzuko lwakhe; kwaye uya kuza unyukele phezu kwayo yonke imijelokazi yayo, kwaye uya kunyukela phezu kwazo zonke iindonga zayo.
- 8 Kwaye uya kutyhudisela kwelakwaYuda; uya kukhukula uphuphume, uya kubetha emqaleni, nokunaba kwawo amahlelo kuya kubuzalisa ububanzi belizwe wakho, Owu Imanuweli.
- 9 Bhavumani, Owu nina bantu, kuba niya kuqotywa; kwaye ninike iindlebe nonke nina bakumazwe akude; bhinqani, kuba niya kuqotywa; bhinqani kuba niya kuqotywa.
- 10 Cebani icebo, lotshitsha; thethani ilizwi, kwaye alisayi kuma; kuba uThixo unathi.
- 11 Kuba itshilo iNkosi njalo kum, iseyisa ngamandla, yaza yandiyalela ukuba maze ndingahambi ngendlela yabo bantu, ukuthi:
- 12 Ize ningathi, Ikukucetywa, into yonke abathi abo bantu, Ikukucetywa; nento eyoyikwa ngabo, ningoyikiswa yiyo.

## 2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

13 Yingcwaliseni iNkosi yeMikhosi ngokwayo, nize niyivumele ibe luloyiko lwenu, nize niyivumele ibe lixhala lenu.

14 Kwaye iya kuba njengendawo yokwesabela engcwele; kodwa ibe lilitye lokukhubeka, neliwa lokukhubekisa kuzo zombini izindlu zikaSirayeli, ibe sisabatha nomgibe kubo abemi baseYerusalem.

15 Kwaye abaninzi phakathi kwabo baya kukhubeka baze bawe, baze bophuke, baze babambiseke, baze bathatyathelwe ekuthinjweni.

16 Qinisani ubungqina, niwutywine umthetho phakathi kwabafundi bam.

17 Kwaye ndiya kuyilindela iNkosi, ebusithelisayo ubuso bayo kuyo indlu kaYakobi, kwaye ndiya kuyikhangela.

18 Qaphelani, mna kunye nabantwana iNkosi ethe yandinika bona singabemiqondiso nemimangaliso kwaSirayeli esuka kuyo iNkosi yeMikhosi, leyo ihlala kuyo iNtaba yeZiyon.

19 Kwaye xa beya kuthi kuni: Quqelani kwabaneshologu, nakoosiyazi abalozayo nabadumzelayo—akumele na ukuba abantu baquqele kuThixo wabo ukuze abaphilayo beve kwabafileyo?

20 Kuwo umthetho nakubo ubungqina; kwaye ukuba abathi bathethe malunga neli lizwi, kungenxa yokuba akukho kukhanya kubo.

21 Kwaye baya kudlula kulo bebandezelwe ziinzima kwaye belambile; kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba xa beya kuthi balambe, baya kuba noburhalarhume, baze bamqalekise ukumkani wabo noThixo wabo, baze bakhangele phezulu.

22 Kwaye baya kukhangela emhlabeni baze babone inkathazo, nobumnyama, kuuncitheka lungcungcutheko, kwaye baya kuqhutyelwa ebumnyameni.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.

## 2 Nifayi 19

- 1 Nangona kunjalo, ubumfiliba abusayi kuba njengangoko kwakunjalo ngelixa awaye ebandezelekile, xa sukuba ekuqalekeni walibandezela kancinane nje ilizwe likaZebhulun; nelizwe likaNafetali, kwaye emva koko wayihlungisa kalusizi ngakumbi ngendlela yoLwandle oluBomvu ngaphesheya kweYordan kwiGalili yezizwe.
- 2 Abantu ababehamba ebumnyameni babone ukukhanya okukhulu; abo bahlala kwilizwe lethunzi lokufa, ukukhanya kuye kwakhanyisa phezu kwabo.
- 3 Uluphindaphindile uhlanga, waza walwandisa uvuyo—bayavuya phambi kwakho njengaxa bevuyela isivuno, nanjengokuba amadoda egcoba xa sukuba esahlula ixhoba.
- 4 Kuba uyiqhawule idyokhwe yomthwalo wabo, nedyokhwe yamagxa abo, intonga yomcinezeli wabo.
- 5 Kuba lonke idabi lomlwi linesiphithiphithi sengxolo, neengubo ezityikitywe egazini; kodwa eli liya kuba ngokuvutha kwaye nesivuthisi somlilo.
- 6 Kuba sizalelwe umntwana, sanikwa unyana; kwaye ulawulo luya kuba phezu kwesixhanti sakhe; kwaye igama lakhe liya kubizwa ngokuba, nguMmangaliso, nguMcebisi, nguThixo onaMandla, nguBawo onguNaphakade, iNkosana loXolo.
- 7 Ekwandeni kolawulo noxolo akukho siphelo, phezu kwetrone kaDavide, naphezu kobukumkani bakhe ukuze abucwangcise, aze abumisele ngobulungisa nangokulunga ukususela ngoku ukuya phambili, kwanangonaphakade. Inzondelelo yeNkosi yeMikhosi iya kukwenza oku.
- 8 INkosi yathumela ilizwi layo kuYakobi kwaye liye lakhanyisa phezu koSirayeli.
- 9 Kwaye bonke abantu baya kulazi, kwanawo amaEfrayim nabemi belakwaSamari, abathi ngekratshi nobukhulu beentliziyo zabo:
- 10 Izitena ziwile, kodwa siya kuthi sakhe ngamatye aqingqiweyo; imithombe igawuliwe, kodwa siya kuyitshintsha ibe yimisedare.

## 2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

11 Ke ngoko iNkosi iya kuziphakamisa iintshaba zikaRetsin ngokuchasene naye, aze azihlanganise kunye iintshaba zakhe;

12 Ama-Aram ngaphambili namaFilisti ngasemva; kwaye baya kumdla uSirayeli ngemilomo ekhamisileyo. Kuko konke oku umsindo wakhe akawubuyisanga, kodwa isandla sakhe usasolulile.

13 Kuba abantu ababuyeli kuye lowo ubabethayo, bengayifuni neNkosi yeMikhosi.

14 Ke ngoko iNkosi iya kunqumla kwaSirayeli intloko nomsila, isebe nomzi ngamininye.

15 Indoda, enkulu, yiyo intloko; nomprofeti othi afundise ubuxoki, ingumsila.

16 Kuba abakhokeli babo aba bantu babenza baphambuke; kwaye ke abo bakhokelwa ngabo bayatshabalala.

17 Ke ngoko iNkosi ayisayi kuvuyiswa ngamadodana abo, ingasayi kuba nenceba kwabangenayise nabahlolokazi; kuba ngamnye ngumhanahanisi nomenzi wobubi, kwaye umlomo ngamnye uthetha ubuyatha. Kuko konke oku umsindo wakhe akawubuyisi, kodwa isandla sakhe usasolulile.

18 Kuba inkohlakalo itshisa okomlilo; iya kudla ukhakakhaka nabobo, ize ivuthise izicithi ezishinyeneyo zamahlathi, kwaye baya kunyukela phezulu nje ngokunyuka komsa.

19 Ngexesha lomsindo wayo iNkosi yeMikhosi ilizwe liya kuba mnyama, kwaye abantu baya kuba njengesivuthisi somlilo; akukho mntu uya kusindisa umntakwabo.

20 Uya kuxhwila ngesandla sokunene aze alambe noko; kwaye uya kudla ngesandla sasekhohlo kwaye abayi konela; yonke indoda iya kudla inyama yengalo yayo—

21 UManase, uEfrayim; noEfrayim, uManase; bona kunye baya kuchasana noYuda. Kuko konke oku umsindo wakhe akawubuyisi, kodwa isandla sakhe usasolulile.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briers and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

## 2 Nifayi 20

- 1 Yeha kubo abamisela imimiselo eyintswela bulungisa, kwaye nabathi babhale ingcinezelo abathe bayimisela ngokwabo;
- 2 Ukuze bazisunduze izisweli kwisigwebo esifanelekileyo, nokuhlutha ilungelo kwabo bazintsizana babantu bam, ukuze abahlolokazi babe ngamaxhoba abo, nokuze baphange abangenayise!
- 3 Kwaye niya kuthini na ngomhla wovelelo, kwaye nakwintshabalalo eya kuthi ivele kude? niya kubalekela kubani na ukuze nincedwe? kwaye niya kubushiya nabani na ubungangamsha benu?
- 4 Ngaphandle kwam baya kugoba ngaphantsi kwamanye amabanjwa, kwaye baya kuwela phantsi kwababuleweyo. Kuko konke oku umsindo wakhe akawubuyisanga, kodwa isandla sakhe usasolulile.
- 5 Owu Asiriya, ntonga yomsindo wam, nomsimelelo osesandleni sabo kukubhavuma kwam.
- 6 Ndiya kumthumela ngokuchasene nesizwe esihanahanisayo, kwaye ngokuchasene nabantu bokuphuphuma komsindo wam ndiya kumnika umyalelo wokokuba athabathe amaxhoba, aze athabathe nokuphangiweyo, aze abanyathalele phantsi njengodaka lwezitrato.
- 7 Kungani na engathethi njalo, nentliziyo yakhe ingacingi njalo; kodwa kusentliziyweni yakhe ukutshabalalisa nokusikela ngaphandle izizwe ezingemalwa.
- 8 Kuba uthi: Amatshawe am onke angabo na ookumkani bezikumkani kusini na?
- 9 Ingaba iKaleno ayinjengeKarkemishe kusini na? Ingaba iHamati ayinjengeArpadi kusini na? Ingaba iSamari ayinjengeDamasko kusini na?
- 10 Njengoko isandla sam sazimiselayo izikumkani zezithixo, kwaye nezemifanekiso yazo eqingqiweyo yaye yazogqitha ezo zaseYerusalem nezaseSamari;
- 11 Andingebinako na, njengoko ndenzayo kuye uSamari nezithixo zakhe, ukwenza njalo kuyo iYerusalem nakuzo izithixo zayo?

## 2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?



- 12 Ngako oko kuya kwenzeka okokuba xa sukuba iNkosi iwenzile umsebenzi wayo wonke phezu kweNtaba yeZiyon naphezu kweYerusalem, ndiya kusohlwaya isiqhamo sentliziyo enobungangamsha yokumkani waseAsiriya, nobungangamela benkangeleko yakhe yekratshi.
- 13 Kuba uthi: Ngamandla esandla sam nangobulumko bam ndizenzile ezi zinto; kuba ndilumkile; kwaye ndiyishenxisile imida yabantu, ndaza ndabuphanga ubutyebi babo, kwaye ndiboyisile abemi njengendoda ekhaliphileyo;
- 14 Kwaye isandla sam sibufumene njengendlu yentaka ubutyebi babantu; kwaye njengaye obutha amaqanda ashiyiweyo ndilibuthile ihlabathi lonke; kwaye akukho namnye owathi washukumisa iphiko, okanye wavula umlomo, okanye watswina.
- 15 Ingaba izembe lingamqhayisela na ogawula ngalo? Ingaba isarha ingazikhulisa na koyitsalayo? Ngathi intonga ingabajingisa abaphakamisi bayo, ngathi umsimelelo ungamphakamisa ongenguwo umthi!
- 16 Ke ngoko iNkosi, iNkosi yeMikhosi, iya kuthumela phakathi kwabatyebileyo bayo, ukubhitya, kwaye phantsi kozuko lwakhe iya kuphemba ukuvutha njengokuvutha komlilo.
- 17 Kwaye ukukhanya kukaSirayeli kuya kuba njengomlilo, aze oNgcwele abe njengedangatye, kwaye liya kutshisa lize lidle ubobo nokhakakhaka lwalo ngemini enye;
- 18 Kwaye uya kudla ubuqaqawuli behlathi lakhe, nobentsimi yakhe echumileyo, kunye umphefumlo nomzimba; kwaye ziya kuba njengaxa sukuba umthwali bhanile etyhafa.
- 19 Kwaye eseleyo imithi yehlathi lakhe iya kuba mbalwa, kangangokuba nomntwana angaba nokuyibala.
- 20 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla, okokuba intsalela kaSirayeli, nabo baya kusinda kwindlu kaYakobi, abasayi kuphinda kwakhona bahlale kulowo wababethayo, kodwa baya kuhlala eNkosini, eyiNgcwele kaSirayeli, enyanisweni.
- 21 Intsalela iya kubuyela, ewe, kwanayo intsalela kaYakobi, ize kuye uThixo onamandlakazi.

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briars in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

22 Kuba nangona abantu bakho uSirayeli benjengentlabathi yolwandle, iya kuthi ibuye intsalela yabo; ukupheliswa okumiselweyo kwagqitywa kuya kuphuphuma bubulungisa.

23 Kuba iNkosi uThixo weMikhosi iya kwenza impeliso, kwanemisiweyo kulo lonke ilizwe.

24 Ke ngoko, itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo weMikhosi: Owu bantu bam abahleliyo eZiyon, musani ukumoyika uAsiriya; uya kunibetha ngentonga, kwaye uya kuphakamisa umsimelelo wakhe ngokuchasene nani, ngokohlobo lwamaYiputa.

25 Kuba ngethutyana nje elincinane, nesikhubekiso siya kuphela, nomsindo wam ekutshabalaleni kwabo.

26 Kwaye iNkosi yeMikhosi iya kudala isibetho kuye malunga nendyikityha yokubulawa kwamaMidiyan eliweni likaOrebhe; kwaye nanjengokuba intonga yayo yayenzile phezu kolwandle iya kuyiphakamisa kwangolo hlobo lwaseYiputa.

27 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla okokuba umthwalo wakhe uya kususwa emagxeni akho, nedyokhwe yakhe isuswe entanyeni yakho, kwaye idyokhwe iya kutshatyalaliswa ngenxa yokuthanjiswa.

28 Ufikile eAyati, ugqithele eMigron; eMikimashe ugcinise iinqwelo zakhe.

29 Bawelele ngaphaya kwenkalo; bathabatha indawo yokulala eGebha; iRama iyoyika; iGibheha kaSawule isabile.

30 Phakamisa izwi, Owu ntombi kaGalim; lenze liviwe eLayishe, Owu lusizana Anatoti.

31 UMademena ufudusiwe; abemi baseGebhim bahlanganisene ukuze basabe.

32 Ngokwakaloku nje usaya kusala eNobhe ngaloo mhla; uya kutyityimbisa isandla sakhe ngakuyo intaba yentombi yeZiyon, induli yayo iYerusalem.

33 Qaphela, iNkosi, iNkosi yeMikhosi iya kulihlahla isebe elikhulu ngoloyiko; kwaye abaphakamileyo ngezithomo baya kugawulelwa phantsi; kwaye nabazizikhakhamela baya kuthotywa.

34 Kwaye iya kuzigecela phantsi iintshinyela zamahlathi ngezembe, kwaye iLebhanon iya kuwiswa ngonobungangamsha.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

## 2 Nifayi 21

- 1 Kwaye kuya kuza ngaphambili intonga iphuma kwisiphunzi sikaYese, kwaye isebe liya kuhluma liphuma ezinganjini zayo.
- 2 Kwaye uMoya weNkosi uya kuphumla phezu kwayo, umoya wobulumko nengqiqo, umoya wecebo namandla agqithileyo, umoya wolwazi nowoloyiko lweNkosi;
- 3 Kwaye uya kuyenza ibe nengqiqo ekhawulezayo ekoyikeni iNkosi, kwaye akasayi kugweba ngokokubona kwamehlo akhe, angohlwayi ngokuva kweendlebe zakhe.
- 4 Kodwa ngobulungisa uya kubagweba abazintsizana, kwaye ohlwaye ngokulunga ngakubo abalulamileyo bomhlaba; kwaye uya kuwubetha umhlaba ngentonga yomlomo wakhe, kwaye nangomphefumlo wemilebe yakhe uya kubabulala abakhohlakeleyo.
- 5 Kwaye ubulungisa buya kuba ngumbhinqo wesinqe sakhe, kwaye nokuthembeka kube ngumbhinqo wesinqe sakhe.
- 6 Ingcuka kanjalo iya kuhlala netakane lemvu, kwaye nengwe iya kubuthuma netakane lebhokhwe, nethole lenkomo nengonyama entsha nethole elityetyisiweyo ndawonye; nomntwana omncinane uya kuzikhokela.
- 7 Kwaye imazi yenkomo nebhere ziya kudla; amankonyana azo iya kubuthuma ndawonye; nengonyama iya kudla umququ njengenkomo.
- 8 Kwaye umntwana owanyiswayo uya kudlala emngxunyeni wephimpi, nomntwana olunyulweyo uya kufaka isandla sakhe elukhozweni lweliso lwerhamba.
- 9 Aziyi kwenzakalisa zingayi kutshabalalisa kuyo yonke intaba yam engcwele, kuba umhlaba uya kuba uzaliswe lulwazi lweNkosi, njengokuba amanzi egubungela ulwandle.
- 10 Kwaye ngaloo mhla kuya kubakho ihlumelo likaYese, eliya kuma njengebhanile yabantu; bonke abeeNtlanga baya kulilangazelela; kwaye nendawo yokuphumla kwalo iya kuba ntle ngokubalaseleyo.

## 2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

- 11 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla okokuba iNkosi iya kuqalisa ukubeka isandla sayo kwakhona okwesibini ukubuyisela intsalela yabantu bayo abaya kusala, ukusuka eAsiriya, naseYiputa, nasePatros, naseKushi, nakwaElam, naseShinare, naseHamati, kwaye nakuzo iziqithi zolwandle.
- 12 Kwaye uya kumisela phezulu ibhanile yezizwe, kwaye uya kudibanisa kunye abagxothiweyo bakaSirayeli, aze ahlanganise kunye abasaziweyo bakwaYuda ukusuka kuzo zone iimbombo zomhlaba.
- 13 Umona kaEfrayim kanjalo uya kuthotha, kwaye neentshaba zikaYuda ziya kusikelwa ngaphandle; uEfrayim akasayi kumonela uYuda, noYuda angambandezeli uEfrayim.
- 14 Kodwa baya kuphaphazela phezulu kwamagxa awo amaFilisti ukuya ngasentshona; baya kuthabatha kunye namaxhoba asempuma; baya kubeka isandla sabo phezulu kwe-Edom neMowabhi; kwaye abantwana baka-Amon baya kubathobela.
- 15 Kwaye iNkosi iya kulutshabalalisa ngokupheleleyo ulwimi lwalo ulwandle lwaseYiputa; kwaye ngomoya wakhe ovuthuzayo uya kutyityimisela isandla sakhe phezulu komlambo, aze awubethe ube yimisinga esixhenxe, aze abenze abantu bawele ngeembadada zomile.
- 16 Kwaye kuya kubakho umendo wentsalela yabantu bakhe abaya kuba besele, ukusuka eAsiriya, njengoko kwakunjalo kuSirayeli ngomhla awanyuka ephuma ngaphandle kwelizwe laseYiputa.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

## 2 Nifayi 22

- 1 Kwaye ngaloo mhla uya kuthi: Owu Nkosi, ndiya kukudumisa; nangona wawunomsindo ngakum umsindo wakho uwubuyisile, kwaye uyandithuthuzela.
- 2 Qaphela, uThixo ulusindiso lwam; ndiya kumthemba, kwaye ndingoyiki; kuba iNkosi uYEHOVA ungamandla am nengoma yam; uye waba lusindiso lwam kananjalo.
- 3 Ke ngoko, ngovuyo niya kutsala amanzi aphuma emithonjeni yosindiso.
- 4 Kwaye ngaloo mhla niya kuthi: Dumisani iNkosi, nilibize igama layo, vakalisani izenzo zayo phakathi kwabantu, khankanyani ukuba igama layo liphakanyiselwe phezulu.
- 5 Yivumeleni ingoma iNkosi; kuba yenze izinto ezikhethekileyo; oku kuyazeka kuwo wonke umhlaba.
- 6 Danduluka kwaye umemeze, wena mmi waseZiyon; kuba mkhulu oNgcwele kaSirayeli phakathi kwakho.

## 2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.

## 2 Nifayi 23

- 1 Umthwalo weBhabhilon, awathi uIsaya unyana ka-Amotsi wawubona.
- 2 Nyusani ibhanile phezu kwentaba ephakamileyo, phakamiselani phezulu izwi kubo, khwebani ngesandla, ukuze babe nokungena kumasango abo ababekekileyo.
- 3 Ndibayalele abangcwalisiweyo bam, ndiwabizile kanjalo amagorha am, kuba umsindo wam awukho phezu kwabo abo bagcobayo bubungangamsha bam.
- 4 Ingxokolo yesihlwele ezintabeni ngokungathi yeyabantu abaninzi, isiphithiphithi sengxokolo yezikumkani zezizwe zihlanganisene kunye, iNkosi yeMikhosi ihlanganisa imikhosi yedabi.
- 5 Iza ivela kwilizwe elikude, esiphelweni samazulu, ewe, iNkosi, nezixhobo zengqumbo yayo, ukuza kutshabalalisa ilizwe lonke.
- 6 Bhombolozani nina, kuba umhla weNkosi usondele; uya kuza njengentshabalalo esuka kuSomandla.
- 7 Ke ngoko zonke izandla ziya kutyhafa, intliziyo yakhe wonke umntu iya kunyibilika;
- 8 Kwaye baya kuba noloyiko; amahlaba neentsizi aya kubaphatha; baya kukhwankqiswa omnye komnye, ubuso babo buya kuba njengamadangatye.
- 9 Qaphela, umhla weNkosi uyeza, ikhohlakele kunye noburhalarhume nomsindo owoyikekayo, ilenze ilizwe libe yinkangala; kwaye uya kutshabalalisa aboni balo bangabikho kulo.
- 10 Kuba iinkwenkwezi zezulu nokrozo lweenkwenkwezi zalo aziyi kukunika ukukhanya kwazo; ilanga liya kuba mnyama ekuphumeni kwalo, kwaye inyanga ayiyi kukwenza ukukhanya kwayo kubengezele.
- 11 Kwaye ndiya kulohlwaya ihlabathi ngenxa yobubi, kwaye nabakhohlakeleyo ngobugwenxa babo; ndiya kukwenza ukuzingca kwabanekratshi kuphele, ndize ndibubeke phantsi ubukhakhamele babo oboyikisayo.
- 12 Ndiya kuyenza indoda ixabiseke ngaphezulu kunayo igolide engcwengiweyo; kwanayo indoda kunayo igolide ecikizekileyo kaOfire.

## 2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

13 Ke ngoko, ndiya kuwagungqisa amazulu, kwaye umhlaba uya kushenxa usuke endaweni yawo, ngoburhalarhume beNkosi yeMikhosi, nangomhla womsindo wayo owoyikekayo.

14 Kwaye kuya kuba njengebhadikazi elisukelwa ngabazingeli, kwaye nanjengezimvu ezingahlanganiswayo; kwaye baya kuthi bonke abantu babuyele kwababo abantu, baze babalekele ingulowo kwelakhe ilizwe.

15 Bonke abanekratshi baya kungqulwa ngesikhali, ewe, nabo bonke abazimanyanise nabakhohlakeleyo baya kuwa ngekrele.

16 Abantwana babo kanjalo baya kucunyuzwa phambi kwamehlo abo; izindlu zabo ziya kuphangwa kwaye nabafazi babo badlwengulwe.

17 Qaphelani, ndiya kuxhokonxa amaMedi ngokuchasene nabo, abangasayi kukhathalela silivere nagolide, bengasayi kuyivuyela.

18 Izaphetha zawo kanjalo ziya kukhahlela amadodana abo abe ngamaqhekeza; kwaye awasayi kuba navelwano kwisiqhamo sesizalo; amehlo abo awasayi kuzisindisa iintsana.

19 Kwaye iBhabhilon, ebubukhazikhazi bezikumkani, ubuhle bobungangamsha bamaKaledi, buya kuba njengangoko uThixo wayibhukuqayo iSodom neGomora.

20 Ayi sokuze imiwe, ingasayi kube ihlaliwe ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana: nama-Arabhi akasayi kugxumeka zintente khona; nabelusi abasayi kwenza buhlanti babo apho.

21 Kodwa amarhamncwa entlango aya kubuthuma khona; kwaye izindlu zabo ziya kuzaliswa ngoodyakalashé; kwaye nezikhova ziya kuhlala apho, neempongo ezixhonti ziya kudanisa apho.

22 Kwaye namarhamncwa eziqithi aya kugxwala kumanxiwa abo, kwaye neenamba ezinkulu kubuncwane bamabhotwe abo; kwaye ixesha layo sele likufuphi ukufika, kwaye nomhla wayo awusayi kongezwa. Kuba ndiya kuyitshabalalisa ngokukhawuleza; ewe, kuba ndiya kuba nenceba kubo abantu bam, kodwa abakhohlakeleyo baya kutshabalala.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

## 2 Nifayi 24

- 1 Kuba iNkosi iya kuba nenceba kuYakobi, kanti isaya konyula uSirayeli, ize ibabeke kowabo umhlaba; kwaye abasemzini baya kuhlonyelwa kubo, kwaye baya kunamathela kuyo indlu kaYakobi.
- 2 Kwaye abantu baya kubathabatha babazise endaweni yabo; ewe, besuka kude kwiziphelo zomhlaba; kwaye baya kubuyela kumazwe abo esithembiso. Kwaye indlu kaSirayeli iya kubabanga, kwaye ilizwe leNkosi liya kuba lelezicaka nezicakakazi; kwaye ziya kubenza abathinjwa kwabo babe ngabathimbi babo; kwaye ziya kulawula phezu kwabo babengabacinezeli babo.
- 3 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla okokuba iNkosi iya kukunika ukuphumla, ezintsizini zakho, nasekoyikeni kwakho, kwaye nasebunzimeni bobukhoboka apho wawenziwe ukuze ukhonze khona.
- 4 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla, okokuba uya kuwuthabatha lo mzekeliso ngokuchasene nokumkani waseBhabhilon, uze uthi: Uphele njani umcinezeli, saphela njani isixeko segolide!
- 5 INkosi iwaphule umsimelelo wabakhohlakeleyo, iintonga zobukhosi zabalawuli.
- 6 Lowo wayebetha abantu ngoburhalarhume ngokubetha okungapheziyo, lowo wayelawula izizwe ngomsindo, uyatshutshiswa, kwaye akukho namnye onqandayo.
- 7 Umhlaba wonke uphumle, kwaye uzolile; bayagqabhuka engomeni.
- 8 Ewe, imithi yemisipresi iyagcoba ngenxa yakho, kwaye nemisedare yaseLebhanon kanjalo, ithi: Okoko wathi waliswa phantsi akukho mgawuli uthe weza ngokuchasene nathi.
- 9 Isihogo ngaphantsi siphazamisekile nguwe ngokuhlangana nawe ekufikeni kwakho; saxhokoxela abafuleyo ngenxa yakho, kwanabo bonke abangabalawuli abakhulu bomhlaba; siphakamisele ezitroneni zabo bonke ookumkani bezizwe.
- 10 Bonke baya kuthetha baze bathi kuwe: Nawe kanjalo usuke wabanobuthathaka nje ngathi? Nawe ngoku ufana nathi na?

## 2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?



11 Ubungangamsha bakho buthotyelwe ezantsi engcwabeni; intswahla yemirhubhe yakho ayivakali; impethu yondlelwe phantsi kwakho, namanundu akugubungele.

12 Kutheni na ukuze uwe emazulwini, Owu Lusifa, nyana wesifingo! Usikelwe ezantsi eluthulini, oko kwenza buthathaka izizwe!

13 Kuba wathi entliziyweni yakho: Ndiya kunyukela ezulwini, ndiya kuphakamisa itrone yam ngentla kweenkwenkwezi zikaThixo; ndiya kuhlala kanjalo phezu kwentaba yentlangano, kwiindawo ezikude zasemantla;

14 Ndiya kunyukela ngasentla kwempakamo yamafu; ndiya kuba njengaye Osenyangweni.

15 Kanti uya kuthotyelwa ezantsi esihogweni, kwiindawo ezinzulu zesihogo.

16 Abo bakubonayo baya kuncina amehlo bakujonge, kwaye bakugqale, baze bathi: Ingaba le yilaa ndoda eyathi yawenza umhlaba wangcangcazela, eyathi yagungqisa izikumkani?

17 Yaza yalenza ihlabathi lanjengentlango, yaza yazitshabalalisa izixeko zalo, yaza ayayivula indlu yamabanjwa ayo?

18 Bonke ookumkani bezizwe, ewe, xa bebonke, balele beseluzukweni, bonke bephela ingulowo kweyakhe indlu.

19 Kodwa wena uphoselwe ngaphandle kwelakho ingcwaba njengesebe elimasikizi, nentsalela yabo bathi babulawa, bangqulwa ngekrele, abehlela ezantsi ematyeni omhadi, njengesidumbu esinya-bhelwe phantsi kweenyawo.

20 Akusayi kumanyaniswa nabo engcwabeni ngenxa yokuba ulitshabalalisile ilizwe lakho waza wababulala abantu bakho; imbewu yabenzi bobubi ayi sokuze ibenalo udumo.

21 Lungiselela ukubulawa kwabantwana bakhe ngenxa yobugwenxa booyise, ukuze bangemi, bangalilawuli ilizwe, bangabuzalisi ubuso behlabathi ngezixeko.

22 Kuba ndiya kubavukela, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, ndize ndilisikele ngaphandle kweBhabhilon igama, nentsalela, nonyana, nomtshana, itsho iNkosi.

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

23 Ndiya kuyenza kanjalo ihlalwe ngookhwalimanzi, kwaye ibe ngamadami amanzi; kwaye ndiya kuyitshayela ngomtshayelo wentshabalalo, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi.

24 INkosi yemiKhosi ifungile, isithi: Ngokwenene njengoko ndicingile, kuya kwenzeka njalo; kwaye nanjengokuba ndicebile, kuya kuba njalo—

25 Okokuba ndiya kuzisa uAsiriya kuwo umhlaba wam, kwaye naphezu kwazo iintaba zam ndimnyhashe phantsi kweenyawo; ize ke idyokhwe yakhe isuke kubo, nomthwalo wakhe usuke emagxeni abo.

26 Oku kuyinjongo ecetywayo phezu kwawo wonke umhlaba; kwaye oku kuisandla esoluliweyo phezu kwazo zonke izizwe.

27 Kuba iNkosi yeMikhosi iyicebile, kwaye ke ngubani na oya kuyitshitshisa? Kwaye isandla sakhe usolulile, kwaye ke ngubani na oya kusibuyisa umva?

28 Ngonyaka awathi wafa ngawo ukumkani uAhazi kwabakho lo mthwalo.

29 Musa ukugcoba wena Palestina uphela, kuba intonga yalowo wakubethayo yaphukile; kuba kuyo ingcambu yenyoka kuya kuphuma irhamba, kwaye nesiqhamo salo siya kuba yinyoka evutha njengomlilo ophaphazelayo.

30 Kwaye inkulu yentsizana iya kudla, kwaye nabasweleyo baya kulala phantsi bekhuselekile; kwaye ndiya kuyibulala ingcambu yakho ngendlala, kwaye iya kuyibulala intsalela yakho.

31 Bhomboloza, Owu sango; khala, Owu sixeko, Palestina uphela, uphazamisekile; kuba kuya kuvela emantla umsi, kwaye akukho namnye oya kuba yedwa ngamaxesha akhe amisiweyo.

32 Baya kuphendula bathini ke abathunywa bezizwe? Ukuba iNkosi iyimisele iZiyon, kwaye iintsizana zabantu bayo ziya kuthembela kuyo.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina, art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

## 2 Nifayi 25

- 1 Ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndithetha nje noko ngokunxulumene namazwi endithe ndawabhala, athe athethwa ngomlomo kaIsaya. Kuba qaphelani, uIsaya wathetha izinto ezininzi ezaye zinzima kwabaninzi kubantu bam ukuba baziqonde; kuba abanalo ulwazi ngokunxulumene nohlobo lokuprofetha phakathi kwamaYuda.
- 2 Kuba mna, Nifayi, andibafundisanga izinto ezininzi ngokunxulumene nohlobo lwamaYuda; kuba imisebenzi yawo yaye iyimisebenzi yobumnyama, kwaye nezenzo zawo zaye zizizenzo zamasikizi.
- 3 Ngako oko, ndibhalela abantu bam, kubo bonke abaya kuthi bazifumane emva koku ezi zinto ndizibhalayo, ukuze bazazi izigwebo zikaThixo, okokuba ziza phezu kwazo zonke izizwe, ngokunxulumene nelizwi athe walithetha.
- 4 Ngako oko, phulaphulani, Owu bantu bam, abangabantu bendlu kaSirayeli, nize ninike indlebe kuwo amazwi am; kuba nangona amazwi kaIsaya engacacanga kuni, nangona kunjalo acacile kubo bonke abo bazaliswe ngomoya wobuprofeti. Kodwa ndininika isiprofetho, malunga nomoya okum; ngako oko ndiza kuprofetha ngokokucaca okusoloko kukum ukususela ngelixa endathi ndaphuma ngaphandle kweYerusalem kunye nobawo; kuba qaphelani, umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa kukucaca kubantu bam, ukuze babe nokufunda.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa ngamazwi kaIsaya, kuba ndandiphuma eYerusalem, kwaye amehlo am azibonile izinto zamaYuda, kwaye ndiyayazi okokuba amaYuda ayaziqonda izinto zabaprofeti, kwaye abakho abanye abantu abaziqondayo izinto ezazithethwa kumaYuda njengawo, ngaphandle kokuba zithi zifundiswe ngokohlobo lwezinto zamaYuda.

## 2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

6 Kodwa qaphelani, mna, Nifayi, andibafundisanga abantwana bam ngokohlobo lwamaYuda; kodwa qaphelani, mna, ngokokwam, bendihlala eYerusalem, ngako oko ndiyazi malunga nemimandla wayo jikelele; kwaye ndikhankanyile kubantwana bam malunga nezigwebo zikaThixo, ezithe zenzeka phakathi kwamaYuda, kubantwana bam, malunga nako konke oko uIsaya wathi wakuthetha, kwaye ke andizibhali.

7 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiqhubeka ngesam isiprofetho, malunga nokwam ukucaca; endikwaziyo ukuba akukho mntu unokuphazama ngako; nangona kunjalo, ngemihla eziya kuthi zizaliseke ngayo iziprofetho zikaIsaya abantu baya kuyazi ngokuqinisekileyo, ngamaxesha eziya kuthi zenzeke.

8 Ngako oko, zinexabiso kubo abantwana babantu, kwaye lowo ucinga ukuba azinalo, kwabo ndiza kubhekisa ngakumbi kubo, kwaye amazwi ndiwalinganisele abantu abangabam; kuba ndiyawazi ukuba aya kuba nexabiso elikhulu kubo ngemihla yokugqibela; kuba ngaloo mhla baya kuwaqonda; ngako oko, ndiwabhalele ukulungelwa kwabo.

9 Kwaye njengokuba esinye isizukulwana sithe satshatyalaliswa phakathi kwamaYuda ngenxa yobugwenxa, ngokunjalo batshatyalalisiwe ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana malunga nobugwenxa babo; kwaye abazange nakwabaphi na kubo batshatyalalisiwe ngaphandle kokuba kube kuxelwe ngexa elingaphambili kubo ngabaprofeti beNkosi.

10 Ngako oko, baxelelwa ngokunxulumene nentshabalalo eya kuthi ize phezu kwabo, kwangoko emva kokuba ubawo eyishiyile iYerusalem; nangona kunjalo, bazenza lukhuni iintliziyo zabo; kwaye ngokwesiprofetho sam sebetshatyalalisiwe; ngaphandle nje kwabo bathe bathatyalhelwa kude ekuthinjweni ukuya eBhabhilon.

11 Kwaye ngoku oku ndikuthetha ngenxa yomoya okum. Kwaye nangona bethatyalhelwe kude baya kubuya kwakhona, baze balibange ilizwe laseYerusalem; ngako oko, baya kubuyiselwa kwakhona kulo ilizwe lelifa labo.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

- 12 Kodwa, qaphelani, baya kuba neemfazwe, namarhe eemfazwe; kwaye xa sukuba umhla uthe wafika wokokuba oKuphela koZelweyo kaBawo, ewe, naye uBawo wezulu nomhlaba, eya kuzibonakalisa kubo esenyameni, qaphelani, baya kumkhanyela, ngenxa yobugwenxa babo, nobulikhuni beentliziyo zabo, nokuqina kweentamo zabo.
- 13 Qaphelani, baya kumbethelela emnqamlezweni; kwaye emva kokuba elaliswe engcwabeni kangangeentsuku ezintathu uya kuvuka kwelabafileyo, enokuphilisa emaphikweni akhe; kwaye bonke abo baya kukholelwa egameni lakhe baya kusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo. Ngako oko, umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa kukuprofetha ngokunxulumene naye, kuba ndiwubonile umhla wakhe, kwaye intliziyo yam iya kulidumisa igama lakhe elingcwele.
- 14 Kwaye qaphelani kuya kwenzeka okokuba emva kokuba uMesiya evukile kwelabafileyo, kwaye ezibonakalisile kubo abantu bakhe, kangangobuninzi babo abo baya kuthi bakholelwe kulo igama lakhe, qaphelani, iYerusalem iya kutshatyalaliswa kwakhona; kuba yeha kubo abathi balwe ngokuchasene noThixo nabantu bebandla lakhe.
- 15 Ngako oko, amaYuda aya kusasazwa phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe; ewe, kwaye iBhabhilon kananjalo iya kutshatyalaliswa; ngako oko amaYuda aya kusasazwa zezinye izizwe.
- 16 Kwaye emva kokuba besasaziwe, kwaye neNkosi uThixo ibohlwaye ngezinye izizwe kangangesithuba sezizukulwana ezininzi, ewe, nasekwehleni ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana kude kube baya kuphenjlelwa ekubeni bakholelwe kuKrestu, uNyana kaThixo, nentlawulelo, engenamda yalo lonke uluntu—kwaye xa loo mhla uya kufika wokokuba beya kukholelwa kuKrestu, kwaye banqule uBawo egameni lakhe, ngeentliziyo ezinyulu nezandla ezimsulwa, kwaye bangakhangelwe phambili kwakhona komnye uMesiya, ke, ngelo lixa, uya kufika umhla wokokuba kumele ukuba kube yimfuneko okokuba bakholelwe kuzo ezi zinto.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

17 Kwaye iNkosi iya kuqalisa ukubeka isandla sayo kwakhona okwesibini ukubuyisela abantu bayo ukusuka kwimo yokulahleka nokuwa. Ngako oko, iya kuqhubeka ukwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo kwanongummangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu.

18 Ngako oko, iya kuzisa ngaphambili amazwi ayo kubo, amazwi lawo aya kuthi abagwebe ngomhla wokugqibela, kuba baya kuwanikwa ngenjongo yokubaqinisekisa ngoMesiya oyinyani, abathi bamala; nasekubaqinisekiseni okokuba akukho mfuneko yokuba babe baphinde bakhangele phambili komnye uMesiya ozayo, kuba akukho oya kube afike, ngaphandle kokuba ibe nguMesiya wobuxoki oya kulahlekisa abantu; kuba kukho mnye kuphela uMesiya ekuthethwe ngaye ngabaprofeti, kwaye loo Mesiya nguye lo uya kwaliwa ngamaYuda.

19 Kuba ngokwamazwi abaprofeti, uMesiya uya kuza ngeminyaka engamakhulu amathandathu ukusuka kwilixa awalishiya ngalo ubawo elaseYerusalem; nangokwamazwi abaprofeti, kanjalo nelizwi lengelosi kaThixo, igama lakhe liya kuba nguYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo.

20 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndithethe ngokucacileyo ukuze ningabi nakulahleka. Kwaye njengoko iNkosi uThixo iphila eyazisa uSirayeli yamkhupha kwilizwe laseYiputa, kwaye yanika uMoses amandla okokuba aphilise izizwe emva kokuba belunywe ziinyoka ezinobuhlungu, ukuba banokuthi baphose amehlo abo kuyo inyoka awayethe wayinyusa phambi kwabo, kanaanjalo wamnika amandla lokuba alibethe iliwa aze amanzi ampompoze; ewe, qaphelani ndithi kuni, ezi zinto ziyinyani, kwaye njengoko iNkosi uThixo iphila, alikho elinye igama elinikiweyo phantsi kwezulu ngaphandle kokuba libe ngulo Yesu Krestu, esele ndithethe ngaye, anokuthi umntu asindiswe ngalo.

21 Ngako oko, kungenxa yesi sizathu ithe iNkosi uThixo yandithembisa okokuba ezi zinto ndizibhalayo ziya kugcinwa kwaye zilondolozwe, zize zinikezelwe ukuhla ukuya kwimbewu yam, ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana, ukuze isithembiso sibe nokuzaliseka kuye uYosefu, ukuze imbewu yakhe ingaze itshabalale kangangokuba umhlaba uya kuma.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

- 22 Ngako oko, ezi zinto ziya kuhamba ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana kangangokuba umhlaba uya kuma; kwaye ziya kuhamba ngokomnqweno nentando kaThixo; kwaye izizwe eziya kuthi zizifumane ziya kugwetywa ngazo ngokwamazwi lawo abhaliweyo.
- 23 Kuba sisebenza ngenkuthalo ukuze sibhale, ukuze siphembelele abantwana bethu, nabazalwana bethu kananjalo, ukuba bakholelwe kuKrestu, nokokuba bazinikele kuThixo; kuba siyazi ukuba kungobabalo ukuze sisindiswe, emva kwako konke esinokuthi sikwenze.
- 24 Kwaye, nangona sikholelwa kuKrestu, siyawugcina umthetho kaMoses kwaye sijonge phambili ngenzondelelo kuye uKrestu, ude ube umthetho uya kuzalisekiswa.
- 25 Kuba, kungale njongo ukuba kunikwe umthetho; ngako oko umthetho ungofileyo kuthi, kwaye thina sidliswa ubomi kuKrestu ngenxa yokholo lwethu; kanti sisagcina umthetho ngenxa yemiyalelo.
- 26 Kwaye sithetha ngoKrestu, siyagcoba kuKrestu, sishumayela ngoKrestu, siprofetha ngoKrestu, kwaye sibhala ngokweziprofetho zethu, ukuze abantwana bethu bazi ukuba nguwuphina umthombo abanokukhangela kuwo ukuze baxolelwe izono zabo.
- 27 Ngako oko, sithetha ngokunxulumene nomthetho ukuze abantwana bethu bazi ngokufa komthetho; kwaye bona, ngokuthi bazi ngokufa komthetho, banokukhangela phambili kobo bomi bukuye uKrestu, baze bazi ukuba kungayiphina injongo ukuba kunikwe umthetho. Kwaye emva kokuba umthetho uzalisekile kuKrestu, ukuze kungabikho mfuneko yokuba bazenze lukhuni iintliziyi zabo ngokuchasene naye xa sukuba kufuneka umthetho utshitshiswe.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bantu bam, ningabantu abantamo zilukhuni; ngako oko, ndithethe ngokucacileyo kuni, ukuze ningabi nokungaqondi kakuhle. Kwaye amazwi endithe ndawathetha aya kuma njengobungqina ngokuchasene nani; kuba anele ukuba angafundisa nawuphina umntu indlela eyiyo; kuba indlela eyiyo kukukholelwa kuKrestu kwaye ningamkhanyeli; kuba ngokumkhanyela nikhanyela abaprofeti kananjalo nomthetho.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

29 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni indlela eyiyo kukukholelwa kuKrestu, nize ningamkhanyeli; kwaye uKrestu ungoNgcwele kaSirayeli; ngako oko kufuneka niqubude phambi kwakhe, kwaye nimnqule ngawo onke amandlakazi enu, ingqondo, nokomelela, nomphefumlo wenu wonke; kwaye ukuba niya kwenza oku anisayi kuze niphoselwe ngaphandle.

30 Kwaye, kangangokuba kuya kuba yimfuneko, kufuneka nigcine izezenzo kunye nemimiselo kaThixo kude kube umthetho uzalisekile owawunikezelwe kuye uMoses.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.



## 2 Nifayi 26

- 1 Kwaye emva kokuba uKrestu eya kuba evukile kwelabafileyo uya kuzibonakalisa kuni, bantwana bam, nabazalwana bam abathandekayo; kwaye amazwi aya kuthi awathethe kuni aya kuba ngumthetho eniya kuthi niwenze.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, ndithi kuni ndibonisiwe okokuba izizukulwana ezininzi ziya kugqitha, kwaye kuya kubakho iimfazwe ezinkulu neembambano phakathi kwabantu bam.
- 3 Kwaye emva kokuba uMesiya eya kuba efikile kuya kubakho imiqondiso enikezelwe kubo abantu bam ngokuzalwa kwakhe, kananjalo ngokufa nokuvuka kwakhe; kwaye uya kuba mkhulu kwaye woyikeke loo mhla kubo abakhohlakeleyo, kuba baya kutshabalala; kwaye batshabalala ngenxa yokuba babakhuphela ngaphandle abaprofeti, nabangcwele, baza babaxuluba ngamatye, baza bababulala; ngako oko isikhalo segazi sabangcwele siya kunyukela phezulu kuThixo ukusuka emhlabeni ngokuchasene nabo.
- 4 Ngako oko, bonke abo banekratshi, nabo benza ngenkohlakalo, umhla ozayo uya kubatshisa baphele, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, kuba baya kuba njengeendiza.
- 5 Kwaye nabo babulala abaprofeti, nabangcwele, inzulu yomhlaba iya kubaginya ngokupheleleyo, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi; kwaye iintaba ziya kubagubungela, kwaye nezivunguvane ziya kubathwalela kude, kwaye nezakhiwo ziya kubawela kwaye zibatyumze babe ziingceba zize zibacole babengumgubo.
- 6 Kwaye baya kuvelelwa ngeendudumo, nemibane, neenyikima, nazo zonke iintlobo zeentshabalalo, kuba umlilo womsindo weNkosi uya kuphenjelelwa ngokuchasene nabo, kwaye baya kuba njengeendiza, kwaye umhla lowo uzayo uya kubatshisa baphele, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi.
- 7 Owu intlungu, nentuthumbo yomphefumlo wam ngokulahleka kwababuleweyo babantu bam! Kuba mna, Nifayi, ndiyibonile, kwaye iphantse ukunditshabalalisa phambi kobuso beNkosi; kodwa kufuneka ndidanduluke kuThixo wam: Iindlela zakho zilungile.

## 2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Kodwa qaphelani, amalungisa athi awaphulaphule amazwi abaprofeti, aze angabatshabalalisi, kodwa akhangele phambili kuKrestu ngenzondelelo imiqondiso enikiweyo, nangona kukho yonke intshutshiso—qaphelani, ngabo abo bangasayi kutshabalala.
- 9 Kodwa uNyana woBulungisa uya kuvela kubo, kwaye uya kubaphilisa, kwaye baya kuba noxolo kunye naye, kude kube kudlule izizukulwana ezithathu, kwaye abaninzi besizukulwana sesine baya kuba bedlulele ebulungiseni.
- 10 Kwaye xa sukuba ezi zinto zithe zadlula intshabalalo ekhawulezileyo iya kuza kubo abantu bam; kuba, nangona ndineentlungu zomphefumlo wam, ndiyibonile; ngako oko, ndiyayazi ukuba iza kwenzeka; kwaye bazithengisa ngento engento; kuba, ngomvuzo wekratshi labo nobudenge babo baya kuvuna intshabalalo; kuba ngenxa yokuba beziyekela kumtyholi baze bakhethe imisebenzi yobumnyama kunokukhanya, ke ngoko kufuneka behlele ezantsi esihogweni.
- 11 Kuba uMoya weNkosi awusayi kusoloko usebenza ebantwini. Kwaye xa sukuba uMoya uthe wapheza ukusebenza ebantwini ke kuya kufika intshabalalo ekhawulezileyo, kwaye oku kuyawuhlungisa umphefumlo wam.
- 12 Kwaye njengoko ndathethayo ngokunxulumene nokuqinisekisa amaYuda, okokuba uYesu ngokwenene unguKrestu, kuya funeka okokuba abeeNtlanga kanjalo baqinisekiswe okokuba uYesu unguKrestu, uThixo waNaphakade;
- 13 Kwaye nokokuba uya kuzibonakalisa kubo bonke abo bakholelwa kuye, ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; ewe, kuso sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu, esebenza imimangaliso emikhulu, imiqondiso, nemimangaliso, phakathi kwabantwana babantu ngokokholo lwabo.
- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiprofetha kuni ngokunxulumene nemihla yokugqibela; ngokunxulumene nemihla yaxa sukuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuthi izizise ezi zinto ngaphambili kubo abantwana babantu.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

15 Emva kokuba imbewu yam nembewu yabantakwethu iya kube isiya iphelela ekungakholweni, kwaye beya kubethwa ngabeeNtlanga; ewe, emva kokuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuba irhangqe ngokuchasene nabo macala onke, kwaye yakuba irhangqe ngokuchasene nabo ngoqilima, yaza yenyusa iinqaba ngokuchasene nabo; kwaye nasemva kokuba beya kuba bethotyelwe ezantsi eluthulini, nokukuba bade bangabikho, kuko konke oko amazwi amalungisa aya kubhalwa, kwaye imithandazo yabanyanisekileyo iya kuviwa, kwaye bonke abo bathe baye bephelela ekungakholweni abasayi kulityalwa.

16 Kuba abo baya kutshatyalaliswa baya kuthetha nabo ngokuphuma emhlabeni, kwaye nentetho yabo iya kuba isezantsi isuka eluthulini, kwaye nelizwi labo liya kuba njengokungathi ngoneshologu; kuba iNkosi uThixo iya kumnika amandla, wokokuba abe nokusebeza ngokunxulumene nabo, kude kubengathi kuphuma emhlabeni; kwaye intetho yabo iya kusebeza iphuma eluthulini.

17 Kuba itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Baya kuzibhala izinto eziya kuthi zenziwe phakathi kwabo, kwaye ziya kubhalwa zize zitywinelwe encwadini, kwaye abo babesiya bephelela ekungakholweni abasayi kuzizuzwa, kuba bazama ukutshabalalisa izinto zikaThixo.

18 Ngako oko, njengabo babetshatyalalisiwe batshatyalalisiwe ngokukhawuleza; nezihlewele zaboyikekayo babo ziya kuba njengomququ ophephezelayo—ewe, itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Kuya kuba ngephanyazo, ngesiquphe—

19 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, okokuba abo bathe beya bephelela ekungakholweni baya kubethwa ngesandla sabeeNtlanga.

20 Kwaye abeeNtlanga baphakamile likratshi leembono zabo, kwaye bathe bakhubeka, ngenxa yobukhulu belitye lokukhubeka labo; ngokude bazakhele iinkonzo ezininzi; nangona kunjalo, bayawadela amandla nemimangaliso kaThixo, kwaye bashumayele bezidumisa ubulumko babo nemfundo yabo, ukuze bazuze ingeniso kwaye babusile ubuso beentsizana.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

21 Kwaye zininzi iinkonzo ezakhiweyo ezidala oomona, neengxabano, nolunya.

22 Kwaye kanjalo kukho amayelenqe afihlakeleyo, kwananje ngakumaxesha amandulo, ngokwamayelenqe omtyholi, kuba ungumseki wazo zonke ezi zinto; ewe, umseki wokubulala, nemisebenzi yobumnyama; ewe, kwaye ubatsala ngentamo ngomtya welaphu, ade ababophelele ngeentambo ezomeleleyo ngonaphakade.

23 Kuba qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, nditsho kuni ukuthi iNkosi uThixo ayize isebenze ebumnyameni.

24 Ayenzi nayiphina into ngaphandle kokuba ibe iluncedo lwehlabathi; kuba iya lithanda ihlabathi, ngokude inikezele ngobomi bayo ukuze itsalele bonke abantu kuyo. Ngako oko, akukho namnye emyalela ukuba angaluthabathi usindiso lwayo.

25 Qaphelani, iyadanduluka na nakomnye, isithi: Mkani kum? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi; kodwa ithi: Yizani kum nonke nina ziphelo zomhlaba, thengani ubisi kwaye nobusi, ngaphandle kwemali kwaye nangaphandle kwexabiso.

26 Qaphelani, ingaba iyalela nabani na ukuba emke aphume kuzo izindlu zesikhungo, okanye baphume kuzo izindlu zokunqula? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi.

27 Ingaba ikhe yayalela nabani na ukuba angaxhamli usindiso lwayo? Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi; kodwa ilunikele simahla kubo bonke abantu; kwaye ibayalele abantu bayo ukuba bathundeze abantu bonke ukuba baguquke.

28 Qaphelani, ingaba iNkosi ikhe yayalela nabani na ukuba angaxhamli ukulunga kwayo? Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi; kodwa bonke abantu banelungelo elilodwa omnye njengomnye, kwaye akukho namnye owalelweyo.

29 Iyalele okokuba maze kungabikho bulungiseleli bobuxoki; kuba, qaphelani, ubulungiseleli bobuxoki bobokuba abantu bashumayeke kwaye bazimise njengokukhanya ehlabathini, ukuze bazuze ingeniso kwaye nodumo lwehlabathi; kodwa abafuni ntlalo-ntle yeZiyon.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

30 Qaphelani, iNkosi ayiyivumelanga le nto; ngako oko, iNkosi uThixo inike umyalelo wokokuba bonke abantu kufanele babe nothando lwenene, uthando olo ke lwenene luluthando. Ngaphandle kokuba babe nothando lwenene, abanto yanto. Ngako oko, ukuba bathi babe nothando lwenene abangeze bayekele ukuba umsebenzi eZiyon ufe.

31 Kodwa umsebenzi eZiyon uya kusebenzela iZiyon; kuba ukuba basebenzela imali baya kutshatyalaliswa.

32 Kwaye kwakhona, iNkosi uThixo iyalele okokuba abantu maze bangabulali; maze bangaxoki; maze bangebi; maze bangalithabathi igama leNkosi uThixo wabo njengento engento; maze bangabi namona; maze bangabi nalunya; maze bangabi nambambano omnye nomnye; maze bangahenyuzi; nokokuba maze bangenzi nanye kwezi zinto; kuba othe wazenza uya kufa.

33 Kuba akukho nabunye kobu bugwenxa obuvela kuyo iNkosi; kuba yenza oko kulungileyo phakathi kwabantwana babantu; kwaye ayenzi nto ngaphandle kokuba ibe icacile kubo abantwana babantu; kwaye uya bamema bonke ukuba beze kuyo baze baxhamle kuko ukulunga kwayo; kwaye ayaleli namnye oza kuyo, omnyama nomhlophe, umthinjwa kwanokhululekileyo, indoda nomfazi; kwaye iya bakhumbula abahedeni; kwaye bonke bayafana kuThixo, kunye umYuda noweNtlanga.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

## 2 Nifayi 27

- 1 Kodwa, qaphelani, ngemihla yokugqibela, okanye ngemihla yabeeNtlanga—ewe, qaphelani zonke izizwe zabeeNtlanga namaYuda kanjalo, kunye abo baya kuza phezu kweli lizwe kwaye nabo baya kuba phezu kwamanye amazwe, ewe, kwaphezu kwawo onke amanye amazwe omhlaba, qaphelani, baya kunxila bubugwenxa nazo zonke iintlobo zamasikizi—
- 2 Kwaye xa sukuba loo mhla uya kuthi ufike baya kuvelelwa yiyo iNkosi yeMikhosi, ngendudumo nangenyikima, nangengxokolo enkulu, nangesaqhwithi, nangomoya ovuthuzayo, nangedangatye lomlilo otshisayo.
- 3 Kwaye zonke izizwe ezilwa neZiyon, neziyihluphayo, ziya kuba njengephupha lombono wasebusuku; ewe, kuya kuba kubo, kwananjengendoda elambileyo ethi iphuphe, ize izibone isitya kodwa iya kuvuka umphefumlo wayo usalambatha; okanye kufane nendoda enxaniweyo ephuphayo, kwaye qaphela izibone isela kodwa ivuke ize izibone ityhafile, nomphefumlo wayo usanqwenela ukutya; ewe, kwa izihlwele zazo zonke izizwe ezilwa neNtaba yeZiyon, ziya kuba kwanjalo.
- 4 Kuba qaphelani, nonke nina nenza ngobugwenxa, khanime kwaye nimangazwe, kuba niya kumemeza, nize nikhale; ewe, niya kunxila kodwa kungengayo iwayini, niya kugxadazela kodwa kungengaso isiselo esinxilisayo.
- 5 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi ithulule phezu kwenu umoya wobuthongo obunzulu. Kuba qaphelani, niwavalile amehlo enu, kwaye nibalile abaprofeti; nabalawuli benu, neemboni uzigubungele ngenxa yobugwenxa benu.
- 6 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba iNkosi uThixo iya kunzisela ngaphambili amazwi encwadi, kwaye aya kuba ngamazwi abathe balala.
- 7 Kwaye qaphelani incwadi iya kutywinwa; kwaye kuyo incwadi kuya kubakho isityhilelo esivela kuThixo, ukususela ekuqalekeni kwehlabathi ukuya esiphelweni salo.
- 8 Ngako oko, ngenxa yezinto ezo zitywiniweyo phezulu, izinto ezo ezitywiniweyo azisayi kunikezelwa ngomhla wenkohlakalo namasikizi abantu. Ngako oko incwadi iya kufihlwa kubo.

## 2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

- 9 Kodwa incwadi iya kunikezelwa endodeni, kwaye iya kuwanikezela amazwi encwadi, angamazwi abo abathi balala eluthulini, kwaye iya kuwanikezela la mazwi kwenye;
- 10 Kodwa amazwi athe atywinwa ayisayi kuwanikezela, ingasayi kuyinikezela nencwadi. Kuba incwadi iya kuba itywinwe ngamandla kaThixo, nesityhilelo eso sasitywiniwe siya kufihlwa encwadini kude kube lixesha elifanelekileyo kuyo iNkosi, ukuze abe nokuza ngaphambili; kuba qaphelani, atyhila zonke izinto ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi ukuya ekupheleni kwalo.
- 11 Kwaye umhla uyeza ekuya kuthi ngawo amazwi encwadi abetywiniwe afundwe phezu kwezindlu; kwaye aya kufundwa ngamandla kaKrestu; kwaye zonke izinto ziya kutyhilwa kubo abantwana babantu ezakha zabakho phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kwaye eziya kuhlala zikho kude kube sekupheleni komhlaba.
- 12 Ngako oko, ngawo loo mhla xa sukuba incwadi iya kunikezelwa kuyo indoda esele ndithethe ngayo, incwadi iya kufihlwa emehlweni ehlabathi, ukuze kungabikho mehlo nakabani na aya kuthi ayibone ngaphandle kokuba amangqina amathathu ayibone, ngamandla kaThixo, ngaphandle kwalowo incwadi iya kunikezelwa kuye; kwaye baya kungqina malunga nobunyani bencwadi nangezinto eziphakathi kuyo.
- 13 Kwaye akukho ongomnye oya kuyiphonononga, ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa ngokwentando kaThixo, ukuze banike ubungqina ngamazwi akhe kubo abantwana babantu; kuba iNkosi uThixo ithe amazwi abo banyanisekileyo aya kuthetha ngokungathi asuka kwelabafileyo.
- 14 Ngako oko, iNkosi uThixo iya kuqhubeka ukuwazisa ngaphambili amazwi ayo incwadi; kwaye ngomlomo wamangqina amaninzi kangangoko kuyilungeleyo iya kulimisela ilizwi layo; kwaye yeha kulowo uya kuliphikisa ilizwi likaThixo!

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

- 15 Kuba qaphelani, kuya kwenzeka okokuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuthi kulowo iya kunikezela kuye incwadi: Thabatha la mazwi angatywinwanga uze uwanikezele komnye, ukuze awabonise kulowo ufundileyo, uthi: Funda apha, ndiya kubongoza. Kwaye ofundileyo uya kuthi: Yizise apha incwadi, kwaye ndiya kuwafunda.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yozuko lwehlabathi nokuzuzwa ingeniso baya kukuthetha oku, kuze kungabi kokozuko lukaThixo.
- 17 Kwaye indoda iya kuthi: Andinako ukuyizisa incwadi, kuba itywiniwe.
- 18 Ke ofundileyo uya kuthi: Andinakubanako ukuyifunda.
- 19 Ngako oko kuya kwenzeka, okokuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuyinikezela kwakhona incwadi namazwi ayo kulowo ungafundanga; kwaye indoda leyo ingafundanga iya kuthi: Andifundanga.
- 20 Ize ke iNkosi uThixo ithi kuye: Abafundileyo abasayi kuwafunda, kuba bawalile, kwaye ndinako ukuzenzela owam umsebenzi; ngako oko uya kuwafunda amazwi endiya kukunika wona.
- 21 Ungazichukumisi izinto ezitywiniweyo, kuba ndiya kuzizisa ngaphambili ngexesha elilelam elifanelekileyo; kuba ndiya kubabonisa abantwana babantu ukuba ndinako ukuzenzela owam umsebenzi.
- 22 Ngako oko, xa uthe wawafunda amazwi endikuyalele ngawo, waza wawafumana amangqina ebendikuthembise ngawo, uze ke uyitywinele phezulu incwadi kwakhona, uyifihlele phezulu kum, ukuze ndibe nokuwalondoloza amazwi lawo ungawafundanga, ndide ndibe nokubona ngobam ubulumko ukuzityhila zonke izinto kubo abantwana babantu.
- 23 Kuba qaphela, ndinguye uThixo; kwaye ndinguThixo wemimangaliso, kwaye ndiya kukulibonisa ihlabathi okokuba ndinguye izolo, namhla, nangonaphakade; kwaye andisebenzi kubo abantwana babantu ngaphandle kokuba kungokholo lwabo.
- 24 Kwaye kwakhona kuya kwenzeka okokuba iNkosi iya kuthi kuye lowo uya kuwafunda amazwi lawo aya kuthi anikezelwe kuye:

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:



- 25 Njengokuba aba bantu besondela kum ngemilomo yabo, baze bandinqule ngemilebe yabo, kodwa iintliziyo zabo bazishenxisele kude nam, noloyiko lwabo kum lufundiswe ngemiyalelo yabantu—
- 26 Ke ngoko, ndiya kuqhubeka ukwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwaba bantu, ewe, umsebenzi omangalisayo nongummangaliso, kuba ubulumko bezilumko nabafundileyo babo buya kubhanga, nengqiqo yezilumko zabo iya kusitheliswa.
- 27 Kwaye yeha kubo abo bazama nzulu ukulifihla icebo labo kuyo iNkosi! Kwaye imisebenzi yabo isebumnyameni; baze bathi: Ngubani na osibonayo, kwaye ngubani na osaziyo? Baze bathi kanjalo: Ngokwenene ukuziphethuphethula kwakho izinto kuya kubonwa njengodongwe lombumbi. Kodwa qaphelani, ndiya kubabonisa, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, okokuba ndiyayazi yonke imisebenzi yabo. Kuba ingaba umsebenzi unokuthi kulowo uwenzileyo, akundenzanga? Okanye ingaba into eyakhelweyo inokuthi kulowo uyakheleyo, ebengenangqiqo?
- 28 Kodwa qaphelani, ithi i Nkosi yeMikhosi: Ndiya kubabonisa abantwana babantu okokuba kuselithutyana elincinane kakhulu kwaye iLebhanon iya kubuya ibe yintsimi echumileyo; kwaye intsimi echumileyo iya kuthatyathwa njengehlathi.
- 29 Kwaye ngaloo mhla izithulu ziya kuliva ilizwi lencwadi, namehlo eemfama aya kubona emfihlakalweni nasebumnyameni.
- 30 Kwaye abalulamileyo kanjalo baya kwanda, novuyo lwabo luya kuba seNkosini, nabazintsizana phakathi kwabantu baya kugcoba kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 31 Kuba ngokuqinisekileyo njengoko iNkosi iphila baya kubona okokuba owoyikekayo uya kwenziwa into engento, nomgxeki uyatshiswa, kwaye bonke abakhangela ithuba lokwenza ubugwenxa basikelwa ngaphandle;
- 32 Kwaye nabo bathi bamenze umoni umntu ngelizwi, baze bamthiyele isabatha okhalima esangweni, baze bamkhuphela ecaleni olilungisa njengento engento.

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

33 Ke ngoko, itsho njalo iNkosi, eyakhulula  
uAbraham, ngokunxulumene nendlu kaYakobi:  
UYakobi akasayi kudaniswa ngoku, nobuso bakhe  
ngoku bubeluthuthu.

34 Kodwa xa sukuba ebona abantwana bakhe,  
umsebenzi wezandla zam, embindini wakhe, baya  
kulingcwalisa igama lam, baze bamngcwalise  
oNgcwele kaYakobi, baze bamoyike uThixo  
kaSirayeli.

35 Nabo kanjalo abo babethe baphazama  
ngokwasemoyeni baya kubuya baqonde, kwaye abo  
babembombozela baya kufunda imfundiso.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed  
Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall  
not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax  
pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my  
hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my  
name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall  
fear the God of Israel.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to under-  
standing, and they that murmured shall learn doc-  
trine.

## 2 Nifayi 28

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, bazalwana bam, ndithethe nani, ngokokuchukunyiswa nguMoya; ngako oko, ndiyazi okokuba ngokuqinisekileyo ziya kwenzeka.
- 2 Kwaye izinto eziya kubhalwa ziphuma kuyo incwadi ziya kuba nexabiso elikhulu kubo abantwana babantu, kwaye ingakumbi kuyo imbewu yethu, eyintsalela yendlu kaSirayeli.
- 3 Kuba kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla xa sukuba amabandla amisiweyo ephakanyiswa, kwaye kungekuyo iNkosi, xa sukuba elinye liya kuthi kwelinye: Qaphela, mna, ndingoweNkosi; kwaye namanye aya kuthi: Mna, ndim oweNkosi; kwaye njalo ke baya kutsho bonke abamise baphakamisa amabandla, kwaye kungekuyo iNkosi—
- 4 Kwaye aya kuba nembambano elinye kunye nelinye; nababingeleli bazo baya kuba nembambano omnye kunye nomnye, kwaye baya kufundisa ngemfundo yabo, baze bawukhanyele uMoya oyiNgcwele, onika intetha.
- 5 Kwaye baya wakhanyela amandla kaThixo, oNgcwele kaSirayeli; baze bathi ebantwini: Phulaphulani kuthi, kwaye nive umthetho wethu; kuba qaphelani akukho Thixo kulo mhla, kuba iNkosi noMkhululi iwenzile umsebenzi wayo, kwaye iwanikele ebantwini amandla ayo;
- 6 Qaphelani, phulaphulani umthetho wam; ukuba baya kuthi kukho ummangaliso owenziweyo ngesandla seNkosi, ningawukholelwa; kuba kulo mhla akanguye uThixo wemimangaliso; uwenzile umsebenzi wakhe.
- 7 Ewe, kwaye baninzi abaya kuthi: Yidla, usele, kwaye uchwayite, kuba ngengomso siya kufa; kwaye kuya kuba kuhle kuthi.

## 2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

- 8 Kanjalo kuya kubakho abaninzi abaya kuthi: Yidla, usele, kwaye uchwayite; nangona kunjalo, yoyika uThixo—uya kusigwebela ngokona kancinane; ewe, xoka kancinane sebenzela inzuzo yakho ngomnye ngenxa yamazwi alowo, yombela umhadi ummelwane wakho; akukho bungozi koku; kwaye zenze zonke ezi zinto, kuba ngengomso siya kufa; kwaye ukuba kunokwenzeka ukuba sibe netyala, uThixo uya kusibetha ngemivumbo nje embalwa, kwaye ekugqibeleni siya kusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo.
- 9 Ewe, kwaye kuya kubakho abaninzi abaya kufundisa ngolu hlobo, iimfundiso zobuxoki nezingento nezobuyatha, kwaye baya kukhukhumala ezintliziyweni zabo, kwaye baya kuzama nzulu ukulifihla icebo labo kuyo iNkosi; kwaye nemisebenzi yabo iya kuba sebumnyameni.
- 10 Kwaye igazi labangcwele liya kukhala ukusuka emhlabeni ngokuchasene nabo.
- 11 Ewe, bonke baphambukile emendweni; banenkohlakalo.
- 12 Ngenxa yekratshi, nangenxa yootitshala abangeyonyani, neemfundiso zobuxoki, amabandla abo onakele, kwaye amabandla abo anempakamo; ngenxa yekratshi akhukhumele.
- 13 Baphanga abazintsizana ngenxa yeendawo zabo zokunqula eziphucukileyo; baphanga abazintsizana ngenxa yezambatho zabo ezintle; kwaye batshutshisa abathobekileyo nabangamahlwempu ngentliziyo, ngenxa yekratshi labo bakhukhumele.
- 14 Banxiba iintamo eziqinileyo neentloko ezinyusiweyo; ewe, kwaye ngenxa yekratshi, nenkohlakalo, namasikizi nohenyuzo, bonke baphambukile ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa, abangabalandeli bakaKrestu abathobekileyo; nangona kunjalo, bayakhokelwa, ukuze ngamaxesha amaninzi baphazame ngenxa yokuba bafundiswa ngemithetho yabantu.
- 15 Owu izilumko, abafundileyo, nabazizityebi, abakhukhumeleyo likratshi leentliziyo zabo, nabo bonke abo bashumayela iimfundiso ezingeyonyani, nabo bonke abo bahenyuzayo, baze bayiguqule indlela eyiyo yeNkosi, yeha, yeha, yeha makube kubo, itsho iNkosi uThixo uSomandla, kuba baya kuphoswa ezantsi esihogweni!

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

- 16 Yeha kwabo babakhuphela ecaleni abangamalungisa njengento engento kwaye bayinyelise loo nto ilungileyo, baze bathi ayinaxabiso! Kuba umhla uya kufika eya kuthi iNkosi uThixo ngokukhawuleza ibahambe abemi bomhlaba; kwaye ngaloo mhla xasukuba sebevuthwe ngokupheleleyo kubugwenxa baya kufa.
- 17 Kodwa qaphelani, ukuba abemi bomhlaba baya kuthi baguquke kuyo inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abasayi kutshatyalaliswa, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi.
- 18 Kodwa qaphelani, elo bandla likhulu nelimasikizi, ihenyukazi lawo wonke umhlaba, kufuneka lidilikele emhlabeni kwaye kufuneka kube kukhulu ukuwa kwalo.
- 19 Kuba ubukumkani bomtyholi kufuneka ukuba bugungqiswe, nabo bangobabo kuyimfuneko okokuba baxhokoxelwe ekubeni baguquke, okanye umtyholi uya kubaxhakamfula ngaloo matyathanga akhe angenasiphelo, baze baxhokoxelwe emsindweni, baze batshabalale;
- 20 Kuba qaphelani, ngaloo mhla uya kudwanguza ezintliziyweni zabantwana babantu, aze abavusele emsindweni ngokuchasene noko kulungileyo.
- 21 Abanye uya kubathoboza aze abazolisele kude kukhuseleko lwasenyameni, ukuze bathi: Konke kulungile eZiyon; ewe, iZiyon iphumelele, konke kulungile—uyiqhatha njalo ke umtyholi imiphefumlo yabo, aze ayikhokelele kude ngenyameko ezantsi esihogweni.
- 22 Kwaye qaphelani, abanye abakhohlisele kude ngokubancoma, abaxelele ukuba akukho sihogo; kwaye uthi kubo: Andinguye umtyholi, kuba akukho mtyholi—njalo ke uyasebeza ezindlebeni zabo, ade abaxhakamfule ngaloo matyathanga akhe oyikekayo, apho kungasekho kukhululwa.
- 23 Ewe, baxhakamfulwa ngokufa, nangesihogo; kwaye ukufa, nesihogo, nomtyholi, nabo bonke abo babanjwe ngezo zinto kufuneka beme phambi kwetrone kaThixo, baze bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, ukusuka apho kufuneka baye ngakhona ukuya kuyo indawo elungiselelwe bona, kwanalo idike lomlilo nesalfure, ekukuthuthumba okungenasiphelo.

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

24 Ke ngoko, yeha kulowo uyekelele umxhelo eZiyon!

25 Yeha kulowo odanduluka athi: Konke kulungile!

26 Ewe, yeha kulowo uphulaphula imithetho yabantu, aze akhanyele amandla kaThixo, nesipho soMoya oyiNgcwele!

27 Ewe, yeha kulowo uthi: Sifumene ngokwaneleyo, asifuni okungakumbi!

28 Kwaye lilonke, yeha kubo bonke abo bathi bangangcazela, kwaye babe nomsindo ngenxa yenyano kaThixo! Kuba qaphelani, lowo wakhelwe phezu kolwalwa uyamkela ngovuyo; aze lowo wakhelwe phezu kwesiseko sentlabathi angangazele hleze ayokuwa.

29 Yeha kulowo uya kuthi: Silifumene ilizwi likaThixo, kwaye asifuni limbi ilizwi likaThixo, kuba sinalo ngokwaneleyo!

30 Kuba qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Ndiya kubanika abantwana babantu umgca phezu komgca, umthetho phezu komthetho, kancinane apha, kancinane phaya; kwaye basikelelekile abo bathi bayiphulaphule imithetho yam, baze banike indlebe kuyo ingcebiso yam, kuba baya kufunda ubulumko; kuba kulowo wamkelayo ndiya kumnika ngakumbi; kwaye kwabo baya kuthi, Sinalo ngokwaneleyo, kubo kuya kuthatyathwa noko banako.

31 Uqalekisiwe lowo ubeka ithemba lakhe emntwini, okanye owenza inyama ibe yingalo yakhe, okanye oya kuthi aphulaphule imithetho yabantu, ngaphandle kokuba imithetho yabo iya kuba inikwa ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele.

32 Yeha kubo abeeNtlanga, itsho iNkosi uThixo wemiKhosi! Kuba nangona ndiya kuyolulela ingalo yam kubo imihla ngemihla, baya kundikhanyela; nangona kunjalo, ndiya kuba nenceba kubo, itsho iNkosi uThixo, ukuba baya kuthi baguquke kwaye babuyele kum; kuba ingalo yam yolulekile umhla wonke, itsho iNkosi uThixo weMikhosi.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

## 2 Nifayi 29

- 1 Kodwa qaphelani, baya kuba baninzi—ngaloo mhla xa sukuba ndiya kuba ndiqhubeka ukwenza umsebenzi omangalisayo phakathi kwabo, ukuze ndikhumbule iminqophiso yam endithe ndayenza kubantwana babantu, ukuze ndibe nokubeka isandla sam kwakhona okwesibini ukubuyisela abantu bam, abangabendlu kaSirayeli;
- 2 Kananjalo, ukuze ndikhumbule izithembiso endazenzayo kuwe, Nifayi, kanjalo kuyihlo, okokuba ndiya kuyikhumbula imbewu yakho; kwaye nokokuba amazwi embewu yakho kumele aphume emlonjeni wam ukuya kuyo imbewu yakho; namazwi am aya kutyhutyha ukuya kwiziphelo zehlabathi, ukuze abe yibhanile yabantu bam, abangabendlu kaSirayeli;
- 3 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba amazwi am aya kuba likhwelo eliya phambili—abaninzi beeNtlanga baya kuthi: IBhayibhile! IBhayibhile! Sinayo iBhayibhile, kwaye akunako ukuba kubekho engakumbi iBhayibhile.
- 4 Kodwa itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo: Owu ziyatha, baya kuba nayo iBhayibhile; kwaye iya kuba iphuma kumaYuda, abantu bam bomnqophiso bamandulo. Bawabulela njani amaYuda ngeBhayibhile abayifumene kuwo? Ewe, abeeNtlanga bathetha ntoni? Baya yikhumbula imigudu nemisebenzi enzima, neentlungu zamaYuda, nenkuthalo yawo kum, ekuziseni ngaphambili usindiso kubo abeeNtlanga?
- 5 Owu nina beeNtlanga, niwakhumbule na amaYuda, abantu bam bomnqophiso bamandulo? Hayi; kodwa nibaqalekisile, kwaye nabathiya, kwaye anizamanga kubabuyisela. Kodwa qaphelani, ndiya kuzibuyisela zonke ezi zinto phezu kweentloko zenu; kuba mna Nkosi andibalibalanga abantu bam.
- 6 Ziyathandini, eziya kuthi: IBhayibhile, sinayo iBhayibhile, kwaye asinayo imfuno yeBhayibhile engakumbi. Ingaba beninganayo na iBhayibhile ngaphandle kokuba kube kungamaYuda?

## 2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7 Anazi na ukuba kukho izizwe ezininzi kunesinye? Anazi na ukuba mna, Nkosi uThixo wenu, ndidale bonke abantu, nokuba ndiya bakhumbula nabo baphezu kweziqithi zolwandle; nokuba ndilawula emazulwini phezulu nasemhlabeni ezantsi; kwaye ndiwazisa ngaphambili amazwi am kubo abantwana babantu, ewe, nakuzo zonke izizwe zomhlaba?

8 Ngako oko nimbombozela, kungokuba niya kuzuzisa angakumbi amazwi am? Anazi na ukuba ubungqina bezizwe ezimbini bubungqina kuni bokuba ndinguthixo, bokokuba ndikhumbula esinye izizwe ngokufanayo nesinye? Ngako oko, ndithetha amazwi amanye kwesinye izizwe ngokufanayo nakwesinye. Kwaye xa izizwe ezimbini ziya kubaleka kunye ubungqina bazo izizwe ezimbini buya kubaleka kunye kanjalo.

9 Kwaye ndikwenza oku ukuze ndibonakalise kwabaninzi ukuba ndikwanguye izolo, namhlanje, nangonaphakade; nokokuba ndiwathetha phandle amazwi am ngokolonwabo lwamm. Kwaye ngenxa yokuba ndithethe ilizwi elinye animele nicinge ukuba andinakho ukuthetha elinye; kuba umsebenzi wam awukapheli; ungekazi kuphela kude kuphela abantu, ungekazi kuphela ukusuka ngelo xesha ukuya phambili nangonaphakade.

10 Ngako oko, kuba nineBhayibhile animele nicinge ukuba iqulethe onke amazwi am; ningamele okokuba nicinge ukuba andenzanga ukuba kubhalwe angakumbi.

11 Kuba ndiyalela bonke abantu, kunye empuma nasentshona, nasemantla, nasemazantsi, nakwiziqithi zolwandle, okokuba maze bawabhale amazwi endiwathetha kubo; kuba ndiya kuligweba ihlabathi ngokuphuma kuzo iincwadi, bonke abantu ngokwemisebenzi yabo, malunga noko kubhaliweyo.

12 Kuba qaphelani, ndiya kuthetha kuwo amaYuda kwaye aya kuyibhala, kwaye ndiya kuthetha kanjalo kumaNifayithi kwaye aya kuyibhala; kwaye ndiya kuthetha kanjalo kuzo zonke izizwe zendlu kaSirayeli, endithe ndazikhokelela kude, kwaye ziya kuyibhala; kwaye ndiya kuthetha kanjalo kuzo zonke izizwe zomhlaba kwaye ziya kuyibhala.

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.



13 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba amaYuda aya kuba nawo amazwi amaNifayithi, namaNifayithi aya kuba nawo amazwi amaYuda; kwaye amaNifayithi namaYuda aya kuba nawo amazwi ezizwe ezilahlekileyo zikaSirayeli; nezizwe ezilahlekileyo zikaSirayeli ziya kuba nawo amazwi amaNifayithi nawamaYuda.

14 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba abantu bam, abangabendlu kaSirayeli, baya kuhlanganiselwa ekhaya kumazwe amabango abo; kwaye nelizwi lam kanjalo liya kuhlanganiswa kunye. Kwaye ndiya kubabonisa abalwa ngokuchasene nelizwi lam nangokuchasene nabantu bam, abangabendlu kaSirayeli, okokuba ndinguThixo, nokokuba ndenza umnqophiso noAbraham okokuba ndiya kuyikhumbula imbewu yakhe ngonaphakade.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

## 2 Nifayi 30

- 1 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiza kuthetha nani; kuba mna, Nifayi, andisayi kuniyekela ekubeni nicinge ukuba ningamalungisa ngaphezulu kunokuba abeeNtlanga beya kubanjalo. Kuba qaphelani, ngaphandle kokuba nibe niya kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo niya kuthi nonke ngokunjalo nitshabalale; kwaye ngenxa yamazwi athe athethwa animele nicinge okokuba abeeNtlanga baya kutshatyalaliswa kwaphela.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, ndithi kuni kangangobuninzi babo abeeNtlanga abaya kuguquka babengabantu bomnqophiso weNkosi; kwaye kangangobuninzi bawo amaYuda angayi kuguquka aya kusikelwa ngaphandle; kuba iNkosi ayinqophisani naye namnye ngaphandle kokuba kube kunabo abo bathi baguquke kwaye bakholelwe kuye uNyana wakhe, onguye oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, ndiza kuprofetha nje ngokungakumbi ngokunxulumene namaYuda nabeeNtlanga. Kuba emva kokuba incwadi endithe ndathetha ngayo iya kuza ngaphambili, iza ibhalelwe abeeNtlanga, kwaye itywinelwe phezulu kwakhona eNkosini, baya kuba baninzi abaya kuwakholelwa amazwi abhaliweyo; kwaye baya kuwathwala aye phambili kuyo intsalela yembewu yethu.
- 4 Kwaye ke intsalela yembewu yethu iya kuthi yazi ngokunxulumene nathi, sasiphume njani na eYerusalem, nokokuba iyinzala yamaYuda.
- 5 Kwaye ivangeli kaYesu Krestu iya kuvakaliswa phakathi kwabo; ngako oko, baya kubuyiselwa kulwazi ngooyise, kananjalo kulwazi ngoYesu Krestu, eyayikho phakathi kooyise.
- 6 Baze ke bagcobe; kuba bayakwazi okokuba kuyintsikelelo kubo esuka esandleni sikaThixo; nenkwethu yobumnyama iya kuqalisa ukuliqika emehlweni abo; kwaye izizukulwana ezininzi aziyi kudlula phakathi kwabo, zingakhange zibe ziya kuba mpuluswa kwaye zibe ngabantu abathandekayo.

## 2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

- 7 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba amaYuda lawo  
 asasaziweyo nawo kanjalo aya kuqalisa  
 ukukholelwa kuKrestu; kwaye aya kuqalisa  
 ukuhlanganisana ngaphakathi phezu kobuso  
 belizwe; kwaye kangangobuninzi bawo aya kuthi  
 akholelwe kuKrestu onke kanjalo aya kuba  
 ngabantu abathandekayo.
- 8 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba iNkosi uThixo  
 iya kuqalisa umsebenzi wayo phakathi kwazo zonke  
 izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi, nabantu, ukuphumeza  
 ubuyiselo lwabantu bakhe phezu komhlaba.
- 9 Kwaye ngobulungisa iNkosi uThixo iya  
 kubagweba abazintsizana, ize ikhalime  
 ngokungenamkhethe kwabalulamileyo bomhlaba.  
 Kwaye iya kuwubetha umhlaba ngentonga yomlomo  
 wayo; kwaye ngomphefumlo wemilebe yayo iya  
 kubabulala abakhohlakeleyo.
- 10 Kuba ilixa liyeza ngokukhawuleza xa sukuba  
 iNkosi uThixo iya kwenza iyantlukwano enkulu  
 phakathi kwabantu, kwaye abakhohlakeleyo iya  
 kubatshabalalisa; kwaye iya kubasindisa abantu  
 bayo, ewe, nokuba kuya kufuneka ukuba  
 ibatshabalalise ngomlilo abakhohlakeleyo.
- 11 Kwaye ubulungisa buya kuba ngumbhinqo  
 wesinqe sayo, nokuthembeka kube ngumbhinqo  
 wemikhala yayo.
- 12 Kwaye ke ingcuka iya kuhlala netakane; nengwe  
 iya kubuthuma netakane lebhokhwe, nethole,  
 nengonyama esentsha, nethole elityetyisiweyo,  
 kunye; nomntwana omncinane uya kuzikhokela.
- 13 Kwaye imazi yenkomo nebhere ziya kudla kunye;  
 amathole azo aya kubuthuma kunye; kwaye  
 ingonyama iya kudla umququ njengenkomo.
- 14 Kwaye nemveku eyanyiswayo iya kudlala  
 emngxunyeni wephimpi, nomntwana olunyulweyo  
 uya kufaka isandla sakhe elukhozweni lweliso  
 lwerhamba.
- 15 Aziyi kwenzakalisa zingayi kutshabalalisa kuyo  
 yonke intaba yam engcwele; kuba umhlaba uya kube  
 uzaliswe lulwazi ngeNkosi njengokuba amanzi  
 egubungela ulwandle.
- 16 Ngako oko, izinto zazo zonke izizwe ziya  
 kutyhilwa; ewe, zonke izinto ziya kutyhilwa kubo  
 abantwana babantu.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are  
 scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and  
 they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the  
 land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also  
 become a delightsome people.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall  
 commence his work among all nations, kindreds,  
 tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration  
 of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge  
 the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the  
 earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his  
 mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay  
 the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God  
 shall cause a great division among the people, and  
 the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his peo-  
 ple, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the  
 wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins,  
 and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and  
 the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf,  
 and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a  
 little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young  
 ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat  
 straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the  
 asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the  
 cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy  
 mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowl-  
 edge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made  
 known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the  
 children of men.

17 Akukho nto ifihlakeleyo engayi kutyhilwa; akukho msebenzi wobumnyama ongayi kuvezwa ekukhanyeni; kwaye akukho nto itywiniweyo phezu komhlaba engayi kukhululwa.

18 Ngako oko, zonke izinto ezithe zatyhilwa kubo abantwana babantu ngaloo mhla ziya kutyhilwa; kwaye uSathana akasayi kuba namandla phezu kweentliziyo zabantwana babantu kwakhona, kangangexesha elide. Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiyapheza ngeentetha zam.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

## 2 Nifayi 31

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, ndiyapheza ukuprofetha kwam kuni, bazalwana bam abathandekayo. Kwaye andinako ukubhala ngokungaphandle nje kwezinto ezimbalwa, endaziyo okokuba nakanjani na ziya kwenzeka; ndingenakho nokubhala ngokungaphandle nje kwambalwa amazwi omninawa wam uYakobi.
- 2 Ngako oko, izinto endizibhalileyo ziyandanelisa, ngaphandle nje kwamazwi ambalwa ekufuneka ndiwathethe malunga nemfundiso kaKrestu; ngako oko, ndiza kuthetha nani ngokucacileyo, ngokokucaca kokuprofetha kwam.
- 3 Kuba umphefumlo wam uyavuyiswa kukucaca; kuba iNkosi uThixo isebenza ngoko ngolu hlobo phakathi kwabantwana babantu. Kuba iNkosi uThixo inika ukukhanya kwabo baqondayo; kuba ithetha nabantu ngokolwimi lwabo, ukuze baqonde.
- 4 Ngako oko, ndinga ningakhumbula okokuba ndithethe nani ngokunxulumene nalaa mprofeti eyathi iNkosi yambonisa kum, owayeza kubhaptiza iMvana kaThixo, eyayiza kususa izono zehlabathi.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba iMvana kaThixo, ekubeni ingcwele, kuyimfuneko ukuba ibhaptizwe ngamanzi, ukuzalisekisa bonke ubulungisa, Owu ke, kukangakanani kuthi ukuba yimfuneko, singengcwele, ukuba sibhaptizwe, ewe, nangawo amanzi!
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, ndiza kubuza kuni, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, kungani ukuba iMvana kaThixo izalisekise ubulungisa bonke ngokuthi ibhaptizwe ngamanzi?
- 7 Anazi na ukuba waye engcwele? Kodwa nangona engcwele, ubonisa abantwana babantu ukuba, ngokwasenyameni uyazithoba phambi kukaYise, kwaye angqine kuye uYise okokuba uya kumthobela ekugcineni imiyalelo yakhe.
- 8 Ngako oko, emva kokuba ebhaptiziwe ngamanzi, uMoya oyiNgcwele wehla phezu kwakhe ekumila kunje ngehobe.

## 2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

- 9 Kwaye kwakhona, kubonisa kubo abantwana babantu ngokubamxinwa kwendlela, nokucuthana kwesango, abaya kungena ngalo, yena ke ebamisele umzekelo phambi kwabo.
- 10 Kwaye wathi kubo abantwana babantu: Ndilandeleni. Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ingaba singamlandela uYesu ngaphandle kokuba siyavuma ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaBawo?
- 11 Kwaye ke uBawo wathi: Guqukani, guqukani, nize nibhaptizwe egameni loNyana wam oyiNtanda.
- 12 Kwaye kanjalo, ilizwi loNyana leza kum, lisithi: Lowo ubhaptizweyo egameni lam, lowo uBawo uya kumnika uMoya oyiNgcwele, njengam; ngako oko, ndilandeleni, nize nenze izinto enindibone ndizenza.
- 13 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiyazi okokuba ukuba niya kumlandela uNyana, ngenjongo ephelileyo yentliziyo, ningahanahani kwaye ningenankohliso phambi kukaThixo, kodwa ninenjong eyiyo, niguquka ezonweni zenu, ningqina kuye uBawo okokuba niyavuma ukuthabathela kuni igama likaKrestu, ngobhaptizo—ewe, ngokulandela iNkosi yenu noMsindisi wenu ezantsi emanzini, ngokwelizwi lakhe, qaphelani, niya kuthi ke namkele uMoya oyiNgcwele; ewe, kuze ke kufike ubhaptizo lomlilo neloMoya oyiNgcwele; nize ke nibe nokuthetha ngolwimi lweengelosi, nize nidanduluke ngeendumiso kuye oNgcwele kaSirayeli.
- 14 Kodwa, qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, leza nje ilizwi loNyana kum, lisithi: Emva kokuba niguqukile ezonweni zenu, naza nangqina kuye uBawo okokuba niyavuma ukuyigcina imiyalelo yam, ngobhaptizo lwamanzi, nize nilwamkele ubhaptizo lomlilo neloMoya oyiNgcwele, kwaye ninako ukuthetha ngolwimi olutsha, ewe, kwanalo ulwimi lweengelosi, nize emva koku nindikhanye, bekuya kunilungela ukuba ninge ningandazanga.
- 15 Kwaye ndeva ilizwi livela kuBawo, lisithi: Ewe, amazwi akhe oThandekayo wam ayinyani kwaye athembekile. Lowo unyamezela kude kube sekupheleni, onjalo uya kusindiswa.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

- 16 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiyazi ngako oku okokuba ngaphandle kokuba umntu uya kunyamezela kude kube sekupheleni, elandela umzekelo woNyana kaThixo ophilayo, akanako ukusindiswa.
- 17 Ngako oko, zenzeni izinto endinixelele ukuba ndizibonile ezo iNkosi yenu noMkhululi iya kuzenza; kuba, kungesi sizathu ukuba ndiziboniswe, sokokuba manilazi isango eninokungena ngalo. Kuba isango eninokungena ngalo yinguquko nobhaptizo ngamanzi; kwaye ke kuze uxolelo lwezono zenu ngomlilo nangoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 18 Nize ke nibe kule ndlela icutheneyo nemxinwa ekhokelela kubomi obungunaphakade; ewe, ningenile ngesango; nenze ngokwemiyalelo kaBawo noNyana; kwaye niwamkele uMoya oyiNgcwele, ongqina ngaye uBawo kwakunye noNyana, ukuze kuzaliseke isithembiso awasenzayo, kwaye ukuba ningenile ngendlela niya kwamkela.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, emva kokuba ningenile kuyo le ndlela icutheneyo nemxinwa, ndingabuza okokuba ingaba konke kugqityiwe na? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi; kuba anifikelelanga apha ngaphandle kokuba kube kungelizwi likaKrestu ninokholo olungagungqiyo kuye, nithembele ngokupheleleyo kuko ukulunga kwalowo unamandla okusindisa.
- 20 Ngako oko, kufuneka nifunzele phambili ninenzondelelo kuKrestu, ninethemba eliqaqambe ngokugqibeleleyo, nothando lukaThixo nolwabantu bonke. Ngako oko, ukuba niya kufunzela phambili, nizondla ngelizwi likaKrestu, nize ninyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, qaphelani, utsho njalo uYise: Niya kufumana ubomi obungunaphakade.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, le yiyo indlela; kwaye ayikho enye indlela nagama linikiweyo ngaphantsi kwezulu ekungasindiswa ngalo umntu ebukumkanini bukaThixo. Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, le yimfundiso kaKrestu, kwaye nekuphela kwayo kwaye neyinyani imfundiso kaYise, neyoNyana, neyoMoya oyiNgcwele, abanguThixo omnye, ongenasiphelo. Amen.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

## 2 Nifayi 32

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiyacinga okokuba niyacingisisa nje noko ezintliziyweni zenu malunga naloo nto nimele niyenze emva kokuba ningenile ngendlela. Kodwa, qaphelani, kungani nizicingisisa nje ezi zinto ezintliziyweni zenu?
- 2 Anikhumbuli na okokuba ndathi kuni emva kokuba namkele uMoya oyiNgcwele ninakho ukuthetha ngolwimi lweengelosi? Kwaye ngoku, ningathetha njani na ngolwimi lweengelosi ngaphandle kokuba kube kungoMoya oyiNgcwele?
- 3 Iingelosi zithetha ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; ngako oko, zithetha amazwi kaKrestu. Ngako oko, ndathi kuni, zondleni ngamazwi kaKrestu; kuba qaphelani, amazwi kaKrestu aya kunixelela zonke izinto enimele ukuzenza.
- 4 Ngako oko, ngoku emva kokuba ndithethe la mazwi, ukuba aninako ukuwaqonda kuya kuba kungenxa yokuba anibuzi, ningankqonkqozi; ngako oko, aniziswa ekukhanyeni, kodwa kufuneka nitshabalalele ebumnyameni.
- 5 Kuba qaphelani, kwakhona ndithi kuni ukuba niya kungena ngendlela, nize namkele uMoya oyiNgcwele, uya kunibonisa zonke izinto ekumele nizenze.
- 6 Qaphelani, le yimfundiso kaKrestu, kwaye akuyi kuphinda kubekho enye imfundiso enikwayo kude kube semva kokuba eya kuzibonakalisa kuni esenyameni. Kwaye xa eya kuzibonakalisa kuni esenyameni, izinto aya kuzithetha kuni maze niqwalasele ukuzenza.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, andinako ukuthetha ngakumbi; uMoya uya kumisa ukuthetha kwam, kwaye ndiselusizini ngenxa yokungakholwa, nenkohlakalo, nentswela-lwazi, nangokuqina kwentamo zabantu; kuba abafuni ukuluzingela ulwazi, nakuluqonda ulwazi olukhulu, xa sukuba lunikezelwa kubo ngokucaca, kwa nangokucaca anokucaca ngako amazwi.

## 2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.



8 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiqwalasela ukuba nisacingisisa ezintliziyweni zenu; kwaye kuya ndihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndithethe malunga nale nto. Kuba ukuba beniya kuphulaphula kuwo uMoya othi umfundise umntu ukuthandaza, beniya kukwazi ukuba kufuneka nithandaze; kuba umoya ongcobileyo awumfundisi umntu ukuba athandaze, kodwa umfundisa ukuba akufuneki athandaze.

9 Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi kuni kufuneka nithandaze rhoqo, kwaye ningatyhafi; nokuba ningenzi nanye into eNkosini ngaphandle kokuba kuqala niya kuthandaza kuBawo egameni likaKrestu, ukuze asingcwalise isenzo senu kuni, ukuze isenzo senu sibe sesentlalontle yomphefumlo wenu.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

## 2 Nifayi 33

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Nifayi, andinako ukuzibhala zonke izinto ezazifundisiwe phakathi kwabantu bam; ndingenguye nomntu onobuchule bokubhala, nje ngasekuthetheni; kuba xa sukuba umntu ethetha ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele amandla oMoya oyiNgcwele ayayithwala ayise ezintliziyweni zabantwana babantu.
- 2 Kodwa qaphelani, baninzi abathi bazenze lukhuni iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene noMoya oyiNgcwele, ukuze ungabi nandawo kubo; ngako oko, baziphosela kude izinto ezininzi ezibhaliweyo baze bazithabathe nje ngezinto ezingento.
- 3 Kodwa mna, Nifayi, ndibhale oko ndikubhalileyo, kwaye ndikuthabatha nje ngento enexabiso elikhulu, kwaye ingakumbi kubo abantu bam. Kuba ndiya bathandazela rhoqo ngemini, kwaye amehlo am amanzisa umqamelo wam ngobusuku, ngenxa yabo; kwaye ndiyakhala kuThixo wam ngokholo, kwaye ndiyazi okokuba uya kusiva isikhalo sam.
- 4 Kwaye ndiyazi okokuba iNkosi uThixo uya kuwungcwalisa umthandazo wam ukuze babe nenzuzo abantu bam. Kwaye amazwi endithe ndawabhala ebuthathakeni bam aya kwenziwa abe namandla kubo, kuba abathundezela ekubeni benze okulungileyo; abenza bazi ngooyise; kwaye athetha ngoYesu, aze abathundezele ekubeni bakholelwe kuye, baze banyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, esibubomi obungunaphakade.
- 5 Kwaye ithetha rhabaxa ngokuchasene nesono, malunga nokucaca kwenyaniso; ngako oko, akukho mntu uya kuba nomsindo kuwo amazwi endithe ndawabhala ngaphandle kokuba uya kuba engowomoya womtyholi.
- 6 Ndiyavuyiswa kokucacileyo; ndiyavuyiswa yinyaniso; ndiyavuyiswa nguYesu wam, kuba uwukhulule umphefumlo wam esihogweni.
- 7 Ndinothando lwenene ngabantu bam, nokholo olukhulu kuKrestu lokokuba ndiya kubonana nemiphefumlo emininzi ndingenachaphaza esihlalweni sakhe sokugweba.
- 8 Ndinothando lwenene ngomYuda—Ndithi mYuda, ngenxa yokuba ndithetha ngabo balapho ndivela khona.

## 2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

- 9 Ndinothando lwenene kanjalo ngabeeNtlanga. Kodwa qaphelani, kuba akukho namnye kwaba endinokuba nethemba ngabo ngaphandle kokuba baya kuxolelaniswa noKrestu, baze bangene ngesango elicutheneyo, baze bahambe endleleni emxinwa ekhokelela ebomini, baze baqhubeke kuyo indlela kude kube sekupheleni komhla wokulingwa.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, kwa nomYuda, kwaye nani nonke ziphelo zomhlaba, waphulaphuleni la mazwi nize nikholelwe kuKrestu; kwaye ukuba aniwakholelwa la mazwi kholelwani kuKrestu. Kwaye ukuba niya kukholelwa kuKrestu niya kukholelwa kula mazwi, kuba angawo amazwi kaKrestu, kwaye uwanikele kum; ukuze afundisa bonke abantu okokuba bemele ukwenza okulungileyo.
- 11 Kwaye ukuba awangawo amazwi kaKrestu, gwebani—kuba uKrestu uya kukubonisa, ngamandla nobuqaqawuli obukhulu, okokuba ngamazwi akhe, ngomhla wokugqibela; kwaye wena kunye nam siya kuma ubuso ngobuso phambi kwesihlalo sakhe; kwaye niya kuyazi okokuba bendiyalelwe nguye ukuba ndizibhale ezi zinto, nangona ndinobuthathaka bam.
- 12 Kwaye ndiyamthandaza uBawo egameni likaKrestu okokuba abaninzi bethu, ukuba asisonke, bangasindiswa ebukumkanini bakhe ngaloo mhla mkhulu nowokugqibela.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, bonke abo bangabendlu kaSirayeli, nani nonke ziphelo zomhlaba, ndithetha kuni njengelizwi lalowo ukhala ekusuka eluthulini: Salani kakuhle kude kube kuya kufika loo mhla mkhulu.
- 14 Kwaye nina abangafuniyo ukuxhamla kuko ukulunga kukaThixo, kwaye niwahlonene amazwi amaYuda, namazwi am kanjalo, namazwi aya kuthi eze ephuma emlonyeni weMvana kaThixo, qaphelani, ndiyanibulisa ukuba nisale kakuhle ngonaphakade, kuba la mazwi aya kunigweba ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 15 Kuba oko ndikutywina emhlabeni, kuya kubekwa phambi kwenu ngokuchasene nani esihlalweni sokugweba; kuba iNkosi indiyalele njalo, kwaye kufuneka ndithobe. Amen.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate, and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me; and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—for Christ will show unto you, with power and great glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my words, and the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you an everlasting farewell, for these words shall condemn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me, and I must obey. Amen.

# INcwadi kaYakobi

## Umntakwabo Nifayi

*Amazwi entshumayelo yakhe kubazalwana bakhe. Utboba isidima sendoda ezama ukusingela pbantsi imfundiso kaKrestu. Amazwi ambakwa ngokunxulumene nembali yabantu bakaNifayi.*

### Yakobi 1

- 1 Kuba qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba engamashumi amahlanu anesihlanu iminyaka yaye yadlula ukusuka ngelixa uLihayi eshiya elaseYerusalem; ngako oko, uNifayi wanika mna, Yakobi, umyalelo malunga namacwecwe amancinane, ekukrolwe phezu kwawo ezi zinto.
- 2 Kwaye wanika mna, Yakobi, umyalelo wokokuba kufuneka ndibhale phezu kwala macwecwe ezimbalwa izinto endicinga ukuba zixabiseke ngakumbi; nokokuba kufuneka ndinga zichukumisi, ngaphandle kokuchaphazela nje kancinane, ngokunxulumene nembali yesi sizwe esibizwa abantu bakaNifayi.
- 3 Kuba wathi imbali yabantu bakhe kufuneka ikrolwe phezu kwamanye amacwecwe akhe, nokuba kufuneka ndiwalondoloze la macwecwe ndize ndiwanikezele ukuhla ukuya kuyo imbewu yam, ukususela kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana.
- 4 Kwaye ukuba kwakukho intshumayelo eyaye ingcwele, okanye isityhilelo esasibalulekile, okanye ukuprofetha, kwakufuneka ndikrole iintloko zazo phezu kwala macwecwe, kwaye ndichukumise kuzo kangangoko kunokwenzeka, ngenxa kaKrestu, nangenxa yabantu bethu.
- 5 Kuba ngenxa yokholo nenkxalabo enkulu, ngokwenene kwabonakaliswa kuthi malunga nabantu bethu, izinto ekufuneka zenzekile kubo.
- 6 Kwaye kanjalo saba nezityhilelo ezininzi, nomoya wesiprofetho ongakumbi; ngako oko, sasisazi ngoKrestu nobukumkani bakhe, obabuya kuza.

# The Book of Jacob

## the Brother of Nephi

*The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He confoundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.*

### Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

7 Ngako oko sasebenza nzima ngenkuthalo phakathi kwabantu bethu, ukuze sibe nokuba phembelela ekubeni beze kuKrestu, baze bathabathe inxaxheba kuko ukulunga kukaThixo, ukuze babe nokungena ekuphumleni kwakhe, hleze nangaluphi na uhlobo afunge ngengqumbo yakhe ukuba abayi kungena ngaphakathi, njengasekucatshukisweni ngemihla yohendo ngelixa abantwana bakaSirayeli babesentlango.

8 Ngako oko, sinqwenela kuThixo okokuba singanakho ukuphembelela bonke abantu ukuba bangavukeli ngokuchasene noThixo, ukuze bamcaphukise abe nomsindo, kodwa okokuba bonke abantu bakholelwe kuKrestu, baze bakubone ukufa kwakhe, baze bawunyamezele umnqamlezo wakhe baze balithwale ihlazo lehlabathi; ngako oko, mna, Yakobi, ndikuthabathela kum ukuzalisekisa umyalelo womntakwethu uNifayi.

9 Ke kaloku uNifayi waqalisa ukuba mdala, waza wazibona ukuba kwakamsinya kufuneka afe; ngako oko, wathambisa indoda ukuba ibe ngukumkani nomlawuli phezu kwabantu bakhe ngoku, ngokolawulo lookumkani.

10 Abantu ekubeni bemthanda uNifayi ngokugqithisileyo, yena ke ekubeni ebengumkhuseli omkhulu wabo, ekubeni ebeliphatha ngobuchule ikrele likaLabhan ekubakhuseleni, nasekubeni ebesebenze ngayo yonke imihla yakhe ukuze babe nentlalo-ntle—

11 Ngako oko, abantu babenqwenela ukuba baligcine igama lakhe ezinkumbulweni zabo. Kwaye nabani na owayeya kulawula endaweni yakhe abantu bambiza, uNifayi wesibini, uNifayi wesithathu, njalo-njalo, ngokolawulo lookumkani; kwaye babebizwa njalo ke ngabantu, mababe lilo naliphi na igama ababeya kuba lilo.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba afe uNifayi.

13 Ngoku abantu ababengengawo amaLeymenayithi babengamaNifayithi; nangona kunjalo, babebizwa amaNifayithi, amaYakobayithi, amaYosefayithi, amaZoramayithi, amaLeymenayithi, amaLemuwelayithi, namaIshmayelayithi.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

- 14 Kodwa mna, Yakobi, emva koku andisayi kubohlula ngala magama, kodwa ndiya kubabiza amaLeymenayithi azama ukutshabalalisa abantu bakaNifayi, kwaye abo banobuhlobo kuNifayi ndiya kubabiza amaNifayithi, okanye abantu bakaNifayi, ngokolawulo lookumkani.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaNifayi, phantsi kolawulo lokumkani wesibini, baqalisa ukuzenza lukhuni iintliziyo zabo, kwaye bezanelisa kangangoko ngezenzo zenkohlakalo, ezinje ngezo zikaDavide wakudala owayenqwenela abafazi abaninzi namashweshwe, kanaanjalo noSolomon, unyana wakhe.
- 16 Ewe, kanaanjalo baqalisa ukukhangela igolide nesilivere eninzi, kwaye noko baqalisa ukuphakamela ekratshini.
- 17 Ngako oko mna, Yakobi, ndabanika la mazwi njengokuba ndandibafundisa etempileni, ekubeni ndiqale ndazuza umyalezo wam ovela eNkosini.
- 18 Kuba mna, Yakobi, nomntakwethu uYosefu sasingababingeleli nootishala abangcwalisiweyo phezu kwaba bantu, ngesandla sikaNifayi.
- 19 Kwaye saye sawukhulisa umsebenzi wethu eNkosini, sithabathela kuthi uxanduva, siphendula ngezono zabantu phezu kweentloko zethu ukuba asibafundisanga ilizwi likaThixo ngayo yonke inkuthalo; ngako oko, ngokusebenza ngamandlakazi ethu igazi labo alinakuza phezu kweengubo zethu; kungenjalo igazi labo liya kuza phezu kweengubo zethu, kwaye ke asiyi kufunyaniswa singenachaphaza ngomhla wokugqibela.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people, by the hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads if we did not teach them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore, by laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments; otherwise their blood would come upon our garments, and we would not be found spotless at the last day.

## Yakobi 2

- 1 Amazwi awathi uYakobi, umntakwabo Nifayi, wawathetha kubo abantu bakaNifayi, emva kokufa kukaNifayi:
- 2 Ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, mna, Yakobi, malunga nemfanelo endiphantsi kwayo kuThixo, ukuze ndikhulise ubizo lwam ngobungcathu, nokuba ndibe nokukhupha izono zenu ezingubeni zam, ndiyenyuka ndiza etempileni ngale mini ukuze ndilivakalise kuni ilizwi likaThixo.
- 3 Kwaye nina ngokwenu niyazi ukuba kude kube kaloku nje ndibe nenkuthalo kumsebenzi wobizo lwam; kodwa mna ngale mini ndidakumbile yiminqweno emikhulu engakumbi nenkxalabo ngenxa yentlalo-ntle yemiphefumlo yenu kunokuba bendinjalo kude kube kaloku nje.
- 4 Kuba qaphelani, ngokwakalokunje, benisoloko nilithobele ilizwi leNkosi, ebe ndininike lona.
- 5 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiphulaphuleni, kwaye nazi okokuba ngoncedo loMdali onamandla onke wezulu nomhlaba ndinako ukunixelela malunga neengcinga zenu, niqalisa kanjani ukwenza isono, sono eso esibonakala simasikizi kakhulu kum, ewe, kwaye simasikizi kuThixo.
- 6 Ewe, kuyawuhlungisa umphefumlo wam kwaye kundenze ndirhwaqele ludano phambi kobukho boMenzi wam, okokuba kufuneka ndingqine kuni malunga nenkohlakalo yeentliziyo zenu.
- 7 Kananjalo kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndisebenzise ubukhali obungaka obungafanelekanga bokuthetha malunga nani, phambi kwabafazi benu nabantwana benu, abaninzi babo beneemvakalelo ezibuthathaka ngokugqithisileyo kwaye benyulu kwaye be-ethe-ethe phambi koThixo, into leyo emkholisayo uThixo;
- 8 Kwaye kukhangeleka kum ngokungathi benyuke beza apha ukuze beve ilizwi elikholisayo likaThixo, ewe, ilizwi eliphilisa umphefumlo owonzakeleyo.

## Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

9 Ngako oko, kuyawusinda umphefumlo wam ukuba kufuneka ndinyanzeleke, ngenxa yomyalelo onggongqo endiwufumene kuThixo, ekubeni ndiniluleke ngokunxulumene nolwaphulo-mthetho lweni, ukuze ndandise amanxeba abo basele benzakele, endaweni yokubathuthuzela kwaye ndiphilise amanxeba abo; baze abo bangonzakalanga, endaweni yokuba bazondle ngelizwi elikholisayo likaThixo babe nezinkempe ezifakiweyo ukuze zihlabe imiphefumlo yabo kwaye zenzakalise iingqondo zabo ezi ethe-ethe.

10 Kodwa, nangona bukho ubukhulu bomsebenzi, kufuneka ndenze ngokwemiyalelo engqongqo kaThixo, kwaye ndinixelele malunga nenkohlakalo yenu namasikizi, kubukho babo bantliziyo zimsulwa, nabantliziyo zaphukileyo, kwaye bephantsi kotshawuzo lweliso eligqobhozayo loThixo uSomandla.

11 Ngako oko, kufuneka ndinixelele inyaniso ngokunxulumene nokucaca kwelizwi likaThixo. Kuba qaphelani, ekubuzeni kwam eNkosini, leza nje ilizwi kum, lisithi: Yakobi, phakama unyuke uye etempileni ngengomso, uze uvakalise ilizwi endiya kunika lona kwaba bantu.

12 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam, eli lilizwi endilivakalisayo kuni, okokuba abaninzi benu sebeqalisile ukufuna igolide, nesilivere, nalo lonke uhlobo lwentsimbi ekrwada enxabiso, kulo eli lizwe, eli lilizwe lesithembiso kuni nakuyo imbewu yenu, ezixhaphake ngakumbi.

13 Kwaye isandla solwazelelelo sikaThixo sincume phezu kwenu ngokukholisa ngakumbi, kangangokuba nizuze ubutyebi obuninzi; kwaye ngenxa yokuba abanye benu bezuze ngobuninzi ngakumbi, kunoko kwabazalwana benu niphakamele kwikratshi leentliziyo zenu, kwaye ninxiba iintamo eziqinileyo neentloko ezinyukileyo ngenxa yokuxabiseka kwezivatho zenu, nize nibatshutshise abazalwana benu ngenxa yokuba nicinga ukuba nilunge ngaphezu kwabo.

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.



- 14 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ingaba nicinga okokuba uThixo uyanigwebela kuyo le nto? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi. Kodwa uyanigweba, kwaye ukuba niyazingisa kwezi zinto izigwebo zakhe kufuneka zize ngokukhawuleza phezu kwenu.
- 15 Owu ukuba ebenganibonisa ukuba unako ukunigqobhoza, kwaye ngokutshawuza nje okunye kweliso lakhe unako ukunitshabalalisa nibe luthuli!
- 16 Owu ukuba ebenganikhupha kobu bugwenxa namasikizi. Kwaye, Owu ukuba beningamamela kulo ilizwi lemiyalelo yakhe, nize ningayekeli eli kratshi leentliziyo zenu liyitshabalalise imiphefumlo yenu!
- 17 Bacingeni abazalwana benu ngokufana nani, kwaye niziqhelanise nabo bonke nize nikhululeke ngezinto zenu eziphathekayo, ukuze nabo babe zizityebi njengani.
- 18 Kodwa phambi kokuba nifune ubutyebi, funani nina ubukumkani bukaThixo.
- 19 Kwaye emva kokuba nizuze ithemba kuKrestu niya kubuzuzisa ubutyebi, ukuba niya bufuna; kwaye niya kubufuna ngenjongo yokwenza okulungileyo —ukuze nambathise abaze, nokudlisa abalambileyo, nokukhulula kwabathinjwa, nokunikezela uncedo kwabagulayo nababandezelekileyo.
- 20 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndithethile nani malunga nekratshi; kwaye abo kuni bathe babandezele ummelwane wabo, baza bamtshutshisa ngenxa yokuba bebenekratshi ezintliziyweni zabo, ngezinto athe uThixo waninika zona, nithini ke ngaloo nto?
- 21 Anicingi na okokuba izinto ezinjalo zimasikizi kuye owadala inyama yonke? Kwaye umntu ngamnye unexabiso emehlweni akhe njengomnye. Kwaye yonke inyama yeyothuli; kwaye ngenjongo enye uyidalile, ukuze ibe nokuyigcina imiyalelo yakhe ize imzukise ngonaphakade.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku ndiyapheza ukuthetha nani malunga neli kratshi. Kwaye ukuba bekungengokuba kufuneka ndithethe nani ngokunxulumene nolona lwaphulo-mthetho lugabadeleyo, intliziyo yam ibiya kugcoba ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yenu.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

- 23 Kodwa ilizwi likaThixo liya ndisinda ngenxa yolwaphulo-mthetho olugabadeleyo lwenu. Kuba qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi: Aba bantu baqalisa ukuya besiba nobugwenxa; abaziqondi izibhalo, kuba bazama isizathu sokuzigwebela ngezenzo zobuhenyu, ngenxa yezinto ezazibhaliwe ngokunxulumene noDavide, noSolomon unyana wakhe.
- 24 Qaphelani, uDavide noSolomon ngokwenene babenabafazi abaninzi namashweshwe, into leyo eyayimasikizi phambi kwam, itsho iNkosi.
- 25 Ngako oko, itsho njalo iNkosi, ndibakhokele aba bantu ukuphuma ngaphandle kwelizwe laseYerusalem, ngamandla engalo yam, ukuze ndiphakamisele kum isebe elinobulungisa lisuka kwisiqhamo sesinqe sikaYosefu.
- 26 Ngako oko, mna iNkosi uThixo andisayi kusiyekela esi sizwe ukuba senze njengabo bakudala.
- 27 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam, ndiphulaphuleni kwaye nimamele ilizwi leNkosi: Kuba akusayi kubakho nanye indoda phakathi kwenu engasayi kuba namfazi mnye kuphela; kwaye amashweshwe anisayi kuba nawo;
- 28 Kuba mna, iNkosi uThixo, ndiyavuyiswa bubunyulu babafazi. Kwaye uhenyuzo lungamasikizi phambi kwam; itsho njalo iNkosi yeMikhosi.
- 29 Ngako oko, aba bantu baya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, okanye liya kuqalekiswa ilizwe ngenxa yabo.
- 30 Kuba ukuba ndiya kuthanda, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, ndiya kuphakamisela kum imbewu, ndiya kubayalela abantu bam; ngenye indlela baya kuziphulaphula ezi zinto.
- 31 Kuba qaphelani, mna, iNkosi, ndilubonile usizi, kwaye ndasiva isikhalo seentombi zabantu bam elizweni laseYerusalem, ewe, nakuwo onke amazwe abantu bam, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi abayeni bazo.
- 32 Kwaye andisayi kuzivumela, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi, ukuba izikhalo zeentombi ezintle zaba bantu, endithe ndabakhokela baphuma kwilizwe laseYerusalem, zinyuke zize kum ngokuchasene namadoda abantu bam, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

- 33 Kuba abayi kuzikhokelela ekuthinjweni iintombi zabantu bam ngenxa yobu ethe-ethe bazo, ngephandle kokuba ndiya kubahambela ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, nokokude ndibatshabalalise, kuba abasayi kwenza luhenyuzo, njengabo bakudala, itsho iNkosi yeMikhosi.
- 34 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam, niyazi okokuba le miyalelo yayinikezelwe kubawo wethu, uLihayi; ngako oko, beniyazi kwangaphambili; kwaye nizizisele isigwebo esikhulu; kuba nenze ezi zinto ebeningamele kuzenza.
- 35 Qaphelani, nenze ubugwenxa obukhulu kakhulu kunawo amaLeymenayithi, abantakwethu. Nizaphule iintliziyo zabafazi benu aba-ethe-ethe, naza nalahlekana nentembeko yabantwana benu, ngenxa yemizekelo yenu engalunganga phambi kwabo; kwaye izingqala zeentliziyo zabo zonyukela phezulu kuThixo ngokuchasene nani. Kwaye ngenxa yobungqongqo belizwi likaThixo, elehlela ezantsi ngokuchasene nani, iintliziyo ezininzi zaye zafa, zoselwa ngamanxeba anzulu.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

## Yakobi 3

- 1 Kodwa qaphelani, mna, Yakobi, ndifuna ukuthetha nani nina bantliziyo zimsulwa. Khangelani kuThixo ngengqondo ezinzileyo, nize nithandaze kuye ngokholo olugqithileyo, kwaye uya kunithuthuzela kwiimbandezelo zenu, kwaye uya kunithethelela kubango lwenu, aze awise isigwebo phezu kwabo bafuna intshabalalo yenu.
- 2 Owu nonke nina bantliziyo zimsulwa, ziphakamiseni iintloko zenu nize namkele ilizwi elikholisayo likaThixo, nize nizondle ngothando lwakhe; kuba ninako, ukuba iingqondo zenu zizinzile, ngonaphakade.
- 3 Kodwa, yeha, yeha, kuni nina bangemsulwa ngentliziyo, abanyhuku-nyhuku ngale mihla phambi koThixo; kuba ngaphandle kokuba niguquke ilizwe liya kuqalekiswa ngenxa yenu; kwaye amaLeymenayithi, wona angenyhuku-nyhuku njengani, nangona kunjalo aqalekisiwe ngesiqalekiso esibuhlungu, aya kunithuthumbisa ade anitshabalalise.
- 4 Kwaye ixesha liyeza ngokukhawuleza, lokokuba ngaphandle kokuba niguquke aya kulilawula ilizwe lelifa lenu, kwaye iNkosi uThixo iya kubakhokelela kude abangamalungisa baphume phakathi kwenu.
- 5 Qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi abazalwana benu, enibathiyileyo ngenxa yobunyhuku-nyhuku bawo nesiqalekiso esathi seza phezu kwezikhumba zawo, angamalungisa ukodlula nina; kuba awawulibalanga umyalelo weNkosi, owawunikezelwe kubawo wethu—wokokuba bamele ukuba nomfazi omnye kuphela, kwaye amashweshwe abamele babenalo nalinye, kwaye akumele kubekho buhenyu benziwayo phakathi kwabo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, lo myalelo baya wuqwalasela baze bawugcine; ngako oko, ngenxa yale ngqwalaselo, ekugcineni lo myalelo, iNkosi uThixo ayisayi kubatshabalalisa, kodwa iya kuba nenceba kubo; kwaye ngenye imini baya kuba ngabantu abasikelelekileyo.

## Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

- 7 Qaphelani, abayeni bawo baya bathanda abafazi babo, kwaye nabafazi bawo baya bathanda abayeni babo; kwaye abayeni bawo nabafazi babo baya bathanda abantwana babo; kwaye ukungakholwa kwabo nentiyo yabo kuni kungenxa yobugwenxa booyise; ngako oko, ingaba nilunge kangakanani nina kunaba, emehlweni oMdali wenu omkhulu?
- 8 Owu bazalwana bam, ndinoloyiko lokokuba ngaphandle kokuba ningaguquka kwizono zenu izikhumba zabo ziya kuba mhlophe ngaphezu kwezenu, xa sukuba nisiziswa kunye nabo phambi kwetrone kaThixo.
- 9 Ngako oko, umyalelo ndiyaninika, olilizwi likaThixo, okokuba ningaphindi nibanyelise ngenxa yobuntsundu bezikhumba zabo; ningayi kucekisa ngokuchasene nabo ngenxa yobunyhuku-nyhuku babo; kodwa niya kukhumbula obenu ubunyhuku-nyhuku, kwaye nikhumbule ukuba ubunyhuku-nyhuku babo beza ngenxa yooyise.
- 10 Ngako oko, niya kukhumbula abantwana benu, uhlobo enabahlungisa ngalo ezintliziyweni zabo ngenxa yomzekelo enithe nawubeka phambi kwabo; kwaye kanjalo, khumbulani ukuba ninako, ngenxa yobunyhuku-nyhuku benu, ukuzisa abantwana benu entshabalalweni, nezono zabo zifunjwe phezu kweentloko zenu ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 11 Owu bazalwana bam, phulaphulani amazwi am; vuselelani amandla engqondo yemiphefumlo yenu; zishukumiseni ukuze nibenako ukuvuka kubuthongo bokufa; kwaye nizikhulule ezintlungwini zesihogo ukuze ningabi ziingelosi zomtyholi, ukuze niphoswe kwelo dike lomlilo nesalfure elikukufa kwesibini.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku mna, Yakobi, ndathetha izinto ezininzi kubo abantu bakaNifayi, ndibalumkisa ngombulo noburheletya, kwaye nalo lonke uhlobo lwesono, ndibaxelela ngeziphumo zazo ezoyikekayo.
- 13 Kwaye inxenye ekhulwini yeenkqubo zaba bantu, abathi ngoku baqalisa ukuba yintlaninge, ayinako ukubhalwa phezu kwala macwecwe; kodwa ezininzi iinkqubo zabo zibhalwe phezu kwamacwecwe amakhudlwana, neemfazwe zabo, neembambano zabo, nolawulo lookumkani babo.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.

14 La macwecwe abizwa ngokuba ngamacwecwe kaYakobi, kwaye ayenziwe ngesandla sikaNifayi. Kwaye ndiyapheza ukuwathetha la mazwi.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

## Yakobi 4

- 1 Ngoku qaphelani, kuye kwenzeka okokuba mna, Yakobi, ekubeni ndikhonzile kakhulu kubo abantu bam ngelizwi, (kwaye andinako ukubhala kodwa amancinane nje amazwi am, ngenxa yobunzima bokukrola amazwi ethu phezu kwamacwecwe) kwaye siyazi okokuba izinto esithi sizibhale phezu kwamacwecwe kufuneka zihlale;
- 2 Kodwa nazinto zini na esizibhalayo phezu kwayo nantoni na engengawo amacwecwe iya konakala ize iye iphela ingabikho; kodwa sinako ukuwabhala ambalwa amazwi phezu kwamacwecwe, anokuthi anike abantwana bethu, nabazalwana bethu abathandekayo kananjalo, isuntswana nje lolwazi ngokunxulumene nathi, okanye ngokunxulumene nooyise—
- 3 Ngoku kule nto siyagcoba; kwaye siya sebenza ngenkuthalo ukuze sikrole la mazwi phezu kwamacwecwe, sinethemba lokokuba abazalwana bethu abathandekayo nabantwana bethu baya kuwamkela ngeentliziyo ezinombulelo, baze bakhangele kuwo ukuze babe nokufunda ngemincili kwaye kungabi ngosizi, kungabi ngayo nendelelo, malunga nabazali babo bokuqala.
- 4 Kuba, kungale njongo ukuba sizibhale ezi zinto, yokokuba babe nokwazi ukuba sasisazi ngoKrestu, kwaye sasinethemba lozuko lwakhe amakhulu amaninzi eminyaka phambi kokuba afike; kwaye yayingesithi sodwa ababenethemba lozuko lwakhe, kodwa kanjalo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele ababekho phambi kwethu.
- 5 Qaphelani, babekholelwa kuKrestu kwaye bemnqula uYise egameni lakhe, kanjalo sinqula uYise egameni lakhe. Kwaye kungale njongo siwugcina umthetho kaMoses, kuba wolathisa imiphefumlo yethu kuye; kwaye kungesi sizathu ungcwalisiwe kuthi ngobulungisa, nanjengoko wawucacisiwe kuAbraham entlango ukuba azithobele iziyalo zikaThixo ngokunikela phezulu unyana wakhe uIsake, engumfuziselo kaThixo nalowo oKuphela koZelweyo uNyana.

## Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

- 6 Ngako oko, siyabaphendla abaprofeti, kwaye sinazo izityhilelo ezininzi nomoya wesiprofetho; kwaye ke kuba sinawo onke la mangqina sizuzo ithemba, kwaye ukhohlo lwethu alugungqiswa, kangangokuba sinako ngokwenene ukuyalela egameni likaYesu ize imithi ngokwayo isithobele, okanye iintaba, okanye amaza olwandle.
- 7 Nangona kunjalo, iNkosi uThixo iyasibonisa ubuthathaka bethu ukuze sazi okokuba kungobabalo lwayo, nokuzithoba kwayo okukhulu kubantwana babantu, ukuba sibe namandla okwenza ezi zinto.
- 8 Qaphelani, mikhulu kwaye iyamangalisa imisebenzi yeNkosi. Hayi ukungagocageceki kwazo iinzulu zeemfihlakalo zayo; kwaye kuyinto engenakwenzeka ukuba umntu angazifumanisa zonke iindlela zayo. Kwaye akukho mntu uzaziyo iindlela zayo ngaphandle kokuba zibe nokutyhilwa kuye; ngako oko, bazalwana, ningazideli izityhilelo zikaThixo.
- 9 Kuba qaphelani, ngamandla elizwi lakhe umntu weza phezu kobuso bomhlaba, umhlaba lowo owadalwa ngamandla elizwi lakhe. Ngako oko, ukuba uThixo unako ukuthetha lize ihlabathi libekho, kwaye athethe aze umntu adalwe, Owu ke, kungani angabinako ukuyalela umhlaba, okanye umsebenzi wezandla zakhe phezu kobuso bawo, ngokwentando yakhe nolonwabo lwakhe?
- 10 Ngako oko, bazalwana, musani ukuzama ukucebisa iNkosi, kodwa zamani ukuthabatha icebiso esandleni sayo. Kuba qaphelani, nina ngokwenu niyazi okokuba icebisa ngobulumko, nangobulungisa, nangayo imfesane enkulu, kuyo yonke imisebenzi yayo.
- 11 Ngako oko, bazalwana abathandekayo, zizolelaniseni kunye naye ngendlela yentlawulelo kaKrestu, oKuphela koZelweyo uNyana, kwaye ningazuza uvuko, ngokwamandla ovuko olukuye uKrestu, nize ninikezelwe nje ngeziquhamo zokuqala zikaKrestu kuye uThixo, ninokhohlo, kwaye nizuze ithemba elilungileyo lozuko kuye phambi kokuba azibonakalise esenyameni.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.



- 12 Kwaye ngoku, bathandekayo, musani ukumangaliswa ukuba ndinixelela ezi zinto; kuba kungani ningathethi ngentlawulelo kaKrestu, nize nizame ukuzuza ulwazi olugqibeleleyo ngaye, nanjengokuzuza ulwazi ngovuko nangehlabathi elizayo?
- 13 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam, lowo uprofethayo, mvumeleni aprofethe ukuze abantu baqonde; kuba uMoya uthetha inyaniso kwaye awuxoki. Ngako oko, uthetha ngezinto njengoko zinjalo, nangezinto njengoko ngokwenene ziya kuba njalo; ngako oko, ezi zinto zibonakalisiwe kuthi ngokucacileyo, ukuze kusindiswe imiphefumlo yethu. Kodwa qaphelani, asingawo mangqina sodwa kwezi zinto; kuba uThixo kanjalo wazithetha kubo abaprofeti bakudala.
- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, amaYuda ayengabantu abantamo zilukhuni; kwaye babewadelela amazwi okucaca, kwaye bebabulala abaprofeti, kwaye bekhangele izinto ababengenako ukuziqonda. Ngako oko, ngenxa yobumfama babo, ubumfama obo obeza ngokuthi bakhangele ngaphaya kwento ebonakalayo, kuyimfuneko ke ukuba mabawe; kuba uThixo ukuthabathile ukucaca kwakhe kubo, waza wanikezela kubo izinto ezininzi abangenako ukuziqonda, ngenxa yokuba benqwenela oko. Kwaye ngenxa yokuba bakunqwenela oko uThixo ukwenzile, ukuze bakhubeke.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku mna, Yakobi, ndikhokelwa nguMoya ngokude ndiprofethe; kuba ndibona ngemisebenzi yoMoya okum, okokuba ngokukhubeka kwamaYuda aya kulikhanyela ilitye abanokuthi bakhele phezu kwalo baze babe nesiseko esikhuselekileyo.
- 16 Kodwa qaphelani, ngokwasezibhalweni, eli litye liya kuba lelikhulu, nelokugqibela, nelisesona siseko siqinisekileyo, anokuthi amaYuda akhele phezu kwaso.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, bathandekayo, kunokwenzeka njani ukuba aba, emva kokuba besalile isiseko esiqinisekileyo, bangaze bakhe phezu kwaso, ukuze sibe yintloko yembombo yabo?

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

18 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiza kuyityhila le mfihlelo kuni; ukuba andenzi njalo, nangaluphina uhlobo, andigungqiswa ekuzinzeni kwam eMoyeni, ndize ndikhubeke ngenxa yenkxalabo yam enkulu ngani.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble because of my over anxiety for you.

## Yakobi 5

- 1 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam, anikhumbuli kusini na nifunda amazwi omprofeti uZenoshe, awathi wawathetha kuyo indlu kaSirayeli, esithi:
- 2 Phulaphulani, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, nize nive amazwi am, umprofeti weNkosi.
- 3 Kuba qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi, ndiya kunifanisa, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, njengomthi olinyiweyo womnquma, owathi wathatyathwa yindoda yawondla esidiliyeni sayo; waza wakhula, waza waba mdala, waza waqalisa ukubola.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umnini sidiliya weza, waza wawubona umthi wakhe womnquma ukuba uqalise ukubola; waza wathi: Ndiza kuwuthena, ndize ndiwuhlakulele, ndize ndiwondle, kuba mhlawumbi ungadubula uphume amasebe amatsha na ethe-ethe, uze ungafi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wawuthena, waza womba ukuwujikeleza, waza wawondla ngokwamazwi akhe.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kweentsuku ezininzi waqalisa ukuhluma kancinane nje, amasebe amatsha na ethe-ethe; kodwa qaphelani, awokuqala aphezulu awo aqalisa ukufa.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umnini sidiliya wakubona oku, waza wathi kuso isicaka sakhe: Kuya ndihlungisa okokuba kufuneka ndiphulukane nawo lo mthi; ngako oko, hamba uze uncothule amasebe kuwo umthi womnquma wasendle, uze uwazise apha kum; kwaye siya kuwancothula siwasuse amasebe lawo okuqala athi aqalise ukubona, kwaye siya kuwaphosa emlilweni ukuze atshe.
- 8 Kwaye qaphelani, itsho iNkosi yesidiliya, ndiyawasusa amasebe amaninzi asematsha na ethe-ethe, kwaye ndiya kuwamilisela naphina apho ndithanda khona; kwaye akunamsebenzi nokokuba ingcambu yawo lo mthi iya kufa, ndinako ukuzigcinela isiqhamo sawo; ngako oko, ndiya kuwathabatha la masebe matsha na ethe-ethe, kwaye ndiya kuwamilisela naphina apho ndithanda khona.

## Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

- 9 Thabatha ke wena amasebe omthi womnquma wasendle, uze uwamilisele kuwo, endaweni yalawo; kwaye la ndiwancothuleyo ndiya kuwaphosa emlilweni ndize ndiwatshise, ukuze angawuxinanisi umhlaba wesidiliya sam.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isicaka seNkosi yesidiliya saye senza ngokwelizwi leNkosi yesidiliya, sawamilisela kuwo amasebe omthi womnquma wasendle.
- 11 Kwaye iNkosi yesidiliya yenza ukuba makombiwe ukuwujikeleza umthi, uze uthenwe, uze wondliwe, isithi kuso isicaka sayo: Kuya ndihlungisa ukuba ndingaphulukana nawo lo mthi; ngako oko, ukuze mhlawumbi ndibe nokuzigcina iingcambu zawo ukuze zingafi, ukuze ndibe nokuzigcinela zona, ndikwenzile oku.
- 12 Ngako oko, hamba indlela yakho; ulondoloze umthi, uze uwondle, ngokwamazwi am.
- 13 Kwaye la ndiya kuwabeka kummandla ongasamazantsi kanye esidiliya sam, naphina apho ndithanda khona, akunamsebenzi oko kuwe; kwaye ndiyenza le nto ukuze ndizigcinele amasebe endalo omthi; kwaye kanjalo, ukuze ndiziqwebele iziqhamo zawo ukulungiselela ixesha elizayo; kuba kuya ndihlungisa ukuba ndingaphulukana nawo lo mthi nesiqhamo sawo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yaye yahamba indlela yayo, yaza yawafihla amasebe endalo omthi olinyiweyo womnquma kummandla osemazantsi kanye wesidiliya, amanye kwenye namanye kwenye, ngokomnqweno wayo nentando yayo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwaye kwagqitha ixesha elide, yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo: Yiza, masihle siye ezantsi esidiliyeni, ukuze sisebenze kuso isidiliya.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya, nesicaka kananjalo, behla baya esidiliyeni ukuya kusebenza. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isicaka sathi kumqeshi waso: Qaphela, khangela apha; qaphela umthi.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yakhangela yawubona umthi lowo ekwakumiliselwe kuwo amasebe omthi womnquma wasendle; kwaye wawuntshulile waza waqalisa ukuthwala iziqhamo. Kwaye wabona okokuba wawulungile; kwaye nesiqhamo sawo sasifana neso sendalo isiqhamo.

18 Yaza yathi kuso isicaka: Qaphela, amasebe omthi wasendle azithabathele ukufuma kwengcambu yawo, kuba ingcambu yawo izise kuwo ukomelela okukhulu; kwaye ngenxa yokomelela kwengcambu yawo amasebe asendle avelise isiqhamo esilinyiweyo. Ngoku, ukuba besingawamiliselanga kuwo la masebe, umthi lowo ubuya kufa. Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, ndiya kugcina iziqhamo ezininzi, eziveliswe ngumthi lowo; kwaye isiqhamo eso ndiya kusiqwebela ixesha elizayo, ndisiqwebele isiqu sam.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka: Yiza, masihambe siye kummandla osemazantsi kanye wesidiliya, size sibone ukuba amasebe endalo omthi awavelisanga ziqhamo zininzi kanjalo kusini na, ukuze ndigcine isiqhamo sawo ndiqwebela ixesha elizayo, ndiziqwebela isiqu sam.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baya apho umqeshi wayefihle khona amasebe endalo omthi, waza wathi kuso isicaka: Qaphela; saza sabona okokuba awokuqala avelise iziqhamo ezininzi; saza sabona kanjalo okokuba zazilungile. Waza wathi kuso isicaka: Thabatha ezinye iziqhamo zawo, uze uziqwebele ixesha elizayo, ukuze ndizigcinele isiqu sam; kuba qaphela, watsho, eli xesha lide kangaka ndiwondlile, kwaye avelise iziqhamo ezininzi.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isicaka sathi kumqeshi waso: Kwakutheni na ukuze uze apha ukuba utyale lo mthi, okanye eli sebe lomthi? Kuba qaphela, yayiyeyona ndawo ingachumanga kuwo wonke umhlaba wesidiliya sakho.

22 Yaza yathi iNkosi yesidiliya kuso: Musa ukundicebisa, ndandisazi okokuba yayiyeyona ndawo yomhlaba ingachumanga; ngako oko, ndathi kuwe, ndiwondlile ixesha elide, kwaye nawe uyabona okokuba uvelise iziqhamo ezininzi.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo: Khangela apha; qaphela ndityale elinye isebe lomthi kanjalo; kwaye uyazi okokuba le ndawo yomhlaba yayi yeyona ingachumanga kunaleya yokuqala. Kodwa, qaphela umthi. Ndiwondlile eli xesha lide, kwaye uvelise iziqhamo ezininzi; ke ngoko, zibuthe, uze uziqwebele ixesha elizayo, ukuze ndibe nokuzigcinela isiqu sam.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo kwakhona: Khangela apha, ubone elinye isebe kanjalo, endithe ndalityala; qaphela ukuba ndilondlile nalo kanjalo, kwaye livelise isiqhamo.
- 25 Yaza yathi kuso isicaka: Khangela apha uze ubone elokugqibela. Qaphela, eli ndityale kwindawo elungileyo yomhlaba; kwaye ndiwondlile eli xesha lide, kwaye yinxalenye nje yomthi evelise isiqhamo esilinyiweyo, kwaye enye inxalenye yomthi ivelise isiqhamo esingalinywanga; qaphela, ndiwondlile lo mthi njengeminye.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka: Wancothule amasebe lawo angavelisanga siqhamo silungileyo, uze uwaphose emlilweni.
- 27 Kodwa qaphela, sathi isicaka kuyo: Masikhe siwuthene, size sombe ukuwujikeleza, size siwondle ixeshana elide, kuba mhlawumbi unako ukukuvelisela isiqhamo esilungileyo, ukuze singabinako ukusiqwebela ixesha elizayo.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya kunye nesicaka seNkosi yesidiliya basondla sonke isiqhamo sesidiliya.
- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ixesha elide ladhula, yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo: Yiza, masihambe sihle siye esidiliyeni, ukuze sisebenze kwakhona esidiliyeni, kuba qaphela, ixesha lisondele, kwaye isiphelo siyeza kwakamsinya; ngako oko, kufuneka ndiqwebele isiqhamo ixesha elizayo, ndiqwebele isiqu sam.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya nesicaka baye behla baya esidiliyeni; baza beza emthini omasebe awo endalo aye aqetshulwa, aze amasebe asendle amiliselwa kuwo; kwaye qaphela lonke uhlobo lwesiqhamo lwawuxaka umthi.
- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yaye yasingcamla isiqhamo, lonke uhlobo ngokwenani lazo. Yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi: Qaphela, eli xesha lide siwondlile umthi, kwaye ndiziqwebele kum iziqhamo ezininzi zelixa elizayo.
- 32 Kodwa qaphela, kwesi sihlandlo uvelise iziqhamo ezininzi, kwaye akukho nasinye kuzo esilungileyo. Kwaye qaphela, kukho iintlobo ezininzi ezonakeleyo; kwaye awundingeniseli nto, nangona siwusebenze kangangoko; kwaye ngoku kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndiphulukane nawo lo mthi.
- 33 Yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka: Yintoni na esingayenzayo kuwo umthi, ukuze ndibe nokuzilondolozela isiqu sam kwakhona iziqhamo zawo ezilungileyo?
- 34 Saza isicaka sathi kumqeshi waso: Qaphela, ngenxa yokuba wathi wamilisela kuwo amasebe omthi womnquma wasendle aba nokuzondla iingcambu, ukuze ziphile kwaye azifanga; ngako oko ubonile okokuba zisalungile.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo: Umthi awundingeniseli nto, neengcambu zawo azindingeniseli nto kangokuba uya kuthi uvelise isiqhamo esibi.
- 36 Nangona kunjalo, ndiyazi okokuba iingcambu zawo zilungile, kwaye ngenjongo yam ndizilondolozile; kwaye ngenxa yokomelela kwazo okukhulu kude kube kaloku nje zivelise, kuwo amasebe asendle, isiqhamo esihle.
- 37 Kodwa qaphela, amasebe asendle akhulile kwaye azogqithile iingcambu zawo; kwaye ngenxa yokuba amasebe asendle ezogqithile iingcambu zawo uvelise iziqhamo ezininzi ezibi; kwaye ngenxa yokuba uvelise iziqhamo ezininzi kangaka ezibi uyabona ukuba uqalisa ukufa; kwaye kwakamsinya ube nokuvuthwa, ukuze ube nokuphoswa emlilweni, ngaphandle kokuba singenza into ukuze sibe nokuwulondoloza.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka sayo: Masihambe sihle siye kwezona ndawo zisemazantsi kanye zesidiliya, size sibone ukuba amasebe endalo nawo kanjalo avelise isiqhamo esibi kusini na.

39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye behla baya kuzo iindawo ezisemazantsi kanye zesidiliya. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babona ukuba isiqhamo samasebe endalo aye onakala kanjalo; ewe, esokuqala isiqhamo, nesesibini nesokugqibela kananjalo; kwaye zonke zibe nokonakala.

40 Kwaye isiqhamo sasendle sokugqibela samasebe endalo sayongamela loo nxalenye yomthi eyathi yavelisa isiqhamo esihle, ngokude isebe elo lome kwaye life.

41 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yalila, yaza yathi kuso isicaka: Ingaba yintoni na ebendinokusenzela yona engakumbi isidiliya sam?

42 Qaphela, ndandisazi okokuba zonke iziqhamo zesidiliya, ngaphandle kwezi, ziye zonakala. Kwaye ngoku ezi zazikhe kwakanye zavelisa isiqhamo esihle nazo kanjalo ziye zonakala; kwaye ngoku yonke imithi yesidiliya sam ayilungelanga lutho ngaphandle kokuba igawulelwe phantsi ize iphoswe emlilweni.

43 Kwaye qaphela lo wokugqibela, osebe lawo lomileyo, ndaye ndawutyala endaweni echumileyo yomhlaba; ewe, kwanaleyo eyayiyeyona ikhethekileyo kum ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye iindawo zomhlaba wesidiliya sam.

44 Kwaye uyabona ukuba ndawasikela phantsi lawo ayexinanise le ndawo yomhlaba, ukuze ndibe nokutyala lo mthi endaweni yawo.

45 Kwaye uyabona ukuba inxalenye yawo yavelisa isiqhamo esihle, yaza inxalenye yawo yavelisa isiqhamo sasendle; kwaye ngenxa yokuba ndingazange ndiwancothule amasebe awo kwaye ndiwaphose emlilweni, qaphela, aye awongamela amasebe alungileyo ngokude wome kwaphela.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.



46 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, nangona sasinika yonke inkathalo isidiliya, imithi yaso yaye yonakala, ukuze ingavelisi ziqhamo zilungileyo; kwaye la masebe ndandinethemba lokuwalondoloza, ndibe nokuzigcinela iziqhamo zawo ndiqwebele ixesha elizayo, ndiqwebela isiqu sam. Kodwa, qaphela, isuke yafana nomthi womnquma wasendle, kwaye ayinaxabiso kodwa nje kukuba igawulelwe phantsi ize iphoswe emlilweni; kwaye kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndiphulukane nayo.

47 Kodwa ingaba yintoni na endandinokuyenza engakumbi kuso isidiliya sam? Ingaba ndisiyekelele na isandla sam, ukuze ndingasondli? Hayi, ndisondlile, kwaye ndombile ukusijikeleza, kwaye ndisithenile, kwaye ndisigalele umgquba; kwaye ndisolulile isandla sam phantse ubude bemini yonke, kwaye isiphelo siyasondela. Kwaye kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndiyigawulele phantsi yonke imithi yesidiliya sam, ndize ndiyiphose emlilweni ukuze itshiswe. Ingaba ngubani na owonakalise isidiliya sam?

48 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isicaka sathi kuye umqeshi waso: Ingaba asiyiyo na impakamo yesidiliya sakho kusini na—akungebi amasebe aso azongamele iingcambu ezilungileyo? Kwaye ngenxa yokuba amasebe ezongamele iingcambu zawo, qaphela akhula ngokukhawuleza okukhulu kunokomelela kweengcambu, ethabathela kuwo ukomelela. Qaphela, ndithi, ingaba oku asinguye na unobangela wokuba imithi yesidiliya sakho ibe nokonakala?

49 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka: Masiqalise size siyigawulele phantsi imithi yesidiliya size siyiphose emlilweni, ukuze ingawuxinanisi umhlaba wesidiliya sam, kuba ndenze konke. Ingaba yintoni na endandinokuyenzela engakumbi isidiliya sam?

50 Kodwa, qaphela, sathi isicaka kuyo iNkosi yesidiliya: Sisindise okwethutyana.

51 Yaza ke iNkosi yathi: Ewe, ndiya kuisindisa okwethutyana, kuba kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndiphulukane nemithi yesidiliya sam.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have dugged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

- 52 Ngako oko, masithabathe amanye amasebe kula ndiwatyale kummandla osemazantsi kanye esidiliya, size siwamilisele kumthi lowo ayesuka kuwo; size sinothule kuwo umthi olinyiweyo loo masebe aziqhamo zawo zikrakra kakhulu, size similisele amasebe omthi wendalo endaweni yawo.
- 53 Kwaye oku ndiya kukwenza ukuze umthi ungafi, ukuze, mhlawumbi, ndibe nokuzilondolozela iingcambu zawo ukufezekisa iinjongo zam.
- 54 Kwaye, qaphela, iingcambu zamasebe endalo omthi endawutyala naphina apho ndithanda khona zisaphilile; ngako oko, ukuze nazo kanjalo ndibe nokuzilondolozela ukufezekisa iinjongo zam, ndiya kuthabatha amanye amasebe alo mthi, ndize ndiwamilisele kuwo amasebe endalo. Ewe, ndiya kumilisele kuwo amasebe omthi ongunozala wawo, ukuze ndibe nokulondolozela isiqu sam iingcambu kanjalo; ukuze zithi zakuba zomelele ngokwaneleyo mhlawumbi zingandivelisela isiqhamo esihle, kwaye ndisenokuba nozuko kuso isiqhamo sesidiliya sam.
- 55 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bathabatha kuwo umthi wendalo osuke waba ngowasendle, baza bawumilisele kwimithi yendalo, osuke nawo kanjalo waba ngumthi wasendle.
- 56 Kwaye bathabatha kanjalo imithi yendalo esuke yaba yeyasendle, baza bayimilisele kumthi ongunozala wayo.
- 57 Yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuso isicaka: Ungawancothuli amasebe asendle emithini, ngaphandle nje kwalawo akrakra ngakumbi; uya kuthi ke kuwo umilisele njengoko bendikuthethile.
- 58 Kwaye siya kuyondla kwakhona imithi yesidiliya, kwaye siya kuwathena amasebe ayo; kwaye siya kuwancothula emithini loo masebe angenamveliso, ekufuneka afe, aze aphoswe emlilweni.
- 59 Kwaye oku ndikwenzela ukuze, mhlawumbi, iingcambu zawo zingafumana ukomelela ngenxa yokulunga kwazo; kwaye nangenxa yotshintshatshintsho lwamasebe, ukuze okulungileyo kongamele okubi.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

- 60 Kwaye ngenxa yokokuba ndiwalondolozile amasebe endalo neengcambu zawo, nokuba ndiwamilisele amasebe endalo kwakhona kunozala wawo, ndaza ndazilondoloza neengcambu zomthi ongunozala wawo, ukuze, mhlawumbi, imithi yesidiliya sam ingavelisa kwakhona isiqhamo esilungileyo; nokokuba ndingaba novuyo kwakhona kuso isiqhamo sesidiliya sam, nokokuba, mhlawumbi, ndingagcoba ngokugqithisileyo ngokulondoloza iingcambu namasebe esiqhamo sokuqala—
- 61 Ngako oko, qalisa, uze ubize izicaka, ukuze sisebenze ngenkuthalo ngamandlakazi ethu esidiliyeni, ukuze silungise indlela, yokokuba ndibe nokuvelisa kwakhona isiqhamo sendalo, isiqhamo sendalo eso esilungileyo nesixabiseke ngaphezu kwazo zonke ezinye iziqhamo.
- 62 Ngako oko, masiqalise kwaye sisebenze ngamandlakazi ethu okokugqibela, kuba qaphelani isiphelo siyasondela, kwaye oku kokokugqibela ukuba ndisithene isidiliya sam.
- 63 Wamiliseleni amasebe; qalani ekugqibeleni ukuze abe ngawokuqala, nokuze awokuqala abe ngawokugqibela, nize niyihlakulele imithi, kunye emidala nemitsha, eyokuqala neyokugqibela; neyokugqibela neyokuqala, ukuze yonke yondleke kube kanye okokugqibela.
- 64 Ngako oko, yihlakuleleni, nize niyithene, nize niyifake umgquba kube kanye, okokugqibela, kuba isiphelo siya sondela. Kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka okokuba ezi zokugqibela izimiliselwa ziya kuhluma, zize zivelise isiqhamo sendalo, ke niya kuzilungiselela indlela, ukuze zibe nokuhluma.
- 65 Kwaye njengokuba ziqalisa ukukhula niya kuwasusa amasebe avelisa isiqhamo esikrakra, ngokokomelela kwalungileyo nobungakanani bawo; kwaye maze ningawasusi onke ngaxeshanye angalunganga ayo, hleze iingcambu zayo zibe nokomelela okugqithileyo kunezimiliselwa, kwaye izimiliselwa zayo ziya kufa, ndize ndiphulukane nemithi yesidiliya sam.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft, and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees of my vineyard.

- 66 Kuba kuyandihlungisa ukuba kufuneka ndiphulukane nemithi yesidiliya sam; ngako oko niya kuwasusa angalunganga njengoko alungileyo ehluma, ukuze ingcambu nomphezulu zilingane ngokomelela, ade alungileyo awongamele angalunganga, aze angalunganga agawulelwe phantsi aze aphoswe emlilweni, ukuze angawuxinanisi umhlaba wesidiliya sam; kwaye njalo ndiya kuwatshayeleva ngaphandle kwesidiliya sam angalunganga.
- 67 Kwaye amasebe omthi wendalo ndiya kuwamilisela kwakhona kumthi wendalo;
- 68 Kwaye namasebe omthi wendalo ndiya kuwamilisela kumasebe endalo omthi; kwaye njalo ndiya kuwadibanisa kunye kwakhona, ukuze avelise isiqhamo sendalo, kwaye aya kuba ntonye.
- 69 Kwaye angalunganga aya kulahlelwa kude, ewe, nangaphandle komhlaba wesidiliya sam; kuba qaphelani, lelithuba kuphela endiya kusithena ngalo isidiliya sam.
- 70 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yesidiliya yathumela isicaka sayo; saza isicaka sayo senza njengoko iNkosi isiyalele, saza seza nezinye izicaka; kwaye zazimbalwa.
- 71 Yaza iNkosi yesidiliya yathi kuzo: Qalisani, kwaye nisebenze esidiliyeni, ngamandlakazi enu. Kuba qaphelani, eli lilixa lokugqibela lokokuba ndisondle isidiliya sam; kuba isiphelo sesikufuphi, kwaye ilixa liyeza ngokukhawuleza; kwaye ukuba nisebenza ngamandlakazi enu kunye nam niya kufumana uvuyo kuso isiqhamo endiya kusiqwebela mna kwixesha elizayo kamsinyane.
- 72 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izicaka zaye zahamba kwaye zasebenza ngamandlakazi azo; yaza iNkosi yesidiliya kanjalo yasebenza kunye nazo; kwaye zayithobela imiyalelo yeNkosi yesidiliya kuzo zonke izinto.
- 73 Kwaza kwaqalisa ukuba kubekho isiqhamo sendalo kwakhona esidiliyeni; kwaye namasebe endalo aqalisa ukuhluma aza achuma ngokugqithisileyo; aza amasebe asendle aqalisa ukuncothulwa aza alahlelwa kude; baza bayigcina ingcambu nomphezulu wawo ngokulinganayo, ngokokomelela kwawo.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad according as the good shall grow, that the root and the top may be equal in strength, until the good shall overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I bring them together again, that they shall bring forth the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him, and brought other servants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto myself against the time which will soon come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and labor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard labored also with them; and they did obey the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

74 Kwaye njalo baye basebenza, ngayo yonke inkuthalo, ngokwemiyalelo yeNkosi yesidiliya, kwada kwaba angalunganga alahlelwa ngaphandle kwesidiliya, kwaye iNkosi izilondolozele imithi ukuze kwakhona ibe sisiqhamo sendalo; kwaye zaba ngathi zingumzimba omnye; zaza neziqhamo zalingana; neNkosi yesidiliya yayizilondolozele isiqhamo sendalo, esaye sixabiseke ngakumbi kuyo ukususela ekuqalekeni.

75 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba iNkosi yesidiliya ibona okokuba isiqhamo silungile, kwaye nesidiliya sayo asisonakalanga, yaye yazibizela kuyo izicaka zayo, yaza yathi kuzo: Qaphelani, ekugqibeleni sisondlile isidiliya sam; kwaye nibonile okokuba ndenze ngokwentando yam; kwaye ndisilondolozile isiqhamo sendalo, ukuze sibe silungile, nanjengokuba sasinjalo ekuqalekeni. Kwaye nisikelelekile nina; ngenxa yokokuba nibe nenkuthalo ekusebenzeni kunye nam esidiliyeni sam, kwaye niyigcinile imiyalelo yam, kwaye nisibuyisele kum kwakhona isiqhamo sendalo, ukuze isidiliya sam singabi saphinda sonakaliswe, kwaye nesingalunganga silahlelwe kude, qaphelani niya kuba novuyo kunye nam ngenxa yesiqhamo sesidiliya sam.

76 Kuba qaphelani, ixesha elide ndiya kuziqwebela isiqhamo sesidiliya sam ndiziqwebela ixesha elizayo, ixesha elo eliza ngokukhawuleza; kwaye okokugqibela ndisondlile isidiliya sam, ndasithena, ndasihlakulela, ndaza ndasifaka umgquba; ngako oko ndiya kuziqwebela ezinye zeziqhamo, ixesha elide, ngokokuthetha kwam.

77 Kwaye lakufika ixesha lokokuba isiqhamo esibi sifike esidiliyeni sam kwakhona, ngoko ke ndiya kwenza okokuba esihle nesingalunganga sihlanganiswe; kwaye esilungileyo ndiya kusilondolozela mna, size esingalunganga ndisilahlele kude kweyaso indawo. Lize ke lifike ilixa nesiphelo; ndize ndenze okokuba isidiliya sam sitshiswe ngomlilo.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and duned it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

## Yakobi 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, bazalwana bam, njengoko nditshilo kuni okokuba ndiya kuprofetha, qaphelani, esi sisiprofetho sam—esokokuba izinto ezithe zathethwa ngulo mprofeti uZenoshe, ngokunxulumene nendlu kaSirayeli, apho abafanekisa nomthi womnquma olinyiweyo, kufuneka ngokwenene zenzeke.
- 2 Kwaye umhla aya kuthi aqalise ngawo kwakhona ukubuyisela abantu bakhe okwesibini, ngumhla, ewe, kwanelokugqibela ilixa, eziya kuthi izicaka zayo iNkosi zibheke phambili emandleni ayo, ukuze zondle kwaye zithene isidiliya sayo; kwaye emva koko isiphelo siya kufika kwakamsinya.
- 3 Kwaye basikeleleke kangakanani abo bathe basebenza ngenkuthalo esidiliyeni sayo; baza baqalekiseka kangakanani abo baya kuthi balahlelwe ngaphandle kweyabo indawo! Kwaye ihlabathi liya kutshiswa ngomlilo.
- 4 Kwaye ikangakanani inceba kaThixo wethu kuthi, kuba uyayikhumbula indlu kaSirayeli, kunye iingcambu namasebe; kwaye uzolulile izandla zakhe kubo ebudeni bemini yonke; kwaye bangabantu abantamo zilukhuni; nabaphikayo; kodwa njengokuba abaninzi bengayi kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo baya kusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo.
- 5 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiya nibongoza ngamazwi andilisekileyo okokuba niguquke, kwaye nize ngenjongo egqibeleleyo yentliziyo, kwaye ninamathele kuye uThixo njengoko naye enamathele kuni. Kwaye ngeli lixa ingalo yakhe yenceba yolulekele ngakuni ekukhanyeni kwemini, musani ukuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zenu.
- 6 Ewe, ngalo mhla, ukuba niya kuliva ilizwi lakhe, zeningaziqaqadekisi iintliziyo zenu; kuba kungani na niya kufa?
- 7 Kuba qaphelani, emva kokuba niya kondliwa ngelizwi elilungileyo likaThixo ebudeni bemini yonke, ingaba niya kuvelisa isiqhamo esibi kusini na, ukuze nigawulelwe phantsi kwaye niphoswe emlilweni?

## Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?

8 Qaphelani, ingaba niya kuwala kusini na la mazwi? Ingaba niya kuwala kusini na amazwi abaprofeti; kwaye ingaba niya kuwala kusini na onke amazwi athethiweyo ngokunxulumene noKrestu, emva kokuba abaninzi kangaka bethethile ngokunxulumene naye; kwaye nilikhanyele ilizwi elilungileyo likaKrestu, namandla kaThixo, nesipho soMoya oyiNgcwele, nize niwucime uMoya oyiNgcwele, nize nilenze intlekisa icebo lenkululeko, elamiselwa nina?

9 Anazi na okokuba ukuba niya kuzenza ezi zinto, ukuze amandla enkululeko novuko, olukuKrestu, aya kunizisa ekubeni nime ngehlazo netyala eloyikekayo phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaThixo?

10 Kwaye ngokwamandla obulungisa, kuba ubulungisa abunakho ukuphikiswa, kufuneka nimke niye edikeni lomlilo nesalfure, elimlilo walo ungacimiyo, nelimsi walo unyukela phezulu ngonaphakade kanaphakade, idike lomlilo nesalfure elo eliyintuthumbo engenasiphelo.

11 Owu ke, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, guqukani, nize ningene ngaphakathi kulo isango elimxinwa, nize niqhubeke endleleni leyo icutheneyo, nide nibe niya kubuzuzisa ubomi obungunaphakade.

12 Owu yibani nobulumko; ingaba yintoni na endingayithethayo engakumbi?

13 Okokugqibela, ndiyanibulisa nisale kakuhle, ndide ndibonane nani phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba esikholisayo sikaThixo, isihlalo-sokugweba eso esikhwankqisa abakhohlakeleyo ngenkxalabo eyoyikekayo noloyiko. Amen.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

## Yakobi 7

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile emva kokuba iminyaka ethile idlule, kwafika indoda phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, egama layo lalinguSheremi.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaqalisa ukushumayela phakathi kwabantu, kwaye ibhengeza kubo okokuba akuyi kubakho Krestu. Yaza yashumayela izinto ezininzi ezinyhwalazayo ebantwini; kwaye oku yakwenza ukuze ibe nokusingela phantsi imfundiso kaKrestu.
- 3 Kwaye yasebenza ngenkuthalo ukuze ibe nokuzilahlekisa iintliziyo zabantu, kangangokuba yaye yazilahlekisa iintliziyo ezininzi; yaza yona kuba isazi okokuba mna, Yakobi, ndinokholo kuKrestu oya kuthi eze, yalizama kakhulu ithuba lokokuba ibe nokuza kum.
- 4 Kwaye yayifundile, ukuze ibe nolwazi olufezekileyo ngolwimi lwabantu; ngako oko, yayekusebenzisa kakhulu ukunyhwala, namandla angakumbi obuciko, ngokwamandla omtyholi.
- 5 Kwaye yaye inethemba lokokuba iza kundigungqisa elukholweni, nangona izityhilelo zininzi nezinto ezininzi endazibonayo malunga nezi zinto; kuba ngenene ndazibona iingelosi, kwaye zandilungiselela. Kwaye kanjalo, ndandilivile izwi leNkosi lithetha nam ngqo ngelizwi, amaxesha ngamaxesha; ngako oko, ndandingenakho ukugungqiswa.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yeza kum, kwaye ngolu hlobo yaye yathetha nam, isithi: Mzalwana uYakobi, ndilizame kakhulu ithuba lokokuba ndibe nokuthetha nawe; kuba ndivile kwaye kanjalo ndiyazi okokuba uyahamba-hamba kakhulu, ushumayela oko ukubiza ngokuba yivangeli, okanye imfundiso kaKrestu.
- 7 Kwaye ubakhohlisile abaninzi besi sizwe kangangokuba bayigqwethile indlela eyiyo kaThixo, kwaye abawugcina umthetho kaMoses oyindlela eyiyo; kwaye uguqulela umthetho kaMoses ekunquleni umntu othi uya kuza kumakhulu amaninzi eminyaka ezayo. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, mna, Sheremi, ndiyavakalisa kuwe okokuba oku kukunyelisa; kuba akakho umntu owaziyo ngezi zinto; kuba akanako ukuxela ngezinto ezisezayo. Kwaye ngolu hlobo uSheremi waphikisana nam.

## Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.



8 Kodwa qaphelani, iNkosi uThixo yawuthululela uMoya wayo emphefumleni wam, kangangokuba ndaye ndamoyisa ngokupheleleyo kuwo onke amazwi akhe.

9 Kwaye ndathi kuye: Uyamkhanyela na uKrestu oya kuza? Waza wathi: Ukuba kuya kubakho uKrestu, andingemkhanyeli; kodwa ndiyazi okokuba akukho Krestu, engazange abekho, engasayi kuze abekho.

10 Ndaza ndathi kuye: Ingaba uyazikholelwa na izibhalo? Waza wathi, Ewe.

11 Ndaza ndathi kuye: Ke akuziqondi; kuba ngokwenene zingqina ngoKrestu. Qaphela, ndithi kuwe okokuba akukho namnye kubaprofeti ababhalileyo, kwa nabaprofethileyo, ngaphandle kokuba bathethe ngokunxulumene nalo Krestu.

12 Kwaye akuphelelanga apha—kubonakalisiwe kum, kuba ndivile ndaza ndabona; kananjalo kubonakalisiwe kum ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; ngako oko, ndiyazi okokuba ukuba akunakubakho ntlawulelo yenziwayo lonke uluntu lumele lulahleke.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi kum: Ndibonise umqondiso ngala mandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, kuwo owazi kangaka.

14 Ndaza ndathi kuye: Ndiyintoni na mna ukuba ndingamlinga uThixo ukuba akubonise umqondiso kwinto leyo oyaziyo ukuba iyinyani? Kodwa uyikhanye, ngenxa yokokuba ungokamtyholi. Nangona kunjalo, makungabi ngokwentando yam; kodwa ukuba uThixo uya kukubetha, oko makube ngumqondiso kuwe wokokuba unamandla kunye ezulwini nasemhlabeni; kananjalo, kuba uKrestu uya kuza. Kwaye intando yakho, Owu Nkosi, mayenzeke, kwaye ingabi yeyam.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Yakobi, ndiwathethile la mazwi, amandla eNkosi afika phezu kwakhe, kangangokude awe emhlabeni. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wondliwa kangangesithuba seentsuku ezininzi.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi kubo abantu: Hlanganisanani kunye ngengomso, kuba ndiza kufa; ngako oko, ndinqwenela ukuthetha nabo abantu ngaphambi kokuba ndife.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso isihlwele siye sahlanganisana kunye; waza wathetha ngokucacileyo naso waza wazijika izinto abebafundise zona, waza wamvuma uKrestu, namandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, nokulungiselela kweengelosi.
- 18 Kwaye wathetha ngokucacileyo kubo, okokuba waye elahlekiswe ngamandla kamtyholi. Kwaye wathetha ngesihogo, nangephakade, nangesohlwayo sanaphakade.
- 19 Waza wathi: Ndinoloyiko hleze kuthi kanti ndenze esona sono singaxolelekiyo, kuba ndimxokisile uThixo; kuba ndikhanyele uKrestu, ndaza ndathi ndiyazikholelwa izibhalo; kwaye ngokwenene zingqina ngaye. Kwaye ngenxa yokokuba ndixoke ngolo hlobo kuThixo ndinoloyiko olukhulu hleze imo yam ibe yeyoyikekayo; kodwa ndiyavuma kuThixo.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ewathethile la mazwi akazange abenakuthetha okunye, waza waphuma umoya.
- 21 Saza sakuba isihlwele sibonile okokuba uyazithetha ezi zinto njengokuba wayeza kuphuma umphefumlo, saye sakhwankqiswa ngokugqithisileyo; kangangokuba amandla kaThixo ehla phezu kwaso, saza soyisakala ngokude siwe emhlabeni.
- 22 Ngoku, oku kwandivuyisa mna, Yakobi, kuba ndandikucelile kuBawo wam owaye esemazulwini; kuba wayesivile isikhalo sam waza wawuphendula umthandazo wam.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uxolo nothando lukaThixo lwaye lwabuyiselwa kwakhona phakathi kwabantu; baza baziphengulula izibhalo, baza abaphinda baweve amazwi ale ndoda ikhohlakeleyo.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amacebo amaninzi aye ayilwa okokuba kubuyiselwe kwaye kuvuselelwe amaLeymenayithi kulwazi lwenyaniso; kodwa konke oko kwaba lilize, kuba babevuyiswa ziimfazwe nophalalogazi, kwaye babe nentiyo engunaphakade kuthi, bazalwana babo. Kwaye babezama ngokomelela kwezikhali zabo ukuba basitshabalalise ngawo onke amaxesha.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

- 25 Ngako oko, abantu bakaNifayi baye bazikhusela kubo ngezikhali zabo, kwaye nangako konke ukomelela kwabo, bethembele kuThixo neliwa losindiso lwabo; ngako oko, baba okwakaloku nje, ngaboyisi beentshaba zabo.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Yakobi, ndaqalisa ukuguga; yaza imbali yesi sizwe ekubeni igcinwe kwamanye amacwecwe kaNifayi, ngako oko, ndiyayigqibezela le mbali, ndivakalisa okokuba ndibhale ngokolona lulungileyo ulwazi lwam, ndigqibezele ngokuthi ixesha lidlule kunye nathi, kanaanjalo nobomi bethu budlule bangathi kuthi bebunjengephupha, ekubeni thina sisizwe esingamalolo nesindilisekileyo, esingababhaduli, esikhutshelwe ngaphandle kweYerusalem, esizalelwe enkxwalekweni, kwintlango, kwaye sithiyiwe ngabantakwethu, into leyo eyenza iimfazwe neembambano; ngako oko, saye sabuphila ubude bobomi bethu elusizini.
- 27 Kwaye mna, Yakobi, ndabona okokuba kufuneka kwakamsinya ndehlele ezantsi engcwabeni lam; ngako oko, ndathi kunyana wam uEnoshe: Thabatha la macwecwe. Ndaza ndamxelela izinto awaye ndiyalele ngazo umntakwethu uNifayi, waza wathembisa ukuthobela iziyalo. Kwaye ndiyapheza ukubhala kwam phezu kwala macwecwe, ukubhala oko ebe kukuncinane; kwaye umfundi ndiyambulisa, asale kakuhle, ndinethemba lokokuba abaninzi babazalwana bam bangawafunda amazwi am. Bazalwana, salani kakuhle.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

## INcwadi kaEnoshe

- 1 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba mna, Enoshe, ndazi okokuba ubawo ebengumntu onobulungisa—kuba wandifundisa ngolwimi lwakhe, waza kanjalo wandikhulisa ngezilumkiso zeNkosi—kwaye malisikelelwe igama likaThixo wam ngenxa yaloo nto—
- 2 Kwaye ndiza kunixelela ngemizamo endibenayo phambi koThixo, phambi kokuba ndifumane uxolelo lwezono zam.
- 3 Qaphelani, ndiye ndaya kuzingela izilo ehlathini; aza amazwi endidla ngokuweva rhoqo ethethwa ngubawo malunga nobomi banaphakade, novuyo lwabangcwele, angena nzulu entliziyweni yam.
- 4 Umphefumlo wam uye walamba; ndaza ndaguqa phambi koMenzi wam, ndakhala kuye ngomthandazo onamandlakazi nokucengela umphefumlo wam; ndakhala imini yonke kuye; ewe, naxa bufika ubusuku bendisaphakamisela izwi lam phezulu ukuze lifike emazulwini.
- 5 Kwaye kwafika izwi kum, lisithi: Enoshe, izono zakho zixolelwe, kwaye uya kusikelelwa.
- 6 Ndaza mna, Enoshe, ndayazi okokuba uThixo akanakuxoka; ngako oko, ityala lam latshayelwa.
- 7 Ndaza ndathi: Nkosi, yenzeke njani?
- 8 Yaza yathi kum: Ngenxa yokholo lwakho kuKrestu, ongazange umve ngaphambili okanye umbone. Kwaye mininzi iminyaka eya kudlula phambi kokuba azibonakalise esenyameni; ngako oko, hamba, ukholo lwakho lukusindisile.
- 9 Ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ndiwavile la mazwi ndaqalisa ukuba nomnqweno wentlalontle yabazalwana bam, amaNifayithi; ngako oko, ndawuphalaza umphefumlo wam wonke kuThixo ngenxa yabo.

## The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

- 10 Kwaza kwathi ngeli lixa ndisaxakekile emoyeni, qaphela, izwi leNkosi laphinda leza kum engqondweni, lisithi: Ndiya kubavelela abazalwana bakho ngokunxulumene nenkuthalo yabo ekuyigcineni imiyalelo yam. Ndibanike eli lizwe, kwaye lilizwe elingcwele; kwaye andiliqalekisi ngaphandle kwesizathu sobugwenxa; ngako oko, ndiya kubavelela abazalwana bakho ngokunxulume noko ndikuthethileyo; kwaye izigqitho zabo ndiya kuzibuyekeza ngosizi phezu kweentloko zabo.
- 11 Kwaza emveni kokuba mna, Enoshe, ndiwavile la mazwi, ukholo lwam luye lwaqalisa ukungagungqi eNkosini; ndaza ndathandaza kuyo ngemizamo emininzi emide ngenxa yabazalwana bam, amaLeymenayithi.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emveni kokuba ndithandazile ndasebenza ngayo yonke inkuthalo, iNkosi yathi kum: Ndiya kukupha ngokweminqweno yakho, ngenxa yokholo lwakho.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, lo yaye ingumnqweno endandiwucela kuyo—wokokuba xa kunokwenzeka okokuba abantu bam, amaNifayithi, bangawela ekoneni, baze batshatyalaliswe nangayiphi na indlela, aze amaLeymenayithi angatshatyalaliswa, inga iNkosi uThixo ingayilondoloza imbali yabantu bam, amaNifayithi; nokuba oko kungenzeka ngokwamandla engalo yayo engcwele, ukuze iziswe ngaphambili kwimihla ezayo kumaLeymenayithi, ukuze, mhlawumbi, abe nokuziswa elusindisweni—
- 14 Kuba okwangoku imizamo yethu yaba lilize ekubavuseleleni elukholweni lwenyani. Kwaye bafungile ngomsindo wabo ukuba, xa sukuba kunokwenzeka, bangazitshabalalisa iimbali zethu kunye nathi, kwanazo zonke izithethe zooyise.
- 15 Ngako oko, ekubeni ndisazi ukuba iNkosi uThixo inako ukuzilondoloza iimbali zethu, ndiye ndasoloko ndikhala kuyo, kuba yayithe kum: Nantoni na oya kuyicela ngokholo, ukholelwa okokuba uya kuyifumana egameni likaKrestu, uya kuyifumana.
- 16 Kwaye bendinalo ukholo, ndaza ndakhala kuThixo okokuba alondoloze iimbali; wenza umnqophiso kunye nam wokokuba uya kuzizisa kumaLeymenayithi ngexesha lakhe.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

- 17 Kwaye mna, Enoshe, ndayazi okokuba kuya kuba njengoko ebewenzile umnqophiso; ngako oko umphefumlo wam waphumla.
- 18 Yaza iNkosi yathi kum: Ooyihlo nabo babenze esi sicelo kum; kwaye kuya kwenziwa kubo ngokokholo lwabo; kuba ukholo lwabo belufana nolwakho.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba mna, Enoshe, ndijikeleze kubantu bakaNifayi, ndiprofetha ngezinto eziya kwenzeka, ndingqina ngezinto endizivileyo nendizibonileyo.
- 20 Ndaye ndanika ubungqina bokokuba abantu bakaNifayi bazama ngenkuthalo ukubuyisela amaLeymenayithi elukholweni lokwenyani kuThixo. Kodwa iinzame zethu zawa phantsi; intiyo yabo yayinzulu, kwaye babekholwa yimikhwa yabo emibi kangokuba babendlongondlongo, babeneengcwangu, babengabantu abanxanelwe igazi, bezele kukunqula izithixo nokungcola; besitya amarhamncwa, behlala ezintenti, bezulazula entlango ngemibhinqo emifutshane yezikhumba ezinqeni neentloko zabo zichetyiwe; kwaye ubuchule babo babukwizaphetha, kwaye nangamakrelana, nezembe. Uninzi lwabo lwalungatyi nto ngaphandle kwenyama ekrwada; kwaye babesoloko bezama ukusitshabalalisa.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaNifayi baye bawulima umhlaba, baza balima zonke iintlobo zeenkozo, nolweziqhamo, bafuya nemihlambi yenkomo, kwaye nemihlambi yazo zonke iintlobo zeenkomo, neebhokhwe, neebhokhwe zasendle, kanaanjalo namahashe amaninzi.
- 22 Kwaye kukho abaprofeti abaninzi ngokugqithisileyo phakathi kwethu. Kwaye nabantu babengabantu abaneentamo ezilukhuni, kunzima ukuba baqonde.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

- 23 Kwaye kwakungekho nto ngaphandle koburhabaxa obugqithileyo, ukushumayela nokuprofetha ngeemfazwe, neembambano, nentshabalalo, nokubakhumbuza rhoqo ngokufa, kwaye nangobude bexesha lanaphakade, nezigwebo namandla kaThixo, nazo zonke ezi zinto—zibashukumisa rhoqo ukubagcina benoloyiko lweNkosi. Ndithi kwakungekho nanye into ngaphandle kwezi zinto, kwaye namazwi acace kakhulu ngokugqithisileyo, awayenokubanqanda ekuyeni ezantsi ekutshabalaleni ngokukhawuleza. Kwaye ndibhala ngolu hlobo ngabo.
- 24 Kwaye ndibone iimfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi kwimihla yobomi bam.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaqalisa ukuba mdala, kwaye elikhulu namashumi asixhenxe anethoba eminyaka yayisele idlule ukususela xa ubawo wethu uLihayi eshiya iYerusalem.
- 26 Kwaye ndabona okokuba kufuneka kungekudala ndehlele ezantsi engcwabeni lam, ekubeni bendiye ndafikelwa ngamandla kaThixo ukuba ndishumayele ndiprofethe kwabo bantu, kwaye ndivakalise ilizwi ngokulandela inyaniso ekuKrestu. Kwaye ndiyivakalisile ngayo yonke imihla yam, kwaye ndivuyile kuyo ngaphezu koko kwasehlabathini.
- 27 Kwaye kungekudala ndiya endaweni yam yokuphumla, loo ndawo ikuMkhululi wam; kuba ndiyazi okokuba kuye ndiya kuphumla. Kwaye ndiyawuvuyela loo mhla xa sukuba owam umzimba onokufa uya kwambatha ukungafi, kwaye uya kuma phambi kwakhe; ngoko ndiya kububona ubuso bakhe ndinolonwabo, kwaye uya kuthi kum: Yiza kum, wena usikelelweyo, ikhona indawo elungiselelwe wena ezindlwini ezinkulu zikaBawo. Amen.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

## INcwadi kaYaromi

- 1 Ngoku qaphelani, mna, Yaromi, ndibhala amazwi ambalwa ngokwemiyalelo kabawo, uEnoshe, ukuze umlibo wethu ube nokugcinakala.
- 2 Kwaye njengokuba la macwecwe emancinane, kwaye nanje ngokuba ezi zinto zibhalwe ngenjongo yokunceda abazalwana bethu amaLeymenayithi, ngako oko, kuyimfuneko okokuba ndibhale kancinane nje; kodwa andisayi kuzibhala izinto zokuprofetha kwam, nazityhilelo zam. Kuba yintoni endingayibhalayo engakumbi kunezo zibhalwe ngoobawo? Kuba ingaba abalityhilanga na icebo losindiso? Ndithi kuni, Ewe; kwaye oku kundanele.
- 3 Qaphelani, kufanelekile okokuba kwenziwe okuninzi phakathi kwesi sizwe, ngenxa yobulukhuni beentliziyo zabo, nobuthulu beendlebe zabo, nokumfameka kweengqondo zabo, nokuqina kweentamo zabo; nangona kunjalo, uThixo unenceba egqithisileyo kubo, kwaye akakabatshayeli basuke ebusweni belizwe ngokwakaloku nje.
- 4 Kwaye kukho abaninzi phakathi kwethu abanezityhilelo ezininzi, kuba asingabo bonke abantamo ziqinileyo. Kwaye abaninzi abangaqinanga ntamo kwaye benokholo, banobudlelwane kunye noMoya oyiNgcwele, ozibonakalisayo izinto kubantwana babantu, ngokokholo lwabo.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, amakhulu amabini eminyaka adlula, kwaye abantu bakaNifayi baba nokomelela elizweni. Bakuqwalasela ukuwugcina umthetho kaMoses nomhla wesabatha ungwele eNkosini. Kwaye abawungcolisanga; bengawenyelisanga nokuwenyelisa. Kwaye imithetho yelizwe yaye ingqongqo ngokugqithisileyo.
- 6 Kwaye babesasazeke phezu kweendawo ezininzi zobuso belizwe, namaLeymenayithi kanjalo. Kwaye babeyintlaninge ngokugqithisileyo kunokuba babenjalo abamaNifayithi; kwaye babekuthanda ukubulala kwaye besela igazi lezilwanyana.

## The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.



- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye eza amaxesha amaninzi ngokuchasene nathi, maNifayithi, ukuze alwe idabi. Kodwa ookumkani bethu neenkokeli zethu babomelele kakhulu elukholweni lweNkosi; kwaye babafundisa abantu iindlela zeNkosi; ngako oko, saba nokumelana nawo amaLeymenayithi kwaye sawatshayelela kude aphuma emihlabeni yethu, saza saqalisa ukuzinqabisa izixeko zethu, okanye nayiphina indawo yelifa lethu.
- 8 Kwaye saye saphinda-phindana ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye sanaba phezu kobuso belizwe, kwaye sanobutyebi obugqithisileyo ngegolide, nesilivere, nezinto zexabiso, nezinto ezicwengileyo ezisetyenzwe ngomthi, ngezakhiwo, nakoomatshini, kanaanjalo kwisinyithi nekopolo, nobhedu nentsimbi, senza zonke iintlobo zezixhobo zokusebenza zazo zonke iindidi ukuze silime umhlaba, nezikhali zemfazwe—ewe, netolo olunentloko ebukhali, nesingxobo setolo, netolo elitsolo elunomsila, nentshuntshe, nalo lonke uhlobo lokulungiselela imfazwe.
- 9 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba sazilungiselela njalo ukuhlangana namaLeymenayithi, awazange abenempumelelo ngokuchasene nathi. Kodwa ilizwi leNkosi laqinisekiswa, eyalithethayo koobawo bethu, ithetha oku: Kangangokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kuphumelela elizweni.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaprofeti beNkosi baye baboyikisa abantu bakaNifayi, ngokwelizwi likaThixo, okokuba ukuba abayigcini imiyalelo, kodwa basuke bawele ekwaphuleni umthetho, baya kutshatyalaliswa basuke ebusweni belizwe.
- 11 Ngako oko, abaprofeti, nababingeleli, notitshala, baye basebenza ngenkuthalo, bebaluleka ngawo wonke umonde abantu ukuba babenenkuthalo; bebafundisa imithetho kaMoses, kwaye nenjongo eyayinikelwe yona; bebathundeza ukuba bakhangele phambili kuye uMesiya, bakholelwe ekuzeni kwakhe ngokungathi usele efikile. Kwaye babafundisa ngolu hlobo.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngokwenza njalo babakhusela ekutshatyalalisweni phezu kobuso belizwe; kuba baye babahlaba iintliziyo zabo ngelizwi, beqhubeka ukubashukumisela ekubeni baguquke.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amakhulu amabini namashumi asibhozo eminyaka adlula—ngohlobo lweemfazwe, neembambano, neempikiswano, kangangethuba lexesha elininzi.

14 Kwaye mna, Yaromi, andibhali okungakumbi, kuba amacwecwe Mancinane. Kodwa qaphelani, bazalwana bam, nisenakho ukuya kwamanye amacwecwe kaNifayi; kuba qaphelani, phezu kwawo kukrolwe iimbali zeemfazwe zethu, ngokwemibhalo yookumkani, okanye kwezo mbali abathi benza ukuba zibhalwe.

15 Kwaye ndinikezela amacwecwe ezandleni zonyana wam uOmni, ukuze agcinwe ngokwemiyalelo yoobawo.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the records of our wars are engraven, according to the writings of the kings, or those which they caused to be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son Omni, that they may be kept according to the commandments of my fathers.

# INcwadi kaOmnayi

- 1 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba mna, Omnayi, ekubeni ndiyalelwa ngubawo, uYaromi, okokuba ndimele ndibhale nje noko phezu kwala macwecwe, ukulondoloza umlibo wethu—
- 2 Ngako oko, ngemihla yam, ndinga ningazi okokuba ndalwa kakhulu ngekrele ukukhusela abantu bam, amaNifayithi, ekubeni bawele ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, amaLeymenayithi. Kodwa qaphelani, mna ngokokwam ndiyindoda ekhohlakeleyo, kwaye andiyigcinanga imithetho nemiyalelo yeNkosi ngokohlobo ebendifanele ukwenza ngalo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba engamakhulu amabini anamashumi asixhenxe anesithandathu iminyaka idlule, kwaye sasinamaxesha amaninzi oxolo; kwaye sasinawo namaxesha amaninzi eemfazwe ezinzima nempalalo-gazi. Ewe, kwaye lilonke, engamakhulu amabini anamashumi asibhozo anesibini eminyaka yadlula, kwaye ndawagcina la macwecwe ngokwemiyalelo yoobawo; kwaye ndawanikela kunyana wam uAmaroni. Kwaye ndiyapheza.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku mna, Amaroni, ndibhala naziphina izinto endinokuzibhala, ezo ezimbalwa, encwadini kabawo.
- 5 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba amakhulu amathathu anamashumi amabini eminyaka adlule, kwaye eyona nxalenye yamaNifayithi eyayikhohlakele ngakumbi yatshatyalaliswa.
- 6 Kuba iNkosi yayingenako ukubayekela, emva kokuba ibakhokelele ngaphandle kwelizwe laseYerusalem kwaye yabalondoloza ukuze bangaweli ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, ewe, yayingenako ukuyekela ukuba amazwi angaqinisekiswa, eyawathethayo koobawo bethu, isithi: Kangangokuba ningasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo yam anisayi kuphumelela elizweni.
- 7 Ngako oko, iNkosi yaye yabavelela ngesigwebo esikhulu; nangona kunjalo, yaye yabasindisa abangamalungisa ukuze bangafi, kodwa yabakhupha ezandleni zeentshaba zabo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndiye ndiwanikezele amacwecwe kumntakwethu uKhemishi.

# The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

- 9 Ngoku mna, Khemishi, ezo zinto zimbalwa endinokuzibhala, kwakule ncwadi nje ngomntakwethu; kuba qaphelani, ndiyibonile eyokugqibela athe wayibhala, okokuba wayibhala ngesandla sakhe; kwaye wayibhala ngomhla awanikezela ngawo kum amacwecwe. Kwaye sizigcina ngolu hlobo iimbali, kuba kungokwemiyalelo yoobawo. Kwaye ndiyapheza.
- 10 Qaphelani, mna, Abhinadom, ndingunyana kaKhemishi. Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ndabona iimfazwe ezininzi neembambano phakathi kwabantu bam, amaNifayithi, namaLeymenayithi; kwaye mna, ngekrele lam, ndithabathe ubomi obuninzi bamaLeymenayithi ekukhuseleni abazalwana bam.
- 11 Kwaye qaphelani, imbali yesi sizwe ikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe ekubo ookumkani, ngokwezizukulwana; kwaye akukho sityhilelo ndisaziyo ngaphandle kweso sibhaliweyo, nasiprofetho; ngako oko, oko kubhaliweyo kwanele. Kwaye ndiyaphela.
- 12 Qaphelani, ndinguAmalekayi unyana ka-Abhinadom. Qaphelani, ndiza kuthetha nani nje noko malunga noMozaya, owaye enziwe ukumkani phezu kwelizwe laseZarahemla; kuba qaphelani, akuba yena elunyukisiwe yiNkosi ukuba kumele asabe aphume kwilizwe likaNifayi, kwaye nabaninzi abaya kuthi baliphulaphule ilizwi leNkosi nabo kanjalo kumele bemke baphume elizweni kunye naye, basinge entlango—
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wenza njengoko iNkosi imyalele. Kwaye bemka baphuma kulo ilizwe basinga entlango, kangangobuninzi babo abaya kuliphulaphula ilizwi leNkosi; kwaye bakhokelwa ngeentshumayelo nokuprofetha okuninzi. Kwaye babesolulekwa ngamaxesha onke ngelizwi likaThixo; kwaye babekhokelwa ngamandla engalo yakhe, bedlula entlango bade bafika ezantsi elizweni elibizwa ngokuba lilizwe laseZarahemla.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

- 14 Kwaye bafumana abantu, ababebizwa ngokuba ngabantu bakaZarahemla. Ngoku, kwabakho ukugcoba okukhulu phakathi kwabantu bakaZarahemla; kwaye uZarahemla kanjalo waye wabanokugcoba okugqithisileyo, ngenxa yokuba iNkosi ithumele abantu bakaMozaya namacwecwe obhedu awayequlethe imbali yamaYuda.
- 15 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya wafumanisa okokuba abantu bakaZarahemla babesuka eYerusalem ngelixa awathi uZedekiya, ukumkani wakwaYuda, wathatyathelwa ekuthinjweni eBhabhilon.
- 16 Kwaye bahamba entlango, kwaye baziswa ngesandla seNkosi ngaphesheya kwamanzi amaninzi, kulo ilizwe awathi wabafumana kulo uMozaya; kwaye babehleli apho ukusuka kwelo xesha ukuya phambili.
- 17 Kwaye ngelixa awathi uMozaya wabafumana, babesele beyintlaninge egqithisileyo. Nangona kunjalo, babeneemfazwe ezininzi neembambano ezinzima, kwaye bewe ngekrele amaxesha ngamaxesha; kwaye nolwimi lwabo lwalusele lonakele; kwaye babengezanga nazo iimbali; kwaye babebukhanyela ubukho boMdali wabo; kwaye uMozaya, nabantu bakaMozaya, babengenako ukubaqonda.
- 18 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya wenza ukuba bafundiswe ngolwimi lwakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba befundisiwe ngolwimi lukaMozaya, uZarahemla uye wanika umlibo wooyise, ngokwenkumbulo yakhe; kwaye ubhaliwe kodwa ingekuko kula macwecwe.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaZarahemla, nabakaMozaya, baye bazimanya kunye; waze uMozaya wonyulwa ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile ngemihla kaMozaya, kwabakho ilitye elikhulu elaziswa kuye linemikrolo kulo; kwaye waye wayitolika imikrolo ngesipho nangamandla kaThixo.
- 21 Kwaye yayinika ingxelo ngomnye owayenguKoriyantamri, kwakunye nabafayo babantu bakhe. Kwaye uKoriyantamri wafunyanwa ngabantu bakaZarahemla; kwaye wahlala nabo kangangesithuba seenyanga ezilithoba.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

- 22 Yayithetha kanjalo amazwi ambalwa ngokunxulumene nooyise. Kwaye abazali bakhe bokuqala babesuka enkochoyini, ngelixa iNkosi ibhidanisa ulwimi lwabantu; nobungqongqo beNkosi bawa phezu kwabo ngokwezigwebo zayo, ezibubulungisa; kwaye amathambo abo ayelele esasazekile kwilizwe elingasemantla.
- 23 Qaphelani, mna, Amalekayi, ndazalwa ngemihla kaMozaya; kwaye ndiphile ndada ndakubona ukufa kwakhe; kwaye uBhenjamin, unyana wakhe, walawula esikhundleni sakhe.
- 24 Kwaye qaphelani, ndibone, ngemihla kakumkani uBhenjamin, imfazwe enzima nempalalo-gazi eninzi phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi. Kodwa qaphelani, amaNifayithi azuza ithuba elihle kakhulu phezu kwabo; ewe, kangangokuba ukumkani uBhenjamin waye wabaqhubela ngaphandle kwelizwe laseZarahemla.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaqalisa ukuba mdala; kwaye, ndingenayo nembewu, kwaye ndimazi ukumkani uBhenjamin njengendoda enobulungisa phambi kweNkosi, ngako oko, ndiza kunikezela la macwecwe kuye, ndiyalela bonke abantu ukuba beze kuThixo; oNgcwele kaSirayeli, kwaye bakholelwe ekuprofetheni, nakwizityhilelo, nasekulungiseleleni kweengelosi, nakwisipho sokuthetha ngeelwimi, nakwisipho sokutolika iintetho, nakuzo zonke izinto ezilungileyo; kuba akukho nanye into eyinto elungileyo engaveli kuyo iNkosi: kwaye loo nto imbi ivela kumtyholi.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndinga ningeza kuKrestu, onguye oNgcwele kaSirayeli, nize nithabathe inxaxheba kusindiso lwakhe, namandla enkululeko yakhe. Ewe, yizani kuye, nize ninikele imiphefumlo yenu yonke njengomnikelo kuye, kwaye niqhubeke ngokuzila ukutya nokuthandaza, nize ninyamezele kude kube sekupheleni; kwaye njengoko iNkosi iphila niya kusindiswa.
- 27 Kwaye ngoku ndinga ndingathetha noko ngokunxulumene nenani elithile elathi lenyuka lasinga entlango ukuze libuyele kwilizwe likaNifayi; kuba kwakukho inani elikhulu elalingqwenela ukubanga ilizwe labo lelifa.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

28 Ngako oko, benyuka basinga entlango. Kwaye ekubeni inkokeli yabo iyindoda eyomeleleyo nenamandla amakhulu, kwaye nendoda entamo ilukhuni, ngako oko wabangela imbambano phakathi kwabo; kwaye bonke babulawa, ngaphandle kwabangamashumi amahlanu, entlango, baza babuyela kwakhona elizweni laseZarahemla.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bathabatha abanye kanjalo ababa linani elikhulu, baza bathabatha uhambo lwabo kwakhona besinga entlango.

30 Kwaye mna, Amalekayi, ndandinomntakwethu, owathi wahamba nabo naye; kwaye kude kube ngoku andinalwazi malunga nabo. Kwaye sele ndiza kulala phantsi engcwabeni lam; kwaye la macwecwe azele. Kwaye ndiyapheza ukuthetha kwam.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.

## AMazwi kaMormoni

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, sele ndiza kunikezela imbali ebendiyenza ezandleni zonyana wam uMoronayi, qaphelani ndizibonile phantse zonke iintshabalalo zabantu bam, amaNifayithi.
- 2 Kwaye kungamakhulu amaninzi eminyaka emva kokuza kukaKrestu ukuba ndinikezele ezi mbali ezandleni zonyana wam; kwaye ndiyacinga okokuba uya kuyibona yonke iphelele intshabalalo yabantu bam. Kodwa inga uThixo angamnika ukuba aphilile kuzo zonke, ukuze abenakho ukubhala into noko malunga noKrestu, ukuze mhlawumbi ngamhla uthile ingaluncedo kubo.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, ndithetha nje noko ngokunxulumene noko ndikubhalileyo; kuba emva kokuba ndilwenzile ushwankathelo ukusuka kumacwecwe kaNifayi, ukuhla ukuya kulawulo lwalo kumkani uBhenjamin, athe wathetha ngaye uAmalekayi, ndiye ndaphengulula phakathi kweembali ebezinikezelwe ezandleni zam, kwaye ndafumana la macwecwe, aquletse le ngxelo incinane yabaprofeti, ukusuka kuYakobi ukuya kulawulo lwalo kumkani uBhenjamin, kananjalo namaninzi amazwi kaNifayi.
- 4 Kwaye izinto eziphezu kwala macwecwe ziyandikholisa, ngenxa yeziprofetho zokuza kukaKrestu; kwaye noobawo besazi okokuba ezininzi zazo zizalisekile; ewe, kananjalo ndiyazi okokuba kangangobuninzi bazo izinto eziprofethiweyo ngokunxulumene nathi ukuhla ukuza kulo mhla ziye zazalisekiswa, nezininzi ezigqithela ngaphaya kwalo mhla kumele ngokuqinisekileyo zenzeke—
- 5 Ngako oko, ndikhetha ezi zinto, ukuze ndigqibezele imbali yam phezu kwazo, intsalela leyo yembali yam endiya kuyithabatha kumacwecwe kaNifayi; kwaye andinakho ukubhala nenye ekhulwini zezinto zabantu bam.
- 6 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiza kuwathabatha la macwecwe, aquletse ezi ziprofetho nezityhilelo, ndize ndizibeke nentsalela yembali yam, kuba angakhethekileyo kum; kwaye ndiyazi ukuba aya kuba ngakhethekileyo nakubo abantakwethu.

## The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.



- 7 Kwaye ndikwenza oku ngenjongo yobulumko; kuba uMoya usebeze njalo kum, ngokwemisebenzi yoMoya weNkosi okum. Kwaye ngoku, andizazi zonke izinto; kodwa iNkosi yazi zonke izinto ezisezayo; ngako oko, usebenza kum ukuze ndenze ngokwentando yakhe.
- 8 Kwaye umthandazo wam kuThixo umalunga nabazalwana bam, ukuze baphinde kwakhona beze kulwazi lukaThixo, ewe, inkululeko kaKrestu; ukuze kwakhona babe nokuba ngabantu abathandekayo.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndiyaqhubeka ukugqibezela imbali yam, endiyithatha kumacwecwe kaNifayi; kwaye ndiyenza ngokolwazi nengqiqo athe uThixo wandipha yona.
- 10 Ngako oko, kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAmalekayi ewanikezele amacwecwe ezandleni zikakumkani uBhenjamin, wawathabatha ke waza wawabeka kunye namanye amacwecwe, awayequlethe iimbali ezaziziswe ngookumkani, ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana kwade kwayimihla kakumkani uBhenjamin.
- 11 Kwaye aziswa ukusuka kukumkani uBhenjamin, ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana ada awela ezandleni zam. Kwaye mna, Mormoni, ndithandaza kuThixo ukuba zibe nokulondolozwa ukusuka kweli lixa ukuya phambili. Kwaye ndiyazi okokuba ziya kulondolozwa; kuba kukho izinto ezinkulu ezibhalwe kuwo, ezimalunga nezinto zabantu bam nabazalwana babo abaya kugwetywa ngazo ngomhla omkhulu nowokugqibela, ngokwelizwi likaThixo elibhaliweyo.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku, ngokunxulumene nalo kumkani uBhenjamin—waye eneembambano nje noko phakathi kwabakhe abantu.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile kanjalo okokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yehla iphuma kwilizwe likaNifayi, ukuya kulwa idabi nabantu bakhe. Kodwa qaphelani, ukumkani uBhenjamin wahlanganisa kunye imikhosi yakhe, kwaye waye waxhathisa ngokuchasene nawo; kwaye walwa ngokomelela kwengalo yakhe, ngekrele likaLabhan.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

- 14 Kwaye emandleni eNkosi baye babambana ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo, bade babulala amaninzi amawaka amaLeymenayithi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye babambana ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi bada bawaqhubela ngaphandle kwawo onke amazwe elifa labo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba bekukho ooKrestu bobuxoki, kwaye nemilomo yabo ivaliwe, kwaye bohlwaywa ngokunxulumene namatyala abo;
- 16 Kwaye emva kokuba bekukho abaprofeti bobuxoki, nabashumayeli bobuxoki nootitshala phakathi kwabantu, kwaye bonke aba bohlwayiwe ngokunxulumene nolwaphulo mthetho lwabo; kwaye emva kokuba bekukho iimbambano ezininzi neempikiswano ezininzi bawela kumaLeymenayithi, qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uBhenjamin, ngokuncediswa ngabaprofeti abangcwele ababekho phakathi kwabantu bakhe—
- 17 Kuba qaphelani, ukumkani uBhenjamin wayeyindoda engcwele, kwaye walawula phezu kwabantu bakhe ngobulungisa; kwaye kwakukho amadoda amaninzi awayengcwele elizweni, kwaye alithetha ilizwi likaThixo ngamandla nangegunya; kwaye basebenzisa ubukhali ngenxa yobuntamo lukhuni babantu—
- 18 Ngako oko, ngoncedo lwaba, ukumkani uBhenjamin, ngokusebenza ngawo onke amandlakazi omzimba wakhe kwaye namandla engqondo omphefumlo wakhe wonke, nabaprofeti kanjalo, waphinda kwakhona wamisela uxolo elizweni.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

# INcwadi kaMozaya

## Mozaya 1

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwakungasekho mbambano kulo lonke ilizwe laseZarahemla, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu abangabakakumkani uBhenjamin, ngolo hlobo ukumkani uBhenjamin wathi rhoqo ukuba noxolo yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waba noonyana abathathu; kwaye wabathiya amagama anguMozaya, noHeloram, noHilamani. Kwaye wenza ukuba bafundiswe ngazo zonke iilwimi zooyise, ukuze ngazo babe ngamadoda aqondayo; nokokuba babenokwazi malunga neziprofetho ezazithethiwe ngemilomo yooyise, ezazinikezelwe kubo ngesandla seNkosi.
- 3 Kananjalo wabafundisa ngokunxulumene neembali ezazikrolwe kumacwecwe obhedu, esithi: Boonyana bam, ndinga ningakhumbula okokuba ukuba bekungengawo la macwecwe, aquletse ezi mbali nale miyalelo, besiya kuhlala ekungazini, nangalo eli xesha limiyo, singazazi iimfihlelo zikaThixo.
- 4 Kuba ebengenakubanako ubawo wethu, uLihayi, ukuzikhumbula zonke ezi zinto, ukuze azifundise kubantwana bakhe, ngaphandle kokuba kube kungoncedo lwala macwecwe; kuba yena ekubeni ebezifundiswe ngolwimi lwamaYiputa ke ngoko ebenako ukuyifunda le mikrolo, aze ayifundise kubantwana bakhe, ukuze ngayo babenokuyifundisa kubantwana babo, ngayo bezalisekisa imiyalelo kaThixo, kwanokuhla ukuza kweli xesha limiyo.
- 5 Ndithi kuni, boonyana bam, ukuba bekungengazo ezi zinto, ezithe zagcinwa kwaye zakhuselwa ngesandla sikaThixo, ukuze sibe nokuzifunda kwaye siziqonde iimfihlelo zakhe, kwaye sibenayo nemiyalelo yakhe ngalo lonke ixesha phambi kwamehlo ethu, noobawo bethu ngokwabo ngebabe besiya bephelela ekungakholweni, kwaye besiya kufana nabazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi, abangazinto malunga nezi zinto, okanye abazikholelwa nokuzikholelwa xa bezifundiswa, ngenxa yezithethe zooyise, ezingalunganga.

# The Book of Mosiah

## Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

- 6 Owu boonyana bam, ndinga ningakhumbula okokuba ezi ntetho ziyinyani, kanjalo nokokuba ezi mbali ziyinyani. Kwaye qaphelani, namacwecwe kaNifayi kanjalo, aqulethe iimbali neentetho zoobawo ukusuka kwilixa ababelishiya elaseYerusalem kude kube kaloku nje, kwaye ayinyani; kwaye sinako ukwazi ngobunyaniso bawo ngenxa yokuba sinawo phambi kwamehlo ethu.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku, boonyana bam, ndinga ningakhumbula ukuwaphengulula ngenkuthalo, ukuze nincedeke ngawo; kwaye ndinga ningayigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, ukuze niphumelele elizweni ngokwezithembiso eyathi iNkosi yazenza koobawo.
- 8 Kwaye zabaninzi nezinye izinto awathi ukumkani uBhenjamin wazifundisa koonyana bakhe, ezingabhalwanga kuyo le ncwadi.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ukumkani uBhenjamin ephezile ukubafundisa oonyana bakhe, waye waba mdala, kwaye wabona okokuba kufuneka kwakamsinya ahambe ngendlela yawo wonke umhlaba; ke ngoko, wacinga ukuba kuyimfuneko ukuba anikezele ubukumkani phezu komnye woonyana bakhe.
- 10 Ke ngoko, wenza ukuba uMozaya aziswe phambi kwakhe; kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wawathetha kuye, esithi: Nyana wam, ndinga ungenza isibhengezo kulo lonke eli lizwe phakathi kwabo bonke aba bantu, okanye abantu bakaZarahemla, nabantu bakaMozaya abahlala elizweni, ukuze ngaso babe nokuhlanganisana kunye; kuba ngengomso ndiya kubhengeza kwesi sizwe sam ngokuphuma emlonyeni wam okokuba ungukumkani nomlawuli phezu kwesi sizwe, ethe iNkosi uThixo wethu yasinika sona.
- 11 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndiya kusinika esi sizwe igama, esiya kuthi ngalo sohluke ngaphezu kwazo zonke izizwe eyathi iNkosi uThixo yazikhuphela ngaphandle kwelizwe laseYerusalem; kwaye oku ndikwenza ngenxa yokokuba babengabantu abakhutheleyo ekuyigcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi.
- 12 Kwaye ndibanika igama elingasokuze licinywe, ngaphandle kokuba kungokwaphula umthetho.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

- 13 Ewe, kwaye ngaphezu koko ndithi kuwe, ukuba aba bantu bathandeka kakhulu beNkosi banokuthi bawele ekwaphuleni umthetho, baze babe ngabantu abakhohlakeleyo nebantwana abakrexezayo, ukuze iNkosi ibanikezele ezintshabeni zabo, ukuze ngazo babe buthathaka nje ngabazalwana babo; kwaye akayi kuphinda abakhusele ngaloo mandla angenamlinganiselo nangumangaliso, njengoko kude kwangoku ebakhusele oobawo bethu.
- 14 Kuba ndithi kuwe, ukuba ibingayolulanga ingalo yayo ekukhuseleni oobawo bethu ngebabewele ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi, baza baba ngamaxhoba entiyo yawo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ukumkani uBhenjamin ephezile ukwenza ezi ntetha kunyana wakhe, wamnika umyalelo ngokunxulumene nemicimbi yobukumkani.
- 16 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, waye wamnika kanjalo umyalelo ngokunxulumene neembali ezazikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu; kwaye kanjalo namacwecwe kaNifayi; kanjalo, nekrele likaLabhan, nebhola okanye isikhombisi, esakhokela oobawo bethu ukucanda intlango, esasilungiswe ngesandla seNkosi ukuze ngaso babe nokukhokelwa, wonke umntu ngokwenyameko nenkuthalo abayinikelayo kuyo.
- 17 Ke ngoko, bakunganyaniseki babengaphumeleli kwaye bengaqhubeki eluhambeni lwabo, basuke baqhutyelwe emva, kwaye bazizisela ukungakhohiseki kukaThixo phezu kwabo; kwaye ke ngoko baye babethwa ngendlala neembandezelo ezibuhlungu, ukuze abashukumisele kwinkumbulo yoko kuyimfanelo yabo.
- 18 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya wahamba kwaye wenza njengoko uyise wayemyalele, kwaye wabhengeza kubo bonke abantu ababekulo ilizwe laseZarahemla ukuze babe nokuhlanganisana kunye kulo, ukuze banyuke baye etempileni ukuya kuva amazwi awayeza kuthethwa nguyise kubo.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

## Mozaya 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uMozaya enze njengoko uyise wayemyalele, kwaye wenza isibhengezo kulo lonke ilizwe, sokokuba abantu bahlanganisane kunye kulo lonke ilizwe, ukuze babe nokunyuka ukuya etempileni ukuya kuphulaphula amazwi awayeza kuthethwa ngukumkani uBhenjamin kubo.
- 2 Kwaye kwakukho inani elikhulu, ewe nelininzi kangokokuba alizange libalwe; kuba babephindaphindene ngokugqithisileyo kwaye baba baninzi elizweni.
- 3 Kananjalo bathabatha amazibulo emihlambi yabo, ukuze banikele idini namadini anyukayo ngokomthetho kaMoses;
- 4 Kananjalo nokokuba babenokunika umbulelo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo, owathi wabakhupha elizweni laseYerusalem, nowathi wabahlangula ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, kwaye wanyula amadoda angamalungisa ukuba abe ngootitshala babo, kananjalo nendoda elilungisa ukuba ibe ngukumkani wabo, owathi wamisela uxolo elizweni laseZarahemla, nowathi wabafundisa ukugcina imiyalelo kaThixo, ukuze babenovuyo kwaye bazale luthando kuThixo nakubantu bonke.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa befika phezulu etempileni, bagxumeka iintente zabo macala onke, indoda nganye ngokosapho lwayo, oluyinkosikazi yayo, noonyana bayo, neentombi zayo, noonyana babo, neentombi zabo, ukusuka komdala ukuya koyena mncinane, usapho ngalunye lwahluliwe olunye kolunye.
- 6 Kwaye bazigxumeka iintente zabo macala onke etempile, indoda nganye inentente yayo esango layo lijonge ngasetempileni, ukuze ngolo hlobo bahlale ezintenti zabo kwaye bawave amazwi awayeza kuthethwa ngukumkani uBhenjamin kubo;
- 7 Kuba isihlwele saye sisikhulu kangokokuba ukukumkani uBhenjamin wayengenako ukubafundisa bonke ngaphakathi kweendonga zetempile, ke ngoko wenza ukuba kumiswe incopho, ukuze ngayo abantu bakhe babenako ukuva amazwi awayeza kuwathetha kubo.

## Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waqalisa ukuthetha nabo abantu bakhe esencotsheni; kwaye babengakwazi ukuweva bonke amazwi akhe ngenxa yobuninzi besihlwele; ke ngoko wenza okokuba amazwi athe wawathetha abhalwe aze athunyelwe phakathi kwabo babengekho kufuphi nesandi selizwi lakhe, ukuze nabo babe nokuwafumana amazwi akhe.

9 Kwaye la ngamazwi athi wawathetha kwaye wenza ukuba abhalwe, esithi: Bazalwana bam, nonke nina nihlanganisene kunye, nina ninako ukuweva amazwi am endiza kuwathetha kuni ngalo mhla; kuba andiniyalelanga ukuba ninyuke nize apha ukuba niwenze into engenamsebenzi amazwi endiza kuwathetha, kodwa ndinibizele okokuba nindiphulaphule, kwaye nizivule iindlebe zenu ukuze nibe nokuva, neentliziyo zenu ukuze niqonde, neengqondo zenu ukuze iimfihlelo zikaThixo zibe nokutyhilwa nizibone.

10 Andiniyalelanga ukuba nize apha ukuze nindoyike, okanye nicinge okokuba mna ngokwam ndingaphezulu kunendoda enokufa.

11 Kodwa ndinjengokuba ninjalo, ndinako ukuba nazo zonke iintlobo zezifo emzimbeni nasengqondweni; nangona kunjalo ndonyuliwe ngaba bantu, kwaye ndangcwaliswa ngubawo, kwaye ndavunyelwa ngesandla seNkosi ukuba ndibe ngumlawuli nokumkani phezu kwaba bantu; kwaye ndigcinwe kwaye ndakhuselwa ngamandla akhe angenamlinganiselo, ukuze ndinikhonze ngawo onke amandlakazi, ingqondo, nokomelela ethe iNkosi yandinika kona.

12 Ndithi kuni njengokuba ndivunyelwe ukuba ndinikele imihla yam ekunikhonzeni, kwanokude kube leli lixa, kwaye andifunanga golide nasilivere nalo naluphina uhlobo lobutyebi benu;

13 Ndinganivumelanga nokokuba nivalelwe emihadini, nokokuba nizenze amakhoboka omnye komnye, nokokuba nibulale, okanye niphange, okanye nibe, okanye nikrexeze; ndinganivumelanga nokokuba nenze naluphina uhlobo lwenkohlakalo, kwaye ndinifundise okokuba niyigcine imiyalelo yeNkosi, ngezinto zonke ethe yaniyalela ngazo—

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—

- 14 Kwaye nam, ngokwam, ndisebenzile ngezandla zam ukuze ndibe nokunikhonza, nokokuba ningasindwa ziirhafu, nokokuba kungabikho nto iza kuni ebuhlungu ukuyinyamezela—kwaye kuzo zonke ezi zinto ndizithethileyo, nina ngokwenu ningamangqina ngawo lo mhla.
- 15 Kanti ke, bazalwana bam, andizenzanga ezi zinto ukuze ndibe nokuzigwagwisa, ndingazixeli ezi zinto ukuze ndibe nokunityhola; kodwa ndinixelela ezi zinto ukuze nibe nokwazi okokuba ndinako ukuphendula ngesazela esimsulwa phambi koThixo ngawo lo mhla.
- 16 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni ngenxa yokokuba ndithe kuni ndinikele imihla yam ndinisebenzela, andinqweneli kuzigwagwisa, kuba bendisebenzela kuphela uThixo.
- 17 Kwaye qaphelani, ndinixelela ezi zinto ukuze nibe nokufunda ubulumko; ukuze nibe nokufunda okokuba xa ninceda uluntu lwenu nisekuncedeni kuphela uThixo wenu.
- 18 Qaphelani, nindibize njengokumkani wenu; kwaye ukuba mna, enimbiza njengokumkani wenu, ndiyasebenza ukuze ndinincede, ke animele nisebenze kusini na ukuze nincedane?
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani kanjalo, ukuba mna, enimbiza njengokumkani wenu, othe wanikela imihla yakhe enisebenzela, kwaye kuyo yonke loo nto ebesebenzela uThixo, uwufanele nawuphina umbulelo ovela kuni, Owu bekunganjani ukuba beninokumbulela uKumkani wenu wasemazulwini!
- 20 Ndithi kuni, bazalwana bam, ukuba ninganikela yonke imibulelo nodumo onokuthi umphefumlo wenu wonke ubenamandla okubanalo, kuloo Thixo unidalileyo, kwaye onigcinileyo kwaye wanikhusela, kwaye wanenza ukuba nigcobe, kwaye wanivumela ukuba nihlale ngoxolo omnye kunye nomnye—
- 21 Ndithi kuni ukuba ningamsebenzela lowo unidalileyo ukususela ekuqalekeni, kwaye enikhusela ukusuka kumhla ukuya kumhla, ngokuniboleka umphefumlo, ukuze nibe nokuphila kwaye nishukume kwaye nenze ngokuthanda kwenu, kwaye enixhasa umzuzu ukuya komnye—ndithi, ukuba ningamsebenzela ngemphefumlo yenu yonke iphela kanti niya kuba zizicaka ezingancedi lutho.

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.



- 22 Kwaye qaphelani, konke akunqwenelayo kuni kukuba niyigcine imiyalelo yakhe; kwaye unithembisile okokuba ukuba ningayigcina imiyalelo yakhe ningaphumelela elizweni; kwaye akajiki kuloo nto ayithethileyo; ke ngoko, ukuba nithi niyigcine imiyalelo yakhe uyanisikelela kwaye aniphumelelise.
- 23 Kwaye ngoko, okokuqala, unidalile, kwaye waninika ubomi benu, eninetyala ngabo kuye.
- 24 Kwaye okwesibini, uninqwenelela ukuba ningenza njengoko eniyalele; nto leyo ukuba ningayenza, uyanisikelela ngoko nangoko; kwaye ke ngoko unihlawule. Kwaye nisenetyala kuye, kwaye ninalo, kwaye nisaya kubanalo, ngonaphakade kanaphakade; ke ngoko, ingaba yintoni eningazigwagwisa ngayo?
- 25 Kwaye ngoku ndiyabuza, ingaba ninga nako na ukuzithethelela? Ndiyaniphendula, Hayi. Aninakutsho nokuthi ningalingana nalo nothuli lomhlaba; kanti nanidalwe ngothuli lomhlaba; kodwa qaphelani, lolwakhe lowo wanidalayo.
- 26 Kwaye nam, ngokwam, enimbiza njengokumkani wenu, andingaphezulu kunani; kuba nam kanjalo ndisuka eluthulini. Kwaye niyabona okokuba ndimdala, kwaye sele ndiza kunikela olu phahla lunokufa kunina walo umhlaba.
- 27 Ke ngoko, njengoko nditshilo kuni okokuba ndinisebenzele, ndihamba ndinesazela esimsulwa phambi koThixo, kangangokuba mna nangeli xesha ndinibangele ukuba nihlanganisane kunye, ukuze ndifunyaniswe ndingenatyala, kwaye nokokuba igazi lenu lingezi phezu kwam, xa ndiya kuma ukuze ndigwetywe nguThixo ngezinto abendiyalele ngazo ngokunxulumene nani.
- 28 Ndithi kuni ndinibangele ukuba nihlanganisane kunye ukuze ndisuse igazi lenu kuzo izambatho zam, kwesi sigaba sexesha xa sele ndiza kwehlela ezantsi engcwabeni lam, ukuze ndihle ngoxolo, nomoya wam ongenakufa ube nokuhlangana neekwayara zaphezulu ekuvumeni iindumiso zoThixo onobulungisa.

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

29 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndithi kuni ndinibangele ukuba nihlanganisane kunye, ukuze ndibe nokubhengeza kuni okokuba andisayi kubanakhokuba yititshala yenu, ndingasayi kuba nguye nokumkani wenu;

30 Kuba nangalo eli xesha, umzimba wam wonke uyangcangcazela ngokugqithisileyo ngeli thuba ndizama ukuthetha nani; kodwa iNkosi uThixo iyandixhasa, kwaye indivumele ukuba ndithethe nani, kwaye indiyalele ukuba ndibhengeze kuni ngalo mhla, okokuba unyana wam uMozaya ungukumkani nomlawuli phezu kwenu.

31 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinga ningenza njengokuba benisenza kude kube kaloku nje. Njengokuba beniyigcina imiyalelo yam, kananjalo nemiyalelo kabawo, kwaye niphumelele, kwaye nithintelwe ekubeni niwele ezandleni zeentshaba zenu, kuya kuba njalo naxa nithe nayigcina imiyalelo yonyana wam, okanye imiyalelo kaThixo eya kuthethwa kuni nguye, niya kuphumelela elizweni, kwaye neentshaba zenu aziyi kuba namandla phezu kwenu.

32 Kodwa, Owu bantu bam, lumkani hleze kuvuke iimbambano phakathi kwenu, kwaye nifune ukuthobela umoya ongcolileyo, ekwathethwa ngawo ngubawo uMozaya.

33 Kuba qaphelani, kukho isiqalekiso esibhengeziweyo phezu kwakhe lowo ufuna ukuthobela loo moya; kuba ukuba ufuna ukuwuthobela, aze ahlale kwaye afele ezonweni zakhe, kwayena lowo uziziselela ukugwetywa emphefumleni wakhe; kuba wamkela endaweni yomvuzo wakhe isohlwayo sanaphakade, ekubeni ewaphule umthetho kaThixo ukuphikisa ulwazi lwakhe.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

34 Ndithi kuni, okokuba akukho namnye phakathi kwenu, ngaphandle kokuba kube ngabantwana benu abancinane abangafundiswanga malunga nezi zinto, kodwa abaziyo okokuba ninetyala ngonaphakade kuBawo wenu wasemazulwini, ukuba ninikele kuye konke eninako kwaye noko nikuko; kwaye kanjalo nabangafundiswanga ngokunxulumene neembali eziqulethe iziprofetho ezithethwe ngabaprofeti abangcwele, nasekahleni ukuya kwixesha ubawo wethu, uLihayi, elishiya elaseYerusalem;

35 Kananjalo, konke oko kwathethwa ngoobawo bethu kude kube kaloku nje. Kwaye qaphelani, kanjalo, bathetha oko babekuyalelwe yiNkosi; ke ngoko kuchanekile kwaye kuyinyani.

36 Kwaye ngoku, ndithi kuni, bazalwana bam, emva kokuba nizazile kwaye nizifundisiwe zonke ezi zinto, ukuba nithe nawaphula umthetho nahamba ngokuchaseneyo noko kuthethiweyo, ukuze nizirhoxise kuwo uMoya weNkosi, ukuze ungabi nandawo kuni ukuze unikhokelele kuzo iindlela zobulumko ukuze nibe nokusikeleleka, niphunyeleliswe, kwaye nilondolozwe—

37 Ndithi kuni, loo mntu ukwenzayo oku, lowo umvukela elubala uThixo; ke ngoko ufuna ukuthobela umoya ongcolileyo, kwaye abe lutshaba kubo bonke ubulungisa; ke ngoko, iNkosi ayinandawo kuye, kuba ayihlali kuzo iitempile ezingangcwelanga.

38 Ke ngoko ukuba loo mntu akaguquki, kwaye ahlale aze afe elutshaba kuThixo, iimfuneko zobulungisa zobuthixo zivusela umphefumlo wakhe ongenakufa kwimvakalelo edlamkileyo yetyala lakhe, elimenza ukuba arhwaqele kubo ubuso beNkosi, kwaye lizalise isifuba sakhe ngetyala, nentlungu, nokudandatheka, okufana nomlilo ongacimiyo, olangatye lawo linyukela phezulu ngonaphakade kanaphakade.

39 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni, loo nceba ayinabango kuloo mntu; ke ngoko isigwebo sakhe sokugqibela kukunyamezela intuthumbo engenasiphelo.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

40 Owu, nonke nina madoda amakhulu, kanaanjalo nani bafana, kwaye nani bantwanana abancinane abanako ukuwaqonda amazwi am, kuba ndithethe ngokucacileyo kuni ukuze nibe nokuqonda, ndiyanithandaza ukuba niqabuke kwiinkumbulo zemo eyoyikekayo yabo bathi bawela ekwaphuleni umthetho.

41 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndinganqwenela okokuba nicingisise ngemo eneentsikelelo neyolonwabo lwabo bayigcinayo imiyalelo kaThixo. Kuba qaphelani, basikelelwe kuzo zonke izinto, kunye ezomzuzwana nezasemphefumleni; kwaye ukuba bayanyamezela benyanisekile kwade kwaba sekupheleni bayamkelwa ezulwini, ukuze kulo babenokuhlala noThixo bekwimo yolonwabo olungasokuze luphele. Owu khumbulani, khumbulani okokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani; kuba iNkosi uThixo izithethile.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

## Mozaya 3

- 1 Kwaye kwakhona bazalwana bam, ndinga ndingamema ingqalelo yenu, kuba ndinento nje engakumbi emandiyithethe nani; kuba qaphelani, ndinezinto emandizithethe nani ezinxulumene noko kuzayo.
- 2 Kwaye izinto ezo endiza kuzithetha kuni zazisiwe kum yingelosi evela kuThixo. Kwaye yathi kum: Vuka; ndaza ndavuka, kwaye ndayibona imi phambi kwam.
- 3 Kwaye yathi kum: Vuka, uze uve amazwi endiza kukuxelela wona; kuba qaphela, ndize ukuza kuvakalisa kuwe iindaba ezilungileyo zovuyo olukhulu.
- 4 Kuba iNkosi iyivile imithandazo yakho, kwaye ibugwebile ubulungisa bakho, kwaye indithumele ukuba ndivakalise kuwe ukuze ube nokugcoba; kwaye nokokuba ube nokuvakalisa kubo abantu bakho, ukuze nabo kanjalo bazale luvuyo.
- 5 Kuba qaphelani, ilixa liyeza, kwaye alingama mde, kuba ngamandla, iNkosi enaMandla Onke elawulayo, eyayikho, kwaye ekhoyo ukususela kunaphakade wonke ukuya kunaphakade wonke, uya kwehla evela ezulwini eze phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kwaye uya kuhlala kumnquba womdongwe, kwaye uya kuya phambili phakathi kwabantu, esenza imimangaliso emikhulu, enje ngokuphilisa imilwelwe, ukuvusa abafuleyo, ukwenza iziqhwala zihambe, abazimfama bafumane ukubona, kwaye nezithulu zive, kwaye enyanga zonke iintlobo zezifo.
- 6 Kwaye uya kukhupha oomtyholi, okanye oomoya abangcolileyo abahlala ezintliziyweni zabantwana babantu.
- 7 Kwaye yabonani, uya kunyamezela izihendo, neentlungu zomzimba, nendlala, nokunxanwa, nokudinwa, nangaphezulu kunokuba umntu anganako ukunyamezela, ngaphandle kokufa; kuba qaphelani, igazi liya kuphuma kuzo zonke iintunja, kuya kuba kukhulu ukudandatheka kwakhe ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi abantu bakhe.
- 8 Kwaye uya kubizwa ngokuba nguYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, uYise wezulu nomhlaba, uMdali wazo zonke izinto ukususela ekuqalekeni; kwaye unina uya kubizwa ngegama elinguMariya.

## Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 Kwaye yabonani, uza kubo abakhe, ukuze usindiso lufike kubo abantwana babantu kwa nangalo ukholo egameni lakhe; kwaye nasemva kwako konke oku baya kumthatha njengomntu, kwaye baya kuthi unomtyholi, kwaye baya kumtyakatya, kwaye baya kumbethelela emnqamlezweni.
- 10 Kwaye uya kuvuka ngosuku lwesithathu kwelabafileyo; kwaye qaphelani, umele ukuba aligwebe ihlabathi; kwaye qaphelani, zonke ezi zinto zenzeka ukuze kuwiswe umgwebo wobulungisa phezu kwabantwana babantu.
- 11 Kuba qaphelani, negazi lakhe kanjalo lihlawulela izono zabo bathi bawa ngokona kuka-Adam, abathi bafa bengenalwazi ngentando kaThixo ngokunxulumene nabo, okanye abonayo ngokungazi.
- 12 Kodwa yeha, yeha kuye lowo waziyo okokuba uvukela uThixo! Kuba usindiso alufiki nakomnye onjalo ngaphandle kokuba kungenguquko nokholo kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu.
- 13 Kwaye iNkosi uThixo ithumele abaprofeti bayo abangcwele phakathi kwabo bonke abantwana babantu, ukuba bazibhengeze ezi zinto kuso sonke isalamane, isizwe, nolwimi, ukuze ngabo nabanina abaya kukholelwa okokuba uKrestu uya kuza, abo banjalo ke banokufumana ukuxolelwa kwezono zabo, kwaye bagcobe ngovuyo olugqithisileyo, kangangokude kubengathi sele efikile phakathi kwabo.
- 14 Kanti iNkosi uThixo yabona okokuba aba bantu babengabantu abantamo zilukhuni, yaza yabamisela umthetho, kwanawo umthetho kaMoses.
- 15 Kwaye yayibonisa kubo imiqondiso emininzi, nemimangaliso, nemizekelo, kwaye nezithunzi yaye yazibonisa kubo, ngokunxulumene nokuza kwakhe; kwaye nabaprofeti abangcwele kanjalo bathetha nabo ngokunxulumene nokuza kwakhe, kanti kunjalo baziqinisa iintliziyo zabo, kwaye abazange baqonde okokuba umthetho kaMoses awubenzeli nto ngaphandle kokuba kube kungentlawulelo yegazi lakhe.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

- 16 Kwaye ukuba bekunokwenzeka ukuba abantwana abancinane babenokwenza isono bebengenako ukuba bangasindiswa; kodwa ndithi kuni basikelelekile; kuba qaphelani, njengakuAdam, okanye ngokwemvelo, bayawa, nokuba kunganjalo igazi likaKrestu liya bahlawulela izono zabo.
- 17 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndithi kuni, akusayi kubakho elinye igama elinikiweyo nangayiphina indlela naluhlobo olunokuza ngalo usindiso kubantwana babantu, kuphela kukulo kwaye nangalo igama lika Krestu, iNkosi enaMandla Onke.
- 18 Kuba qaphelani uyagweba, kwaye isigwebo sakhe sibubulungisa; kwaye usana alutshabalali olufele ebusaneni balo, kodwa abantu baziselela isigwebo emiphefumleni yabo ngaphandle kokuba bayazithoba kwaye babenjengabantwana abancinane, kwaye bakholelwe okokuba usindiso lwabakho, kwaye lukho, kwaye lusaya kuza, kulo nangalo igazi lentlawulelo likaKrestu, iNkosi enaMandla Onke.
- 19 Kuba umntu wemvelo ulutshaba kuThixo, kwaye ebelulo ukusuka ekuweni kuka-Adam, kwaye usaya kubalulo, ngonaphakade kanaphakade, ngaphandle kokuba azinikele kwiimpembelelo zoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwaye amkhuphe umntu wemvelo kwaye abe ngongcwele ngentlawulelo kaKrestu iNkosi, kwaye abe njengomntwana, azinikele, abe nobulali, athobeke, abe nomonde, azale luthando, avume ukuzinikela kuzo zonke izinto iNkosi ebona kumlungele ukuba imhlangise ngazo, nanjengokuba umntwana ezithoba kuyise.
- 20 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndithi kuni, ilixa liya kufika xa ulwazi ngoMsindisi luya kusasazeka kuso sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu.
- 21 Kwaye qaphelani, xa elo lixa lifika, akukho namnye oya kufunyanwa engenatyala phambi koThixo, ngaphandle kwabantwana abancinane, kungenguquko kuphela nokholo kulo igama leNkosi uThixo onaMandla Onke.
- 22 Kwaye nangalo eli xesha, xa uya kuba ubafundisile abantu bakho ezi zinto ethe iNkosi uThixo wakho yakuyalela zona, nangoko abayi kufunyanwa bengenatyala emehlweni kaThixo, kungokwamazwi endiwathethe kuwe kuphela.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

- 23 Kwaye ngoku ndiwathethile amazwi ethe iNkosi uThixo yandiyalela wona.
- 24 Kwaye itsho njalo iNkosi: Aya kuma njengobungqina obukhazimlayo ngokuchasene nabo aba bantu, ngomhla womgwebo; ngoko ke baya kugwetywa, umntu ngamnye ngokwemisebenzi yakhe, nokokuba ilungile okanye nokuba mibi.
- 25 Kwaye ukuba mibi banikelwa kumbono owoyikekayo wetyala namasikizi abo athi abenze barhwaqele ukusuka kubo ubuso beNkosi baye kwimo yenkxwaleko nentuthumbo engenasiphelo, apho bangenako ukuphinda babuye; ke ngoko bawusele umgwebo emiphefumlweni yabo.
- 26 Ke ngoko, basele kwindebe yengqumbo kaThixo, ubulungisa obo obungasakwazi ukubakhanyela kunokuba bunokukhanyela ukuba uAdam kumele awe ngenxa yokuba etyile kuso isiqhamo esalelweyo; ke ngoko, inceba ibingenakho ukuphinda ibe nebango kubo ngonaphakade.
- 27 Kwaye intuthumbo yabo inje ngedike lomlilo nesalfure, elimalangatye walo angacimiyo, nomsi walo onyukela phezulu ngonaphakade kanaphakade. Indiyalele njalo iNkosi. Amen.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.



## Mozaya 4

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba xa ukumkani uBhenjamin ephezile ukuthetha amazwi abenikelwe kuye yingelosi yeNkosi, wawaphosa amehlo akhe macala onke kuso isihlwele, kwaye qaphelani sasiwele emhlabeni, kuba uloyiko lweNkosi lwalufike phezu kwaso.
- 2 Kwaye bazibona bekwimo yabo yasenyameni, bengaphantsi nakuthuli lomhlaba. Kwaye badanduluka bonke ngezwi elinye, besithi: Owu yiba nenceba, kwaye usebenzise igazi elihlawulelayo likaKrestu ukuze sifumane uxolelo lwezono zethu, neentliziyo zethu zihlanjululwe; kuba siyakholwa kuYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, owadala izulu nomhlaba, nazo zonke izinto; oya kuthi ehle eze phakathi kwabantwana babantu.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba bethethe la mazwi uMoya weNkosi wehla phezu kwabo, kwaye bazaliswa luvuyo, bafumana uxolelo lwezono zabo, kwaye bafumana izazela ezinoxolo, ngenxa yokholo olugqithileyo ababenalo kuYesu Krestu oya kuza, ngokwamazwi ukumkani uBhenjamin awathethileyo kubo.
- 4 Kwaye ukumkani uBhenjamin waphinda wawuvula umlomo wakhe, kwaye waqalisa ukuthetha nabo, esithi: Zihlobo zam nabazalwana bam, zalamane zam nabantu bam, ndinga kwakhona ndingamema ingqalelo yenu, ukuze nibe nokuva kwaye niyiqonde intsalela yamazwi am endiza kuwathetha kuni.
- 5 Kuba qaphelani, ukuba ulwazi ngokulunga kukaThixo ngalo eli lixa kunivuselele ekuyiqondeni imo yobungento benu, kwaye nemo yokungabi naxabiso nokuwa kwenu—
- 6 Ndithi kuni, ukuba nifikelele kulwazi ngokulunga kukaThixo, namandla akhe angenamlinganiselo, nobulumko bakhe, nomonde wakhe, nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe kubantwana babantu; kananjalo, nentlawulelo ethe yalungiselelwa ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ukuze ngayo usindiso lube nokuza kulowo uya kubeka ithemba lakhe eNkosini, kwaye akhuthale ekugcineni imiyalelo yakhe, kwaye aqhubeke elukholweni kude kube sekupheleni kobomi bakhe, ndithetha ubomi bomzimba ofayo—

## Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

- 7 Ndithi, lo nguye umntu ofumana usindiso, ngentlawulelo eyalungiselelwa uluntu lonke ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ababekho kwangexesha lokuwa kuka-Adam, okanye abakhoyo, okanye abaya kusoloko bekho, kwa nasekupheleni kwehlabathi.
- 8 Kwaye le yindlela oluza ngayo usindiso. Kwaye alukho olunye usindiso ngaphandle kolu sekuthethwe ngalo; kungekho nazimbi iimeko anokuthi umntu asindiswe ngazo ngaphandle kweemeko endinixelele ngazo.
- 9 Kholelwani kuThixo; kholelwani ukuba ukho, nokokuba wadala zonke izinto, ezulwini kunye nasemhlabeni; kholelwani ukuba unabo bonke ubulumko, nawo onke amandla, ezulwini kunye nasemhlabeni; kholelwani ukuba umntu akaziqondi zonke izinto iNkosi enokuziqonda.
- 10 Kwaye kwakhona, kholelwani ukuba kufuneka niguquke ezonweni zenu kwaye nizilahle, kwaye nizithobe phambi koThixo; kwaye nimcele ngokunyaniseka kwentliziyo ukuba anganixolela; kwaye ngoku, ukuba niyazikholelwa zonke ezi zinto bonani ukuba niyazenza.
- 11 Kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuni njengoko benditshilo ngaphambili, okokuba njengoko nifikelele kulwazi lozuko lukaThixo, okanye ukuba nazile ngokulunga kwakhe kwaye nangcamla kuthando lwakhe, kwaye nafumana uxolelo lwezono zenu, okunenza nibe novuyo olugqithisileyo emiphefumleni yenu, kananjalo ke ndinga ningakhumbula, kwaye nisoloko nibugcine ezinkumbulweni zenu ubukhulu bukaThixo, nobungento benu, nokulunga kwakhe nokuzeka kade umsindo kuni, zidalwandini ezingenaxabiso, kwaye nizithobe nangokuthobeka okunzulu, nilibiza igama leNkosi imihla yonke, kwaye nime nithe nkqi elukholweni loko kuya kuza, ekwakuthethwe ngomlomo wengelosi.
- 12 Kwaye qaphelani, ndithi kuni ukuba niyakwenza oku niya kuhlala nigcobile, kwaye nizaliswe luthando lukaThixo, kwaye nihlale nilugcinile uxolelo lwezono zenu; kwaye niya kukhula kulwazi lozuko lwakhe onidalileyo, okanye kulwazi lwako oko kububulungisa kwaye buyinyani.

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

- 13 Kwaye aniyi kuba nangqondo yakufuna ukwenzakalisana, kodwa niya kufuna ukuhlala ngoxolo, kwaye ninika wonke umntu ngokwemfanelo yakhe.
- 14 Kwaye aniyi kubavumela abantwana benu ukuba balambe, okanye babe ze; ningayi kubavumela ukuba bayone imithetho kaThixo, kwaye balwe kwaye baxabane omnye nomnye, kwaye basebenzele umtyholi, oyinkosi yesono, okanye ongumoya ongcolileyo ebekuthethwe ngawo ngoobawo bethu, yena elutshaba lwabo bonke ubulungisa.
- 15 Kodwa niya kubafundisa ukuba bahambe ezindleleni zenyano nondiliseko; niya kubafundisa ukuba bathandane, nokuba bancedane.
- 16 Kananjalo, nani ngokwenu niya kubanceda abo baludingayo uncedo lwenu; niya kunikela ngezinto zenu kulowo usweleyo; kwaye anisayi kuvumela ukuba umngqibi enze isicelo sakhe kuni ngelize, nize nimgxothele ngaphandle ukuba atshabalale.
- 17 Mhlawumbi uya kuthi: Lo mntu uzizisele ngokwakhe inkxwaleko phezu kwakhe; ke ngoko ndiza kusibamba isandla sam, kwaye andisayi kumnika ekutyeni kwam, ndingasayi kumnika ezintweni zam ukuze angabi nakuhlupheka, kuba izohlwayo zakhe zimlungile—
- 18 Kodwa ndithi kuni, Owu luntu, nabani na okwenzayo oku kwayena lowo unesizathu esikhulu sokuguquka; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba angaguquka kuloo nto ayenzileyo uya kutshabalala ngonaphakade, kwaye akanaso isabelo ebukumkanini bukaThixo.
- 19 Kuba qaphelani, asingabangqibi sonke na? Asixhomekekanga sonke kwa kwesi Siqu na kwa naye uThixo, kubo bonke ubutyebi esinabo, ngokutya nezambatho, nangegolide, nangesilivere, nangabo bonke ubutyebi esinabo balo lonke uhlobo?
- 20 Kwaye qaphelani, kwangalo eli lixa, benilibiza igama lakhe, kwaye nizicengela ukuba nixolelwe izono zenu. Kwaye ingaba uniyekele ukuba ningqibe ngelize? Hayi; uwuthulule uMoya wakhe phezu kwenu, kwaye wenza okokuba iintliziyi zenu zizaliswe luvuyo, kwaye wenze okokuba imilomo yenu ivalwe ukuze ningabi nakuthetha, babugqithise njalo ke ubukhulu bovuyo lwenu.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

- 21 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba uThixo, onidalileyo, enixhomekeke kuye ngobomi benu nangazo zonke izinto eninazo nenizizo, uyaninika nantoni na eniyicelalayo elungileyo, ngokholo, nikholelwa ukuba niya kuyifumana, Owu ke, bekufanele ukuba ninikele ngezinto zenu eninazo omnye komnye.
- 22 Kwaye ukuba niyamgweba umntu owenza isicelo sakhe kuni sezinto zenu ukuze angafi, nize ningwebe, siya kulunga kangakanani esenu isigwebo ngokubandeza izinto ezizezenu, ezingezizo zenu kodwa izezikaThixo, obomi benu kanjalo bubobakhe; kanti ke anenzi sicelo, ningaguquki nakuguquka ngento eniyenzileyo.
- 23 Ndithi kuni, yeha kuye loo mntu, kuba ubutyebi bakhe buya kutshabalala kunye naye; kwaye ngoku, ndizithetha ezi zinto kubo abo bazizityebi ngokuphathelele kwizinto zeli hlabathi.
- 24 Kwaye kwakhona, ndithi kwabo bangamahlwempu, nina ningenanto kanti ninako okwaneleyo, ukuze niphile umhla nomhla; ndizithetha abo bavimba umngqibi, kuba ningenanto; ndinga ningathi ezintliziyweni zenu: Andiphi ngenxa yokuba andinanto, kodwa ukuba bendinayo bendiya kupha.
- 25 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba nithetha oku ezintliziywenu zenu niya kuhlala ningenatyala, kungenjalo niya kugwetywa; kwaye isigwebo senu sinilungele kuba ninqwenela oko ningakunikwanga.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yezi zinto ndizithethileyo kuni—oko kukuthi, ngenxa yokufumana uxolelo lwezono zenu umhla nomhla, ukuze nihlale ningenatyala phambi koThixo—ndinga ninganikela ngezinto zenu kubo abangamahlwempu, wonke umntu ngokwento anayo, ezinje ngokudlisa abalambileyo, ukunxibisa abaze, ukuhambela imilwelwe kwaye nibanike ukuphumla, kunye emphefumleni nasenyameni, ngokweemfuno zabo.
- 27 Kwaye nibone ukuba zonke ezi zinto zenziwa ngobulumko nocwangco; kuba akuyomfuneko ukuba umntu abaleke ngaphezulu kunamandla akhe. Kwaye kwakhona, kufanele ukuba akhuthale, ukuze ngako abe nokuphumelela ukufumana umvuzo; ke ngoko, zonke izinto mazenziwe ngocwangco.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

- 28 Kwaye ndinga ningakhumbula, okokuba nabani na phakathi kwenu oboleka kummelwane wakhe umele ayibuyise into leyo ayibolekileyo, ngokwesivumelwano, okanye uya kuba wenza isono; kwaye mhlawumbi uya kumenza ummelwane wakho enze isono kanjalo.
- 29 Kwaye okokugqibela, andinako ukukuxelela zonke izinto onokuthi ngazo wenze isono; kuba kukho iindlela ezahlukileyo neentlobo, zininzi kangangokuba andinako nokuzibala.
- 30 Kodwa kangangoku ndinako ukunixelela, ukuba anizilumkeli, neengcinga zenu, namazwi enu, nezenzo zenu, kwaye niqwalasele ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye niqhubeke elukholweni lwayo into eniyivileyo ngokunxulumene nokuza kweNkosi, nokokude kube sekupheleni kobomi benu, kwakufuneka nitshabalale. Kwaye ngoku, Owu luntu, khumbulani, nize ningatshabalali.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

## Mozaya 5

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba xa ukumkani uBhenjamin enjenje ukuthetha nabantu bakhe, wathumela phakathi kwabo, enqwenela ukwazi kubantu bakhe ukuba bayakholelwa na kumazwi athe wawathetha kubo.
- 2 Kwaye badanduluka bonke ngezwi elinye, besithi: Ewe, siyawakholelwa onke amazwi othe wawathetha kuthi; kananjalo, siyazi ngokuqiniseka kwawo nobunyaniso bawo, ngenxa yoMoya weNkosi enaMandla Onke, owenze inguqu enzulu kuthi, okanye ezintliziyweni zethu, kangangkuba asinawo umnqweno wokwenza izenzo ezibi, kodwa ukwenza okulungileyo lonke ixesha.
- 3 Kwaye thina, ngokwethu, kanjalo, ngokulunga kukaThixo okungenasiphelo, neembonakaliso zoMoya wakhe, sineembono ezinkulu zoko kuya kuza; kwaye ukuba bekuyimfuneko, besingaprofetha ngezinto zonke.
- 4 Kwaye lukholo esibenalo kwizinto athe ukumkani wethu wazithetha kuthi ezisizise kolu lwazi lukhulu, ngalo ke siyavuya ngolo vuyokazi lukhulu ngokugqithisileyo.
- 5 Kwaye sizimisele ukungena kumnqophiso noThixo wethu ukuba senze intando yakhe, kwaye nokuba siyithobele imiyalelo yakhe kuzo zonke izinto aya kuthi asiyalele zona, yonke intsalela yemihla yethu, ukuze singazisiseli phezu kwethu intuthumbo engenasiphelo, njengoko bekuthethwe yingelosi, ukuze singaseli kwindebe yengqumbo kaThixo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, la ngamazwi ukumkani uBhenjamin awaye ewanqwenela kubo; waza ke ngoko wathi kubo: Nithethe amazwi ebe ndiwanqwenela, kwaye umnqophiso eniwenzileyo ngumnqophiso olungileyo.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yomnqophiso enithe nawenza niya kubizwa ngokuba ningabantwana bakaKrestu, oonyana bakhe, neentombi zakhe; kuba qaphelani, ngawo lo mhla unizele ngokwasemoyeni; kuba nithi iintliziyu zenu ziguqulwe ngokholo egameni lakhe; ke ngoko, nizelwe nguye kwaye nibe ngoonyana bakhe neentombi zakhe.

## Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

- 8 Kwaye ngaphantsi kwale ntloko nikhululwe, kwaye ayikho enye intloko eningakhululwa ngayo. Alikho elinye igama elinikiweyo elinokuza ngalo usindiso; ke ngoko, ndinga ningalithabathela kuni igama likaKrestu, nonke nina bathe bangena kumnqophiso noThixo ukuze nithobe kude kube sekupheleni kobomi benu.
- 9 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba nabanina okwenzayo oku uya kufunyanwa esesandleni sasekunene sikaThixo, kuba uya kulazi igama abizwa ngalo; kuba uya kubizwa ngegama likaKrestu.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku kuya kwenzeka, ukuba nabanina ongayi kulithabathela kuye igama likaKrestu kufuneka abizwe ngelinye igama; ke ngoko, uya kuzifumana engasesandleni sasekhohlo sikaThixo.
- 11 Kwaye ndinga ningakhumbula kanjalo, okokuba eli lilo igama endathi ndiya kuninika lona elingasokuze licinywe, ngaphandle kokuba kungokona; ke ngoko, nyamekelani ukuba ningoni, ukuze igama lingacinywa ezintliziyweni zenu.
- 12 Ndithi kuni, ndinga ningakhumbula ukuba lihlale libhaliwe igama ngamaxesha onke ezintliziyweni zenu, ukuze ningafunyanwa ningasesandleni sasekhohlo sikaThixo, kodwa nize nilive kwaye nilazi ilizwi eniya kubizwa ngalo, kananjalo, negama aya kunibiza ngalo.
- 13 Kuba umntu angayazi njani inkosi engakhange ayisebenzele, kwaye nengaqhelekanga kuye, kwaye ekude neengcinga kwaye nakwiimvakalelo zentliziyo yakhe?
- 14 Kwaye kwakhona, indoda ingalithabatha iesile elilelommelwane wayo, ize iligcine? Ndithi kuni, Hayi; ayinakho nokulivumela ukuba lidle phakathi kwemihlambi yayo, kodwa iya kuliqhubela kude, kwaye iligxothele ngaphandle. Ndithi kuni, nakuni kuya kuba njalo phakathi kwenu ukuba anilazi igama enibizwa ngalo.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Ke ngoko, ndinga ningazinza kwaye ningagungqi, nisoloko nizele yimisebenzi elungileyo, ukuze uKrestu, iNkosi uThixo onaMandla Onke, abe nokuntywina kuye, ukuze nisiswe ezulwini, ukuze nibe nokufumana usindiso lwanaphakade nobomi obungunaphakade, ngobulumko, namandla, nobulungisa, nenceba yakhe lowo wadala zonke izinto, ezulwini nasemhlabeni, onguThixo phezu konke. Amen.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.



## Mozaya 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, ukumkani uBhenjamin wacinga ukuba kuyimfuneko, emva kokuba egqibile ukuthetha nabantu, okokuba athabathe amagama abo bonke abo babenze umnqophiso noThixo wokuba bayigcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuzange kubekho namnye umphefumlo, ngaphandle kwabantwana abancinane, ongawenzanga umnqophiso kwaye bathabathela kubo igama likaKrestu.
- 3 Kwaye kwakhona, kwenzekile okokuba xa ukumkani uBhenjamin ephezile ngazo zonke ezi zinto, kwaye emisele nonyana wakhe uMozaya ukuba abe ngumlawuli nokumkani phezu kwabantu bakhe, kwaye wamnika yonke imiyalelo ngokunxulumene nobukumkani, kwaye kanjalo emisele ababingeleli ukuba bafundise abantu, ukuze ngabo babenakho ukuyiva kwaye nokuyazi imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye abashukumisele ekukhumbuleni isifungo ababesenzile, waye wasindulula isihlewele, kwaye babuyela, elowo, ngokweentsapho zabo, emizini yabo.
- 4 Kwaye uMozaya waqalisa ukulawula endaweni kayise. Kwaye waqalisa ukulawula emashumi mathathu eminyaka ubudala, into eyenza ngokupheleleyo, malunga namakhulu amane anamashumi asixhenxe anesithandathu eminyaka ukususela kwilixa uLihayi washiya elaseYerusalem.
- 5 Kwaye ukumkani uBhenjamin waphila iminyaka emithathu waza wafa.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uMozaya waye wahamba kuzo iindlela zeNkosi, kwaye wanyamekela ukuzigcina izigwebo zayo nemithetho yayo, kwaye wayigcina nemiyalelo yayo kuzo naziphina izinto ethe yamyalela zona.
- 7 Kwaye ukumkani uMozaya wabenza abantu bakhe ukuba balime umhlaba. Kwaye naye kanjalo, ngokwakhe, walima umhlaba, ukuze ngawo angabi ngumthwalo ebantwini bakhe, ukuze enze njengoko uyise wayesenza kuzo zonke izinto. Kwaye kwakungekho mbambano phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe kangangethuba leminyaka emithathu.

## Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

## Mozaya 7

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ukumkani uMozaya efumene uxolo rhoqo kangangeminyaka emithathu, waye wanqwenela ukuba abe nolwazi ngokunxulumene nabantu ababeye kuhlala kwilizwe lamaLihayi-Nifayi, okanye isixeko samaLihayi-Nifayi; kuba abantu bakhe bebengeva nto ngabo ukususela ngelixa abalishiyayo ilizwe laseZarahemla; ke ngoko, babemdinile ngokusoloko bemkhathaza.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uMozaya waxhinela ukuba amadoda alishumi elinesithandathu abo awomeleleyo abe nokunyuka aye kwilizwe lamaLihayi-Nifayi, ukuya kubuzisa ngokunxulumene nabazalwana babo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso baqalisa ukwenyuka, banaye phakathi kwabo omnye onguAmon, yena eyindoda eyomeleleyo kwaye enamandlakazi, kwaye eyinzalwana yaseZarahemla; kwaye waye eyinkokeli yabo kanjalo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku, babengayazi indlela ababemele ukuhamba ngayo entlango ukunyukela kwilizwe lamaLihayi-Nifayi; ke ngoko babhadula iintsuku ezininzi entlango, kangangokuba babhadula iintsuku ezingamashumi amane.
- 5 Kwaye emva kokuba bebhadule iintsuku ezingamashumi amane bafika endulini, esemantla elizwe laseShayilom, baza apho bagxumeka iintente zabo.
- 6 Kwaye uAmon wathabatha abathathu kubazalwana bakhe, kwaye amagama abo aye engoo Amalekayi, Helem, noHem, kwaye behla baya kulo ilizwe likaNifayi.
- 7 Kwaye qaphelani, baye bahlangana nokumkani wabantu ababekulo ilizwe likaNifayi, kwaye nelizwe likaShayilom; kwaye baye barhangqwa ngabalindi bakakumkani, baza bathatyathwa, baza babotshelwa, baza bafakwa entolongweni.

## Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

8 Kwaye kwenzekile xa babesentolongweni iintsuku ezimbini baya baziswa phambi kokumkani kwakhona, kwaye amakhamandela abo aye akhululwa; baza bema phambi kokumkani, baza bavunyelwa, okanye ngenye indlela bayalelwa, ukuba baphendule imibuzo awaye eza kuyibuza kubo.

9 Kwaye wathi kubo: Qaphelani, mna ndinguLimhayi, unyana kaNowa, owaye engunyana kaZenif, owenyukayo waphuma kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla ukuza kufumana njengelifa eli lizwe, elaye lililizwe looyise, owayenziwe ukumkani ngelizwi labantu.

10 Kwaye ngoku, ndinqwenela ukwazi imbangi yokuba ningabi naloyiko lokusondela kuzo iindonga zesixeko, xa mna, ngokwam, ndandinabalindi bam ngaphandle kwesango?

11 Kwaye ngoku, kungesi sizathu ukuba ndinivumele ukuba nisindiswe, ukuze ndibe nokuqonda kuni, okanye ndinge ndenza ukuba abalindi bam banibulale. Nivumelekile ke ukuba nithethe.

12 Kwaye ngoku, uAmon akubona ukuba uvumelekile ukuba athethe, waya phambili waza waqubuda phambi kokumkani; kwaye ephakamile kwakhona wathi: Owu kumkani, ndinombulelo omkhulu phambi koThixo ngalo mhla wokuba ndisaphila, kwaye ndivumelekile ukuba ndithethe; kwaye ndiza kuzama ukuba ndithethe ngokungenaloyiko;

13 Kuba ndiqinisekile okokuba ukuba ubundazile unge ungandiyekelanga ukuba ndifakwe la makhamandela. Kuba ndinguAmon, kwaye ndiyinzalwana yaseZarahemla, kwaye ndinyukile ndaphuma kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla ukuza kuqonda ngokunxulumene nabazalwana bethu, awathi uZenif wabazisa benyuka baphuma kulo ilizwe.

14 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uLimhayi ewavile amazwi ka-Amon, waba novuyo olugqithisileyo, waza wathi: Ngoku, ndiyazi ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba abazalwana bam ababekulo ilizwe laseZarahemla basaphila. Kwaye ngoku, ndiza kugcoba; kwaye ngengomso ndiya kwenza ukuba abantu bam bagcobe kanjalo.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

- 15 Kuba qaphelani, sisebukhobokeni kumaLeymenayithi, kwaye siyarhafiswa ngeerhafu ezibuhlungu ukuba singazithwala. Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, abazalwana bethu baza kusikhulula siphume ebukhobokeni, okanye siphume ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi, kwaye siya kuba ngamakhoboka abo; kuba kulungile ukuba sibe ngamakhoboka kumaNifayithi kunokuba sihlawule irhafu kukumkani wamaLeymenayithi.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku, ukumkani uLimhayi wayalela abalindi bakhe ukuba bangabe baphinde bambophelele uAmon okanye abazalwana bakhe, kodwa nangenxa yokuba kwakufuneka baye entabeni eyaye isemantla ayo iShayilom, kwaye babazise abazalwana babo esixekweni, ukuze ngaloo ndlela babe nokufumana ukutya, kwaye basele, kwaye baziphumze ebunzimeni bohambo lwabo; kuba babenyamezele izinto ezininzi; babenyamezele indlala, unxano, nokudinwa.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile ngengomso ukuba ukumkani uLimhayi wathumela isibhengezo phakathi kwabantu bakhe, ukuze ngaso babe nokuhlanganisana kunye etempileni, ukuze beve amazwi awayeza kuwathetha kubo.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba behlanganisene kunye waye wathetha nabo ngolu hlobo, esithi: Owu nina, bantu bam, ziphakamiseni iintloko zenu kwaye nithuthuzeleke; kuba qaphelani, ilixa selikufuphi, okanye alimgama mde, lokuba singayi kube siphinde sibe phantsi kwempatho yeentshaba zethu, nangona sineenzima ezininzi, ebe zililize; kodwa ndinethemba lokokuba kusekho inzima eya kusebenza ekufuneka siyenzile.
- 19 Ke ngoku, ziphakamiseni iintloko zenu, kwaye nigcobe, kwaye nibeke ithemba lenu kuThixo, kuloo Thixo owaye enguThixo ka-Abraham, noIsake, noYakobi; kananjalo, loo Thixo owazisa abantwana bakaSirayeli ebakhupha kulo ilizwe laseYiputa, kwaye wenza ukuba babe nokuhamba banqumle uLwandle oluBomvu emhlabeni owomileyo, kwaye wabondla ngemana ukuze bangabi nakufa entlango; kwaye nezinye izinto ezininzi awabenzela zona.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

20 Kwaye kwakhona, kwayena looThixo wabazisa oobawo bethu ebakhupha kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, kwaye ubagcinile kwaye wabalondoloza abantu bakhe kwade kwaba ngoku; kwaye qaphelani, kungenxa yobugwenxa namasikizi ethu ukuba asizise ebukhobokeni.

21 Kwaye nina nonke ningamangqina ngalo mhla, ukuba uZenif, owaye enziwe ukumkani phezu kwaba bantu, yena ke wabe ekungxamele ngokungaphezulu ukulifumana njengelifa ilizwe looyise bakhe, ke ngoko elahlekiswe ngobuqhinga nobuqhetseba bukakumkani uLeymeni, owathi ekubeni engena kwisivumelwano nokumkani uZenif, kwaye ekubeni enikezele ezandleni zakhe ngolawulo oluyinxenye yelizwe, okanye kwanaso isixeko samaLihayi-Nifayi, nesixeko saseShayilom; nomhlaba orhangqileyo—

22 Kwaye konke oku wakwenza, ngesizathu esisodwa sokuzisa aba bantu phantsi okwempatho yakhe okanye ebukhobokeni. Kwaye qaphelani, thina ngalo eli lixa sihlawula irhafu kuye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi, isixa esi sisiqingatha sombona wethu, nerhasi yethu, kwaye nazo zonke iinkozo zethu zazo zonke iindidi, nesiqingatha sengeniso yempahla emfutshane yethu nemihlambi neenkomo zethu; kwa nesiqingatha sako konke okwethu okanye esinako asinyanzelisa ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi ukuba simnike kona okanye ubomi bethu.

23 Kwaye ngoku, ingaba oku akubuhlungwanga na ukukunyamezela? Kwaye oku akuyiyo na imbandezelo yethu, enkulu? Ngoku qaphelani, ukuba sikhulu kwesizathu sokuba sibe lusizi.

24 Ewe, ndithi kuni, zikhulu izizathu esinazo zokuba sibe lusizi; kuba qaphelani bangaphi na abazalwana bethu ababuleweyo, negazi labo liphallalele ilize, kwaye konke kungenxa yobugwenxa.

25 Kuba ukuba aba bantu babengawelanga ekoneni iNkosi inge ingasiyekelanga ukuba obububi bukhulu buze phezu kwabo. Kodwa qaphelani, babengawaphulaphuli amazwi akhe; kodwa kwasuka kwavuka iimbambano phakathi kwabo, kangangokuba bade baphalaza igazi ngaphakathi kwabo.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being overzealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

- 26 Kwaye bambulele umprofeti weNkosi; ewe, indoda enyuliweyo kaThixo, eyabaxelela ngenkohlakalo namasikizi abo, kwaye waprofetha nangezinto ezininzi ezisezayo, ewe, kwa nokuza kukaKrestu.
- 27 Kwaye ngenxa yokokuba wathi kubo uKrestu waye enguThixo, uYise wazo zonke izinto, kwaye wathi uya kuthabathela kuye imfano yomntu, kwaye iya kuba yimfano enjengaleyo umntu wadalwa ngayo ekuqalekeni; okanye ngamanye amazwi, wathi umntu wadalwa ngemfano kaThixo, kwaye nokokuba uThixo uya kuhla eze phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kwaye athabathele kuye umzimba wenyama negazi, kwaye aye phambili phezu kobuso bomhlaba—
- 28 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokuba wathetha oku, baye bambulala; kwaye zininzi nezinye izinto abazenzayo ezabazisela ingqumbo kaThixo phezu kwabo. Ke ngoko, ngubani omangaliswayo ukuba babe sebukhobokeni, nokokuba babethwa ngeembandezelo ezibuhlungu?
- 29 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi ithe: Andiyi kubanika ncedo abantu bam ngomhla wokona kwabo; kodwa ndiya kuzibiyela iindlela zabo ukuze bangaphumeleli; nezenzo zabo ziya kuba njengesikhubekiso phambi kwabo.
- 30 Kwaye kwakhona, uthi: Ukuba abantu bam baya kuhlwayela ubunyhuku-nyhuku baya kuvuna umququ wabo esaqhwithini; kwaye isiphumo soko yityhefu.
- 31 Kwaye kwakhona uthi: Ukuba abantu bam baya kuhlwayela ubunyhuku-nyhuku baya kuvuna umoya wasempuma, ozisa intshabalalo ekhawulezileyo.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, isithembiso seNkosi sizalisekile, kwaye niyabethwa kwaye nibandezeleka.
- 33 Kodwa ukuba niya kuguqukela eNkosini ngenjongo ephелеleyo yentliziyo, kwaye nibeke ithemba lenu kuyo, kwaye nimsebenzele ngenkuthalo yonke yengqondo, ukuba niya kwenza oku, uya kunikhupha, ngokwentando yakhe nolonwabo, niphume ebukhobokeni.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.

## Mozaya 8

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ukumkani uLimhayi ephezile ukuthetha kubantu bakhe, kuba wathetha izinto ezininzi kubo kwaye zezimbalwa kuphela endithe ndazibhala kuyo le ncwadi, wabaxelela abantu bakhe zonke izinto ezinxulumene nabazalwana babo ababeselizweni laseZarahemla.
- 2 Kwaye wenza ukuba uAmon aphakame eme phambi kwaso isihlwele, ababalisele konke okwenzekayo kubazalwana babo ukususela ngelixa uZenif wenyukayo waphuma kulo ilizwe kwade kwaba lilixa athe yena ngokwakhe athe wenyuka waphuma elizweni.
- 3 Kwaye wababalisele kanjalo ngamazwi okugqibela awathi wabafundisa wona ukumkani uBenjamin, kwaye wawacacisa kubo abantu bakakumkani uLimhayi, ukuze babenako ukuwaqonda onke amazwi athe wawathetha.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ekwenzile konke oku, ukumkani uLimhayi waye wasindulula isihlwele, wenza ukuba sibuyele sonke elowo kowakhe umzi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wenza ukuba amacwecwe awayequlethe imbali yabantu bakhe ukususela kwilixa abathi balishiya ilizwe laseZarahemla, aziswe phambi kuka-Amon, ukuze abe nokuwafunda.
- 6 Ngoku, kwakamsinyane akuba eyifundile uAmon imbali, ukumkani wanqwenela ukwazi kuye ukuba anganako na ukuzitolika iilwimi, waza uAmon wamxelela ukuba wayengenako.
- 7 Kwaye ukumkani wathi kuye: Ndisentlungwini ngeembandezelo zabantu bam, ndenza ukuba abangamashumi amane anesithathu abantu bam bathabathe uhambo olusinga entlango, ukuze ngaloo ndlela babe nokufumana ilizwe laseZarahemla, ukuze sibe nokubhenela kubazalwana bethu ukuba basikhulule siphume ebukhobokeni.

## Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

8 Kwaye baye balahleka entlango kangangethuba leentsuku ezininzi, kanti ke babenenkuthalo, kwaye abalifumana ilizwe laseZarahemla kodwa babuyela kweli lizwe, bakuba behambe elizweni phakathi kwamanzi amaninzi, bakuba befumene ilizwe elaye lizaliswe ngamathambo abantu, nawezilwanyana, kananjalo lalizaliswe ziindonga zezakhiwo zazo zonke iintlobo, bakuba befumene ilizwe elalihlala abantu ababeyintlaninge njengemikhosi kaSirayeli.

9 Kwaye nje ngobungqina bokuba izinto abathe bazithetha ziyinyani baze namacwecwe angamashumi amabini azele yimikrolo, kwaye ngawegolide ecwengileyo.

10 Kwaye qaphelani, kanjalo, baze neengcina-sifuba, ezinkulu, nezobhedu nezekopolo, kwaye zikwisimo esigqibeleleyo.

11 Kwaye kwakhona, baze namakrele, iziphatho zawo ziphelile, nokutya kwawo kudlekile ngumhlwa; kwaye akukho mntu elizweni onako ukutolika ulwimi okanye imikrolo esemacwecweni. Ke ngoko ndithe kuwe: Akunako na ukuwatolika?

12 Kwaye ndithi kuwe kwakhona: Ukhona na umntu omaziyo onako ukuwatolika? Kuba ndinqwenela ukuba ezi mbali ziguqulelwe kulwimi lwethu; kuba, mhlawumbi, aya kusinika ulwazi ngentsalela yababantu abatshatyalalisiweyo, apho ezi mbali zisuka khona; okanye, mhlawumbi, aya kusinika ulwazi ngabo kanye aba bantu batshatyalalisiweyo; kwaye ndinqwenela nokwazi ngonobangela wentshabalalo yabo.

13 Ngoku uAmon wathi kuye: Ngokuqinisekileyo ndingakuxelela, Owu kumkani, ngendoda enako ukuzitolika iimbali; kuba inazo izinto enokukhangela ngazo, kwaye iziguqule ngazo zonke iimbali zemihla yamandulo; kwaye zisisipho esivela kuThixo. Kwaye izinto ezo zibizwa ngokuba zizitoliki, kwaye akukho mntu unako ukukhangela kuzo ngaphandle kokuba abe uyalelwe ukuba awakhangele, hleze akhangele into angamelanga kuyikhangela aze afe. Kwaye nabani na oyalelweyo ukuba akhangele kuzo, yena lowo ubizwa ngokuba uyimboni.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.



- 14 Kwaye qaphela, ukumkani wabantu abakulo ilizwe laseZarahemla nguye indoda eyalelweyo ukuba yenze ezi zinto, kwaye nenaso esi siphosiphakamileyo sivela kuThixo.
- 15 Kwaye ukumkani wathi imboni ingaphezulu kunomprofeti.
- 16 Kwaye uAmon wathi imboni ingumtyhili-zibhalo nomprofeti kanjalo; kwaye isiphosiphaphezu koko akukho mntu unokubanaso, ngaphandle kokuba angaba namandla kaThixo, ekungekho mntu unokuba nawo; kanti ke umntu anganawo amandla amakhulu awanikiweyo avela kuThixo.
- 17 Kodwa imboni inako ukwazi ngezinto ezidluleyo, kananjalo nangezinto ezisezayo, kwaye ngabo zonke izinto ziya kutyhilwa, okanye, ngenye indlela, izinto ezifihlakeleyo ziya kwenziwa ukuba zibonakale, kwaye izinto ezifihliweyo ziya kuza ekukhanyeni, nezinto ezingaziwayo ziya kwenziwa ukuba zaziwe ngabo, kananjalo ziya kwaziswa nezinto ebezingenakho ngenye indlela ukuba zingaziwa.
- 18 Njalo uThixo uyilungiselele indlela yokuba umntu, ngokholo, abe nokwenza imimangaliso emikhulu; ke ngoko uba luncedo olukhulu kwabanye abantu.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uAmon ephezile ukuthetha la mazwi ukumkani wagcoba ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye wanikela imibulelo kuThixo, esithi: Ngaphandle kwamathandabuzo inkulu imfihlelo equlethwe ngaphakathi kwala macwecwe, kwaye ezi zitoliki zazilungiselelwe ngaphandle kwamathandabuzo ngenjongo yokusombulala zonke iimfihlelo ezinje kubantwana babantu.
- 20 Owu hayi ukumangalisa kwemisebenzi yeNkosi, kwaye kukangakanani na ebanyamezele abantu bakhe; ewe, kwaye bukanakanani na ubumfama nokungafikeleleki kweengqiqo zabantwana babantu; kuba abayi kubufuna ubulumko, benganqweneli nokokuba bubalawule!
- 21 Ewe, banjengomhlambi onganqandekiyo obalekayo kumalusi, kwaye othe saa, noqhutywayo, uze uqwengwe zizilo zehlathi.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he cometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

*IMBALI KAZENIF—Nengxelo yabantu bakbe, ukususela kwixesha abalishiyayo elaseZarahemla kude kube lixesha abathi bakbulukwa baphuma ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi.*

## Mozaya 9

- 1 Mna, Zenif, ekubeni ndifundisiwe ngazo zonke iilwimi zamaNifayithi, kwaye ndinolwazi ngelizwe likaNifayi, okanye ngelizwe lelifa lokuqala loo bawo bethu, kwaye bendikhe ndathunywa njengentlola phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi ukuze ndibe nokuhlola imikhosi yawo, ukuze umkhosi wethu ube nokufika phezu kwawo kwaye siwatshalalise—kodwa ndathi ndakubona oko kwakukuhle kubo ndanqwenela ukuba bangabi satshatyalaliswa.
- 2 Ke ngoko, ndaxoxisana nabazalwana bam entlango, kuba ndandinga umlawuli wethu angenza isivumelwano kunye nabo; kodwa yena engumntu olukhuni kwaye eyindoda enxanelwe igazi wayalela ukuba ndibulawe; kodwa ndahlangukwa kukuphalazeka kwegazi elininzi; kuba ubawo walwa nobawo, kwaye nomkhuluwa nomninawa, kwade kwaba inani elikhulu lomkhosi wethu litshatyalalisiwe entlango; saza sabuya, abo bethu abathi basinda, sibuyela kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, ukuze silibalise elo bali kubafazi babo nabantwana babo.
- 3 Kananjalo, mna ndixhinele ukufumana njengelifa ilizwe loo bawo bethu, ndaqokelela abaninzi kangangoko babenqwena ukunyuka ukuya kuthabathela kuthi ilizwe, kwaye saqalisa kwakhona kuhambo lwethu ukusinga entlango ukuze sinyukele kulo ilizwe; kodwa saye sabethwa yindlala neembandezelo ezibuhlungu; kuba sasithatha kade ukukhumbula iNkosi uThixo wethu.
- 4 Nangona kunjalo, emva kweentsuku ezininzi sibhadula entlango saye sazigxumeka iintente zethu kwindawo leyo abazalwana bethu babebulewe kuyo, eyaye ikufuphi nelizwe loo bawo bethu.

*THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.*

## Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndahamba kwakhona nabane bamadoda wam ndangena kuso isixeko, ndangena kuye ukumkani, ukuze ndibe nokwazi ngezimvo zokumkani, kwaye nokuba ndibe nokwazi okokuba ndinganako na ukungena nabantu bam ukuze silithabathele kuthi ilizwe ngoxolo.
- 6 Kwaye ndangena ngaphakathi kuye ukumkani, kwaye wanqophisana nam ukuba ndibe nako ukulithabathela kuthi ilizwe lamaLihayi-Nifayi, nelizwe laseShayilom.
- 7 Kananjalo wayalela ukuba abantu bakhe bemke baphume elizweni, kwaye mna nabantu bam sangena elizweni ukuze sibe nokulithabathela kuthi.
- 8 Kwaye saqalisa ukwakha izakhiwo, kwaye nokulungisa iindonga zesixeko, ewe, kwanazo iindonga zesixeko zamaLihayi-Nifayi, nesixeko saseShayilom.
- 9 Kwaye saqalisa ukuwulima umhlaba, ewe, nangazo zonke iintlobo zeembewu, ngeembewu zokuziinkozo, neyengqolowa, neyerhasi, kunye neyenyus, neyeshyum, kwaye neembewu zazo zonke iintlobo zeziqhamo; kwaye saqalisa ukuqhama nokuphumelela elizweni.
- 10 Ngoku kwakungamaqhinga nobuqhetseba bukakumkani uLeymeni, ukuze azise abantu bam ebukhobokeni, kuba wanikezela ilizwe ukuze silithabathele kuthi.
- 11 Ke ngoko kwenzekile, okokuba emva kokuba sihleli kulo ilizwe kangangethuba leminyaka elishumi elinambini ukumkani uLeymeni waqalisa ukuba anxube, hleze abantu bam nangayiphi na indlela babe nokomelela elizweni, nokuba babengayi kubanako ukubongamela baze babazise ebukhobokeni.
- 12 Ngoku babengabantu abonqenayo nabantu abanqula izithixo; ke ngoko babenqwenela ukusizisa ebukhobokeni, ukuze babe nokuzingxala ngentsebenzo yezandla zethu; ewe, ukuze babe nokuzondla ngemihlambi yamadlelo ethu.
- 13 Ke ngoko kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uLeymeni waqalisa ukubavuselela abantu bakhe ukuze babambane kunye nabantu bam, ke ngoko kwaqalisa ukubakho iimfazwe neembambano elizweni.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

- 14 Kuba, ngonyaka weshumi elinantathu wolawulo lwam kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, kude emazantsi elizwe laseShayilom, xa abantu bam babeseza kwaye bedlisa imihlambi yabo, kwaye belima nemihlaba yabo, indimbane yemikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yabafikela kwaye yaqalisa ukubabulala, kwaye bethabatha nemihlambi yabo, nokuziinkozo zamasimi abo.
- 15 Ewe, kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babaleka, bonke abo bangazange bafunyanwe, bebalekela kwisixeko sikaNifayi kwaye baye bacela kum ukhuseleko.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabaxhobisa ngezaphetha, nangeentolo, ngamakrele, nangamakrelana amancinane angamagwegwe nangamagqudu, nangezilingi, nangazo zonke iintlobo zezikhali esasinako ukuzenza, kwaye mna nabantu bam saye sabheka phambili ngokuchasene nawo amaLeymenayithi ukuba silwe idabi.
- 17 Ewe, emandleni eNkosi saye sabheka phambili ukuya kulwa idabi ngokuchasene nawo amaLeymenayithi; kuba mna nabantu bam saye sadanduluka ngamandlakazi eNkosini ukuba isincede siphume ezandleni zeentshaba zethu, kuba saye savuselwa kwiinkumbulo zokwesaba koobawo bethu.
- 18 Kwaye uThixo waziva izikhalo zethu kwaye wayiva nemithandazo yethu; kwaye sabheka phambili kumandlakazi akhe; ewe, saye sabheka phambili ngokuchasene nawo amaLeymenayithi, kwaye ngosuku olunye nobusuku saye sabulala amawaka amathathu anamashumi amane anesithathu; saye sawabulala sade sawaqhubela ngaphandle kwelizwe lethu.
- 19 Kwaye mna, ngokwam, ngezandla zam, ndaye ndancedisa ukubangcwaba abafileyo babo. Kwaye qaphelani, elusizini lwethu olukhulu nesijwili, amakhulu amabini anamashumi asixhenxe anesithoba abazalwana bethu abulawa.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows, and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters, and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons which we could invent, and I and my people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our brethren were slain.

## Mozaya 10

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sathi kwakhona sabumisa ubukumkani kwaye kwakhona saqalisa ukulithabathela kuthi ilizwe ngoxolo. Kwaye ndenza ukuba kubekho izikhali zemfazwe ezenziwayo zalo lonke uhlobo, ukuze ngazo ndibe nokuba nezikhali zabantu bam ukwenzela ixesha anokuthi amaLeymenayithi kwakhona aze kuthi ukuze alwe imfazwe nabantu bam.
- 2 Kwaye ndabeka abalindi barhangqe ilizwe, ukuze amaLeymenayithi angabinako ukusifikela kwakhona singalindelanga aze asitshabalalise; kanaanjalo ndabakhusela abantu bam nemihlambi yam, kwaye ndabagcina bangaweli ezandleni zeentshaba zethu.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye salifumana njengelifa ilizwe loobawo bethu iminyaka emininzi, ewe, kangangethuba leminyaka engamashumi amabini anambini.
- 4 Kwaye ndaye ndawenza amadoda ukuba awulime umhlaba, kwaye bahlumise lonke uhlobo lweenkozo kwanalo lonke uhlobo lweziqhamo zazo zonke iindidi.
- 5 Kwaye ndaye ndenza okokuba abafazi basonte, kwaye babulaleke, kwaye basebenze, baze basebenze lonke uhlobo lwelineni ecwengileyo, ewe, nelaphu lwalo lonke udidi, ukuze sambese ubuze bethu; kanaanjalo saye saphumelela elizweni—njalo saye saqhubeka sinoxolo elizweni kangangethuba leminyaka engamashumi amabini anambini.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uLeymeni waye wafa, kwaye unyana wakhe waqalisa ukulawula esikhundleni sakhe. Kwaye waqalisa ukubavuselela abantu bakhe kwimvukelo ngokuchasene nabantu bam; ke ngoko baqalisa ukulungiselela imfazwe, kwaye nokokuba basifikele ukuze balwe ngokuchasene nabantu bam.
- 7 Kodwa ndandithumele iintlola zam zarhangqa ilizwe laseShemloni, ukuze ndifumanise ngamalungiselelo abo, ukuze ndibe nokuzikhusela kubo, ukuze bangabi nakubafikela abantu bam baze babatshabalalise.

## Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba beza phezu komntla welizwe laseShayilom, nendimbane yemikhosi yabo, amadoda exhobe ngezaphetha, nangeentolo, nangamakrele, nangamakrelana abugwegwe, nangamatye, nangezilingi; kwaye babezichebile iintloko zabo ukuze zibe ze; kwaye babebhinqe umbhinqo wesikhumba ojikeleze izinqe zabo.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndenza ukuba abafazi nabantwana babantu bam bazinyeliswe entlango; kwaye ndenza kananjalo okokuba onke amadoda amadala awaye enakho ukuphakamisa izikhali, kwaye nawo onke amagatyana abafana awaye enakho ukuphakamisa izikhali, bahlanganisane kunye ukuya kulwa namaLeymenayithi; kwaye ndababeka ngokwezintlu zabo, umntu ngamnye ngokobudala bakhe.

10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye senyuka ukuya kulwa namaLeymenayithi, kwaye mna, nam ngokwam, ebudaleni bam, ndenyuka ukuya kulwa namaLeymenayithi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye senyuka sisemandleni eNkosi ukuya kulwa.

11 Ngoku, amaLeymenayithi ayengazinto ngokunxulumene neNkosi, namandla eNkosi, ke ngoko ayexhomekeke kwawawo amandla. Kanti ke ayengabantu abomeleleyo, ngokokomelela kwamadoda.

12 Ayengabantu abandlongondlongo, kwaye enoburhalarhume, kwaye engabantu abanxanelwe igazi, ekholelwa kwisithethe sooyise, esisesi—Ekholelwa ekubeni ayeqhutyelwe ngaphandle kwelizwe laseYerusalem ngenxa yobugwenxa booyise, nokokuba ayengaphathekanga kakuhle entlango ngabazalwana awo, kananjalo ayengaphathekanga kakuhle xa ayewela ulwandle;

13 Kwaye kwakhona, nokokuba ayengaphathekanga kakuhle ngelixa ayekulo ilizwe lokuqala lelifa lawo, emva kokuba eliwelile ulwandle, kwaye konke oku kungenxa yokokuba uNifayi wayenyaniseke ngakumbi ekugcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi—ke ngoko wayesikelelwe ngakumbi yiNkosi, kuba iNkosi yayiva imithandazo yakhe yaze yayiphendula, kwaye waba nokulukhokela uhambo lwabo entlango.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

- 14 Kwaye abakhuluwa bakhe babenomsindo ngakuye ngenxa yokuba babengaziqondi iinkqubo zeNkosi; babenomsindo ngakuye kanjalo phezu kwamanzi ngenxa yokuba babeziqaqadekisile iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene neNkosi.
- 15 Kwaye kwakhona, babenomsindo ngakuye xa babefika kwilizwe lesithembiso, ngenxa yokuba babesithi uluthabathile ulawulo lwabantu ezandleni zabo, kwaye babezama ukumbulala.
- 16 Kwaye kwakhona, babenomsindo ngakuye ngenxa yokokuba waye wahamba wasinga entlango njengokuba iNkosi yayimyalele, kwaye wazithabatha iimbali ezazikrolwe kumacwecwe obhedu, kuba babesithi uzibe kubo.
- 17 Kwaye njalo babafundisa abantwana babo ukuze babathiye, kwaye nokokuba bababulale kwaye nokokuba bababele kwaye babaphange, kwaye benze konke ababenako ukuba-tshabalalisa; ke ngoko babenentiyo yanaphakade kuyo inzala kaNifayi.
- 18 Kungesi sizathu kanye ukumkani uLeymeni, ngamaqhinga akhe, nobuxoki bobuqhetseba, nezithembiso zakhe ezincumisayo, wandikhohlisayo, ukuba ndibazise abantu bam benyuke beze kweli lizwe, ukuze babatshalalise, ewe, kwaye saye sabandezeleka kuyo le minyaka mininzi elizweni.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku mna, Zeniff, emva kokuba ndizixelile zonke ezi zinto kubo abantu bam ngokunxulumene namaLeymenayithi, ndaye ndabakhuthaza ukuba baye edabini ngamandlakazi abo, bebeke ithemba labo eNkosini; ke ngoko, saye sabambana nawo, ubuso ngobuso.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sawaqhubela ngaphandle kwelizwe lethu kwakhona; kwaye sawabulala ngokuwaxhela kanobom, abamaninzi kangangokuba sasingenako nokuwabala.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sabuyela kwakhona kwelethu ilizwe nabantu bam kwakhona baqalisa ukwalusa imihlambi yabo, nokulima umhlaba wabo.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku mna, ndimdala, ndaye ndabunikezela ubukumkani phezu komnye woonyana bam; ke ngoko, akukho kumbi endikuthethayo. Kwaye yanga iNkosi ingabasikelela abantu bam. Amen.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraved on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

## Mozaya 11

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uZenif anikezele ubukumkani phezu kukaNowa, omnye woonyana bakhe; ke ngoko uNowa waqalisa ukulawula esikhundleni sakhe; kwaye akazange ahambe ekhondweni likayise.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, akazange ayigcine imiyalelo kaThixo, kodwa waye walandela iminqweno yentliziyo yakhe. Kwaye waba nabafazi abaninzi namashweshwe. Kwaye waye wabenza abantu bakhe ukuba benze isono, kwaye benze oku kwakumasikizi emehlweni eNkosi. Ewe, kwaye benza uhenyuzo nalo lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo.
- 3 Kwaye wabarhafisa irhafu yesinye kwisihlanu senxalenye yayo yonke into ababenayo, isinye kwisihlanu senxalenye yegolide yabo neyesilivere yabo, nesinye kwisihlanu senxalenye yesinye yesimbiwa sabo esiyi zif, nesekopolo yabo, neyobhedu neyesinyithi sabo; nesinye kwisihlanu senxalenye yemfuyo yabo emfutshane; kananjalo nesinye kwisihlanu senxalenye yazo zonke iinkozo zabo.
- 4 Kwaye konke oku wakuthabatha ukuze azixhase yena, nabafazi bakhe namashweshwe akhe; nababingeleli bakhe kanjalo, nabafazi babo namashweshwe abo; njalo ke wathi wayiguqula imicimbi yobukumkani.
- 5 Kuba wabathoba bonke ababingeleli ababemiselwe nguyise, kwaye wamisela abatsha ezikhundleni zabo, udidi olwaluphakamile ngekratshi leentliziyo zabo.
- 6 Ewe, njalo babexhaswa kubunqenerha babo, kwaye nasekunquleni izithixo kwabo, kwaye nasekuhenyuzeni kwabo, ngeerhafu awathi ukumkani uNowa wazibeka phezu kwabo abantu bakhe; njalo ke abantu basebenza ngokugqithisileyo ekuxhaseni ubugwenxa.
- 7 Ewe, kananjalo baba ngabanquli bezithixo, ngenxa yokuba babelahlekiswe bubungento namazwi anyhwalazayo okumkani nababingeleli; kuba babethetha izinto ezinyhwalazayo kubo.

## Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.



- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uNowa akhe izakhiwo ezihle neziphangaleleyo; kwaye wazihombisa ngemisebenzi ecwengileyo yomthi, nangazo zonke iintlobo zezinto zexabiso, ezegolide nezesilivere, nezesinyithi, nezobhedu, nezezif, nezekopolo;
- 9 Kwaye wazakhela kanjalo ibhotwe eliphangaleleyo, netrone embindini walo, yonke loo nto yayiyeyomthi wodidi oluphezulu kwaye yayihonjiswe ngegolide nesilivere nangazo izinto ezixabisekileyo.
- 10 Kwaye wenza kanjalo ukuba abasebenzi bakhe basebenze lonke uhlobo lomsebenzi wodidi oluphezulu ngaphakathi kweendonga zetempile, ngomthi wodidi oluphezulu, nowekopolo, nowobhedu.
- 11 Kwaye nezihlalo ezazibekelwe bucala ukusetyenziswa ngababingeleli abakhulu, ezazingaphezulu kunazo zonke ezinye izihlalo, waye wazihombisa ngegolide ecwengileyo; kwaye wenza nokokuba kwakhiwe umvalo phambi kwabo okuphakama kwawo kuma esifubeni, ukuze babe nokuphumza imizimba yabo neengalo zabo phezu kwawo xa babeza kuthetha ubuxoki namazwi angento kubo abantu bakhe.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wakha inkcochoyi kufuphi netempile; ewe, inkcochoyi ephakame kakhulu, ephakame kangangokuba waye enako ukuma phezu kwencopho yayo aze alivelele ilizwe laseShayilom, kwa nelizwe laseShemloni, elalimiwe ngamaLeymenayithi; kwaye wayenako kwanokubona kulo lonke ilizwe elalimrhangqile.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wenza ukuba kwakhiwe izakhiwo ezininzi elizweni laseShayilom; kwaye wenza ukuba kwakhiwe inkcochoyi ephakame kakhulu entabeni esemantla elizwe laseShayilom, elaye liyindawo yokwesabela yabantwana bakaNifayi ngelixa ababesaba bephuma elizweni; kwaye wenza njalo ke ngobutyebi awabuzuzo ngokurhafisa abantu bakhe.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabeka intliziyo yakhe phezu kobutyebi bakhe, kwaye walichitha ixesha lakhe ephila ndlongondlongo kunye nabafazi bakhe namashweshwe akhe; kananjalo ababingeleli bakhe balichitha ixesha labo namahenyukazi.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba watyala izidiliya kulo lonke ilizwe; kwaye wakha nezixovule, kwaye wenza iwayini ngobuninzi; kwaye ke ngoko waba liselawayini, kwaye nabantu bakhe kanjalo.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukubafikela abantu bakhe, efikela amanani amancinane, kwaye ebulalela emasimini abo, kwaye nangeli lixa baluse imihlambi yabo.

17 Kwaye ukumkani uNowa wathumela abalindi kwiindawo ngeendawo zelizwe ukuwagcina kude; kodwa akazange athumele nani laneleyo, kwaye amaLeymenayithi abafikela kwaye ababulala, kwaye ayiqhubela ngaphandle kwelizwe nemihlambi yabo emininzi; njalo amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukubatshabalalisa, nokuyisebenzisa intiyo yawo kubo.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uNowa wathumela imikhosi yakhe ngokuchasene nawo, kwaye aqhutyelwa emva, okanye bawaqhubela emva okwexeshana; ke ngoko, babuya begcobile ngexhoba labo.

19 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yolu loyiso lukhulu babephakamile likratshi leentliziyo zabo; baye bazigwagwisa ngokomelela kwabo, besithi amashumi amahlanu abo angamelana namawaka amaLeymenayithi; kanjalo bazigwagwisa, kwaye babesonwatyiswa ligazi, nasekuphalazeni igazi labazalwana babo, kwaye oku kwakungenxa yenkohlakalo yokumkani wabo nababingeleli.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho indoda phakathi kwabo egama layo lalinguAbhinadayi; kwaye yabheka phambili phakathi kwabo, kwaye yaqalisa ukuprofetha, isithi: Qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi, kwaye indiyalele kanje, isithi: Bheka phambili, kwaye uthi kwaba bantu, itsho njalo iNkosi—Yeha phezu kwaba bantu, kuba ndiwabonile amasikizi abo, nenkohlakalo yabo, nohenyuzo lwabo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ndiya kubahambela ngomsindo wam.

21 Kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baguquke kwaye baguqukele eNkosini uThixo wabo, qaphelani, ndiya kubanikezela ezandleni zeentshaba zabo; ewe, kwaye baya kuziswa ebukhobokeni; kwaye baya kubandezeleka ngesandla seentshaba zabo.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

- 22 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba baya kukwazi okokuba ndiyiNkosi uThixo wabo, kwaye ndinguthixo onekhwele, ndiyabuvela ubugwenxa babantu bam.
- 23 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba ngaphandle kokuba aba bantu baguquke kwaye baguqukele kuyo iNkosi uThixo waso, baya kuziswa ebukhobokeni; kwaye akukho bani uya kubakhulula, ngaphandle kokuba kube yiNkosi uThixo uSomandla.
- 24 Ewe, kuya kwenzeka okokuba xa beya kukhala kum ndiya kucotha ukuziva izikhalo zabo; ewe, kwaye ndiya kubayekela ukuba babethwe ziintshaba zabo.
- 25 Kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ngeengubo ezirhwexayo nothuthu, kwaye bakhale ngamandlakazi kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo, andisayi kuyiva imithandazo yabo, ndingasayi kubakhulula baphume kwiimbandezelo zabo; kwaye itsho njalo iNkosi, kwaye indiyalele njalo.
- 26 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAbhinadayi ewathethile la mazwi kubo baba nomsindo ngakuye, kwaye bafuna ukuthabatha ubomi bakhe; kodwa iNkosi yamkhulula waphuncuka ezandleni zabo.
- 27 Ngoku akuba ukumkani uNowa evile ngamazwi athe uAbhinadayi wawathetha ebantwini, naye kanjalo waba nomsindo; waze wathi: Ngubani uAbhinadayi, ukuba mna nabantu bam singagwetywa nguye, okanye ngubani iNkosi, ukuba ingazisa iimbandezelo ezinkulu kangako phezu kwabantu bam?
- 28 Ndiyanyalela ukuba nimzise uAbhinadayi apha, ukuze ndibe nokumbulala, kuba uzithethe ezi zinto ukuze abe nokubaxhokonxa abantu bam ukuba babenomsindo omnye komnye, nokuvusa iimbambano phakathi kwabantu bam; ke ngoko ndiya kumbulala.
- 29 Ngoku amehlo abantu ayemfamekile; ke ngoko baziqadekisa iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene namazwi ka-Abhinadayi, kwaye bafuna ukumbamba ukususela kwelo xesha ukuya phambili. Kwaye ukumkani uNowa wayiqadekisa iintliziyo yakhe ngokuchasene nelizwi leNkosi, kwaye akazange aguquke kuzo izenzo zakhe ezimbi.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

## Mozaya 12

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kwethuba leminyaka emibini uAbhinadayi efikile phakathi kwabo ezijikile, ukuze bangabi nakumazi, kwaye waqalisa ukuprofetha phakathi kwabo, esithi: Indiyalele njalo iNkosi, isithi—Abhinadayi, hamba kwaye uprofethe kubo aba bantu bam, kuba baziqaqadekisile iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene namazwi am; abaguqukanga kuzo izenzo zabo ezimbi; ke ngoko, ndiya kubavelela ngomsindo wam, ewe, ngomsindo wam owoyikekayo ndiya kubavelela kubugwenxa namasikizi abo.
- 2 Ewe, yeha kuso esi sizukulwana! Kwaye iNkosi yathi kum: Yolulela phambili isandla sakho kwaye uprofethe, usithi: Itsho njalo iNkosi, kuya kwenzeka okokuba esi sizukulwana, ngenxa yobugwenxa baso, siya kuziswa ebukhobokeni, kwaye siya kubethwa esidleleni; ewe, kwaye siqhutywe ngabantu, kwaye siya kubulawa; kwaye amaxhalanga omoya, nezinja, ewe, nezilo zasendle, ziya kuqwenga inyama yabo.
- 3 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka ukuba ubomi bukakumkani uNowa buya kuxatyiswa nanjengaso isambatho esikulo iziko lesinyithi elitshisayo; kuba uya kundazi ukuba ndiyiyo iNkosi.
- 4 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka akokuba ndiya kubabetha aba bantu bam ngeembandezelo ezibuhlungu, ewe, ngendlala nangezifo ezibulalayo; kwaye ndiya kubenza ukuba babhombolozwe ebudeni bemini yonke.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye ndiya kubenza ukuba babe nemithwalo ebotshelelwe phezu kwemiqolo yabo; kwaye baya kuqhutywa ngaphambili okwe esile elisisimumu.
- 6 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba ndiya kuthumelela isiphango phakathi kwabo, kwaye siya kubabetha; kwaye kanjalo baya bethwa ngumoya wasempuma; kwaye izinambuzane ziya kuwuhlupha umhlaba wabo kanjalo, kwaye zizibhuqe iinkozo zabo.
- 7 Kwaye baya kubethwa ngezifo ezibuhlungu ezibulalayo kwaye konke oku ndiya kukwenza ngenxa yobugwenxa namasikizi abo.

## Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

- 8 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ndiya kubatshabalalisa ngokupheleleyo bangabikho ebusweni bomhlaba; kanti ke baya kushiya imbali emva kwabo, kwaye ndiya kubalondolozela ezinye izizwe eziya kulilawula ilizwe; ewe, nako oku ndiya kukwenzela ukuba ndibe nokuveza amasikizi abo aba bantu kwezinye izizwe. Kwaye waprofetha izinto ezininzi uAbhinadayi ngokuchasene naba bantu.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba nomsindo ngakuye; baza bamthabatha kwaye bamthwala ebotshelelwe bamsa phambi kokumkani, baza bathi kuye ukumkani: Qaphela, sizise indoda phambi kwakho ethe yaprofetha ububi malunga nabantu bakho, kwaye uthi uThixo uya kubatshabalalisa.
- 10 Kanjalo uprofetha ububi malunga nobomi bakho, kwaye uthi ubomi bakho buya kuba njengesambatho ezikweni lomlilo.
- 11 Kwaye kwakhona, uthi uya kuba njengesiqu, kwanjengesiqu esomileyo sentsimi, esigilwa zizilwanyana kwaye sinyathelwe phantsi kweenyawo.
- 12 Kwaye kwakhona, uthi uya kuba njengeentyatyambo yomthi wobobo, ezithi, zakuba zithiwe ngokupheleleyo, ukuba umoya uyavuthuza, ziqhutyelwe phambili phezu kobuso belizwe. Kwaye wenza ngokungathi iNkosi ikuthethile. Kwaye uthi konke oku kuya kuza phezu kwakho ngaphandle kokuba uguquke, kwaye konke oku kungenxa yobugwenxa bakho.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku, Owu, kumkani, ingaba bububi obuyingozi kangakanani obu ubenzileyo, okanye zizono eziyingozi kangakanani na abazenzileyo abantu bakho, ukuba singagwetywa nguThixo okanye sigwetywe yile ndoda?
- 14 Kwaye ngoku, Owu, kumkani, qaphela, asinalo ityala, kwaye nawe, Owu kumkani, akukhange wone, ke ngoko, le ndoda ixokile ngokunxulumene nawe, kwaye uprofethele into engento.
- 15 Kwaye qaphela, somelele, asingeke size ebukhobokeni, okanye sithatyathelwe ekuthinjweni ziintshaba zethu, ewe, kwaye uphumelele elizweni, kwaye usaya kuchuma kananjalo.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

16 Qaphela, nantsi le ndoda, siyinikela ezandleni zakho; unako ukwenza kuyo ngoko kukulungeleyo.

17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uNowa wenza ukuze uAbhinadayi aphoswe entolongweni; waze wayalela ukuba ababingeleli bahlanganisane kunye ukuze abambe intlanganisano nabo malunga noko afanele akwenze ngaye.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bathi kuye ukumkani: Mzise apha ukuze sibe nokumbuza imibuzo; kwaye ukumkani wayalela ukuba asiwe phambi kwabo.

19 Kwaye baqalisa ukumbuza imibuzo, ukuze babe nokumgocagoca, ukuze ngaloo ndlela babe nento abamtyhola ngayo; kodwa wabaphendula ngenkalipho, kwaye wamelana nayo yonke imibuzo yabo, ewe, ekukhwankqisweni kwabo; kuba waye wamelana nayo yonke imibuzo yabo, kwaye waboyisa kuwo onke amazwi abo.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba omnye wabo wathi kuye: Athetha ntoni amazwi abhaliweyo, kwaye nathe afundiswa ngoobawo bethu, athi:

21 Hayi ukubantle phezu kweentaba iinyawo zakhe lowo ozisa iindaba ezilungileyo; ovakalisa uxolo; ozisa iindaba ezilungileyo zokulunga; ovakalisa usindiso; othi kuyo iZiyon, uThixo wakho uyalawula;

22 Abalindi bakho baya kuliphakamasi izwi; ngezwi bekunye baya kuvuma; kuba baya kubona ngasonye xa sukuba iNkosi iya kuyizisa kwakhona iZiyon;

23 Gqabhukelani eluvuyweni; vumani ingoma kunye zindawo ezingumqwebedu zayo iYerusalem; kuba iNkosi ibathuthuzele abantu bayo, iyikhulule iYerusalem;

24 INkosi iyihlubile ingalo yayo engcwele emehlweni azo zonke izizwe, kwaye zonke iziphelo zomhlaba ziya kulubona usindiso lukaThixo wethu?

25 Kwaye ngoku uAbhinadayi wathi kubo: Ningababingeleli na, kwaye nenza ngokungathi niyabafundisa aba bantu, kwaye nenza ngokungathi niyawuqonda umoya wokuprofetha, kwaye kanti ninqwenela ukwazi okwam okuthethwa zezi zinto?

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

26 Ndithi kuni, yeha kuni ngokugqwetha iindlela zeNkosi! Kuba ukuba niya ziqonda ezi zinto anikhange nizifundise; ke ngoko, nizigqwethile iindlela zeNkosi.

27 Anizinelanga iintliziyo zenu ukuba ziqonde; ke ngoko, anibanga nabulumko. Ke ngoko, nibafundisa ntoni aba bantu?

28 Baza bathi: Sifundisa umthetho kaMoses.

29 Kwaye kwakhona wathi kubo: Ukuba nifundisa umthetho kaMoses kungani ke ukuba ningawugcini? Kungani na nibeke iintliziyo zenu ebutyebini? Kungani na nisenza uhenyuzo kwaye nisebenzisa ukomelela kwenu kumahenyukazi, ewe, nibenze aba bantu ukuba benze isono, ukuze iNkosi ibe nesizathu sokuthumela mna ukuba ndiprofethe ngokuchasene nabo aba bantu, ewe, kwanabo ububi obuyingozi ngokuchasene nabo aba bantu?

30 Anazi na ukuba ndithetha inyaniso? Ewe, niyazi okokuba ndithetha inyaniso; kwaye nifanele ukungcangcazela phambi koThixo.

31 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba niya kubethwa ngobugwenxa benu, kuba nithe nafundisa umthetho kaMoses. Kwaye nazi ntoni ngokunxulumene nomthetho kaMoses? Usindiso aluzi ngomthetho kaMoses kusini na? Nithini ke?

32 Kwaye baphendula baze bathi usindiso lwaye lweza ngomthetho kaMoses.

33 Kodwa ngoku uAbhinadayi wathi kubo: Ndiyazi okokuba ukuba niyayigcina imiyalelo kaThixo niya kusindiswa; ewe, ukuba niyayigcina imiyalelo eyathi iNkosi yayinikezela kuye uMoses entabeni yeSinayi, ethi:

34 NdiyiNkosi uThixo wakho, owanizisayo wanikhupha kulo ilizwe laseYiputa, wanikhupha kuyo indlu yobukhoboka.

35 Nize ningabi naThixo wumbi ngaphandle kwam.

36 Nize ningazenzeli nawuphina umfanekiso oqingqiweyo, okanye nayiphina into emiliswe okweyaphezulu ezulwini, okanye izinto ezisemhlabeni phantsi.

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

37 Ngoku uAbhinadayi wathi kubo, Ingaba  
nikwenzile na konke oku? Ndithi kuni, Hayi,  
anikwenzanga. Kwaye ingaba nibafundisile na aba  
bantu ukuba bafanele bazenze zonke ezi zinto?  
Ndithi kuni, Hayi, anibafundisanga.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all  
this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye  
taught this people that they should do all these  
things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.



## Mozaya 13

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ekubeni ukumkani ewavile la mazwi, wathi kubo ababingeleli bakhe: Mthabatheni lo mfo, kwaye nimbulale; kuba yintoni esinokuyenza ngaye, kuba uphambene.
- 2 Kwaye beza phambili kwaye bazama ukumbamba ngezandla zabo; kodwa waba nokumelana nabo, kwaye wathi kubo:
- 3 Ningandichukumisi, kuba uThixo uya kunibetha ukuba nithe nazibeka izandla zenu phezu kwam, kuba andikawudlulisi umyalezo ethe iNkosi yandithumela ukuba ndiwudlulise; ndinga nixelelanga noko ebe nindicele ukuba ndinixelele kona; ke ngoko, uThixo akayi kundiyekela ukuba nditshatyalaliswe ngeli xesha.
- 4 Kodwa kufuneka ndiyizalisekise imiyalelo athe uThixo wandiyalela ngayo; kwaye ngenxa yokuba ndinixelele inyaniso ninomsindo ngakum. Kwaye kwakhona, ngenxa yokuba ndithethe ilizwi likaThixo nindigwebele ekubeni ndiphambene.
- 5 Ngoku kwenzekile emva kokuba uAbhinadayi ethethe la mazwi okokuba abantu bakakumkani uNowa abazange balinge ukuzibeka izandla zabo kuye, kuba uMoya weNkosi wawuphezu kwakhe; kwaye ubuso bakhe babubengezela yinkazimlo egqithisileyo, nanjengokuba uMoses wabanjalo xa wayethetha neNkosi.
- 6 Kwaye wathetha ngamandla negunya elivela kuThixo; kwaye waqhubeka ngamazwi akhe esithi:
- 7 Niyabona ukuba aninawo amandla okundibulala, ke ngoko ndiyawugqiba umyalezo wam. Ewe, kwaye ndiyabona kunisika ezintliziyweni zenu ngenxa yokuba ndinixelele inyaniso malunga nobugwenxa benu.
- 8 Ewe, kwaye amazwi am aya kunizalisa ngommangaliso nokhwankqiso, nomsindo.
- 9 Kodwa ndiyawugqibezela umyalezo wam; kwaye ke akunamsebenzi nokuba ndiyaphi na, ukuba nje ndinokuthi ndisindiswe.
- 10 Kodwa ikungaka ndinixelele kona, enikwenzayo ngam, emva koku, kuya kuba njengomfuziselo nesithunzi sezinto ezisezayo.

## Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

11 Kwaye ngoku ndinifundela intsalela yemiyalelo kaThixo, kuba ndiqwalasela okokuba ayibhalwangwe ezintliziyweni zenu; kuba ndiqwalasela okokuba nifundile naza nafundisa ubugwenxa elona xesha lininzi lobomi benu.

12 Kwaye ngoku, niyakhumbula ukuba ndathi kuni: Nize ningazenzeli nawuphina umfanekiso oqingqiweyo, okanye nayiphina into emilise okweyaphezulu ezulwini, okanye izinto ezisemhlabeni ngaphantsi, okanye ezisemanzini ngaphantsi komhlaba.

13 Kwaye kwakhona: Nize ningaqubudi kuzo, ningazikhonzi; kuba mna iNkosi uThixo wakho ndinguThixo onekhwele, obuvela ubugwenxa booyise phezu kwabantwana, ukuya kwizizukulwana zesithathu nezizukulwana zesine zabo bandithiyileyo;

14 Kwaye ndibonise inceba kumawaka abo abandithandayo kwaye bayigcine imiyalelo yam.

15 Nize ningafumane nilibize igama leNkosi uThixo wenu; kuba iNkosi ayiyi kumfumana emsulwa lowo ufumana alibize igama layo.

16 Khumbulani umhla wesabatha, ukuba niwugcine ungcwele.

17 Imihla emithandathu niya kusebenza, kwaye nenze yonke imisebenzi yenu;

18 Kodwa umhla wesixhenxe isabatha yeNkosi uThixo wakho, uze ungenzi namnye umsebenzi, wena, nonyana wakho, nentombi yakho, isicaka sakho, nesicakakazi sakho, neenkomo zakho, nowasemzini ongaphakathi kwamasango akho;

19 Kuba ngemihla emithandathu iNkosi yenza izulu nomhlaba, nolwandle, kwaye nazo zonke izinto ezikuzo; ngako oko iNkosi yawusikelela umhla wesabatha, kwaye yawungcwalisa.

20 Beka uyihlo nonyoko, ukuze imihla yakho yolulwe phezu kwelizwe eyathi iNkosi uThixo wakho yakunika lona.

21 Uze ungabulali.

22 Uze ungakrexezi. Uze ungebi.

23 Uze ungangqini ubungqina bobuxoki ngommelwane wakho.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God, for I perceive that they are not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have studied and taught iniquity the most part of your lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

24 Uze ungawunqweneli umzi wommelwane wakho, uze ungamnqweneli umfazi wommelwane wakho, nesicaka sakhe, nesicakakazi sakhe, nenkomo yakhe, ne-esile lakhe, nanye into eyiyeyommelwane wakho.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAbhinadayi ephezile ngezintetho wathi kubo: Ingaba nibafundisile na aba bantu ukuba bamele baqwalasele ukuzenza zonke ezi zinto ukuze bayigcine le miyalelo?

26 Ndithi kuni, Hayi; kuba ukuba benenze njalo, iNkosi inge ingandenzanga ukuba ndiphume ndize kwaye ndiprofethe ububi malunga naba bantu.

27 Kwaye ngoku nithe usindiso luza ngomthetho kaMoses. Ndithi kuni kuyimfuneko ukuba niwugcine umthetho kaMoses ngokwakaloku nje; kodwa ndithi kuni, ilixa liseza xa kungasayi kuba yimfuneko ukuwugcina umthetho kaMoses.

28 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndithi kuni, usindiso aluzi ngomthetho wodwa; kwaye ukuba bekungengayo intlawulelo, leyo uThixo ngokwakhe aya kuyenzela izono nobugwenxa babantu bakhe, ukuze ngokungenakuphetshwa batshabalale, nangona kukho umthetho kaMoses.

29 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni kwakuyimfuneko okokuba kubekho umthetho onikwayo kubo abantwana bakaSirayeli, ewe, nawo umthetho ongqongqo kakhulu; kuba babengabantu abantamo zilukhuni, bekhawuleza ukwenza ubugwenxa, kwaye becotha ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wabo.

30 Ke ngoko kwaye kwabakho umthetho abawunikwayo, ewe, umthetho wokwenza nowemimiselo, umthetho ekwakufuneka bewuqwalasele ngobungqongqo imihla ngemihla, ukubagcanela kwinkumbulo kaThixo nomsebenzi wabo kuye.

31 Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi kuni, zonke ezi zinto zazingumfuziselo wezinto ezisezayo.

32 Kwaye ngoku, ingaba babewuqonda umthetho? Ndithi kuni, Hayi, babengawuqondi bonke umthetho; kwaye oku kwakangenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabo; kuba babengaqondi ukuba kwakungekho namnye umntu owaye enokusindiswa ngaphandle kokuba kube kungenkululeko kaThixo.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

- 33 Kuba qaphelani, ingaba uMoses akaprofethanga kubo ngokunxulumene nokuza kukaMesiya, nokuba uThixo kumele akhulule abantu bakhe? Ewe, kwanabo bonke abaprofeti abathi baprofetha ukususela oko ihlabathi laqalayo—ingaba abathethanga okungakumbi kusini na okanye okungaphantsi ngokunxulumene nezi zinto?
- 34 Ingaba abatshongo na ukuba uThixo ngokwakhe kumele ehlele ezantsi phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kwaye athathele kuye isiqu somntu, kwaye abheke phambili ngamandlakazi phezu kobuso bomhlaba?
- 35 Ewe, kwaye ingaba abatshongo na kanjalo ukuba uya kwenza okokuba kubekho uvuko lwabafuleyo, nokokuba yena, ngokwakhe, uya kumela acinizeleke kwaye abandezeleke?

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

## Mozaya 14

- 1 Ewe, akatsho na naye uIsaya ukuthi: Ngubani na okholelweyo kulo udaba lwethu, kwaye ingalo yeNkosi ingaba ityhilwe kubani na?
- 2 Kuba uya kukhula phambi kwakhe njengegatya eli-ethe-ethe, kwaye nanjengehlumelo eliphuma kumhlaba ongumqwebedu; akanasithomo nabungangamsha; kwaye xa siya kumbona akuyi kubakho kubukeka kuye ukuba singamnqwenela.
- 3 Udeliwe kwaye ulahliwe ngabantu, indoda yeentsizi, kwaye uqhelene nentlungu; kwaye sanga sibusithelisile ubuso bethu kuye; wayedeliwe, kwaye thina asambeka.
- 4 Okwenene uzithabathele kuye iintlungu zethu, kwaye wazithwala iintsizi zethu; ke thina samcingela njengobandezelekileyo, obethwa nguThixo, kwaye nocinezelekileyo.
- 5 Kodwa wayehlatyiwe ngenxa yokona kwethu, wayekrazukile ngenxa yobugwenxa bethu; isohlwayo sokuba sibe noxolo saba phezu kwakhe; kwaye ngemivumbo yakhe siphilisiwe.
- 6 Sonke thina, njengezimvu, siphambukile; sonke elowo eguqukele kweyakhe indlela; kwaye iNkosi yamthwalisa ubugwenxa bethu sisonke.
- 7 Wayecinezelekile, kwaye wayebandezelekile, kanti akazange awuvule umlomo wakhe; uziswa njengemvana eya ekuxhelweni, kwaye nanjengemvu phambi kwabachebi bayo esisimumu ngoko ke akazange awuvule umlomo wakhe.
- 8 Wathatyathwa entolongweni nakuso isigwebo; kwaye ngubani oya kuvakalisa ngesizukulwana sakhe? Kuba wasikelwa ngaphandle waphuma kulo ilizwe labaphilayo; kuba ngenxa yokona kwabantu bam wahlaselwa.
- 9 Kwaye walimisa ingcwaba lakhe phakathi kwabakhohlakeleyo, nabazizityebi akuba efile; nangona engenzanga bubi, kungazange kubekho nankohliso emlonyeni wakhe.
- 10 Kanti ke kwayikholisa iNkosi ukumtyumza; yambeka entlungwini; xa yayibeka umphefumlo wakhe njengedini lesono uya kuyibona imbewu yakhe, uya kumandisela imihla yakhe, kwaye ukuthanda kweNkosi kuya kuphumelela esandleni sakhe.

## Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 Uya kuyibona imigudu yomphefumlo wakhe, kwaye aneliseke; ngolwazi lwakhe umkhonzi wam onobulungisa uya kugwebela abaninzi; kuba uya kubuthwala ubugwenxa babo.

12 Ke ngoko ndiya kumabela isahlulo nabakhulu, kwaye uya kwabelana ngexhoba nabanokomelela; ngenxa yokuba ewuphalazile umphefumlo wakhe ekufeni; kwaye wabalelwa kubo aboni; kwaye wazithwala izono zabaninzi, kwaye wabathethelela abo bangaboni.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

## Mozaya 15

- 1 Kwaye ngoku uAbhinadayi wathi kubo: Ndinga ningaqonda okokuba uThixo ngokwakhe uya kwehlela ezantsi phakathi kwabantwana babantu, kwaye uya kubakhulula abantu bakhe.
- 2 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba ehleli enyameni uya kubizwa ngokuba unguNyana kaThixo, kwaye ekubeni inyama eyoyisele kwintando kaYise, ekubeni enguYise noNyana—
- 3 UYise, ngenxa yokuba wayekhawlwe ngamandla kaThixo; noNyana, ngenxa yenyama; njalo abe nguYise noNyana—
- 4 Kwaye banguThixo omnye, ewe, owokwenene uBawo waNaphakade wezulu nomhlaba.
- 5 Kwaye njalo kuba inyama yaba phantsi koMoya, okanye uNyana kuye uBawo, enguThixo omnye, unyamezela ukuhendwa, kwaye akakuvumeli ukuhendwa, kodwa uya kuziyekela abe yintlekisa, nokutyakatywa, nokukhutshelwa ngaphandle nokukhanyelwa ngabantu bakhe.
- 6 Kwaye emva kwako konke oku, emva kokusebenza imimangaliso enamandlakazi emininzi phakathi kwabantwana babantu, uya kukhokelwa, ewe, kwa nanjengokuba watshoyo uIsaya ukuthi, njengemvu phambi kwabachebi esisimumu, ke akazange awuvule umlomo wakhe.
- 7 Ewe, njalo naye uya kukhokelwa, abethelelwe emnqamlezweni, kwaye abulawe, inyama yoyiswe kude kube sekufeni, ukuthanda koNyana kuginyelwe kwintando kaYise.
- 8 Kwaye njalo uThixo uyawaqhawula amakhamandela okufa, ezuze uloyiso phezu kwako ukufa; enikezela kuNyana igunya lokuthethelela abantwana babantu—
- 9 Enyukele ezulwini, enombilini wenceba; ezele yimfesane ngabo abantwana babantu; emi phakathi kwabo nobulungisa; ewaqhawule amakhamandela okufa, ethabathele kuye ubugwenxa babo nokona kwabo, ebakhulule, kwaye ezanelisile iimfuno zobulungisa.

## Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

- 10 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni, ngubani oya kuvakalisa isizukulwana sakhe? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, wakuba umphefumlo wakhe wenziwe idini lesono uya kuyibona imbewu yakhe. Kwaye ngoku nithini na? Kwaye ngubani na oya kuba yimbewu yakhe?
- 11 Qaphelani ndithi kuni, nabani na owavileyo amazwi abaprofeti, ewe, bonke abaprofeti abangcwele abaprofethayo malunga nokuza kweNkosi—Ndithi kuni, bonke abo bawaphulaphuleyo amazwi abo, kwaye bakholelwa okokuba iNkosi iya kubakhulula abantu bayo, kwaye bakhangelaphambili kuwo loo mhla ukuba baxolelwe izono zabo, ndithi kuni, aba bayimbewu yakhe, okanye baziindlalifa zobukumkani bukaThixo.
- 12 Kuba aba ngabo abazono zabo wazithwalayo; aba ngabo awathi wafela bona, ukubakhulula ezonweni zabo. Kwaye ngoku, ingaba abayiyo imbewu yakhe kusini na?
- 13 Ewe, kwaye ingaba abaprofeti, ngamnye owathi wawuvula umlomo wakhe ukuba aprofethe, lowo ungawelanga ekoneni, ndithetha bonke abaprofeti abangcwele ukususela oko ihlabathi laqalayo? Ndithi kuni bayiyo imbewu yakhe.
- 14 Kwaye aba ngabo abathe bavakalisa uxolo, abazise iindaba ezilungileyo zokulunga, abathe bavakalisa usindiso; kwaye bathi kuyo iZiyon: UThixo wakho uyalawula!
- 15 Kwaye Owu hayi ukuba zintle kweenyawo zabo phezu kweentaba!
- 16 Kwaye kwakhona, hayi ukuba zintle phezu kweentaba iinyawo zabo abasathi nakaloku nje bavakalise uxolo!
- 17 Kwaye kwakhona, hayi ukuba zintle phezu kweentaba iinyawo zabo baya kuthi emva koku bavakalise uxolo, ewe, ukususela ngeli lixa ukubheka phambili nangonaphakade!
- 18 Kwaye qaphelani, ndithi kuni, akuphelelanga apho. Kuba Owu hayi ukuba zintle phezu kweentaba iinyawo zakhe lowo uzisa iindaba ezilungileyo, lowo ungumseki woxolo, ewe, kwanayo iNkosi, ethe yabakhulula abantu bayo; ewe, yona ethe yanikela usindiso kubo abantu bayo;

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;



- 19 Kuba ukuba bekungengayo inkululeko ethe yayenzela abantu bayo, eyayilungiselelwe ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ndithi kuni, ukuba bekungengako oku, lonke uluntu ngelutshabalele.
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani, amakhamandela okufa aya kuqhawulwa, aze uNyana alawule, kwaye abe negunya phezu kwabafileyo; ke ngoko, ubangela okokuba kwenzeke uvuko lwabafileyo.
- 21 Kwaye luya kuza uvuko, ewe kwanalo uvuko lokuqala; ewe, kwanalo uvuko lwabo ababekho, kwaye nabo bakhoyo, kwaye nabo basaya kubakho, ewe kude kube sekuvukeni kukaKrestu—kuba uya kubizwa ngolo hlobo.
- 22 Kwaye ngoko, uvuko lwabo bonke abaprofeti, kwaye nabo bonke abo bathi bakholelwa kuwo amazwi abo, okanye bonke abo bathe bayigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, baya kuza ngaphambili eluvukweni lokuqala; ke ngoko, baluvuko lokuqala.
- 23 Bayavuswa ukuze bahlale kunye noThixo othe wabakhulula; njalo banobomi obungunaphakade ngoKrestu, othe wawaqhawula amakhamandela okufa.
- 24 Kwaye aba ngabo banesabelo eluvukweni lokuqala; kwaye aba ngabo bathi bafa ngaphambi kokuba uKrestu afike, befela ekungazini, lungavakaliswanga kubo usindiso. Kwaye njalo iNkosi ifezekisa ukubuyiselwa kwaba; kwaye banesabelo kulo uvuko lokuqala, okanye banobomi obungunaphakade, bekhululwe yiNkosi.
- 25 Kwaye nabantwana abancinane kanjalo banobomi obungunaphakade.
- 26 Kodwa qaphelani, kwaye noyike, kwaye ningcangcazele phambi kukaThixo, kuba nimele ukungcangcazela; kuba iNkosi ayikhululi namnye kwabanjalo abamvukelayo baze bafele ezonweni zabo; ewe, kwanabo bonke abo bafela ezonweni zabo ukususela okoko ihlabathi laqalayo, abo bamvukela ngabom uThixo, ababeyazi imiyalelo kaThixo, baze bangafuni ukuyigcina; aba ngabo bangesaso isabelo eluvukweni lokuqala.

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

- 27 Ke ngoko animele ukuba ningcangcazele kusini na? Kuba usindiso aluzi nakwabaphi na abanjalo; kuba iNkosi ayibakhululanga abanjalo; ewe, ingenako iNkosi ukubakhulula abanjalo; kuba ayinako ukuziphikisa; kuba ayinako ukubuphikisa ubulungisa xa sukuba bunalo ibango.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni ilixa liya kufika lokuba usindiso lweNkosi luya kuvakaliswa kuso sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu.
- 29 Ewe, Nkosi, abalindi bakho baya kuliphakamisa izwi labo; ngazwi nye baya kucula; kuba baya kubona ngasonye, xa sukuba iNkosi iya kuyizisa kwakhona iZiyon.
- 30 Gqabhukelani eluvuyweni, vumani ingoma kunye, nina zindawo ezingumqwebedu zayo iYerusalem; kuba iNkosi ibathuthuzele abantu bayo, iyikhulule iYerusalem.
- 31 INkosi iyityhilile ingalo yayo engcwele emehlweni azo zonke izizwe; kwaye zonke iziphelo zomhlaba ziya kulubona usindiso lukaThixo wethu.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

## Mozaya 16

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAbhinadayi ewathethile la mazwi wasolula isandla sakhe waza wathi: Ilixa liya kufika xa bonke beya kulubona usindiso lweNkosi; xa sukuba sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu beya kubona ngasonye kwaye baya kuvuma phambi koThixo okokuba izigwebo zakhe zibubulungisa.
- 2 Kwaye ke abakhohlakeleyo baya kuphoselwa ngaphandle, kwaye baya kuba nesizathu sokwenza isijwili, kwaye balile, kwaye benze isikhalo, kwaye batshixizise amazinyo abo; kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba babengaliphulaphuli ilizwi leNkosi; ke ngoko iNkosi ayiyi kubakhulula.
- 3 Kuba bangabenyama kwaye babumtyholi, kwaye umtyholi unamandla phezu kwabo; ewe, kwanayo loo nyoka yakudala eya lukuhla abazali bethu bokuqala, eyayingunobangela wokuwa kwabo; eyayingunobangela wokuba lonke uluntu lube lolwenyama, lwemvelo, lubebumtyholi, lukwazi okubi kokulungileyo, luzinikele kulawulo lomtyholi.
- 4 Njalo ke uluntu lonke lulahlekile; kwaye qaphelani, beluya kulahleka ngokungenasiphelo ukuba uThixo ebengabakhululanga abantu bakhe kwimo yabo yokulahleka nokuwa.
- 5 Kodwa khumbulani okokuba lowo uphikele ukwenze ngokwendalo yakhe yaseniyameni, kwaye aqhubeke ezindleleni zakhe zesono nemvukelo ngokuchasene noThixo, uhlala ekwimo yakhe yokuwa kwaye umtyholi unawo onke amandla phezu kwakhe. Ke ngoko ufana nokungathi akuzange kubekho nkululeko yenziwayo, kuba ulutshaba kuThixo; kananjalo nomtyholi ulutshaba kuThixo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku ukuba uKrestu ebengezanga ehlabathini, ethetha ngezinto ezisezayo ngokungathi sele zifikile, bekungayi kubakho nkululeko.
- 7 Kwaye ukuba uKrestu ebengavukanga kwelabafileyo, okanye ebengawaqhawulanga amakhmandela okufa ukuze ingcwaba lingabi naloyiso, kwaye nokokuba ukufa kungabi nalwamvila, bekungayi kubakho luvuko.

## Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

- 8 Kodwa lukhona uvuko, ke ngoko ingcwaba alinaloyiso, kwaye nolwamvila lokufa luginyelwe kuye uKrestu.
- 9 Ukukukhanya nobomi behlabathi; ewe, ukukhanya okungenasiphelo, okungasoze kube mnyama; ewe, kananjalo nobomi obungenasiphelo, ukuze kungabi sabuya kubekho kufa.
- 10 Kwanako oku kufayo kuya kwambatha ukungafi, kwaye noku konakalayo kuya kwambatha ukungonakali, kwaye baya kuziswa ukuze bame phambi kwenkundla yokugweba kaThixo, ukuba abagwebe ngokunxulumene nemisebenzi yabo nokuba mihle okanye nokuba mibi—
- 11 Ukuba ke mihle, bavukele kubomi obungenasiphelo nolonwabo; kwaye ukuba mibi, bavukela kwisigwebo esingenasiphelo, benikezelwa kumtyholi, obebalawula, unikezelo olusisigwebo—
- 12 Babehambe ngokwentando yabo yasenyameni neminqweno; babengazange bamemeza eNkosini ngelixa iingalo zenceba zazolulelwe kubo; kuba iingalo zenceba zazozolulelwe kubo, kwaye abufunanga; belunyukisiwe ngobugwenxa babo kodwa ke abazange babushiye; kwaye babeyalelwe ukuba baguquke kodwa ke abazange baguquke.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku, animele ningangcazele nize niguquke kwizono zenu, nize nikhumbule okokuba kukuye kwaye kungaye uKrestu kuphela ukuba ningasindiswa?
- 14 Ke ngoko, ukuba nifundisa umthetho kaMoses, fundisani kanjalo okokuba usisithunzi sezo zinto zisezayo—
- 15 Bafundiseni okokuba inkululeko iza ngaye uKrestu iNkosi, onguye owokwenene uBawo waNaphakade. Amen.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

## Mozaya 17

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ekubeni uAbhinadayi ephezile ngezi ntetha, okokuba ukumkani wayalela ukuba ababingeleli bamthabathe kwaye benze okokuba abulawe.
- 2 Kodwa kwabakho omnye phakathi kwabo ogama lakhe lalinguAlma, naye kanjalo esisizukulwana sikaNifayi. Kwaye wayengumfana oselula, kwaye waye wawakholelwa amazwi athe uAbhinadayi wawathetha, kuba wayesazi malunga nobugwenxa awathi uAbhinadayi wangqina ngawo ngokuchasene nabo; ke ngoko waqalisa ukungxengxeza kukumkani ukuba angabi namsindo ngakuAbhinadayi, kodwa amvumele ukuba abe nokuhamba ngoxolo.
- 3 Kodwa ukumkani waba nomsindo ngakumbi, kwaye wenza okokuba uAlma alahlelwe ngaphandle emke phakathi kwabo, waze wathumela izicaka zakhe ukuba zimlandele ukuze zibe nokumbulala.
- 4 Kodwa wababaleka kwaye wazimela ukuze bangamfumani. Kwaye ke ezimele kangangeentsuku ezininzi waye wawabhala onke amazwi awathi wawathetha uAbhinadayi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani enze okokuba abalindi bakhe bamrhangqe uAbhinadayi baze bamthabathe; kwaye bambophelela baza bamphosa entolongweni.
- 6 Kwaye emva kweentsuku ezintathu, akuba ebonisene nababingeleli bakhe, waye wenza ukuba aziswe kwakhona phambi kwakhe.
- 7 Kwaye wathi kuye: Abhinadayi, sifumanise isityholo ngokuchasene nawe, kwaye ukufanele ukufa.
- 8 Kuba wena uthe uThixo ngokwakhe umele ehlele ezantsi phakathi kwabantwana babantu; kwaye ngoku, ngesi sizathu uza kubulawa ngaphandle kokuba uya kuwabuyisela onke amazwi owathethileyo amabi malunga nam nabantu bam.
- 9 Ngoku uAbhinadayi wathi kuye: Ndithi kuwe, andisayi kuwabuyisela amazwi endithe ndawathetha kuwe malunga naba bantu, kuba ayinyani; kwaye ukuze ube nokwazi ngokuqiniseka kwawo ndiziyekele ukuba ndiwele ezandleni zakho.

## Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

- 10 Ewe, kwaye ndiya kunyamezela kwanembandezelo ndide ndife, kwaye andisayi kuwabuyisela amazwi am, kwaye aya kuma njengobungqina ngokuchasene nawe. Kwaye ukuba uyandibulala uya kuba uphalaza igazi elimsulwa, kwaye oku kanjalo kuya kuma njengobungqina ngokuchasene nawe ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku ukumkani uNowa wayesele eza kumkhulula, kuba wayeloyika izwi lakhe; kuba wayesoyika okokuba izigwebo zikaThixo zaziya kuza phezu kwakhe.
- 12 Kodwa ababingeleli bawaphakamisa amazwi abo ngokuchasene naye, baze baqalisa ukumtyhola, besithi: Umenyelisile ukumkani. Ke ngoko ukumkani wavuseleleka emsindweni ngokuchasene naye, waza wamnikezela ukuze abe nokubulawa.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bamthabathe baza bambophelela, kwaye basityakatya isikhumba sakhe ngeentswazi, ewe, wade waba uyafa.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku xa amalangatye eqalisa ukumrhawula, waye wadanduluka ebhekisa kubo, esithi:
- 15 Qaphelani, nanjengoko nenze njalo kum, kuya kwenzeka okokuba imbewu yenu iya kubangela ukuba abaninzi bazive iintlungu endizivayo, kwanazo iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo; kwaye oku kuya kuba ngenxa yokuba bekholelwa kusindiso lweNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 16 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba niya kubandzeleka ngazo zonke iintlobo zezifo ngenxa yobugwenxa benu.
- 17 Ewe, kwaye niya kubethwa kuzo zonke izandla, kwaye niya kuqhutywa kwaye nisasazwe ngapha nangapha, nanjengokuba umhlambi wasendle uqhutywa zizilo ezindlongondlongo nezinoburhalarhume.
- 18 Kwaye ngaloo mhla niya kuzingelwa kwaye niya kuthatyathwa ngesandla seentshaba zenu, kwaye ke niya kuva iintlungu, njengokuba nam ndisiva iintlungu, iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo.
- 19 Njalo uThixo uzisa impindezelo phezu kwabo bathi batshabalalise abantu bakhe. Owu Thixo, yamkela umphefumlo wam.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

20 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uAbhinadayi ewathethile la mazwi, waye wawa, akuba eve iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo; ewe, akuba ebulewe ngenxa yokuba engenako ukuyikhanyela imiyalelo kaThixo, akuba etywine ubunyani bamazwi akhe ngokufa kwakhe.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

## Mozaya 18

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba uAlma, owayesabile kuzo izicaka zikakumkani uNowa, waye waguquka ezonweni zakhe nakubo ubugwenxa, kwaye wahamba-hamba fihlakeleyo phakathi kwabantu, waze waqalisa ukufundisa amazwi ka-Abhinadayi—
- 2 Ewe, ngokunxulumene noko kwakusezayo, kananjalo ngokunxulumene novuko lwabafileyo, nenkululeko yabantu, eyayiza kwenzeka ngamandla, neentlungu, nokufa kukaKrestu, novuko lwakhe nokunyukela kwakhe ezulwini.
- 3 Kwaye kangangobuninzi babo ababelimamela izwi lakhe waye wabafundisa. Kwaye ebfundisela ngasese, ukuze ingabi nakufikelela kulwazi lukakumkani. Baze abaninzi bawakholelwa amazwi akhe.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kangangobuninzi babo abathi bamkholelwa babheka phambili kuyo indawo eyayibizwa ngokuba yiMormoni, ekubeni ilifumene igama layo kukumkani, ikwimida yelizwe ebelizaliswe, ngamathuba athile okanye amaxesha, zizilo zasendle.
- 5 Ngoku, kwakukho eMormoni umthombo wamanzi acwengileyo, waza uAlma waya apho, apho ke kufuphi namanzi kwakukho udada lwemithana emincinane, apho ke wathi emini wazimela khona ekufuniseni kukakumkani.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kangangobuninzi babo abathi bamkholelwa baya apho ukuba beve amazwi akhe.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kweentsuku ezininzi kwabakho inani elincumisayo elahlanganisana kunye endaweni eyiMormoni, ukuza kuva amazwi ka-Alma. Ewe, bonke babehlanganisene kunye abo babekholelwa elizwini lakhe, ukuba bamve. Kwaye wayebafundisa, kwaye wayebashumayeza inguquko nenkululeko, nokholo eNkosini.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi kubo: Qaphelani, nanga amanzi aseMormoni (kuba ayebizwa njalo) kwaye ngoku, njengoko ninqwenela ukuza kuwo umhlambi kaThixo, ukuze nibizwe njengabantu bakhe, nize nikulungele ukuthwalisana imithwalo yenu, ukuze ibe lula;

## Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;



9 Ewe, kwaye nikulungele ukulila nabo balilayo; ewe, nize nibathuthuzele abo baswele ukuthuthuzelwa, nibe nokuma njengamangqina kaThixo ngamaxesha onke nakuzo zonke izinto, nakuzo zonke iindawo eninokuthi nibe kuzo, ewe ngokokude kube sekufeni, ukuze nibe nokukhululwa nguThixo, nize nibalwe kunye nabo bangabovuko lokuqala, ukuze nibe nokuba nobomi obungunaphakade—

10 Ngoku ndithi kuni, ukuba oku kungumnqweno weentliziyo zenu, yintoni eninayo ngokuchasene nokubhaptizwa egameni leNkosi, njengobungqina phambi kwakhe bokuba ningene kumnqophiso kunye naye, wokuba niya kumsebenzela kwaye niyigcine imiyalelo yakhe, ukuze abe nokuwuthulula uMoya wakhe ngobuninzi phezu kwenu?

11 Kwaye ngoku bakuba bewavile abantu la mazwi, baqhweba izandla zabo luvuyo, baze badanduluka: Lo ngumnqweno weentliziyo zethu.

12 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma athabathe uHelam, yena engomnye wabokuqala, kwaye wahamba waza wema phaya emanzini, waza wadanduluka, esithi: Owu Nkosi, thulula uMoya wakho phezu kwesicaka sakho, ukuze ndibe nobuqela lo msebenzi ngobungcwele bentliziyo.

13 Kwaye akuba ewathethile la mazwi, uMoya weNkosi waba phezu kwakhe, kwaye wathi: Helam, ndiyakubhaptiza, ndinegunya elivela kuThixo onaMandla Onke, njengobungqina bokuba ungene kumnqophiso wokuba umsebenzela ude ufe ngokwasemzimbeni onokufa; kwaye inga uMoya weNkosi ungathululelwa phezu kwakho; kwaye inga ingakunika ubomi obungunaphakade, ngenkululeko kaKrestu, lowo wamlungisayo ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi.

14 Kwaye emva kokuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi, bobabini uAlma noHelam bazingcwaba emanzini; baza baphakama baphuma emanzini begcobile, bezaliswe nguMoya.

15 Kwaye kwakhona, uAlma wathabatha omnye, waza wahamba waya phambili okwesibini emanzini, waza wambhaptiza ngokohlobo lokuqala, ngaphandle kokuba yena akazange azingcwabe kwakhona emanzini.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

- 16 Kwaye ngolu hlobo wathi wabhaptiza wonke ubani owathi wahamba waya endaweni yaseMormoni; kwaye inani lalimalunga namakhulu amabini anesine emiphefumlo; ewe, kwaye babhaptizwa kumanzi aseMormoni, kwaye bezaliswe lubabalo lukaThixo.
- 17 Kwaye babizwa ngokuba balibandla likaThixo, okanye ibandla likaKrestu, ukususela kwelo lixa ukuya phambili. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nabani na owabhaptizwayo ngamandla negunya likaThixo wongezelelwa kulo ibandla lakhe.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma, enegunya elivela kuThixo, wamisa ababingeleli; kwanombingeleli omnye kuwo onke amashumi amahlanu enani labo wathi wabamisa ukuba bashumayele kubo, kwaye nokuba babafundise ngokunxulumene nezinto eziphathelele nobukumkani bukaThixo.
- 19 Kwaye wabayalela ukuba bangafundisi nanye into ngaphandle kokuba kube zezo zinto awathi wazifundisa, kwaye nezazithethwe ngomlomo wabaprofeti abangcwele.
- 20 Ewe, wade wabayalela ukuba kumele bangashumayeli nto ngaphandle kokuba kube yinguquko nokholo eNkosini, eyabakhululayo abantu bayo.
- 21 Kwaye wabayalela ukuba akumele kubekho mbambano komnye nomnye, kodwa nje kumele bakhangele phambili ngasonye, benenkolo enye nobhaptizo olunye, beneentliziyo ezithungelene elumanyanweni naseluthandweni omnye komnye.
- 22 Kwaye njalo wabayalela ukuba bashumayele. Kwaye njalo baba ngabantwana bakaThixo.
- 23 Kwaye wabayalela ukuba maze bawuqwalasele umhla wesabatha, kwaye bawugcine ungcwele, kananjalo nemihla yonke bamele banike imibulelo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 24 Kananjalo wabayalela ukuba ababingeleli awathi wabamisa kumele basebenze ngezandla zabo ukuze babe nokuzixhasa.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

25 Kwaye kwabakho usuku olunye kuzo zonke iiveki olwalumiselwe ukuze bahlanganisane kunye ukuze bafundise abantu, kwaye banqule iNkosi uThixo wabo, kananjalo, kaninzi kangangoko kwakusemandleni abo, ukuba bahlanganisane kunye.

26 Kwaye ababingeleli kwakungafuneki baxhomekeke ebantwini ngenkxaso yabo; kodwa ngomsebenzi wabo babeza kufumana ubabalo lukaThixo, ukuze babe nokomelela eMoyeni, benolwazi ngoThixo, ukuze babenako ukufundisa ngamandla negunya elivela kuThixo.

27 Kwaye kwakhona uAlma wayalela ukuba abantu bebandla bamele banikele ngezinto zabo, bonke ngokwaloo nto anayo; ukuba unako ngobuninzi kakhulu kumele anikele ngobuninzi kakhulu; kwaye lowo unako okuncinane, makufunwe nje okuncinane kuye; kwaye lowo ungenanto umele anikwe.

28 Kwaye njalo bamele banikele ngezinto zabo ngentando yabo ekhululekileyo neminqweno emihle kuThixo, nakwabo babingeleli basweleyo, ewe, nakubo bonke abasweleyo, abamiphefumlo ize.

29 Kwaye oku wakuthetha kubo, eyalelwe nguThixo; kwaye baye bahamba bethe tye phambi kukaThixo, benikela omnye komye kunye okwasenyameni nokwasemoyeni ngokweentswelo zabo neemfuno zabo.

30 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba konke oku kwenziwa eMormoni, ewe, ngasemanzini aseMormoni, ehlathini elaye likufuphi namanzi aseMormoni; ewe, indawo yaseMormoni, amanzi aseMormoni, ihlathi laseMormoni, hayi ubuhle babo emehlweni abo abathi apho bafumana ulwazi ngoMkhululi wabo; ewe, okunjani ukusikeleleka kwabo, kuba baya kuvuma bembonga ngonaphakade.

31 Kwaye ezi zinto zenzeka emideni yelizwe, ukuze zingafikeleli kulwazi lokumkani.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

32 Kodwa qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani, efumanise intshukumo ephakathi kwabantu, wathumela izicaka zakhe ukuba zibajonge. Ke ngoko ngomhla ababehlanganisene kunye ukuphulaphula ilizwi leNkosi bafunyanwa baziswa kukumkani.

33 Kwaye ngoku ukumkani waye wathi uAlma wayexhokoxela abantu ukuba bamvukele, ke ngoko wathumela umkhosi wakhe ukuba ubatshabalalise.

34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma nabantu beNkosi balunyukiswa ngokuza komkhosi kakumkani; ke ngoko bathabatha iintente zabo neentsapho zabo basinga entlango.

35 Kwaye ngenani babengamakhulu amane anamashumi amahlanu emiphefumlo.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's army; therefore they took their tents and their families and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and fifty souls.

## Mozaya 19

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umkhosi kakumkani wabuya, wakuba ubakhangele abantu beNkosi wabuya nelize.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, imikhosi kakumkani yaye imincinane, yakube iphungulekile, kwaye kwaqalisa ubukho beyantlukwano phakathi kwabantu abaseleyo.
- 3 Kwaye inxalenye yabo embalwa yaqalisa ukufutha izisongelo ngokuchasene nokumkani, kwaye kwaqalisa ukubakho imbambano enkulu phakathi kwabo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku kwakukho indoda ethile phakathi kwabo egama layo lalinguGidiyon, kwaye ke eyindoda eyomeleleyo kwaye elutshaba kuye ukumkani, ke ngoko walikhupha ikrele lakhe, waza wafunga ngoburhalarhume bakhe ukuba uza kumbulala ukumkani.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba walwa naye ukumkani; kwaye uthe ukumkani akubona ukuba uza koyiswa, wesaba kwaye wabaleka waza waqabela enkcochoyini eyayikufuphi netempile.
- 6 Kwaye uGidiyon wamsukela kwaye wayesele eza kuqabela enkcochoyini ukuba ambulale ukumkani, waza ukumkani waphosa amehlo akhe ngapha nangapha ngaselizweni laseShemloni, kwaye qaphelani, imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yayingaphakathi kwemida yelizwe.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku ukumkani wamemeza ngentlungu yomphefumlo wakhe, esithi: Gidiyon, ndisindise, kuba amaLeymenayithi aphezu kwethu, kwaye aza kusitshabalalisa; ewe, aza kubatshabalalisa abantu bam.
- 8 Kwaye ukumkani waye engaxhalabelanga abantu bakhe kangako njengokuba wayenjalo ngobakhe ubomi; nangona kunjalo, uGidiyon wabusindisa ubomi bakhe.
- 9 Kwaye ukumkani wayalela abantu bakhe ukuba babaleke phambi kwawo amaLeymenayithi, kwaye yena ngokwakhe waye wahamba phambi kwabo, kwaye baye basabela entlango, kunye nabafazi babo nabantwana babo.

## Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye abasukela, kwaye abafumana, aze aqalisa ukubabulala.
- 11 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wabayalela ukokuba onke amadoda mawabashiye abafazi bawo nabantwana bawo kwaye basabe phambi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 12 Ngoku baba baninzi abangavumiyo ukubashiya, kodwa bakhetha ukuhlala baze batshabalale nabo. Kwaye abanye babashiya abafazi babo nabantwana babo kwaye basaba.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abo basalayo nabafazi babo nabantwana babo benza ukuba iintombi zabo ezibukekayo zime ngaphambili kwaye ziwabongoze amaLeymenayithi ukuze angababulali.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aba nemfesane ngabo, kuba bathabatheka bubuhle babafazi babo.
- 15 Ke ngoko amaLeymenayithi abusindisa ubomi babo, aza abathabatha nje ngabathinjwa kwaye abathwala abuyela nabo emva kwilizwe likaNifayi, kwaye abavumela ukuba babe nokulilawula ilizwe, phantsi kwemiqathango yokuba baya kumnikezela ukumkani uNowa ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi, baze banikezele ngezinto zabo, kwanaso isiqingatha sayo yonke into abanayo, isiqingatha segolide yabo, nesesilivere yabo, nazo zonke izinto zabo zexabiso, kwaye ngalo ndlela bamele bahlawule irhafu kuye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi ukusuka kunyaka nonyaka.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku kwaye kukho omnye woonyana bakakumkani phakathi kwabo babethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni, ogama lakhe lalinguLimhayi.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku uLimhayi wayenqwenela ukuba uyise angatshatyalaliswa; nangona kunjalo, uLimhayi wayesazi ngobugwenxa bukayise, yena ngokwakhe eyindoda enobulungisa.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uGidiyon wathumela amadoda entlango bucala, ukuba ayokufuna ukumkani kwakunye nabo babenaye. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba badibana nabantu entlango, bonke ngaphandle kokumkani nababingeleli bakhe.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

19 Ngoku babefungile ezintliziyweni zabo ukuba babeya kubuyela elizweni likaNifayi, kwaye ukuba abafazi babo nabantwana babo babebulewe, kanaanjalo nabo babesele nabo, babeya kuzama ukuziphindezela, kwaye batshabalale nabo kanjalo.

20 Kwaye ukumkani wabayalela ukuba bangabuyeli; kwaye baba nomsindo ngakukumkani, kwaye bamenza ukuba ave iintlungu, ngokokude afe ngomlilo.

21 Kwaye babesele beza kubathabatha ababingeleli kanjalo kwaye bababulale, kwaye basabe phambi kwabo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babesele beza kubuyela kwilizwe likaNifayi, kwaye badibana namadoda kaGidiyon. Kwaye amadoda kaGidiyon abaxelela ngako konke okwenzekayo kubafazi babo nabantwana babo; kwaye nokokuba amaLeymenayithi abanike ukuba babe nokulilawula ilizwe ngokuhlawula irhafu kuwo amaLeymenayithi yesiqingatha sayo yonke into ababenayo.

23 Kwaye abantu bawaxelela amadoda kaGidiyon ukuba bambulele ukumkani, kwaye ababingeleli bakhe basabele kude entlango.

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba beyigqibile ngamatitile, ukuze babuyele kwilizwe likaNifayi, begcobile, ngenxa yokuba abafazi babo nabantwana babo babengabulawanga; kwaye bamxelela uGidiyon into abayenzileyo kukumkani.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wenza isifungo kubo, sokokuba abantu bakhe abayi kubabulala.

26 Kwaye noLimhayi kanjalo, engunyana kakumkani, ubukumkani bunikelwe kuye ngabantu, wenza isifungo kuye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi sokokuba abantu bakhe kumele ukuba bahlawule irhafu kuye, kwanaso isiqingatha sayo yonke into abanayo.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLimhayi waqalisa ukumisela ubukumkani kwaye nokumisela uxolo phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

28 Kwaye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wabeka abalindi ukurhangqa ilizwe, ukuze abagcine abantu bakaLimhayi kulo ilizwe, ukuze bangemki basingentlango; kwaye waye wabaxhasa abalindi bakhe ngerhafu awayeyifumana kuwo amaNifayithi.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

29      Kwaye ngoku ukumkani uLimhayi waba noxolo  
ngalo lonke ixesha ebukumkanini bakhe  
kangangethuba leminyaka emibini, ngenxa yokuba  
amaLeymenayithi akazange abakhathaze okanye  
azame ukubatshabalalisa.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in  
his kingdom for the space of two years, that the  
Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy  
them.



## Mozaya 20

- 1 Ngoku kwaye kukho indawo eShemloni apho iintombi zamaLeymenayithi zazibutha khona ukuba zivume, zize zidanise, zize zizonwabise.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngamhla uthile kwabakho inani elincinane labo elalibuthile ukuba livume iingoma kwaye lidanise.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku ababingeleli bakakumkani uNowa, beneentloni zokubuyela esixekweni sikaNifayi, ewe, kananjalo besoyika ukuba abantu baya kubabulala, ke ngoko babengenakulinga ukubuyela ebafazini babo nasebantwaneni babo.
- 4 Baze ke behleli entlango, bathi babhaqa iintombi zamaLeymenayithi, balala bathi nca baze bazibukela;
- 5 Kwaye kwathi kwakuba kukho abambalwa nje babo ababebuthile bedanisa, baye beza phambili bephuma endaweni yabo efihlakeleyo baza bazithabatha kwaye bazithwala baya entlango; ewe, amashumi amabini anesine eentombi zamaLeymenayithi bazithwalela entlango.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa amaLeymenayithi efumanisa ukuba iintombi zawo zilahlekile, aba nomsindo nabantu bakaLimhayi, kuba babecinga ukuba yayingabantu bakaLimhayi abazibileyo.
- 7 Ke ngoko bathumela imikhosi yabo phambili; ewe, kwanaye ukumkani ngokwakhe wabakhokela abantu bakhe; kwaye benyuka baya kwilizwe likaNifayi ukuba batshalalise abantu bakaLimhayi.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku uLimhayi ebesebabaqile esenkochoyini, kwanawo onke amalungiselelo emfazwe wwabhaqa; ke ngoko wabahlanganisa kunye abantu bakhe, kwaye babalalela bebalindele emasimini nasemahlathini.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi enyukile afika, abantu bakaLimhayi baqalisa ukubahlasela kwezo ndawo babelinde kuzo, baze baqalisa ukubabulala.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba idabi laye lisiba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, kuba balwa ngokungathi ziingonyama zisilwela ixhoba lazo.

## Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaLimhayi baqalisa ukuwaqhuba amaLeymenayithi phambi kwabo; kanti ke babengesiso nesiqingatha sentlaninge yamaLeymenayithi. Kodwa balwela ubomi babo, nabafazi babo, nabantwana babo; ke ngoko bazama ngamandla abo onke kwaye balwa njengeenamba.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bamfumana ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi ephakathi kwabafileyo bawo; kanti ke wayengafanga, enzakalisiwe nje waza washiywa emhlabeni, kwakukhawuleze kangako ke ukusaba kwabantu bakhe.

13 Kwaye bamthabatha baza bambopha amaxeba akhe, baza bamzisa phambi koLimhayi, baza bathi: Qaphela, nguye lo ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi; ekubeni efumene inxeba uye wawa phakathi kwabafileyo bawo, kwaye bamshiyile; kwaye qaphela, simzise phambi kwakho; kwaye ngoku siyeke simbulale.

14 Kodwa uLimhayi wathi kubo: Anisayi kumbulala, kodwa mziseni apha ukuze ndimbone. Kwaye bamzisa. Kwaye uLimhayi wathi kuye: Sizathu sini esikubangele okokuba unyuke uzokulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu bam? Qaphela, abantu bam abasaphulanga isifungo endasenza kuwe; ke ngoko, kungani na ukuba usaphule isifungo owasenzayo kubantu bam?

15 Kwaye ngoku ukumkani wathi: Ndisaphule isifungo ngenxa yokuba abantu bakho baye bazithwala bemka nazo iintombi zabantu bam; ke ngoko, emsindweni wam ndiye ndabenza abantu bam ukuba benyuke bazokulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu bakho.

16 Kwaye ngoku uLimhayi ebengakhange eve nto malunga nalo mba; ke ngoko wathi: Ndiza kukhangela phakathi kwabantu bam kwaye nabani na oyenzileyo le nto uza kutshabalala. Ke ngoko wenza okokuba kuphendle phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

- 17 Ngoku akuba uGidiyon ezivile ezi zinto, yena ke engumphathi-mkhosi kakumkani, weza ngaphambili kwaye wathi kuye ukumkani: Ndiyakuthandaza uzibambe, kwaye ungaphendli kwaba bantu, kwaye ungababeki tyala aba bantu ngale nto.
- 18 Kuba akubakhumbuli na ababingeleli bakayihlo, ababefunwa ngaba bantu ukuze babatshabalalise? Kwaye ingaba abakho entlango kusini na? Kwaye ingaba asingabo na abazibileyo iintombi zamaLeymenayithi?
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, kwaye umxelele ukumkani ngazo ezi zinto, ukuze abenako ukubaxelela abantu bakhe ukuze bathobozeke ngakuthi; kuba qaphela sele beqalisile ukulungiselela ukuza ngokuchasene nathi; kwaye qaphela kanjalo siligcuntswana nje.
- 20 Kwaye qaphela, beza nentlaninge yemikhosi yabo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba ukumkani abathoboze ngakuthi kuya kufuneka sitshabalale.
- 21 Kuba ingaba amazwi ka-Abhinadayi awazalisekanga na, awathi wawaprofetha ngokuchasene nathi—kwaye konke oku kungenxa yokokuba sasingawaphulaphuli amazwi eNkosi, kwaye siguquke kubo ubugwenxa bethu?
- 22 Kwaye ngoku ke masimthoboze ukumkani, kwaye sisizalisekise isifungo esathi sasenza kuye; kuba kulungile ukuba sibe sebukhobokeni kunokuba siphulukane nobomi bethu; ke ngoko, masiyiphelise impalalo-gazi engaka.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku uLimhayi wamxelela ukumkani zonke izinto malunga noyise, nangababingeleli abathi basabela entlango, kwaye wakubalela kubo ukuthwala kumkiwe neentombi zabo.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wathobozeka ngakubo abantu bakhe; kwaye wathi kubo: Masihambeni siye kuhlangu nabo abantu bam, kungekho zikhali; kwaye ndiyafunga kuni ngesifungo okokuba abantu bam abasayi kubabulala abantu bakho.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bamlandela ukumkani, kwaye babhekisa phambili ngaphandle kwezikhali ukuze bahlangane namaLeymenayithi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bahlangana namaLeymenayithi; kwaye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi waye waqubuda phantsi phambi kwabo, kwaye wabangxengxezela abantu bakaLimhayi.

26 Kwaye amaLeymenayithi athe akubabona abantu bakaLimhayi, okokuba abaxhobanga, baba nemfesane nabo kwaye bathobozeka ngakubo, baza babuyela nokumkani wabo ngoxolo kwelabo ilizwe.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

## Mozaya 21

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLimhayi nabantu bakhe babuyele kwisixeko sikaNifayi, kwaye baqalisa ukuhlala elizweni kwakhona ngoxolo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kweentsuku ezininzi amaLeymenayithi aqalisa kwakhona ukuvuseleleka emsindweni ngokuchasene namaNifayithi, kwaye baqalisa ukuza kwimida yelizwe elibarhangqileyo.
- 3 Ngoku bebengekhe balinge ukubabulala, ngenxa yesifungo awathi wasenza ukumkani wabo kuLimhayi; kodwa babeya kubabetha ezidleleni zabo, baze basebenzise igunya phezu kwabo; baza baqalisa ukubathwalisa imithwalo enzima phezu kwemiqolo yabo, kwaye babaqhube njengoko babeya kwenza kulo iesile elisisimumu—
- 4 Ewe, konke oku kwenzeka ukuze kuzaliseke ilizwi leNkosi.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku iimbandezelo zamaNifayithi zazinkulu, kwaye kwakungekho ndlela yokuba bangazikhuzipha ezandleni zawo, kuba amaLeymenayithi ayebahangqe macala onke.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baqalisa ukumbombozela kuye ukumkani ngenxa yeembandezelo zabo; kwaye baqalisa ukunqwenela ukuba baye edabini ngokuchasene nabo. Kwaye baye bamhlupha kabuhlungu ukumkani ngezikhhalazo zabo; ke ngoko wabanikela ukuba benze ngokweminqweno yabo.
- 7 Kwaye bazihlanganisa kunye kwakhona, baze bazinxiba izikrweqe zabo, baze babheka phambili ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi ukuze babaqhubele ngaphandle kwelizwe labo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye ababetha, kwaye abaqhubela emva, kwaye abulala abaninzi babo.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku kwabakho isililo nesijwili esikhulu phakathi kwabantu bakaLimhayi, umhlolokazi elilela umyeni wakhe, unyana nentombi belilela uyise wabo, nabazalwana babazalwana babo.

## Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

- 10 Ngoku kwakukho abahlolokazi abaninzi kakhulu elizweni, kwaye babelila ngamandlakazi imihla ngemihla, kuba uloyiko olukhulu lwamaLeymenayithi lwafika phezu kwabo.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izikhalo zabo ezaziqhubeka zaye zaxhokoxela emsindweni intsalela yabantu bakaLimhayi ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi; kwaye bahamba kwakhona ukuya kulwa idabi, kodwa baqhutyelwa emva kwakhona, behlungiswa yilahleko enkulu.
- 12 Ewe, baphindela kwakhona nangalo elesithathu ixesha, kwaye bahlungiseka kwangohlobo lwangaphambili; kwaye abo babengabulawanga babuyela kwakhona kwisixeko sikaNifayi.
- 13 Kwaye baye bazithoba nanjengothuli, bezinikezele kwidyokhwe yobukhoboka, belulamele ukubethwa, nokuqhutyelwa ngapha nangapha, kwaye bethwele ubunzima, ngokweminqweno yeentshaba zabo.
- 14 Kwaye baye bazithobela nakuzo iinzulu zentobeko; baza bakhala ngamandlakazi kuye uThixo; ewe, kwakubo bonke ubude bemini baye bakhala kuThixo wabo ukuze abakhulule baphume kwiimbandezelo zabo.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku iNkosi ayikhawulezanga ukusiva isikhalo sabo ngenxa yobugwenxa babo; nangona kunjalo iNkosi yaye yaziva izikhalo zabo, kwaye yaqalisa ukuzithambisa iintliziyu zamaLeymenayithi aze aqalisa ukunyenya imithwalo yabo; kanti ke iNkosi ayizange ibone kufanelekile ukuba ibakhulule baphume ebukhobokeni.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baqalisa ukuphumelela ngamaqondo-ngamaqondo elizweni, kwaye baqalisa ukulima iinkozo ngobuninzi, nemihlambi nempahla emfutshane, nemihlambi yeenkomo, ukuze bangabandezeleki yindlala.
- 17 Ngoku kwakukho inani elikhulu labafazi, ngaphezu kwelamadoda; ke ngoko ukumkani uLimhayi wayalela ukuba ndoda nganye inikele ekuxhaseni abahlolokazi nabantwana babo, ukuze bangabi nakufa yindlala; kwaye oku bakwenza ngenxa yobuninzi benani labo ababebulewe.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

- 18 Ngoku abantu bakaLimhayi bazigcina kunye beyimbumba kangangoko babenako, kwaye bazikhusela iinkozo zabo nemihlambi yabo;
- 19 Kwaye nokumkani ngokwakhe akazange abe nokuzithemba ngaphandle kweendonga zesixeko, ngaphandle kokuthabatha abalindi bakhe babenaye, esoyikela ukuba ngandlela ithile angaba nokuwela ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi.
- 20 Kwaye wenza okokuba abantu bakhe balikhusele ilizwe balirhangqe, ukuze ngandlela zithile babe nokubathabatha abo babingeleli ababesabele entlango, aba bebe iintombi zamaLeymenayithi, kwaye nababebangele intshabalalo enkulu kangaka ukuba ize phezu kwabo.
- 21 Kuba babenqwenela ukubathabatha ukuze babohlwaye; kuba babeze elizweni likaNifayi ngobusuku, kwaye bemka neenkozo zabo kwaye nezininzi izinto zabo ezixabisekileyo, ke ngoko babalalela bebalindele.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akubangakho ziphazamiso phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi nabantu bakaLimhayi, kwada kwaba lilixa awathi uAmon nabazalwana bakhe bafika elizweni.
- 23 Kwaye ukumkani xa ebe ngaphandle kwamasango esixeko kunye nomlindi wakhe, bamfumana uAmon nabazalwana bakhe; kwaye becinga akokuba babe ngababingeleli bakaNowa ke ngoko wenza okokuba bathatyathwe, baze babotshelwe, kwaye baphoswe entolongweni. Kwaye ukuba babengababingeleli bakaNowa ngewayenze okokuba babulawe.
- 24 Kodwa wathi akufumanisa ukuba babengengabo, kodwa babengabazalwana bakhe, kwaye babevela kwilizwe laseZarahemla, wazaliswa luvuyo olugqithise kakhulu.
- 25 Ngoku ukumkani uLimhayi wayethumele, ngaphambi kokufika kuka-Amon, inani elincinane lamadoda ukuba ayokukhangela ilizwe laseZarahemla; kodwa ababanganako ukulifumana, baza balahleka entlango.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

- 26 Nangona kunjalo, baye bafumana ilizwe elalikade linabantu; ewe, ilizwe elaye lizaliswe ngamathambo awomileyo; ewe, ilizwe elalikade linabantu kwaye abatshtyalaliswayo; kwaye bona, becinga okokuba yayilizwe laseZarahemla, babuyela kwilizwe likaNifayi, kwaye befike kwimida yelizwe iintsuku ezingephi phambi kokufika kuka-Amon.
- 27 Kwaye babeze nembali, kwa imbali yabo bantu babefumene amathambo abo; kwaye yayikrolwe kumacwecwe esinyithi esikrwada.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku uLimhayi kwakhona wazaliswa luvuyo akufumanisa ngomlomo ka-Amon okokuba ukumkani uMozaya wayenesipho esivela kuThixo, anokuthi ngaso atolike imikrolo elolohlobo; ewe, kwaye noAmon kanjalo waye wagcoba.
- 29 Kanti ke uAmon nabazalwana bakhe bazaliswa lusizi ngenxa yokuba abazalwana babo abaninzi kangako babebulewe;
- 30 Kananjalo nangenxa yokokuba ukumkani uNowa nababingeleli bakhe babenza abantu ukuba benze izono ezininzi kangaka nobugwenxa ngokuchasene noThixo; kananjalo baye balusizi ngokufa kuka-Abhinadayi; kananjalo ngokumka kuka-Alma kunye nabo bantu bahamba naye, ababemise ibandla likaThixo ngamandla negunya likaThixo, nokholo kumazwi athe athethwa nguAbhinadayi.
- 31 Ewe, baye balusizi ngokumka kwabo, kuba babengazi apho basabela khona. Ngoku babeya kumanyana nabo ngovuyo, kuba nabo ngokwabo babengene kumnqophiso noThixo ukuba bamsebenzele kwaye bayigcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku kwathi kwakufika uAmon, ukumkani uLimhayi kanjalo wangena kumnqophiso noThixo, nabaninzi kanjalo kubantu bakhe, ukuba bamsebenzele kwaye bayigcine imiyalelo yakhe.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uLimhayi nabaninzi babantu bakhe babenqwenela ukubhaptizwa; kodwa kwakungekho namnye elizweni owayenaloo igunya elivela kuThixo. Kwaye uAmon wakwala ukwenza ezi zinto, ezicingela ukuba usisicaka esingafanelekanga.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.



34 Ke ngoko abazange ngelo lixa bazibumbe babe libandla, belindele uMoya weNkosi. Ngoku babenqwenela ukuba bangaba njengoAlma nabazalwana bakhe, ababesabele entlango.

35 Babenqwenela ukubhaptizwa njengengqina nobungqina bokuba babezimisele ukumsebenzela uThixo ngeentliziyo zabo zonke; nangona kunjalo balihlehlisa ixesha; kwaye ingxelo yobhaptizo lwabo iya kunikwa emva koku.

36 Kwaye ngoku yonke imizamo ka-Amon nabantu bakhe, nokumkani uLimhayi nabantu bakhe, yayiyeyokuzikhulula baphume ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi nasebukhobokeni.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

## Mozaya 22

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAmon nokumkani uLimhayi baqalisa ukubonisana nabantu ngendlela ababe nokuzikhulula ngayo baphume ebukhobokeni; kwaye nabo ngokwabo benza okokuba bonke abantu bahlanganisane kunye; kwaye oku bakwenza ukuze babenokuba nelizwi labantu ngokunxulumene nalo mba.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bangayifumani indlela abanokuzikhulula ngayo baphume ebukhobokeni, ngaphandle kokuba ibe kukuthabatha abafazi babo nabantwana, nemihlambi yempahla emfutshane yabo, nemihlambi yeenkomo zabo, neentente zabo, baze bemke basinge entlango; kuba amaLeymenayithi eyintlaninge kangako, kwakungenakwenzeka ukuba abantu bakaLimhayi bangabambana nabo, xa babecinga ukuzikhulula baphume ebukhobokeni ngekrele.
- 3 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uGidiyon wabheka phambili waza wema phambi kokumkani, kwaye wathi kuye: Ngoku Owu kumkani, kude kube kaloku nje uwaphulaphule amazwi am amaxesha amaninzi xa sukuba sinembambano nabazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku Owu kumkani, ukuba undifumanise ndisicaka esingancedi lutho, okanye ukuba kude kwakalokunje uwamamela amazwi am nakuluphi na uqondo, kwaye abaluncedo kuwe, nakalokunje ndinqwenela ukuba uwamamele amazwi am ngeli lixa, kwaye ndiya kuba sisicaka sakho kwaye ndibakhulule abantu baphume ebukhobokeni.
- 5 Kwaye ke ukumkani wamvumela ukuba athethe. Kwaye ke uGidiyon wathi kuye:
- 6 Khumbula inkalo engemva, enqumla emva kodonga, kwicala elingemva kwesixeko. AmaLeymenayithi, okanye abalindi bamaLeymenayithi, ngobusuku bayanxila; ke ngoku masithumele isibhengezo phakathi kwabo bonke aba bantu ukuba bahlanganise kunye imihlambi yempahla emfutshane yabo nemihlambi yeenkomo zabo, ukuze babe nokuziqhubela entlango ngobusuku.

## Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

- 7 Kwaye ndiya kuhamba ngokomyalelo wakho kwaye ndihlawule irhafu yokugqibela yewayini kuwo amaLeymenayithi, kwaye baza kunxila; kwaye siya kudlula kwinkalo efihlakeleyo ngasekhohlo kwenkampu yabo xa benxilile kwaye belele.
- 8 Njalo ke siya kuhamba nabafazi bethu nabantwana bethu, imihlambi yempahla emfutshane yethu, nemihlambi yeenkomo zethu siye entlango; kwaye siya kuhamba sijekela elizweni laseShayilom.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wawaphulaphula amazwi kaGidiyon.
- 10 Kwaye ukumkani uLimhayi wenza ukuba abantu bakhe bahlanganise imihlambi yabo ndawonye; kwaye wathumela irhafu yewayini kumaLeymenayithi; waza wathumela kanjalo iwayini engakumbi, nje ngesipho kubo; kwaye baye bayisela ngokukhululekileyo iwayini awathi wayithumela kubo ukumkani uLimhayi.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakakumkani uLimhayi baye bemka ngobusuku bangena entlango nemihlambi yempahla emfutshane yabo nemihlambi yeenkomo zabo, baye balijikeleza ilizwe laseShayilom entlango, baza indlela yabo bayigobela ngakwilizwe laseZarahemla, bekhokelwe nguAmon nabazalwana bakhe.
- 12 Kwaye babeyithabathile yonke igolide yabo, nesilivere, nezinto zabo ezixabisekileyo, ababenako ukuzithwala, kananjalo nemiphako yabo ikubo, bangena entlango; kwaye baqhubeka nohambo lwabo.
- 13 Kwaye emva kweentsuku ezininzi besentlango bafika kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, baza badibana nabantu bakaMozaya, kwaye babaphantsi kolawulo lwakhe.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya wabamkela ngovuyo; kwaye wazamkela kanjalo neembali zabo, kwaye kanjalo neembali ezithe zafunyanwa ngabantu bakaLimhayi.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile xa amaLeymenayithi efumanisa okokuba abantu bakaLimhayi bemkela baphuma elizweni ngobusuku, bathumela umkhosi entlango ukuba ubasukele;

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

16 Kwaye emva kokuba ubasukele iintsuku ezimbini, abazange babe sabanako ukuwulandela umkhondo wabo; ke ngoko baye balahleka entlango.

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.

*Ingxelo ka-Alma nabantu beNkosi, ababebutyelwe entlango ngabantu bakaKumkani uNowa.*

## Mozaya 23

- 1 Ngoku uAlma, ekubeni elunyukisiwe yiNkosi okokuba imikhosi kakumkani uNowa iya kubafikela, kwaye ebazisile nabantu bakhe, ke ngoko baye bahlanganisa kunye imihlambi yabo, kwaye bathabatha ezinye zeenkozo zabo, kwaye basinga entlango phambi kwayo imikhosi kakumkani uNowa.
- 2 Kwaye iNkosi yaye yabomeleza, ukuze abantu bakakumkani uNowa bangabi nakubafumana ukuze babatshabalalise.
- 3 Baye besaba ngohambo lweentsuku ezisibhozo ukungena entlango.
- 4 Baze bafika elizweni, ewe, kwanalo ilizwe elibukekayo nelanelisayo kakhulu, ilizwe lamanzi acwengileyo.
- 5 Kwaye bazixumeka iintente zabo, kwaye baqalisa ukuwulima umhlaba, kwaye baqalisa ukwakha izakhiwo; ewe, babekhuthela, kwaye besebenza ngokugqithisileyo.
- 6 Kwaye abantu babenqwenela ukuba uAlma abe ngukumkani wabo, kuba wayethandwa ngabantu bakhe.
- 7 Kodwa waye wathi kubo: Qaphelani, akuyiyo imfuneko ukuba sibe nokumkani; kuba itsho njalo iNkosi: Anisayi kubeka enye inyama ngaphezu kwenye, okanye indoda enye ayinako ukuzicingela ukuba ingentla kunenye; ke ngoko ndithi kuni akuyiyo imfuneko ukuba nibe nokumkani.
- 8 Nangona kunjalo, ukuba bekunokwenzeka okokuba beniya kuhlala ninawo amadoda angamalungisa ukuba abe ngookumkani benu bekuya kunilungela ukuba nibenaye ukumkani.
- 9 Kodwa khumbulani ubugwenxa bokumkani uNowa nababingeleli bakhe; kwaye nam ngokwam ndandibambiseke emgibeni, ndaze ndenza izinto ezininzi ezaye zingamasikizi emehlweni eNkosi, ezandibangela inguquko ebuhlungu kakhulu.

*An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.*

## Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

- 10 Nangona kunjalo, emva kweenkxwaleko ezininzi, iNkosi yaziva izikhalo zam, yaza yayiphendula nemithandazo yam, kwaye indenze ndasisixhobo ezandleni zayo ekuziseni abaninzi kangaka benu kulwazi lwenyaniso yayo.
- 11 Nangona kunjalo, ngako oku andizizukisi, kuba andikufanelanga ukuzizukisa.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku, ndithi kuni, benikade nicinezelwe ngukumkani uNowa, kwaye nisebukhobokeni kuye nababingeleli bakhe, naza naziswa ebugwenxeni ngabo; ke ngoko benikhonkxwe ngamakhamandela obugwenxa.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku njengoko nithe nahlangulwa nithe nahlangulwa ngamandla kaThixo naphuma kula makhamandela; ewe, nahlangulwa ezandleni zikakumkani uNowa nabantu bakhe, kananjalo kumakhamandela obugwenxa, ngokunjalo ke ndinqwenela okokuba nime nkqo kule nkululeko enithe nakhululwa ngayo, kwaye nokokuba ningathembi mntu ukuba abe ngukumkani phezu kwenu.
- 14 Kananjalo ningathembi mntu ukuba abe ngutitshala wenu namfundisi wenu, ngaphandle kokuba abe yindoda kaThixo, ehamba ezindleleni zakhe kwaye eyigcinayo imiyalelo yakhe.
- 15 Njalo ke wathi uAlma wabafundisa abantu bakhe, ukuba wonke umntu umele amthande ummelwane wakhe njengoko ezithanda naye, nokokuba kumele kungabikho mbambano phakathi kwabo.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku, uAlma wayengumbingeleli omkhulu wabo, yena engumseki webandla labo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akubangakho namnye owalifumanayo igunya lokushumayela okanye ukufundisa ngaphandle kokuba alifumane ngaye livela kuThixo. Ke ngoko wabangcwalisa bonke ababingeleli babo nazo zonke iititshala zabo; kwaye akuzange kungcwaliswe namnye ngaphandle kokuba babe bangamadoda angamalungisa.
- 18 Ke ngoko baye babanonophela abantu, kwaye babondla ngezinto eziphathelene nobulungisa.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baqalisa ukuphumelela ngokugqithisileyo elizweni; kwaye balibiza ilizwe ngokuba yiHelam.

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye banda kwaye baphumelela ngokugqithisileyo elizweni laseHelam; kwaye baye bakha isixeko, abathi basibiza ngokuba sisixeko saseHelam.

21 Nangona kunjalo iNkosi ibona kulungile ukuba iboluleke abantu bayo; ewe, iya wuvavanya umonde wabo nokholo lwabo.

22 Nangona kunjalo—nabanina obeka ithemba lakhe kuye lowo uya kuphakanyiswa ngomhla wokugqibela. Ewe, kwaye kwaba njalo ke kubantu bakhe.

23 Kuba qaphelani, ndiza kunibonisa okokuba babeziswe ebukhobokeni, kwaye akukho bani owayenako ukubahlangula ngaphandle kweNkosi uThixo wabo, ewe, kwanaye uThixo ka-Abraham noIsake nokaYakobi.

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wabahlangula, kwaye waye wawabonisa amandlakazi akhe kubo, kwaye yaba mikhulu imigcobo yabo.

25 Kuba qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa babekwilizwe laseHelam, ewe, esisekweni saseHelam, ngeli lixa babelima umhlaba macala onke, babona umkhosi wamaLeymenayithi ukwimida yelizwe.

26 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abazalwana baka-Alma basaba ukusuka emasimini, baza bahlanganisana kunye esisekweni saseHelam; kwaye babesoyika kakhulu ngenxa yokubonakala kwamaLeymenayithi.

27 Kodwa uAlma wabheka phambili waza wema phakathi kwabo, kwaye wabakhuthaza ukuba bangoyiki, kodwa bakhumbule iNkosi uThixo wabo uya kubahlangula.

28 Ke ngoko baluthoba uloyiko lwabo, baze baqalisa ukukhala eNkosini ukuba izithambise iintliziyo zamaLeymenayithi, ukuze babasindise, nabafazi babo, nabantwana babo.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yazithambisa iintliziyo zamaLeymenayithi. Kwaye uAlma nabazalwana bakhe babheka phambili kwaye bazinikezela ezandleni zawo; aza amaLeymenayithi alithabatha ilizwe laseHelam.

30 Ngoku imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi, eyayilandele emva kwabantu bakakumkani uLimhayi, yayilahleke entlango kangangeentsuku ezininzi.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

31 Kwaye qaphelani, yabafumana abo babingeleli bakakumkani uNowa, endaweni abathi bayibiza ngokuba yiAmyuloni; kwaye babesebeqalise nokulilawula ilizwe lika-Amyuloni kwaye beqalise nokulima umhlaba.

32 Ngoku inkokeli yabo babingeleli yayinguAmyuloni.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmyuloni waye wawabongoza amaLeymenayithi; kananjalo wathumela abafazi babo, ababe ziintombi zamaLeymenayithi, ukuba bababongoze abazalwana babo, ukuba bangabatshabalalisi abayeni babo.

34 Kwaye amaLeymenayithi aba nemfesane noAmyuloni nabazalwana bakhe, kwaye akabatshabalalisa, ngenxa yabafazi babo.

35 Kwaye uAmyuloni waye wamanyana namaLeymenayithi, kwaye babehamba entlango befuna ilizwe likaNifayi ngeli lixa bebhaqa ilizwe laseHelam, elalimiwe nguAlma nabazalwana bakhe.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi athembisa kuAlma nakubazalwana bakhe, okokuba ukuba banokubakhombisa indlela ekhokelela kulo ilizwe likaNifayi bangabanika ubomi babo nenkululeko yabo.

37 Kodwa emva kokuba uAlma ebakhombisile indlela ekhokelela kulo ilizwe likaNifayi amaLeymenayithi awabanga nakusigcina isithembiso sawo; basuka babeka abalindi balirhanga ilizwe laseHelam, phezu koAlma nabazalwana bakhe.

38 Kwaye intsalela yawo yaya kulo ilizwe lika Nifayi; kwaye inxalenye yabo yabuyela kulo ilizwe laseHelam, kananjalo beza behamba nabafazi nabantwana babalindi ababesele kulo ilizwe.

39 Kwaye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wanikezela kuAmyuloni ukuba abe ngukumkani nomlawuli phezu kwabantu bakhe, ababekulo ilizwe laseHelam; nangona kunjalo akayi kuba mandla akwenza nantoni na ephikisana nentando yokumkani wamaLeymenayithi.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.



## Mozaya 24

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmyuloni azuze ukuthandeka emehlweni okumkani wamaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wanikela kuye nabazalwana bakhe ukuba bonyulwe njengootitshala phezu kwabantu bakhe, ewe, naphezu kwabo bantu ababekulo ilizwe laseShemloni, nakulo ilizwe laseShayilom, nakulo ilizwe lika-Amyuloni.
- 2 Kuba amaLeymenayithi abeluthabathile ulawulo lwawo onke la mazwe; ke ngoko, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi waye wonyula ookumkani phezu kwawo onke la mazwe.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku igama lakhe ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi lalinguLeymeni, ebizwa ngegama likayise; kwaye ke ngoko wayebizwa ngokuba ngukumkani uLeymeni. Kwaye waye engukumkani phezu kwentlaninge yabantu.
- 4 Kwaye wonyula iititshala kubazalwana bakaAmyuloni kuwo onke amazwe awayelawulwa ngabantu bakhe; kwaye njalo ulwimi lukaNifayi lwaqalisa ukufundiswa phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaLeymenayithi.
- 5 Kwaye babengabantu ababehlobene omnye nomye; nangona kunjalo babengamazwi uThixo; nabo abazalwana baka-Amyuloni abazange babafundise nto ngokunxulumene neNkosi uThixo wabo, namthetho kaMoses; bengazange babafundise namazwi ka-Abhinadayi;
- 6 Kodwa babafundisa ukuba bayigcine imbali yabo, nokokuba babe nokubhalelana omnye nomnye.
- 7 Kwaye njalo amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukwanda ngobutyebi, kwaye aqalisa ukurhwebelana omnye nomnye kwaye aba zizityebi, kwaye aqalisa ukuba ngabantu abanamaqhinga nabantu abalumkileyo, ngokobulumko behlabathi, ewe, abantu abanamaqhinga kakhulu, bevuyiswa lulo lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo nokurhwaphiliza, ngaphandle kokuba kuphakathi kwabazalwana babo.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAmyuloni waqalisa ukusebenzisa igunya phezu ko Alma nabazalwana bakhe, waze waqalisa ukumtshutshisa, kwaye wabenza nabantwana bakhe ukuba batshutshise abantwana babo.

## Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

9 Kuba uAmyuloni wayemazi uAlma, okokuba wayengomnye wababingeleli bakakumkani, kwaye nokokuba yaye inguye owayekhohlelwa kumazwi ka-Abhinadayi kwaye waqhutyelwa ngaphandle phambi kokumkani, kwaye ke ngoko wayenomsindo ngakuye; kuba yena wayephantsi kolawulo lukakumkani uLeymeni, nangona kunjalo waye wasebenzisa igunya phezu kwabo, kwaye ebeka imisebenzi enzima phezu kwabo, kwaye wamisa phezu kwabo abaphathi abangqongqo.

10 Kwaye kwenzeka okokuba zibenkulu iimbandezelo zabo kangangokuba bakhala ngamandlakazi kuThixo.

11 Kwaye uAmyuloni wabayalela ukuba baziyeke izikhalo zabo; kwaye wabeka abalindi phezu kwabo ukuba babajongisise, ukuze athi nabanina oya kuthi abize kuThixo abulawe.

12 Kwaye uAlma nabantu bakhe abazange bawaphakamise amazwi abo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo, kodwa baziphalaza iintliziyo zabo kuye; kwaye wayezazi iingcinga zeentliziyo zabo.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lafika kubo ezimbandezelweni zabo, lisithi: Ziphakamiseni iintloko zenu kwaye nithuthuzeleke, kuba ndiyawazi umnqophiso enithe nawenza kum; kwaye ndiya kunqophisana nabantu bam ndize ndibahlangule baphume ebukhobokeni.

14 Kwaye ndiya kuyenza lula kanjalo imithwalo ebekwe phezu kwamagxa enu, ukuze nani ningayiva phezu kwemiqolo yenu, nangalo ilixa enisebukhobokeni ngalo; kwaye oku ndiya kukwenza ukuze nibe nokuma njengamangqina am emva koku; kwaye nokokuba nibe nokwazi ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba mna, Nkosi uThixo, ndiyabavelela abantu bam kwiimbandezelo zabo.

15 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba imithwalo eyayibekwe phezu koAlma nabazalwana bakhe yaye yenziwa lula; ewe, iNkosi yaye yabomeleza ukuze babe nokuyithwala imithwalo yabo ngokulula, kwaye baye bathobeka ngochulumanco nomonde kuyo yonke intando yeNkosi.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put taskmasters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba lwaba lukhulu ukholo lwabo nomonde kangangokuba ilizwi leNkosi lafika kubo kwakhona, lisithi: Thuthuzelekani, kuba ngengomso ndiya kunikhulula ebukhobokeni.
- 17 Kwaye wathi kuAlma: Uya kuhamba phambi kwabo aba bantu, kwaye ndiya kuhamba nawe kwaye ndibahlangule aba bantu ebukhobokeni.
- 18 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma nabantu bakhe ngexesha lasebusuku bahlanganisa imihlambi yabo kunye, kanaanjalo nezinye zeenkozo zabo; ewe, nangabo bonke ubusuku babehlanganisa imihlambi yabo kunye.
- 19 Kwaye ngentsasa iNkosi yenza okokuba amaLeymenayithi afikelwe bubuthongo obunzulu phezu kwawo, ewe, kwaye nabo bonke abaphathi bawo abangqongqo baba sebuthongweni obunzulu.
- 20 Kwaye uAlma nabantu bakhe bahamba basinga entlango; kwaye bakuba behambe imini yonke bazigxumeka iintente zabo entlanjeni, kwaye bayibiza intlambo Alma, ngenxa yokuba wayikhokela indlela yabo esinga entlango.
- 21 Ewe, kwaye kuyo intlambo ka-Alma bayiphalaza imibulelo yabo kuThixo ngenxa yokuba waba nenceba kubo, kwaye wayenza lula imithwalo yabo, kwaye wayebakhulule baphuma ebukhobokeni; kuba babesebukhobokeni, kwaye kwakungekho bani owayenako ukubahlangula ngaphandle kokuba ibe yiNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 22 Kwaye banikela imibulelo kuThixo, ewe, onke amadoda abo nabo bonke abafazi babo nabo bonke abantwana babo ababekwazi ukuthetha bawaphakamisa amazwi abo ekumbongeni uThixo wabo.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku iNkosi yathi kuAlma: Khawuleza wena naba bantu niphume kweli lizwe, kuba amaLeymenayithi avukile kwaye ayanisukela; ke ngoko phumani kweli lizwe, kwaye ndiya kuwamisa amaLeymenayithi kule ntlambo ukuze angagqithi ekusukeleni aba bantu.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bemka baphuma entlanjeni, kwaye baluthabatha uhambo lwabo besinga entlango.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their taskmasters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

25 Kwaye emva kokuba besentlango iintsuku  
ezilishumi elinambini bafika kulo ilizwe  
laseZarahemla; kwaye ukumkani uMozaya naye  
kanjalo waye wabamkela ngovuyo.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve  
days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king  
Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

## Mozaya 25

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ukumkani uMozaya wenza okokuba bonke abantu bahlanganisane kunye.
- 2 Ngoku babengebaninzi kangako abangabantwana bakaNifayi, okanye bengebaninzi kangako abo babeyinzala kaNifayi, njengokuba babenjalo abantu bakaZarahemla, owayeyinzala kaMyuleki, kwaye nabo babeze naye entlango.
- 3 Kwaye babengebaninzi kangako abangabantu bakaNifayi nabangabantu bakaZarahemla njengoko babenjalo abamaLeymenayithi; ewe, babengesiso nesiqingatha sobuninzi bawo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku bonke abantu bakaNifayi babehlanganisene kunye, kananjalo nabo bonke abantu bakaZarahemla, kwaye babehlanganisene kunye bengamaqela amabini.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya waye wafunda, kwaye wenza okokuba kufundwe, iimbali zikaZenif kubantu bakhe; ewe, wazifunda iimbali zabantu bakaZenif, ukususela kwilixa abathi balishiya ilizwe laseZarahemla bade babuya kwakhona.
- 6 Kanjalo wafunda ingxelo ka-Alma nabazalwana babo, nazo zonke iimbandezelo zabo, ukususela kwilixa ababelishiya ilizwe laseZarahemla kwade kwaba lilixa abathi babuyela kwakhona.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uMozaya ephezile ukufunda iimbali, abantu bakhe ababesele elizweni baba nokumangaliseka nokukhwankqiseka.
- 8 Kuba bengakwazi emabakucinge; kuba xa babebona abo babehlangulwe baphuma ebukhobokeni baye bazaliswa luvuyo olugqithisileyo.
- 9 Kwaye kwakhona, xa babecinga ngabazalwana babo ababulawa ngamaLeymenayithi bazaliswa lusizi, kwaye bade baphalaza iinyembezi ezininzi zosizi.
- 10 Kwaye kwakhona, xa babecinga ngokulunga okukhawulezayo kukaThixo, namandla akhe ekuhlanguleni uAlma nabazalwana bakhe baphuma ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi nasebukhobokeni, baye bawaphakamisa amazwi abo kwaye banikela imibulelo kuThixo.

## Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

- 11 Kwaye kwakhona, xa babecinga ngamaLeymenayithi, awaye ngabazalwana babo, ngemo yabo yesono neyokudyobheka, bazaliswa yintlungu nentuthumbo ngentlalontle yemiphefumlo yabo.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abo babengabantwana baka-Amyuloni nabazalwana bakhe, ababethathe iintombi zamaLeymenayithi ukuba zibe ngabafazi, babengakholisekanga yindlela yokuziphatha kwabo ooyise, kwaye ababi safuna ukuzibiza ngamagama ooyise, ke ngoko bazithabathela igama likaNifayi, ukuze babe nokubizwa ngokuba ngabantwana bakaNifayi kwaye babalelwe phakathi kwabo babebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku bonke abantu baseZarahemla babebalwa namaNifayithi, kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba ubukumkani babunganikwa namnye ngaphandle kwabo babeyinzala kaNifayi.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMozaya ephezile ukuthetha nokubafundela abantu, wanqwenela ukuba uAlma naye athethe nabantu.
- 15 Kwaye uAlma waye wathetha nabo, bakuba behlanganisene kunye bengamaqela amakhulu, kwaye wasuka kwelinye iqela waya kwelinye, eshumayela ebantwini inguquko nokholo eNkosini.
- 16 Kwaye waye wabayala abantu bakaLimhayi nabazalwana bakhe, bonke aba babekhululwe baphuma ebukhobokeni, ukuba bakhumbule okokuba yayiyiNkosi eyabakhululayo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma ebafundisile abantu izinto ezininzi, kwaye ephezile ukuthetha nabo, ukumkani uLimhayi wanqwenela ukuba abe nokubhaptizwa; kwaye bonke abantu bakhe banqwenela ukuba bangabhaptizwa nabo.
- 18 Ke ngoko, uAlma waye wabheka phambili emanzini kwaye wababhaptiza; ewe, waye wababhaptiza ngohlobo awenza ngalo kubazalwana bakhe emanzini aseMormoni; ewe, kwaye ngokobuninzi babo awathi wababhaptiza baye baba ngabebandla likaThixo; kwaye oku kungenxa yenkolo yabo kumazwi ka-Alma.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uMozaya wamvumela uAlma ukuba abenako ukumisa amabandla kulo lonke ilizwe laseZarahemla; waza wamnika igunya lokuba abeke ababingeleli nootitshala phezu kwebandla ngalinye.
- 20 Ke ngoko oku kwenziwa ngenxa yokuba babebaninzi kakhulu abantu kangangokuba babengenako ukulawulwa ngutitshala omnye; bengenako ukuliva bonke ilizwi likaThixo kwindibano enye;
- 21 Ke ngoko baye bahlanganisana kunye ngamaqela ahlukeneyo, awayebizwa ngokuba ngamabandla; ibandla ngalinye linababingeleli balo nootitshala balo, kwaye umbingeleli ngamnye eshumayela ilizwi ngokwendlela elalithethwe ngayo kuye ngomlomo ka-Alma.
- 22 Kwaye njalo, nangona kwakukho amabandla amaninzi onke ayelibandla elinye, ewe, kwanalo ibandla likaThixo; kuba kwaye kungekho nto yayishunyayelwa kuwo onke amabandla ngaphandle kokuba ibe yinguquko nokholo kuThixo.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku kwaye kukho amabandla asixhenxe elizweni laseZarahemla. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nobanina ababengqwenela ukuthabathela kubo igama likaKrestu, okanye likaThixo, baye bazibandakanya namabandla kaThixo;
- 24 Kwaye babizwa ngokuba bangabantu bakaThixo. Kwaye neNkosi yaye yawuthulula uMoya wayo phezu kwabo, baze basikeleleka, kwaye baphumelela elizweni.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

## Mozaya 26

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba babebaninzi abesizukulwana esisakhulayo ababengenako ukuwaqonda amazwi kakumkani uBhenjamin, kuba babengabantwana abancinane ngelixa awayethetha kubantu bakhe; kwaye babengakholelwa kuso isithethe sooyise.
- 2 Babengakukholelwa okwakuthethiwe ngokunxulumene novuko lwabafileyo, bengakholelwa nangokunxulumene nokuza kukaKrestu.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo babengenako ukuliqonda ilizwi likaThixo; kwaye iintliziyo zabo zaziqadekisiwe.
- 4 Kwaye babengafuni ukubhaptizwa; bengafuni nokuzibandakanya nebandla. Kwaye babengabantu abohlukileyo elukholweni lwabo, kwaye bahlala benjalo nasemva koko, nakuyo imo yabo yenyama neyesono; kuba babengafuni ukuyibiza iNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku kulawulo lukaMozaya babengesiso nesiqingatha ubuninzi abangakholwayo njengabantu bakaThixo; kodwa ngenxa yeempikiswano phakathi kwabazalwana baba baninzi ngakumbi.
- 6 Kuba kwenzekile okokuba baye balahlekisa abaninzi ngamazwi abo anyhwalazayo, ababesebandleni, kwaye bababangela ukuba benze izono ezininzi; ke ngoko kwaba yimfuneko okokuba abo bathi benza isono, ababesebandleni, bolulekwe libandla.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baziswa phambi kwababingeleli, kwaye banikezelwa kubabingeleli ngotitshala; baza ababingeleli babazisa phambi koAlma, owayengumbingeleli omkhulu.
- 8 Ngoku ukumkani uMozaya wayenike uAlma igunya phezu kwebandla.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wayengazi amakakwenze ngokunxulumene nabo; kodwa kwakukho amangqina amaninzi ngokuchasene nabo; ewe, abantu baphakama kwaye bangqina ngobugwenxa babo ngobuninzi.

## Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.



10 Ngoku kwakungazange kubekho nto injalo ngaphambili ebandleni; ke ngoko uAlma wakhathazeka emoyeni wakhe, kwaye wenza ukuba baziswe phambi kokumkani.

11 Kwaye wathi kuye ukumkani: Qaphela, naba abaninzi esibazise phambi kwakho, abatyholwa ngabazalwana babo; ewe, kwaye bafunyenwe besenza iintlobo ngeentlobo zobugwenxa. Kwaye abaguquki kubo ubugwenxa babo; ke ngoko sibazise phambi kwakho, ukuze ube nokubagweba ngokwamatyala abo.

12 Kodwa ukumkani uMozaya wathi kuAlma: Qaphela, andibagwebi; ke ngoko ndibanikezela ezandleni zakho ukuba bagwetywe.

13 Kwaye ngoku umoya ka-Alma wakhathazeka kwakhona; kwaye wahamba waze wabuza eNkosini ukuba angenza ntoni na malunga nalo mba, kuba waba noloyiko lokuba hleze enze okuphosakeleyo emehlweni kaThixo.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ewuthulule umphefumlo wakhe wonke kuThixo, ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuye, lisithi:

15 Usikelelwe wena, Alma, kwaye basikelelwe abo babaptizwa emanzini aseMormoni. Usikelelekile ngenxa yokholo lwakho olugqithileyo kumazwi kuphela esicaka sam uAbhinadayi.

16 Kwaye basikelelekile nabo ngenxa yokholo lwabo olugqithileyo kumazwi kuphela othe wawathetha kubo.

17 Kwaye usikelelwe wena ngenxa yokuba umise ibandla phakathi kwaba bantu; kwaye baya kuzinziswa, kwaye baya kuba ngabantu bam.

18 Ewe, basikelelekile aba bantu bavumayo ukubizwa ngegama lam; kuba baya kubizwa ngegama lam; kwaye banga bam.

19 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba undibuzile malunga nomoni, usikelelekile.

20 Wena usisicaka sam; kwaye ndenza umnqophiso nawe wokuba uya kubufumana ubomi obungunaphakade; kwaye uya kundisebenzela kwaye ubheke phambili egameni lam, kwaye uya kuhlanganisa kunye izimvu zam.

21 Kwaye lowo uya kuliphulaphula ilizwi lam uya kuba yimvu yam; kwaye lowo uya kwamkelwa kulo ibandla, kwaye lowo ndiya kumamkela kanjalo.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

22 Kuba qaphela, eli libandla lam; nabani na obhaptizwayo uya kubhaptizelwa enguqukweni. Kwaye nabani na oya kuthi umamkele uya kukholelwa egameni lam; kwaye yena ndiya kumxolela ngokukhululekileyo.

23 Kuba ndim othabathela kum izono zehlabathi; kuba ndim obadalileyo; kwaye ndim onika kulowo ukholwayo kude kube sekupheleni nendawo esandleni sam sokunene.

24 Kuba qaphela, ngegama lam baya bizwa; kwaye ukuba bayandazi baya kuza ngaphambili, kwaye baya kufumana indawo ngonaphakade esandleni sam sokunene.

25 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba xa ixilongo lesibini liya kukhala ke abo bangazange bandazi baya kuza ngaphambili kwaye baya kuma phambi kwam.

26 Kwaye ke baya kundazi ukuba ndiyiNkosi uThixo wabo, ukuba ndinguMkhululi wabo; kodwa abasayi kukhululwa.

27 Kwaye ke ndiya kubazisa okokuba andizange ndabazi; kwaye baya kumka baye kumlilo wanaphakade olungiselelwe umtyholi neengelosi zakhe.

28 Ke ngoko ndithi kuni, lowo ongayi kuliphulaphula ilizwi lam, onjalo aniyi kumamkela kulo ibandla lam, kuba yena andiyi kumamkela ngomhla wokugqibela.

29 Ke ngoko ndithi kuwe, Hamba; kwaye nabanina othi one ngokuchasene nam, lowo uya kumgweba ngokwezono azenzileyo; kwaye ukuba uyazivuma izono zakhe phambi kwakho nakum, kwaye aguquke ngentliziyo yakhe enyanisekileyo, lowo uya kumxolela, kwaye nam ndiya kumxolela kanjalo.

30 Ewe, kwaye ngalo lonke ixesha abantu bam beguquka ndiya kubaxolela iziphoso zabo ngokuchasene nam.

31 Kananjalo niya kuxolelana omnye nomnye iziphoso zenu; kuba inene ndithi kuni, lowo ungamxoleliyo ummelwane wakhe iziphoso zakhe xa esithi uyaguquka, lowo uzizisela ukugwetywa.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whosoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

- 32 Ngoku ndithi kuwe, Hamba; nabani na onjalo ongayi kuguquka ezonweni zakhe akayi kubalelwa phakathi kwabantu bam; kwaye oku kuya kuqwalaselwa ukususela ngeli lixa ukuya phambili.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile akuba uAlma ewavile la mazwi wawabhala phantsi ukuze abenawo, nokuze abenako ukubagweba abantu belo bandla ngokwemiyalelo kaThixo.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wahamba waza wabagweba abo bafunyanwa besenza ubugwenxa, ngokwelizwi leNkosi.
- 35 Kwaye nobanina abaguqukayo ezonweni zabo baza bazivuma, abo waye wababalela phakathi kwabantu bebandla;
- 36 Kwaye abo babengazivumi izono zabo kwaye baguquke kubugwenxa babo, abo abazange babalelwe phakathi kwabantu bebandla, kwaye amagama abo acinywa.
- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma waye wayilawula yonke imicimbi yebandla; waza baqalisa kwakhona ukuba noxolo nokuphumelela ngokugqithisileyo kuyo imicimbi yebandla, behamba ngobulumko phambi koThixo, besamkela abaninzi, kwaye bebhaptiza abaninzi.
- 38 Kwaye ngoku zonke ezi zinto uAlma nabalingane bakhe emsebenzini ababelawula phezu kwebandla bazenza, behamba ngayo yonke inkuthalo, befundisa ilizwi likaThixo kuzo zonke izinto, bebandezeleka ngazo zonke iintlobo zeembandezelo, betshutshiswa ngabo bonke abo babengengabo abebandla likaThixo.
- 39 Kwaye baye babaluleka abazalwana babo; kwaye nabo balulekwa kanjalo, wonke umntu ngelizwi likaThixo, ngokwezono zakhe, okanye ngokwezono athe wazenza, beyalelwa nguThixo ukuba bathandaze bangayeki, kwaye nokokuba banike imibulelo kuzo zonke izinto.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

## Mozaya 27

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba iintshutshiso ezazibekwa ebandleni ngabangakholwayo zabankulu kakhulu kangangokuba ibandla laqalisa ukumbombozela, nokukhalaza kuzo iinkokeli zabo malunga nalo mba; kwaye baye bakhalaza kuAlma. Waza uAlma wayibeka imeko phambi kokumkani wabo, uMozaya. Waza uMozaya wabonisana nababingeleli bakhe.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uMozaya wathumela isibhengezo kulo lonke ilizwe elingqongileyo sokokuba kungabikho nabani na ongakholwayo otshutshisa nawuphi na ongowebandla likaThixo.
- 3 Kwaye kwabakho umyalelo ongqongqo kuwo onke amabandla wokokuba kungabikho zintshutshiso phakathi kwabo, wokokuba makubekho ukulingana phakathi kwabo bonke abantu;
- 4 Okokuba makungavunyelwa kratshi nabukhakhamelela buphazamise uxolo lwabo; wokokuba wonke umntu makamthabathe ummelwane wakhe njengaye, besebenza ngezandla zabo ukuze bazixhase.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye bonke ababingeleli babo neetitshala bamele basebenze ngezandla zabo ekuzixhaseni, kuzo zonke iimeko ngaphandle kokuba kuyagulwa, okanye kwimfuno engamandla; kwaye ngokwenza ezi zinto, baye banda elubabalweni lukaThixo.
- 6 Kwaye kwaqalisa ubukho boxolo olukhulu kwakhona elizweni; kwaye nabantu baqalisa ukuba baninzi kakhulu, kwaye baqalisa ukusasazeka ngaphandle phezu kobuso bomhlaba, ewe, ngasemantla nasemazantsi, ngasempuma nangasentshona, besakha izixeko ezikhulu needolophana kuzo zonke iimbombo zelizwe.
- 7 Kwaye iNkosi yaye yabavelela kwaye yabaphumelelisa, kwaye baba ngabantu abaninzi nabazizityebi.

## Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

- 8 Ngoku oonyana bakaMozaya babebalelwa phakathi kwabangakholwayo; kwa nomnye woonyana baka-Alma wayebalelwa phakathi kwabo, yena ke ebizwa ngokuba nguAlma, ngoyise; nangona kunjalo, waba yindoda ekhohlakeleyo kakhulu kwaye nenqula izithixo. Wayeyindoda eliciko, kwaye ethetha ngokunyhwala okukhulu ebantwini; ke ngoko wabakhokelela abantu abaninzi ekulandeleni uhlobo lwakhe lobugwenxa.
- 9 Kwaye waba sisithintelo esikhulu ekwandeni kwebandla likaThixo; eziba iintliziyo zabantu; ebangela iimpikiswano ezininzi phakathi kwabantu; enika ithuba kulo utshaba lukaThixo ukuba lusebenzise igunya lalo phezu kwabo.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ngelixa awayehamba-hamba esiya kutshabalalisa ibandla likaThixo, kuba wayehamba-hamba ngasese kunye noonyana bakaMozaya ezama ukutshabalalisa ibandla, kwaye elahlekisa abantu beNkosi, ephikisa imiyalelo kaThixo, okanye nokumkani ngokwakhe—
- 11 Kwaye njengoko benditshilo kuni, ngeli lixa babehamba-hamba bevukela ngokuchasene noThixo, qaphelani, ingelosi yeNkosi yabonakala kubo; kwaye yehla ngokungathi lilifu; kwaye yathetha ngokungathi lilizwi lendudumo, elathi lawubangela umhlaba ababemi phezu kwawo ukuba ushukume;
- 12 Kwaye baba nokukhwankqiseka okukhulu, kangangokuba bawa emhlabeni, kwaye abawaqonda amazwi eyathi yawathetha kubo.
- 13 Nangona kunjalo yadanduluka kwakhona, isithi: Alma, phakama kwaye ume ngaphambili, kuba kungani ukuba ulitshutshise ibandla likaThixo? Kuba iNkosi ithe: Eli libandla lam, kwaye ndiya kulizinzisa; kwaye akukho nanto iya kulibhukuqa, ngaphandle kokuba kube kukona kwabantu bam.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

- 14 Kwaye kwakhona, ingelosi yathi: Qaphela, iNkosi iyivile imithandazo yabantu bayo, kwaye nemithandazo yomkhonzi wayo, kanjalo uAlma, onguyihlo; kuba uthandaze ngokholo olukhulu malunga nawe ukuze ube nokuziswa kulwazi lwenyaniso; ke ngoko, kungesi sizathu ndizile ukuza kukuqinisekisa ngamandla negunya likaThixo, ukuze imithandazo yabakhonzi bakhe ibe nokuphendulwa ngokokholo lwabo.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ungaphikisana namandla kaThixo? Kuba qaphela, ingaba ilizwi lam aliwushukumisanga na umhlaba? Kwaye ingaba akundiboni mna kanjalo phambi kwakho? Kwaye ndithunyelwe ndivela kuThixo.
- 16 Ngoku ndithi kuwe: Hamba, kwaye ukhumbule ubuthinjwa booyihlo elizweni laseHelam, kwaye naselizweni likaNifayi; kwaye ukhumbule nezinto ezinkulu athe wabenzela zona; kuba babesebukhobokeni, kwaye ubahlangule. Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuwe, Alma, hamba indlela yakho, kwaye ungazami ukulitshabalalisa ibandla kwakhona, ukuze imithandazo yabo ibe nokuphendulwa, kwaye ukwenze oku nokuba wena ngokwakho unqwenela ukuba ukhutshelwe ngaphandle.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba la abengamazwi okugqibela athi athethwa yingelosi kuAlma, yaza yemka.
- 18 Kwaye ngoku uAlma nabo babenaye bawa kwakhona emhlabeni, kuba lalulukhulu ukhwankqiso lwabo; kuba ngamehlo abo bayibona ingelosi yeNkosi; kwaye nelizwi layo lalinje ngendudumo, eyathi yawushukumisa umhlaba; kwaye babesazi ukuba kwakungekho nanto ngaphandle kwamandla kaThixo awayenako ukuwushukumisa umhlaba kwaye iwubangele ukuba ungcangcazele ngokungathi ungohlukana kubini.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

- 19 Kwaye ngoku ukhwankqiseko luka-Alma lwalulukhulu kangangokuba waba sisimumu, ukuze angabinako nokuwuvula umlomo wakhe; ewe, waba nokutyhafa, kangangokuba akazange abenako nokushukumisa izandla zakhe; ke ngoko wathatyathwa ngabo babenaye, waza wathwalwa engenakuzenzela nto, wada waya kubekwa phambi kukayise.
- 20 Kwaye bayichaza kuyise wakhe yonke into eyenzekayo kubo; waza uyise wagcoba, kuba wayesazi okokuba yayingamandla kaThixo.
- 21 Kwaye wenza okokuba isihlwele sihlanganiswe kunye ukuze sibe nokungqina oko iNkosi ithe yakwenzela unyana wakhe, kananjalo nabo babenaye.
- 22 Kwaye wenza okokuba ababingeleli baqokelelane kunye; kwaye baqalisa ukuzila ukutya, nokuthandaza kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo ukuze awuvule umlomo ka-Alma, ukuze abenako ukuthetha, kananjalo nokokuba amalungu akhe abe nokufumana ukomelela kwawo—ukuze amehlo abantu abenako ukuvuleka abone kwaye bazi ngokulunga nozuko lukaThixo.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba bezile ukutya baza bathandaza kangangesithuba seentsuku ezimbini nobusuku obubini, amalungu ka-Alma akufumana ukomelela kwawo, waza waphakama wema kwaye waqalisa ukuthetha nabo, ebacela ukuba bathuthuzeleke:
- 24 Kuba, wathi, Ndiguqukile kuzo izono zam, kwaye ndikhululwe yiNkosi; qaphelani ndizelwe ngokoMoya.
- 25 Yaza iNkosi yathi kum: Musa ukumangala ukuba lonke uluntu, ewe, amadoda nabafazi, zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi nabantu, kufuneka bazalwe kwakhona; ewe, bazalwe ngokukaThixo, baguqulwe kwimo yabo yenyama neyokuwa, babe kwimo yobulungisa, bengabakhululweyo nguThixo, babengoonyana neentombi zakhe;
- 26 Kwaye njalo baba zizidalwa ezitsha; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba bayakwenza oku, abanako nangayiphina indlela ukubulidla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea, born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

- 27 Ndithi kuni, ngaphandle kokuba kube kunjalo, kufuneka bakhutshelwe ngaphandle; kwaye oku ndiyakwazi, ngenxa yokuba ndandisele ndiza kukhutshelwa ngaphandle.
- 28 Nangona kunjalo, emva kokunyovula kwiinkxwalelo ezininzi, ndiguquka ndisondele ekufeni, iNkosi ngengeba ibone kunqweneleka ukuba indixhwile ndiphume ekuvutheni ngonaphakade, kwaye ndizalwe ngokukaThixo.
- 29 Umphefumlo wam ukhululwe kuyo inyongo yobukrakra namakhamandela obugwenxa. Ndandikweyona nzonzobila imnyama; kodwa ngoku ndibona ukukhanya okumangalisayo kukaThixo. Umphefumlo wam wawuthunjiswa yintuthumbo yanaphakade; kodwa ndixhwiliwe, kwaye nomphefumlo wam awusekho zintlungwini.
- 30 Ndamala uMkhululi wam, kwaye ndakukhanyela oko kwakuthethiwe ngoobawo; kodwa ngoku, ukuze babenako ukubona-ngenxengaphambili okokuba uya kuza, kwaye nokokuba uyazikhumbula zonke izidalwa zakhe azidalileyo, uya kuzibonakalisa kuzo zonke.
- 31 Ewe, onke amadolo aya kugoba, kwaye zonke iilwimi zixele phambi kwakhe. Ewe, nangawo umhla wokugqibela, xa bonke abantu beya kuma ukuba bagwetywe nguye, ngoko baya kuxela okokuba unguThixo; ngoko baya kuxela, abo bahleli bengenaye uThixo ehlabathini, okokuba isigwebo sakhe sesohlwayo sanaphakade silungile phezu kwabo; kwaye baya kungcangazela, kwaye bankwantye, kwaye arhwaqele ngaphantsi kokutshawuza kweliso lakhe elibona konke.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma waqalisa ukususela ngelo xesha ukuya phambili ukufundisa abantu, kwaye abo babekunye noAlma ngelixa ingelosi ibonakala kubo, bahamba kuzo zonke iindawo kulo lonke ilizwe, bezivakalisa kubo bonke abantu izinto abathi baziva kwaye bazibona, kwaye beshumayela ilizwi likaThixo kwiinkxwaleko ezininzi, betshutshiswa kabuhlungu ngabo babengakholwa, bebethwa ngabaninzi babo.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.



- 33 Kodwa nangona zinjalo zonke ezi zinto baye banika intuthuzelo enkulu kulo ibandla, besomeleza ukholo lwabo, kwaye bebakhuthaza ngokuzeka kade umsindo kwaye nangemigudu enzima ukuba bayigcine imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 34 Kwaye abane kubo babengoonyana bakaMozaya; kwaye amagama abo aye enguAmon, noAron, noOmna, noHimnayi; la ngamagama oonyana bakaMozaya.
- 35 Kwaye bahamba kulo lonke ilizwe laseZarahemla, naphakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababephantsi kolawula lukakumkani uMozaya, bezama ngenzondelelo ukulungisa wonke umonakalo abathi bawenza ebandleni, bevuma zonke izono zabo, kwaye bevakalisa zonke izinto abazibonayo, kwaye becacisa iziprofetho nezibhalo kubo bonke ababenqwenela ukuziva.
- 36 Kwaye njalo babezizixhobo zokusebenza ezandleni zikaThixo ekuziseni abaninzi kulwazi lwenyaniso, ewe, kulwazi loMkhululi wabo.
- 37 Kwaye hayi ukusikeleleka kwabo! Kuba baye bavakalisa uxolo; baye bavakalisa iindaba ezilungileyo zokulunga; kwaye baye bavakalisa ebantwini ukuba iNkosi iyalawula.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

## Mozaya 28

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba oonyana bakaMozaya bezenzile zonke ezi zinto, bathabatha inani elincinane kunye nabo baza babuyela kuyise, ukumkani, kwaye banqwenela kuye ukuba abavumele ukuba babenako, kunye nabo abo babe bonyule, ukuhamba bonyukele kulo ilizwe likaNifayi ukuze babe nokushumayela izinto abathi baziva, nokokuba babe nokugqithisa ilizwi likaThixo kubazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi—
- 2 Ukuze mhlawumbi bangabanako ukubazisa kulwazi lweNkosi uThixo wabo, kwaye babaqinisekise ngobugwenxa booyise; kwaye nokokuba mhlawumbi bangabanako ukubanyanga kwintyo yabo kumaNifayithi, ukuze nabo kanjalo babenokwenziwa ukuba bagcobe kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo, ukuze babe nokuba nobuhlobo komnye nomnye, kwaye nokuze kungabikho zimbambano kwakhona kulo lonke ilizwe eyathi iNkosi uThixo wabo yabanika lona.
- 3 Ngoku babenqwenela ukuba usindiso luvakaliswe kuzo zonke izidalwa, kuba babe-ngenako ukuyithwala into yokuba nawuphina umphefumlo womntu utshabalale; ewe, kwa ingcinga ngokwayo yokuba nawuphina umphefumlo umele unyamezele intuthumbo engenasiphelo yaye yababangela ukuba bangcangcazele kwaye bankwantye.
- 4 Kwaye wasebenza njalo uMoya weNkosi phezu kwabo, kuba babe ngabona boni babekhohlakele kakhulu. Kwaye iNkosi ibone kunqweneleka ngengeba yayo engenasiphelo ukuba ibasindise; nangona kunjalo bahlungiswa yintuthumbo enkulu yomphefumlo ngenxa yobugwenxa babo, bebandezeleke kakhulu kwaye besoyika ukuba bamele ukukhutshelwa ngaphandle ngonaphakade.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bazithethelela kuyise iintsuku ezininzi ukuba babe nokuhamba benyukele kwilizwe likaNifayi.
- 6 Kwaye ukumkani uMozaya waya waza wabuza eNkosini ukuba angabavumela na oonyana bakhe ukuba bahambe benyukele phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi ukuya kushumayela ilizwi.

## Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

- 7 Kwaye iNkosi yathi kuMozaya: Bavumele benyuke, kuba abaninzi baya kukholelwa kumazwi abo, kwaye baya kufumana ubomi obungunaphakade; ndaye ndiya kubahlangula oonyana bakho ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya wavuma ukuba babe nokuhamba kwaye benze nje ngokwe sicelo sabo.
- 9 Kwaye baluthabatha uhambo lwabo ukusinga entlango ukuze benyuke ukuya kushumayela ilizwi phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi; kwaye ndiza kunika ingxelo yeenkqubo zabo emva koku.
- 10 Ngoku ukumkani uMozaya wayengenamntu wokunikela ubukumkani phezu kwakhe, kuba kwaye kungekho namnye koonyana bakhe owayeza kubamkela ubukumkani.
- 11 Ke ngoko wazithabatha iimbali ezazikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu, kananjalo namacwecwe kaNifayi, nazo zonke izinto ebeziginile kwaye ezilondolozile ngokwemiyalelo kaThixo, emva kokuba eziguqule kwaye enze okokuba zibhalwe iimbali ezaye zikumacwecwe egolide ezazifunyenwe ngabantu bakaLimhayi, ezazinikezelwe kuye ngesandla sikaLimhayi;
- 12 Kwaye oku wakwenza ngenxa yenkxalabo enkulu yabantu bakhe; kuba babenqwanela ngaphaya komlinganiselo ukwazi malunga nabo bantu babetshatyalalisiwe.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku wawaguqula ngokusebenzisa amatye amabini awayeqanyangelwe kwizakhe ezibini yezikhangelo.
- 14 Ngoku ezi zinto zazilungiselelwe kwasekuqalekeni, kwaye zazinikezelwa ukuhla zisuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana, ngenjongo yokuguqulwa kweelwimi;
- 15 Kwaye zazigcinwe kwaye zilondolozwe ngesandla seNkosi, ukuze abe nokwenza kwaziswe kuso sonke isidalwa esiya kuthi silime eli lizwe ngobugwenxa namasikizi abo aba bantu;
- 16 Kwaye nabani na onazo ezi zinto ubizwa ngokuba yimboni, ukulandela uhlobo lwamaxesha akudala.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

17 Ngoku emva kokuba uMozaya egqibile ukuguqula ezi mbali, qaphelani, zazinika ingxelo yabantu abatshatyalaliswayo, ukususela kwilixa abatshatyalaliswa ngalo ukubuyela emva ekwakhiweni kwenkcochoyi enkulu, ngelixa iNkosi ibhidanisa ulwimi lwabantu kwaye basasazelwa ngaphandle phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba, ewe, kwa nokusuka kwelo lixa ukubuya umva kude kube sekudalweni kuka-Adam.

18 Ngoku le ngxelo yaye yababangela abantu bakaMozaya ukuba babelusizi ngokugqithisileyo, ewe, bazaliswa lusizi; nangona kunjalo yabanika ulwazi, into leyo eyabagcobisayo.

19 Kwaye le ngxelo iya kubhalwa emva koku; kuba qaphelani, kuyimfuneko okokuba bonke abantu bazazi zonke izinto ezibhalwe kuyo le ngxelo.

20 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko senditshilo kuni, okokuba emva kokuba ukumkani uMozaya ezenzile ezi zinto, wawathabatha amacwecwe obhedu, nazo zonke izinto awayezigcinile, kwaye wazinikezela kuAlma, owayengunyana ka-Alma; ewe, zonke iimbali, kwanjalo nezitoliki, kwaye wazinikela kuye, kwaye wamyalela ukuba umele azigcine kwaye azilondoloze, kwanjalo agcine imbali yabantu, azinikezele ukuhla ukusuka kwesinye isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye, nanjengoko zazinikelwe ukuhla ukusuka kwilixa uLihayi elishiya elaseYerusalem.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

## Mozaya 29

- 1 Ngoku akuba uMozaya ekwenzile oku wathumela kulo lonke ilizwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu, enqwenela ukwazi umnqweno wabo malunga nalowo umele ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi labantu lafika, lisithi: Sinqwenela ukuba uAron unyana wakho abe ngukumkani nomlawuli wethu.
- 3 Ngoku uAron ebehambile wenyukela elizweni likaNifayi, ke ngoko ukumkani akabanga nako ukunikela ubukumkani phezu kwakhe; noAron akavumanga ukubuthabathela phezu kwakhe ubukumkani; bengenamnqweno nabo abanye oonyana bakaMozaya ukuthabathela phezu kwabo ubukumkani.
- 4 Ke ngoko ukumkani uMozaya wathumela kwakhona phakathi kwabantu, ewe, kwanalo ilizwi elibhaliweyo walithumela phakathi kwabantu. Kwaye la ngamazwi awayebhaliwe, esithi:
- 5 Qaphelani, Owu nina bantu bam, okanye bazalwana bam, kuba ndinithatha ngolo hlobo, ndinqwenela ukuba nimele ukusicingisisa isizathu enibizelwe ukusicingisisa—kuba ninqwenela ukuba nibe nokumkani.
- 6 Ngoku ndiyanazisa okokuba lowo ubukumkani bulilungelo lakhe walile, kwaye akasayi kubuthabathela phezu kwakhe ubukumkani.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku ukuba kufanele konyulwe omnye endaweni yakhe, qaphelani ndinoloyiko hleze kuvuke iimbambano phakathi kwenu. Kwaye ngubani owaziyo mhlawumbi unyana wam, obulilungelo lakhe ubukumkani, angaguquka abe nomsindo kwaye arhuqele inxenye yaba bantu emva kwakhe, into leyo engabangela iimfazwe neembambano phakathi kwenu, ezingaba ngunobangela wokuphalazwa kwegazi okuninzi kwaye zigqwethe indlela yeNkosi, ewe, kwaye zitshabalalise nemiphefumlo yabantu abaninzi.
- 8 Ngoku ndithi kuni masilumke kwaye sizicingisise ezi zinto, kuba asinalo ilungelo lokutshabalalisa unyana wam, singakufanelanga nokubanalo ilungelo lokutshabalalisa omnye ukuba unokonyulwa endaweni yakhe.

## Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

- 9 Kwaye ukuba unyana wam angaguqukela kwikratshi lakhe kwakhona nezinto ezililize angazikhumbula izinto awazithethayo, aze awabange amalungelo akhe ebukumkanini, into leyo engambangela okokuba yena naba bantu kanjalo benze izono ezininzi.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku masibe nobulumko kwaye sihlabe-sikhangele phambili kwezi zinto, kwaye senze oko kuya kuthi kuqinisekise uxolo lwabo aba bantu.
- 11 Ke ngoko ndiya kuba ngukumkani wenu yonke imihla yam eseleyo; nangona kunjalo, masonryule abagwebi, ukuba bagwebe aba bantu ngokomthetho wethu; kwaye siza kuyilungelelanisa okutsha imicimbi yaba bantu, kuba siya konyula amadoda anobulumko abe ngabagwebi, abaya kubagweba aba bantu ngokwemiyalelo kaThixo.
- 12 Ngoku kulungile ukuba umntu agwetywe nguThixo kunokuba agwetywe ngumntu, kuba izigwebo zikaThixo zisoloko zibubulungisa, kodwa izigwebo zomntu azisoloko zibubulungisa.
- 13 Ke ngoko, ukuba bekunokwenzeka ukuba nibenawo amadoda anobulungisa abe ngookumkani benu, anokumisa imithetho kaThixo, kwaye abagwebe aba bantu ngokwemiyalelo yakhe, ewe, ukuba beninokuba namadoda abe ngookumkani benu anokwenza nanjengobawo uBhenjamin wenzela aba bantu—Ndithi kuni, ukuba oku bekunokusoloko kunjalo ke bekuya kuba yimfuneko ukuba nisoloko nisiba nookumkani ukuba balawule phezu kwenu.
- 14 Kwaye nam ngokwam ndisebenze ngawo onke amandla nobuchule ebendinabo, ukunifundisa imiyalelo kaThixo, nokumisela uxolo kulo lonke ilizwe, ukuze kungabikho zimfazwe nazimbambano, kungabikho busela, nakurhwaphiliza, nakubulala, nalo naluphina uhlobo lobugwenxa;
- 15 Kwaye nabani na owenze ubugwenxa, yena ndimohlwayile ngokokwaphula umthelho akwenzileyo, ngokwasemthethweni onikiweyo kuthi ngoobawo bethu.
- 16 Ngoku ndithi kuni, ngenxa yokuba ingengabo bonke abantu abanobulungisa akuyomfuneko ukuba nibe nokumkani okanye ookumkani ukuba balawule phezu kwenu.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.

- 17 Kuba qaphelani, bungakanani ubugwenxa ukumkani omnye okhohlakeleyo athi abubangele ukuba benziwe, ewe, kwaye ingakanani yona ukubankulu intshabalalo ayibangelayo!
- 18 Ewe, khumbulani ukumkani uNowa, inkohlakalo yakhe namasikizi akhe, kananjalo nenkohlakalo namasikizi abantu bakhe. Qaphelani engako yona intshabalalo eyathi yafika phezu kwabo; kananjalo kungenxa yobugwenxa babo ukuba baziswa ebukhobokeni.
- 19 Kwaye ukuba bekungekuko ukungenelela koMdali wabo onabo bonke ubulumko, kwaye oku kungenxa yenguquko yabo enyanisekileyo, ngokungenakuphetshwa ngebabehleli ebukhobokeni kude kube kaloku nje.
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani, waye wabahlangu ngenxa yokokuba baye bazithoba phambi kwakhe; kwaye nangenxa yokokuba bakhala ngamandlakazi kuye waye wabahlangu baphuma ebukhobokeni; kwaye iNkosi ithi lisebenzise njalo ngamandla ayo kuzo zonke iimeko phakathi kwabantwana boluntu, isolula ingalo yenceba kwabo babeka ithemba labo kuyo.
- 21 Kwaye qaphelani, ngoku ndithi kuni, aningekhe nimhluthe ubukhosi ukumkani ogwenxa ngaphandle kokuba kube kungembambano eninzi, nempalalo-gazi eninzi.
- 22 Kuba qaphelani, unabahlobo bakhe kubo ubugwenxa, kwaye ugcina abalindi bakhe ngakuye; kwaye uyayikrazula imithetho yabo abo babelawula ngobulungisa phambi kwakhe; kwaye uyinyhashela phantsi kweenyawo zakhe imiyalelo kaThixo;
- 23 Kwaye uwisa imithetho, aze ayithumele phambili phakathi kwabantu, ewe, imithetho elandela uhlobo lwenkohlakalo yakhe; kwaye nabanina ongayithobeliyo imithetho yakhe ubabangela ukuba batshatyalaliswe; kwaye nobanina abathi bavukele ngokuchasene naye uthumela imikhosi yakhe ngokuchasene nabo ukuba balwe imfazwe, kwaye ukuba unako uya kubatshabalalisa; kananjalo ukumkani ongenabulungisa uzigqwetha iindlela zabo bonke ubulungisa.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani ndithi kuni, akuyomfuneko ukuba amasikizi anjalo afike phezu kwenu.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

- 25 Ke ngoko, yonyulani ngezwi laba bantu, abagwebi, ukuze nibe nokugwetywa ngokwemithetho enaniyinikwe ngoobawo bethu, echanekileyo, kwaye eyayinikwe bona ngesandla seNkosi.
- 26 Ngoku akuqhelekanga ukuba ilizwi labantu linqwenele nantonina ephikisana naloo nto ilungileyo; kodwa kuqhelekile ukuba inxalenye embalwa inqwenele loo nto ingalunganga; ke ngoko oku niya kukuqwalasela kwaye nikwenze kube ngumthetho wenu—ukwenza imicimbi yenu ngelizwi labantu.
- 27 Kwaye ukuba liyafika ilixa lokuba ilizwi labantu likhetha ubugwenxa, ke elo lilixa lokuba izigwebo zikaThixo ziya kufika phezu kwenu, ewe, ke elo lilixa aya kuthi anivelele ngentshabalalo enkulu nanjengokuba phambi koku walivelela eli lizwe.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku ukuba ninabagwebi, kwaye abanigwebi ngokwasemthethweni othe wabekwa, ningababangela ukuba babe nokugwetywa ngumgwebi oyintloko.
- 29 Ukuba abagwebi benu abaziintloko abagwebi ngezizigwebo zobulungisa, niya kwenza okokuba iqaqobana labagwebi benu abangezantsi bahlanganisane kunye, kwaye baya kubagweba abagwebi benu abaziintloko, ngokwelizwi labantu.
- 30 Kwaye ndiya niyalela ukuba nizenze ezi zinto ngoloyiko lweNkosi; kwaye ndiniyalela ukuba nizenze ezi zinto, kwaye nokokuba ningabinaye ukumkani; ukuze ukuba aba bantu bathi benza izono nobugwenxa buya kubekwa phezu kweentloko zenu.
- 31 Kuba qaphelani ndithi kuni, izono zabantu abaninzi zabangelwa bubugwenxa bookumkani babo; ke ngoko ubugwenxa babo bubekwa phezu kweentloko zookumkani babo.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.



- 32 Kwaye ngoku ndinqwenela okokuba oku kungalingani kungabe kuphinde kubekho kulo eli lizwe, ingakumbi phakathi kwaba bantu bam; kodwa ndinqwenela ukuba eli lizwe libe lilizwe lenkululeko, kwaye wonke umntu abe nokunambitha iimfanelo zakhe namalungelo awodwa ngokufanayo, kangangoko iNkosi ibona kufanelekile ukuba sibe nokuphila kwaye silifumane njengelifa eli lizwe, ewe, nakangangokuba nayiphina enye yenzala yethu isala phezu kobuso beli lizwe.
- 33 Kwaye nezinye ezininzi-ninzi izinto awathi wababhalela zona ukumkani uMozaya, ebatyhilela zonke izilingo neenkathazo zokumkani olilungisa, ewe, yonke imigudu enzima yomphefumlo yabantu babo, kananjalo konke ukumbombozela kwabantu kuye ukumkani wabo; kwaye wakuchaza konke kubo.
- 34 Kwaye wabaxelela okokuba ezi zinto akufanelekanga ukuba zibekhona; kodwa umthwalo umele ube phezu kwabo bonke abantu, ukuze wonke umntu athwale eyakhe indima.
- 35 Kananjalo wabatyhilela zonke izithintelo abasebenza phantsi kwazo, ngokuba nokumkani ongelolungisa ukuba alawule phezu kwabo;
- 36 Ewe, bonke ubugwenxa namasikizi, nazo zonke iimfazwe, neembambano nempalalo-gazi, nobusela, nokurhwaphiliza, nokwenziwa kohenyuzo, kwaye nalo lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa obungena kubalwa—ebaxelela ukuba ezi zinto akufanelekanga ukuba zibekhona, nokokuba zaye zinezotho ngokucacileyo kuyo imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 37 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile, emva kokuba ukumkani uMozaya ezithumele phambili phakathi kwabantu baye baqinisekiswa ngobunyaniso bamazwi akhe.
- 38 Ke ngoko bayincama iminqweno yabo yokumkani, kwaye bakuxhalabela ngokugqithisileyo ukuba wonke umntu ufanele ukuba nethuba elilinganayo kulo lonke ilizwe; ewe, kwaye wonke umntu wabonakalisa ukukuthakazelela ukuphendula ngezono zakhe.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

- 39 Ke ngoko, kwenzekile okokuba bahlanganisana kunye ngamaqela kulo lonke ilizwe, ukuba baphose amazwi abo malunga nokuba ngoobani abafanele ukuba ngabagwebi babo, ukuba babagwebe ngokwasemthethweni abathe bawunikwa; kwaye bagcoba ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yenkululeko ethe bayinikwa.
- 40 Kwaye baye baba nokomelela eluthandweni kuye uMozaya; ewe, baye bambalela ekubeni ungaphezulu kunayo nayiphina indoda; kuba babengamthathi njengomgonyameli owayefuna inzuzo, ewe, ofuna loo ngeniso ethi yonakalise umphefumlo; kuba akazange abize butyebi kubo, engazange ayivuyele impalalo-gazi; kodwa wathi wamisela uxolo kulo ilizwe, kwaye wabavumela abantu bakhe ukuba bakhululwe kulo lonke uhlobo lobukhoboka; ke ngoko baye bemnika isidima, ewe, ngokugqithisileyo, ngaphaya komlinganiselo.
- 41 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bonyula abagwebi ukuba babalawule, okanye babagwebe ngokwasemthethweni; kwaye oku bakwenza kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 42 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wonyulwa ukuba abe ngumgwebi wokuqala oyintloko, yena ke ekubeni ebengumbingeleli omkhulu kanjalo, uyise inguye owaye wanikela umsebenzi phezu kwakhe, kwaye emnike imfanelo malunga nayo yonke imicimbi yebandla.
- 43 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma waye wahamba ngazo iindlela zeNkosi, waze wayigcina imiyalelo yayo, waye wagweba izigwebo zobulungisa; kwaze kwaqhubeka kukho uxolo kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 44 Kwaye lwaqhubeka njalo ke ulawulo lwabagwebi kulo lonke ilizwe laseZarahemla, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi; kwaye uAlma waye engowokuqala nomkhulu umgwebi.
- 45 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uyise afe, eminyaka ingamashumi asibhozo anambini iminyaka ubudala, ekubeni ethe waphila eyizalisekisa imiyalelo kaThixo.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

46 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMozaya naye wafa kanjalo, kunyaka wamashumi amathathu anesithathu wolawulo lwakhe, eminyaka ingamashumi amathandathu anesithathu ubudala; isenza iyonke, amakhulu amahlanu anesithoba eminyaka ukususela kwilixa awathi uLihayi walishiya elaseYerusalem.

47 Lwaze lwaphela njalo ke ulawulo lookumkani phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi; kwaye yaphela njalo ke imihla ka-Alma, owaye emngummiseli webandla labo.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

# INcwadi ka-Alma

## Unyana ka-Alma

*Ingxelo ka-Alma, owayengunyana ka-Alma, owokuqala noyintloko umgwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, kananjalo nombingeleli omkhulu phezu kweBandla. Ingxelo yolawulo lwabagwebi, neemfazwe neembambano phakathi kwabantu. Kanjalo nengxelo yemfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, ngokwembali ka-Alma, owokuqala noyintloko umgwebi.*

### Alma 1

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kowokuqala unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, ukususela kweli lixa ukuya phambili, ukumkani uMozaya ekubeni ehambe indlela yawo wonke umhlaba, ekubeni elwe ukulwa umlo omhle, ehamba ethe ngqo phambi koThixo, engashiyanga namnye ukuba alawule esikhundleni sakhe; nangona kunjalo wayemise imithetho, kwaye yavunywa ngabantu; ke ngoko babebophelelekile ukuba bayithobele imithetho awathi wayenza.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kunyaka wokuqala wolawulo luka-Alma kuso isihlalo-sokugweba, kwakukho indoda eyathi yaziswa kuye ukuba igwetywe, indoda eyaye inomzimba omkhulu, kwaye iqapheleka ngokomelela kwayo okukhulu.
- 3 Kwaye yayihamba-hamba phakathi kwabantu, ishukumayela kubo oko yayikubiza ngokuba lilizwi likaThixo, icinezela ibandla; ivakalisa ebantwini okokuba wonke umbingeleli notitshala umele ukuba athandwe; kwaye abamelanga ukuba basebenze ngezandla zabo, kodwa nje bamele ukubonelelwa ngabantu.
- 4 Kananjalo wangqina ebantwini okokuba lonke uluntu lumele lusindiswe ngomhla wokugqibela, kwaye nokokuba akukho mfuneko yakoyika nakungcangcazela, kodwa nje mababe nokuphakamisa iintloko zabo kwaye bavuye; kuba iNkosi idale bonke abantu, kananjalo ikhulule bonke abantu; kwaye, ekugqibeleni, bonke abantu bamele bafumane ubomi obungunaphakade.

# The Book of Alma

## the Son of Alma

*The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.*

### Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wazifundisa ezi zinto kangangokuba abantu abaninzi baye bakholelwa kumazwi akhe, baba baninzi kangangokuba bade baqalisa ukumbonelela baza bamnika nemali.

6 Kwaye waqalisa ukukhukhumala likratshi lentliziyo yakhe, nokunxiba izinxibo zexabiso eliphezulu, ewe, kwaye wade waqalisa ukumisa ibandla ngokohlobo lwentshumayelo yakhe.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile njengoko wayehamba, ukuya kushumayela kwabo babekhohlelwa kumazwi akhe, wadibana nendoda eyaye iyeyebandla likaThixo, ewe, kwanayo enye yotitshala babo; waza waqalisa ukuphikisana nayo kabukhali, ukuze abe nokulahlekisa abantu bebandla; kodwa indoda leyo yamelana naye, imkhalimela ngamazwi kaThixo.

8 Ngoku igama lendoda leyo lalinguGidiyon; kwaye yayinguye owayesisixhobo sokusebenza ezandleni zikaThixo ekuhlanguleni abantu bakaLimhayi baphume ebukhobokeni.

9 Ngoku, ngenxa yokuba uGidiyon wathi wamelana naye ngamazwi kaThixo waba nomsindo ngakuGidiyon, waza warhola ikrele lakhe waza waqalisa ukumbetha. Ngoku uGidiyon ekubeni sele ekhulile ngeminyaka emininzi, ke ngoko akazange abenako ukumelana nezithonga zakhe, ke ngoko wabulawa ngekrele.

10 Kwaye indoda leyo yambulalayo yathatyathwa ngabantu bebandla, yaza yaziswa phambi kuka-Alma, ukuba igwetywe ngokwamatyala ethe yawenza.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yema phambi kuka-Alma yaza yazithethelela ngokukhalipha okukhulu.

12 Kodwa uAlma wathi kuye: Qaphela, eli lilixa lokuqala ukuba ububingeleli bobuqhinga buqaliswe phakathi kwaba bantu. Kwaye qaphela, akunatyala nje kuphela lobubingeleli bobuqhinga, kodwa uzame ukubunyanzelisa ngekrele; kwaye ukuba ububingeleli bobuqhinga bebunokunyanzeliswa phakathi kwaba bantu beluya kuphelela kwintshabalalo yabo bonke.

13 Kwaye wena uphalaze igazi lendoda elilungisa, ewe, indoda eyenze okulunge kakhulu phakathi kwaba bantu; kwaye ukuba besingakusindisa igazi lakhe lingabizwa phezu kwethu ngempindezelo.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

- 14 Ke ngoko ugwetyelwa ukufa, ngokwasemthethweni esathi sawunikwa nguMozaya, ukumkani wethu wokugqibela; kwaye uvunyiwe ngaba bantu; ke ngoko aba bantu kufuneka babambelele kuwo umthetho.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bamthabatha; kwaye igama lakhe lalinguNehore; baza bamthwala bamsa phezu kwencopho yenduli eyiManti, waza apho wenziwa, okanye ngenye indlela waye wavuma, phakathi kwamazulu nomhlaba, okokuba into ebeyifundisa ebantwini yayiphikisana nelizwi likaThixo; kwaye apho wanyamezela ukufa okulihlazo.
- 16 Nangona kunjalo, oku akuzange kukuphelise ukunwenwa kobubingeleli bobuqhinga kulo lonke ilizwe; kuba kwakukho abaninzi ababezithanda izinto ezililize zehlabathi, kwaye babheka phambili beshumayela iimfundiso ezingeyonyani; kwaye oku bakwenza ngenxa yobutyebi nembeko.
- 17 Nangona kunjalo, zange balinge ukuxoka, ukuba babusaziwa, ngenxa yokoyika umthetho, kuba amaxoki ayesohlwaywa; ke ngoko babezenza ngathi bashumayela ngokwenkolo yabo; kwaye ngoku umthetho wawungenakuba namandla kuye nawuphina umntu ngenkolo yakhe.
- 18 Kwaye babengenakuze balinge nokuba babe ngenxa yokoyika umthetho, kuba abanjalo babe sohlwaywa; bengenakuze balinge nokuphanga, nakubulala, kuba lowo ubulalayo wayesohlwaywa ngokufa.
- 19 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba nabani na ongenguye owebandla likaThixo waqalisa ukutshutshisa abo babengabebandla likaThixo, baza bathabathela kubo igama likaKrestu.
- 20 Ewe, baye babatshutshisa, kwaye babavisa iintlungu ngalo lonke uhlobo lamazwi, kwaye konke oku kwakungenxa yentobeko yabo; ngenxa yokuba babengenakratshi emehlweni abo, kwaye nangenxa yokuba babesabelana ngelizwi likaThixo, omnye kunye nomnye, ngaphandle kwemali kwaye nangaphandle kwexabiso.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

- 21 Ngoku kwaye kukho umthetho ongqongqo phakathi kwabantu bebandla, wokuba akumele kubekho nawuphi na umntu, ongowebandla, ovukela kwaye atshutshise abo babengengabo abebandla, nokokuba akufanele kubekho ntshutshiso phakathi kwabo.
- 22 Nangona kunjalo, babakhona abaninzi phakathi kwabo abaqalisa ukuba nekratshi, baza baqalisa ukuphikisana shushu neentshaba zabo, ngokude kubekho izithonga; ewe, babebethana omnye nomnye ngamanqindi.
- 23 Ngoku oku kwakukunyaka wesibini wolawulo luka-Alma, kwaye kwakungunobangela weembandezelo ezininzi kulo ibandla; ewe, kwakungunobangela wokulingwa okuninzi ebandleni.
- 24 Kuba iintliziyo zabaninzi zaziqaqadekile, kwaye namagama abo ayecinyiwe, ukuze bangabuye bakhunjulwe phakathi kwabantu bakaThixo. Kananjalo abaninzi bazikhwebula phakathi kwabo.
- 25 Ngoku esi yayisisilingo esikhulu kwabo babeme nkqo elukholweni; nangona kunjalo, babezinzile kwaye bengagungqi ekugcineni imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye bayithwala ngomonde intshutshiso eyayifunjwe phezu kwabo.
- 26 Kwaye xa ababingeleli besimka beshiya imisebenzi yabo ukuya kugqithisa ilizwi likaThixo ebantwini, abantu kanjalo babeyishiya imisebenzi yabo ukuya kuphulaphula ilizwi likaThixo. Kwaye xa umbingeleli eligqithisile ilizwi likaThixo kubo babuyela bonke kwakhona ngenkuthalo emisebenzini yabo; nombingeleli, engazithabathi ngokuba ungaphezulu kunabo abaphulaphuli, kuba nomshumayeli wayengekho ngaphezulu kunaye umphulaphuli; notitshala engekho ngaphezulu kunomfundi; kwaye njalo babelingana, kwaye bonke babesebenza, wonke umntu ngokokomelela kwakhe.
- 27 Kwaye babenikela ngezinto zabo, wonke umntu ngokwa loo nto anayo, kwabangamahlwempu, nabasweleyo, nemilwelwe, nababandezelekileyo; kwaye babenganxibi zinxibo zaxabiso likhulu, kanti ke babecocekile kwaye bekhangeleka kakuhle.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

28 Kwaye baye bayimisa njalo imicimbi yebandla; baza njalo baqalisa ukuba noxolo rhoqo kwakhona, nangona babenazo iintshutshiso.

29 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokuzinza kwebandla baqalisa ukuba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo, benezinto zonke ngobuninzi nantoni na ababeyiswele—ubuninzi bempahla emfutshane nemihlambi yeenkomo, amathole atyetyisiweyo azo zonke iintlobo, kananjalo nobuninzi beenkozo, nobegolide, nobesilivere, nobezinto ezixabisekileyo, nobuninzi besilika nelineni eyolukwe ngokucekethekileyo entle, nalo lonke uhlobo olulungileyo noluhlelekileyo lwelaphu.

30 Kwaye njalo, kwiimeko zabo zokuphumelela, abazange bagxotho nabanina owayeze, okanye ababelambile, okanye ababexaniwe, okanye ababegula, okanye ababengondlekanga; kwaye abazange bazibeke iintliziyi zabo phezu kobutyebi; ke ngoko babenesisa kubo bonke, kunye abadala nabancinane, kunye ababophelelekileyo nabakhululekileyo, kunye amadoda nabafazi, nokuba bangaphandle kwebandla okanye phakathi ebandleni, bengakhethi buso bamntu malunga nabo basweleyo.

31 Kwaye njalo baye baphumelela baza baba nobutyebi ngaphezulu kakhulu kunabo abo babengengabo abebandla labo.

32 Kuba abo babengengabo abebandla baye bazanelisa ngobugqwirha, nangokunqula izithixo okanye ngobunqenerha, neentetho ezingentho, nakubo oomona nokrutha-kruthwano; benxiba izinxibo zexabiso elikhulu; bekhukhumele likratshi emehlweni abo; betshutshisa, bexoka, besiba, bephanga, besenza uhenyuzo, kwaye bebulala, nalo lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo; nangona kunjalo, umthetho wawunyanzeliswa phezu kwabo bonke abo babewaphula, kangangoko kwakunokwenziwa.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngokwenza njalo benyanzelisa umthetho phezu kwabo, wonke umntu efumana isohlwayo ngokwaloo nto athe wayenza, baye bazola ngakumbi, kwaye abazange balinga nokwenza nayiphina inkohlakalo ukuba ibisaziwa; ke ngoko, kwabakho uxolo kakhulu phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi kwada kwaba ngowesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.



## Alma 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabo kwaqalisa ubukho bembambano phakathi kwabantu; kuba indoda ethile, ebizwa ngokuba nguAmlisayi, yena ke eyindoda enobuqhetseba, ewe, indoda elumkileyo ngokobulumko behlabathi, yena ke engokohlobo lwendoda eyathi yabulala uGidiyon ngekrele, eyayigwetyelwe ukufa ngokwasemthethweni—
- 2 Ngoku lo Amlisayi waye, ngobuqhetseba bakhe, watsala abantu abaninzi emva kwakhe; abaninzi kangangokuba baqalisa ukuba namandla; baza baqalisa ukuzama ukumisa uAmlisayi ukuba abe ngukumkani phezu kwabantu.
- 3 Ngoku oku kwakusothusa kubantu bebandla, kananjalo nakubo bonke abo babengatsalelwanga emva kweempembelelo zika-Amlisayi; kuba babesazi okokuba ngokomthetho wabo izinto ezinjalo kufuneka zimiswe ngezwi labantu.
- 4 Ke ngoko, ukuba bekunokwenzeka okokuba uAmlisayi azuze izwi labantu, yena, ekubeni eyindoda ekhohlakeleyo, angabahlutha iimfanelo zabo namalungelo awodwa ebandla; kubo yaye iyinjongo yakhe ukuba alitshabalalise ibandla likaThixo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bahlanganisana kunye kulo lonke ilizwe, wonke umntu ngokwengqondo yakhe, nokokuba yayingakuAmlisayi okanye ngokuchasene naye uAmlisayi, ngokwamaqela ahlukeneyo, benempikiswano eninzi neembambano ezingumangaliso omnye nomnye.
- 6 Kwaye njalo bahlanganisana kunye ukuze baphose amazwi abo ngokunxulumene nalo mba; aze athiwa thaca phambi kwabagwebi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izwi labantu lachasana noAmlisayi, ukuze angenziwa ukumkani phezu kwabantu.
- 8 Ngoku oku kwabangela uvuyo olukhulu ezintliziyweni zabo abo babechasene naye; kodwa uAmlisayi waye wabaxhokoxela emsindweni abo babekholiwe nguye ngokuchasene nabo babengakholwa nguye.

## Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bahlanganisana kunye, baza bammisela uAmlisayi ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo.
- 10 Ngoku akuba uAmlisayi enziwe ukumkani phezu kwabo wabayalela ukuba mabathabathe izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo; kwaye oku wakwenza ukuze abe nokubazisa phantsi kolawulo lwakhe.
- 11 Ngoku abantu baka-Amlisayi babephawulwa ngegama lika-Amlisayi, bebizwa ngokuba ngama-Amlisayithi; yaza intsalela yabizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi, okanye abantu bakaThixo.
- 12 Ke ngoko abantu bamaNifayithi babeyiqonda injongo yama-Amlisayithi, aza ke ngoko azilungiselela ukudibana nawo; ewe, baye bazixhobisa ngamakrele, namakrelana, nangezaphetha, nangeentolo, nangamatye, nangezilingi, nangazo zonke iintlobo zezikhali zemfazwe, zalo lonke udidi.
- 13 Kwaye babezilungisele njalo ukuba bahlangane nama-Amlisayithi ngexesha lokufika kwawo. Kwaye kwakukho abaphathi-mikhosi abanyuliweyo, nabaphathi-mikhosi abangentla, nabaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko, ngokwamanani abo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmlisayi waye wawaxhobisa amadoda akhe ngazo zonke iintlobo zezikhali zemfazwe zalo lonke udidi; kanaanjalo wonyula abalawuli neenkokheli phezu kwabantu bakhe, ukuba babakhokele ukuba balwe ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ama-Amlisayithi eza phezu kwenduli eyiAmnihu, eyaye isempuma yomlambo iTsidon, owawubaleka ngakwilizwe laseZarahemla, baza apho baqalisa ukwenza imfazwe namaNifayithi.
- 16 Ngoku uAlma, ekubeni inguye umgwebi oyintloko nomlawuli wabantu bakaNifayi, ke ngoko wenyuka kunye nabantu bakhe, ewe, kunye nabaphathi-mikhosi bakhe, nabaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko, ewe, entloko yemikhosi yakhe, ngokuchasene nama-Amlisayithi ukuya kulwa imfazwe.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

- 17 Kwaye baqalisa ukuwabulala ama-Amlisayithi phezu kwenduli esempuma yeTsidon. Kwaye ama-Amlisayithi aye alwa namaNifayithi ngokomelela okukhulu, kangangokuba amaNifayithi amaninzi aye awa phambi kwama-Amlisayithi.
- 18 Nangona kunjalo iNkosi yaye yasomeleza isandla samaNifayithi, kangangokuba bawabulala ama-Amlisayithi ngendyikityha enkulu, kangangokuba baqalisa ukwesaba phambi kwabo.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aye awasukela ama-Amlisayithi yonke loo mini, aze awabulala ngendyikityha enkulu, kangangokuba ababebulewe bama-Amlisayithi babe ngamawaka alishumi elinambini anamakhulu amahlanu anamashumi amathathu anesibini emiphefumlo; baza ababuleweyo bamaNifayithi baba ngamawaka amathandathu anamakhulu amahlanu anamashumi amathandathu anesibini emiphefumlo.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma engenakho ukuba angabe sawasukela ama-Amlisayithi wenza ukuba abantu bakhe bagxumeke iintente zabo kwintlambo kaGidiyon, intlambo leyo yayibizwa ngalaa Gidiyon owayebulewe ngesandla sikaNehore ngekrele; kwaye kuyo le ntlambo amaNifayithi aye agxumeka iintente zawo ngobo busuku.
- 21 Kwaye uAlma wathumela iintlola ukuba zilandele intsalela yama-Amlisayithi, ukuze zibe nokwazi ngamacebo awo namayelenqe awo, anokuthi ngawo azikhusele kuwo, ukuze abe nokubakhusela abantu bakhe ekutshatyalalisweni.
- 22 Ngoku abo wabathumayo ukuba baphume bayokuhlola inkampu yama-Amlisayithi babebizwa ngokuba nguZerami, noAmnori, noManti, noLimheri; aba ke ngabo babephume kunye namadoda abo ukuya kuhlola inkampu yama-Amlisayithi.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso babuyela kuyo inkampu yamaNifayithi bengxame kakhulu, bekhwankqiseke kakhulu, kwaye bebethwa luloyiko olukhulu, besithi:

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the valley being called after that Gideon who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and their plots, whereby he might guard himself against them, that he might preserve his people from being destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who went out with their men to watch the camp of the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste, being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear, saying:

24 Qaphelani, siyilandele inkampu yama-Amlisayithi, kwaye ngokukhwankqiseka okukhulu, elizweni likaMinoni, ngentla kwelizwe laseZarahemla, endleleni eya kwilizwe likaNifayi, sibone intlaninge yezihlwele zamaLeymenayithi; kwaye qaphelani, ama-Amlisayithi azibandakanye nawo;

25 Kwaye baphezu kwabazalwana bethu kwelo lizwe; kwaye bayasaba phambi kwabo nemihlambi yabo, nabafazi babo, nabantwana babo, bebhekisa ngasesixekweni sethu; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba singakhawuleza baya kusithabatha isixeko sethu, noobawo, nabafazi bethu, nabantwana bethu baze bababulale.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaNifayi bathabatha iintente zabo, baza bemka baphuma kwintlambo kaGidiyon babheka ngakwisixeko sabo, esaye isisixeko saseZarahemla.

27 Kwaye qaphelani, bathe xa benqumla umlambo iTsidon, amaLeymenayithi nama-Amlisayithi, abazizihlwele phantse, ngokungathi, bayintlabathi yolwandle, beza phezu kwabo ukuba babatshabalalise.

28 Nangona kunjalo, amaNifayithi esomelezwa sisandla seNkosi, bethandaze ngamandlakazi kuyo ukuze ibahlangule baphume ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, ke ngoko iNkosi yaye yaziva izikhalo zabo, yaza yabomeleza, aza amaLeymenayithi nama-Amlisayithi awa phambi kwabo.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma walwa kunye noAmlisayi ngekrele, ubuso ngobuso; kwaye baye balwa ngamandlakazi, omnye komnye.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma, ekubeni eyindoda kaThixo, esetyenziswa lukholo olukhulu, wadanduluka, esithi: Owu Nkosi, yiba nenceba uze usindise ubomi bam, ukuze ndibe nokuba sisixhobo ezandleni zakho sokusindisa nokukhusela aba bantu.

31 Ngoku akuba uAlma ethethe la mazwi walwa kwakhona kunye noAmlisayi; waza womelezwa, kangangokuba wambulala uAmlisayi ngekrele.

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites, and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon, above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and their wives, and their children, towards our city; and except we make haste they obtain possession of our city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

- 32 Kwaye walwa kanjalo kunye nokumkani wamaLeymenayithi; kodwa ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wasaba wabuya umva phambi koAlma waza wathumela abalindi bakhe ukuba balwe noAlma.
- 33 Kodwa uAlma, kunye nabakhe abalindi, balwa kunye nabalindi bakakumkani wamaLeymenayithi wada wababulala kwaye wabadudulela emva.
- 34 Kwaye njalo wawuvula umhlaba, okanye ngamanye amazwi udonga, olwaye lungasentshona komlambo iTsidon, wayiphosa imizimba yamaLeymenayithi awaye ebulewe emanzini eTsidon, ukuze ngaloo ndlela abantu bakhe babe nokufumana umhlaba wokuwela baze balwe kunye namaLeymenayithi nama-Amlisayithi ngakwicala lasentshona lomlambo iTsidon.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke bewuwelile umlambo iTsidon amaLeymenayithi nama-Amlisayithi aqalisa ukusaba phambi kwabo, nangona babeyintlaninge kangangokuba babengenako nokubalwa.
- 36 Kwaye basaba phambi kwamaNifayithi babheka ngakwintlango eyaye ingasentshona nasemantla, kude ngaphaya kwemida yelizwe; aza amaNifayithi awasukela ngamandlakazi awo, aza awabulala.
- 37 Ewe, afunyanwa kuwo onke amacala, aza abulawa aza aqhutywa, ada achithachithwa ngasentshona, nasemantla, ada aba afika entlango, eyayibizwa ngokuba yiHermawuntsi; kwaye yayilelo cala lentlango elaye lizaliswe zizilo zasendle nezinoburhalarhume.
- 38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaninzi bafa entlango ngenxa yamanxeba abo, baza babimbithwa zezo zilo namaxhalanga omoya kanjalo; aze amathambo abo afunyanwa, kwaye afunjwa emhlabeni.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

## Alma 3

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi angazange abulawa ngezikhali zemfazwe, emva kokuba engcwabe abo babebulewe—ngoku inani labo babulawayo alizange libalwe, ngenxa yobuninzi benani labo—emva kokuba begqibile ukungcwaba abafileyo babo babuyela bonke emazweni abo, nasezindlwini zabo, nasebafazini babo, nasebantwaneni babo.
- 2 Ngoku abafazi nabantwana abaninzi babebulewe ngekrele, kananjalo nempahla emfutshane nemihlambi yabo emininzi nemihlambi yeenkomo; kananjalo namaninzi amasimi abo eenkozo atshatyalaliswa, kuba ayexushelwe phantsi zizihlwele zabantu.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku ngobuninzi babo ababulawayo phezu kodonga lomlambo iTsidon abamaLeymenayithi nabama-Amlisayithi baphoswa emanzini eTsidon; kwaye qaphelani amathambo abo asenzulwini yolwandle, kwaye maninzi.
- 4 Kwaye ama-Amlisayithi ayehlukile kumaNifayithi, kuba ayeziphawule bomvu emabunzini awo ngokohlobo lwamaLeymenayithi; nangona kunjalo babengazichebanga iintloko zabo nje ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 5 Ngoku iintloko zamaLeymenayithi zazichetyiwe; kwaye ayeze, ikuphela nje kwesikhumba esasibhinqwe ezinqeni zabo, kwanesikrweqe sabo, awayesibhinqile, nezaphetha zabo, neentolo zabo, namatye abo, nezilingi zabo, njalo-njalo.
- 6 Kwaye izikhumba zamaLeymenayithi zazintsundu, ngokophawu olalubekwe phezu kooyise, olwalusisiqalekiso phezu kwabo ngenxa yokona kwabo nemvukelo yabo ngokuchasene nabantakwabo, aba ngaba uNifayi, uYakobi, noYosefu, noSem, ababengamadoda anobulungisa nangcwele.
- 7 Kwaye abakhuluwa babo babezama ukubabulala, ke ngoko baqalekiswa; yaza iNkosi uThixo yabeka uphawu phezu kwabo, ewe, uLeymeni noLemuweli, kananjalo noonyana bakaIshmayeli, nabafazi bama Ishmayelayithi.

## Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

- 8 Kwaye oku kwenziwa ukuze imbewu yabo ibe nokwahlulwa kwimbewu yabantakwabo, ukuze ngale ndlela iNkosi uThixo abe nokubalondoloza abantu bakhe, ukuze bangabi nakuxubana baze bakholelwe kwizithethe eziphosakeleyo ezaziya kuphelela kwintshabalalo yabo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nabanina owathi waxuba imbewu yakhe kunye naleyo yamaLeymenayithi waye wazisa eso siqalekiso phezu kwembewu yakhe.
- 10 Ke ngoko, nabani na ozivumela ukuba alahlekiswe ngamaLeymenayithi wayebizwa phantsi kwalo ntloko, kwaye kwakubakho uphawu olubekwa phezu kwakhe.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nabani na owayengakholelwa kwizithethe zamaLeymenayithi, kodwa azikholelwa ezo mbali zazikhutshwe kwilizwe laseYerusalem, kananjalo kwizithethe zooyise, ezazilungile, ababekhohlelwa kwimiyalelo kaThixo baze bayigcine, babebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi, okanye abantu bakaNifayi, ukususela kwelo lixa ukuya phambili—
- 12 Kwaye ngabo bagcine iimbali eziyinyani zabantu babo, kananjalo ezabantu bamaLeymenayithi.
- 13 Ngoku siza kubuyela kwakhona kuma-Amlisayithi, kuba nabo kanjalo babenophawu olwalubekwe phezu kwabo; ewe, bazibeka uphawu ngokwabo, ewe, nalo uphawu olubomvu phezu kwamabunzi abo.
- 14 Njalo ke ilizwi likaThixo lizalisekile, kuba la ngamazwi awathethe kuNifayi: Qaphela, amaLeymenayithi ndiwaqalekisile, kwaye ndiya kubeka uphawu kuwo ukuze wona nembewu yawo ibe nokwahlulwa kuni nakuyo imbewu yenu, ukususela kweli lixa ukuya phambili nango naphakade, ngaphandle kokuba aguquke kuyo inkohlakalo yawo aze abuyele kum ukuze ndibe nokuba nenceba kuwo.
- 15 Kwaye kwakhona: Ndiya kubeka uphawu phezu kwakhe lowo uxuba imbewu yakhe neyabakhuluwa bakho, ukuze nabo baqalekiswe kanjalo.
- 16 Kwaye kwakhona: Ndiya kubeka uphawu phezu kwakhe lowo ulwa ngokuchasene nawe nembewu yakho.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

- 17 Kwaye kwakhona, ndithi lowo umkayo kuwe akayi kube abizwe ngokuba yimbewu yakho; kwaye ndiya kukusikelela, naye nabani na oya kubizwa ngokuba uyimbewu yakho, ukususela ngoku nangonaphakade; kwaye ezi yaye izizithembiso zeNkosi kuye uNifayi nakuyo imbewu yakhe.
- 18 Ngoku ama-Amlisayithi ayengazi okokuba ayezalisekisa amazwi kaThixo xa babeqalisa ukuziphawula emabunzini abo; nangona kunjalo babephume phandle elubala ngemvukelo ngokuchasene noThixo; ke ngoko kwakuyimfuneko okokuba isiqalekiso sasimele siwe phezu kwabo.
- 19 Ngoku ndinga ningabona okokuba bazizisela isiqalekiso phezu kwabo; kwaye kwangolo hlobo wonke umntu oqalekisiweyo uthi azizisele phezu kwakhe esakhe isigwebo.
- 20 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba zingephi iintsuku emva kwedabi elaliwayo kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, ngamaLeymenayithi nama-Amlisayithi, ekwathi kwabakho omnye umkhosi wamaLeymenayithi oweza phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, kwakwindawo apho umkhosi wokuqala wadibana khona nama-Amlisayithi.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho umkhosi othunyelwayo ukuba uwuqhubele ngaphandle kwelizwe lawo.
- 22 Ngoku uAlma ngokwakhe esezintlungwini linxeba akazange enyuke aye edabini ngesi sihlandlo ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi;
- 23 Kodwa wathumela intlaninge yomkhosi ngokuchasene nabo; baza benyuka kwaye babulala abaninzi bamaLeymenayithi, baza intsalela yabo bayiqhubela ngaphandle kwemida yelizwe labo.
- 24 Baza ke babuya kwakhona baza baqalisa ukumisela uxolo kulo ilizwe, bengasahlutshwa okwexeshana ziintshaba zabo.
- 25 Ngoku zonke ezi zinto zenziwa, ewe, zonke ezi mfazwe neembambano zaqaliswa zaza zaphela kowesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.



26 Kwaza ngonyaka omnye kwabakho amawaka namashumi amawaka emiphefumlo eyathunyelwa kwihlabathi lanaphakade, ukuze ibe nokuvuna imivuzo yawo ngokwemisebenzi yawo, nokokuba ibe ilungile okanye nokokuba ibe imibi, ukuba ivune ulonwabo lwanaphakade okanye inkxwaleko yanaphakade, ngokomoya ayayikhetha ukuwuthobela, nokokuba ibingumoya olungileyo okanye ombi.

27 Kuba wonke umntu ufumana umvuzo kulowo athi akhetha ukumthobela, kwaye oku kungokwamazwi omoya wesiprofetho; ke ngoko makube kungokwe nyaniso. Kwaye njalo waphela owesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

## Alma 4

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kowesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, akuzange kubekho zimbambano nazimfazwe kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla;
- 2 Kodwa abantu babe bandezelekile, ewe, bebandezeleke kakhulu ngenxa yokulahlekelwa ngabazalwana babo, kananjalo nokulahlekelwa yimpahla emfutshane nemihlambi yeenkomo zabo, kananjalo nokulahlekelwa ngamasimi eenkomo zabo, ezazinyathelelwe phantsi kweenyawo zaze zatshatyalaliswa ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 3 Kwaye zazinkulu kakhulu iimbandezelo zabo kangangokuba imiphefumlo yonke yaba nesizathu sokuba lusizi; kwaye babekhohlelwa okokuba yayizizigwebo zikaThixo zithunyelwa phezu kwabo ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abo; ke ngoko bavuselelwa kwinkumbulo yomsebenzi wabo.
- 4 Kwaye baqalisa ukumisa ibandla ngokupheleleyo; ewe, kwaye abaninzi babhaptizwa emanzini aseTsidon baza bamanyelwa ebandleni likaThixo; ewe, babhaptizwa ngesandla sika-Alma, owaye engcwaliswe njengombingeleli omkhulu phezu kwabantu bebandla, ngesandla sikayise uAlma.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile kowesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi kwabakho imiphefumlo emalunga namawaka amathathu namakhulu amahlanu eyathi yazimanya nebandla likaThixo yaza yabhaptizwa. Kwaye waphela njalo owesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi; kwaye kwabakho uxolo ngalo lonke ixesha kulo lonke elo lixa.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile kowesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, okokuba abantu bebandla baqalisa ukuba babe nekratshi, ngenxa yobutyebi babo obugqithisileyo, neesilika zabo ezicwengileyo, neelineni zabo ezolukwe ngokucekethekileyo, kwaye ngenxa yemihlambi yabo emininzi neenkomo, negolide yabo nesilivere, nazo zonke iintlobo zezinto ezixabisekileyo, abathi bazizuzisa ngokusebenza ngenkuthalo yabo; kwaye kuzo zonke ezi zinto baphakamela kwikratshi lamehlo abo, kuba baqalisa ukunxiba izinxibo zexabiso elikhulu.

## Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

- 7 Ngoku oku kwaku ngunobangela wembandezelo enkulu kuAlma, ewe, nakwabaninzi babantu awathi uAlma wabamisela ukuba babeziititshala, nababingeleli, nabadala phezu kwebandla; ewe, abaninzi babo babebuhlungu kakhulu ngenxa yenkohlakalo ababeyibona ukuba iqalisile ukubakho phakathi kwabantu babo.
- 8 Kuba babona baza baqaphela ngosizi olukhulu ukuba abantu bebandla baqalisa ukuphakamela kwikratshi lamehlo abo, nokubeka iintliziyo zabo phezu kobutyebi naphezu kwezinto ezililize zehlabathi, ukuze baqalise ukugxekana, omnye komnye, kwaye baqalisa ukutshutshisa abo babengakholelwa ngokwentando nolonwabo lwabo.
- 9 Kwaye njalo, kulo wesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwaqalisa ukubakho iimbambano ezinkulu phakathi kwabantu bebandla; ewe, kwabakho oomona, nokukrutha-kruthana, nolunya, neentshutshiso, nekratshi, ngokude lidlule ikratshi labo babengengabo abebandla likaThixo.
- 10 Kwaye njalo waye waphela owesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi; yaza inkohlakalo yebandla yaba sisikhubekiso esikhulu kwabo babengengabo abebandla; kwaye njalo ibandla laqalisa ukungabi nampumelelo kwinkqubela-phambili yalo.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile ekusungulweni konyaka wesithoba, uAlma wayibona inkohlakalo yebandla, waza wabona kanjalo ukuba umzekelo webandla wawuqalisa ukukhokelela abo babengakholwa ukusuka kwelinye isuntsu lobugwenxa ukuya kwelinye, njalo besizisa intshabalalo yabantu.
- 12 Ewe, wabona ukungalingani okukhulu phakathi kwabantu, abanye beziphakamisele phezulu ngekratshi labo, bebacekisa abanye, bebanikela imiva yabo abasweleyo nabaze nabo babelambile, nabo babenxaniwe, nabo babegula kwaye bebandezelekile.
- 13 Ngoku oku kwakungunobangela omkhulu wezijwili phakathi kwabantu, ngeli lixa abanye babezithoba, benceda abo babeludinga uncedo lwabo, olunje ngokunikela ngezinto zabo kwabo babengamahlwempu nabasweleyo, bedlisa abalambileyo, kwaye benyamezela zonke iintlobo zeembandezelo, ngenxa kaKrestu, omele eze ngokomoya wesiprofetho;

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

- 14 Bekhangele phambili kuloo mhla, njalo bezuza uxolelo lwezono zabo; bezaliswe luvuyo olukhulu ngenxa yovuko lwabafuleyo, ngokwentando negunya lenkululo kaYesu Krestu ukusuka kumakhamandela okufa.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma, ezibonile iimbandezelo zabalandeli abathobekileyo bakaThixo, neentshutshiso ezazifunjwe phezu kwabo yintsalela yabantu bakhe, kwaye ekubona konke ukungalingani kwabo, waqalisa ukuba lusizi kakhulu; nangona kunjalo uMoya weNkosi awuzange umdanise.
- 16 Kwaye wonyula indoda esisilumko eyayiphakathi kwabadala, waza wayinika igunya ngokwelizwi labantu, ukuze ibe negunya lokuwisa imithetho malunga nemithetho eyayinikiwe, nokuba ayisebenzise ngokwenkohlakalo namatyala abantu.
- 17 Ngoku igama lalendoda lalinguNifayiha, kwaye wonyulwa ukuba abe ngungwebi oyintloko; waze wahlala kuso isihlalo-sokugweba ukuba agwebe kwaye alawule abantu.
- 18 Ngoku uAlma akazange alunikele kuye ubizo lokuba ngumbingeleli omkhulu phezu kwebandla, kodwa walugcina ubizo lobubingeleli obukhulu kuye; kodwa wasinikezela isihlalo-sokugweba kuNifayiha.
- 19 Kwaye oku wakwenza ukuze yena ngokwakhe abe nokubheka phambili phakathi kwabantu bakhe, okanye phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, ukuze abe nokushumayela ilizwi likaThixo kubo, ukuba vuselela ekukhumbuleni umsebenzi wabo, kwaye abe nokulisusa, ngelizwi likaThixo, lonke ikratshi nobuqhetseba nazo zonke iimbambano ezaye ziphakathi kwabo bantu bakhe, engaboni nandlela anokuthi ababange ngayo kwakhona ngaphandle kokuba abacinizele ngobungqina obumsulwa ngokuchasene nabo.
- 20 Kwaye njalo ekuqalekeni kowesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, uAlma wasinikezela isihlalo-sokugweba kuNifayiha, waza wazibophelela ngokupheleleyo kububingeleli obukhulu bohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, ukuba angqine ngelizwi, ngokomoya wesityhilelo nowesiprofetho.

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephiah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

*Amazwi awathi uAlma, uMbingeleli oMkbulu ngokoblobo olungcwele lukaThixo, wawanika kubantu kwizixeko zabo nakwiilali zabo kulo lonke ilizwe.*

## Alma 5

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma aqalise ukunikela ilizwi likaThixo ebantwini, kuqala elizweni laseZarahemla, waza ukusuka apho waya kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 2 Kwaye la ngamazwi awathethayo ebantwini ebandleni elamiselwa esixekweni saseZarahemla, ngokwengxelo yakhe, athi:
- 3 Mna, Alma, ekubeni ndimiselwe ngubawo, uAlma, ukuba ndibe ngumbingeleli omkhulu ebandleni likaThixo, ekubeni yena enamandla kwanegunya elivela kuThixo lokwenza ezi zinto, qaphelani, ndithi kuni waqalisa ukumisela ibandla elizweni elalikwimida yaseNifayi; ewe, ilizwe elalibizwa ilizwe likaMormoni; ewe, kwaye wababhaptiza abazalwana bakhe emanzini aseMormoni.
- 4 Kwaye qaphelani, ndithi kuni, bahlangulwa bakhutshwa ezandleni zabantu bakakumkani uNowa, ngenceba namandla kaThixo.
- 5 Kwaye qaphelani, emva koko, baziswa kubukhoboka ngezandla zamaLeymenayithi entlango; ewe, ndithi kuni, babesekuthinjweni, kwaye kwakhona iNkosi yabahlangula ebukhobokeni ngamandla elizwi lakhe; saza saziswa kweli lizwe, saze apha saqalisa ukumisa ibandla likaThixo nakulo lonke eli lizwe.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni, bazalwana bam, nina eningabo abebandla, ingaba nizigcine ngokwaneleyo kwiinkumbulo zokuthinjwa kooyihlo? Ewe, kwaye ingaba nizigcine ngokwaneleyo kwiinkumbulo inceba nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe ngakubo? Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ingaba nizigcine ngokwaneleyo iinkumbulo zokuba uyihlangule imiphefumlo yabo esihogweni?

*The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.*

## Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Qaphelani, waziguqula iintliziyo zabo; ewe, wabavusa ebuthongweni obunzulu, bavuselwa kuThixo. Qaphelani, babesenzulwini yobumnyama; nangona kunjalo, imiphefumlo yabo yakhanyiswa kukukhanya kwelizwi lanaphakade; ewe, baberhanqwe ngamakhamandela okufa, namatyathanga esihogo, kwaye intshabalalo yanaphakade yayibalindele.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku ndiyani buza, bazalwana bam, ingaba batshatyalaliswa? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi, abazange.
- 9 Kwaye kwakhona ndiyabuza, ingaba amakhamandela okufa akhululwa, namatyathanga esihogo awayebarhangqile akhululwa? Ndithi kuni, Ewe, akhululwa, kwaye nemiphefumlo yabo yakhukhumala, baze bavuma ingoma ngothando olukhululayo. Kwaye ndithi kuni basindisiwe.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku ndiyani buza ukuba basindiswe phantsi kweziphi iimeko? Ewe, zeziphi izizathu abanazo ezazinokubabeka ethembeni lokusindiswa? Kungani bekhululwa kumakhamandela okufa, ewe, kunjalo nakumatyathanga esihogo?
- 11 Qaphelani, ndinganixelela—ingaba ubawo wam uAlma wayengakholelwa kumazwi aphuma emlonyeni ka-Abhinadayi? Kwaye ingaba wayengenguye umprofeti ongcwele? Ingaba akathethanga mazwi kaThixo, waze ubawo wam uAlma wawakholelwa?
- 12 Kwaye ngokokholo lwakhe kwabakho utshintsho olumandlakazi olwenzekayo entliziyweni yakhe. Qaphelani ndithi kuni konke oku kuyinyaniso.
- 13 Kwaye qaphelani, washumayela ilizwi kooyihlo kunjalo notshintsho olumandlakazi lwenzeka ezintliziyyweni zabo, baza bazithoba babeka ithemba labo kuThixo wokwenene ophilayo. Kwaye qaphelani, bathembeka ukuya ekupheleni; ke ngoko basindiswa.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndiyabuza kuni, bazalwana bam bebandla, ingaba nizelwe ngokomoya nguThixo? Ingaba niyifumene inkangeleko yakhe ebusweni benu? Ingaba nilufumene olu tshintsho olunamandlakazi ezintliziyyweni zenu?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

- 15 Ingaba niyalusebenzisa ukholo lwenkululeko yakhe lowo wanidalayo? Ingaba nikhangele phambili ngeliso lokholo, nize niwubone lo mzimba ufayo uphakanyiselwa ekungafini, kwaye noku konakalayo kuphakanyiselwa ekungonakalini, nize nime phambi koThixo nigwetywe ngokwezenzo ezenziwe emzimbeni ofayo?
- 16 Ndithi kuni, ninako na ukuzithelekelela ingathi niva ilizwi leNkosi, lisithi kuni, ngaloo mhla: Yizani kum nina basikelelweyo, kuba qaphelani, imisebenzi yenu ibe iyimisebenzi yobulungisa ebusweni behlabathi?
- 17 Okanye nizithelekelela ngathi ninako ukuxokisa iNkosi ngaloo mhla, nize nithi—Nkosi, imisebenzi yethu ibiyeyobulungisa phezu kobuso bomhlaba—kwaye ebeya kunisindisa?
- 18 Okanye ngenye indlela, ningazicingela niziswe phambi kwenkundla kaThixo nemiphefumlo yenu ezele ubutyala nokuzohlwaya, nineenkumbulo zawo onke amatyala enu, ewe, inkumbulo ezezekileyo yayo yonke inkohlakalo yenu, ewe, inkumbulo yokuba nayidela imiyalelo kaThixo?
- 19 Ndithi kuni, ingaba ningakhangele kuThixo ngaloo mhla ngentliziyo enyulu nezandla ezicocekileyo? Ndithi kuni, ingaba ningakhangele phezulu, ninenkangeleko kaThixo ikrolwe ebusweni benu?
- 20 Ndithi kuni, ingaba ningacinga ngokusindiswa xa niziyekele ukuba nibe zizicaka zomtyholi?
- 21 Ndithi kuni, niya kwazi ngaloo mhla ukuba aninako ukusindiswa; kuba akukho mntu oya kusindiswa ngaphandle kokuba izambatho zakhe zihlanjwe zabamhlophe; ewe, izambatho zakhe kufuneka zihlanjululwe zide zicoceke kuwo onke amachaphaza, ngegazi lakhe lowo kwathethwa ngaye ngoobawo bethu, ofanele ukuza kukhulula abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku ndiyani buza, bazalwana bam, niya kuziva njani, nabani na kuni, ukuba niya kuma phambi kwenkundla yokugweba kaThixo, ninezambatho ezichatshazelwe igazi nazo zonke iintlobo zobunyhuku-nyhuku? Qaphelani, ezi zinto ziya kungqina ntoni ngokuchasene nani?

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

- 23 Qaphelani ingaba aziyikungqina ukuba ningababulali, ewe, nokuba kanjalo ninetyala lazo zonke iintlobo zenkohlakalo?
- 24 Qaphelani, bazalwana bam, ingaba nicinga ukuba onjalo unokuba nayo indawo yokuhlala phantsi ebukumkanini bukaThixo, noAbraham, noIsake, kunye noYakobi, kananjalo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele, abazambatho zabo zihlanjwe zaza azabi nachaphaza, zamsulwa kwaye zamhlophe?
- 25 Ndithi kuni, Hayi; ngaphandle kokuba nimenza ixoki uMdali wethu ukususela ekuqalekeni, okanye nicinga ukuba ulixoki ukususela ekuqalekeni, aninako ukucinga ukuba abanjalo banokuba nendawo ebukumkanini bezulu; kodwa baya kukhutshelwa ngaphandle kuba bona bangabantwana bobukumkani bukamtyholi.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni, bazalwana bam, ukuba nive utshintsho lwentliziyo, nokuba ninqwenele ukuvuma ingoma yothando olukhululayo, ndingabuza, ingaba niseva njalo ngoku?
- 27 Ingaba nihambile, nizigcine ningenatyala phambi kukaThixo? Beninako ukuthi, ngaphakathi kwenu, ukuba beninokubizwa nife ngeli xesha, ukuba benithobeke ngokwaneleyo? Nokuba izambatho zenu bezihlanjwe zaze zenziwa mhlophe egazini likaKrestu, oya kuza akhulule abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo?
- 28 Qaphelani, ingaba nihlutywe ikratshi? Ndithi kuni, ukuba aninjalo anikulungelanga ukubonana noThixo. Qaphelani kufuneka nilungise ngokukhawuleza; kuba ubukumkani bezulu busondele, kwaye onjalo akanabo ubomi obungunaphakade.
- 29 Qaphelani, ndithi, ingaba ukhona phakathi kwenu ongahlutyulwanga umona? Ndithi kuni onjalo akazilungiselelanga; kwaye kwanga angazilungiselela ngokukhawuleza, kuba ilixa lisondele, kwaye akazi ukuba ixesha liya kufika nini; kuba onjalo akayi kufunyanwa engenatyala.
- 30 Kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuni, ingaba ukhona phakathi kwenu ogxeka umntakwabo, okanye omthwalisa iintshutshiso?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?



31 Yeha kulowo, kuba akazilungiselelanga, kwaye ixesha lisondele lokuba aguquke, okanye akanakusindiswa!

32 Ewe, yeha kwanakuni nonke basebenzi bobugwenxa; guqukani, guqukani, kuba iNkosi uThixo ikuthethile!

33 Qaphelani, uthumela isimemo kubo bonke abantu, kuba iingalo zenceba zolulilwe ngakubo, kwaye ithi: Guqukani, kwaye ndiya kunamkela.

34 Ewe, ithi: Yizani kum kwaye niya kudla kwiziqhamo zomthi wobomi; ewe, niya kudla nisele okwesonka namanzi obomi ngokukhululekileyo;

35 Ewe, yizani kum kwaye nize nemisebenzi yobulungisa, kwaye aniyi kugawulelwa phantsi nize niphoselwe emlilweni—

36 Kuba qaphelani, ixesha lisondele lokuba nabani na ongazisi ziqhamo zilungileyo, okanye ongenzi misebenzi yobulungisa, onjalo unesizathu sokwenza, isijwili kwaye azile.

37 Owu nina basebenzi bobugwenxa; nina bakhukhumele zizinto ezingento zehlabathi, nina bathe nizazile iindlela zobulungisa nangona kunjalo naphuma endleleni, njengezimvu ezingenamalusi, ningenakumelana nomalusi othe wanibiza kwaye usanibiza, kodwa anifuni kuliphulaphula ilizwi lakhe!

38 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ukuba umalusi olungileyo uyanibiza; ewe, kwaye unibiza ngegama lakhe, eli ligama likaKrestu; kwaye ukuba aninakuliphulaphula ilizwi lomalusi olungileyo, negama enibizwa ngalo, qaphelani, anizizo izimvu zomalusi olungileyo.

39 Kwaye ngoku ukuba anizizo izimvu zomalusi olungileyo, ningabawuphi umhlambi? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, umtyholi ungumalusi wenu, kwaye ningabomhlambi wakhe; kwaye ngoku, ngubani ongayiphikisayo le nto? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, nabani na ophikisa le nto lixoki kwaye ungumntwana womtyholi.

40 Kuba ndithi kuni nantoni na elungileyo ivela kuThixo, kwaye nantoni na embi ivela kumtyholi.

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

- 41 Ke ngoko, ukuba umntu uzisa imisebenzi elungileyo uyaliphulaphula ilizwi lomalusi olungileyo, kwaye uyamlandela; kodwa nabani na ozisa imisebenzi emibi, lowo uba ngumntwana kamtyholi, kuba uphulaphula ilizwi lakhe, kwaye uyamlandela.
- 42 Kwaye nabani na owenza oku kufuneka afumane umvuzo wakhe kuye; ke ngoko, ngomvuzo wakhe ufumana ukufa, ngokwezinto ezinxulumene nobulungisa, engofileyo kuyo yonke imisebenzi elungileyo.
- 43 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinga ningandiva, kuba ndithetha ngamandla omphefumlo wam; kuba qaphelani, ndithethe nani ngokucacileyo ukuze ningaphazami, okanye ndithethe ngokwemiyalelo kaThixo.
- 44 Kuba ndibiziwe ukuba ndithethe ngolu hlobo, ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, obukuKrestu uYesu; ewe, ndiyalelwe ukuba ndime kwaye ndingqine kwaba bantu ngezinto ezathethwa ngoobawo bethu malunga nezinto eziya kwenzeka.
- 45 Kwaye akuphelelanga apha. Anicingi ukuba ndiyazazela ngokwam ezi zinto? Qaphelani, ndiyangqina kuni ukuba ndiyazi ukuba ezi zinto endithethe ngazo ziyinyaniso. Nicinga ukuba ndikwazi njani ukuqiniseka kwazo?
- 46 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni zaziswa kum ngoMoya oyiNgcwele kaThixo. Qaphelani, ndizile ukudla ndathandaza iintsuku ezininzi ukuze ndizazi ezi zinto ngokwam. Kwaye ngoku ndiyazazi ngokwam ukuba ziyinyaniso; kuba iNkosi uThixo izazisile kum ngoMoya oyiNgcwele wakhe; kwaye lo ngumoya wesityhilelo okum.
- 47 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndithi kuni kutyhiliwe kum ukuba amazwi athi athethwa ngoobawo bethu ayinyaniso, nakanjalo nangomoya wesiprofetho okum, othe kanjalo wabonakaliswa ngoMoya kaThixo.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

48 Ndithi kuni, ndiyazi ngokwam ukuba nantoni na endiza kuyithetha kuni, malunga nezinto eziya kwenzeka, yinyani; kwaye ndithi kuni, ndiyazi ukuba uYesu Krestu uya kuza, ewe, uNyana, oKuphela koZelweyo kaBawo, ozele lubabalo, nenceba, nenyanyiso. Kwaye qaphelani, nguye ozayo ukuza kususa izono zehlabathi, ewe, izono zakhe wonke umntu okholwa ngokuthe nkqi egameni lakhe.

49 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni olu luhlobo endibizelwe kulo, ewe, ukushumayela kubazalwana bam abathandekayo, ewe, naye wonke umntu ohlala elizweni; ewe, ukushumayela kubo bonke, kunye abadala nabancinane, kunye abangamakhoboka nabakhululekileyo; ewe, nditsho kuni manyange, kananjalo namaqina, nesizukulwana esisakhulayo; ewe, ukukhala kubo ukuba baguquke baze bazalwe kwakhona.

50 Ewe, utsho njalo uMoya: Guqukani, nonke ziphelo zomhlaba, kuba ubukumkani bamazulu busondele; ewe, uNyana kaThixo uyeza ngozuko lwakhe, ngamandlakazi akhe, nobungangamsha, namandla, nangobukhosi. Ewe, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndithi kuni, uMoya uthi: Qaphelani uzuko loKumkani wawo wonke umhlaba; kwaye kanjalo uKumkani wezulu uya kukhanya kwamsinyane kakhulu phakathi kwabo bonke abantwana babantu.

51 Kwaye kanjalo uMoya uthi kum, ewe, khala kum ngelizwi elinamandla kazi, usithi: Hamba uthi kwaba bantu—Guqukani, kuba ngaphandle kokuba niguquke aninako nangayiphi na indlela ukubudla ilifa ubukumkani bezulu.

52 Kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuni, uMoya uthi: Qaphelani, izembe libekiwe kwingcambu yomthi; ke ngoko, wonke umthi ongazisi ziqhamo zilungileyo uya kugawulelwa phantsi uphoswe emlilweni, ewe, umlilo ongapheliyo, kwanawo umlilo ongacimiyo. Qaphelani, nize nikhumbule, oNgcwele ukuthethile.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

53 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndithi kuni, ingaba ningamelana na nezi ntetha; ewe, ingaba ningazibekela bucala ezi zinto, ninyathele oNgcwele phantsi kweenyawo zenu; ewe, ingaba ningakhukhumalela kwikratshi leentliziyo zenu; ewe, ingaba niseza kuphikela ukunxiba izambatho zexabiso kwaye nibeke iintliziyo zenu phezu kwezinto ezingento zomhlaba, phezu kobutyebi benu?

54 Ewe, ingaba niza kuphikela ukucinga ukuba nilunge ngaphezulu omnye komnye, ewe ingaba niseza kuphikela ukutshutshisa abazalwana benu, abazithobayo kwaye behamba ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, abaziswe ngabo kweli bandla, bengcwaliswe nguMoya oyiNgcwele, kwaye besizisa imisebenzi efanelene nenguquko—

55 Ewe, kwaye ingaba niza kuphikela ukufulathela amahlwempu, nabasweleyo, nokubavimba izinto zenu?

56 Kwaye okokugqibela, nonke nina eniya kuphikela ukwenza inkohlakalo, ndithi kuni, aba ngabo baya kugawulelwa phantsi baphoswe emlilweni ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ngokukhawuleza.

57 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni, nina nonke banqwenela ukulandela ilizwi lomalusi olungileyo, phumani kwabakhohlakeleyo, nohluke, ningaziphathi izinto zabo ezingcolileyo; kwaye qaphelani, amagama abo aya kucinywa, oko kukuthi amagama abakhohlakeleyo akanakubalwa phakathi kwamagama amalungisa, ukuze ilizwi likaThixo libe nokuzalisekiswa, elithi: Amagama abakhohlakeleyo akanakuxutywa namagama abantu bam;

58 Kuba amagama amalungisa aya kubhalwa encwadini yobomi, kwaye ndiya kubanika ilifa esandleni sam sasekunene. Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, yintoni na eninako ukuyithetha echasene noku? Ndithi kuni, ukuba nithetha nichasene nako, akunamsebenzi, kuba ilizwi likaThixo kufuneka lizalisekile.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

59 Kuba nguwuphi umalusi apho phakathi kwenu oya kuthi enezimvu ezininzi aze angazilondolozisi, ukuze iingcuka zingangeni ziwuqwenge umhlambi wakhe? Kwaye qaphelani, ukuba ingcuka ingena emhlambini wakhe ingaba akayikhupheli ngaphandle? Ewe, kwaye ekugqibeleni, ukuba unako, angayibulala.

60 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni umalusi olungileyo uyanibiza; kwaye ukuba niya kuliphulaphula ilizwi lakhe uya kunizisa emhlambini wakhe, nibe zizimvu zakhe; kwaye uniyalela ukuba ningavumeli ingcuka elambe kakhulu ukuba ingene phakathi kwenu, ukuze ningabinakutshatyalaliswa.

61 Kwaye ngoku mna, Alma, ndiniyalela ngolwimi lwakhe lowo undiyaleleyo, ukuba niqwalasele ukuwenza amazwi endiwathethe kuni.

62 Ndithetha ngendlela eyalelayo kuni eningabebandla; kwaye kwabo bangengabo abebandla ndithetha ngendlela yesimemo, ndisithi: Yizani nibhaptizelwe enguqukwani, ukuze nani nibe ngabaxhamli beziqhamo zomthi wobomi.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

## Alma 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma ephezile ukuthetha ebantwini bebandla, elaye limiselwe kuso isixeko saseZarahemla, wamisela ababingeleli nabadala, ngokubeka izandla zakhe ngokohlobo lukaThixo, ukuba balongamele kwaye baligcine ibandla.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nabani ababe ngengabo abebandla abathi baguquka kuzo izono zabo babhaptizelwa enguqukweni, baza bamkelwa ebandleni.
- 3 Kwaye kunjalo kwenzekile okokuba noobanina ababengengabo abebandla ababengaguquki kuyo inkohlakalo yabo baze bazithobe phambi koThixo—ndithetha ngabo babephakamele kwikratshi leentliziyo zabo—abo bakhutshwa, aza amagama abo acinywa, ukuze amagama abo angabalelwa phakathi kwalawo angawamalungisa.
- 4 Kwaye njalo baqalisa ukumisa uhlobo lwebandla esixekweni saseZarahemla.
- 5 Ngoku ndinga ningaqonda okokuba ilizwi likaThixo lalikhululekile kubo bonke, okokuba akukho namnye owahluthwayo ilungelo lokuzihlanganisa kunye ukuze baphulaphule ilizwi likaThixo.
- 6 Nangona kunjalo abantwana bakaThixo babeyalelwe ukuba bahlanganisane kunye rhoqo, baze bamanyane ekuzileni ukudla nasemthandazweni onamandlakazi bethandazela intlalontle yemiphefumlo yabo babengamazi uThixo.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma eyenzile le mimiselo wemka kubo, ewe, kulo ibandla elaye likuso isixeko saseZarahemla, waza wawelela ngasempuma yomlambo iTsidon, kwintlambo kaGidiyon, apho kwisixeko esasakhiwe, saze sabizwa isixeko sikaGidiyon, esasikwintlambo eyayibizwa ngokukuba yiGidiyon, esabizwa ngendoda eyabulawa sisandla sikaNehore ngekrele.

## Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8 Waza uAlma wahamba waza waqalisa ukuvakalisa ilizwi likaThixo kulo ibandla elaye limiswe kwintlambo kaGidiyon, ngokwesityhilelo sobunyani belizwi elalithethiwe ngooyise, kwaye nangokomoya wesiprofetho owaye ukuye, ngokobungqina bukaYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, owayeza kuza kukhulula abantu bakhe ezonweni zabo, nohlobo olungcwele awayebizwa ngalo. Kwaye njalo kubhaliwe. Amen.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.

*Amazwi ka-Alma arwathi wawanikela ebantwini eGidiyon, ngokweyakhe imbali.*

## Alma 7

- 1 Qaphelani bazalwana bam abathandekayo, njengokuba ndivunyelwe ukuza kuni, ke ngoko ndizama ukuthetha nani ngolwimi lwam; ewe, ngowam umlomo, njengokuba ililixa lokuqala lokuba ndithethe nani ngamazwi omlomo wam, mna ekubeni bendibopheleleke kwisihlalo-sokugweba, ndinomsebenzi omninzi ukuze ndingabinako ukuza kuni.
- 2 Kwaye nakaloku nje ngendingezanga ngoku ngalo eli lixa ukuba ibingekuba isihlalo-sokugweba sinikwe omnye, ukuba alawule endaweni yam; kwaye iNkosi ngenceba enkulu indinyulele ukuba ndize kuni.
- 3 Kwaye qaphelani, ndize ndinamathemba amakhulu nomnqweno omkhulu wokuba ndinifumane nizithobile phambi koThixo, nokokuba niqhubekile ekubongozeni ubabalo lwakhe, nokuba ndinifumene ukuba benimsulwa phambi kwakhe, okokuba ndinifumene ningekho kwimeko yokuthingaza eyoyikekayo ebebekuyo abazalwana bam eZarahemla.
- 4 Kodwa malisikelelwe igama likaThixo, kuba endinike ukuba ndazi, ewe, endinike uvuyo olugqithisileyo kakhulu lokwazi ukuba bamiselwe kwakhona endleleni yobulungisa bakhe.
- 5 Kwaye ndiyathemba, ngokoMoya kaThixo okum, okokuba ndiya kuba novuyo kunjalo ngani; nangona kunjalo andinqweneli ukuba uvuyo lwam ngani luze ngokubangelwa ziimbandezelo ezininzi nosizi endithe ndanalo ngabazalwana eZarahemla, kuba qaphelani, uvuyo lwam ngabo lweza emva kokunyovula kwiimbandezelo ezininzi nosizi.

*The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.*

## Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.



6 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiyathemba ukuba anikho kwimeko enkulu yokungakholelwa njengokuba babenjalo abazalwana benu; ndiyathemba okokuba aniphakamelanga kwikratshi leentliziyo zenu; ewe, ndiyathemba okokuba anibekanga ntliziyo zenu phezu kobutyebi nezinto ezililize zehlabathi; ewe, ndiyathemba okokuba aninquli zithixo, kodwa nithi ninqule uThixo wenene nophilayo, nokokuba nikhangele phambili kuxolelo lwezono zenu, ngokholo lwanaphakade, oluzayo.

7 Kuba qaphelani, ndithi kuni kusekho izinto ezininzi ezisezayo; kwaye qaphelani, kukho into enye ebaluleke ukuzodlula zonke—kuba qaphelani, ilixa alikude lokuba uMkhululi aphile kwaye afike phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

8 Qaphelani, anditsho ukuba uya kufika phakathi kwethu ngelixa lokuhlala kwakhe kumnquba wakhe wenyama; kuba qaphelani, uMoya awutshongo kum ukuba oku kuya kuba njalo. Ngoku malunga noku andazi; kodwa ndazi nje kangangoku, okokuba iNkosi uThixo inamandla okwenza zonke izinto ezinxulumene nelizwi layo.

9 Kodwa qaphelani, uMoya uthethe kangangoku kum, usithi: Danduluka kwaba bantu, usithi—Guqukani nina, kwaye niwulungise umendo weNkosi, nize nihambe ezindleleni zayo, ezithe tye; kuba qaphelani, ubukumkani bezulu busondele, kwaye uNyana kaThixo uyeza phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

10 Kwaye qaphelani, uya kuzalwa nguMariya, eYerusalem elilizwe loobawo bethu, yena ke eyintombi engazani nandoda, exabisekileyo nesisitya esonyuliweyo, eya kusitheliswa ngesithunzi ize ikhawulwe ngegunya loMoya oyiNgcwele, aze azale unyana, ewe, kwanaye uNyana kaThixo.

11 Kwaye uya kubheka phambili, esiva iintlungu neembandezelo nezihendo zazo zonke iindidi; kwaye oku kuya kwenzeka ukuze ilizwi libe nokuzaliseka elithi uya kuthabathela kuye iintlungu nezifo zabantu bakhe.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

- 12 Kwaye uya kuthabathela phezu kwakhe ukufa, ukuze abe nokuwakhulula amakhamandela okufa okuqamangela abantu bakhe; kwaye uya kuthabathela phezu kwakhe ubuthathaka babo, ukuze izibilini zakhe zibe nokuzaliswa yimfesane, ngokwasenyameni, ukuze abe nokuyazi ngokwasenyameni indlela yokunceda abantu bakhe ngokobuthathaka babo.
- 13 Ngoku uMoya uyazazi zonke izinto; nangona kunjalo uNyana kaThixo eya bandezeleka ngokwasenyameni ukuze abe nokuthabathela phezu kwakhe izono zabantu bakhe, ukuze abe nokuzosula iziphoso zabo ngokwamandla akhe okuhlangula; kwaye ngoku qaphelani, obu bubungqina obukum.
- 14 Ngoku ndithi kuni kufuneka niguquke, kwaye nizalwe ngokutsha; kuba uMoya uthi ukuba anizalwanga kwakhona aninako ukubudla ilifa ubukumkani bezulu; ke ngoko yizani kwaye nibhaptizelwe enguqukweni, ukuze nibe nokuhlanjwa ezonweni zenu, ukuze nibe nokholo kuyo iMvana kaThixo, esusa izono zehlabathi, enamandlakazi okusindisa nawokusicoca kuyo intswelabulungisa.
- 15 Ewe, ndithi kuni yizani kwaye ningoyiki, kwaye nisibekele bucala sonke isono, esithi sinihlasele ngokulula, esithi sinibophelele phantsi entshabalalweni, ewe, yizani kwaye nibheke phambili, nize nibonise kuThixo wenu ukuba niyavuma ukuguquka ezonweni zenu nize ningene kuwo umnqophiso kunye naye wokuba niyigcine imiyalelo yakhe, nize nikungqine oku kuye ngolu suku ngokuya emanzini obhaptizo.
- 16 Kwaye nabani na okwenzayo oku, aze ayigcine imiyalelo kaThixo ukususela ngoku ukuya phambili, onjalo uya kukukhumbula oko ndikuthetha kuye, ewe, uya kukhumbula ukuba ndithe kuye, uya kuba nobomi obungunaphakade, ngokobungqina boMoya oyiNgcwele, obungqina ngaphakathi kum.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

17 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ingaba niya zikholelwa ezi zinto? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ewe, ndiyazi okokuba niya zikholelwa; kwaye indlela endazi ngayo ukuba niyazikholelwa ingembonakaliso yoMoya ekum. Kwaye ngoku ngenxa yokuba ukholo lwenu lomelele malunga noko, ewe, malunga nezinto endizithethileyo, uvuyo lwam lukhulu.

18 Kuba njengoko ndatshoyo kuni ukususela ekuqalekeni, ukuba ndinomnqweno omkhulu wokokuba nibe beningekho kwimeko yokuthingaza ngokufana nabazalwana benu, nokuba kunjalo ndifumanise ukuba iminqweno yam yonelisekile.

19 Kuba ndiyabona okokuba nisezindleleni zobulungisa; ndiyabona okokuba nisendleleni ekhokelela ebukumkani bukaThixo; ewe, ndiyabona okokuba niwenza uthi tye umendo wakhe.

20 Ndiyabona okokuba kwazisiwe kuni, ngobungqina belizwi lakhe, okokuba akanako ukuhamba ngeendlela ezimagoso-goso; engaphambuki nakuloo nto athe wayithetha; engenaso nasithunzi sakujikela kokusekunene ukuya ekhohlo, okanye ukusuka koko kulungileyo ukuya koko kungalunganga; ke ngoko, umgaqo wakhe ngumjikelo omnye wanaphakade.

21 Kwaye akahlali kuzo iitempile ezingangcwelanga; bungenako nobunyhuku-nyhuku okanye nantoni na engacocekanga ukwamkelwa kubo ubukumkani bukaThixo; ke ngoko ndithi kuni ilixa liyeza, ewe, kwaye liya kuba ngomhla wokugqibela, lokokuba lowo unyhuku-nyhuku uya kuhlala kubo ubunyhuku-nyhuku bakhe.

22 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndizithethile ezi zinto kuni ukuze ndibe nokunivusela ekuyiqondeni imfanelo yenu kuThixo, ukuze nibe nokuhamba ningenatyala phambi kwakhe, ukuze nibe nokulandela uhlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, emva kokuba nathi namkelwa kubo.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

23 Kwaye ngoku ndinga ningathobeka, nize nilulame kwaye nibe nobubele; nibelula ukufikeleleka; nizele ngumonde nokuzeka kade umsindo; ninobungcathu kuzo zonke izinto; nikhuthele ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo ngawo onke amaxesha; nicela nantoni na eniyisweleyo, kunye ezasemphefumleni neza senyameni; nisoloko nibuyisela imibulelo kuye uThixo nangazo naziphi na izinto enizifumanayo.

24 Kwaye niqiniseke ukuba ninokholo, ithemba, nothando lwenene, kwaye ke niya kusoloko nizele yimisebenzi elungileyo.

25 Kwaye inga iNkosi inganisikelela, kwaye izigcine izambatho zenu zingena chaphaza, ukuze ekugqibeleni nibe nokuziswa ukuba nihlale phantsi kunye noAbraham, noIsake, noYakobi, nabaprofeti abangcwele ababekho ukususela okoko ihlabathi laqalayo, ninezambatho ezingena chaphaza nanje ngoko ezabo izambatho zingena chaphaza, ebukumkanini bezulu ukuba bangabi saphinda baphume ngaphandle.

26 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndiwathethe la mazwi kuni ngokwaseMoyeni othi ungcine ngaphakathi kum; kwaye umphefumlo wam uyagcoba ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yenkuthalo egqithisileyo nenyameko enithe nayinikela kulo ilizwi lam.

27 Kwaye ngoku, inga uxolo lukaThixo lungaphumla phezu kwenu, naphezu kwezindlu zenu nemihlaba, naphezu kwempahla emfutshane nemihlambi yenu yeenkomo, nazo zonke izinto eninazo, abafazi benu nabantwana benu, ngokokholo lwenu nemisebenzi emihle, ukususela kweli lixa ukuya phambili nangonaphakade. Kwaye njalo ndithethile. Amen.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

## Alma 8

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wabuyela elizweni likaGidiyon, emva kokuba ebafundisile abantu bakaGidiyon izinto ezininzi ezingenakho ukuba zingabhalwa, ekubeni emisele uhlobo lwebandla, ngokohlobo awayethe wenza ngalo ngaphambili kwilizwe laseZarahemla, ewe, wabuyela kweyakhe indlu eZarahemla ukuba aziphumze kwimisebenzi awayeyenzile.
- 2 Kwaye njalo waphela owesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni koweshumi unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, okokuba uAlma wemka apho waza wathabatha uhambo lwakhe ngaphaya wangena kulo ilizwe laseMeleki, ngasentshona yomlambo iTsidon, ngasentshona ngakwimida yentlango.
- 4 Kwaye waqalisa ukubafundisa abantu elizweni likaMeleki ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, awayebizwe ngalo; kwaye waqalisa ukubafundisa abantu kulo lonke ilizwe laseMeleki.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu beza kuye ngayo yonke imida yelizwe elali ngasecaleni kwentlango. Kwaye babhaptizwa kulo lonke ilizwe;
- 6 Ukuze athi akuba ewugqibile umsebenzi wakhe eMeleki emke apho, waza wahamba uhambo lweentsuku ezintathu ngasemantla elizwe laseMeleki; waya wafika kwisixeko esibizwa ngokuba yiAmoniha.
- 7 Ngoku yayilisiko kubantu bakaNifayi ukuba bawabize amazwe abo, nezixeko zabo, needolophana zabo, ewe, kwanazo iidolophana zabo ezincinane, ngegama lakhe lowo waqalayo ukuzibanga; kwaye kwabanjalo kwilizwe lika-Amoniha.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma efikile kuso isixeko sase Amoniha waqalisa ukushumayela ilizwi likaThixo kubo.
- 9 Ngoku uSathana wayezibambe ngamandla iintliziyo zabantu besixeko saseAmoniha; ke ngoko abafunanga ukuwaphulaphula amazwi ka-Alma.

## Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

- 10 Nangona kunjalo uAlma wasebenza kakhulu ngokwasemoyeni, ezamana noThixo ngomthandazo onamandlakazi, ukuze awuthulule uMoya wakhe phezu kwabantu ababekuso isixeko; ukuze kanjalo abe uya kumnika ukuba abe nokuba bhaptizela enguqukweni.
- 11 Nangona kunjalo, baziqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, besithi kuye: Qaphela, siyakwazi ukuba unguAlma; kwaye siyazi okokuba ungumbingeleli omkhulu phezu kwebandla othe walimisa kwiindawo ezininzi zelizwe, ngokwesithethe sakho; kwaye thina asingabo abebandla lakho, kwaye asizikholelwa izithethe zobuyatha ezinjalo.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku siyazi ukuba ngenxa yokuba singengabo abebandla lakho siyazi ukuba akunalo igunya phezu kwethu; kwaye usinikezele isihlalo-sokugweba kuye uNifayiha; ke ngoko akunguye umgwebi omkhulu phezu kwethu.
- 13 Ngoku bakuba abantu bekuthethile oku, kwaye bawachasa onke amazwi akhe, kwaye bamthuka, kwaye bamtsicela, baza benza ukuba aphoneselwe ngaphandle kwesixeko, wemka apho waza wathabatha uhambo lwakhe ukuya ngakwisixeko esibizwa ngokuba yiAron.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa wayehamba ngaphaya, esindeka lusizi, enyovula kwinkxwaleko eninzi nentlupheko yomphfumlo, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu ababekwisixeko saseAmoniha, kwenzekile xa uAlma wayesindeka njalo lusizi, qaphelani ingelosi yeNkosi yabonakala kuye, isithi:
- 15 Usikelelekile wena, Alma; ke ngoko, yiphakamisele phezu intloko yakho kwaye ugcoobe, kuba unesizathu esikhulu sokugcooba; kuba uye wanenkathalo ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo ukususela kwilixa owathi wawufumana umyalezo wakho wokuqala ovela kuye. Qaphela, ndinguye lowo wawuzisayo kuwe.
- 16 Kwaye qaphela, ndithunyelwe ukuba ndikuyalele ukuba ubuyele kwisixeko saseAmoniha, kwaye ushumayele kwakhona kubo abantu besixeko; ewe, ushumayele kubo. Ewe, yithi kubo, ngaphandle kokuba bayaguquka iNkosi uThixo iya kubatshabalalisa.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

- 17 Kuba qaphela, bayafunda ngalo eli lixa ukuze babe nokutshabalalisa inkululeko yabantu bakho, (kuba itsho njalo iNkosi) into leyo ephikisanayo nemimiselo, nezigwebo, nemiyalelo ethe yayinikela kubo abantu bayo.
- 18 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma ewufumene umyalezo wakhe kuyo ingelosi yeNkosi wabuyela ngokukhawuleza kwilizwe lika-Amoniha. Waze wangena esixekweni ngenye indlela, ewe, ngendlela engasemazantsi esixeko laseAmoniha.
- 19 Kwaye xa wayengena esixekweni wayelambile, waza wathi kwindoda ethile: Ungasinika na isicaka esithobekileyo sikaThixo into yokutya?
- 20 Yaza indoda leyo yathi kuye: NdingumNifayithi, kwaye ndiyazi ukuba ungumprofeti ongcwele kaThixo, kuba uyindoda ethe ingelosi kumbono: Uya kumamkela. Ke ngoko, hamba kunye nam uye endlwini yam kwaye ndiya kukunika kokunye kokutya kwam; kwaye ndiyazi okokuba uya kuba yintsikelelo kum nendlu yam.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba indoda leyo yamamkela endlwini yayo; kwaye indoda leyo yayibizwa ngokuba nguAmyuleki; kwaye yazisa isonka nenyama yaza yazibeka phambi koAlma.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wasitya isonka waza wahlutha; waza wamsikelela uAmyuleki nendlu yakhe, waza wanikela umbulelo kuye uThixo.
- 23 Kwaye emva kokuba etyile waza wahlutha wathi kuAmyuleki: NdinguAlma, kwaye ndingumbingeleli omkhulu phezu kwebandla likaThixo kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 24 Kwaye qaphela, ndiye ndabizwa ukuba ndishumayele ilizwi likaThixo phakathi kwabo bonke aba bantu, ngokomoya wesityhilelo nobuprofethi; kwaye ndandikulo eli lizwe baza abandamkela, kodwa bandiphosela ngaphandle kwaye ndandisele ndiza kulifulathela eli lizwe ngonaphakade.
- 25 Kodwa qaphela, ndiyalelwe ukuba ndibuye kwakhona kwaye ndiprofethe kubo aba bantu, ewe, kwaye nokuba ndingqine ngokuchasene nabo malunga nobugwenxa babo.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered, and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word of God among all this people, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land and they would not receive me, but they cast me out and I was about to set my back towards this land forever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to testify against them concerning their iniquities.

26 Kwaye ngoku, Amyuleki, ngenxa yokuba undidlisile kwaye wandingenisa ngaphakathi, usikelelekile; kuba bendilambile, kuba bendizile ukutya iintsuku ezininzi.

27 Kwaye uAlma wahlala iintsuku ezininzi kunye noAmyuleki phambi kokuba aqalise ukushumayela kubo abantu.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baba nokugqithisa kakhulu kubo ubugwenxa babo.

29 Laza ilizwi lafika kuAlma, lisithi: Hamba; kwaye uthi kanjalo kuso isicaka sam uAmyuleki, bheka phambili kwaye uprofethe kubo aba bantu, usithi—Guqukani nina, kuba itsho njalo iNkosi, ngaphandle kokuba niguquke ndiya kubavelela aba bantu ngomsindo wam; ewe, kwaye andiyi kuwubuyisa mva umsindo wam owoyikekayo.

30 Waza uAlma wabheka phambili, noAmyuleki kanjalo, phakathi kwabantu, ukuya kuvakalisa amazwi kaThixo kubo; kwaye babezaliswe nguMoya oyiNgcwele.

31 Kwaye babenamandla ababewanikiwe, kangangokuba babengenako ukuvalelwa emihadini; kwakungenakwenzeka nokokuba nguwuphina umntu abenako ukubabulala; nangona kunjalo abazange bawasebenzise amandla abo bada babe bakhonkxwe ngamakhamandela baza baphoswa entolongweni. Ngoku, oku kwenziwa ukuze iNkosi ibe nokubonakalisa amandla ayo kubo.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babheka phambili baza baqalisa ukushumayela nokuprofetha kubo abantu, ngokomoya amandla eyathi iNkosi yabanika wona.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.



*Amazwi ka-Alma, kanaanjalo namazwi ka-Amyuleki, awayevakalisiwe kubo abantu ababe kulo ilizwe lase-Amoniba. Kanaanjalo baphoswa entolongweni, baza bablangulwa ngamandla amangalisayo kaThixo awayekubo, ngokwembali ka-Alma.*

## Alma 9

- 1 Kwaye kwakhona, mna, Alma, ekubeni ndiyalelwe nguThixo ukuba ndimele ndithathe uAmyuleki size sibheke phambili kwaye sishumayeke kwakhona kubo aba bantu, okanye abantu ababekuso isixeko saseAmoniha, kwenzekile njengoko ndandiqalisa ukushumayela kubo, baqalisa ukuphikisana nam, besithi:
- 2 Ungubani wena? Ucinga ukuba siya kukholelwa bubungqina bomntu omnye, nangona esishumayeza ukuba umhlaba kumele udlule?
- 3 Ngoku babengawaqondi amazwi ababewathetha; kuba babengazi ukuba umhlaba kumele udlule.
- 4 Kwaye bathi kanjalo: Asiyi kuwakholelwa amazwi akho ukuba uza kuprofetha ukuba esi sixeko sikhulu siya kutshatyalaliswa ngemini enye.
- 5 Ngoku babengazi ukuba uThixo unako ukwenza imisebenzi enjalo ukumangalisa, kuba babengabantu abantliziyi ziqaqadekileyo nabantamo zilukhuni.
- 6 Baza bathi: Ngubani uThixo, ukuba angathumela igunya elingaphezulu kumntu omnye phakathi kwaba bantu, ukuba avakalise kubo inyaniso yezinto ezinkulu kangaka nezimangalisayo?
- 7 Baza baphakama beza phambili ukuba bandibambe; kodwa qaphelani, abazange. Kwaye ndema ngenkalipho ukuze ndivakalise kubo, ewe, ndaye ndangqina ngenkalipho kubo, ndisithi:
- 8 Qaphelani, Owu nina sizukulwana sikhohlakeleyo nesigwenxa, nizilibele njani na izithethe zooyihlo; ewe, njani ukuba nikhawuleze ukuyilibala imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 9 Anikhumbuli na ukuba ubawo, uLihayi, wakhutshwa ngaphandle kweYerusalem ngesandla sikaThixo? Anikhumbuli na ukuba babekholelwa nguyeyekanda intlango?

*The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.*

## Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

- 10 Kwaye ingaba nilibele kamsinya kangaka ukuba mangaphi amaxesha ebahlangula oobawo baphume ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, aze abakhusele ekutshatyalalisweni, kwanangazo izandla zabazalwana abangababo?
- 11 Ewe, kwaye ukuba bekungengelilo igunya lakhe elingenamlinganiselo, nemfesane yakhe, nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe ngakuthi, ngokungaphephekiyo singe sisikelwe ngaphandle kubo ubuso bomhlaba kude lee phambi kwesi sigaba sexesha, kwaye mhlawumbi sibe sithunyelwe kwimeko yenkxwaleko engena siphelo nosizi.
- 12 Qaphelani, ngoku ndithi kuni uniyalela ukuba niguquke; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba niguquke, aninako nangayiphina indlela ukubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo. Kodwa qaphelani, akuphelelanga apho—uniyalele ukuba niguquke, okanye uya kunitshabalalisa kuphele nisuke kubuso bomhlaba; ewe, uya kunivelela ngomsindo wakhe, kwaye ngomsindo wakhe owoyikekayo akayi kubuya ngamva.
- 13 Qaphelani, aniwakhumbuli na amazwi awathethayo kuye uLihayi, ethetha oku: Kangangokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, niya kuphumelela elizweni? Kwaye kwakhona kuthiwa: Kangangokuba ningasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kusikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni beNkosi.
- 14 Ngoku ndinga ningakhumbula, okokuba kangangokuba amaLeymenayithi engayigcinanga imiyalelo kaThixo, asikelwe ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi. Ngoku siyabona okokuba ilizwi leNkosi liqinisekisiwe kuyo le nto, kwaye amaLeymenayithi asikelwe ngaphandle kobuso bakhe, ukususela ekuqalekeni kokona kwabo elizweni.
- 15 Nangona kunjalo ndithi kuni, kuya kunyamezeleka ngakumbi kubo ngomhla womgwebo kunakuni, ukuba nihlala ezonweni zenu, ewe, kwaye kuya kuba ngaphezulu nangakumbi ukunyamezeleka kubo kobu bomi kunakuni, ngaphandle kokuba niya guquka.
- 16 Kuba zininzi izithembiso ezinikelweyo kuwo amaLeymenayithi; kuba kungenxa yezithethe zooyise ezabangela ukuba bahlale bekwimo yabo yokungazi; ke ngoko iNkosi iya kuba nemfesane kubo ize ibolulele ubukho babo elizweni.

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

- 17 Kwaye ngathuba lithile lexesha baya kuziswa ekubeni balikholelwe ilizwi lakhe, baze babenokwazi ngokungalingi kwezithethe zooyise; kwaye abaninzi babo baya kusindiswa, kuba iNkosi iya kuba nemfesane kubo bonke abaya kulibiza igama lakhe.
- 18 Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi kuni ukuba nithe gqolo kwinkohlakalo yenu ukuze imihla yenu ingolulwa elizweni, kuba amaLeymenayithi aya kuthunyelwa phezu kwenu; kwaye ukuba aniguquki aya kuza ngelixa eniya kube ningazi, kwaye niya kuvelelwa ngentshabalalo epheleleyo; kwaye kuya kuba ngokomsindo owoyikekayo weNkosi.
- 19 Kuba ayisayi kunivumela ukuba nihlale kubugwenxa benu ukuze nitshabalalise abantu bayo. Ndithi kuni, Hayi; endaweni yoko angawavumela amaLeymenayithi ukuba abe nokubatshabalalisa bonke abantu bakhe ababizwa ngokuba ngabantu bakaNifayi, ukuba bekunako ukwenzeka ukuba bangawela ezonweni nasekukrejeni ekubeni bebenokukhanya okukhulu kangako nolwazi olukhulu kangako abalunikiweyo yiNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 20 Ewe, ekubeni beningabantu beNkosi abathandwa kakhulu; ewe, ekubeni nithandwe ngakumbi ngaphezu kwaso nasiphina isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, okanye abantu; ekubeni ninazo zonke izinto ezazisiweyo kubo, ngokweminqweno yabo, nokholo lwabo, nemithandazo, malunga naloo nto ibikho, nekhoyo, nesaya kuza.
- 21 Ekubeni benivelelwe ngoMoya kaThixo; ekubeni benincokole neengelosi, nasekubeni kuthethwe nani ngelizwi leNkosi; kwaye nasekubeni ninomoya wesiprofetho, nomoya wesityhilelo, kananjalo neziphopho ezininzi, isiphopho sokuthetha ngeelwimi, nesiphopho sokushumayela, nesiphopho soMoya oyiNgcwele, nesiphopho sokuguqulela;

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

- 22 Ewe, kwaye ekubeni nihlangulwe nguThixo naphuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, ngesandla seNkosi; ekubeni nisindiswe endlaleni, nakuso isifo, nakuzo zonke iintlobo zezifo zalo lonke udid; kwaye bona ekubeni baba nokomelela edabini, ukuze bangabi nakutshatyalaliswa; ekubeni bekhutshiwe ebukhobokeni amaxesha ngamaxesha, nasekubeni begciniwe baza balondolozwa kwada kwaba ngoku; kwaye baphunyelelisiwe bada bazizityebi kulo lonke uhlobo lwezinto—
- 23 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani ndithi kuni, ukuba abantu, abafumana iintsikelelo ezininzi esandleni seNkosi, baya kuthi bakreqe bephikisa ukukhanya nolwazi abanalo ndithi kuni ukuba kunjalo ukuba baya kuwela ekukrezeni, kuya kuba nokunyamezeleka kakhulu kuwo amaLeymenayithi kunakubo.
- 24 Kuba qaphelani, izithembiso zeNkosi zolulelwe kuwo amaLeymenayithi, kodwa azolulelwanga kuni ukuba niyakreqa; kuba iNkosi ayithembisanga ngokucacileyo yaza yavakalisa ngokungqingqwa, okokuba ukuba niya kuvukela ngokuchasene nayo niya kutshatyalaliswa kwaphela nisuke kubuso bomhlaba?
- 25 Kwaye ngoku kungesi sizathu, ukuze ningatshatyalaliswa, iNkosi ithumele ingelosi yayo ukuba ihambele abantu bayo abaninzi, ivakalisa kubo ukuba kufuneka babheke phambili kwaye badanduluke ngamandlakazi kubo abantu, besithi: Guqukani nina, kuba ubukumkani bezulu busondele;
- 26 Kwaye kungentsuku zingaphi ukususela ngoku uNyana kaThixo uza kufika esebuqaqawulini bakhe; kwaye ubuqaqawuli bakhe buya kuba bubuqaqawuli balowo oKuphela koZelweyo kaBawo, ezele lubabalo, bubulungisa, nenyanyiso, ezele ngumonde, nemfesane, nokuzeka kade umsindo, ekhawuleza ukuziva izikhalo zabantu bakhe nokuyiphendula imithandazo yabo.
- 27 Kwaye qaphelani, uyeza ukuze abakhulule abo baya kubaptizelwa enguqukweni, ngokholo egameni lakhe.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

- 28 Ke ngoko, wutyenenezeni umendo weNkosi, kuba ilixa selikufuphi lokokuba bonke abantu baya kuvuna umvuzo wemisebenzi yabo, ngokwaloo nto ibiyiyo—ukuba ibibubulungisa baya kuvuna usindiso lwemiphefumlo yabo, ngokwamandla nenkululeko kaYesu Krestu; kwaye ukuba ibimibi baya kuvuna isigwebo semiphefumlo yabo, ngokwamandla nokuthinjwa komtyholi.
- 29 Ngoku qaphelani, eli lilizwi le ngelosi, lidanduluka ebantwini.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, kuba ningabo abazalwana bam, kwaye nimele nithandeke, kwaye nimele nivelise imisebenzi efanele inguquko, ekubeni iintliziyo zenu beziqaqadeke kakhulu ngokuchasene nelizwi likaThixo, kwaye nasekubeni nilahlekile kwaye ningabantu abawileyo.
- 31 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Alma, ndithethe la mazwi, qaphelani, abantu baba nomsindo kum ngenxa yokuba ndathi kubo bangabantu abantliziyo ziqaqadekileyo nabantamo zilukhuni.
- 32 Kananjalo ngenxa yokuba ndathi kubo bangabantu abalahlekileyo nabawileyo baba nomsindo kum, kwaye bafuna ukundibamba, ukuze babe nokundiphosa entolongweni.
- 33 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi ayizange ibavumele ukuba bandithabathe ngelo lixa kwaye bandiphose entolongweni.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmyuleki weza kwaye wema ngaphambili, waza waqalisa ukushumayela kubo kanjalo. Kwaye ngoku amazwi ka-Amyuleki awabhalwanga onke, nangona kunjalo inxalenye yamazwi akhe abhaliwe kuyo le ncwadi.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

## Alma 10

- 1 Ngoku la ngamazwi awathi wawashumayela uAmyuleki ebantwini ababekwilizwe laseAmonihah, esithi:
- 2 Mna ndinguAmyuleki; ndingunyana kaGidona, owaye ngunyana kaIshmayeli; owaye yinzala kaAminadayi; kwaye yayikwanguye laa-Aminadayi owayetolike umbhalo owawu seludongeni lwetempile, owawubhalwe ngomnwe kaThixo.
- 3 Kwaye uAminadayi waye yinzala kaNifayi, owayengunyana kaLihayi, owayephuma kwilizwe laseYerusalem, owayeyinzala kaManase, owayeyinzala kaYosefu owayethengiswe eYiputa ngezandla zabakhuluwa bakhe.
- 4 Kwaye qaphelani, ndiyindoda kanjalo engena ludumo luncinane phakathi kwabo bonke abo bandaziyo; ewe, kwaye qaphelani, ndinezalamane ezininzi nezihlobo, kwaye kanjalo ndifumene ubutyebi obuninzi ngesandla senkuthalo yam.
- 5 Nangona kunjalo, ngaphandle kwako konke oku, andizange ndazi kangako ngeendlela zeNkosi, kwaye nangeemfihlelo zayo namandla ayo amangalisayo. Ndithe andizange ndazi kangako ngezi zinto; kodwa qaphelani, ndiyaphazama, kuba ndizibonile kakhulu iimfihlelo zayo namandla ayo amangalisayo; ewe, kwanasekulondolozweni kobomi baba bantu.
- 6 Nangona kunjalo, ndaye ndayiqaqadekisa intliziyo yam, kuba ndabizwa amaxesha amaninzi ndaza andasabela; ke ngoko ndandisazi malunga nezi zinto, kanti ke andizange ndifune ukwazi; ke ngoko ndaqhubeka ndivukela ngokuchasene noThixo, ngenkohlakalo yentliziyo yam, ngokude kube lolu suku lwesine lwayo le nyanga, ekoweshumi unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

## Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

- 7 Njengokuba ndandithabatha uhambo ukuya kubona isalamane esisondeleyo kakhulu, qaphelani ingelosi yeNkosi yabonakala kum yaza yathi: Amyuleki, buyela emzini wakho, kuba uza kudlisa umprofeti weNkosi; ewe, indoda engcwele, eyindoda eyonyuliweyo kaThixo; kuba ebezile ukudla kangangeentsuku ezininzi ngenxa yezono zaba bantu, kwaye ulambile, kwaye uza kumamkela kuwo umzi wakho uze umdlise, kwaye uza kukusikelela wena nendlu yakho; kwaye iintsikelelo zeNkosi ziya kuphumla phezu kwakho nendlu yakho.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndalithobela ilizwi lengelosi, ndaza ndabuyela ngasemzini wam. Kwaye njengokuba ndandibheka phaya ndayifumana indoda leyo ingelosi eyathi kum: Uya kuyamkela emzini wakho—kwaye qaphela ikwa yile ndoda ibisoloko ithetha nani malunga nezinto zikaThixo.
- 9 Kwaye ingelosi yathi kum iyindoda engcwele; ngako oko ndiyazi ukuba iyindoda engcwele ngenxa yokuba kwakutsho ingelosi kaThixo.
- 10 Kwaye kwakhona, ndiyazi okokuba izinto athe wangqina ngazo ziyinyani; kuba qaphelani ndithi kuni, njengoko iNkosi iphila, kwangokunjalo yathumela ingelosi yayo ukuba yenze ezi zinto zibonakale kum; kwaye oku ikwenze ngelixa uAlma wayehleli emzini wam.
- 11 Kuba qaphelani, iyisikelele indlu yam, indisikelele mna nabafazi bam, nabantwana bam, nobawo nezizalwana zam; ewe, kwanazo zonke izalamane zam uzisikelele, kwaye intsikelelo yeNkosi iphumle phezu kwethu ngokwamazwi eyawathethayo.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uAmyuleki ewathethile la mazwi abantu baqalisa ukukhwankqiswa, bebona okokuba kwakukho ngaphezulu kunengqina elinye elalingqina ngazo ezi zinto ababetyholwa ngazo, kananjalo ngezinto ezaziya kuza, ngokomoya wesiprofetho owawukubo.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

- 13 Nangona kunjalo, babekhona abanye phakathi kwabo ababecinga ukubathandabuza, ukuze ngamayelenqe amaqhinga abo babe bamisela emazwini abo, ukuze babe nokufumana ubungqina obuchasene nabo, ukuze babe nokubanikezela kubagwebi babo ukuze babe nokugwetywa ngokwasemthethweni, nokokuze babulawe okanye baphoswe entolongweni, ngokwetyala aba nokulijolisa okanye lingqine ngokuchasene nabo.
- 14 Ngoku yaye ingawo loo madoda awayefuna ukubatsabalalisa, awaye ngabaqondisi-mthetho, ababeqeshiwe okanye bonyuliwe ngabantu ukuba basebenzise umthetho ngamaxesha abo amatyala, okanye ematyaleni olwaphulomthetho lwabantu phambi kwabagwebi.
- 15 Ngoku aba baqondisi-mthetho babefundile ngabo bonke ubuqhophololo nobuqhinga babantu; kwaye oku kwakwenzelwe ukubanceda ukuze babe nobuchule kumsebenzi wabo.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baqalisa ukumbuza uAmyuleki, ukuze ngaloo ndlela babe nokumenza awaphixanise amazwi akhe, okanye awaphikise amazwi ekumele awathethe.
- 17 Ngoku babengazi ukuba uAmyuleki wayenako ukwazi ngamayelenqe abo. Kodwa kwenzekile njengoko babeqalisa ukumbuza, waziqonda iingcinga zabo, waza wathi kubo: Owu nina sizukulwana sikhohlakeleyo nesigqwethekileyo, nina baqondisi-mthetho nabahana-hanisi, kuba nibeka isiseko somtyholi; kuba nibeka izigcayiseli nezabatha ukuze nibambise abangcwele bakaThixo.
- 18 Niyila amacebo ukuze nigqwethe iindlela zobulungisa, kwaye nokuzehlisela umsindo kaThixo phezu kweentloko zenu, kangangokude kube yintshabalalo epheleleyo yaba bantu.
- 19 Ewe, watsho kakuhle uMozaya, owayengukumkani wethu wokugqibela, xa wayekwisithuba sokunikezela ubukumkani, engenabani wokuba abunikele phezu kwakhe, esenza ukuba aba bantu bazilawule ngamazwi angawabo—ewe, watsho kakuhle ukuthi ukuba ilixa kumele lifike lokuba izwi laba bantu liya kukhetha ubugwenxa, oko kukuthi, ukuba ilixa kumele lifike lokokuba aba bantu kumele bawele ekoneni, baya kuba bayivuthelwe intshabalalo.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.



- 20 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuni iNkosi inigweba kakuhle ngobugwenxa benu; kuhle ukudanduluka kwayo kubo aba bantu, ngelizwi leengelosi zayo: Guqukani nina, guqukani, kuba ubukumkani bamazulu busondele.
- 21 Ewe, kulungile ukudanduluka kwayo, ngelizwi leengelosi zayo okokuba: Ndiya kwehla ndize phakathi kwabantu bam, ngokuthe tye nangobulungisa ezandleni zam.
- 22 Ewe, kwaye ndithi kuni ukuba bekungengayo imithandazo yamalungisa, aselizweni ngoku, ndithi nakaloku nje ninge nivelelwe ngentshabalalo epheleleyo; kanti akuyi kuba ngonogumbe, njengoko kwakunjalo kubantu ngemihla kaNowa, kodwa kuya kuba ngendlala, nangezifo, nangekrele.
- 23 Kodwa kungemithandazo yamalungisa ukuba nisindiswe; ngoku ke ngoko, ukuba niya kuwakhuphela ngaphandle amalungisa phakathi kwenu ke iNkosi ayisayi kusibamba isandla sayo; kodwa ngomsindo wayo owoyikekayo iya kuphuma ize kuni ngokuchasene nani; nize ke nibethwe ngendlala, nangezifo, nangekrele; kwaye ilixa lisondele ngaphandle kokuba ningaguquka.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abantu baba nomsindo ngakumbi ngakuAmyuleki, baza bamemeza, besithi: Le ndoda yenyelisa ngokuchasene nemithetho yethu elungileyo, nabaqondisi-mthetho bethu abazizilumko esithe sabanyula.
- 25 Kodwa uAmyuleki wolula isandla sakhe, waza wadanduluka ngamandlakazi kubo, esithi: Owu nina sizukulwana sikhohlakeleyo nesigqwethekileyo, kungani ukuba uSathana abe nolawulo olunamandla kangaka ezintliziyweni zenu? Kungani ukuba nizinikele kuye ukuze abe namandla phezu kwenu, ukuba amfamekise amehlo enu, ukuze ningawaqondi amazwi ayethethwe, ngokobunyani bawo?
- 26 Kuba qaphelani, ingaba ndingqine ngokuchaseneyo nomthetho wenu? Aniqondi; nithi ndithethe ngokuchasene nomthetho wenu; kodwa andikwenzanga oko, kodwa ndithethe ndivumelana nomthetho wenu, ukuze nigwetywe.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

- 27 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni, isiseko sentshabalalo yaba bantu siyaqalisa ukubekwa ngokungabi nabulungisa kwabaqondisi-mthetho benu nabagwebi benu.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmyuleki ethethe la mazwi abantu bamemeza ngokuchasene naye, besithi: Ngoku siyazi okokuba le ndoda ingumntwana womtyholi, kuba isixokisile; kuba ithethe ngokuchasene nomthetho wethu. Kwaye ngoku ithi ayithethanga ngokuchasene nawo.
- 29 Kwaye kwakhona, wenyelise ngokuchasene nabaqondisi-mthetho nabagwebi bethu.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaqondisi-mthetho bagqiba ezintliziyweni zabo okokuba kufuneka bazikhumbule ezi zinto ngokuchasene naye.
- 31 Kwaye kwakukho omnye phakathi kwabo ogama lakhe lalinguZiyezirom. Ke kaloku waye ngoyena uphambili ukutyhola uAmyuleki noAlma, yena ke engoyena uyingcaphephe ngakumbi phakathi kwabo, efumana umsebenzi omninzi phakathi kwabantu.
- 32 Ke kaloku injongo yaba baqondisi-mthetho yaye ikukuzuza ingeniso; kwaye babefumana ingeniso ngokokusebenza kwabo.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

## Alma 11

- 1 Ngoku yayisemthethweni kaMozaya into yokuba wonke umntu owayengumgwebi womthetho, okanye abo ababemiselwe ukuba babe ngabagwebi, bamele bafumane umvuzo ngokwexesha abalisebenzileyo ukugweba abo baziswe phambi kwabo ukuba babagwebe.
- 2 Ngoku ukuba umntu utyala omnye, aze angavumi ukuhlawula into ayityalayo, wayemangalelwa kumgwebi; aze umgwebi asebenzise igunya, aze uthumele amagosa azise loo mntu phambi kwayo; aze amgwebe umntu ngokulandela umthetho nobungqina obabuziswe ngokuchasene naye, kwaye njalo umntu wayenyanzelwa ukuhlawula oko akutyalayo, okanye abhunyulwe, okanye akhutshwe phakathi kwabantu njengesela nomphangi.
- 3 Umgwebi wayefumana umvuzo ngokwexesha lakhe—isinayini yegolide ngosuku, okanye isinam yesilivere, engumlinganiso olinganayo nesinayini yegolide; kwaye oku kungokulandela umthetho owawunikiwe.
- 4 Ngoku la ngamagama amaqhekeza ahlukeneyo egolide yabo, nawesilivere yabo, ngokwamaxabiso awo. Kwaye amagama anikwe ngamaNifayithi, kuba babengabhali ngokwendlela yamaYuda awayeseYerusalem; kwaye babengalinganiseli ngokohlobo lamaYuda; kodwa bakuguqula ukubala kwabo kwanemilinganiselo yabo, ngokweengqondo neemeko zabantu, kuzo zonke izizukulwana, kwade kwaba lixesha lolawulo lwabagwebi, ekubeni ayemiselwe ngukumkani uMozaya.
- 5 Ngoku ukubala imali kunje—isinayini yegolide, isiyon yegolide, isham yegolide, nelimna yegolide.
- 6 Isinam yesilivere, iamnor yesilivere, iezrom yesilivere, neontayi yesilivere.
- 7 Isinam yesilivere yayilingana nesinayini yegolide, nayiphina yezi yayilingana nomlinganiselo werhasi, kanaanjalo nomlinganiselo walo lonke uhlobo lweenkoko.
- 8 Ngoku ixabiso lesiyoni yegolide laliphinda-phinda kabini ixabiso lesinayini.
- 9 Kwaye isham yegolide yaliphinda-phinda kabini ixabiso lesiyoni.
- 10 Kwaye ilimna yegolide yayilixabiso lazo zonke.

## Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11 Kwaye iamnor yesilivere yayinkulu kangangeesinam ezimbini.

12 Kwaye iezrom yesilivere yayinkulu kangangeesinam ezine.

13 Kwaye iontayi yayinkulu ingangazo zonke.

14 Ngoku la ngamaxabiso amanani aphantsi ekubaleni kwabo—

15 Ishiblon isisiqingatha sesinam; ke ngoko, isiqingatha somlinganiselo werhasi sibiza ishiblani.

16 Kwaye ishislam isisiqingatha seshiblon.

17 Kwaye iliya isisiqingatha seshislam.

18 Ngoku la ngamanani abo, ngokokubala kwabo.

19 Ngoku iantiyon yegolide ilingana neeshiblon ezintathu.

20 Ngoku, injongo yabo eyodwa yaye ikukufumana inzuzo, kuba babefumana umvuzo wabo ngokomsebenzi wabo, ke ngoko, babexhokoxela abantu ukwenza izidubedube, nazo zonke iintlobo zeziphazamiso neenkohlakalo, ukuze babenokufumana umsebenzi omninzi, nokuba bafumane imali ngokwamatyala aziswe phambi kwabo; ke ngoko baye baxhokoxela abantu ngokuchasene noAlma noAmyuleki.

21 Kwaye lo Ziyezirom waqalisa ukumbuza uAmyuleki, esithi: Ingaba ungandiphendula imibuzo embalwa endiza kuyibuza kuwe? Ngoku uZiyezirom wayeyindoda eyayilichule emaqhingeni kamtyholi, ukuze atshabalalise okulungileyo; ke ngoko, wathi kuAmyuleki: Ingaba uza kuyiphendula imibuzo endiza kuyibuza kuwe?

22 Waza uAmyuleki wathi kuye: Ewe, ukuba ingokoMoya weNkosi, okum; kuba akukho nto endiya kuyithetha echasene noMoya weNkosi. Waza uZiyezirom wathi kuye: Qaphela, nazi iiontayi ezintandathu zesilivere, kwaye ndiya kukunika zona zonke ukuba uya kukuphika ubukho boPhezu Konke.

23 Ngoku uAmyuleki wathi: Owu wena mntwana wesihogo, kungani ukuba undilinge? Akwazi ukuba amalungisa akanikezeli kwizihendo ezinje?

24 Ingaba uyakholelwa okokuba akukho Thixo? Ndithi kuwe, Hayi, uyayazi okokuba ukhona uThixo, kodwa uthanda loo ngeniso ukudlula yena.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a Leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reckoning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, because they received their wages according to their employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them; therefore they did stir up the people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, saying: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek: Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

25 Kwaye ngoku uxokile kum phambi koThixo. Uthe kum—Qaphela ezi-ontayi ezintandathu, ezilixabiso elikhulu, ndiya kukunika—xa wena ubusazi entliziyweni yakho okokuba uza kuzigcina ungandiniki; kwaye umnqweno wakho kuphela ibingowokuba ndikhanyele uThixo wokwenene ophilayo, ukuze ube nesizathu sokunditshabalalisa. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ngenxa yobu bubu bukhulu uya kuwufumana umvuzo wakho.

26 Waza uZiyezirom wathi kuye: Uthi kukho uThixo wokwenene ophilayo?

27 Waza uAmyuleki wathi: Ewe, ukho uThixo wokwenene ophilayo.

28 Ngoku uZiyezirom wathi: Bakhona abanye ngaphandle koThixo omnye?

29 Waza waphendula, Hayi.

30 Ngoku uZiyezirom waphinda wathi kuye: Uzazi njani ezi zinto?

31 Waza wathi: Ingelosi yazazisa kum.

32 Waza uZiyezirom waphinda wathi: Ngubani lo oya kuza? Ingaba nguNyana kaThixo?

33 Waza wathi kuye, Ewe.

34 Waza uZiyezirom waphinda wathi: Ingaba uya kubasindisa abantu bakhe abasezonweni zabo? Waza uAmyuleki waphendula wathi kuye: Ndithi kuwe akangekhe, kuba akanako ukuliphikisa ilizwi lakhe.

35 Ngoku uZiyezirom wathi ebantwini; Bonani ukuba niyazikhumbula ezi zinto; kuba uthe mnye kuphela uThixo; kodwa uthi uNyana kaThixo uya kuza, kodwa akayi kubasindisa abantu bakhe—ngokungathi ungunya lokuyalela uThixo.

36 Ngoku uAmyuleki waphinda wathi kuye: Qaphela uxokile, kuba uthi ndithethe ngokungathi ndinegunya lokuyalela uThixo kuba ndithe akayi kubasindisa abantu bakhe besezonweni zabo.

37 Kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuwe akanako ukubasindisa besezonweni zabo; kuba andinako ukuliphikisa ilizwi lakhe, kwaye uthe akukho nto ingcolileyo eya kubudla ilifa ubukumkani bezulu; ke ngoko, ningasindiswa njani, ngaphandle kokuba nibudla ilifa ubukumkani bamazulu? Ke ngoko, aninako ukusindiswa nisezonweni zenu.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

- 38 Ngoku uZiyezirom waphinda wathi kuye: Ingaba uNyana kaThixo nguye ngokwenene uBawo onguNaphakade?
- 39 Waza uAmyuleki wathi kuye: Ewe, nguye ngokwenene uBawo onguNaphakade wezulu nomhlaba, nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo; usisiqalo nesiphelo, owokuqala nowokugqibela;
- 40 Kwaye uya kuza ehlabathini ukuza kukhulula abantu bakhe; kwaye uya kuthabathela kuye izigqitho zabo bakholwayo egameni lakhe; kwaye aba ngabo baya kufumana ubomi banaphakade, kwaye usindiso aluzi nakubani na ongomnye.
- 41 Ke ngoko abakhohlakeleyo baya kuhlala ngokungathi bekungekho nkululeko yenziweyo, ngaphandle kokuba ibe kukukhululwa kwamakhamandela okufa; kuba qaphelani, umhla uyeza wokuba bonke baya kuvuka kwelabafileyo kwaye beme phambi koThixo, kwaye bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo.
- 42 Ngoku, kukho ukufa okubizwa ngokuba kukufa kwenyama; kwaye ukufa kukaKrestu kuya kukhulula amakhamandela oku kufa kwenyama, ukuze bonke bavuswe koku kufa kwenyama.
- 43 Umoya nomzimba ziya kubuyelana kwakhona kwimo yazo egqibeleleyo; kunye amalungu nezihlanganisi zomzimba ziya kubuyiselwa kwimo yazo egqibeleleyo, njengoko sinjalo thina ngoku ngeli xesha; kwaye siya kuziswa ukuba sime phambi koThixo, sisazi njengokuba sisazi ngoku, sibe nenkumbulo eqaqambileyo ngawo onke amatyala ethu.
- 44 Ngoku, olu buyiselo luya kuza kubo bonke, kunye abadala nabancinane, kunye abangamakhoboka nabakhululekileyo, kunye abangamadoda nabangabafazi, kunye abakhohlakeleyo namalungisa; kwanokuba akuyi kubakho nkqu nonwele lweentloko zabo oluya kulahleka; kodwa yonke into iya kubuyiselwa kwimo yayo egqibeleleyo, njengokuba kunjalo ngoku, okanye emzimbeni, kwaye baya kuziswa kwaye bamiswe phambi kwenkundla kaKrestu uNyana, noThixo uBawo, noMoya oyiNgcwele, abanguThixo omnye waNaphakade, ukuze bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, nokuba ilungile okanye nokuba mibi.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

45 Ngoku, qaphelani, ndithethe nani malunga  
nokufa komzimba ofayo, kanaanjalalo  
ngokunxulumene nogovuko lomzimba ofayo. Ndithi  
kuni lo mzimba ofayo uvuselwa kumzimba ongafiyo,  
oko kukuthi ukusuka ekufeni, nakuko ukufa  
kokuqala kuye ebomini, ukuze ingaphinde ife;  
oomoya bayo idibane nemizimba yabo, bangaze  
baphinde bahlukaniswe; njalo iyonke ibe  
ngokwasemoyeni nasemzimbeni ongafiyo, ukuze  
ingaphinde ikubone ukonakala.

46 Ngoku, akuba uAmyuleki ewagqibile la mazwi  
abantu baqalisa kwakhona ukukhwankqiswa,  
kanaanjalalo noZiyezirom waqalisa ukungcangcazela.  
Kwaye njalo aphela amazwi ka-Amyuleki, okanye  
oku kuko konke endikubhalileyo.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning  
the death of the mortal body, and also concerning  
the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you  
that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body,  
that is from death, even from the first death unto life,  
that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with  
their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole be-  
coming spiritual and immortal, that they can no  
more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the  
people began again to be astonished, and also  
Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the  
words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.

## Alma 12

- 1 Ngoku uAlma, akuba ebonile ukuba amazwi ka-Amyuleki amenze uZiyezirom wathi cwaka, kuba wabona ukuba uAmyuleki umbambile ebuxokini bakhe nokulahlekisa kuba efuna ukumtshabalalisa, kwaye akubona ukuba uqalisa ukungcangcazela sisazela setyala lakhe, wavula umlomo wakhe waza waqalisa ukuthetha naye, nokumiliseka amazwi ka-Amyuleki, nokucacisa izinto ngokungakumbi, okanye ukusombulula izibhalo ngaphaya koko kwenziwe nguAmyuleki.
- 2 Ngoku amazwi athethwe nguAlma kuZiyezirom aviwa ngabo bonke abantu macala onke; kuba isihlwele sasisikhulu, waza wathetha ngale ndlela:
- 3 Ngoku Ziyezirom, ekubeni ubhaqiwe ebuxokini nakubuqhophololo bakho, kuba akuxokisanga bantu bodwa kodwa uxokile nakuThixo; kuba qaphela, uyazazi zonke iingcinga zakho, kwaye uyabona okokuba iingcinga zakho zazisiwe kuthi ngoMoya wakhe;
- 4 Kwaye uyabona okokuba siyazi ukuba icebo lakho ibilicebo elinobuqhokolo kakhulu, njengobuqhokolo bomtyholi, ukuze uxoke kwaye ulahlekise aba bantu ukuze ubenze bachasane nathi, ukuze basenyelise kwaye basilahlele ngaphandle—
- 5 Ngoku eli ibilicebo lotshaba lwakho, kwaye usebenzise igunya lakhe kuwe. Ngoku ndinga ungakhumbula ukuba oko ndikuthetha kuwe ndikuthetha kubo bonke.
- 6 Kwaye qaphelani ndithi kuni nonke lo ibingumgibe wotshaba oluthe lwawubeka ukuze ubambise aba bantu, ukuze lunizise phantsi kolawulo lwalo, ukuze lunirhangqele ngamatyathanga alo, ukuze lunibophelele phantsi kwentshabalalo yanaphakade, ngokwamandla alo okuthimba.

## Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.



- 7 Ngoku akuba uAlma ethethe la mazwi, uZiyezirom waqalisa ukungcangcazela ngokugqithise ngakumbi, kuba wayeqinisekisiwe ngakumbi nangakumbi ngamandla kaThixo; kananjalo wayeqinisekisiwe okokuba uAlma noAmyuleki babenolwazi ngaye, kuba wayekhwanqisekile ngenxa yokokuba babezazi iingcinga neenjongo zentliziyo yakhe; kuba babenikwe amandla okuba bazazi ezi zinto ngokomoya wesiprofetho.
- 8 Kwaye uZiyezirom waqalisa ukubuza kubo ngenkuthalo, ukuze abe nolwazi olungakumbi malunga nobukumkani bukaThixo. Waza wathi kuAlma: Ithetha ntoni le nto ithethwe nguAmyuleki malunga novuko lwabafuleyo, ukuba bonke baya kuvuka ekufeni, kunye abangamalungisa nabangemalungisa, baze baziswe ukuza kuma phambi koThixo ukuba bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo?
- 9 Ngoku uAlma waqalisa ukuzichaza ezi zinto kuye esithi: Baninzi abanikwe ulwazi ngeemfihlelo zikaThixo; nangona kunjalo babekelwe imithetho engqongqo yokuba bangayinikezeli, banikezele kuphela inxenye yelizwi lakhe elo alinikela kubantwana babantu, ngokuthobela nenkuthalo abayibonakalisayo kuye.
- 10 Kwaye ke ngoko, lowo uya kuyiqaqadekisa intliziyo yakhe, onjalo ufumana inxenye encinane yelizwi; kwaye lowo ungayiqaqadekisiyo intliziyo yakhe, yena unikwa inxenye enkulu yelizwi, ade anikwe ulwazi ngeemfihlelo zikaThixo ade azazi ngokupheleleyo.
- 11 Kwaye abo baya kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, bona banikwa inxenye encinane yelizwi bade bangazi nto malunga neemfihlelo zakhe, ukuze ke bathinjwe ngumtyholi, baze bakhokelwe yintando yakhe ukuya ezantsi kwantshabalalo. Ngoku oku kuko okuthethwa ngamatyathanga esihogo.
- 12 UAmyuleki wayethethe ngokucacileyo malunga nokufa, nokuvuswa koku kufa ukuya kwimo yokungafi, nokuziswa phambi kwenkundla kaThixo, ukuza kugwetywa ngokwemisebenzi yethu.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

- 13 Ke ukuba iintliziyo zethu ziqaqadekile, ewe, ukuba siziqaqadekisile iintliziyo zethu ngokuchasene nelizwi, kangangokuba lingafunyanwa kuthi, ke imeko yethu iya koyikeka, kuba ke siya kubekwa ityala.
- 14 Kuba amazwi ethu aya kusibeka ityala, ewe, yonke imisebenzi yethu iya kusibeka ityala; asinakufunyanwa singenachaphaza; kwaye neengcinga zethu nazo kananjalo ziya kusibeka ityala; kwaye kule meko yoyikekayo asinakulinga ukujongana noThixo wethu; kwaye sinokuvuya kakhulu xa sinokuyalela ukuba amatye neentaba ziwe phezu kwethu ukusifihla ebusweni bakhe.
- 15 Kodwa oko akungekhe kwenzeke; kufuneka size sime ngaphambi kwakhe eluzukweni lwakhe, nasegunyeni lakhe, nakumandlakazi akhe, nobungangamsha, nobukhosi, size sivume ngehlazo lethu elingenasiphelo ukuba izigwebo zakhe zilungile; nokuba ulungile kuyo yonke imisebenzi yakhe, nokuba unenceba kubantwana babantu, nokuba unalo lonke igunya lokusindisa wonke umntu okholwayo egameni lakhe nozisa iziqhamo ezilungele inguquko.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni ke kuyeza ukufa, kwanokufa kwesibini, okukukufa kwasemoyeni; ke eli lilixa lokuba nabani ofela ezonweni zakhe, ngokokufa kwenyama, uya kufa kanjalo ngokwasemoyeni; ewe, uya kufa ngokwezinto ezinxulumene nobulungisa.
- 17 Elo ke lixsha xa intuthumbo yabo iya kufana nedike lomlilo nesalfure, elimadangatye alo anyukela phezulu ngonaphakade kanaphakade; kwaye elo ke lilixa lokuba babotshelelwe phantsi ngamatyathanga kwintshabalalo yanaphakade, ngokwamandla nokuthimba kukaSathana, awayebenze ukuba bathobele intando yakhe.
- 18 Ke, ndithi kuni, baya kuba ngokungathi akuzange kubekho nkululeko; kuba abasenako ukukhululwa ngokobulungisa bukaThixo; kwaye abasenako nokufa, kuba akusekho konakala.
- 19 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma ephezile ukuthetha la mazwi, abantu baqalisa ukukhwankqiswa ngakumbi;

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inso-much that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

- 20 Kodwa kwakukho omnye onguAntiyona, owaye engumlawuli oyintloko phakathi kwabo, weza ngaphambili waza wathi kuye: Yintoni le uyithethileyo, yokuba abantu baya kuvuka kwabafileyo baze baguqulwe ukusuka kule mo yokufa baye kwimo engafiyo, nokuba umphefumlo awusoze ufe?
- 21 Izibhalo zithetha ukuthini, xa zisithi uThixo wabeka ikerubhi nekrole elinedangatye ngasempumalanga yomyezo we-Eden, hleze abazali bethu bokuqala bangene badle kuso isiqhamo somthi wobomi, baze baphile ngonaphakade? Kananjalo siyabona ukuba bekungekho ndlela yokuba baphile ngonaphakade.
- 22 Ngoku uAlma wathi kuye: Le yinto ebendiseza kuyichaza. Ngoku siyabona ukuba uAdam wawa ngokutya kuso isiqhamo esalelweyo, ngokwelizwi likaThixo; njalo, siyabona, ukuba ngokuwa kwakhe, lonke uluntu luye lwaba ngabantu abalahlekileyo nabawileyo.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ukuba kwakungenzeka ukuba uAdam adle kuso isiqhamo somthi wobomi ngelo lixa, ngekungekho kufa, ilizwi ngeliphuthile, ngelisenza uThixo abelixoki, kuba wathi: Ukuba uyadla ngokuqinisekileyo uya kufa.
- 24 Kwaye siyabona ukuba ukufa kuza phezu koluntu, ewe, ukufa ebekuthethwe ngako nguAmyuleki, oku kukufa kwenyama; nangona kunjalo uluntu lwalunikwe ithuba lokuba luguquke; ke ngoko obu bomi baba yimo yobulingwa; ilixa lokulungiselela ukuhlangana noThixo; ilixa lokulungiselela laa mo engenasiphelo esithethe ngayo thina, esemva kokuvuka kwabafileyo.
- 25 Ngoku, ukuba bekungengalo icebo lenkululeko, elasekwa ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ngeba alukho uvuko kwabafileyo; kodwa lalikhona icebo lenkululeko elenziwayo, eliya kwenza ukuba lubekho uvuko lwabafileyo, okuthethwe ngalo.

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

- 26 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ukuba kwakunokwenzeka ukuba abazali bethu bokuqala babheke phambili baze badle kumthi wobomi, babeya kuxhwaleka ngonaphakade, lingekho ilixa lobulingwa; kwaye njalo icebo lenkululeko ngeba liphanzile, nelizwi likaThixo ngeba liphuthile, lingenakusebenza.
- 27 Kodwa qaphelani, akubanga njalo; kodwa kwamiselwa ebantwini ukuba kufuneka bafe; kuze emva kokufa, kufuneke ukuba beze emgwebeni, kwanaso esa sigwebo sithethe ngaso, eso sisiphelo.
- 28 Kwaye emva kokuba uThixo emisele ukuba ezi zinto zize ebantwini, qaphelani, waye wabona kuyimfuneko ukuba abantu mababe nolwazi ngokunxulumene nezinto ezo azimisele bona;
- 29 Ke ngoko wathumela iingelosi ukuba zincokole nabo, ezenze ukuba abantu balubone uzuko lwakhe.
- 30 Kwaye baqalisa ngelo lixa ukubheka phambili ukulibiza igama lakhe; ke ngoko uThixo wancokola nabantu, wenza ukuba balazi icebo lenkululeko, elalungiswayo ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi; kwaye oku wakwazisa kubo ngokokholo lwabo nenguquko nemisebenzi yabo engcwele.
- 31 Ke ngoko, wanika abantu imiyalelo, ekubeni bona beqale ngokona imiyalelo yokuqala ngokwezinto zenyama, baza bafana noothixo, bekwazi ukulunga ukwahlula kububi, bazibeka kwimo yokwenza, okanye babekwa kwimo yokwenza ngokwentando nolonwabo lwabo, nokuba kukwenza okubi okanye ukwenza okulungileyo—
- 32 Ke ngoko uThixo wabanika imiyalelo, emva kokuba ebazisile ngecebo lenkululeko, ukuba bangenzi bubi, isohlwayo soko kukufa kwesibini, okwaye ikukufa kwanaphakade ngokwezinto ezinxulumene nobulungisa; kuba kwabanjalo icebo lenkululeko belingenakuba namandla; kuba imisebenzi yobulungisa ibingekhe itshatyalaliswe, ngokokulunga okukhulu kukaThixo.
- 33 Kodwa uThixo ubabizile abantu, egameni loNyana wakhe, (eli ke licebo lenkululeko elalisekiwe) esithi: Ukuba niyaguquka, ningaziqadekisi iintliziyo zenu, ke ndiya kuba nenceba kuni, ngoNyana wam oKuphela koZelweyo;

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

- 34 Ke ngoko, nabani na oquqayo, angayiqadekisi intliziyo yakhe, uya kuba nebango kuyo inceba ngoNyana wam oKuphela koZelweyo, ukuze axolelwe izono zakhe; kwaye aba baya kungena ekuphumleni kwam.
- 35 Kwaye nabani na oya kuyiqadekisa intliziyo yakhe aze enze ubugwenxa, qaphelani, ndiyafunga ngengqumbo yam ukuba lowo akayi kungena ekuphumleni kwam.
- 36 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, qaphelani ndithi kuni, ukuba niya kuziqadekisa iintliziyo zenu aninakungena ekuphumleni kweNkosi; ke ngoko ubugwenxa benu buyicaphukisela ekubeni ithobe umsindo wayo phezu kwenu, njengakwisihlandlo sokuqala sokucatshekiswa, ewe, ngokwelizwi layo ekucatshekisweni kokugqibela kwakunye nokokuqala, okungisa kwintshabalalo yanaphakade yemiphefumlo yenu; ke ngoko, ngokwelizwi layo, kude kuye ekufeni kokugqibela, kwakunye nokokuqala.
- 37 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, njengokuba sizazi ezi zinto, kwaye zona ziyinyani, masiguquke, singayiqadekisi iintliziyo zethu, ukuze singayicaphukisi iNkosi uThixo wethu ukuba ithobe umsindo wayo phezu kwethu kule miyalelo yakhe yesibini asinike yona; kodwa masingeneni ekuphumleni kukaThixo, okulungiselelwe ngokwelizwi lakhe.

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

## Alma 13

- 1 Kwaye kwakhona, bazalwana bam, ndingazolathisa iingqondo zenu phambili kwilixa apho iNkosi uThixo yanika le miyalelo kubo abantwana bayo; kwaye ndinga ningakhumbula okokuba iNkosi uThixo yamisa ababingeleli, ngokohlobo lwayo olungcwele, olwalungokobulungiseleli boNyana wayo, ukuba bazifundise ezi zinto kubo abantu.
- 2 Kwaye abo babingeleli babemiswe ngokohlobo lobulungiseleli boNyana wayo, ngohlobo abanokuthi ngalo abantu babenokwazi ukuba luhlobo luni na abanokukhangela phambili ngalo kuNyana wayo ukuze bakhululwe.
- 3 Kwaye olu luhlobo abamiselwa ngalo—bebizwa kwaye belungiswa ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi ngokolwazi lwangaphambili lukaThixo, ngengxelo yokholo lwabo olugqithileyo nemisebenzi elungileyo; okokuqala beshiywa ukuba bakhethe okulungileyo okanye okubi; ke ngoko bona kuba bekhethe okulungileyo, baza basebenzisa ukholo olugqithisileyo kakhulu, babizwe ngobizo olungcwele, ewe, ngolo bizo lungcwele olwaye lulungisiwe, kwaye ngokubhekisele kuyo, inkululeko elungiselelweyo kwabanjalo.
- 4 Kwaye njalo ke babizwa kulo olu bizo lungcwele ngenxa yokholo lwabo, ngeli lixa abanye babewala uMoya kaThixo ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabo nobumfama beengqondo zabo, ngeli lixa, ukuba bekungekuko oku ngebabenalo ilungelo elilodwa elikhulu njengabazalwana babo.
- 5 Okanye lilonke, okokuqala babelingana nabazalwana babo, njalo ke olu bizo lungcwele lwalulungiselelwa ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi lulungiselelwa abo babe ngayi kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, lukuyo kwaye lungayo intlawulelo yakhe oKuphela koZelweyo uNyana, owayelungisiwe—
- 6 Kwaye njalo wabizwa ngolu bizo lungcwele, waza wamiswa kubo ububingeleli obukhulu bohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, ukuba afundise imiyalelo yakhe kubo abantwana babantu, ukuze kanjalo babe nokungena ekuphumleni kwakhe—

## Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

- 7     Obu bubingeleli bukhulu bungokohlobo loNyana wakhe, ubulungiseleli obo obabukho ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi; okanye ngamanye amazwi, abunaso isiqalo semihla okanye isiphelo seminyaka, silungiselelwe ukususela kunaphakade ukuya kunaphakade wonke, ngokolwazi lwakhe lwangaphambili lwazo zonke izinto—
- 8     Ngoku babemiselwe ngolu hlobo—babebizwe ngobizo olungcwele, baza bamiselwa ngommiselo ongcwele, baza bathabathela phezu kwabo ububingeleli obukhulu bohlobo olungcwele, ubizo olo, nommiselo, nobubingeleli obukhulu, abunasiqalo okanye siphelo—
- 9     Njalo ke baba ngababingeleli abakhulu ngonaphakade, ngokohlobo loNyana, oKuphela koZelweyo kaBawo, ongenasiqalo semihla okanye siphelo seminyaka, ozele lubabalo bubulungisa, nenyaniiso. Kwaye kunjalo ke. Amen.
- 10    Ngoku, njengoko nditshilo malunga nohlobo olungcwele, okanye obu bubingeleli bukhulu, babebaninzi ababemiselwe baza baba ngababingeleli abakhulu bakaThixo; kwaye kwakungxelo yokholo lwabo olugqithileyo nenguquko, nobulungisa babo phambi koThixo, bekhethe ukuguquka baze basebenze ubulungisa kunokuba batshabalale;
- 11    Ke ngoko babebizwe ngolu hlobo lungcwele, baza bangcwaliswa, zaza izambatho zabo zahlanjwa zaba mhlophe ngegazi leMvana.
- 12    Ngoku bona, emva kokuba bengcwalisiwe ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, ngenxa yokuba iingubo zabo zenziwe mhlophe, zaba msulwa kwaye azabi nacaphaza phambi koThixo, babengenako ukujongana nesono ngaphandle kokuba kube kungentiyo; kwaye babebaninzi, bebaninzi ngokugqithisileyo kakhulu, ababenziwe nyulu baza bangena ekuphumleni kweNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 13    Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinga ningazithoba phambi koThixo, nize nizise ngaphambili iziqhamo ezifanele inguquko, ukuze nabo kanjalo babenokungena koko kuphumla.
- 14    Ewe, zithobeni nanjengabo abantu bemihla kaMelkisedeke, owaye kanjalo engubingeleli omkhulu ngolu hlobo endithethe ngalo, owathi naye kanjalo wathabathela kuye ububingeleli obukhulu ngonaphakade.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

- 15 Kwaye yayikwangulo Melkisedeke awathi uAbraham wanikela kuye izishumi; ewe, kwanaye ubawo wethu uAbraham wahlawula izishumi zenxalenye kwako konke awayenako isiqingatha esinye eshumini.
- 16 Ngoku le mimiselo yayinikwe nglu hlobo, ukuze ngayo abantu babe nokukhangela phambili kuNyana kaThixo, yona ke ingumqondiso wohlobo lwakhe, okanye yona iluhlobo lwakhe, kwaye oku ukuze babe nokukhangela phambili kuye ukuze baxolelwe izono zabo, ukuze babe nokungena ekuphumleni kweNkosi.
- 17 Ngoku lo Melomelela kubugwenxa nesikizi; ewe, bonke babephambukile; babezele lulo lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo.
- 18 Kodwa uMelkisedeke wasebenzisa ukholo olunamandlakazi, waza wamkela isikhundla sobubingeleli obukhulu ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, waye washumayela inguquko kubo abantu bakhe. Kwaye qaphelani, baye baguquka; kwaye uMelkisedeke waye wamisela uxolo elizweni ngemihla yakhe; ke ngoko wabizwa ngokuba uyinkosana yoxolo, kuba waye ngukumkani waseSalem; kwaye waye walawula ngaphantsi koyise.
- 19 Ngoku, babebaninzi ngaphambi kwakhe, kananjalo babebaninzi nasemva koko, kodwa akukho namnye owabekeka kakhulu kunaye; ke ngoko, ngaye bakhankanye ngokukhetheke ngakumbi.
- 20 Ngoku akukho mfuneko yokokuba ndibalise ngale nto; oko ndikuthethileyo kwanele. Qaphelani, izibhalo ziphambi kwenu; ukuba niya kuzigqwetha kuya kuba kuyintshabalalo yenu.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi kubo, wasolulela phambili isandla sakhe kubo waza wadanduluka ngelizwi elinamandlakazi, esithi: Ngoku eli lilixa lokuguquka, kuba umhla wosindiso uyasondela;

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;



- 22 Ewe, kwaye nelizwi leNkosi, ngomlomo weengelosi, uya kulivakalisa kuzo zonke izizwe; ewe, uya kulivakalisa, ukuze babenazo iindaba zovuyo zolonwabo olukhulu; ewe, kwaye uyazazisa ezi ndaba zovuyo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe, ewe, kwanakubo abo basasazwe kude phezu kobuso bomhlaba; ngako oko zifikile kuthi.
- 23 Kwaye zazisiwe kuthi ngeentetho ezicacileyo, ukuze sibe nokuqonda, ukuze singabi nakuphazama; kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba sizizibhadu-bhadu elizweni lasemzini; ke ngoko, njalo sithandwe kakhulu, kuba sinazo ezi ndaba zovuyo zivakaliswe kuthi kuyo yonke imimandla yesidiliya sethu.
- 24 Kuba qaphelani, iingelosi ziyalivakalisa kwabaninzi ngalo eli lixa elizweni lethu; kwaye oku kungenjongo yokulungisa iintliziyo zabantwana babantu ukuba balamkele ilizwi lakhe ngelixa lokuza kwakhe esebuqaqawulini bakhe.
- 25 Kwaye ngoku silindele kuphela ukuva iindaba ezivuyisayo zivakaliswa kuthi ngomlomo weengelosi, ezokuza kwakhe; kuba ilixa liyeza, asazi ukuba likufuphi kangakanani na. Ndingwena kuThixo ukuba inga ingaba ngumhla wam; kodwa nokuba ukufuphi okanye kukamva, kuwo ndiya kugcoba.
- 26 Kwaye kuya kwaziswa kumadoda angamalungisa nangcwele, ngomlomo weengelosi, ngelixa lokuza kwakhe, ukuze amazwi oobawo abe nokuzaliseka, malunga noko bakuthethayo malunga naye, okwakungokomoya wesiprofetho owawukubo.
- 27 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinqwenela ngokusuka emazantsi entliziyo yam, ewe, ngenkxalabo enkulu ngokude kube yintlungu, okokuba ningawaphula-phula amazwi am, nize niziphose kude izono zenu, kwaye ningawulibazisi umhla wokugquka kwenu;
- 28 Kodwa okokuba ningazithoba phambi kweNkosi, nize nilibize igama layo elingcwele, nize nilinde kwaye nithandaze ngamaxesha onke, ukuze ningahendeki ngaphezu koko ninako ukukuthwala, nize njalo nikhokelwe nguMoya oyiNgcwele, nithobeke, nilulame, nithozame, nibe nomonde, nizele luthando nako konke ukuzeka kade umsindo;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

29 Ninokholo kuyo iNkosi; ninethemba lokuba niya kufumana ubomi obungunaphakade; ninothando lukaThixo ngamaxesha onke ezintliziyweni zenu, ukuze nibe nokuphakanyiselwa phezulu ngomhla wokugqibela nize ningene ekuphumleni kwayo.

30 Kwaye inga iNkosi inganikela kuni inguquko, ukuze ningabi nakuzizisela umsindo wayo phezu kwenu, ukuze ningarhintyelelwa phantsi ngamatyathanga esihogo, ukuze ningahlungiswa kukufa kwesibini.

31 Kwaye uAlma wathetha namanye amazwi amaninzi kubo abantu, angabhalwanga kuyo le ncwadi.

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

## Alma 14

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba ephezile ukuthetha nabantu abaninzi babo baye bakholelwa kumazwi akhe, baza baqalisa ukuguquka, nokuziphengulula izibhalo.
- 2 Kodwa inxalenye yesininzi sabo yayinqwenela ukuba bangamtshabalalisa uAlma noAmyuleki; kuba babenomsindo kuAlma, ngenxa yokucaca kwamazwi akhe kuye uZiyezirom; baza bathi kanjalo uAmyuleki ubaxokisile, kwaye wenyelise nomthetho wabo kanjalo nabaqondisi-mthetho babo nabagwebi.
- 3 Kwaye babenomsindo kanjalo kuAlma noAmyuleki; kwaye ngenxa yokuba babengqine ngokucacileyo ngokuchasene nenkohlakalo yabo, bafuna ukubasusa endleleni ngokusemfihlakalweni.
- 4 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba bangabi nako; kodwa babathabatha baza bababophelela ngeentsontela ezomeleleyo, baza babasa phambi komgwebi oyintloko welizwe.
- 5 Baza abantu babheka phambili baza bangqina ngokuchasene nabo bengqina okokuba —bawunyelisile umthetho wabo, nabaqondisi-mthetho babo nabagwebi belizwe, kananjalo nabo bonke abantu ababekulo ilizwe; kananjalo bangqine ukuba kwakukho kodwa uThixo omnye, nokokuba uya kuthumela uNyana wakhe phakathi kwabantu, kodwa akayi kubasindisa; kwaye zazininzi izinto ezilolo hlobo abathi abantu bangqina ngazo ngokuchasene noAlma kunye noAmyuleki. Ngoku oku kwenziwa phambi komgwebi oyintloko welizwe.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uZiyezirom wakhwankqiswa ngamazwi athethwayo; kwaye wayesazi kanjalo malunga nobumfama beengqondo athe wabenza phakathi kwabantu ngamazwi akhe obuxoki; waza umphefumlo wakhe waqalisa ukuhlupheka phantsi kwesazela sobutyala bakhe; ewe, waqalisa ukurhangqwa ziintlungu zesihogo.

## Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waqalisa ukudanduluka ebantwini, esithi: Qaphelani, ndinetyala, kwaye la madoda awanachaphaza phambi koThixo. Waza waqalisa ukubacengela ukususela kwela lixa ukuya phambili; kodwa bamthuka, besithi: Akungenwanga nawe kanjalo ngumtyholi? Baza bamtshicela, kwaye bamkhuphela ngaphandle phakathi kwabo, kananjalo bonke abo babekhohlelwa kuwo amazwi awayethethwe nguAlma noAmyuleki; baza babakhuphela ngaphandle, baza bathumela abantu ukuba babaxulube ngamatye.

8 Baza baqokelela abafazi nabantwana babo kunye, kwaye nabani na okhohlelwayo okanye ofundisiweyo ukuba akhohlelwe kulo ilizwi likaThixo bababangela ukuba baphoswe emlilweni; baza kanjalo bazisa ngaphambili iimbali zabo ezaziqulathe izibhalo ezingcwele, baza baziphosa emlilweni nazo ngokunjalo, ukuze zitshe kwaye zitshatyalaliswe ngumlilo.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bamthabatha uAlma noAmyuleki, baza babasa ngaphambili kwindawo yabafeli-nkolo, ukuze babe nokubukela intshabalalo yabo abo babetshatyalaliswa ngumlilo.

10 Waza uAmyuleki xa ebona iintlungu zabo abafazi nabantwana ababetshabalala emlilweni, naye ngokunjalo weva intlungu; waza wathi kuAlma: Singathini ukuwubukela lo mbono woyikekayo? Ke ngoko masolulele phambili izandla zethu, kwaye sisebenzise amandla kaThixo akuthi, size sibasindise kuwo amalangatye.

11 Kodwa uAlma wathi kuye: UMoya uyandinyanzela okokuba kufuneka ndingasoluleli phambili isandla sam; kuba qaphela iNkosi iyabamkela phezulu kuyo, ebuqaqawulini, kwaye iyabayekela ukuba bangakwenza oku, okanye okokuba abantu bangakwenza oku kubo, ngokokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabo, ukuze izigwebo ezo aya kuthi azisebenzise phezu kwabo ngomsindo wayo zibe nobulungisa; kwaye igazi labo banganatyala liya kuma njengobungqina ngokuchasene nabo, ewe, lize likhale ngamandlakazi ngokuchasene nabo ngomhla wokugqibela.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

- 12 Ngoku uAmyuleki wathi kuAlma: Qaphela, mhlawumbi baya kusitshisa nathi ngokunjalo.
- 13 Waza uAlma wathi: Makube ngokwentando yeNkosi. Kodwa, qaphela, umsebenzi wethu awukapheli; ke ngoko abasayi kusitshisa.
- 14 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba yakuba imizimba yabo abo babephoswe emlilweni itshatyalalisiwe, kananjalo neembali ezaziphoswe phakathi kunye nabo, umgwebi oyintloko weza waza wema phambi koAlma noAmyuleki, njengoko babebotshelelwe; waza wababetha ngesandla sakhe ezidleleni zabo, waza wathi kubo: Emva koku nikubonileyo, ingaba ningaphinda kwakhona nishumayele kubo aba bantu, ukuze babe baya kuphoselwa edikeni lomlilo nesalfure?
- 15 Qaphelani, niyabona okokuba aninawo amandla okubasindisa abo baphoselwe emlilweni; noThixo lowo engabasindisanga ngenxa yokuba bengabenkolo yenu. Waza umgwebi wababetha kwakhona ezidleleni zabo, waza wabuza: Nizithethelela ngantoni?
- 16 Ngoku lo mgwebi wayengowohlobo nenkolo kaNehore, owabulala uGidiyon.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma noAmyuleki abazange bamphendule nganto; waza wababetha kwakhona, waza wabanikezela kubaphathi ukuba baphoselwe entolongweni.
- 18 Kwaye bakuba bephoselwe entolongweni iintsuku ezintathu, kwafika abaqondisi-mthetho abaninzi, nabagwebi, nababingeleli, nootitshala, ababe ngabenkolo kaNehore; kwaye bangena entolongweni ukuya kubabona, baza bababuza malunga namazwi amaninzi; kodwa abazange babaphendule.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umgwebi wema phambi kwabo, waza wathi: Kungani ningayiphenduli imibuzo yaba bantu? Anazi na ukuba ndinegunya lokuninikezela emalangatyeni? Waza wabayalela ukuba bathethe; kodwa abazange baphendule.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bemka baza bahamba iindlela zabo, kodwa babuya kwakhona ngengomso; baza nabagwebi kanjalo wababetha kwakhona ezidleleni zabo. Baza nabaninzi kanjalo beza ngaphambili, baza bababetha, besithi: Ningema kwakhona nize nigwebe aba bantu, nize nigwebe nomthetho wethu? Ukuba ninamandla amakhulu kangako kungani ningazihlanguli?

21 Kwaye nezinto ezininzi ezilolohlobo bazithetha kubo, betshixizisa amazinyo abo kubo, kwaye bebatshicela, baze bathi: Siya kukhangeleka njani xa sigwetyiwe?

22 Nezinto ezininzi ezilolohlobo, ewe, zonke iintlobo zezinto ezilolohlobo baye bazithetha kubo; baza njalo bahlekisa ngabo kangangeentsuku ezininzi. Kwaye baye babavimba ukutya ukuze balambe, namanzi ukuze banxanwe; kwaye baye kanjalo bazithabatha kubo neempahla zabo ukuze babe ze; kwaye njalo babotshelelwa ngeentambo ezomeleleyo, kwaye bavalelwa entolongweni.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba bebandezeleke njalo kangangeentsuku ezininzi, (kwaye kwakungumhla weshumi elinambini, kwinyanga yeshumi, koweshumi unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi) okokuba umgwebi oyintloko phezu kwelizwe laseAmonihah nabaninzi bootitshala babo nabaqondisi-mthetho babo baya bangena entolongweni apho uAlma noAmyuleki babebotshelelwe khona ngeentambo.

24 Kwaye umgwebi oyintloko wema phambi kwabo, waza wababetha kwakhona, waza wathi kubo: Ukuba ninegunya likaThixo zikhululeni kula makhamandela, kwaye ke siya kukholelwa ukuba iNkosi iya kubatshabalalisa aba bantu ngokwamazwi enu.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke babheka phambili baza bababetha, bethetha amazwi amanye, kwada kwaba ngowokugqibela; waza akuba owokugqibela ethethile nabo amandla kaThixo aba phezu koAlma noAmyuleki, baza baphakama baza bema ngeenyawo zabo.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

26 Waza uAlma wadanduluka, esithi: Koda kube nini sinyamezele ezi mbandezelo zibuhlungu, Owu Nkosi? Owu Nkosi, sinike ukomelela ngokokholo lwethu olukuye uKrestu, nasekukhululweni. Baza baziqhawula iintambo abebeqanyangelwe ngazo; baza bathi abantu bakukubona oku, baqalisa ukubaleka, kuba uloyiko lwentshabalalo lwabafikela.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba lwaba lukhulu uloyiko lwabo kangangokuba bawa emhlabeni, baza bafikelela kwicango langaphandle lentolongo; waza umhlaba washukuma ngamandlakazi, zaza iindonga zentolongo zaqhekeka kubini, kangangokuba zawa emhlabeni; waza umgwebi oyintloko, nabaqondisimthetho, nababingeleli, nootitshala, abo babetha uAlma noAmyuleki, babulawa kukuwa kwazo.

28 Waza uAlma noAmyuleki beza phambili baphuma kuyo intolongo, kwaye babengonzakalanga; kuba iNkosi ibibanike amandla, ngokokholo lwabo olwaye lukuye uKrestu. Kwaye ngoko nangoko beza phambili baphuma kuyo intolongo; baza bakhululwa kuwo amakhamandela abo; kwaye intolongo yayidilikele emhlabeni, waza wonke umphefumlo ngaphakathi kweendonga zayo, ngaphandle kuka-Alma noAmyuleki, wabulawa; baza ke ngoko nangoko beza phambili bangena kuso isixeko.

29 Ngoku abantu beyivile ingxolo enkulu beza bebaleka kunye bezizihlelele ukuze bazi ngonobangela wayo; baza bakubona uAlma noAmyuleki besiza phambili bephuma entolongweni, kwaye neendonga zayo ziwele emhlabeni, bafikelwa luloyiko olukhulu, baza basaba kubukho buka-Alma no Amyuleki kwananje ngebhokhwe isaba netakane layo kuzo iingonyama ezimbini; kwaye njalo ke baye basaba kubukho buka-Alma noAmyuleki.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.

## Alma 15

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma noAmyuleki bayalelwa ukuba bemke baphume kweso sixeko; baza bemka, baza baphumela nakulo ilizwe laseTsidom; kwaye qaphelani, apho bafumana bonke abantu ababemkile baphuma kulo ilizwe laseAmoniha, ababekhutshelwe ngaphandle baza baxulutywa ngamatye, ngenxa yokuba babekhohlelwa kumazwi ka-Alma.
- 2 Baza babachazela ngako konke okwenzekileyo kubo abafazi babo nabantwana babo, kananjalo malunga nabo, nangamandla abo okuhlangula.
- 3 Kwaye noZiyezirom kanjalo walala egula eTsidom, enomkhuhlane otshisayo, owawubangelwa zinkxwaleko ezinkulu zengqondo yakhe ngenxa yenkohlakalo yakhe, kuba wayecinga okokuba uAlma noAmyuleki abasekho; kwaye wayecinga ukuba babulewe ngenxa yobugwenxa bakhe. Kwaye esi sono sikhulu, nezinye izono zakhe ezininzi, zaye zayihlupha ingqondo yakhe yada yababuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, engenakukhululeka; ke ngoko waqalisa ukugqatswa bubushushu obutshisayo.
- 4 Ngoku, akuba evile ukuba uAlma noAmyuleki babekwilizwe laseTsidom, intliziyo yakhe yaqalisa ukukhuthazeka; waza wathumela umyalezo ngokonangoko kubo, enqwenela ukuba beze kuye.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baya ngoko-nangoko, bethobela umyalezo lowo wayewuthumele kubo; baza bangena ngaphakathi endlwini kuye uZiyezirom; baza bamfumana ephezu komandlalo wakhe, egula, etyhafle kakhulu enomkhuhlane otshisayo; kwaye nengqondo yakhe kanjalo yayixhwaleke ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yobugwenxa bakhe; waza akubabona wosolulela phambili isandla sakhe, waza wababongoza ukuba bamphilise.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi uAlma kuye, embamba ngesandla: Uyakhohlelwa na kuwo amandla kaKrestu okusindisa?
- 7 Waza waphendula kwaye wathi: Ewe, ndiyawakhohlelwa onke amazwi othe wawafundisa.
- 8 Waza uAlma wathi: Ukuba uyakhohlelwa kuyo inkululeko kaKrestu unako ukuphiliswa.

## Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.



9 Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiyakholelwa ngokwamazwi akho.

10 Waza ke uAlma wadanduluka kuyo iNkosi, wathi: Owu Nkosi Thixo wethu, yiba nenceba kuyo le ndoda, uze uyiphilise ngokokholo lwayo olukuye uKrestu.

11 Waza akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi, uZiyezirom waxhuma wema ngeenyawo zakhe, waza waqalisa ukuhamba; kwaye oku kwenzeka ekukhwankqisekeni okukhulu kwabo bonke abantu; kwaze ukwaziwa kwako oku kwalityhutyha lonke ilizwe laseTsidom.

12 Waza uAlma wambhaptizela eNkosini uZiyezirom; waza waqalisa ukususela kwelo lixa ukushumayela ebantwini.

13 Waza uAlma wamisa ibandla elizweni laseTsidom, waza wangcwalisa ababingeleli notitshala elizweni, ukuba babhaptizele eNkosini nabani na abanqwenela ukuba babhaptizwe.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba baninzi; kuba beza beyimihlambi besuka kuso sonke isithili esirhangqe iTsidom, baza babhaptizwa.

15 Kodwa bona ngokwabo abantu ababekwilizwe laseAmoniha, babesahleli bengabantu abantliziyo ziqaqadekileyo nabantamo zilukhuni; kwaye abazange baguquke ezonweni zabo, ngokubhekisele kuwo onke amandla ka-Alma noAmyuleki kumtyholi; kuba babengabenkolo kaNehore, kwaye bengakholelwa enguqukwani yezono zabo.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma kwakunye noAmyuleki, ekubeni uAmyuleki eshiye yonke igolide yakhe, nesilivere, nazo zonke izinto zakhe zexabiso, ezazikulo ilizwe laseAmoniha, ngenxa yelizwi likaThixo, ekubeni elahliwe ngabo babefudula bezizihlobo zakhe nanguyise kananjalo nezalamane zakhe;

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

17 Ke ngoko, emva kokuba uAlma emisele ibandla eTsidom, ebona ukuzibamba okukhulu, ewe, ebona ukuba abantu babezibambile ngokubhekisele kwikratshi leentliziyo zabo, baza baqalisa ukuzithoba phambi koThixo, baza baqalisa ukuzihlanganisa kunye kwiindawo zabo ezingcwele ukuba banqule uThixo phambi kwesibingelelo, belindile kwaye bethandaza ngamaxesho onke, ukuze babe nokukhululwa kuSathana, nakuko ukufa, nakuyo intshabalalo—

18 Ngoko njengokuba benditshilo, uAlma ekubeni ezibonile zonke ezi zinto, ke ngoko wathabatha uAmyuleki waza wawelela kwilizwe laseZarahemla, waza wamthabathela kweyakhe indlu, waza wamsikelela kwiinkxwaleko zakhe, waza wamomeleza eNkosini.

19 Kwaye waphela njalo oweshumi unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things, therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Alma 16

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka weshumi elinanye wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, ngosuku lwesihlanu lwenyanga yesibini, emva kokuba bekukho uxolo kakhulu kwilizwe laseZarahemla, emva kokuba kungabangakho zimfazwe nazimbambano kangangethuba lenani elithile leminyaka, kangangokude kube lusuku lwesihlanu lwenyanga yesibini kunyaka weshumi elinanye, kwabakho isikhalo semfazwe esavakalayo kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yangena ngakwicala lasentlango, yangena kwimida yelizwe, nakuso isixeko saseAmoniha, yaza yaqalisa ukubulala abantu yaza yasitshabalalisa isixeko.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile, phambi kokuba amaNifayithi abe nokuhlaba umkhosi ngokwaneleyo ukuba uwaqhubele ngaphandle kwelizwe, babebatshabalalisile abantu ababekwisixeko saseAmoniha, kananjalo nabanye ukujikeleza imida kaNowa, baza bathabathela abanye ekuthinjweni bangena entlango.
- 4 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi ayenqwenela ukufumana abo babethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni bangena entlango.
- 5 Ke ngoko, yena lowo wayenyulelwe ukuba ngumphathi-mkhosi oyintloko phezu komkhosi wamaNifayithi, (kwaye igama lakhe lalinguZorami, kwaye waye enoonyana ababini, uLihayi noAha) —ngoku uZorami kunye noonyana bakhe ababini, besazi ukuba uAlma wayengumbingeleli omkhulu phezu kwebandla, kwaye bevile okokuba waye enomoya wesiprofetho, ke ngoko baya kuye baza banqwenela ukwazi kuye ukuba ingaba iNkosi iyafuna na ukuba bangene entlango ukuya kukhangela abazalwana babo kusini na, ababethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni ngamaLeymenayithi.

## Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wabuza eNkosini malunga nalo mba. Waza uAlma wabuya waza wathi kubo: Qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi aza kuwela umlambo iTsidon kwintlango, esemazantsi kude ngasentla ngaphesheya kwemida yelizwe laseManti. Kwaye qaphelani niya kuhlangana nawo apho, ngasempuma yomlambo iTsidon, kwaye apho iNkosi iya kubanikezela kuni abazalwana benu ababethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni ngamaLeymenayithi.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uZorami noonyana bakhe bawelela ngaphaya komlambo iTsidon, kunye nemikhosi yabo, baza bahambela kude ngaphesheya kwemida yaseManti bangena emazantsi entlango, eyaye ingakwicala lasempuma yomlambo iTsidon.

8 Baza bawufikela umkhosi wamaLeymenayithi, aza amaLeymenayithi achithachithwa aza aqhutyelwa entlango; baza babathabatha abazalwana babo ababethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni ngamaLeymenayithi, kwaye akuzange kubekho nomphfumlo omnye kubo owalahlekayo kwabo babethatyathelwe ekuthinjweni. Kwaye baziswa ngabazalwana babo ukuba babange imihlaba yabo.

9 Kwaye njalo waphela unyaka weshumi elinanye wabagwebi, amaLeymenayithi eqhutyelwe ngaphandle kwelizwe, baza abantu baseAmonihah batshatyalaliswa; ewe, wonke umphefumlo ophilayo wamaAmonihayithi watshatyalaliswa, kananjalo nesixeko sabo esikhulu, ababesithi uThixo akasoze asitshabalalise, ngenxa yobukhulu baso.

10 Kodwa qaphelani, ngosuku olunye sasiyinkangala; kwaye nezidumbu zaziqwengwa zizinja nezilo zasendle zentlango.

11 Nangona kunjalo, emva kweentsuku ezininzi imizimba yabo efileyo yafunjwa yenyuka phezu kobuso bomhlaba, kwaye yayigqunyelelwe ngokunganzulwanga. Kwaye ngoku lalilikhulu ivumba layo kangangokuba abantu abazange baye ukuya kubanga ilizwe laseAmonihah kangangeminyaka emininzi. Kwaye yayibizwa ngokuba yiNkangala yooNehore, kuba babengabekolo kaNehore; abo babebulewe; yaza imihlaba yabo yasala iyinkangala.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

- 12 Kwaye amaLeymenayithi awazanga kwakhona ukuza kulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi kwada kwaba ngoweshumi elinesine unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi. Kwaye njalo kangangeminyaka emithathu abantu bakaNifayi baqhubeka benoxolo kulo ilizwe.
- 13 Kwaye uAlma noAmyuleki babheka phambili beshumayela inguquko ebantwini ezitempileni zabo, nakuzo iindawo zabo ezingcwele kananjalo kwizindlu zabo zesikhungo, ezazakhiwe ngohlobo lwamaYuda.
- 14 Kwaye kanga ngobuninzi babo abawaphulaphulayo amazwi abo, kwaba bababela ilizwi likaThixo, bengahloniphanga bantu, ngamaxesha onke.
- 15 Kwaye njalo uAlma noAmyuleki babheka phambili, kananjalo nabanye abaninzi ababebizelwe umsebenzi, ukuba bashumayele ilizwi kulo lonke ilizwe. Kwaye ukumiselwa kwebandla kwaba yinto eqhelekileyo kulo lonke ilizwe, kuzo zonke iingingqi ezingqongileyo, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaNifayithi.
- 16 Kwaye kwakungekho kungalingani phakathi kwabo; iNkosi yaye yawuthulula uMoya wayo phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe ukulungisa iingqondo zabantwana babantu, okanye ukulungisa iintliziyo zabo ukuba zilamkele ilizwi ekwakumele lifundiswe phakathi kwabo ngelixa lokuza kwakhe—
- 17 Ukuze bangabi nakuqaqadeka ngokuchasene nelizwi, ukuze bangabi ngabangakholwayo, baze baqhubeke ukuya entshabalalweni, kodwa babe nokulamkela ilizwi ngovuyo, baze njengesebe bamiliselwe kuwo umdiliya oyinyani, ukuze babe nokungena ekuphumleni kweNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 18 Ngoku abo babingeleli bathi babheka phambili phakathi kwabantu baye bashumayela ngokuchasene nabo bonke ubuxoki, nokulahlekisa, nomona, neengxabano, nolunya, nokwenyelisa, nokuba, ukuphanga, ukurhwaphiliza, ukubulala, bekrexexa, nalo lonke uhlobo loburheletya, bedanduluka okokuba ezi zinto azimelanga kubakho—

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

19 Bevakalisa izinto ekufuneka kwakufutshane zifike; ewe, bevakalisa ukuza koNyana kaThixo, iimbandezelo nokufa kwakhe, kanaanjalo novuko lwabafuleyo.

20 Kwaye abaninzi abantu baye babuza malunga nendawo apho uNyana kaThixo aya kufikela khona; baza bafundiswa okokuba uya kubonakala kubo emva kovuko lwakhe; baza oku abantu bakumamela ngovuyo nemihlali.

21 Kwaye ngoku emva kokuba ibandla limiselwe kulo lonke ilizwe—ekubeni lifumene uloyiso phezu komtyholi, nelizwi likaThixo lishunyayelwa ngobunyulu balo kulo lonke ilizwe, kwaye neNkosi izithulula iintsikelelo zayo phezu kwabantu—njalo ke waphela oweshumi elinesine unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

*Ingxelo yoonyana bakaMozaya, abawalayo amalungelo abo ebukumkanini ngenxa yelizwi likaThixo, baza benyukela phezulu kwilizwe likaNifayi ukuya kushumayela kumaLeymenayithi; iimbandezelo nokublangulwa kwabo—ngokwembali ka-Alma.*

## Alma 17

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba njengoko uAlma wayethabatha uhambo esuka kwilizwe likaGidiyon ngasemazantsi, kude kwilizwe laseManti, qaphelani, ekukhwankqisekeni kwakhe, wahlangana noonyana bakaMozaya bethabatha uhambo besingise ngakwilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 2 Ngoku aba nyana bakaMozaya babekunye noAlma ngelixa ingelosi ibonakala okokuqala kuye; ke ngoko uAlma waye wagcoba ngokugqithisileyo ukubona abazalwana bakhe; kwaye into eyongezeleleka ngakumbi kuvuyo lwakhe, babesengabazalwana bakhe eNkosini; ewe, kwaye babesele bomelele kulwazi lwenyaniso; kuba babengamadoda anengqiqo efanelekileyo kwaye babeziphengulule izibhalo ngenkuthalo, ukuze babenokulazi ilizwi likaThixo.
- 3 Kodwa akuphelelanga apho; babezinikele ekuthandazeni okukhulu, nasekuzileni ukudla; ke ngoko babenawo umoya wesiprofetho, nomoya wesityhilelo, kwaye xa babefundisa, babefundisa ngamandla negunya likaThixo.
- 4 Kwaye babefundisa ilizwi likaThixo kangangethuba leminyaka elishumi elinane phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, banempumelelo enkulu ekuziseni abaninzi kulwazi lwenyaniso; ewe, ngamandla amazwi abo abaninzi baziswa phambi kwesibingelelo sikaThixo, ukuba balibize igama lakhe baze bazivume izono zabo phambi kwakhe.
- 5 Ngoku ezi zaye zizimeko abathi bajongana nazo kwihambo zabo, kuba babe neembandezelo ezininzi; baye bahlupheka kakhulu, kunye emzimbeni nasengqondweni, ezinje ngendlala, ukunxanwa nokudinwa, kananjalo nokuzamazama okuninzi emoyeni.

*An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.*

## Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

- 6 Ngoku ezi zaye iziihambo zabo: Bemshiyile uyise wabo, uMozaya, kowokuqala unyaka wabagwebi; bebulandula ubukumkani uyise wabo awayenqwenela ukubunikela phezu kwabo, kananjalo oku kwakuziingcinga zabantu;
- 7 Nangona kunjalo bemka baphuma kwilizwe laseZarahemla, baza bathabatha amakrele abo, nemikhonto yabo, nezaphetha zabo, neentolo zabo, nezilingi zabo; kwaye oku bakwenzela ukuze babenakho ukuzibonelela ngokutya ngelilixa basentlango.
- 8 Kwaye njalo bemka bangena entlango namanani abo ababewakhethile, ukuba benyukele kwilizwe likaNifayi, ukuya kushumayela ilizwi likaThixo kuwo amaLeymenayithi.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bahamba iintsuku ezininzi entlango, kwaye bazila ukudla kakhulu kwaye bathandaza kakhulu ukuze iNkosi ibanike inxalenye yoMoya wayo ukuba uhambe nabo, kwaye uhlale nabo, ukuze babe nokuba zizixhobo ezandleni zikaThixo, ukuba bekungenzeka, bazise abazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi, kulwazi lwenyaniso, kulwazi ngobugwenxa bezithethe zooyise, ezazingalunganga.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yabavelela ngoMoya wayo, yaza yathi kubo: Thuthuzelekani. Baza bathuthuzeleka.
- 11 Yaza iNkosi kanjalo yathi kubo: Bhakani phambili phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, abazalwana benu, nize nilimisele ilizwi lam; kanti ke niya kuba nomonde ekuzekeni kade umsindo neembandezelo, ukuze nibe nokubonakalisa umzekelo omhle kubo ngam, kwaye ndiya kunenza izixhobo ezandleni zam ukuze kube lusindiso lwemiphefumlo emininzi.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iintliziyo zoonyana bakaMozaya, kananjalo nabo babe nabo, zaba nokukhuthazeka ukuze babheke phambili kuwo amaLeymenayithi ukuya kuvakalisa kubo ilizwi likaThixo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile ekubeni befikile kwimida yelizwe lamaLeymenayithi, baye bazahlula baza bemka omnye komnye, bethembele eNkosini ukuba baya kubonana kwakhona ekupheleni kwesivuno sabo; kuba babecinga ukuba wawumkhulu umsebenzi ababewamkele.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.



- 14 Kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo wawumkhulu, kuba bamkela ukushumayela ilizwi likaThixo kubantu abandlongo-ndlongo, nabaqaqadekileyo nabanoburhalarhume; abantu abavuyiswayo kukugebenga amaNifayithi, nokuphanga nokubarhwaphiliza; kwaye neentliziyo zabo bazibeka phezu kobutyebi, okanye phezu kwegolide nesilivere, namatye axabisekileyo; kanti ke bafuna ukuzuza ezi zinto ngokubulala nangokurhwaphiliza, ukuze bangabi nakuzisebenzela ngezandla zabo.
- 15 Njalo ke babengabantu abadangeleyo, abaninzi babo babenqula izithixo, kwaye isiqalekiso sikaThixo sawela phezu kwabo ngenxa yezithethe zooyise; nangona kunjalo izithembiso zeNkosi zazolulelwe kubo ngaphandle kokuba bayaguquka.
- 16 Ke ngoko, oku kwakungunobangela wokuba oonyana bakaMozaya bawamkele umsebenzi, ukuze mhlawumbi banganokubazisa enguqukweni; ukuze mhlawumbi bangabazisa ukuba bazi ngecebo lenkululeko.
- 17 Ke ngoko bohlukana omnye komnye, baza babheka phambili phakathi kwawo, wonke umntu yedwa, ngokwelizwi namandla kaThixo awayenikezelwe kuye.
- 18 Ngoku uAmon ekubeni eyintloko phakathi kwabo, okanye mhlawumbi wabalungiselela, waza wemka kubo, emva kokuba ebasikelele ngokwezikhundla zabo ezahlukeneyo, akuba ebabele ngelizwi likaThixo, okanye ebalungiselele phambi kokumka kwakhe; baza njalo bazithabatha iihambo zabo ezahlukeneyo benqumla ilizwe.
- 19 Waza uAmon wabheka kwilizwe likaIshmayeli, ilizwe elo libizwa ngoonyana bakaIshmayeli, abathi nabo kananjalo baba ngamaLeymenayithi.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

20 Kwaye kwathi uAmon akungena kwilizwe likaIshmayeli, amaLeymenayithi amthabatha aza ambophelela, njengoko kwakulisiko labo ukuba bawabophelele amaNifayithi athi awele ezandleni zabo, baze bawathwale bawase phambi kokumkani; kwaye njalo yayishiywa kwintando kakumkani into yokubulawa kwawo, okanye ukubagcina ekuthinjweni, okanye ukubaphosa entolongweni, okanye ukubakhuphela ngaphandle kwelizwe lakhe, ngokwentando yakhe nolonwabo.

21 Waza njalo ke uAmon wathwalwa wasiwa phambi kokumkani owayelawula phezu kwelizwe likaIshmayeli; kwaye igama lakhe lalinguLamonayi; kwaye wayeyinzala kaIshmayeli.

22 Waza ukumkani wambuza uAmon ukuba kungumqweni wakhe na ukuhlala elizweni phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, okanye phakathi kwabantu bakhe.

23 Waza uAmon wathi kuye: Ewe, ndinqwenela ukuhlala phakathi kwaba bantu okwethutyana; ewe, kwaye mhlawumbi ndide ndife.

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uLamonayi weneliseka kakhulu nguAmon, waza wenza ukuba amakhamandela akhe akhululwe; kwaye wayenqwenela ukuba uAmon angathabatha enye yeentombi zakhe ibe ngumfazi.

25 Kodwa uAmon wathi kuye: Hayi, kodwa ndiya kuba sisicaka sakho. Ke ngoko uAmon waba sisicaka kukumkani uLamonayi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabekwa phakathi kwezinye izicaka ukuba oluse imihlambi kaLamonayi, ngokwesiko lamaLeymenayithi.

26 Kwaye emva kokuba esebenzele ukumkani iintsuku ezintathu, xa waye kunye nezicaka ezazingamaLeymenayithi bebheka phambili kunye nemihlambi yabo besiya kwindawo yamanzi, eyayibizwa ngokuba ngamanzi aseSebhasi, kwaye onke amaLeymenayithi ayeqhubela imihlambi yawo apho, ukuze ibe nokufumana amanzi—

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus, and all the Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may have water—

- 27 Ke ngoko, njengokuba uAmon nezicaka zika kumkani babeyiqhubela phambili imihlambi yabo ukuya kule ndawo yamanzi, qaphelani, igqiza elithile lamaLeymenayithi, alaye linemihlambi yalo ukuya kuyiseza, lema laza lawudunga umhlambi ka-Amon nezicaka zikakumkani, kwaye bawudunga kangangokuba yabaleka ngeendlela ezininzi.
- 28 Ngoku izicaka zika kumkani zaqalisa ukumbombozela, zisithi: Ngoku ukumkani uza kusibulala, njengoko wenzayo kubazalwana bethu ngenxa yokuba imihlambi yabo yadungwa ngenxa yenkohlakalo yala madoda. Baza baqalisa ukulila ngokugqithisileyo, besithi: Qaphela, imihlambi yethu sele ichithachithakele.
- 29 Ngoku babelila ngenxa yokoyika ukubulawa. Ngoku xa uAmon ebona oku intliziyo yakhe yadumba ngaphakathi kwakhe luvuyo; kuba, watsho, ndiza kubonisa amandla am kwaba balingane bam, okanye amandla akum, ngokubuyisela le mihlambi kuye ukumkani, ukuze ndizuze iintliziyo zaba bangabalingane bam, ukuze ndibakhokelele ekukholweni kumazwi am.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku, ezi zaba ziingcinga zika-Amon, akubona iimbandezelo zabo wayebabiza ngokuba ngabazalwana bakhe.
- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabakhuthaza ngamazwi akhe, esithi: Bazalwana bam, yomelelani kwaye masihambeni siye kuyikhangela imihlambi, kwaye siya kuyihlanganisa kunye size siyibuyisele kuyo indawo yamanzi; size njalo siyilondolozele ukumkani imihlambi kwaye akasayi kusibulala.
- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bahamba baya kuyikhangela imihlambi, kwaye baye balandela uAmon, baza bafunzela phambili ngokukhawuleza okukhulu baza bayiqhiwula imihlambi kakumkani, baza bayihlanganisa kunye kwakhona kuyo indawo yamanzi.
- 33 Kwaye loo madoda kwakhona ema ukuze ayichithachithe imihlambi yabo; kodwa uAmon wathi kubazalwana bakhe: Yirhangqeni imihlambi macala onke ukuze ingabaleki; kwaye mna ndiza kuhamba ndiyokulwa nala madoda athi achithachitha imihlambi yethu.

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king were driving forth their flocks to this place of water, behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king, and they scattered them insomuch that they fled many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur, saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men. And they began to weep exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered already.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

34 Ke ngoko, baye benza njengoko uAmon waye bayalela, waza wabhaka phambili waza wema ukuze alwe nabo babemile ngasemanzini aseSebhasi kwaye amanani abo ayengembalwa.

35 Ke ngoko babengamoyiki uAmon, kuba babecinga ukuba indoda enye yabo ingambulala ngokwentando yabo, kuba babengazi ukuba iNkosi yayimthembisile uMozaya okokuba iya kubahlangula oonyana bakhe ezandleni zabo; bengazi nanto ngokunxulumene neNkosi; ke ngoko babevuyiswa yintshabalalo yabazalwana babo; kwaye kungeso sizathu bema ukuze bayichithachithe imihlambi kakumkani.

36 Kodwa uAmon wema phambili waza waqalisa ukubagibisela ngamatye ngesilingi sakhe; ewe, ngokomelela okunamandlakazi waye wagibisela amatye phakathi kwabo; waza njalo wabulala igqiza elithile labo kangangokuba baqalisa ukukhwankqiswa kukomelela kwakhe; nangona kunjalo baba nomsindo ngenxa yabo babebulewe kubazalwana babo, baza bazimisela ukuba kumele awe; ke ngoko, bakubona ukuba abakwazi ukumelana namatye abo, beza phambili ngamagqudu ukuba bambulale.

37 Kodwa qaphelani, wonke umntu owaphakamisa igqudu lakhe ukuba abethe uAmon, yena wabanqumla iingalo zabo ngekrele lakhe; kuba waye wamelana nezithonga zabo ngokunqumla iingalo zabo ngencam yekrele lakhe, kangangokuba baqalisa ukukhwankqiseka, baza baqalisa ukusaba phambi kwakhe; ewe, kwaye babe ngembalwa ngenani; kwaye wabenza basaba ngokomelela kwengalo yakhe.

38 Ngoku isithandathu sabo sawa ngesilingi, kodwa akabulalanga namnye ngaphandle nje kwenkokeli yabo ngekrele lakhe; kwaye wanqumla iingalo zabo kangangobuninzi bazo ezaziphakanyiswe ngokuchasene naye, kwaye zazingembalwa.

39 Waza akuba ebaqhubele kude kakhulu, wabuya baza bayiseza imihlambi yabo baza bayibuyisela edlelweni likakumkani, baza ke bayakungena kuye ukumkani, bethwele kabukhali iingalo ebezinqunyulwe ngekrele lika-Amon, ezabo babezama ukumbulala; kwaye zathwalwa zasiwa ngaphakathi kukumkani njengobungqina bezinto abazenzayo.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

## Alma 18

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile oku ukumkani uLamonayi wenza izicaka zakhe ukuba zime ngaphambili baze kwaye zibangqine ngazo zonke izinto abathe bazibona malunga nalo mba.
- 2 Baza bakuba bonke bengqinile ngezinto ezo babe zibonile, kwaye wafumanisa ngokuthembeka kuka-Amon ekulondolozeni imihlambi yakhe, kananjalo nangamandla akhe amakhulu ekulweni nabo babezama ukumbulala, waye wakhwankqiswa ngokugqithisileyo, waza wathi: Ngokwenene, lo ungaphezulu kunomntu. Qaphelani, ingaba asinguye na lo uMoya onaMandla othumela isohlwayo esikhulu kangaka phezu kwaba bantu, ngenxa yokubulala kwabo?
- 3 Baza bamphendula ukumkani, baza bathi: Nokokuba unguMoya onaMandla okanye ungomntu, asazi; kodwa sazi kangaka, ukuba akanako ukubulawa ziintshaba zikakumkani; bengenako nokuyichithachitha imihlambi kakumkani xa enathi, ngenxa yobungcali bakhe nokomelela okukhulu; ke ngoko, siyazi okokuba ungomhlobo kuye ukumkani. Kwaye ngoku, Owu kumkani, asikholelwa ukuba umntu nje unamandla amakhulu kangaka, kuba siyazi ukuba akanako ukubulawa.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku, akuweva la mazwi, ukumkani wathi kubo: Ngoku ndiyazi ukuba nguMoya onaMandla; kwaye wehlele ezantsi ngelilixa ukuze abulondolozwe ubomi benu, ukuze ndingabi nakunibulala njengoko ndenzayo kubazalwana benu. Ngoku lo nguMoya onaMandla abathi bathetha ngaye oobawo bethu.
- 5 Ngoku esi yayisisithethe sikaLamonayi, awayesizuze kuyise, sokokuba kwakukho uMoya onaMandla. Nangona babekholelwa kuwo uMoya onaMandla, babecinga ukuba nantoni na ababeyenza yayilungile; nangona kunjalo, uLamonayi waqalisa ukoyika ngokugqithisileyo, ngoloyiko lokuba hleze abe wenze okungalunganga ngokubulala izicaka zakhe;

## Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

- 6 Kuba wayebulele abaninzi babo ngenxa yokuba abazalwana babo babechithachithe imihlambi yabo endaweni yamanzi; baza njalo, ngenxa yokuba bayeka imihlambi yabo ichithachithwe baye babulawa.
- 7 Ngoku kwakusisiqhelo sala maLeymenayithi ukuba beme ngasemanzini aseSebhasi ukuze ayichithachithe imihlambi yabantu, ukuze ngaloo ndlela abenokuyiqhubela kude emininzi echithachithiweyo kwilizwe labo, leyo ke isisiqhelo sabo sokurhwaphiliza phakathi kwabo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uLamonayi wabuza kwizicaka zakhe, esithi: Iphi le ndoda inamandla amakhulu kangaka?
- 9 Baza bathi kuye: Qaphela, udlisa amahashe akho. Ngoku ukumkani wayeyalele izicaka zakhe, ngaphambi kweli lixa lokuseza imihlambi yabo, ukuba bamele balungise amahashe akhe neenqwelo zakhe zokulwa, baze bamqhubele ukuya kwilizwe likaNifayi; kuba apho kwakukho isidlo esikhulu esasimiselwe kwilizwe likaNifayi, nguyise kaLamonayi, owayengukumkani phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe.
- 10 Ngoku akuva ukumkani uLamonayi okokuba uAmon wayelungisa amahashe akhe neenqwelo zokulwa zakhe wakhwankqiswa ngakumbi, ngenxa yentembeko ka-Amon, esithi: Ngokwenene akuzange kubekho nasinye isicaka phakathi kwezicaka zam zonke ebesithembeke njengale ndoda; kuba ude ayikhumbule yonke imiyalelo yam ukuba ayenze.
- 11 Ngoku ndiyazi okokuba lo nguye uMoya onaMandla, kwaye ndinganqwenela ukuba aze angene ngaphakathi kum, kodwa andingekhe ndilinge.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmon elungiselele ukumkani nezicaka zakhe amahashe neenqwelo zokulwa, wangena ngaphakathi kuye ukumkani, waza wabona ukuba imbonakalo yobuso bukukumkani yayiguqukile; ke ngoko wayesele eza kubuyela ngaphandle emke kubukho bakhe.

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

- 13 Waza omnye wezicaka zikakumkani wathi kuye: Rabhana, ethi, ukutolikwa, kumkani onamandla okanye kumkani omkhulu, becinga ukuba ookumkani babo banamandla; waza njalo ke wathi kuye: Rabhana, ukumkani unqwenela ukuba uhlale.
- 14 Ke ngoko uAmon waguqukela kuye ukumkani, waza wathi kuye: Ingaba yintoni onqwenela ukuba ndikwenzele yona, Owu kumkani? Waza ukumkani akamphendula kangangethuba leyure, ngokwexesha labo, kuba wayengayazi into amakayithethe kuye.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon wathi kuye kwakhona: Ingaba unqwenela ntoni kum? Kodwa ukumkani akamphendulanga.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon, ezaliswe nguMoya kaThixo, ke ngoko waziqonda iingcinga zikakumkani. Waza wathi kuye: Kungenxa yokuba uvile ukuba ndikhusele izicaka zakho nemihlambi yakho, ndaza ndabulala isixhenxe sabazalwana babo ngesilingi nangekrele, ndaza ndanqumla iingalo zabanye, ukuze ndikhusele iimihlambi yakho nezicaka zakho; qaphela, ingaba kuko oku okukubangele ukumangaliswa?
- 17 Ndithi kuwe, ingaba yintoni, ukuba umangaliswe kakhulu kangaka? Qaphela, ndingumntu, kwaye ndisicaka sakho; ke ngoko, nantoni na oyingqwenelayo elungileyo, loo nto ndiya kuyenza.
- 18 Ngoku akuba ukumkani ewavile la mazwi, wamangaliswa kwakhona, kuba waqaphela ukuba uAmon wayekwazi ukuziqonda iingcinga zakhe; kodwa nangona kunjalo, ukumkani uLamonayi waye wawuvula umlomo wakhe, waza wathi kuye: Ungubani? Unguye laa Moya unaMandla, owazi zonke izinto?
- 19 UAmon waphendula kwaye wathi kuye: Andinguwo.
- 20 Waza ukumkani wathi: Uzazi njani iingcinga zentliziyo yam? Ungathetha ngenkalipho, kwaye undixelele malunga nezi zinto; kanaanjalo undixelele ukuba kungamandla mani obulele waza wanqumla iingalo zabazalwana bam abebechithachitha imihlambi yam—

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

21 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba ungandixelela malunga nezi zinto, nantoni na oyinqwenelayo ndiya kukunika; kwaye ukuba bekuyimfuneko, bendiya kukukhusela ngemikhosi yam yonke; kodwa ndiyazi ukuba unamandla kakhulu ngaphezu kwayo yonke; nangona kunjalo, nantoni na oyinqwenelayo kum ndiya kuyinikezela kuwe.

22 Ngoku uAmon elumkile, kanti ke engenabungozi, wathi kuye uLamonayi: Ingaba uza kuwaphula-phula amazwi am, ukuba ndiya kuxelela ukuba kungamandla mani endizenza ngawo ezi zinto? Kwaye le yinto endiyinqwenelayo kuwe.

23 Waza ukumkani wamphendula, kwaye wathi: Ewe, ndiya kuwakholelwa onke amazwi akho. Kwaye njalo wabambiseka ngenkohliso.

24 Waza uAmon waqalisa ukuthetha ngenkalipho, kwaye wathi kuye: Uyakholelwa na ukuba kukho uThixo?

25 Waza waphendula, kwaye wathi kuye: Andiyazi ukuba ithetha ntoni na loo nto.

26 Waza ke uAmon wathi: Uyakholelwa na ukuba kukho uMoya onoMandla?

27 Waza wathi, Ewe.

28 Waza wathi uAmon: Lo ke nguThixo. Waza uAmon wathi kuye kwakhona: Uyakholelwa ukuba lo Moya unaMandla, onguThixo, wadala zonke izinto ezisezulwini kwaye nasemhlabeni?

29 Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiyakholelwa ukuba wadala zonke izinto ezikuwo umhlaba; kodwa andiwazi amazulu.

30 Waze uAmon wathi kuye: Amazulu yindawo apho uThixo ahlala khona kwaye nazo zonke iingelosi ezingcwele.

31 Waza ukumkani uLamonayi wathi: Lingasentla komhlaba?

32 Waza uAmon wathi: Ewe, kwaye ukhangele ezantsi phezu kwabo bonke abantwana babantu; kwaye uyazazi zonke iingcinga neenjongo zentliziyo; kuba ngesandla sakhe bonke bakholwa ukususela ekuqalekeni.

33 Waza ukumkani uLamonayi wathi: Ndiyazikholelwa zonke ezi zinto uzithethileyo. Ingaba uthunyelwe usuka kuThixo?

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?



34 UAmon wathi kuye: Mna ndingumntu; kwaye umntu ekuqalekeni wayedalwe ngokwemfano kaThixo, kwaye mna ndibizwe ngoMoya wakhe oyiNgcwele ukuba ndifundise ezi zinto kubo abantu, ukuze babe nokuziswa kulwazi lwaloo nto ilungileyo kwaye neyinyani;

35 Kwaye inxalenye yaloo Moya uhleli ngaphakathi kum, endinika ulwazi, kananjalo namandla ngokokholo lwam neminqweno ekuye uThixo.

36 Ngoku akuba uAmon ewathethile la mazwi, waqala kuyo indalo yehlabathi, kananjalo nokudalwa kuka-Adam, waza wamxelela zonke izinto ezinxulumene nokuwa komntu, waza wacengceleza kwaye wabeka phambi kwakhe iimbali nezibhalo ezingcwele zabantu, ezazithethwe ngabaprofeti, nokusuka ezantsi kulo ilixa awathi uyise wabo, uLihayi, walishiya elaseYerusalem.

37 Waza kanjalo wabacengceleza (kuba kwakukuye ukumkani kwaye nakuzo izicaka zakhe) zonke iihambo zooyise entlango, kwaye nazo zonke iintlupheko zabo ngendlala nonxano, nemigudu yabo enzima, njalo-njalo.

38 Kwaye kanjalo waye wababalisela ngokunxulumene neemvukelo zikaLeymeni noLemuweli, noonyana bakaIshmayeli, ewe, zonke iimvukelo zabo waye wazicengceleza kubo; kwaye wabacacisela zonke iimbali nezibhalo ukususela kwilixa awathi uLihayi walishiya elaseYerusalem ukwehla ukuza kwixesha elimiyo.

39 Kodwa akuphelelanga apho; kuba wabacacisela ngecebo lenkululeko, elalilungiselelwe ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi; waza kanjalo wabazisa malunga nokuza kukaKrestu, kwaye nayo yonke imisebenzi yeNkosi wayazisa kubo.

40 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ezithethile zonke ezi zinto, kwaye wazicacisa kukumkani, ukumkani waye wawakholelwa onke amazwi akhe.

41 Waza waqalisa ukudanduluka kuyo iNkosi, esithi: Owu Nkosi, yiba nenceba; ngokwenceba yakho eninzi owathi wanayo phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, yiba nayo phezu kwam, nakubantu bam.

42 Kwaye ngoku, akuba ekuthethile oku, wawa emhlabeni, ngokungathi wayefile.

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

43      Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izicaka zakhe  
zamthabatha kwaye zamthwala zamngenisa  
kumfazi wakhe, kwaye zambeka phezu komandlalo;  
kwaye walala ngokungathi ufile kangangethuba  
leentsuku ezimbini nobusuku obubini; waza umfazi  
wakhe, noonyana bakhe, neentombi zakhe  
bamzilela, ngokohlobo lwamaLeymenayithi,  
besenza isijwili kakhulu ngokulahlekelwa nguye.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and  
carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a  
bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of  
two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons,  
and his daughters mourned over him, after the man-  
ner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

## Alma 19

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kweentsuku ezimbini nobusuku obubini babesele beza kuwuthabatha umzimba wakhe baze bawulalise engcwabeni, ababelenze ngenjongo yokungcwaba abafileyo babo.
- 2 Ngoku ukumkanikazi eluvile udumo luka-Amon, ke ngoko wathumela kwaye enqwenela nokokuba eza angene ngaphakathi kuye.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon waye wenza njengoko wayeyalelwe, kwaye wangena ngaphakathi kuye ukumkanikazi, kwaye wanqwenela ukwazi ukuba ingaba yintonina anqwenela ukuba angayenza.
- 4 Waza wathi ke kuye: Izicaka zomyeni wam zindazisile okokuba ungumprofeti woThixo ongcwele, nokokuba unamandla okwenza imisebenzi yamandlakazi egameni lakhe;
- 5 Ke ngoko, ukuba kunjalo, ndinga ungangena ngaphakathi uze umbone umyeni wam, kuba ubekwe phezu komandlalo wakhe kangangethuba leentsuku ezimbini nobusuku obubini; kwaye abanye bathi akafile, kodwa abanye bathi ufile kwaye sele enuka, kwaye nokokuba kumele abekwe engcwabeni; kodwa ngokwam, kum akanuki.
- 6 Ngoku, oku kwakukoko kwakunqwenelwa nguAmon, kuba wayesazi okokuba ukumkani uLamonayi wayephantsi kwamandla kaThixo; wayesazi ukuba isigqubuthelo esimnyama sokungakholwa sasikhutshelwa kude sikhutshwa engqondweni yakhe, kwaye ukukhanya okwakukhanyisela ingqondo yakhe, okwaye ikukukhanya kobuqaqawuli bukaThixo, okwaye ikukukhanya okumangalisayo kokulunga kwakhe—ewe, oku kukhanya kwakuzise olunjani lona uvuyo emphefulweni wakhe, lakuba ilifu lobumnyama lisusiwe, kwaye nokuba ukukhanya kobomi obungunaphakade kwakukhanyisiwe emphefulweni wakhe, ewe, wayesazi okokuba oku kwakuwoyisile umzimba wemveli, kwaye wayethatyathelwe kude ekuThixo—

## Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

- 7 Ke ngoko, oko kwakunqwenelwa ngukumkanikazi kuye kwakukuphela komnqweno wakhe. Ke ngoko, wangena ngaphakathi kuye ukumkani njengoko ukumkanikazi wayemnqwenela ukuba akwenze; waza wambona ukumkani, kwaye wayesazi okokuba waye engafile.
- 8 Kwaye wathi kuye ukumkanikazi: Akafile, kodwa ulele ekuThixo, kwaye ngengomso uya kuvuka kwakhona; ke ngoko musani ukumngcwaba.
- 9 Kwaye uAmon wathi kuye: Uyakholelwa koku? Waza yena wathi ke kuye: Andibanga nabungqina ngaphandle nje kwelizwi lakho, nelizwi lezicaka zethu; nangona kunjalo ndiyakholelwa okokuba kuya kuba njengokuba utshilo.
- 10 Waza uAmon wathi kuye: Usikelelekile wena ngenxa yokholo lwakho olugqithileyo; ndithi kuwe, mfazi, akubangakho lukholo lukhulu kangaka phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaNifayithi.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba walinda phezu komandlalo womenyeni wakhe, ukususela kwelo lixa kwade kwaba lelo lixa ngengomso abethe uAmon walimisa lokuba umele avuke ngalo.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wavuka, ngokwamazwi ka-Amon; kwaye njengoko wayevuka, wasolulela phambili isandla sakhe kuye umfazi, waza wathi: Malibongwe igama likaThixo, kwaye usikelelekile wena.
- 13 Kuba njengoko kuqinisekile ukuba uyaphila, qaphela, ndimbonile uMkhululi wam; kwaye uya kuza ngaphambili, kwaye azalwe ngumfazi, kwaye uya kukhulula lonke uluntu olukholelwa egameni lakhe. Ngoku, akuba ewathethile la mazwi, intliziyo yakhe yadumba ngaphakathi kuye, waza wazika kwakhona luvuyo; waza nokumkanikazi kanjalo wathi folokohlo phantsi, onganyelwe nguMoya.

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

- 14 Ngoku uAmon akubona uMoya weNkosi uthululwe, ngokwemithandazo yakhe phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, abazalwana bakhe, ababengunobangela wenzilo eninzi phakathi kwamaNifayithi, okanye phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaThixo ngenxa yobugwenxa babo nezithethe zabo, wawa ngamadolo akhe, waza waqalisa ukuwuthulula umphefumlo wakhe ngomthandazo nangombulelo kuThixo ngenxa yento abenzele yona abazalwana bakhe; kwaye naye kanjalo wonganyelwa luvuyo; baza njalo bonke bobathathu bathi folokohlo emhlabeni.
- 15 Ngoku, zakuba izicaka zikakumkani zibonile ukuba bawile, nazo kanjalo zaqalisa ukudanduluka kuye uThixo, kuba uloyiko lweNkosi lwafika phezu kwazo kanjalo, kuba yayizizo ezaziphambi kokumkani kwaye zangqina kuye malunga namandla amakhulu ka-Amon.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye balibiza igama leNkosi, ngamandlakazi abo, bada nabo ngokwabo bawela bonke emhlabeni, ngaphandle nje komnye kubafazi bamaLeymenayithi, ogama lakhe lalinguEyibishi, ekubeni yena ebeguqukele eNkosini kangangeminyaka emininzi, ngenxa yombono kayise wakhe owawubalasele—
- 17 Njalo ke, ekubeni ebaguqukele eNkosini, kwaye engazanga akwazise oko, ke ngoko, akubona ukuba zonke izicaka zikaLamonayi ziwele emhlabeni, kwaye kanjalo nomqeshikazi wakhe, ukumkanikazi, nokumkani, kwaye noAmon wayelele ethe natya phezu komhlaba, wayesazi ukuba yayingamandla kaThixo; kwaye ecinga ukuba eli thuba, ngokubazisa abantu oko kwenzekileyo phakathi kwabo, ukuba ngokubona esi sehlo siya kubabangela ukuba bakholelwe kuwo amandla kaThixo, ke ngoko wabaleka wesuka kwindlu ngendlu, esazisa oku ebantwini.
- 18 Baza ke baqalisa ukuhlanganisana kunye besiya kuyo indlu kakumkani. Kwaye kweza isihlwele, baza ekukhwankqisweni, kwabo baqaphela ukumkani, nokumkanikazi, nezicaka zabo zithe natya phezu komhlaba, kwaye bonke babelele apho ngokungathi babefile; baza kanjalo babona uAmon, kwaye qaphela, wayengumNifayithi.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

- 19 Kwaye ngoku abantu baqalisa ukumbombozela phakathi kwabo; abanye besithi yayibububi obukhulu elalibafikele, okanye phezu kokumkani, nendlu yakhe, ngenxa yokuba evumele ukuba umNifayithi ahlale elizweni.
- 20 Kodwa abanye babakhalimela, besithi: Ukumkani uzibizele eli shwangusha phezu kwendlu yakhe, ngenxa yokuba wabulala izicaka zakhe ezabe zichithachithe imihlambi yazo kumanzi aseSebhasi.
- 21 Kwaye kanjalo bakhalinyelwa nangaloo madoda awayeme emanzini aseSebhasi aze ayichithachitha imihlambi eyayiyekakumkani, kuba ayenomsindo ngakuAmon ngenxa yenani labazalwana bawo awalibulalayo emanzini aseSebhasi, ngelixa wayekhusela imihlambi kakumkani.
- 22 Ngoku, omnye wabo, owayebulawelwe umntakwabo ngekrele lika-Amon, enomsindo ngokugqithisileyo ngakuAmon, walirhuthya ikrele lakhe waza wabheka phambili ukuze abe nokuliwisa phezu kuka-Amon, ukuba ambulale; waza xa eliphakamisa ikrele ukuze amenzakalise, qaphelani, wawa wafa.
- 23 Ngoku siyabona okokuba uAmon ebengenakho ukubulawa, kuba iNkosi yathi kuMozaya, uyise wakhe: Ndiya kamsindisa, kwaye kuya kwenzeka kuye ngokokholo lwakho—ke ngoko, uMozaya wamnikezela eNkosini.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa isihlwele siqaphela okokuba indoda leyo eyaphakamisa ikrele ukuba ibulale uAmon iwile yafa, uloyiko lwabafikela bonke, kwaye ababanga nakulinga nokusondeza zandla zabo ukuba bamchukumise okanye nawuphina kwabo babewile; baza baqalisa ukumangaliswa kwakhona phakathi kwabo ukuba ingaba yintoni unobangela wala mandla makhulu, okanye yintoni intsingiselo yezi zinto zonke.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba baninzi abathi uAmon wayenguye uMoya onaMandla, kwaye abanye bathi wayethunywe nguMoya onaMandla;
- 26 Kodwa abanye babakhalimela bonke, besithi wayesisidalwa esingaqhelekanga, esasithunyelwe sisuka kumaNifayithi ukuba sibathuthumbise.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

- 27 Kwaye kwakukho nabanye abathi uAmon wayethunywe nguMoya onaMandla ukuba ubahlungise ngenxa yobugwenxa babo; nokokuba yayinguMoya onaMandla owawusoloko uwakhusele amaNifayithi, owawuhleli uwahlangula ubakhupha ezandleni zabo; kwaye bathi yayingulo Moya unaMandla owawutshabalalise abazalwana babo abaninzi kakhulu, amaLeymenayithi.
- 28 Kwaye njalo yaqalisa impikiswano ukuba bukhali ngokugqithisileyo phakathi kwabo. Kwaye besaphikisana njalo, umfazi osisicakakazi owayebangele ukuba isihlewele sihlanganisane kunye wafika, waza wathi akuyibona le mpikiswano eyayiphakathi kwesihlewele wabalusizi ngokugqithisileyo, ngokude alile iinyembezi.
- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wahamba waza wathabatha ukumkanikazi ngesandla, ukuze mhlawumbi angamphakamisa emhlabeni; waza kamsinya nje akuba echukumise isandla sakhe wavuka waza wema ngeenyawo zakhe, waza wadanduluka ngelizwi elikhulu, esithi: Owu Yesu osikelelekileyo, ondisindisileyo kwisihogo esoyikekayo! Owu Thixo osikelelekileyo, yiba nenceba kwaba bantu!
- 30 Waza akuba ekuthethile oku, wazibamba izandla zakhe, ezaliswe luvuyo, ethetha amazwi amaninzi awaye engenakuqondwa; kwaye akuba ekwenzile oku, wathabatha ukumkani, uLamonayi, ngesandla, kwaye qaphela waphakama waza wema ngeenyawo zakhe.
- 31 Waza yena, ngoko nangoko, ebona impikiswano ephakathi kwabantu bakhe, wabheka phambili waza waqalisa ukubakhalimela, nokubafundisa amazwi abewavile ephuma emlonyeni ka-Amon, baza ngobuninzi babo abawavileyo amazwi akhe bakholelwa, baza baguqukela eNkosini.
- 32 Kodwa kwabakho abaninzi phakathi kwabo abangafunanga ukuwaphula-phula amazwi akhe; ke ngoko bahamba indlela yabo.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ephakamile uAmon waye kanjalo wabasikelela, waza kanjalo wenza njalo nakuzo izicaka zikaLamonayi; baza bonke bavakalisa ebantwini into enye efanayo —yokokuba iintliziyi zabo ziguqulwe; nokokuba abasenawo umnqweno wokwenza ububi.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

34 Kwaye qaphela, abaninzi baye bavakalisa ebantwini okokuba bazibonile iingelosi kwaye bathetha nazo; kwaye njalo ke babaxelela zabaxelela izinto zikaThixo, nezobulungisa bakhe.

35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba baninzi abathi bakholwa kumazwi abo; baza ngobuninzi babo abakholwayo babhaptizwa; baza baba ngabantu abangamalungisa, kwaye baye bamisa ibandla phakathi kwabo.

36 Waza njalo umsebenzi weNkosi waqalisa phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi; njalo ke iNkosi yaye yaqalisa ukuwuthulula uMoya wayo phezu kwabo; kwaye siyabona okokuba ingalo yayo yolulelwe kubo bonke abantu abaya kuguquka baze bakholwe egameni lakhe.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.



## Alma 20

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba belimisele ibandla kwelo lizwe, ukumkani uLamonayi wanqwenela okokuba uAmon ahambe naye ukuya kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, ukuze abe nokumbonisa kuyise wakhe.
- 2 Laza ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuAmon, lisithi: Akusayi kunyukela kwilizwe likaNifayi, kuba qaphela, ukumkani uya kuzungula ubomi bakho; kodwa uyakuya kwilizwe laseMidonayi; kuba qaphela, umntakwenu uAron, kwaye kanjalo noMyulakayi noAma basentolongweni.
- 3 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmon ekuvile oku, wathi kuye uLamonayi: Qaphela, umntakwethu nabazalwana bam basentolongweni eMidonayi, kwaye ndiyaya ukuze ndibe nokubakhulula.
- 4 Ngoku uLamonayi wathi kuye uAmon: Ndiyazi, emandleni eNkosi unakho ukuzenza zonke izinto. Kodwa qaphela, ndiza kuhamba nawe ukuya kwilizwe laseMidonayi; kuba ukumkani welizwe laseMidonayi, ogama lakhe linguAntiyamno, usisihlobo kum; ke ngoko ndiyaya kwilizwe laseMidonayi, ukuze ndibe nokumncoma kakhulu ukumkani welizwe, kwaye uya kubakhupha abazalwana bakho baphume entolongweni. Ngoku wathi uLamonayi kuye: Ngubani okuxeleleyo ukuba abazalwana bakho basentolongweni?
- 5 Waza wathi uAmon kuye: Akukho bani undixeleleyo, ngaphandle kokuba ibe nguThixo; kwaye uthe kum—Hamba uze ukhulule abazalwana bakho, kuba basentolongweni kwilizwe laseMidonayi.
- 6 Ngoku akuba uLamonayi ekuvile oku wenza okokuba izicaka zakhe zilungise amahashe akhe neenqwelo zakhe zokulwa.
- 7 Waza wathi kuAmon: Yiza, ndiza kuhamba nawe ndehlele kwilizwe laseMidonayi, kwaye apho ndiya kumcenga ukumkani ukuba abakhuphe abazalwana bakho baphume entolongweni.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengoko uAmon noLamonayi babesiya apho, bahlangana noyise kaLamonayi, owayengukumkani phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe.

## Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

- 9 Kwaye qaphelani, uyise kaLamonayi wathi kuye: Kungani ungezanga kumsitho ngalaa mhla mkhulu xa ndandenzele oonyana bam umsitho, kwaye ndenzele nabantu bam?
- 10 Kwaye kanjalo wathi: Uyaphi kunye nalo mNifayithi, ongomnye wabantwana bexoki?
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLamonayi wamchazela apho aya khona, kuba wayesoyika ukumkhathaza.
- 12 Kwaye wamxelela kanjalo sonke isizathu sokulibaziseka kwakhe kobakhe ubukumkani, ukuze angayi kuyise emsithweni abewulungisile.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku akuba uLamonayi emchazele zonke ezi zinto, qaphela, ekukhwankqisweni kwakhe, uyise waba nomsindo ngakuye, waza wathi: Lamonayi, uya kukhulula la maNifayithi, abangoonyana bexoki. Qaphela, wabaphanga oobawo bethu; kwaye ngoku abantwana bakhe kanjalo baze phakathi kwethu ukuze babe, ngobuqhinga babo nobuxoki babo, nokusilahlekisa, ukuze basilahlekise kwakhona babe nokusiphanga izinto zethu.
- 14 Ngoku uyise kaLamonayi wamyalela ukuba ambulale uAmon ngekrele. Waza wamyalela kanjalo ukuba angayi kwilizwe laseMidonayi, kodwa umele abuyele naye kwilizwe lakwaIshmayeli.
- 15 Kodwa uLamonayi wathi kuye: Andisayi kumbulala uAmon, ndingayi kubuyela kwilizwe lakwaIshmayeli, kodwa ndiya kwilizwe laseMidonayi ukuze ndibe nokukhulula abazalwana baka-Amon, kuba ndiyazi ukuba bangamadoda anobulungisa nabaprofeti abangcwele boThixo oyinyani.
- 16 Ngoku akuba uyise wakhe ewavile la mazwi, waba nomsindo ngakuye, waza walirhuthya ikrele lakhe ukuze abe nokumosela awe emhlabeni.
- 17 Kodwa uAmon wema ngaphambili kwaye wathi kuye: Qaphela akusayi kumbulala unyana wakho; nakubeni bekungalunga ngaphezulu ukuba awe kunokuba abaleke, kuba qaphela, uguqukile ezonweni zakhe; kodwa ukuba wena unokuwa ngeli lixa, usemsindweni wakho, umphefumlo wakho awunakusindiswa.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto him whither he was going, for he feared to offend him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his father to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also commanded him that he should not go to the land of Middoni, but that he should return with him to the land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon, neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go to the land of Middoni that I may release the brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him: Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it were better that he should fall than thee, for behold, he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be saved.

- 18 Kwaye kwakhona, kuyimfuneko ukuba uzibambe; ukuba unokumbulala unyana wakho, yena eyindoda emsulwa, igazi lakhe lingakhala ukusuka emhlabeni ukuya kwiNkosi uThixo wakhe, ukuba impindezelo ifike phezu kwakho; kwaye mhlawumbi uphulukane nomphefumlo wakho.
- 19 Ngoku akuba uAmon ewathethile la mazwi kuye, wamphendula, esithi: Ndiyazi okokuba ukuba ndingambulala unyana wam, ndingaba ndiphalaze igazi elimsulwa; kuba nguwe ofune ukumtshabalalisa.
- 20 Waze wasolulela phambili isandla sakhe ukuba abulale uAmon. Kodwa uAmon wamelana nezithonga zakhe, kwaye kanjalo wayibetha ingalo yakhe ukuze angabinako ukuyisebenzisa.
- 21 Ngoku akubona ukumkani ukuba uAmon angambulala, waqalisa ukumbongoza uAmon ukuba abusindise ubomi bakhe.
- 22 Kodwa uAmon waliphakamisa ikrele lakhe, kwaye wathi kuye: Qaphela, ndiya kukosela ngaphandle kokuba uya kundivumela ukuba abazalwana bam babe nokukhutshelwa ngaphandle kwentolongo.
- 23 Ngoku ukumkani, enloyiko lokuba angaphulukana nobomi bakhe, wathi: Ukuba ungandisindisa ndiya kunika nantoni na oya kuyicela, nokude kube sisiqingatha sobukumkani.
- 24 Ngoku xa uAmon ebona ukuba wenze kukumkani ngokomnqweno wakhe, wathi kuye: Ukuba ungavumela ukuba abazalwana bam bakhutshelwe ngaphandle kwentolongo, nokokuba uLamonayi abugcine ubukumkani bakhe, nokokuba ningabi nokungoneliseki nguye, kodwa umvumele ukuba enze ngokweyakhe iminqweno nakuyo nayiphina into ayicingayo, ke ndiya kukusindisa; kungenjalo ndiya kubetha uwe emhlabeni.
- 25 Ngoku akuba uAmon ewathethile la mazwi, ukumkani waqalisa ukugcoba ngenxa yobomi bakhe.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst forbear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an innocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee; and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

26 Kwaye akubona ukuba uAmon akanawo umnqweno wokumtshabalalisa, kwaye akulubona kanjalo uthando olukhulu awayenalo ngonyana wakhe uLamonayi, wakhwankqiswa ngokugqithisileyo, waza wathi: Ngenxa yokuba unqwenele kuphela nje oku, ukuba ndikhulule abazalwana bakho, kwaye ndimvumele unyana wam uLamonayi ukuba abugcine ubukumkani bakhe, qaphela, ndiya kumvumela unyana wam ukuba angabugcina ubukumkani bakhe ukususela ngeli lixa kwaye nangonaphakade; kwaye andisayi kube ndimlawule—

27 Kwaye kanjalo ndiya kukuvumela ukuba abazalwana bakho babe nokukhutshelwa ngaphandle kwentolongo, kwaye wena nabazalwana bakho ningeza kum, ebukumkani bam; kuba ndiya kunqwenela kakhulu ukuba ndinibone. Kuba ukumkani wayekhwanqiswe kakhulu ngamazwi abewathethile, kananjalo ngamazwi abethethwe ngunyana wakhe uLamonayi, ke ngoko wayenqwenela ukuwazi.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon noLamonayi baqhubeka nohambo lwabo oluya ngakwilizwe laseMidonayi. Kwaye uLamonayi wababalwa emehlweni kakumkani welizwe; ke ngoko abazalwana baka-Amon baziswa ngaphambili baphuma entolongweni.

29 Kwaye xa uAmon wathi ehlangane nabo wabalusizi ngokugqithisileyo, kuba qaphelani babeze, kwaye nezikhumba zabo zazidlekile ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yokubotshelwa ngeentambo ezomeleleyo. Kwaye kanjalo babebandezeleke ngendlala, unxano, kwanazo zonke iindidi zeembandezelo; nangona kunjalo baba nomonde kuzo zonke iintlupheko zabo.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

30 Kwaye, njengoko kwenzekile, ibingummiselo wabo ukuba bawele ezandleni zabona bantu baqadeke ngakumbi kwaye nabona bantamo zilukhuni ngakumbi; ke ngoko babe ngafuni ukuwaphulaphula amazwi abo, kwaye babekhuphela ngaphandle, kwaye babethwa, kwaye bebaqhuba ukusuka kwindlu ngendlu, nokusuka kwiindawo ngeendawo, nangokude bayekufika kwilizwe laseMidonayi; baza apho bathatyathwa baza baphoswa entolongweni, baza babotshelwa ngeentambo, baza bagcinwa entolongweni kangangeentsuku ezininzi, baza bahlangulwa nguLamonayi noAmon.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

*Ingxelo yentshumayelo ka-Aron, noMyulakayi, nabazalwana babo, kumaLeymenayithi.*

## Alma 21

- 1 Ngoku bakuba uAmon nabazalwana bakhe bezahlulile emideni yelizwe lamaLeymenayithi, qaphelani uAron waluthabatha uhambo lwakhe olubhekisa ngakwilizwe elalibizwa ngamaLeymenayithi, ngokuba yiYerusalem, belibiza ngelizwe lokuzalwa looyise; kwaye lalikude liqhagamshelana nemida yaseMormoni.
- 2 Ngoku amaLeymenayithi kunye nama-Amalekayithi nabantu baka-Amyuloni babakhe isixeko esikhulu, esasibizwa ngokuba yiYerusalem.
- 3 Ngoku amaLeymenayithi ewodwa nje ayeqaqadeke ngokwaneleyo, kodwa ama-Amalekayithi nama-Amyulonayithi ayesele eqaqadeke ngakumbi; ke ngoko bawabangela amaLeymenayithi ukuba aziqaqadekise iintliziyo zawo, ukuze babalasele ngokomelela kwinkohlakalo nakumasikizi abo.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAron wafika kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, waza kuqala waqalisa ukushumayela kuma-Amalekayithi. Kwaye waqalisa ukushumayela kuwo ezindlwini zawo zesikhungo, kuba babakhe izindlu zesikhungo ngokohlobo lwamaNehore; kuba abaninzi bama-Amalekayithi nama-Amyulonayithi babengabohlobo lwamaNehore.
- 5 Ke ngoko, akungena uAron kwenye yezindlu zabo zesikhungo ukuba ashumayele ebantwini, kwaye njengokuba wayethetha nabo, qaphela kwaphakama umAmalekayithi waza waqalisa ukuphikisana naye, esithi: Yintoni leyo ungqina ngayo? Ingaba uyibonile ingelosi? Kungani iingelosi zingabonakali kuthi? Qaphela ingaba aba bantu abalunganga njengabantu bakho?

*An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.*

## Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

- 6 Uthi kanjalo, ngaphandle kokuba siguquke siya kutshabalala ngokwasemoyeni. Uzazi njani iingcinga neenjongo zeentliziyo zethu? Wazi njani ukuba sinesizathu sokuba siguquke? Usazi njani ukuba thina asingabo abantu abangamalungisa? Qaphela, sakhe iindawo ezingcwele, kwaye siyahlanganisana kunye ukuba sinqule uThixo. Siyakholwa okokuba uThixo uya kubasindisa bonke abantu.
- 7 Ngoku uAron wathi kuye: Uyakholwa okokuba uNyana kaThixo uya kufika akhulule uluntu ezonweni zalo?
- 8 Yaza indoda leyo yathi kuye: Asikholelwa ukuba uyayazi into enjalo. Asizikholelwa ezi zithethe zibubuyatha. Asikholelwa okokuba uyazi ngezinto ezisezayo, singakholelwa nokokuba ooyihlo kananjalo nokokuba oobawo babesazi malunga nezinto ababezithetha, malunga noko kusezayo.
- 9 Ngoku uAron waqalisa ukuzityhila izibhalo kubo malunga nokuza kukaKrestu, kananjalo malunga novuko lwabafileyo, kwaye nokokuba akunakubakho nkululeko yoluntu ngaphandle kokuba kube kungokufa nangeentlungu zikaKrestu, nentlawulelo ngegazi lakhe.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile njengoko wayeqalisa ukuzicacisa ezi zinto kubo baba nomsindo ngakuye, baza baqalisa ukumhleka; baza abafuna ukuwaphulaphula amazwi awayewathetha.
- 11 Ke ngoko, akubona ukuba abafuni ukuwaphulaphula amazwi akhe, wemka waphuma endlwini yabo yesikhungo, waza wagqithela kwidolophana eyayibizwa ngokuba yi-AnayiAntayi, waza apho wafumana uMyulakayi eshumayela ilizwi kubo; kananjalo noAma nabazalwana bakhe. Kwaye baphikisana nabaninzi ngalo ilizwi.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babona ukuba abantu babeya kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, ke ngoko bemka baza bagqithela kwilizwe laseMidonayi. Kwaye baye balishumayela ilizwi kwabaninzi, kwaye bambalwa abakholelwayo kumazwi ababewafundisa.

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

- 13 Nangona kunjalo, uAron negqiza elithile labazalwana bakhe bathatyathwa baza baphoswa entolongweni, yaza intsalela yabo yasaba yaphuma elizweni laseMidonayi yangena kwiingingqi ezaziyingqongile.
- 14 Baza abo babephoswe entolongweni bahlungiswa zizinto ezininzi, baza bahlungulwa ngesandla sikaLamonayi noAmon, baza badliswa kwaye bombeswa.
- 15 Kwaye babheka phambili kwakhona ukuya kuvakalisa ilizwi, kwaye njalo babehlangulwa okokuqala ukuphuma entolongweni; kwaye njalo babandezeleka.
- 16 Kwaye babheka phambili naphina apho babekhokelelwa khona nguMoya weNkosi, beshumayela ilizwi likaThixo kuzo zonke izindlu zesikhungo zama-Amalekayithi, okanye kuzo zonke iindibano zamaLeymenayithi apho babevunyelwa khona.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaqalisa ukubasikelela, kangangokuba bazisa abaninzi kulwazi lwenyaniso; ewe, baye baqinisekisa abaninzi ngezono zabo, kwaye nangezithethe zooyise, ezaye zingalungile.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon noLamonayi babuya kwilizwe laseMidonayi baya kwilizwe likaIshmayeli, elaye ililizwe lelifa labo.
- 19 Waza ukumkani uLamonayi akamvumela uAmon ukuba amsebenzele, okanye abe sisicaka sakhe.
- 20 Kodwa wenza ukuba kubekho izindlu zesikhungo ezakhiwayo kwilizwe likaIshmayeli; kwaye wenza okokuba abantu bakhe, okanye abantu ababephantsi kolawulo lwakhe, bazihlanganise kunye.
- 21 Kwaye waye wagcoba ngenxa yabo, kwaye waye wabafundisa izinto ezininzi. Kwaye waye wavakalisa kubo kunjalo okokuba babengabantu ababephantsi kwakhe, nokokuba babengabantu abakhululekileyo, nokokuba babekhululekile kwingcinezelo yokumkani, uyise wakhe; kuba uyise wakhe umnikile ukuba abe nokulawula phezu kwabantu ababekwilizwe likaIshmayeli, nakulo lonke ilizwe elibangqongileyo.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.



- 22 Kananjalo wavakalisa kubo okokuba babenayo inkululeko yokunqula iNkosi uThixo wabo ngokweminqweno yabo, nakuyiphina indawo ababekuyo, ukuba yayikwilizwe elaliphantsi kolawulo lukakumkani uLamonayi.
- 23 Kwaye uAmon waye washumayela kubo abantu bakakumkani uLamonayi; kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wabafundisa zonke izinto malunga nezinto eziphathelele nobulungisa. Kwaye waye wabayala imihla ngemihla, ngayo yonke inkuthalo; baza balinyamekela ilizwi lakhe, kwaye babenenzondelelo ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

## Alma 22

- 1 Ngoku, njengoko uAmon wayebafundisa abantu bakaLamonayi ngawo onke amaxesha, siza kubuyela kwingxelo ka-Aron nabazalwana bakhe; kuba emva kokuba emkile kulo ilizwe laseMidonayi wakhokelelwa nguMoya kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, kwanakuyo indlu kakumkani owayephezu kwalo lonke ilizwe ngaphandle nje kwelizwe likaIshmayeli; kwaye wayenguyise kaLamonayi.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waya kuye ngaphakathi ebhotweni likakumkani, kunye nabazalwana bakhe, waza waqubuda phambi kokumkani, waza wathi kuye: Qaphela, Owu kumkani, singabazalwana baka-Amon, lowo uthe wamkhulula entolongweni.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, Owu kumkani, ukuba ungabusindisa ubomi bethu, siya kuba zizicaka zakho. Waza ukumkani wathi kubo: Phakamani, kuba ndiza kubunikela kuni ubomi benu, kwaye andisayi kunivumela ukuba nibe zizicaka zam; kodwa ndiza kuninyanzelisa okokuba nindinike uncedo; kuba bendinokukhathazeka nje okuthile engqondweni yam ngenxa yesisa nobukhulu bamazwi omntakwenu uAmon; kwaye ndinqwenela ukwazi isizathu sokuba kungani engenyukanga waphuma kunye nani eMidonayi.
- 4 Waza uAron wathi kuye ukumkani: Qaphela, uMoya weNkosi umbizele kwenye indlela; uye kulo ilizwe likaIshmayeli, ukuya kufundisa abantu bakaLamonayi.
- 5 Ngoku ukumkani wathi kubo: Yintoni le niyithethileyo malunga noMoya weNkosi? Qaphelani, le yinto endikhathazayo kanye.
- 6 Kananjalo, yintoni le yayithethwa nguAmon—Ukuba niya kuguquka niya kusindiswa, kwaye ukuba aniyi kuguquka, niya kukhutshelwa ngaphandle ngomhla wokugqibela?
- 7 Waza uAron wamphendula kwaye wathi kuye: Uyakholelwa na okokuba kukho uThixo? Waza ukumkani wathi: Ndiyazi okokuba ama-Amalekayithi athi kukho uThixo, kwaye ndiwavumele ukuba akhe izindlu zesikhungo, ukuze babe nokuzihlanganisa kunye ukuba baqubude kuye. Kwaye ukuba ngoku nithi kukho uThixo, qaphelani ndiza kukholelwa.

## Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

- 8 Kwaye ngoku akuba uAron ekuvile oko, intliziyo yakhe yaqalisa ukugcoba, waza wathi: Qaphela, ngokwenene njengokuba uphila, Owu kumkani, ukhona uThixo.
- 9 Waza ukumkani wathi: Ingaba uThixo ngula Moya onaMandla owakhupha oobawo kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem?
- 10 Waza uAron wathi kuye: Ewe, ungula Moya onaMandla, kwaye wadala zonke izinto kunye ezulwini nasemhlabeni. Uyakukholelwa oku?
- 11 Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiyakholelwa okokuba uMoya onaMandla wadala zonke izinto, kwaye ndinqwenela okokuba nindixelele malunga nazo zonke ezi zinto, kwaye ndiya kuwakholelwa amazwi enu.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa uAron ebona okokuba ukumkani uya kuwakholelwa amazwi akhe, waqalisa ukususela ekudalweni kuka-Adam, emfundela izibhalo ukumkani—indlela uThixo awadala ngayo umntu ngokomfanekiso wakhe, nokokuba uThixo wamnika imiyalelo, nokokuba ngenxa yolwaphulo-mthetho, umntu wawa.
- 13 Kwaye uAron waye wazicacisa kuye izibhalo ukususela ekudalweni kuka-Adam, esandlala ukuwa komntu phambi kwakhe, nemo yabo yasenyameni kananjalo necebo lenkululeko, elalilungiselelwe ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, ngoKrestu, lilungiselelwa nabaphina abaya kuthi bakholelwe egameni lakhe.
- 14 Kwaye ukusukela oko abantu bathi bawa abanako ukuzifumanela nantoni na ngokukokwabo; kodwa iimbandezelo nokufa kukaKrestu kuya zihlawulela izono zabo, ngokholo nenguquko, kwaye njalo-njalo; nokokuba wawaqhawula amakhamandela okufa, ukuze ingcwaba lingabi naloyiso, nokokuba ulwamvila lokufa lumele luginywe ngamathemba obuqaqawuli; kwaye uAron waye wazicacisa zonke ezi zinto kuye ukumkani.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAron ezicacisile ezi zinto kuye, ukumkani wathi: Ndingenza ntoni ukuze ndibe nokubufumana obu bomi banaphakade othe wathetha ngabo? Ewe, ndingenza ntoni ukuze ndibe nokuzalwa ngokukaThixo, ndibe nokuncothulwa lo moya ukhohlakeleyo uphume esifubeni sam, kwaye ndamkele uMoya wakhe, ukuze ndibe nokuzaliswa luvuyo, ukuze ndingabi nakukhutshelwa ngaphandle ngomhla wokugqibela? Qaphelani, watsho, ndiya kuncama konke endinako, ewe, ndiya kubushiya ubukumkani bam, ukuze ndibe nokufumana olu vuyo lukhulu.
- 16 Kodwa uAron wathi kuye: Ukuba uyayinqwenela le nto, ukuba uya kuqubuda phambi kukaThixo, ewe, ukuba uya kuguquka kuzo zonke izono zakho, uze uqubude phambi kukaThixo, kwaye ulibize igama lakhe ngokholo, ukholelwa ukuba uya kufumana oko ukunqwenelayo, ke uya kulifumana ithemba elo ulinqwenelayo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAron ewathethile la mazwi, ukumkani waye waqubuda phambi kweNkosi, ngamadolo akhe; ewe, kwanokude azithi natya phezu komhlaba, waza wadanduluka ngamandlakazi, esithi:
- 18 Owu Thixo, uAron undixelele okokuba kukho uThixo; kwaye ukuba kukho uThixo, kwaye ukuba unguye uThixo, ungazenza ukuba waziwe kum, kwaye ndiya kuziyeka zonke izono zam ukuze ndikwazi, nokokuba ndibe nokuvuswa ekufeni, kwaye ndisindiswe ngomhla wokugqibela. Kwaye ngoku akuba ukumkani ewathethile la mazwi, wahlaseleka ngokungathi wayefile.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izicaka zakhe zabaleka kwaye zaxelela ukumkanikazi konke okwenzeke kuye ukumkani. Waza wangena ngaphakathi kukumkani; waza akumbona elele ngokungathi wayefile, kananjalo noAron nabazalwana bakhe bemi ngokungathi babengunobangela wokuwa kwakhe, waba nomsindo kubo, waza wayalela ukuba izicaka zakhe okanye izicaka zikakumkani, zibathabathe kwaye zibabulale.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

- 20 Ngoku izicaka zaziwubonile unobangela wokuwa kukakumkani, ke ngoko azizange zalinga ukubeka zandla zazo kuAron nabazalwana bakhe; baza bamcenga ukumkanikazi besithi: Kungani ukuba usiyalele ukuba siwabulale la madoda, ekubeni sibonile okokuba omnye wabo unamandlakazi kunathi sonke? Ke ngoko siya kuwa phambi kwabo.
- 21 Ngoku akulubona ukumkanikazi uloyiko lwezicaka zakhe naye kanjalo waqalisa ukoyika ngokugqithisileyo, hleze kubekho ububi obunokuza phezu kwakhe. Waza waziya lele izicaka zakhe ukuba zihambe kwaye zibize abantu, ukuze babe nokumbulala uAron nabazalwana bakhe.
- 22 Ngoku akukubona uAron ukuzimisela kukakumkanikazi, yena, kanjalo esazi ngokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabantu, waba noloyiko lokuba hleze isihlwele sihlanganisane kunye, kuze kubekho impikiswano enkulu nesiphazamiso phakathi kwabo; ke ngoko wasolula isandla sakhe waza wamphakamisa ukumkani emhlabeni, waza wathi kuye: Yima. Waza wema ngeenyawo zakhe, wafumana amandla akhe.
- 23 Ngoku oku kwenzeka ekhona ukumkanikazi nabaninzi kuzo izicaka. Baza bathi bakukubona oku bamangaliswa kakhulu, baza baqalisa ukoyika. Waza ukumkani wema ngaphambili, waza waqalisa ukubalungiselela. Kwaye waye wabalungiselela, kangangokuba indlu yakhe iphela yaguqukela eNkosini.
- 24 Ngoku kwakukho isihlwele esasihlanganisene kunye ngenxa yomyalelo kakumkanikazi, kwaye kwaqalisa ukubakho ukumbombozela okokhulu phakathi kwabo ngenxa ka-Aron nabazalwana bakhe.
- 25 Kodwa ukumkani wema ngaphambili phakathi kwabo waza wabanika uncedo. Kwaye bazoliswa ngakuAron nakwabo babenaye.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akubona ukumkani ukuba abantu bazolile, wabangela ukuba uAron nabazalwana bakhe beme ngaphambili embindini wesihlwele, nokokuba bashumayele ilizwi kubo.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

- 27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wathumela isibhengezo kulo lonke ilizwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe ababekulo lonke ilizwe lakhe, ababekuzo zonke iingingqi ezingqongileyo, elalenze umda kwanokuya kulo ulwandle, ngasempuma kwaye nasentshona, nezazahlulwe kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla sisiqwenga esimxinwa sentlango, esasibaleka ukusuka kulwandle olusempuma nakulo ulwandle olusentshona, nasekurhangqweni kwemida yonxweme yolwandle, nemida yentlango eyaye ingasemantla ngakulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, sinqumla imida yaseManti, ngakuyo intloko yomlambo iTsidon, sithathela ukusuka empuma ukuya ngase-ntshona—kwaye ayohlulwe njalo amaLeymenayithi namaNifayithi.
- 28 Ngoku, abo babengabona bonqena ngakumbi bamaLeymenayithi babehlala entlango, kwaye behlala ezintenti; kwaye babenabele kanye entlango entshona, kulo ilizwe likaNifayi; ewe, kanaanjalo entshona yelizwe laseZarahemla, kuyo imida engaselunxwemeni lolwandle, kwaye nasentshona kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, kuyo indawo yooyise yelifa labo lokuqala, kwaye njalo lenza umda ngasecaleni konxweme lolwandle.
- 29 Kanaanjalo kwakukho amaLeymenayithi amaninzi empuma ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle, apho amaNifayithi ayebaqhubele khona. Kwaye njalo amaNifayithi ayephantse arhangqwa ngamaLeymenayithi; nangona kunjalo amaNifayithi ayeyithabathile ayibanga yonke imimandla engasemantla elizwe elinxuse intlango, kwintloko yomlambo iTsidon, ukusuka empuma ukuya entshona, lirhangqe ngakwicala lasentlango; emantla, ngokude beze kulo ilizwe ababelibiza ngokuba yiNdyebo.
- 30 Kwaye lalinxuse phezu kwelizwe ababe libiza ngokuba yiNkangala, ekubeni lona lingama kakhulu ngasemantla ngokude lingene kulo ilizwe elalimiwe ngabantu baza batshatyalaliswa, abantu abamathambo abo esithethileyo ngawo, elalifunyenwe ngabantu baseZarahemla, ekubeni yona iyindawo yokuqala yokufika kwabo.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

31 Kwaye besuka apho benyukela kwintlango esemazantsi. Njalo ke ilizwe elingasemantla labizwa ngokuba yiNkangala, laza ilizwe elingasemazantsi labizwa ngokuba yiNdyebo, ekubeni lona ke liyintlango ezaliswe lulo lonke uhlobo lwezilo zasandle zalo lonke udidi, inxalenye yazo iyileyo yayize isuka kulo ilizwe elingasentla ikhangela ukutya.

32 Kwaye ngoku, yaye ingumganyana wosuku olunye nesiqingatha kuphela sohambo kumNifayithi, emgceci weNdyebo nelizwe iNkangala, ukusuka kulwandle lwasempuma ukuya kulwandle lwasentshona; kwaye njalo ilizwe likaNifayithi nelizwe laseZarahemla ayephantse arhangqwa ngamanzi, ekubeni apho kukho intamo encinane yomhlaba phakathi kwelizwe elingasemantla nelizwe elingasemazantsi.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aye alima ilizwe iNdyebo, nokusuka empuma ukuya kulwandle lwasentshona, aza njalo amaNifayithi kubulumko bawo, kunye nabalindi nemikhosi yawo, bawarhangqa amaLeymenayithi ngasezantsi, ukuze ngaloo ndlela angabinalubango ngasentla, ukuze angabinako ukugqithela kwilizwe elingasemantla.

34 Ke ngoko amaLeymenayithi ayengasenakube kuphela nabango kwilizwe likaNifayithi, nentlango eyayibarhangqile. Ngoku oku yayibubulumko kumaNifayithi—njengoko amaLeymenayithi ayezintshaba kubo, babengayi kuva iimbandezelo macala onke, kwaye kanjalo nokuba babenelizwe apho babenokusabela khona, ngokweminqweno yabo.

35 Kwaye ngoku mna, emva kokuba ndithethe oku, ndibuyela kwakhona kwingxelo ka-Amon noAron, uOmna noHimnani, nabazalwana babo.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

## Alma 23

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wathumela isibhengezo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe, sokokuba bangazibeki izandla zabo kuAmon, okanye uAron, okanye uOmna, okanye uHimnayi, nakowuphi na owabazalwana babo oya kubheka phambili eshumayela ilizwi likaThixo, nakuyiphi na indawo abaya kuba kuyo, nakuwuphi na ummandla welizwe labo.
- 2 Ewe, wathumela ummiselo phakathi kwabo, wokokuba maze bangazibeki izandla zabo kubo ukuba bababophelele, okanye ukubaphosa entolongweni; bangabatshiceli, okanye bababethe, okanye babakhuphele ngaphandle kwezindlu zabo zesikhungo, okanye bababethe ngeziniya; bangabaxulubi ngamatye, kodwa nje bamele babanelungelo elikhululekileyo lokungena ezindlwini zabo, kwaye kanjalo neetempile zabo, nezindlu zabo ezingcwele.
- 3 Kwaye njalo babenako ukubheka phambili baze bashumayele ilizwi ngokweminqweno yabo, kuba ukumkani wayeguqukele eNkosini, nendlu yakhe iphela; ke ngoko wathumela isibhengezo sakhe kulo lonke ilizwe kubo abantu bakhe, ukuze ilizwi likaThixo lingabi nasiphazamiso, kodwa libe nokuhambela phambili kulo lonke ilizwe, ukuze abantu bakhe babe nokuqinisekiswa malunga nezithethe ezikhohlakeleyo zooyise, kwaye nokokuba babe nokuqinisekiswa okokuba bonke babengabazalwana, nokokuba kwakungafuneki ukuba babulale, nakurhwaphiliza, nakuba, nakukrexeza, nakwenza naluphi na uhlobo lwenkohlakalo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba ukumkani esithumele esi sibhengezo, sokokuba uAron nabazalwana bakhe babheke phambili besuke kwisixeko baye kwesinye, nakwenye indlu yokunqula ukuya kwenye, bemisa amabandla, kwaye bemisela ababingeleli nootitshala kulo lonke ilizwe phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, ukuba bashumayele kwaye bafundise ilizwi likaThixo phakathi kwawo; baza njalo baqalisa ukuba nempumelelo enkulu.

## Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.



- 5 Baza abangamawaka baziswa kulwazi lweNkosi, ewe, amawaka aziswa ukuba akholelwe kuzo izithethe zamaNifayithi; kwaye bafundiswa ngeembali neziprofetho ezazinikezelwe ukwehla kwanokude zize kwixesha elimiyo.
- 6 Kwaye ngokuqiniseke njengokuba iNkosi iphila, kuqiniseke ngokunjalo ngobuninzi babo abakholwayo, okanye ngobuninzi babo abaziswa kulwazi lwenyaniso, ngokushumayela kuka-Amon nabazalwana bakhe, ngokomoya wesityhilelo nowesiprofetho, namandla kaThixo esebenza imimangaliso kubo—ewe, ndithi kuwe, njengoko iNkosi iphila, ngobuninzi bawo amaLeymenayithi athi akholelwa kwintshumayelo yabo, aza aguqukela eNkosini, akazange akreqe.
- 7 Kuba aba ngabantu abangamalungisa; aye azibeka phantsi izikhali zemvukelo yabo, ukuze angabi saphinda alwe ngokuchasene noThixo kwakhona, nangokuchasene nabo nabaphi na abangabazalwana bawo.
- 8 Ngoku, aba ngabo baguqukela eNkosini:
- 9 Abantu bamaLeymenayithi ababekulo ilizwe likaIshmayeli;
- 10 Kananjalo abangabantu bamaLeymenayithi ababekulo ilizwe laseMidonayi;
- 11 Kananjalo, abangabantu bamaLeymenayithi ababesixekweni sikaNifayithi;
- 12 Kananjalo abangabantu bamaLeymenayithi ababekulo ilizwe laseShayilom, kwaye nababesizweni laseShemloni, nasesixekweni sikaLemuweli, nasesixekweni sika Shimnilam.
- 13 Kwaye la ngamagama ezixeko zamaLeymenayithi awayeguqukele eNkosini; kwaye aba ngabo bazibeka phantsi izikhali zemvukelo yabo, ewe, zonke izikhali zabo zemfazwe; kwaye bonke babengamaLeymenayithi.
- 14 Kwaye ama-Amalekayithi ayengaguqukanga, ngaphandle nje komnye kuphela; nabo nabaphi na abama-Amyulonayithi; kodwa baye baziqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, kananjalo neentliziyo zamaLeymenayithi kwelo cala lelizwe naphina apho ayehlala khona, ewe, kwaye nazo zonke iidolophana zabo kwaye nazo zonke izixeko zabo.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

- 15 Ke ngoko, sizixelile zonke izixeko zamaLeymenayithi awathi kuzo aguquka kwaye eza kulwazi lwenyaniso, aza aguquka.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani nabo babeguqukile babenqwenela okokuba babenegama, ukuze ngalo babe nokwahluka kubazalwana babo; ke ngoko ukumkani wacebisana kunye noAron nabaninzi bababingeleli babo, malunga negama emabalithabathele kubo, ukuze babenokwahluka.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bazibiza amagama abo ngokuba ngama-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi; kwaye babebizwa ngeli gama kwaye bengasabizwa ngokuba ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 18 Kwaye baqalisa ukuba ngabantu abakhutheleyo; ewe, kwaye babenobuhlobo kunye namaNifayithi; ke ngoko, baye bavula imbalelwano kunye nabo, saza isiqalekiso sikaThixo asaphinda sibalandele.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

## Alma 24

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ama-Amalekayithi nama-Amyulonayithi namaLeymenayithi awaye ekulo ilizwe lase-Amyuloni, kananjalo nakulo ilizwe laseHelam, kwaye nabo babekulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, kwaye lilonke, kulo lonke ilizwe elirhangqileyo, ababengaguqukanga kwaye bengalithabathanga igama lika-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi, bavuselelwa ngama-Amalekayithi nangama-Amyulonayithi emsindweni ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo.
- 2 Yaza intiyo yabo yabanzulu ngokugqithisileyo ngokuchasene nabo, kangangokude baqalise ukuvukela ngokuchasene nokumkani wabo, kangangokuba babengamfuni ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo; ke ngoko, bathabatha izikhali ngokuchasene nabantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi.
- 3 Ngoku ukumkani wabunikela ubukumkani phezu konyana wakhe, waza wambiza ngegama elinguAntayi-Nifayi-Lihayi.
- 4 Waza ukumkani wafa kanye ngaloo nyaka athi amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukwenza amalungiselelo emfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu bakaThixo.
- 5 Ngoku akuba uAmon nabazalwana bakhe nabo bonke abo babenyuke kunye naye bebona amalungiselelo amaLeymenayithi okutshabalalisa abazalwana babo, beza phambili kulo ilizwe laseMidiyan, waza apho uAmon wahlangana nabo bonke abazalwana bakhe; baza ukusuka apho beza kulo ilizwe likaIshmayeli ukuze babe nokubamba ibhunga kunye noLamonayi kananjalo kunye nomntakwabo uAntayi-Nifayi-Lihayi, lokuba bangenza ntoni na ukuze bazikhusele kumaLeymenayithi.
- 6 Ngoku kwakungekho namnye umntu phakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababeguqukele eNkosini owayefuna ukuthabatha izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo; hayi, babengafuni kwanokude benze nawaphina amalungiselelo emfazwe; ewe, kananjalo nokumkani wabo wabayalela ukuba bangakhe.

## Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

- 7 Ngoku, la ngawo amazwi awathi wawathetha ebantwini malunga nalo mba: Ndiyambulela uThixo wam, bantu bam abathandekayo, ukuba uThixo wethu onamandlakazi ethe ngokulunga wathumela aba bazalwana bethu, amaNifayithi, kuthi ukuza kushumayela kuthi, nokusiqinisekisa ngezithethe zoobawo abakhohlakeleyo.
- 8 Kwaye qaphelani, ndiyambulela uThixo wam omkhulu kuba esinike isuntswana loMoya wakhe ukuba uthambise iintliziyi zethu, ukuze sivule imbalelwano kunye naba bazalwana, amaNifayithi.
- 9 Kwaye qaphelani, ndiyambulela kananjalo uThixo wam, ukuba ngokuvula le mbalelwano siye saqinisekiswa ngezono zethu, nangokubulala okuninzi esikwenzileyo.
- 10 Kwaye ndiyambulela kanjalo uThixo wam, ewe, uThixo wam omkhulu, ukuba esivumele ukuba sibe nokuguquka kwezi zinto, kananjalo nokokuba esixolele ngazo ezo zono zethu zininzi nokubulala esithe sakwenza, waza wabususa ubutyala ezintliziyweni zethu, ngokusivuzisa ngoNyana wakhe.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam, njengokuba ibikuko konke ebesinako ukukwenza (njengoko besingabona balahleke ngaphezu kwalo lonke uluntu) ukuguquka kuzo zonke izono zethu kwaye nangokubulala okuninzi esikwenzileyo, kwaye nokwenza ukuba uThixo azisuse ezintliziyweni zethu, kuba bekukonke esinako ukukwenza ukuze siguquke ngokwaneleyo phambi koThixo ukuze alisuse ichaphaza ethu—
- 12 Ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandeka kakhulu, njengokuba uThixo ewasusile amachaphaza ethu, kwaye namakrele ethu ebengezela, ke masingabuyise siwangcolise amakrele ethu ngegazi labazalwana bethu.
- 13 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi, masiwagcineni amakrele ethu ukuze angangcoliseki ngegazi labazalwana bethu; kuba mhlawumbi, ukuba singawangcolisa amakrele ethu kwakhona awangeze aphinde ahlanjwe abengezele ngegazi loNyana kaThixo wethu omkhulu, eliya kuphalazelwa intlawulelo yezono zethu.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

14 Kwaye uThixo omkhulu ube nenceba kuthi, kwaye wazenza ezi zinto ukuba zazeke kuthi ukuze singabinakutshabalala; ewe, kwaye wenze okokuba zazeke ezi zinto kuthi kwa ngaphambili, ngenxa yokuba uyayithanda imiphefumlo yethu njengokuba ebathanda nabantwana bethu; ke ngoko, ngenceba yakhe uthi asivelele ngeengelosi zakhe, ukuze icebo losindiso libe nokwaziswa kuthi ngokunjalo nakuzo izizukulwana zelixa elizayo.

15 Owu, unjani ukuba nenceba uThixo wethu! Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ukususela kangangoko sinokwenza ukuze amachaphaza ethu asuswe kuthi, namakrele ethu enziwe akhazimle, masiwafihle kude ukuze abe nokugcinwa ekhazimla, njengobungqina kuThixo wethu ngomhla wokugqibela, okanye ngomhla esiya kuziswa ukuba sime phambi kwakhe ukuba sigwetywe, okokuba asiwangcolisanga amakrele ethu egazini labazalwana bethu okokoko wanikezela ngelizwi lakhe kuthi waza wasihlambulula ngalo.

16 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ukuba abazalwana bethu bafuna ukusitshabalalisa, qaphelani, siya kuwafihla kude amakrele ethu, ewe, siya kude siwangcwabe nzulu emhlabeni, ukuze abe nokugcinwa ekhazimla, njengobungqina bokuba asizange siwasebenzise, ngomhla wokugqibela; kwaye ukuba abazalwana bethu bayasitshabalalisa, qaphelani, siya kuya kuThixo wethu kwaye siya kusindiswa.

17 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba ukumkani enze isiphelo sezi ntetha, kwaye bonke abantu behlangene kunye, bawathabatha amakrele abo, nazo zonke izikhali ezazisetyenziselwa ukuphalaza igazi lomntu, baye bazingcwabela nzulu emhlabeni.

18 Kwaye oku bakwenza, ngenxa yokuba kwimbono yabo ibubungqina kuThixo, kananjalo nakubantu, bokuba abasokuze baphinde basebenzise izikhali kwakhona ekuphalazeni igazi lomntu; kwaye oku bakwenza, befunga kwaye benqophisana noThixo, okokuba banokuphalaza igazi labazalwana babo baya kuncama obabo ubomi; kwaye kunokuba bathabathe kumzalwana baya kunikela kuye; kwaye kunokuba bachithe imihla yabo ebuvileni baya kusebenza ngenkuthalo ngezandla zabo.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

- 19 Kananjalo siyabona okokuba, xa amaLeymenayithi ebesiziswa ekukholweni nasekwazini inyaniso, aqina, kwaye abeya kunyamezela kude kube sekufeni kunokuba enze isono; kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba azingcwaba izikhali zawo zoxolo, okanye azingcwaba izikhali zemfazwe, ngenxa yoxolo.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi, enza amalungiselelo emfazwe, kwaye enyukela kulo ilizwe likaNifayi ngenjongo yokutshabalalisa ukumkani, nokubeka omnye endaweni yakhe, kananjalo neyokutshabalalisa abantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi bangabikho elizweni.
- 21 Ngoku abantu bakubona ukuba ayesiza ngokuchasene nabo baphuma ukuya kuhlangana nawo, baza bazithi natya phambi kwawo emhlabeni, baza baqalisa ukulibiza igama leNkosi; kwaye njalo babe kule mo xa amaLeymenayithi eqalisa ukubahlasela, aza aqalisa nokubabulala ngekrele.
- 22 Kwaye njalo bengahlangani nankcaso, baye babulala iwaka elinesihlanu labo; kwaye siyazi okokuba basikelelekile, kuba bahambile ukuya kuhlala kunye noThixo wabo.
- 23 Ngoku akubona amaLeymenayithi okokuba abazalwana bawo awesabi ekreleni, engaguqukeli nabucala ngakwisandla sokunene okanye kwesokhohlo, kodwa nje babelala phantsi baze batshabalale, kwaye bambonge uThixo kwanakweso senzo kanye sokutshabalala phantsi kwekrele—
- 24 Ngoku akubona oku amaLeymenayithi aye azibamba ekubabulaleni; kwaye babebaninzi abantliziyo zadumbayo ngaphakathi kwawo ngenxa yabo babazalwana babo ababewe phantsi kwekrele, kuba baguquka ngezinto ababezenzile.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baziphosa phantsi izikhali zabo zemfazwe, kwaye abafuna ukuphinda bazithabathe kwakhona, kuba babehlabekile ngenxa yokubulala ababekwenzile; beza phantsi kwananjengabo bazalwana babo, bexhomekeke kwiinceba zabo bangalo zabo zaziphakanyiselwe ukuba bababulale.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaThixo ngaloo mhla bamanyana nenani elingaphezulu kunelo lababuleweyo; kwaye abo babebulewe babengabantu abangamalungisa, ke ngoko asinasizathu sokuthandabuza okokuba basindiswa.
- 27 Kwaye kwakungekho mntu ukhohlakeleyo owayebulewe phakathi kwabo; kodwa babengaphezulu kwewaka abaziswa kulwazi lwenyaniso; njalo ke siyabona okokuba iNkosi isebenza ngeendlela ezininzi ekusindisweni kwabantu bayo.
- 28 Ngoku elona nani likhulu kakhulu lamaLeymenayithi athi abulala abaninzi kangako babazalwana babo babengama-Amalekayithi nama-Amyulonayithi, elona nani likhulu kakhulu labo babengabohlobo lwamaNehore.
- 29 Ngoku, phakathi kwabo bazimanya nabantu beNkosi, kwakungekho nabaphi ababengama-Amalekayithi okanye ama-Amyulonayithi, okanye ababengabohlobo lukaNehore, kodwa babeyinzala ethe ngqo kaLeymeni noLemuweli.
- 30 Kwaye njalo sinokuqonda ngokucacileyo, okokuba emva kokuba isizwe sasikhe sakhanyiselwa ngoMoya kaThixo, kwaye saba nolwazi olukhulu ngezinto eziphathelele kubulungisa, saza ke sawela esonweni nasekwaphuleni umthetho, saqaqadeka ngakumbi, kwaye njalo imo yaso ibe ngaphezulu kunokuba ngesingazange sazazi ezi zinto.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

## Alma 25

- 1 Kwaye qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba loo maLeymenayithi abanomsindo ngakumbi ngenxa yokuba ebulele abazalwana bawo, ke ngoko bafungela impindezelo phezu kwamaNifayithi; kwaye ababanga baphinde bazame ukubabulala abantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi ngelo lixa.
- 2 Kodwa bayithabatha imikhosi yabo baza bawelela ngaphaya kwimida yelizwe laseZarahemla, baza bahlasela abantu ababekulo ilizwe laseAmonihah kwaye babatshabalalisa.
- 3 Baza emva koko, baba namadabi amaninzi kunye namaNifayithi, awathi kuwo aqhutywa kwaye abulawa.
- 4 Kwaye phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi awayebulewe kwakukho phantse yonke imbewu ka-Amyuloni nabazalwana bakhe, ababengababingeleli bakaNowa, kwaye babebulewe ngezandla zamaNifayithi;
- 5 Yaza intsalela, ekubeni yasabela kwintlango esempuma, kwaye nasekubeni yayiphange amandla okulawula negunya phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, yabangela ukuba amaLeymenayithi amaninzi afe ngomlilo ngenxa yokholo lwawo—
- 6 Kuba amaninzi awo, emva kokuva intlungu yokulahlekelwa okukhulu neembandezelo ezininzi kangako, aqalisa ukuvuseleleka ekukhumbuleni amazwi awathi uAron nabazalwana bakhe bawashumayela kuwo elizweni lawo; ke ngoko aqalisa ukungazikholelwa izithethe zooyise, nokukholelwa eNkosini, nokokuba yanika amandla amakhulu kumaNifayithi; kwaye njalo kwabakho amaninzi awo aguqukayo entlango.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abo balawuli ababeyintsalela yabantwana baka-Amyuloni bababangela ukuba babulawe, ewe, bonke abo babekhohlelwa kwezi zinto.
- 8 Ngoku olu felo-nkolo lwabangela ukuba abaninzi babazalwana babo mabavuseleleke emsindweni; kwaza kwaqalisa imbambano entlango; aza amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukuyizingela imbewu ka-Amyuloni nabazalwana bakhe baza baqalisa ukuyibulala; yaza yasabela entlango esempumalanga.

## Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.



- 9 Kwaye qaphela bayazingelwa nangalo mhla ngamaLeymenayithi. Njalo amazwi ka-Abhinadayi enzeka, awathi wawathetha malunga nembewu yababingeleli abambangela ukuba eve iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo.
- 10 Kuba wathi kubo: Eniya kuthi nikwenze kum kuya kuba ngumqondiso wezinto ezisezayo.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku uAbhinadayi wayengowokuqala owathi weva iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo ngenxa yokholo lwakhe kuThixo; ngoku oku kuko awayesingisele kuko, ukuba abaninzi bamele beve iintlungu zokufa ngomlilo, njengokohlobo naye ave iintlungu ngalo.
- 12 Kwaye wayethe kubabingeleli bakaNowa okokuba imbewu yabo iya kubangela ukuba abaninzi babulawe, ngohlobo olunjengaye, nokokuba bamele ukusasazwa kude kwaye babulawe, kwananjengokuba imvu engenaye umalusi iqhutywa ize ibulawe zizilo zasendle; kwaye ngoku qaphelani, la mazwi aqinisekisiwe, kuba babeqhutywa ngamaLeymenayithi, kwaye babezingelwa, kwaye babebethwa.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebonile okokuba awanakho ukuwongamela amaNifayithi abuyela kwakhona kwelabo ilizwe; baza abaninzi babo bezokuhlala kulo ilizwe likaIshmayeli nelizwe likaNifayi, baza bazimanya nabantu bakaThixo, ababengabantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi.
- 14 Kwaye nabo kanjalo baye bazingcwaba izikhali zabo zemfazwe, njengokohlobo ababenze ngalo abazalwana babo, kwaye baqalisa ukuba ngabantu abangamalungisa; baye bahamba ngeendlela zeNkosi, kwaye bakuqwalasela ukuyigcina imiyalelo yayo nemimiselo yayo.
- 15 Ewe, kwaye baye bawugcina umthetho kaMoses; kuba kwakuyimfuneko ukuba bamele bawugcine umthetho kaMoses okwangoku, kuba wawungekazaliseki wonke. Kodwa nangona benomthetho kaMoses, baye bakhangela phambili ekuzeni kukaKrestu, bewuthabatha umthetho kaMoses ngokuba ngumqondiso wokuza kwakhe, kwaye bekholelwa ekubeni kufuneka bezigcinile ezo zenzo zibonakalayo kude kube lixesha lokuba kumele atyhilwe kubo.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 Ngoku babengacingi ukuba usindiso lweza ngomthetho kaMoses; kodwa umthetho kaMoses waye wasebenza ukulomeleza ukholo lwabo kuKrestu; kwaye njalo baye baligcina ithemba ngokholo, elikhokelela kusindiso lwanaphakade, bekholose ngomoya wesiprofetho, owathetha ngezo zinto ezisezayo.

17 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, uAmon, noAron, no-Omna, noHimnayi, nabazalwana babo baye bagcoba ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yempumelelo ababenayo phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, bebona okokuba iNkosi ibanike ngokwemithandazo yabo, nokokuba iliqinisekisile kanjalo ilizwi layo kubo kuyo yonke inkcukacha.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

## Alma 26

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, la ngamazwi ka-Amon kubazalwana bakhe, athetheka ngolu hlobo: Bantakwethu nabazalwana bam, qaphelani ndithi kuni, sinesizathu esingakanani na sokugcoba; ukuba sasinako ukucinga xa sasiqala ukusuka elizweni laseZarahemla okokuba uThixo ngeweyesinike ezinkulu kangaka na iintsikelelo?
- 2 Kwaye ngoku, ndiyabuza, ziintsikelelo zini na azithobe phezu kwethu? Ningatsho?
- 3 Qaphelani, ndiza kuniphendulela; kuba abazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi, ayesebumnyameni, ewe, nakweyona nzonzobila imnyama, kodwa qaphelani, bangaphi na kubo abazise ukuze bakubone ukukhanya okumangalisayo kukaThixo! Kwaye le yintsikelelo ethe yathotywa phezu kwethu, ukuba sithe senziwa izixhobo ezandleni zikaThixo ukuphumeza lo msebenzi mkhulu.
- 4 Qaphelani, amawaka awo ayagcoba, kwaye aziswe kuso isibaya sikaThixo.
- 5 Qaphelani, intsimi yayivuthiwe, kwaye nisikelelwe nina, kuba naye naphosa irhengqe, naze navuna ngamandlakazi enu, ewe, ebudeni bemini yonke nasebenza, kwaye qaphelani inani lezithungu zenu! Kwaye ziya kuqokelelwa koovimba, ukuze zingachithakali.
- 6 Ewe, aziyi kuwiswa phantsi lughwithela ngomhla wokugqibela; ewe, zingayi kuchitha-chithwa zizitshingitshane; kodwa xa sukuba sifika isaqhwithi ziya kuqokelelwa kunye endaweni yazo, ukuze isaqhwithi singabinako ukungena kuzo; ewe, zingasayi kuqhutywa na yimimoya endlongo-ndlongo naphina apho utshaba lunqwenela ukuzithwalela khona.
- 7 Kodwa qaphelani, zisesandleni seNkosi yesivuno, kwaye zezakhe; kwaye uya kuzivusa ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 8 Malisikelelwe igama likaThixo wethu; masimvumele indumiso, ewe, masilinike umbulelo igama lakhe elingcwele, kuba usebenza ngobulungisa ngonaphakade.

## Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

- 9 Kuba ukuba besingenyukanga saphuma kwilizwe laseZarahemla, aba bazalwana bethu bathandeka ngokwenene, abasithande ngokwenene kangaka, ngebesabhuqwa yintiyo ngokuchasene nathi, ewe, kwaye kanjalo ngebesengabaphambukeli kuThixo.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmon ewathethile la mazwi, umntakwabo uAron wamngxolisa, esithi: Amon ndinoloyiko lokuba uvuyo lwakho lukuthabathekisele ekuzigwagwiseni.
- 11 Kodwa uAmon wathi kuye: Andizigwagwisi ngokwam ukomelela, nangabulumko bam; kodwa qaphela, ndizele luvuyo, ewe, intliziyo yam iyaphuphuma luvuyo, kwaye ndiya kugcoba kuThixo wam.
- 12 Ewe, ndiyazi okokuba andinto yanto; ngokokomelela kwam ndibuthathaka; ke ngoko andiyi kuzigwagwisa ngokokwam, kodwa ndiya kuzigwagwisa ngoThixo wam, kuba ekomeleleni kwakhe ndingazenza zonke izinto; ewe, qaphela, imimangaliso emininzi enamandlakazi siyenzile kweli lizwe, esiya kuthi ngayo silidumise igama lakhe ngonaphakade.
- 13 Qaphela, mangaphi amawaka abazalwana bethu athe wawakhulula kwiintlungu zesihogo; kwaye azisiwe ukuze avume ingoma yothando olukhululayo kwaye oku kungenxa yamandla elizwi lakhe elingaphakathi kuthi, ke ngoko ingaba asinaso isizathu esikhulu sokugcoba?
- 14 Ewe, sinesizathu sokumdumisa ngonaphakade, kuba unguThixo oseNyangweni, kwaye ubakhulule abazalwana bethu kumatyathanga esihogo.
- 15 Ewe, baberhangqwe bobumnyama banaphakade nentshabalalo; kodwa qaphelani, ubazise ekukhanyeni kwakhe kwanaphakade, ewe, kusindiso lwanaphakade; kwaye barhangqwe ngesisa esingenamlinganiselo sothando lwakhe; ewe, kwaye sibe zizixhobo zokusebenza ezandleni zakhe zokwenza lo msebenzi mkhulu nomangalisayo.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.

- 16 Ke ngoko, masizingce, ewe siya kuzingca eNkosini; ewe, siya kugcoba, kuba sizele luvuyo; ewe, siya kumdumisa uThixo ngonaphakade. Qaphelani, ngubani ongazingca gqitha eNkosini? Ewe, ngubani ongathetha gqitha ngamandla akhe amakhulu, nangenceba yakhe, nangokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe ngakubantwana babantu? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, andinakuchaza nelona suntswana loko ndikuvayo.
- 17 Ngubani owaye nokucinga ukuba uThixo wethu wayengaba nenceba engaka ngokude asixhwire kwimo yethu eyoyikekayo, ezele sisono, neyobunqambi?
- 18 Qaphelani, sabheka phambili kwanangoburhalarhume, ngezisongelo ezinamandlakazi zokutshabalalisa ibandla lakhe.
- 19 Owu ke, kungani engazange asithumele kwintshabalalo eyoyikekayo, ewe, kungani engazange aliyeke ikrele lobulungisa bakhe liwele phezu kwethu, kwaye asigwebele kukungabi nathemba kwanaphakade?
- 20 Owu, mphefumlo wam, uphantse ubengathi, uyanyamalala nje ngokuyicinga. Qaphelani, akazange abusebenzise ubulungisa bakhe phezu kwethu, kodwa ngenceba yakhe engenamda usiwezile kuloo mwnyonyo wokufa nenkxwaleko, ngokude kube selusindisweni lwemiphefumlo yethu.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam, nguwuphi na ke umntu wemvelo okhoyo ozaziyo ezi zinto? Ndithi kuni, akukho namnye ozaziyo ezi zinto, ngaphandle kwabazohlwayayo.
- 22 Ewe, lowo uguqukayo kwaye asebenzise ukholo, aze azise ngaphambili imisebenzi emihle, kwaye athandaze rhoqo engaphezi—kulowo unjalo unikiwe ukuba azi ngeemfihlelo zikaThixo; ewe, kulowo unjalo kuya kunikwa ukuba atyhile izinto ezingazange zikhe zityhilwe; ewe, kwaye kuya kunikwa kulowo unjalo ukuba azise amawaka emiphefumlo enguqukwani, nanjengokuba kunikiwe kuthi ukuba sizise aba bazalwana bethu enguqukwani.

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

- 23 Ngoku ingaba niyakhumbula, bazalwana bam, okokuba sathi kubazalwana bethu elizweni laseZarahemla, sinyukela kwilizwe likaNifayi, ukuba sishumayeke kubo abazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi, baza basihleka besigxeka?
- 24 Kuba bathi kuthi: Nicinga ukuba ningazisa amaLeymenayithi kulwazi lwenyaniso? Nicinga ukuba ningawaqinisekisa amaLeymenayithi ngokungalungi kwezithethe zooyise, njengokuba bengabantu abantamo zilukhuni benjalo; abantliziyo zabo zivuyiswayo kukuphalazwa kwegazi; abamihla yabo ichithwe kobona bugwenxa bubu; abandlela zabo ibiziindlela zabaphuli-mthetho ukususela ekuqaleni? Ngoku bazalwana bam, niyakhumbula okokuba oku yayikukuthetha kwabo.
- 25 Kwaye ngaphezu koko baye bathi: Masithabathe izikhali ngokuchasene nabo, ukuze sibatshabalalise buze nobugwenxa babo bungabikho elizweni, hleze basongamele baze basitshabalalise.
- 26 Kodwa qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, sangena entlango singena zinjongo zokubatshabalalisa abazalwana bethu, kodwa ngenjongo yokokuba mhlawumbi singaba nako ukusindisa eminye embalwa yemiphefumlo yabo.
- 27 Ngoku zakuba iintliziyo zethu zidakumbile, kwaye sasimalunga nokuphendukela emva, qaphelani, iNkosi yasithuthuzela, kwaye yathi: Yiyani phakathi kwabazalwana benu, amaLeymenayithi, kwaye nizinyamezele ngomonde iimbandezelo zenu, kwaye ndiya kuninika impumelelo.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, sizile, kwaye siselizweni lasemzini phakathi kwabo; kwaye sibe nomonde kuzo iintlungu zethu, kwaye siyinyamezele yonke intswelo yezinto eziyimfuneko, ewe, sihambe ukusuka kwindlu ngendlu, sixhomekeke kwiinceba zehlabathi—ingekuko kwiinceba zehlabathi kuphela kodwa nakwiinceba zikaThixo.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

29 Kwaye singenile ezindlwini zabo saza sabafundisa kwaye sibafundise nasezitatweni zabo; ewe, kwaye sibafundise naphezu kweenduli zabo; kananjalo singenile nasezitempileni zabo kwaye nasezindlwini zabo zesikhungo saza sabafundisa; kwaye besikhutshelwa ngaphandle, kwaye sihlekwa, kwaye sitshicelwa, kwaye sibethwa ezidleleni; kwaye sixulutywa ngamatye, saza sathatyathwa saza sabotshelwa ngeentambo ezomeleleyo, kwaye saphoswa entolongweni; kwaye ngamandla nobulumko bukaThixo sihlangukwe kwakhona.

30 Kwaye sinyamezele zonke iintlobo zeembandezelo, kwaye konke oku, ukuze mhlawumbi singaba nokuba yindlela yokusindisa mphefumlo uthile; kwaye sacinga okokuba uvuyo lwethu lungazala ukuba mhlawumbi singaba yindlela yokusindisa eminye.

31 Ngoku qaphelani, singajonga phambili kwaye sizibone iziqhamo zokusebenza kwethu; kwaye ingaba zimbaleka? Ndithi kuni, Hayi, zininzi; ewe, kwaye singangqina ngokunyaniseka kwabo, ngenxa yothando lwabo kubazalwana babo kananjalo nakuthi.

32 Kuba qaphelani, baxolela ukuncama ubomi babo kunokuba bade bathabathe ubomi botshaba lwabo; kwaye bazingcwaba izikhali zabo zemfazwe nzulu emhlabeni, ngenxa yothando lwabo kubazalwana babo.

33 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani ndithi kuni, lukhe lwakho uthando olukhulu kulo lonke ilizwe? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi, alubangakho, kwa naphakathi kwamaNifayithi.

34 Kuba qaphelani, babethabatha izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo; babengaziyekeli ukuba babulawe. Kodwa qaphela bangaphi kwaba abathe babubeka phantsi ubomi babo; kwaye siyazi okokuba baye kuThixo wabo, ngenxa yothando lwabo nokusithiya kwabo isono.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Ngoku ingaba asinaso isizathu sokugcoba? Ewe, ndithi kuni, abazange babekho abantu abanesizathu esikhulu kangaka sokugcoba njengathi; ukususela oko ihlabathi laqalayo; ewe, kwaye uvuyo lwam luthabathekile, kwanokude ndizigwagwise ngoThixo wam; kuba unawo onke amandla, bonke ubulumko, kwaye unako konke ukuqonda; uqiqa zonke izinto, kwaye usisiqu esinenceba, kwanokude kuse elusindisweni, kwabo baya kuthi baguquke kwaye bakholelwe egameni lakhe.

36 Ngoku ukuba oku kukuzigwagwisa, kwa ngokunjalo ndiya kuzigwagwisa; kuba obu bubomi bam nokukhanya kwam, uvuyo lwam nosindiso lwam, nenkululeko yam kuso isimbonono sanaphakade. Ewe, malisikelelwe igama likaThixo wam, obekhathalele aba bantu, abalisebe lomthi kaSirayeli, kwaye belilahlekile kwisiqu salo phakathi kwelizwe lasemzini; ewe, ndithi, malisikelelwe igama likaThixo wam, obesikhathalele, ababhaduli elizweni lasemzini.

37 Ngoku bazalwana bam, siyabona okokuba uThixo ubakhathalele bonke abantu, nakuliphi na ilizwe abanokuthi babekulo; ewe, uyababala abantu bakhe, kwaye izibilini zemfesane yakhe ziphezu kwawo wonke umhlaba. Ngoku olu luvuyo lwam, nombulelo wam omkhulu; ewe, kwaye ndiya kunikela imibulelo yam kuThixo wam ngonaphakade. Amen.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.



## Alma 27

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba loo maLeymenayithi awayemkile ukuya kulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi efumanise, emva kweenzame zawo ezininzi zokuwatshabalalisa, okokuba kwakulilize ukufuna intshabalalo yawo, abuyela kwakhona kulo ilizwe likaNifayi.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ama-Amalekayithi, ngenxa yokulahlekelwa kwawo, abanomsindo ngokugqithisileyo. Kwaye athi akubona ukuba awanakho ukuzama impindezelo kumaNifayithi, aqalisa ukubavuselela abantu ukuba babenomsindo ngakubazalwana babo, abantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi; ke ngoko baqalisa kwakhona ukubatshabalalisa.
- 3 Ngoku aba bantu kwakhona balile ukuthabatha izikhali zabo, kwaye baziyekela ukuba babulawe ngokweminqweno yeentshaba zabo.
- 4 Ngoku akuba uAmon nabazalwana bakhe bewubonile lo msebenzi wentshabalalo phakathi kwabo babebathanda ngokwenene, kwaye naphakathi kwabo abo babebathande bona ngokwenene—kuba babephethwe ngokungathi babeziingelosi ezazithunyelwe zivela kuThixo ukuba zibasindise kwintshabalalo yanaphakade—ke ngoko, akuba uAmon nabazalwana bakhe bewubona lo msebenzi mkhulu wentshabalalo, basikwa yimfesane, baza bathi kuye ukumkani:
- 5 Sivumele sibahlanganise kunye abantu beNkosi, kwaye usivumele sihle siye kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla kubazalwana bethu amaNifayithi, size sisabe siphume ezandleni zeentshaba zethu, ukuze singatshatyalaliswa.
- 6 Kodwa ukumkani wathi kubo: Qaphelani, amaNifayithi aya kusitshabalalisa, ngenxa yokubulala okuninzi nezono esizenzileyo ngokuchasene nawo.
- 7 Waza uAmon wathi: Ndiya kuhamba ndiye kubuza eNkosini, kwaye ukuba ithi kuthi, masihambe sihle siye kubazalwana bethu, ingaba siya kuhamba?

## Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

- 8 Waza ukumkani wathi kuye: Ewe, ukuba iNkosi ithi kuthi hambani, siya kuhamba sihle siye kubazalwana bethu, kwaye siya kuba ngamakhoboka abo side sikulungise kubo ukubulala okuninzi nezono esithe sazenza ngokuchasene nabo.
- 9 Kodwa uAmon wathi kuye: Kuchasene nomthetho wabazalwana bethu, owawumiselwe ngubawo, okokuba kubekho nawaphina amakhoboka phakathi kwabo; ke ngoko masihambeni sihle kwaye sixhomekeke kwiinceba zabazalwana bethu.
- 10 Kodwa ukumkani wathi kuye: Buza eNkosini, kwaye ukuba ithi kuthi hambani, siya kuhamba; kungenjalo siya kufa elizweni.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon wahamba waza wabuza eNkosini, yaza iNkosi yathi kuye:
- 12 Khupha aba bantu baphume elizweni, ukuze bangafi; kuba uSathana unolawulo oluthe nkqi ezintliziyweni zama-Amalekayithi, athi awavuselele amaLeymenayithi emsindweni ngokuchasene nabazalwana bawo ukuba ababulale; ke ngoko phuma wena kweli lizwe; kwaye basikelelekile aba bantu kwesi sizukulwana, kuba ndiya kubalondoloza.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAmon wahamba waya kuxelela ukumkani onke amazwi eyathi yawathetha iNkosi kuye.
- 14 Baza bahlanganisa kunye bonke abantu babo, ewe, bonke abantu beNkosi, baza bahlanganisa kunye yonke impahla emfutshane yabo nemihlambi yeenkomo, baza bemka baphuma elizweni, kwaye baza bangena entlango eyayahlule ilizwe likaNifayi kwilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye beza nganeno kufuphi nemida yelizwe.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmon wathi kubo: Qaphelani, mna nabazalwana bam siza kubheka phambili elizweni laseZarahemla, kwaye nina niza kusala apha side sibuye; kwaye siza kuzivavanya iintliziyo zabazalwana bethu, ukuba bayavuma na okokuba ningene elizweni labo.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba uAmon wayebheka phambili engena elizweni, yena nabazalwana bakhe bahlangana noAlma, ngaphesheya kwindawo leyo ebekuthethwe ngayo; kwaye qaphela, le yaba yindibano evuyisayo.

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

- 17 Ngoku uvuyo luka-Amon lwaba lukhulu kangangokuba aphuphume; ewe, waginyelwa ngokupheleleyo eluvuyweni lukaThixo wakhe, nokude luwagqibe amandla akhe; waza kwakhona wawela emhlabeni.
- 18 Ngoku ingaba olu lwalungelulo uvuyo olugqithileyo? Qaphelani, olu luvuyo olungafunyanwa nangubanina ngaphandle kokuba kube ngabazohlwaye ngokwenene kwaye nabafuna ulonwabo bethobekile.
- 19 Ngoku uvuyo luka-Alma ekuhlanganeni nabazalwana bakhe lwaba lukhulu ngokwenene, kananjalo noluka-Aron, olukaOmna, noHimnayi; kodwa qaphelani uvuyo lwabo lwalungelulo olo lube lugqibe amandla abo.
- 20 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wabakhokelela emva abazalwana bakhe kwilizwe laseZarahemla; kwanakuyo indlu yakhe. Kwaye bahamba baza baxelela umgwebi oyintloko zonke izinto ezithe zenzeka kubo elizweni likaNifayi, phakathi kwabazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umgwebi oyintloko wathumela isibhengezo kulo lonke ilizwe, enqwenela izwi labantu ngokunxulumene nokwamkela abazalwana babo, ababengabantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izwi labantu lafika, lisithi: Qaphela, siya kulinikezela ilizwe laseYershan, elisempuma ngaselwandle, elidibanisa ilizwe iNdyebo, elisemazantsi elizwe iNdyebo; kwaye eli lizwe iYershan lilizwe esiya kuthi silinikele kubo abazalwana bethu nje ngelifa.
- 23 Kwaye qaphela, siya kumisa imikhosi yethu phakathi kwelizwe iYershan nelizwe iNifayi, ukuze sibe nokubakhusele abazalwana bethu elizweni iYershan; kwaye oku sikwenzela abazalwana bethu, ngesizathu soloyiko lwabo lokuphakamisa izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo hleze benze isono; kwaye olu loyiko lwabo lukhulu lweza ngenxa yenguquko yabo elusizi ababenayo, ngesizathu sokubulala kwabo okuninzi nenkohlakalo yabo eyoyikekayo.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

- 24 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, oku siya kukwenzela abazalwana bethu, ukuze babe nokulizuzana njengelifa ilizwe iYershan; kwaye siya kubakhusela ezintshabeni zabo ngemikhosi yethu, ngaphandle kokuba baya kusinika inxenye yezinto abanazo ukusincedisa ukuze sibe nokugcina imikhosi yethu.
- 25 Ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmon ekuvile oku, wabuyela kubo abantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi, kananjalo noAlma ekunye naye, bangena entlango, apho babegxumeke iintente zabo, baza babazisa zonke ezi zinto. Waza noAlma kanjalo wabachazela ngenguquko yakhe, ekunye noAmon noAron, kwaye nabazalwana bakhe.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba oku kwabangela uvuyo olukhulu phakathi kwabo. Baza behla bangena elizweni laseYershan, baza balithabatha balima ilizwe laseYershan; kwaye babizwa ngamaNifayithi ngokuba ngabantu baka-Amon; ke ngoko bohlulwa ngelo gama emva koko.
- 27 Kwaye babe phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, kananjalo bebalelwa phakathi kwabantu ababengabebandla likaThixo. Kwaye kanjalo babe sohlulwa ngenzondelelo yabo kuThixo, kananjalo nasebantwini; kuba babenyaniseke ngokugqibeleleyo kwaye bethe tye kuzo zonke izinto; kwaye babezinzile elukholweni lukaKrestu, kwanokude kube sesiphelweni.
- 28 Kwaye baye bakukhangela ukuphalazwa kwegazi labazalwana babo ngentiyo egqithileyo; kwaye babengeze bacengelwe ekubeni bathabathe izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo; kwaye babe ngazange bakukhangele ukufa nangawuphi na umlinganiselo woloyiko, ngenxa yethemba labo neembono ngoKrestu novuko; ke ngoko, ukufa kwakuginywe kwaphela kubo ngoloyiso lukaKrestu phezu kwako.
- 29 Ke ngoko, babeya kunyamezela ukufa ngelona zinga liphezulu lentlungu nohlobo lwenkxwaleko olwaye lunokusetyenziswa ngabazalwana babo, ngaphambi kokuba bathabathe ikrele okanye ikrele elifutshane eli ligwegwe ukuze babonzakalise.
- 30 Kwaye njalo babe ngabantu abanenzondelelo kwaye nabathandekayo, abantu abathandeka kakhulu beNkosi.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

## Alma 28

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba abantu baka-Amon bezinzisiwe kulo ilizwe laseYershan, nebandla kanjalo lamiswa kulo ilizwe laseYershan, nemikhosi yamaNifayithi yabekwa ngapha nangapha elizweni laseYershan, ewe, kuyo yonke imida erhangqe ilizwe laseZarahemla; qaphelani imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yayibalandele abazalwana bayo yangena entlango.
- 2 Kwaye njalo kwabakho idabi elikhulukazi; ewe, kwa nelingazange laziwa phakathi kwabo bonke abantu elizweni ukususela kwilixa uLihayi elishiya elaseYerusalem; ewe, kwaye amashumi amawaka amaLeymenayithi abulawa aza asasazwa kude.
- 3 Ewe, kwaye kanjalo kwabakho ukubulala okukhulukazi phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi; nangona kunjalo, amaLeymenayithi adudulwa kwaye asasazwa, baza abantu bakaNifayi babuyela kwakhona elizweni labo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku eli yaba lilixa ekwathi kwabakho ukulila okukhulu nesijwili esavakalayo kulo lonke ilizwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi—
- 5 Ewe, isikhalo sabahlolokazi belilela abayeni babo, kananjalo nesooyise belilela oonyana babo, nentombi ililela umnakwayo, ewe, umntakwayo elilela uyise; kwaye njalo isikhalo sokulila savakala phakathi kwabo bonke, belilela isalamane sabo esibuleweyo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku ngokwenene le yayiyimini elusizi; ewe, ilixa londiliseko, ilixa lokuzila ukutya kakhulu nomthandazo.
- 7 Kwaye njalo waphela oweshumi elinesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi;
- 8 Kwaye le yingxelo ka-Amon nabazalwana bakhe, iihambo zabo elizweni likaNifayi, iimbandezelo zabo elizweni, iintsizi zabo, neenkxwaleko zabo, novuyo lwabo olungena mlinganiselo, nolwamkelo nokhuseleko lwabazalwana elizweni laseYershan. Kwaye ngoku inga iNkosi, uMkhululi wabo bonke abantu, ingayisikelela imiphefumlo yabo ngonaphakade.

## Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

- 9 Kwaye le yingxelo yeemfazwe neembambano phakathi kwamaNifayithi, kananjalo neemfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi; kwaye oweshumi elinesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi uphelile.
- 10 Kwaye ukususela kunyaka wokuqala ukuya koweshumi elinesihlanu kwenzeka intshabalalo yobomi obungamawaka amaninzi; ewe, kwenzeka umbono owoyikekayo wempalalo-gazi.
- 11 Kwaye nemizimba yamawaka amaninzi alaliswe ezantsi emhlabeni, ngeli lixa imizimba yamawaka amaninzi ibola izimfumba phezu kobuso bomhlaba; ewe, kwaye amawaka amaninzi azilele ukuphulukana nezalamane zawo, ngenxa yokuba anesizathu sokoyika, ngokwezithembiso zeNkosi, zokokuba athunyelwe kwimo yesimbonono esingenasiphelo.
- 12 Ngeli lixa amawaka amaninzi abanye azila ngokwenene ngokuphulukana nabomlibo wawo, kanti ayagcoba kwaye anemincili kulo ithemba, kwanokwazi, ngokwezithembiso zeNkosi, okokuba ayavuswa ukuze ahlale ngasekunene kukaThixo, ekwimo yolonwabo olungapheliyo.
- 13 Kwaye njalo siyabubona ubungakanani obugqithileyo bokungalingani kwabantu ngenxa yesono nokona, namandla kamtyholi, okuza ngamacebo obuqhinga athe wabuyila ukuze arhintyele iintliziyo zabantu.
- 14 Kwaye njalo siyalubona ubizo olushushu lwenkuthalo yabantu ukuba basebenze esidiliyeni seNkosi; kwaye njalo siyasibona isizathu esikhulu sosizi, nesokugcoba kanjalo—usizi ngenxa yokufa nentshabalalo phakathi kwabantu, novuyo ngenxa yokukhanya kukaKrestu okusa ebomini.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are moldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

## Alma 29

- 1 Owu akwaba bendiyingelosi, kwaye ndinokuwuzuza umnqweno wentliziyo yam, ukuze ndibe nokubheka phambili ndize ndithethe ngexilongo likaThixo, ngelizwi ukuze kushukume umhlaba, kwaye ndidanduluke inguquko kubo bonke abantu!
- 2 Ewe, ndingavakalisa kuwo wonke umphefumlo, ngokungathi lilizwi lendudumo, inguquko necebo lenkululeko, okokuba bamele baguquke kwaye beze kuThixo wethu, ukuze kungabi sabakho lusizi lungakumbi phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba.
- 3 Kodwa qaphelani, ndingumntu, kwaye ndiyona ngawo umnqweno wam; kuba bekufanele ndonele zizinto ezo ethe iNkosi yazabela kum.
- 4 Akufanelekanga ukuba ndihlungiseke ngenxa yeminqweno yam kummiselo ongqingqwa woThixo olungileyo, kuba ndiyazi okokuba ubanika abantu ngokweminqweno yabo, nokokuba kusekufeni okanye ebomini; ewe, ndiyazi okokuba wabela abantu, ewe, umisa kubo imimiselo engena kuguqulwa, ngokweminqweno yabo, nokokuba kusa elusindisweni okanye kusa entshabalalweni.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye ndiyazi okokuba ukulunga nobubi kukhona phambi kwabo bonke abantu; yena lowo ungakwaziyo okulungileyo kokubi akanatyala; kodwa yena lowo ukwaziyo okulungileyo nokubi, kuye lowo kunikwa ngokweminqweno yakhe, nokokuba unqwenela okulungileyo okanye okubi, ubomi okanye ukufa, uvuyo okanye ukuzisola kwesazela.
- 6 Ngoku, ekubeni ndibona okokuba ndiyazazi ezi zinto, kungani ukuba ndinqwenele ngaphezulu kunokuba ndenze umsebenzi endithe ndabizelwa kuwo?
- 7 Kungani ukuba ndinqwenele ukuba ndinge ndiyingelosi, okokuba ndibe nokuthetha kuzo zonke iziphelo zomhlaba?
- 8 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi ithi inike kuzo zonke izizwe, okwesizwe zazo nolwimi, ukuba zilifundise ilizwi lakhe, ewe, ngobulumko, konke oko ibona kuzilungele ukuba zibenako; ke ngoko siyabona okokuba iNkosi ithi iyalele ngobulumko, malunga naloo nto ilungileyo kwaye iyinyani.

## Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

- 9 Ndiyakwazi oko iNkosi indiyalele kona, kwaye ndiyayizukisa ngako. Andizizukisi ngokokwam, kodwa ndizukisa oko iNkosi indiyalele kona; ewe, kwaye olu luzuko lwam, ukuba mhlawumbi ndingaba sisixhobo ezandleni zikaThixo ukuzisa umphefumlo othile enguqukwani; kwaye olu luvuyo lwam.
- 10 Kwaye qaphelani, xa ndibona abaninzi babazalwana bam bezohlwaye ngokwenene, kwaye besiza kwiNkosi uThixo wabo, ke umphefumlo wam uzaliswa luvuyo; ke ndikhumbule into ethe yandenzela yona iNkosi, ewe, kwanokokuba iwuvile umthandazo wam; ewe, ke ndikhumbule ingalo yayo enenceba ethe yolulelwa ngakum.
- 11 Ewe, kanaanjalo ndikhumbule ukuthinjwa koobawo; kuba ngokwenene ndiyazi okokuba iNkosi yaye yabahlangua baphuma ebukhobokeni, kwaye ngale ndlela yaye yalimisa ibandla layo; ewe, iNkosi uThixo, uThixo ka-Abraham, uThixo kaIsake, noThixo kaYakobi, waye wabahlangua baphuma ebukhobokeni.
- 12 Ewe, bendisoloko ndikukhumbula ukuthinjwa koobawo; kwayena loo Thixo wabahlangulayo baphuma ezandleni zamaYiputa waye wabahlangua baphuma ebukhobokeni.
- 13 Ewe, kwayena loo Thixo waye walimisa ibandla lakhe phakathi kwabo; ewe, kwayena loo Thixo undibizile ngobizo olungcwele, ukuba ndishumayele ilizwi kwaba bantu, kwaye undinike impumelelo enkulu, endinovuyo oluzeleyo ngayo.
- 14 Kodwa andivuyiswa yeyam impumelelo ndodwa, kodwa uvuyo lwam luzele ngakumbi ngenxa yempumelelo yabazalwana bam, ababengasentla kwilizwe likaNifayi.
- 15 Qaphelani, basebenze ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye bazise ngaphambili iziqhamo ezininzi; kwaye uya kubanjani ukubaluleka umvuzo wabo!
- 16 Ngoku, xa ndicinga ngempumelelo yaba abazalwana bam umphefumlo wam uyemka, kwanokude ube nokwahlulwa kuwo umzimba, njengoko kwakunjalo, lukhulu kangako uvuyo lwam.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.



17 Kwaye ngoku wanga uThixo angabavumela aba, abazalwana bam, okokuba babe nokuhlala phantsi ebukumkanini bukaThixo; ewe, kwanjalo nabo abaziziqhamo zemisebenzi yabo ukuze bangabi nakube baphinde baphumele ngaphandle, kodwa babe nokumdumisa ngonaphakade. Kwaye wanga uThixo angavuma okokuba kungenziwa ngokwamazwi am, kwananjengokuba ndithethile. Amen.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

## Alma 30

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba abantu baka-Amon bemiselwe elizweni laseYershan, ewe, kwaye nasemva kokuba amaLeymenayithi eqhutyelwe ngaphandle kwelizwe, nabafleayo bawo bengcwatywe ngabantu belizwe—
- 2 Ngoku abafleayo babo abazange babalwe ngenxa yobuninzi bamanani abo; bengazange babalwe nabafleayo bama-Nifayithi—kodwa kwenzekile emva kokuba bebangcwabile abafleayo babo, kananjalo emva kokuzila ukutya, nokulila, nomthandazo, (kwaye kwaku koweshumi elinesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi) kwaqalisa ukubakho uxolo ngalo lonke ixesha kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 3 Ewe, kwaye abantu baye bakuqwalasela ukuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi; kwaye babengqongqo ekuyizalisekiseni imimiselo kaThixo, ngokomthetho kaMoses; kuba babefundisiwe ukuwugcina umthetho kaMoses kude kube uzalisekisiwe.
- 4 Kwaye njalo abantu baye ababinasiphazamiso kuwo wonke oweshumi elinesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekuqalekeni koweshumi elinesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwabakho uxolo ngamaxesha onke.
- 6 Kodwa kwenzekile kwisiphelo sokuphela konyaka weshumi elinesixhenxe, kwangena indoda elizweni laseZarahemla, kwaye yaye ingumchasi-Krestu, kuba yaqalisa ukushumayela ebantwini ngokuchasene neziprofetho ezazithethiwe ngabaprofeti, malunga nokuza kukaKrestu.
- 7 Ngoku kwakungekho mthetho uchasene nenkolo yomntu; kuba oko kwakuphikisana ngokungqongqo nemiyalelo kaThixo okokuba kubekho umthetho ozisa abantu ekulinganeni.
- 8 Kuba njalo zithi izibhalo: Zikhethele namhla, lowo uya kumkhonza.

## Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

- 9 Ngoku ukuba umntu wayenqwenela ukukhonza uThixo, yayililungelo lakhe elilodwa; okanye ngenye indlela, ukuba wayekhohlelwa kuThixo yayililungelo lakhe elilodwa ukuba amkhonze; kodwa ukuba wayengakhohlelwa kuye kwakungekho mthetho wokumohlwaya.
- 10 Kodwa ukuba ubulele wayesohlwayelwa ekufeni; kwaye ukuba uphangile wayesohlwaywa kanjalo; kwaye ukuba ubile kanjalo ubesohlwaywa; kwaye ukuba ukrexezile kanjalo wayesohlwaywa; ewe, ngayo yonke le nkohlakalo babesohlwaywa.
- 11 Kuba kwakukho umthetho wokokuba abantu mabagwetywe ngokwamatyala abo. Nangona kunjalo, kwakungekho mthetho uchasene nenkolo yomntu; ke ngoko, umntu wayesohlwaywa kuphela ngamatyala athe wawenza; ke ngoko bonke abantu babelingana.
- 12 Kwaye lo mchasi-Krestu, ogama lakhe lalinguKorihor, (kwaye umthetho wawungenanto yakubambeleva kuye) waqalisa ukushumayela ebantwini okokuba akusayi kubakho Krestu. Kwaye waye washumayela ngolu hlobo, esithi:
- 13 Owu nina niqanyangelwe phantsi kwethemba elibubuyatha nelilize, kungani ukuba nizithwalise idyokhwe ngezinto ezibubuyatha ngolu hlobo? Kungani, ukuba nifune uKrestu? Kuba akakho umntu onokwazi nantoni na eya kuza.
- 14 Qaphelani, ezi zinto enizibiza ngokuba ziziprofetho, enithi zagqithiswa ngabaprofeti abangcwele, qaphelani, zizithethe zobuyatha zooyihlo.
- 15 Nikwazi njani ukuqiniseka kwazo? Qaphelani, aninako ukwazi ngezinto eningaziboniyo; ke ngoko aninakho ukwazi okokuba kuya kubakho uKrestu.
- 16 Nikhangela phambili nize nithi nibona uxolelo lwezono zenu. Kodwa qaphelani, ziziphumo zengqondo ephambeneyo; kwaye le mpambano yeengqondo zenu iza ngenxa yezithethe zooyihlo, ezinikhokelela kude kwinkolo yezinto ezingenjalo.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

- 17 Kwaye nezinye ezininzi izinto ezinjalo awazithethayo kubo, ebaxelela okokuba akunakubakho ntlawulelo yenziwayo yezono zabantu, kodwa wonke umntu kobu bomi uqhuba ngokokuzilawula ngokwendalo; ke ngoko wonke umntu uphumelela ngokobungqondi bakhe, nokokuba wonke umntu woyisa ngokokomelela kwakhe; kwaye nantoni na umntu awathi wayenza yayingelolwaphulo-mthetho.
- 18 Kwaye washumayela njalo kubo, elahlekisa iintliziyo zabaninzi, ebangela ukuba baziphakamisele phezu iintloko zabo kwiinkohlakalo zabo, ewe, elahlekisa abafazi abaninzi, namadoda kanjalo, ukuba benze uhenyuzo —ebaxelela ukuba xa umntu efile, eso yayisisiphelo sakhe.
- 19 Ngoku le ndoda yawelela kanjalo kwilizwe laseYershan, ukuze ishumaye ezi zinto phakathi kwabantu baka-Amon, ababefudula bengabantu bamaLeymenayithi.
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani babelumke ngaphezulu kunabaninzi bamaNifayithi; kuba bamthabatha, baza bamqamangela, baze bamthwala bamsa phambi kuka-Amon, owayengumbingeleli omkhulu phezu kwabo bantu.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wenza okokuba akhutshelwe ngaphandle kwelizwe. Waza waya ngaphaya kwilizwe likaGidiyon, waza waqalisa kanjalo ukushumayela kubo; kwaye apha akabanga nampumelelo ingako, kuba wathatyathwa waza waqanyangelwa waza watyathwa wasiwa phambi kombingeleli omkhulu, kananjalo nomgwebi oyintloko phezu kwelizwe.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umbingeleli omkhulu wathi kuye: Kungani ukuba uhambahambe ugqwetha iindlela zeNkosi? Kungani ukuba ufundise aba bantu ukuba akusayi kubakho Krestu, uphazamise imigcobo yabo? Kungani ukuba uthethe ngokuchasene nazo zonke iziprofetho zabaprofeti abangcwele?

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms —telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jerushon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

- 23 Ngoku igama lombingeleli omkhulu lalinguGidona. Kwaye uKorihor wathi kuye: Kungenxa yokuba andifundisi zithethe zabuyatha zooyihlo, kwaye nangenxa yokokuba andibafundisi aba bantu ukuba baziqamangele ezantsi phantsi kwemimiselo nezenzo ezibekwe ngababingeleli bamandulo, ukuze baphange amandla negunya phezu kwabo, ukuba babagcine bengenalwazi, ukuze bangabi nakuziphakamisa iintloko zabo, kodwa bathotyelwe phantsi ngokwamazwi abo.
- 24 Nithi aba bantu bangabantu abakhululekileyo. Qaphelani, ndithi basebukhobokeni. Nithi ezo ziprofetho zamandulo ziyinyani. Qaphelani, ndithi anizazi ukuba ziyinyani na.
- 25 Nithi aba bantu bangabantu abanetyala nabawileyo, ngenxa yokona komzali. Qaphelani, ndithi umntwana akanatyala ngenxa yabazali bakhe.
- 26 Kwaye kanjalo nithi uKrestu uya kuza. Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi aniyazi okokuba kuya kubakho uKrestu. Kwaye nithi kanjalo uya kubulawelwa izono zehlabathi—
- 27 Nize njalo nilahlekise aba bantu balandele izithethe zobuyatha zooyihlo, kwaye nangokweminqweno yenu; kwaye niyabacinizela, kwanokungathi kusebukhobokeni, ukuze nibe nokungxala iziqu zenu ngemisebenzi yezandla zabo, ukuze bangakhe balinge baqwanye beqinisekile, ukuze bangakhe balinge bazonwabele iimfanelo zabo namalungelo abo awodwa.
- 28 Ewe, abalingi nokuyisebenzisa loo nto iyeyabo hleze babakhubekise ababingeleli babo, abathi babathwalise idyokhwe ngokweminqweno yabo, kwaye babazise ekubeni bakholelwe, ngezithethe zabo namaphupha abo nangengcinga zabo eziguquququkayo nangemibono yabo nangeemfihlelo abazenza ngathi zikho, ukuze bathi, ukuba abenzi ngokwamazwi abo, bakhathaze mntu uthile ongaziwayo, abathi unguThixo—umntu ongazange akhe abonwe okanye aziwe, ongazange abekho nongasoze abekho.

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

- 29 Ngoku akuba umbingeleli omkhulu nomgwebi oyintloko bekubona ukuqaqadeka kwentliziyo yakhe, ewe, bakubona ukuba ubeya kwenyelisa ngokuchasene nkqu noThixo, abafunanga kuwaphendula amazwi akhe; kodwa benza ukuba aqanyangelwe; baza bamnikezela ezandleni zabaphathi, baza bamthumela kwilizwe laseZarahemla, ukuze abe nokuziswa phambi koAlma, nomgwebi oyintloko owayengumlawuli phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ezisiwe phambi koAlma nomgwebi oyintloko, waye waqhubeka kwangohlobo ebesenza ngalo elizweni likaGidiyon; ewe, waqhubeka esenyelisa.
- 31 Kwaye waye wenyuka ngamazwi amakhulu okukhukumala phambi koAlma, kwaye waye wenyelisa ngokuchasene nababingeleli nootitshala, ebatyhola ngokukhokelela kude abantu ukulandela emva kwezithethe zobuhiba zooyise ngenxa yokuzingxala ngemisebenzi yabantu.
- 32 Ngoku uAlma wathi kuye: Uyayazi okokuba asizingxali ngemisebenzi yaba bantu; kuba qaphela ndisebenze kwanasekuqalekeni kolawulo lwabagwebi kude kube kaloku nje, ngezam izandla ukuba ndizixhase, nangona ndinohambo oluninzi macala onke ngapha nangapha elizwe ndivakalisa ilizwi likaThixo kubo abantu bam.
- 33 Kwaye nangona ndinemisebenzi emininzi endiyenzileyo ebandleni, andizange ndizuze kwankqu nesinayini enye ngomsebenzi wam; kungazange namnye kubazalwana bam, ngaphandle nje kwasesihlalweni sokugweba; kwaye ke sizuze nje kuphela ngokwasemthethweni ngexesha lethu.
- 34 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba asizuzi nantoni na ngemisebenzi yethu ebandleni, ingaba inzuzo yethu yintoni ngokusebenza ebandleni ngaphandle kwasekuvakaliseni inyaniso, ukuze sifumane imigcobo ekuvuyeni kwabazalwana bethu?
- 35 Ke kungani ukuba uthi sishumayela kwaba bantu ukuze sifumane inzuzo, xa wena, ngokwakho, usazi okokuba asifumani nzuzo? Kwaye ngoku, uyakholelwa okokuba siyabalahlekisa aba bantu, ngento ebangela uvuyo olunje ezintliziyweni zabo?
- 36 Waza uKorihor wamphendula, Ewe.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

37 Waza ke uAlma wathi kuye: Uyakholelwa na okokuba kukho uThixo?

38 Waza waphendula, Hayi.

39 Ngoku uAlma wathi kuye: Uza kukhanyela kwakhona okokuba kukho uThixo, uze kwakhona ukhanyele uKrestu? Kuba qaphela, ndithi kuwe, ndiyazi okokuba kukho uThixo, kanjalo nokokuba uKrestu uya kuza.

40 Kwaye ngoku bungqina buni onabo bokokuba akukho Thixo, okanye okokuba uKrestu akayi kuza? Ndithi kuwe akunabo, ngaphandle nje kwelizwi lakho kuphela.

41 Kodwa, qaphela, ndinazo zonke izinto nje ngobungqina bokokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani; kwaye nawe kanjalo unazo zonke izinto nje ngobungqina kuwe bokokuba ziyinyani; kwaye uza kuzikhanyela? Uyakholelwa okokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani?

42 Qaphela, ndiyazi okokuba uyakholelwa, kodwa uphethwe ngumoya wokuxoka, kwaye uwubekele bucala uMoya kaThixo ukuze ungabi nandawo ngaphakathi kwakho; kodwa umtyholi unamandla phezu kwakho, kwaye ukuphethe, esebenzisa amacebo obuqhinga ukuze abe nokutshabalalisa abantwana bakaThixo.

43 Kwaye ngoku uKorihor wathi kuAlma: Ukuba ungandibonisa umqondiso, ukuze ndibe nokuqinisekiswa okokuba kukho uThixo, ewe, ndibonise okokuba unamandla, kwaye ke ndiya kuqinisekiswa ngobunyani bamazwi akho.

44 Kodwa uAlma wathi kuye: Uyifumene imiqondiso ngokwaneleyo; ingaba uya kumlinga na uThixo wakho? Ingaba uya kuthi, Ndibonise umqondiso, ekubeni unabo ubungqina babo bonke aba bazalwana bakho, kananjalo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele? Izibhalo zibekiwe phambi kwakho, ewe, kwaye zonke izinto zibonisa ukuba kukho uThixo; ewe, kwanawo umhlaba, kwaye nazo zonke izinto eziphezu kobuso bawo, ewe, nentshukumo yawo, ewe, kananjalo neplanethi ezishukuma ngendlela yazo elungeleleneyo ziyangqina okokuba kukho uMdali oPhakamileyo.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

45 Kwaye kanti uhamba-hamba, ulahlekisa iintliziyo zaba bantu, ungqina kubo ukuba akukho Thixo? Kwaye kanti uza kukhanyela ngokuchasene nawo onke la mangqina? Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiza kukhanyela, ngaphandle kokuba undibonise umqondiso.

46 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAlma wathi kuye: Qaphela, ndilusizi ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kwentliziyo yakho, ewe, ukuba usaphikele ukuwuchasa umoya wenyaniso, ukuze umphefumlo wakho ube nokutshatyalaliswa.

47 Kodwa qaphelani, kulunge ngaphezulu okokuba kumele umphefumlo wakho ulahleke kunokuba ube yindlela yokuzisa imiphefumlo emininzi ezantsi ekutshatyalalisweni, ngokuxoka kwakho kwaye nangamazwi akho okunyhwalaza; ke ngoko ukuba uya kukhanyela kwakhona qaphela uThixo uya kukubetha, ukuze ube sisimumu, ukuze ungaze uwuvule umlomo wakho kwakhona, ukuze ungabalahlekisi aba bantu kwakhona.

48 Ngoku uKorihor wathi kuye: Andibukhanyeli ubukho bobuThixo, kodwa andikholelwa okokuba kukho uThixo; kwaye ndithi kanjalo, anazi okokuba kukho ubuThixo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba nindibonise umqondiso, andisayi kukholelwa.

49 Ngoku uAlma wathi kuye: Oku ndiya kukunika njengomqondiso, ukuba ubethwe ube sisimumu, ngokwamazwi am; kwaye ndithi, egameni likaThixo, uya kubethwa ube sisimumu, ukuze ungabe uphinde ubenako ukuthetha.

50 Ngoku akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi, uKorihor wabethwa waba sisimumu, ukuze angabinako ukuthetha, ngokwamazwi ka-Alma.

51 Kwaye ngoku akuba umgwebi oyintloko ekubona oku, wasolula isandla sakhe waza wambhalela uKorihor, esithi: Ingaba uqinisekisiwe ngamandla kaThixo? Kukubani apho ubunqwenela okokuba uAlma abonakalise umqondiso wakhe? Ubunga angahlungisa abanye, ukuze akubonise umqondiso? Qaphela, uwubonise kuwe umqondiso; kwaye ngoku ingaba ungaphika ngokungakumbi?

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?



- 52 Waza uKorihor wasibeka isandla sakhe waza wabhala, esithi: Ndiyazi okokuba ndisisimumu, kuba andikwazi ukuthetha; kwaye ndiyazi okokuba akukho nto ngaphandle kokuba kube ngamandla kaThixo anako ukuzisa oku phezu kwam; ewe, kwaye ndandisoloko ndisazi okokuba kwakukho uThixo.
- 53 Kodwa qaphelani, umtyholi undikhohlisile; kuba wabonakala kum ekwinkangeleko yengelosi, waza wathi kum: Hamba kwaye ubabuyisele aba bantu, kuba bonke balahlekile belandela uThixo ongaziwayo. Kwaye wathi kum; Akukho Thixo; ewe, waza wandifundisa oko ndimele ndikuthethe. Kwaye ndifundise amazwi akhe; kwaye ndiwafundise ngenxa yokuba ayeyikhholisa ingqondo yasenyameni, kwaye ndabafundisa, kwanokude ndibe nempumelelo enkulu, kangangokuba ndakholelwa ngokwenene okokuba ayeyinyani; kwaye kungesi sizathu ndayichasayo inyaniso, kwanokude ndizizisele esi siqalekiso sikhulu phezu kwam.
- 54 Ngoku akuba ekuthethile oku, wabongoza uAlma ukuba athandaze kuThixo, ukuze isiqalekiso sibe nokususwa kuye.
- 55 Kodwa uAlma wathi kuye: Ukuba esi siqalekiso siyasuswa kuwe uya kuthi kwakhona uzilahlekise iintliziyo zaba bantu; ke ngoko, kuya kuba nje kuwe kwanjengokwentando yeNkosi.
- 56 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isiqalekiso asizange sisuswe kuye uKorihor; kodwa walahlelwa ngaphandle, waza wahamba-hamba esuka kwindlu nendlu engqiba khona ukuze afumane ukutya.
- 57 Ngoku ulwazi ngokwenzekayo kuKorihor lwavakaliswa ngoko nangoko kulo lonke ilizwe; ewe, isibhengezo sathunyelwa phambili ngumgwebi oyintloko kubo bonke abantu elizweni, kusaziswa kwabo bebhokolelwa kumazwi kaKorihor ukuze baguquke ngokukhawuleza, hleze kwa ezo zigwebo zifike kubo.

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

58 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke baqinisekiswa ngenkohlakalo kaKorihor; ke ngoko bonke baguqukela kwakhona eNkosini; kwaye oku kwabuphelisa ubugwenxa obunje ngobo babusenziwa nguKorihor. Kwaye uKorihor waye wahamba-hamba esuka kwindlu nendlu, engqiba ukutya ukuze azibonelele.

59 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabheka phambili phakathi kwabantu, ewe, phakathi kwabantu ababezohlule kumaNifayithi baza bazibiza ngokuba ngamaZoramayithi, bekhokelwa yindoda egama layo lalinguZorami—kwaye njengokuba wayebheka phambili phakathi kwabo, qaphelani, wagilwa waza wanyhashelwa phantsi, kwanokude abe ufile.

60 Kwaye njalo siyasibona isiphelo salowo wagqwetha iindlela zeNkosi; kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba umtyholi akabaxhasi abantwana bakhe ngomhla wokugqibela, kodwa uthi abarhuqele ezantsi esihogweni.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

## Alma 31

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kwesiphelo sikaKorihor, uAlma ekubeni efumene iindaba zokokuba amaZoramayithi ayezigqwethile iindlela zeNkosi, nokokuba uZorami, owayeyinkokheli yawo, wayekhokelela iintliziyo zabantu ekubeni ziqubude kwizithixo ezizizimumu, intliziyo yakhe kwakhona yaba buhlungu ngenxa yobugwenxa babantu.
- 2 Kuba yayingunobangela wosizi olunzulu kuAlma ukwazi ngobugwenxa phakathi kwabantu bakhe; ke ngoko intliziyo yakhe yabalusizi ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yokwahlukana kwamaZoramayithi kumaNifayithi.
- 3 Ngoku amaZoramayithi ayezihlanganise kunye kulo ilizwe awayelibiza ngokuba yiAnteyonam, elaye lingasempuma yelizwe laseZarahemla, elaye lime phantse ukunxusa phezu konxweme lolwandle olwalusemazantsi elizwe laseYershan, elaye kanjalo linxuse phezu kwentlango esemazantsi, intlango leyo eyayizele ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 4 Ngoku amaNifayithi ayesoyika kakhulu ukuba amaZoramayithi angangena kwimbalelwano namaLeymenayithi, nokokuba kungangunobangela welahleko enkulu kwicala lamaNifayithi.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko ukushunyayelwa kwelizwi kunotyekelo olukhulu lokukhokelela abantu ekwenzeni oko kulungileyo—ewe, kwakunesiphumo esinamandla ngaphezu kweengqondo zabantu kunekrele, okanye nantoni na eyenye, eyayikhe yenzeka kubo—ke ngoko uAlma wacinga ukuba kwakuyimfuneko okokuba bamele bazame ukulunga kwelizwi likaThixo.
- 6 Ke ngoko wathabatha uAmon, noAron, no-Omna; kwaye uHimnaye waye wamshiya nebandla eZarahemla; kodwa isithathu esekuthethwe ngaso wasithabathela kuye, kananjalo noAmyuleki noZiyezirom, ababeseMeleki; kananjalo wathabatha ababini koonyana bakhe.

## Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

- 7 Ngoku oyena mdala koonyana bakhe akazange amthabathe ahambe naye, kwaye igama lakhe lalinguHilamani; kodwa amagama abo wabathabathayo kunye naye ayenguShiblani noKoreyantan; kwaye la ngamagama abo bathi bahamba kunye naye phakathi kwamaZoramayithi, ukuba bashumayele kuwo ilizwi.
- 8 Ngoku amaZoramayithi ayengabakreqi asuka kumaNifayithi; ke ngoko ayesele enalo ilizwi likaThixo lishunyayelwe kuwo.
- 9 Kodwa ayewele kwiimpazamo eziyingozi, kuba ayengakuqwalaseli ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, nemimiselo yakhe, ngokwemithetho kaMoses.
- 10 Engafuni nokuziqqala izenzo zebandla, ukuqhubeka ngomthandazo nesikhungo kuThixo mihla yonke, ukuze angabi nakungena ekuhendweni.
- 11 Ewe, lilonke, aye azigqwetha iindlela zeNkosi amaxesha amaninzi kakhulu; ke ngoko, kungesi sizathu, uAlma nabazalwana bakhe baya ngaphakathi kwelizwe ukuya kushumayela ilizwi kuwo.
- 12 Ngoku, bakuba befikile elizweni, qaphelani, ekukhwankqisekeni kwabo bafumanisa okokuba amaZoramayithi akhe izindlu zesikhungo, nokokuba aye azihlanganisa kunye ngosuku olunye lweveki, umhla lowo athi alubiza ngokuba ngumhla lweNkosi; kwaye ayenqula ngokohlobo uAlma nabazalwana bakhe abangazanga balubona;
- 13 Kuba ayenendawo eyakhelwe phezulu kumbindi wendlu yawo yesikhungo, indawo yokuma, eyaye inyukele phezu kwentloko; kwaye umphezulu wayo wawungangena kuphela umntu omnye.
- 14 Ke ngoko, nabani na onqwenela ukunqula kufuneka abheke phambili aze eme ngaphezu kwayo, aze olulele izandla zakhe phezulu ngasezulwini, aze adanduluke ngelizwi elikhulu, esithi:
- 15 Ngcwele, ngcwele Thixo; siyakholwa okokuba unguThixo, kwaye siyakholelwa okokuba uyingcwele, nokokuba wawungumoya, nokokuba ungumoya, nokokuba uya kuba ngumoya ngonaphakade.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblani and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

- 16 Thixo oNgcwele, siyakholwa okokuba usahlule kubazalwana bethu; kwaye asikholelwa kuzo izithethe zabazalwana bethu, ezazigqithiselwe kubo ngobuntwana booyise; kodwa sikholelwa ekubeni usonyulele ukuba sibe ngabantwana bakho abangcwele; kananjalo usazisile okokuba akusayi kubakho Krestu.
- 17 Kodwa ukwanguye izolo, namhla, nangonaphakade; kwaye usonyulele ukuba siya kusindiswa, ngeli lixa bonke abasingqongileyo bonyulelwe ukuba baphoswe ngomsindo wakho ezantsi esihogweni; ngako okungcwele, Owu Thixo, siya kubulela; kananjalo siya kubulela ukuba usonyule, ukuze singalahlekiswa silandela izithethe zobuyatha zabazalwana bethu, ezithi zibaqamangelele phantsi kwinkolo kaKrestu, ethi ikhokelele iintliziyo zabo ukuba zibhadulele kude nawe, Thixo wethu.
- 18 Kwaye kwakhona siyakubulela, Owu Thixo, ukuba singabanyuliweyo nabantu abangcwele. Amen.
- 19 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma nabazalwana bakhe beyivile le mithandazo, bakhwankqiseka ngaphaya kwawo wonke umlinganiselo.
- 20 Kuba qaphelani, wonke umntu waye wabheka phambili waza wanikela phezulu kwale mithandazo minye.
- 21 Ngoku indawo leyo babeyibiza ngokuba yiRameyamptom, ethi, xa itolikwa, isisikhundla esingcwele.
- 22 Ngoku, bemi kwesi sikhundla baye banikela phezulu, wonke umntu, kwalo mthandazo mnye kuThixo, bembulela uThixo wabo kuba bonyulwa nguye, nokokuba engalahlekisanga ukulandela izithethe zabazalwana babo, nokokuba iintliziyo zabo zingebiwanga ekubeni bakholelwe kwizinto ezisezayo, abangazi nto ngazo.
- 23 Ngoku, emva kokuba abantu bonke benikele phezulu imibulelo ngolu hlobo, babuyela kumakhaya abo, bengazanga bathetha ngoThixo wabo kwakhona bada babe bahlanganisene kunye kwakhona esikhundleni esingcwele, ukunikela phezulu imibulelo ngokohlobo lwabo.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

24 Ngoku akuba uAlma ekubonile oku intliziyo yakhe yabindeka; kuba wabona okokuba babengabantu abakhohlakeleyo nabagqwethekileyo; ewe, wabona okokuba iintliziyo zabo zazibekwe phezu kwegolide, naphezu kwesilivere, naphezu kwayo yonke impahla ecwengileyo.

25 Ewe, kananjalo wabona okokuba iintliziyo zabo zaziphakamele phezulu ekuzigwagwiseni okukhulu, ngekratshi labo.

26 Waza waliphakamisela phezulu ezulwini ilizwi lakhe, waza wadanduluka, esithi: Owu, koda kubenini, Owu Nkosi, ingaba uya kuzivumela ukuba izicaka zakho ziya kuhlala apha ezantsi enyameni, ukuba zibone inkohlakalo embi ngolu hlobo phakathi kwabantwana babantu?

27 Qaphela, Owu Thixo, bayadanduluka kuwe, kanti iintliziyo zabo ziginyelwe phezulu kwikratshi labo. Qaphela, Owu Thixo, bayadanduluka kuwe ngemilomo yabo, ngeli lixa bekhukhumele, nangokude bazibone bebakhulu, ngezinto ezililize zehlabathi.

28 Qaphela, Owu Thixo wam, izambatho zabo zexabiso, nemisesane yabo, nezacholo zabo, nezihombiso zabo zegolide, kwaye nazo zonke izinto zabo ezixabisekileyo abathi bazihombise ngazo; kwaye qaphela, iintliziyo zabo zibekwe phezu kwazo, kanti ke badanduluka kuwe baze bathi—Siyakubulela, Owu Thixo, kuba singabantu abonyulelwe kuwe, ngeli lixa abanye beya kutshabalala.

29 Ewe, kwaye bathi ubazisile into yokokuba akusayi kubakho Krestu.

30 Owu Nkosi Thixo, ingaba uya kuyivumela kude kubenini ukuba inkohlakalo engaka nokunganyaniseki ukuba kubekho phakathi kwaba bantu? Owu Nkosi, wanga ungandipha ukomelela, ukuze ndibe nokubunyamezela ubuthathaka bam. Kuba ndibuthathaka, kwaye inkohlakalo elolu hlobo phakathi kwaba bantu iyawuhlungisa umphefumlo wam.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

- 31 Owu Nkosi, intliziyo yam ilusizi ngokugqithisileyo; wanga ungawuthuzela umphefumlo wam ngoKrestu. Owu Nkosi, wanga ungandinika ukuba ndibe nokomelela, ukuze ndibe nokuzinyamezela ngomonde ezi mbandezelo eziya kuthi zize phezu kwam, ngenxa yobugwenxa baba bantu.
- 32 Owu Nkosi, ungawuthuzela umphefumlo wam, uze undiphe impumelelo, kananjalo nabo ndisebenza nabo abakunye nam—ewe, uAmon, noAron, no-Omna, kananjalo noAmyuleki noZiyezirom, kananjalo noonyana bam ababini—ewe, kwanabo bonke aba wanga ungabathuzela, Owu Nkosi. Ewe, wanga ungayithuzela imiphefumlo yabo ngoKrestu.
- 33 Wanga ungabanika ukuba babe nokomelela, ukuze babe nokuzinyamezela iimbandezelo zabo eziya kuthi zize phezu kwabo ngenxa yobugwenxa baba bantu.
- 34 Owu Nkosi, inga ungasinika ukuba sibe nempumelelo ekubaziseni kwakhona kuwe ngoKrestu.
- 35 Qaphela, Owu Nkosi, imiphefumlo yabo ixabisekile, kwaye abaninzi babo bangabazalwana bethu; ke ngoko, siphe, Owu Nkosi, amandla nobulumko bokuba sibe nokuzisa aba, abazalwana bethu, kwakhona kuwe.
- 36 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi, wazibeka izandla zakhe phezu kwabo bonke abo babekunye naye. Kwaye qaphela, njengokuba wayezibekile izandla zakhe phezu kwabo, bazaliswa nguMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 37 Kwaye emva koko baye bazohlula omnye komnye, bengazingeli into abaya kuyitya, okanye into abaya kuyisela, okanye into abaya kuyambatha.
- 38 Yaza iNkosi yababonelela ukuze bangalambi, bengenakunxanwa; ewe, kananjalo yabapha ukomelela, ukuze bangabandezelwa nangaluphina uhlobo lweembandezelo, ngaphandle kokuba ziginyelwe eluvuyweni lukaKrestu. Ngoku oku kwakungenxa yomthandazo ka-Alma; kwaye oku kwakungenxa yokokuba wathandaza ngokholo.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

## Alma 32

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye babheka phambili, baza baqalisa ukushumayela ilizwi likaThixo ebantwini, bengena kwizindlu zabo zesikhungo, nasezindlwini zabo; ewe, kwaye bade balishumayela ilizwi nasezindleleni zabo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva komsebenzi omninzi onzima phakathi kwabo, baqalisa ukuba nempumelelo phakathi kwabantu abakudidi lweentsizana; kuba qaphelani, babekhutshelwe ngaphandle kwezindlu zesikhungo ngenxa yokurhwexa kwezambatho zabo—
- 3 Ke ngoko babengavunyelwa ukungena kwizindlu zezikhungo zabo ukuba banqule uThixo, kuba bethatyathwa njengokungcola; ke ngoko babengamahlwempu; ewe, abazalwana babo babebathabatha njengabantu abangumququ; ke ngoko babengamahlwempu kwizinto zehlabathi; kananjalo babengamahlwempu ezintliziyweni.
- 4 Ngoku, xa uAlma wayefundisa kwaye ethetha nabantu phezu kwenduli yaseOnayida, apho kweza isihlwele esikhulu kuye, esingabo besithetha ngabo, ababengamahlwempu ngentliziyo, ngenxa yobuhlwempu babo ngezinto zehlabathi.
- 5 Kwaye beza kuAlma; waza lowo wayeyinkokheli eyiyona iphambili phakathi kwabo wathi kuye: Qaphela, baza kuthini abazalwana bam aba, kuba bayadelwa ngabo bonke abantu ngenxa yobuhlwempu babo, ewe, kwaye ngokungakumbi ngababingeleli bethu; kuba basikhuphele ngaphandle kwezindlu zethu zesikhungo esisebenze kakhulu ukuzakha ngezandla zethu; kwaye basikhuphele ngaphandle ngenxa yobuhlwempu bethu obugqithileyo; kwaye asinayo indawo yokunqula uThixo wethu; kwaye qaphelani, siza kuthini?
- 6 Kwaye ngoku xa uAlma esiva la mazwi, waguquka, ubuso bakhe bajonga ngqo ngakuye, waza wabona ngovuyo olukhulu; kuba wabona ukuba iimbandezelo zabo zibenze bathobeka ngokwenene, kwaye nokokuba babelungiselelwa ukuliva ilizwi.

## Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.



- 7 Ke ngoko akabuyanga athethe okungakumbi kwesinye isihlwele; kodwa wasolula isandla sakhe, waza wadanduluka kwabo wayebajongile, ababezohlwaye ngokwenene, waza wathi kubo:
- 8 Ndiyabona ukuba nithobekile entliziyweni; kwaye ukuba kunjalo, nisikelelwe nina.
- 9 Qaphelani umzalwana wenu uthe, siza kuthini?— kuba sikhutshelwe ngaphandle kwezindlu zesikhungo zethu, ukuze singabinako ukumnqula uThixo wethu.
- 10 Qaphelani ndithi kuni, ingaba nicinga okokuba aninako ukumnqula uThixo ngaphandle nje kuphela kwasezindlwini zesikhungo zenu?
- 11 Kwaye ngaphezu koko, ndingabuza, nicinga ukuba akufunekanga nimnqule uThixo ngaphandle kokuba kube kanye nje kuphela ngeveki?
- 12 Ndithi kuni, kuhle ukuba nikhutshelwe ngaphandle kwezindlu zesikhungo zenu, ukuze nibe nokuthobeka, nokuze nifunde ubulumko; kuba kuyafuneka ukuba nifunde ubulumko; kuba kungenxa yoko nikhutshelwe ngaphandle, ukuba nidelwa ngabazalwana benu ngenxa yobuhlwempu benu obugqithileyo, ukuze niziswe ekuthobekeni kwentliziyiyo; kuba niziswa ngokuyimfuneko ekubeni nithobeke.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokuba ninyanzelwe ukuba nithobeke nisikelelwe nina; kuba umntu ngamanye amaxesha, ukuba uyanyanzelwa ukuba athobeke, uye afune ukuguquka; kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo, nabani na oqukayo uya kufumana inceba; kwaye lowo ufumana inceba aze anyamezele ukuya esiphelweni yena lowo uya kusindiswa.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko nditshilo kuni, ukuba ngenxa yokuba nanyanzelwa ukuba nithobeke nasikelelwa, ingaba anicingi ukuba basikelelwe ngakumbi abo bazithoba ngokwenene ngenxa yelizwi?
- 15 Ewe, lowo uzithoba ngokwenene, kwaye aguquke ezonweni zakhe, kwaye anyamezele ukuya esiphelweni, yena lowo uya kusikelelwa—ewe, uya kusikelelwa ngaphezulu ngakumbi kunabo banyanzelwayo ukuthobeka ngenxa yobuhlwempu babo obugqithileyo.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?— for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

- 16 Ke ngoko, basikelelwe abo bazithobayo ngaphandle kokunyanzelwa ukuba bathobeke; okanye ngoko, ngamanye amazwi, usikelelwe lowo ukholwayo elizwini likaThixo, kwaye abhaptizwe ngaphandle kwenkani yentliziyo, ewe, ngaphandle kokuba baziswe ekulazini ilizwi, okanye banyanzelwe kwa ekwazini, phambi kokuba bakholelwe.
- 17 Ewe, baninzi abathi: Ukuba ungasibonisa umqondiso ovela ezulwini, ke siya kukwazi ngokwenene; ke siya kukholwa.
- 18 Ngoku ndiyabuza, ingaba lukholo olo? Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Hayi; kuba ukuba umntu uyayazi into akukho sizathu sokuba akholwe, kuba uyayazi.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, ingaba uqalekiswa ngaphezulu kangakanani lowo uyaziyo intando kaThixo aze angayenzi, kunalowo okholwayo nje kuphela, okanye onesizathu kuphela sokukholwa, aze awele ekwaphuleni umthetho?
- 20 Ngoku kufuneka nigwebe malunga noku. Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, kunjalo kwesinye isandla nanjengokuba kukwanjalo nakwesinye; kwaye kuya kuba njalo emntwini wonke ngokwemisebenzi yakhe.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku njengokuba senditshilo malunga nokholo—ukholo asikokuba nolwazi olufezekileyo lwezinto; ke ngoko ukuba unalo ukholo uthemba izinto ezingabonwayo, eziyinyani.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ndithi kuni, kwaye ndinga ningakhumbula, ukuba uThixo unenceba kubo bonke abakholwayo egameni lakhe; ke ngoko, unqwenela, okokuqala ukuba nikholwe, ewe, kwanakulo ilizwi lakhe.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku, ulabela ilizwi lakhe ebantwini ngeengelosi, ewe, hayi emadodeni kuphela kodwa nakubo abafazi kanjalo. Ngoku akuphelelanga apha; abantwana abancinane bayawanikwa amazwi ngamaxesha amaninzi, athi athobeke phantsi izilumko nezifundiswa.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, njengokuba ninqwenela ukwazi kum ukuba nenze ntoni kuba nibandezelekile kwaye nikhutshelwe phandle—ngoku andinqweneli ukuba nicinge ukuba ndijonge ukunigweba kuphela ngokwaloo nto iyinyani—

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

- 25 Kuba andithethi ukuthi nonke ninyanzelwe ukuzithoba; kuba ndiyakholwa ngokwenene ukuba bakhona phakathi kwenu ababeza kuzithoba, nokuba babekwezphi na iimeko.
- 26 Ngoku, njengoko benditshilo malunga nokholo —okokuba yayingelulo ulwazi olufezekileyo —kukwanjalo ke nangamazwi am. Aninako ukuyazi ingqiniseko yawo ekuqaleni, ngokufezekileyo, nanjengokuba nokholo lungelolwazi lugqibeleleyo.
- 27 Kodwa qaphelani, ukuba ningavuka niphaphamise amandla eengqondo zenu, nokuba nize niwalinge amazwi am, nize nisebenzise isuntswana lokholo, ewe, nokokuba ingangumnqweno nje wokukholwa, nivumele lo mnqweno usebenze phakathi kwenu, ngokokude nikhholwe ngendlela eninokuthi ninike indawo yenxalenye yamazwi am.
- 28 Ngoku, siza kulifanisa ilizwi nembewu. Ngoku, ukuba unika indawo, yokuba imbewu ibenokutyalwa ezintliziyweni zenu, qaphelani, ukuba yimbewu yokwenyani, okanye yimbewu elungileyo, ukuba aniyikhupheli ngaphandle ngenxa yokungakhohwa kwenu, niphikisane noMoya weNkosi, qaphelani, iya kuqalisa ukukhukhumala ezifubeni zenu; kwaye xa nisiva ezi ntshukumo zokukhukhumala, niya kuqalisa ukuthi ngaphakathi kwenu—Kumele ukuba ibe yimbewu elungileyo le, okanye nokokuba ilizwi lilungile, kuba liqalisa ukuwukhukhumalisa umphefumlo wam; ewe, liqalisa ukukhanyisa ukuqonda kwam, ewe, liqalisa ukuba luncuthu kum.
- 29 Ngoku qaphelani, akungekhe oku kulwandise ukholo lwenu? Ndithi kuni, Ewe; nangona kunjalo ayikhulanga yaba lulwazi olugqibeleleyo.
- 30 Kodwa qaphelani, njengokuba imbewu ikhukhumala, ize intshule, kwaye iqalise ukukhula, ngoko kufuneka uthi yimbewu elungileyo; kuba qaphela iyakhukhumala, kwaye iyantshula, kwaye iqalisa ukukhula. Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ingaba oku akunako ukulomeleza ukholo lwenu? Ewe, kuya kulomeleza ukholo lwenu: kuba niya kuthi ndiyazi ukuba le yimbewu elungileyo; kuba qaphelani iyantshula kwaye iqalisa ukukhula.

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

- 31 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ingaba uqinisekile ukuba le yimbewu elungileyo? Ndithi kuni, Ewe; kuba yonke imbewu ivelisa okufana nayo.
- 32 Ke ngoko, ukuba imbewu iyakhula ilungile, kodwa ukuba ayikhuli, qaphelani ayilungile, ke ngoko iyalahlwa.
- 33 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ngenxa yokuba nilizamile ilinge, naza nayityala imbewu, yaza yakhukhumala kwaye yantshula, kwaye yaqalisa ukukhula, kufuneka nazi ukuba imbewu ilungile.
- 34 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ingaba ulwazi lwenu lufezekile? Ewe, ulwazi lwenu lufezekile kuloo nto, kwaye ukholo lwenu lulele; kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba niyazi, kuba niyazi ukuba ilizwi liyikhukhumalise imiphefumlo yenu, kananjalo niyazi ukuba lintshulile, nokokuba ukuqonda kwenu kuqalisa ukukhanyiselwa, kwaye ingqondo yenu iqalisa ukwanda.
- 35 Owu ke, ingaba oku akuyonto ikhoyo? Ndithi kuni, Ewe, kuba ikukukhanya; kwaye nantonina ekukukhanya, ilungile, kuba iyaqondakala, ke ngoko kufuneka nazi ukuba ilungile; kwaye ngoku qaphelani, emva kokuba nikungcamle oku kukhanya ingaba ulwazi lwenu lufezekile?
- 36 Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi; kungafuneki nokuba nilubeke ukholo lwenu ecaleni, kuba nisasebenzise ukholo lwenu nje kuphela ukuba nityale imbewu ukuze nibe nokulizama ilinge ukuze nazi ukuba imbewu ilungile kusini na.
- 37 Kwaye qaphelani, njengoko umthi uqalisa ukukhula, niza kuthi: Masiwondle ngeyona nkathalo inkulu, ukuze umile iingcambu, ukuze ube nokukhula, uze usivelisele iziqhamo. Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ukuba niwondla ngenkathalo enkulu uza kukhula iingcambu, uze ukhule, uze uvelise iziqhamo.
- 38 Kodwa ukuba aniwunyamekeli umthi, kwaye ningacingi nto ngokondleka kwawo, qaphelani awunakukhula zingcambu; kwaye xa ubushushu belanga bufika buze buwutshise, kuba ungenazo iingcambu uya kubuna, kwaye uya kuwuncothula uwulahlele ngaphandle.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

- 39 Ngoku, oku asikokuba imbewu ibe ingalunganga, kungengakuba iziqhamo zawo bezingayi kunqweneleka; kodwa kungenxa yokuba umhlaba wakho uyinkqantosi, kwaye akuwondli umthi, ke ngoko akunako ukufumana iziqhamo kuwo.
- 40 Kwaye njalo ke, ukuba akulondli ilizwi, ujonge phambili ngeliso lokholo, kuzo iziqhamo zalo, akungeke uzikhe iziqhamo zomthi wobomi.
- 41 Kodwa ukuba uza kulondla ilizwi, ewe, uwondle umthi njengoko uqalisa ukukhula, ngokholo lwakho nge yona nkuthalo inkulu, nangomonde, ujonge phambili kuzo iziqhamo zawo, uya kumila iingcambu; kwaye qaphelani uya kuba ngumthi ohlumela kubomi obungunaphakade.
- 42 Kwaye ngenxa yokuwondla ngelizwi ngenkuthalo yakho nokholo lwakho nomonde wakho, qaphelani, ethubeni uya kukha isiqhamo sawo esisesona, sixabiseke kakhulu, esimnandi ngaphezu kwabo bonke ukumnandi, kwaye esimhlophe ngaphezu kwayo yonke into emhlophe, ewe, kwaye esicwenge ngaphezu kwayo yonke into ecwengileyo; kwaye niya kudla kwesi siqhamo nide nihluthe, ukuze ningalambi, ningayi kunxanwa.
- 43 Ngoku, bazalwana bam, niya kuvuna imivuzo yokholo lwenu, nenkuthalo yenu, nomonde, nokuzeka kade umsindo, nilinde ukuba umthi univelisele iziqhamo.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

## Alma 33

- 1 Ngoku akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi, bathumela kuye benqwenela ukwazi ukuba bangakholelwa na kuThixo omnye, ukuze babe nokuzuza esi siqhamo eso athe wathetha ngaso, okanye bangayityala njani na imbewu, okanye ilizwi elo athe wathetha ngalo, elo athe kufuneka lityalwe ezintliziyweni zabo; okanye kungahlobo luni na ekumele baqalise ngalo ukulusebenzisa ukholo lwabo.
- 2 Waza uAlma wathi kubo: Qaphelani, nithe aninako ukunqula uThixo wenu ngenxa yokuba nikhutshelwa ngaphandle kwezindlu zenu zesikhungo. Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ukuba nicinga okokuba aninako ukunqula uThixo, nenza imposiso enkulu, kwaye kufanele niziphengulule izibhalo; ukuba nicinga ukuba zinifundise oku, aniziqondi.
- 3 Niyakhumbula na nifunda oko uZenoshe, umprofeti wakudala, akuthethayo malunga nomthandazo okanye unqulo?
- 4 Kuba wathi: Unenceba wena, Owu Thixo, kuba uwuvile umthandazo wam, kwanangelixa endandisentlango; ewe, waba nenceba xa ndandithandaza malunga nabo babeziintshaba zam, kwaye waziguqulela ngakum.
- 5 Ewe, Owu Thixo, kwaye waba nenceba wena kum xa ndaye ndamemeza kuwe entsimini yam; xa ndaye ndamemeza kuwe ngomthandazo wam, waza wena wandiva.
- 6 Kwaye kwakhona, Owu Thixo, xa ndandisiya endlwini yam waye wandiva kumthandazo wam.
- 7 Kwaye xa ndaye ndisiya egumbini lam langasese, Owu Nkosi, ndaza ndathandaza kuwe, waye wandiva.
- 8 Ewe, unenceba wena kubo abantwana bakho xa bememeza kuwe, ukuba baviwe nguwe kwaye hayi ngabantu, kwaye uya kubeva.
- 9 Ewe, Owu Thixo, ube nenceba wena kum, kwaye waziva izikhalo zam phakathi kwamabandla akho.

## Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

- 10 Ewe, kananjalo undivile xa bendikhutshelwa ngaphandle kwaye ndicekiswa ziintshaba zam; ewe, waye waziva izikhalo zam, waza wanomsindo kuzo iintshaba zam, kwaye waye wazivelela ngomsindo wakho ngentshabalalo ekhawulezileyo.
- 11 Kwaye waye wandiva ngenxa yeembandezelo zam nokunyaniseka kwam; kwaye kungenxa yoNyana wakho ukuba ube nenceba ngolu hlobo kum, ke ngoko ndiya kukhala kuwe kuzo zonke iimbandezelo zam, kuba uvuyo lwam lukuwe; kuba izigwebo zakho wazirhoxisa kum, ngenxa yoNyana wakho.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku uAlma wathi kubo: Ingaba niyazikholelwa ezo zibhalo zibhalwe ngabo bakudala?
- 13 Qaphelani, ukuba niyakholelwa, kufuneka nikukholelwe oko kwathethwa nguZenoshe; kuba, qaphelani wathi: Uzirhoxisile izigwebo zakho ngenxa yoNyana wakho.
- 14 Ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam, ndinganibuza ukuba ingaba nizifundile na izibhalo? Ukuba nizifundile, kungani ukuba ningakholelwa kuye uNyana kaThixo?
- 15 Kuba akubhalwanga ukuba nguZenoshe yedwa othethe ezi zinto, kodwa noZenokhi kanjalo wathetha ngazo ezi zinto—
- 16 Kuba qaphelani, wathi: Unomsindo, Owu Nkosi kubo aba bantu, ngenxa yokuba bengafuni ukuziqonda iinceba zakho othe wazibeka phezu kwabo ngenxa yoNyana wakho.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, niyabona okokuba owesibini umprofeti wakudala ungqinile ngoNyana kaThixo, kwaye ngenxa yokokuba abantu babengafuni ukuwaqonda amazwi akhe bamxuluba ngamatye wafa.
- 18 Kodwa qaphelani, akuphelelanga apho; aba asingabo kuphela abathethileyo malunga noNyana kaThixo.
- 19 Qaphelani, kwakuthethwe ngaye nguMoses; ewe, kwaye qaphelani umzekelo waphakanyiswa entlango, ukuze nabani na oya kukhangela kuwo abe nokuphila. Kwaye abaninzi baye bakhangela baza baphila.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20 Kodwa bambalwa abayiqondayo intsingiselo yezo zinto, kwaye oku kungenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabo. Kodwa kwakukho abaninzi ababeqaqadekile kangangokuba abazange bafune ukukhangela, ke ngoko bafa. Ngoku unobangela wokokuba bangafuni ukukhangela kungenxa yokokuba babengakholelwa ukuba bangabaphilisa.

21 Owu bazalwana bam, ukuba ningaphiliswa nje kuphela ngokuphosa amehlo enu ukuze nibe nokuphiliswa, aningekhangeli ngokukhawuleza, okanye ningaxolela ukuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zenu ngokungakholwa, nize nivilaphe, ukuba ningawaphosi amehlo enu, ukuze nibe nokutshabalala?

22 Ukuba kunjalo, isiqalekiso siya kufika phezu kwenu; kodwa ukuba akunjalo, waphoseni ngapha nangapha ke amehlo enu nize niqalise ukukholelwa kuNyana kaThixo, okokuba uya kuza abakhulule abantu bakhe, nokokuba uya kuva iintlungu aze afe ukuze ahlawulele izono zabo; nokokuba uya kuvuka kwakhona kwelabafileyo, okuya kubangela kwenzeke uvuko, lokuba bonke abantu baze beme phambi kwakhe, ukuze bagwetywe ngowokugqibela nowomgwebo umhla, ngokwemisebenzi yabo.

23 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinqwenela okokuba niya kulityala eli lizwi ezintliziyweni zenu, kwaye njengokuba liqalisa ukudumba kanjalo londleni ngokholo lwenu. Kwaye qaphelani, liya kuba ngumthi, ohlumela kuni ukuya kubomi banaphakade. Kwaye ke wanga uThixo anganinika ukuba imithwalo yenu ibelula, ngovuyo loNyana wakhe. Kwanako konke oku eninokukwenza ukuba niyafuna. Amen.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.



## Alma 34

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma ethethe la mazwi kubo wahlala phantsi emhlabeni, waza uAmyuleki waphakama kwaye waqalisa ukubafundisa, esithi:
- 2 Bazalwana bam, ndicinga ukuba akunakwenzeka ukuba ningabinalwazi ngezinto ezithethiweyo malunga nokuza kukaKrestu, esinifundisa ukuba unguNyana kaThixo; ewe, ndiyazi ukuba ezi zinto nanizifundisiwe ngokubanzi phambi kokukreqa kwenu phakathi kwethu.
- 3 Kwaye njengoko beninqwenela ukuba umzalwana wam othandekayo anazise ngoko nimele nikwenze, ngenxa yeembandezelo zenu; kwaye uthethe nje noko nani ukulungiselela iingqondo zenu; ewe, kwaye uniyalele ukuba nibe nokholo nomonde—
- 4 Ewe, nokokude nibe nokholo kangangokuba nibe nako ukulityala ilizwi ezintliziyweni zenu, ukuze nilizame ilinge lokulunga kwalo.
- 5 Kwaye sibonile ukuba umbuzo omkhulu osezinqondweni zenu ngowokuba ingaba ilizwi likuNyana kaThixo na, okanye nokokuba akuyi kubakho Krestu.
- 6 Kananjalo nibonile ukuba umzalwana wam ubonisile kuni, ngamaxesha amaninzi, okokuba ilizwi likuKrestu elisa elusindisweni.
- 7 Umzalwana wam ucaphule kumazwi kaZenoshe, awokuba inkululeko iza ngoNyana kaThixo, kananjalo nakumazwi kaZenokhi; kananjalo ucaphule nakuMoses, ukungqina ukuba ezi zinto ziyinyani.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ndiza kungqina kuni ngokwam ukuba ezi zinto ziyinyani. Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ndiyazi ukuba uKrestu uya kuza phakathi kwabantwana babantu, ukuthabathela kuye izigqitho zabantu bakhe, nokuba uya kuhlawulela izono zehlabathi; kuba iNkosi uThixo ikuthethile.

## Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 Kuba kuyimfuneko ukuba intlawulelo yenziwe; kuba ngokwecebo elikhulu likaThixo waNaphakade kufuneka kubekho intlawulelo eyenziwayo, kungenjalo lonke uluntu kufuneka ngokungenakuphetshwa lutshabalale; ewe, bonke baqaqadekile; ewe, bonke bawile kwaye balahlekile, kwaye kufuneka batshabalale ngaphandle kokuba kwenziwe intlawulelo ekuyimfuneko ukuba yenziwe.

10 Kuba kuyimfuneko ukuba kubekho idini elikhulu nelokugqibela; ewe, hayi idini lomntu, nalo elesilo, naluphi na uhlobo lweentaka; kuba aliyi kuba lidini lomntu; kodwa kufuneka libe lidini elingenasiphelo nelanaphakade.

11 Ngoku akukho namnye umntu onako ukuncama igazi elilakhe eliya kuhlalulela izono zomnye. Ngoku, ukuba umntu uyabulala, qaphelani ingaba umthetho wethu onobulungisa ungabuthabathana ubomi bomzalwana wakho? Ndithi kuni, Hayi.

12 Kodwa umthetho ufuna ubomi balowo ubuleleyo; ke ngoko akunakubakho nto nganeno kwentlawulelo engenamda enokwanela izono zehlabathi.

13 Ke ngoko, kuyimfuneko ukuba kubekho idini elikhulu nelokugqibela, kwaye ngoko kuya kubakho, okanye kuyimfuneko ukuba kubekho, ukuphela kwempalalo-gazi; ngoko uya kuzalisekiswa umthetho kaMoses; ewe, uya kuzalisekiswa wonke, onke amaganyana namasuntswana, kwaye akuyi kubakho nalinye eliya kudlula.

14 Kwaye qaphelani, oku kuyiyo yonke intsingiselo yomthetho, lonke isuntswana lolatha kwelo dini likhulu nelokugqibela; kwaye eloo dini likhulu nelokugqibela liya kuba nguNyana kaThixo, ewe, elingenasiphelo nelingunaphakade.

15 Kwaye njalo uya kuzisa usindiso kubo bonke abaya kukholwa egameni lakhe; oku ke kuyinjongo yeli dini lokugqibela, ukuzisa imbilini yemfesane, eyoyisa nobulungisa, kwaye eyazisa abantu indlela yokuba babenokholo baze baguquke.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

16 Kwaye njalo inceba inokuzanelisa iimfuno zobulungisa, kwaye ibarhangqe ngeengalo zokhuselo, ngeli lixa lowo ungalusebenzisiyo ukhohlo ukuya enguqukweni edandalazisiwe kuwo wonke umthetho weemfuno zobulungisa; ke ngoko, icebo elikhulu lanaphakade lenkululeko liziswa kulowo kuphela unokhohlo aze aguquke.

17 Ke ngoko, wanga uThixo anganinika, bazalwana bam, ukuba nibenako ukuqalisa ukulusebenzisa ukhohlo lwenu nize niguquke, ukuze niqalise ukulibiza igama lakhe elingcwele ukuze abe nenceba kuni.

18 Ewe, khalani kuye ukucela inceba; kuba unamandlakazi okusindisa.

19 Ewe, zithobeni, niqhubeke ngokuthandaza kuye.

20 Khalani kuye xa nisemasimini enu, ewe, naphezu kwemihlambi yenu yonke.

21 Khalani kuye ezindlwini zenu, ewe, phezu kosapho lwenu lonke, kunye ekuseni, emini emaqanda, nangorhatya.

22 Ewe, khalani kuye ngokuchasene namandla eentshaba zenu.

23 Ewe, khalani kuye ngokuchasene nomtyholi, olutshaba labo bonke ubulungisa.

24 Khalani kuye ngezityalo zamasimi enu, ukuze niphumelele kuwo.

25 Khalani ngemihlambi yamadlelo enu, ukuze yande.

26 Kodwa akuphelelanga apha, yithululeni imiphefumlo yenu emagumbini enu afihlakeleyo, nasezindaweni zenu ezifihlakeleyo, nakwiintlanga zenu.

27 Ewe, kwaye xa ningakhali kuyo iNkosi, zivumeleni iintliziyo zenu ukuba zizale, zitsaleleke emthandazweni kuye ngalo lonke ixesha ukwenzela intlalo-ntle yenu, kanaanjalo nentlalo-ntle yabo baningqongileyo.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

- 28 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndithi kuni, musani ukucinga ukuba kuphelele apho; kuba emva kokuba nizenzile zonke ezi zinto, ukuba niyabagxotha abasweleyo, nabaze, ningabandwendweli abagulayo nababandezelekileyo, nize ninikele ngezinto zenu, ukuba ninazo, kwabo basweleyo—Ndithi kuni, ukuba anenzi nayiphi kwezi zinto, qaphelani, umthandazo wenu ulilize, kwaye awuloncedo kuni, kwaye ningabahanahanisi abakhanyela ukholo.
- 29 Ke ngoko, ukuba anikukhumbuli ukuba nothando lwenene, nifana nomququ, othi ulahlwe ngaphandle ngabanyibilikisi, (kuba ungenaxabiso) kwaye unyathelwa phantsi kweenyawo zabantu.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, ndinqwenela okokuba, emva kokuba nifumene amangqina amaninzi kangaka, nibonile ukuba izibhalo ezingcwele ziya zingqina ezi zinto, yizani ngaphambili kwaye nizise iziqhamo enguqukweni.
- 31 Ewe, ndinga ningeza ngaphambili kwaye ningaziqadekisi iintliziyo zenu kwakhona; kuba qaphelani, ngoku lilixa nomhla wosindiso lweni; kwaye ke ngoko, ukuba niya kuguquke kwaye ningaziqadekisi iintliziyo zenu, ngoko nangoko icebo elikhulu lenkululeko liya kuziswa nangakuni.
- 32 Kuba qaphelani, obu bomi lilixa lokuba abantu bazilungiselele ukuhlangana noThixo; ewe, qaphelani umhla wobu bomi ngumhla wokuba abantu benze imisebenzi yabo.
- 33 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko benditshilo kuni ngaphambili, njengokuba nibe namangqina amaninzi kangaka, ke ngoko, ndiyabongozisa ukuba ningawulibazisi umhla wenguquko yenu kude kube sekupheleni; kuba emva kwalo mhla wobomi, esiwunikiweyo ukuba sizilungiselele unaphakade, qaphelani, ukuba asiliphuculi ithuba lethu ngeli lixa sikobu bomi, ngoko kuza ubusuku bobumnyama ekungenakube kubekho msebenzi onokwenziwa.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34 Aninako ukuthi, xa nizi swa kwelo xesha linzima loyikekayo, ukuthi ndiza kuguquka, ukuthi ndiza kubuyela kuThixo wam. Hayi, aninako ukukutsho oku; kuba kwaloo moya ulawula imizimba yenu ngeli lixa niphuma kobu bomi, kwawona loo moya uya kuba namandla wokuwulawula umzimba wenu kwelo hlabathi lanaphakade.

35 Kuba qaphelani, ukuba niyawulibazisa umhla wenguquko yenu kude kube sekufeni, qaphelani, niya kuba nizibeke phantsi kolawulo lomoya kamtyholi, kwaye unitywinelele ekubeni ngabakhe; ke ngoko, uMoya weNkosi urhoxile kuni, kwaye awunandawo kuni, kwaye umtyholi unawo onke amandla phezu kwenu; kwaye le yimo yokugqibela yabakhohlakeleyo.

36 Kwaye oku ndiyakwazi, ngenxa yokuba iNkosi itshilo ukuthi ayihlali ezitempileni ezingengcwele, kodwa ezintliziyweni zamalungisa iyahlala; ewe, kananjalo itshilo nokuthi amalungisa aya kuhlala phantsi ebukumkanini bayo, ukuze angaphindi aphumele ngaphandle; kodwa izambatho zawo kumele zenziwe mhlophe ngegazi leMvana.

37 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndinqwenela ukuba nizikhumbule ezi zinto, kwaye nokokuba nilusebenzele usindiso lwenu ngoloyiko phambi koThixo, nokokuba ningabuyi nikukhanyele ukuza kukaKrestu.

38 Nokokuba ningabuyi niphikisane noMoya oyiNgcwele, kodwa niwamkele, kwaye nithabathele kuni igama likaKrestu; nokokuba nizithobe ngokude kuse eluthulini, kwaye ninqule uThixo, nakuyiphi na indawo eniya kube nikuyo, ngomoya nangenyaniso; nokokuba nihlale ninemibulelo imihla yonke, ngenxa yeenceba neentsikelelo ezininzi athi azibeke phezu kwenu.

39 Ewe, kwaye ndiyaniyalela kanjalo, bazalwana bam, ukuba nikuphaphalele ukuthandaza ngamaxesha onke, ukuze ningalahlekiswa zizihendo zikamtyholi, ukuze anganoyisi, okokuba ningabi phantsi kwakhe ngomhla wokugqibela; kuba qaphelani, akanivuzi nganto ilungileyo.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.

40 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam abathandekayo,  
ndiza kuniyalela ukuba nibe nomonde, nokokuba  
ninyamezele lonke uhlobo lweembandezelo;  
okokuba ningabanyelisi abanilahlela ngaphandle  
ngenxa yobuhlwempu benu obugqithisileyo, kuba  
hleze nibe ngaboni njengabo;

41 Kodwa nje ukuba nibe nomonde, kwaye  
ninyamezele ezo mbandezelo, ngethemba  
eliqinileyo lokokuba ngenye imini niya kuphumla  
kuzo zonke iimbandezelo zenu.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort  
you to have patience, and that ye bear with all man-  
ner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those  
who do cast you out because of your exceeding  
poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those af-  
flictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest  
from all your afflictions.

## Alma 35

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAmyuleki ephezile ukuthetha la mazwi, bazikhupha kuso isihlwele baza baya ngaphesheya kulo ilizwe laseYershan.
- 2 Ewe, kwaye nabaseleyo kubazalwana, emva kokuba belishumayeke ilizwi kumaZoramayithi, nabo kanjalo baya ngaphesheya kulo ilizwe laseYershan.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba eyona nxalenye ibaluleke ngakumbi yamaZoramayithi yabonisana kunye ngokunxulumene namazwi athe ashunyayelwa kuwo, abanomsindo ngenxa yelizwi, kuba laye lazitshabalalisa izenzo zawo zobuqhinga; ke ngoko awazange afune ukuwaphulaphula amazwi.
- 4 Aza athumela kwaye ahlanganisana kunye bonke abantu kulo lonke ilizwe, aza abonisana kunye nabo ngokunxulumene namazwi athethiweyo.
- 5 Ngoku abalawuli babo nababingeleli babo nootitshala babo abazange babazise abantu malunga neminqweno yabo; ke ngoko bazifumanisa ekhusini izimvo zabo bonke abantu.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba bezifumanisile izimvo zabo bonke abantu, abo babevumelana namazwi abethethwe nguAlma nabazalwana bakhe bakhutshelwa ngaphandle kwelizwe; kwaye babebaninzi; kwaye nabo kanjalo baya ngaphesheya bangena kulo ilizwe laseYershan.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAlma nabazalwana bakhe baye babafundisa.
- 8 Ngoku abantu bamaZoramayithi baba nomsindo ngakubantu baka-Amon ababeseYershan, kwaye nomlawuli oyintloko wamaZoramayithi, ekubeni eyindoda ekhohlakele kakhulu, wathumela ngaphesheya kubantu baka-Amon enqwenela ukuba babakhuphele ngaphandle kwelizwe labo bonke abo babewelegele ngaphesheya besuka kubo bangena elizweni labo.

## Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

9 Kwaye wafutha izisongelo ezininzi ngokuchasene nabo. Kwaye ngoku abantu baka-Amon abazange bawoyike amazwi abo; ke ngoko abazange babakhuphele ngaphandle, kodwa baye babamkela bonke abangamahlwempu bamaZoramayithi abathi beza kubo; kwaye baye babondla, babombesa, kwaye baye babanika imihlaba njengelifa labo; kwaye babalungiselela ngokweemfuno zabo.

10 Ngoku oku kwawavuselela emsindweni amaZoramayithi ngokuchasene nabantu baka-Amon, baza baqalisa ukuxubana kunye namaLeymenayithi nokuwavuselela nawo kanjalo emsindweni ngokuchasene nabo.

11 Kwaye njalo amaZoramayithi namaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukwenza amalungiselelo emfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu baka-Amon, kananjalo nangokuchasene namaNifayithi.

12 Waza njalo waphela oweshumi elinesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

13 Baza abantu baka-Amon balishiya ilizwe laseYershan, baza baya ngaphesheya bangena elizweni laseMeleki, baza benzela imikhosi yamaNifayithi indawo elizweni laseYershan, ukuze abe nokubambana kunye nemikhosi yamaLeymenayithi nemikhosi yamaZoramayithi; kwaza njalo kwaqalisa imfazwe phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi namaNifayithi, koweshumi elinesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi; kwaye ingxelo yeemfazwe zabo iya kunikwa emva koku.

14 Waza uAlma, noAmon, nabazalwana babo, kananjalo noonyana ababini baka-Alma babuyela elizweni laseZarahemla, emva kokuba bebezizixhobo ezandleni zikaThixo zokuzisa abaninzi bamaZoramayithi enguqukwani; kwaye ngobuninzi babo ababeziswe enguqukwani bagxothelwa ngaphandle kwelizwe labo; kodwa banayo imihlaba yelifa labo kulo ilizwe laseYershan, kwaye balwile ukuze bazikhusele, nabafazi babo, nabantwana, nemihlaba yabo.

And he breathed out many threatenings against them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them; and they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance; and they did administer unto them according to their wants.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the land of Jershon, and came over into the land of Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance; and as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon, and they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their wives, and children, and their lands.



15 Ngoku uAlma, elusizi ngenxa yobugwenxa babantu bakhe, ewe nangenxa yeemfazwe, nempalalo-gazi, neembambano ezaye ziphakathi kwabo; kwaye nasekubeni ebevela kuvakalisa ilizwi, okanye ebethunyiwe ukuba avakalise ilizwi, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu kuzo zonke izixeko; kwaye ebona okokuba iintliziyo zabantu zaqalisa ukuba lukhuni, nokokuba baqalisa ukukhubeka ngenxa yobungqongqo belizwi, intliziyo yakhe yabalusizi ngokugqithisileyo.

16 Ke ngoko, wabangela akokuba oonyana bakhe bahlanganiswe kunye, ukuze abe nokubanika elowo umsebenzi wakhe, ngokwahlukeneyo, ngokunxulumene nezinto eziphathelele nasebulungiseni. Kwaye sinayo ingxelo yemiyalelo yakhe, awathi wabanika yona ngokweyakhe imbali.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

## Alma 36

- 1 Nyana wam, wanike indlebe amazwi am; kuba ndiyafunga kuwe, okokuba kangangokuba uya kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo uya kuphumelela elizweni.
- 2 Ndinga ungenza njengoko ndenzayo, ngokukhumbula ubuthinjwa boobawo; kuba babesebukhobokeni, kwaye kwakungekho namnye unokubahlangula ngaphandle kokuba ibe nguThixo ka-Abraham, noThixo kaIsake, noThixo kaYakobi; kwaye ngokwenene waye wabahlangula kwiimbandezelo zabo.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, Owu nyana wam Hilamani, qaphela, usebutsheni bakho, kwaye ke ngoko, ndiyakubongoza ukuba uwaphulaphule amazwi am kwaye ufunde kum; kuba ndiyazi okokuba nobani na abaya kubeka ithemba lakhe kuThixo baya kuxhaswa kuzo izilingo zabo, neenkathazo zabo, neembandezelo zabo, kwaye baya kuphakanyiswa ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 4 Kwaye andifuni okokuba ucinge ukuba ndiyazazela—ingekuko okwenyama kodwa kungokomoya, ingekuko okwengqondo yenyama kodwa kungokukaThixo.
- 5 Ngoku, qaphela, ndithi kuwe, ukuba bendingazalwanga ngokukaThixo ndinge ndingazazanga ezi zinto; kodwa uThixo; ngomlomo wengelosi yakhe engcwele, wenze okokuba zazeke ezi zinto kum, ingengakufaneleka kwam;
- 6 Kuba ndandihamba-hamba noonyana bakaMozaya, ndizama ukutshabalalisa ibandla likaThixo; kodwa qaphela, uThixo wathumela ingelosi yakhe engcwele ukuba isimise ecaleni komgaqo.
- 7 Kwaye qaphela, yathetha nathi, ngokungathi yayilizwi lendudumo, kwaye umhlaba wonke uphela waye wangangcazela ngaphantsi kweenyawo zethu; saza sonke sawela emhlabeni, kuba uloyiko lweNkosi lwafika phezu kwethu.
- 8 Kodwa qaphela, ilizwi lathi kum: Phakama. Ndaza ndaphakama ndaza ndema, ndaza ndayibona ingelosi.

## Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

- 9 Yaza yathi kum: Ukuba unqwenela ukutshatyalaliswa wena ngokwakho, uze ungaphindi ufune ukutshabalalisa ibandla likaThixo.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndawela emhlabeni; kwaye kwaba lithuba leentsuku ezintathu nobusuku obuthathu endathi andabinako ukuwuvula umlomo wam, ndingenako nokuwasebenzisa amalungu am.
- 11 Yaza ingelosi yathetha izinto ezininzi kum, ezaviwayo ngabazalwana bam, kodwa mna andizange ndizive; kuba ndathi ndakuweva amazwi athi—Ukuba unqwenela ukutshatyalaliswa wena ngokwakho, uze ungaphindi ufune ukutshabalalisa ibandla likaThixo—Ndabethwa ngoloyiko olukhulu nokumangaliswa hleze mhlawumbi ndibe nokutshatyalaliswa, ndathi ke ndawela emhlabeni ndaza andaphinda ndive nto.
- 12 Kodwa ndathuthunjiswa yintuthumbo yanaphakade, kuba umphefumlo wam wahluphekela kwelona qondo liphakamileyo kwaye wathuthunjiswa zizo zonke izono zam.
- 13 Ewe, ndaye ndazikhumbula zonke izono zam nobufwenxa, endathi ngazo ndathuthunjiswa ngeentlungu zesihogo; ewe, ndabona okokuba ndivukele ngokuchasene noThixo wam, nokokuba andiyigcinanga imiyalelo yakhe engcwele.
- 14 Ewe, kwaye ndababulala abaninzi babantwana bakhe, okanye ngenye indlela ndabakhokelela kude entshabalalweni; ewe, kwaye lilonke babugqithise kangako ubugwenxa bam, kangangokuba kwangcinga leyo yokuza kubukho boThixo wam yaye yawuthumbisa umphefumlo wam ngonkwantyo olungenakubaliswa.
- 15 Owu, ndacinga, ukuba bendinokugxothwa ndize ndibe ngongasekhoyo kunye umphefumlo nomzimba, ukuze ndingabi nakuziswa ukuba ndime kubukho bukaThixo wam, ukuba ndigwetywe ngezenzo zam.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku, kangangeentsuku ezintathu nakangangobusuku obuthathu ndathuthunjiswa, kwanangazo iintlungu zomphefumlo ogwetyiweyo.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba ndandithuthunjiswa ngentuthumbo, xa ndandihlutshwa yimkumbulo yezono zam ezininzi, qaphela, ndakhumbula kanjalo ndisiva ubawo eprofetha ebantwini malunga nokuza koYesu Krestu othile, onguNyana kaThixo, ukuza kuhlawulela izono zehlabathi.
- 18 Ngoku, njengokuba ingqondo yam yayibambelele kule ngcinga, ndakhala ngaphakathi entliziyweni yam: Owu Yesu, wena Nyana kaThixo, yiba nenceba kum, mna ndisenyongweni yobukrakra, kwaye ndirhangqwe ngapha nangapha ngamatyathanga anaphakade okufa.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, xa ndandicinga oku, andibanga nakube ndiphinde ndizikhumbule iintlungu zam; ewe, andibanga nakube ndiphinde ndihngiswe yinkumbulo yezono zam.
- 20 Kwaye owu, olunjani lona uvuyo, kwaye okunjani kona ukumangalisa ukukhanya endakubonayo; ewe, umphefumlo wam wazaliswa luvuyo olwalugqithise njengokuba yayinjalo intlungu yam!
- 21 Ewe, ndithi kuwe, nyana wam, akunakubakho nantoni na enzulu nekrakra njengokuba zazinjalo iintlungu zam. Ewe, kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuwe, nyana wam, kwelinye icala, akuna kubakho nantoni na enemvakalelo ephakamileyo kwaye nemnandi njengokuba lwalunjalo uvuyo lwam.
- 22 Ewe, mna ndikhumbula ndibona, kwananjengokuba ubawo uLihayi wabonayo, uThixo ehleli phezu kwetrone yakhe, engqongwe lihlokondiba elingenakubaleka leengelosi, zikwimo yokuvuma ingoma nokudumisa uThixo wazo; ewe, waza umphefumlo wam walangazelela ukuba lapho.
- 23 Kodwa qaphela, amalungu am aye akufumana ukomelela kwawo kwakhona, ndaza ndema ngeenyawo zam, kwaye ndabonakalisa ebantwini okokuba ndizelwe ngokukaThixo.
- 24 Ewe, kwaye ukususela kwelo lixa kude kube kalokunje, ndisebenze andapheza, ukuze ndibe nokuzisa imiphefumlo enguqukwini; ukuze ndibe nokubazisa ukuba bangcamle kuvuyo olugqithileyo endathi ndangcamla kulo; ukuze nabo kanjalo babe nokuzalwa ngokukaThixo, kwaye bazaliswe nguMoya oyiNgcwele.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

- 25 Ewe, kwaye ngoku qaphela, Owu nyana wam, iNkosi ithi indinike uvuyo olugqithisileyo kwisiqhamo semisebenzi yam;
- 26 Kuba ngenxa yelizwi ethe yalinikela kum, qaphela, abaninzi bazelwe ngokukaThixo, kwaye bangcamle njengokuba nam ndingcamle, kwaye bazibonele ngasonye njengokuba ndibonile; ke ngoko bayazi ngazo ezi zinto endithe ndathetha ngazo, njengokuba nam ndisazi; kwaye ulwazi endinalo luvela kuThixo.
- 27 Kwaye bendixhasiwe phantsi kwezilingo neenkathazo zalo lonke udidi, ewe, nakuzo zonke iintlobo zeembandezelo; ewe, uThixo undihlangule entolongweni, nasemakhamandeleni, nasekufeni; ewe, kwaye ndibeka ithemba lam kuye, kwaye uya kuhlala endihlangula.
- 28 Kwaye ndiyazi okokuba uya kundiphakamisa ngomhla wokugqibela, ukuze ndihlaze naye ebuqaqawulini; ewe, kwaye ndiya kumdumisa ngonaphakade, kuba uzise oobawo bethu baphuma eYiputa, kwaye uwaginyile amaYiputa kuLwandle oluBomvu; waza wabakhokela ngamandla akhe bangena kwilizwe lesithembiso; ewe, kwaye wabahlangua baphuma ebukhobokeni nokuthinjwa ukususela kumaxesha ngamaxesha.
- 29 Ewe, kananjalo ubazisile oobawo bethu baphuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem; kananjalo, ngamandla akhe anaphakade, wabahlangua baphuma ebukhobokeni nokuthinjwa, ukususela kumaxesha ngamaxesha kwanokude kuhle ukuza kumhla omiyo; kwaye bendisoloko ndikugcine kwiinkumbulo ukuthinjwa kwabo; ewe, kwaye ufanele kanjalo ukugcine kwiinkumbulo, ukuthinjwa kwabo, njengokuba nam ndenzile.
- 30 Kodwa qaphela, nyana wam, akuphelelanga apho; kuba ufanele wazi njengokuba nam ndisazi, okokuba kangangokuba uya kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo uya kuphumelela elizweni; kwaye ufanele wazi kanjalo, okokuba kangangokuba ungasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo uya kusikelwa ngaphandle ebusweni bakhe. Ngoku oku kungokwelizwi lakhe.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.

## Alma 37

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam Hilamani, ndikuyalela okokuba uthabathe iimbali ebendiziphathisiwe;
- 2 Kananjalo ndikuyalela okokuba ugcine imbali yaba bantu, ngokohlobo endenze ngalo, phezu kwamacwecwe kaNifayi, kwaye uzigcine zonke ezi zinto zingcwele endithe ndazigcina, kwananjengokuba ndizigcinile; kuba kungenjongo yobulumko ukuba zigcinwe.
- 3 Kwaye la macwecwe obhedu, aqulethe le mikrolo, aneembali zezibhalo ezingcwele phezu kwawo, anomlibo wezinyanya zethu, kwanokususela ekuqalekeni—
- 4 Qaphela, kuprofethiwe ngoobawo, okokuba kumele agcinwe aze anikezelwe ukuhla kususela kwesinye isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye, kwaye agcinwe aze alondolozwe ngesandla seNkosi ade abe nokubheka phambili kuso sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu, ukuze bazi ngeemfihlelo eziqulathwe phezu kwawo.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ukuba agciniwe kufuneka akugcine ukuqaqamba kwawo; ewe, kwaye aya kukugcina ukuqaqamba kwawo; ewe, kananjalo aya kuba njalo onke amacwecwe athi aqulathe oko kuzizibhalo ezingcwele.
- 6 Ngoku unokucinga okokuba obu bubuyatha obokum; kodwa qaphela ndithi kuwe, ngezinto ezincinane nezinto ezingenamsebenzi izinto ezinkulu ziyenzeka, kwaye ngeendlela ezingenamsebenzi amaxesha amaninzi zithi zikhwankqise izilumko.
- 7 Kwaye iNkosi uThixo ithi isebenze ngeendlela ukuphumeza iinjongo zayo ezinkulu nezanaphakade; kwaye ngeendlela ezincinane kakhulu iNkosi ithi ikhwankqise izilumko kwaye iphumeze usindiso lwemiphefumlo emininzi.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku, kude kube kalokunje ibe bubulumko kuThixo ukuba ezi zinto kumele zilondolozwe; kuba qaphela, zizikhulisile iinkumbulo zaba bantu, ewe, kwaye zaqinisekisa abaninzi ngokuphambuka kweendlela zabo, kwaye zabazisa kulwazi loThixo wabo ukuya elusindisweni lwemiphefumlo yabo.

## Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

9 Ewe, ndithi kuwe, ukuba bekungengazo ezi zinto ezithe zaqulathwa zezi mbali, ezikula macwecwe, uAmon nabazalwana bakhe ngebengazange babenako ukuqinisekisa amawaka amaninzi kangaka amaLeymenayithi ngokungalungi kwezithethe zooyise; ewe, ezi mbali namazwi azo zabazisa enguqukwini; ukuthi, zabazisa kulwazi lweNkosi uThixo wabo, nokugcoba kuYesu Krestu uMkhululi wabo.

10 Kwaye ngubani owaziyo mhlawumbi baya kuba yindlela yokuzisa amawaka amaninzi abo, ewe, kananjalo amawaka amaninzi abazalwana bethu abantamo zilukhuni, amaNifayithi, abathi kalokunje baziqadekise iintliziyo zabo esonweni nakubo ubugwenxa, kulo ulwazi loMkhululi wabo?

11 Ngoku ezi mfihlelo azikaziswa ngokupheleleyo kum; ke ngoko ndiya kuzibamba.

12 Kwaye kungonela ukuba ndithi nje kuphela zilondolozwe ngenjongo yobulumko, njongo leyo eyaziwa nguThixo; kuba ucebisa ngobulumko phezu kwayo yonke imisebenzi yakhe, neendlela zakhe zithe tye, kwaye umgaqo wakhe ungumjikelo omnye wanaphakade.

13 Owu khumbula, khumbula, nyana wam Hilamani, ukubangqongqo kwemiyalelo kaThixo. Kwaye wathi: Ukuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam niya kuphumelela elizweni—kodwa ukuba aniyigcini imiyalelo yakhe niya kusikelwa ngaphandle kobuso bakhe.

14 Kwaye ngoku khumbula, nyana wam, okokuba uThixo ukuphathise ezi zinto, ezingcwele, athe wazigcina zingcwele, kananjalo ezo aya kuthi azigcine kwaye azilondolozwe ngenjongo yobulumko ekuye, ukuze abe nokubonisa amandla akhe kwizizukulwana zelixa elizayo.

15 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ndikuxelela ngomoya wesiprofetho, okokuba ukuba waphula imiyalelo kaThixo, qaphela, ezi zinto zingcwele ziya kuhluthwa kuwe ngamandla kaThixo, kwaye uya kunikezelwa kuSathana, ukuze akwele njengomququ phambi komoya.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

- 16 Kodwa ukuba uyayigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye wenze ngezi zinto ezingcwele malunga naloo nto iNkosi ithe yakuyala ngayo, (kuba kufuneka ucele eNkosini ngazo zonke izinto nangantoni na ekufuneka uyenze ngazo) qaphela, akukho mandla emhlabeni okanye esihogweni anako ukuzithabatha kuwe, kuba uThixo unamandla amakhulu okuwazalisekisa onke amazwi akhe.
- 17 Kuba uya kuzifzekisa zonke izithembiso zakhe aya kuthi azenze kuwe, kuba uzifzekisile izithembiso zakhe awathi wazenza koobawo bethu.
- 18 Kuba wathembisa kubo ukuba uya kuzilondoloza ezi zinto ngenjongo yobulumko ekuye, ukuze abe nokubonisa amandla akhe kwizizukulwana zelixa elizayo.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, eyodwa injongo sele eyifzekisile, kwanasekubuyiseleni amawaka amaninzi amaLeymenayithi elwazini lwenyaniso; kwaye uwabonise amandla akhe ngabo, kwaye usaya kuhlala ewabonisa amandla akhe ngabo kwizizukulwana zelixa elizayo; ke ngoko ziya kulondolozwa.
- 20 Ke ngoko ndiya kuyalela, nyana wam Hlamani, okokuba ukhuthale ekufezekiseni onke amazwi am, kwaye nokokuba ukhuthale ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo njengokuba ibhaliwe.
- 21 Kwaye ngoku, ndiza kuthetha nawe malunga naloo macwecwe angamashumi amabini anesine, ukuba uwagcine, ukuze iimfihlelo nemisebenzi yobumnyama, nemisebenzi yabo efihlakeleyo, okanye imisebenzi efihlakeleyo yabo bantu batshatyalalisiweyo, ibe nokubonakaliswa kubo aba bantu; ewe, konke ukubulala kwabo, nokuphanga, norhwaphilizo lwabo, nayo yonke inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi, zingenziwa ukuba zibonakaliswe kubo aba bantu; ewe, nokokuba uzilondoloze ezi zitoliki.
- 22 Kuba qaphela, iNkosi yabona okokuba abantu bayo baqalisa ukusebenza ebumnyameni, ewe, basebenza ukubulala okusekhusini namasikizi; ke ngoko iNkosi yathi, ukuba babengaguquki kumele batshatyalaliswe basuke kubuso bomhlaba.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.



- 23 Kwaye iNkosi yathi: Ndiya kusilungiselela isicaka sam uGazelem, ilitye, eliya kuthi libengezele ebumnyameni libe kukukhanya, ukuze ndibe nokulifumanela abantu bam abandikhonzayo, ukuze ndibafumanele imisebenzi yabazalwana babo, ewe, imisebenzi yabo yasekhusini, imisebenzi yabo yobumnyama, nenkohlakalo yabo namasikizi.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ezi zitoliki zalungiselelwa ukuze ilizwi likaThixo libe nokuzalisekiswa, awathi walithetha, esithi:
- 25 Ndiya kuyizisa iphume ebumnyameni ize ekukhanyeni yonke imisebenzi yabo yasekhusini namasikizi abo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ndiya kubatshalalisa basuke kubuso bomhlaba; kwaye ndiya kuzizisa ekukhanyeni zonke iimfihlelo zabo namasikizi, kuso sonke isizwe esiya kuthi emva koku sililawule ilizwe.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, siyabona okokuba abazange baguquke; ke ngoko batshatyalalisiwe, kwaye kude kube ngoku ilizwi likaThixo lizalisekisiwe; ewe, amasikizi abo asekhusini akhutshiwe ebumnyameni kwaye sawaziswa.
- 27 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndiya kuyalela ukuba uzibambe zonke izifungo zabo, neminqophiso yabo, nezivumelwano zabo kumasikizi abo asekhusini; ewe, kwaye nayo yonke imiqondiso yabo nemimangaliso yabo niya kuyifihla kubo aba bantu, ukuze bangazazi, hleze mhlawumbi baya kuwela ebumnyameni kanjalo baze batshatyalaliswe.
- 28 Kuba qaphela, kukho isiqalekiso phezu kwalo lonke eli lizwe, loo ntshalalalo iya kufika phezu kwabo bonke abo basebenzi bobumnyama, ngokwamandla kaThixo, xa sebevuthwe ngokupheleleyo; ke ngoko ndinqwenela okokuba aba bantu bangabi nakutshatyalaliswa.
- 29 Ke ngoko uya kuwabamba la macebo afihlakeleyo ezifungo zabo neminqophiso kubo aba bantu, kwaye kuphela yinkohlakalo yabo nokubulala kwabo namasikizi abo oya kuyazisa kubo; kwaye uya kubafundisa ukuba bayithiye inkohlakalo enjalo namasikizi nokubulala; kananjalo uya kubafundisa okokuba aba bantu batshatyalaliswa ngesizathu senkohlakalo yabo namasikizi nokubulala kwabo.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

- 30 Kuba qaphela, bababulala bonke abaprofeti beNkosi abathi bafika phakathi kwabo ukuba bavakalise kubo malunga nobugwenxa babo; kwaye igazi labo bathi bababulala laye lakhala kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo ukuze impindezelo ibe phezu kwabo babengababulali babo; kwaye njalo izigwebo zikaThixo zaye zafika phezu kwaba basebenzi bobumnyama namayelenqe afihlakeleyo.
- 31 Ewe, kwaye liya kuqalekiswe ilizwe ngonaphakade kanaphakade kwabo basebenzi bobumnyama namayelenqe afihlakeleyo, kwanokude kuye ekutshatyalalisweni, ngaphandle kokuba baguquke phambi kokuba bavuthwe ngokupheleleyo.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, khumbula amazwi endithe ndawathetha kuwe; ungabaphathisi loo macebo afihlakeleyo aba bantu; kodwa bafundise intiyo yanaphakade ngokuchasene nesono nobugwenxa.
- 33 Shumayela kubo inguquko, nokholo kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu; bafundise ukuzithoba nokubanobulali nokuthobeka kwentliziyo; bafundise ukumelana naso sonke isihendo sikamtyholi, bebeke ithemba labo kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu.
- 34 Bafundise ukuba bangaze badinwe kukwenza imisebenzi elungileyo, kodwa babenobulali kwaye babenokuthobeka kwentliziyo; kuba abanjalo baya kufumana ukuphumla emiphefumleni yabo.
- 35 Owu, khumbula, nyana wam, kwaye ufunde ubulumko ebutsheni bakho; ewe, funda ebutsheni bakho ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo.
- 36 Ewe, khala kuThixo ngayo yonke inkxaso yakho; ewe, izenzo zakho zonke mazibe seNkosini, kwaye naphina apho uyakhona makube seNkosini; ewe, iingcinga zakho zonke mazithunyelwe eNkosini; ewe, uthando lwentliziyo yakho malubekwe eNkosini ngonaphakade.
- 37 Cebisana neNkosi kuzo zonke izenzo zakho, kwaye iya kukhokelela kokulungileyo; ewe, xa ulala phantsi ebusuku lala phantsi eNkosini, ukuze ikwaluse ekulaleni kwakho; kwaye xa uvuka kusasa intliziyo yakho mayizale yimibulelo kuye uThixo; kwaye ukuba uyazenza ezi zinto, uya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu ngomhla wokugqibela.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

38 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinento nje endifuna ukuyithetha malunga nento ababesithi ukuyibiza oobawo bethu yibhola, okanye isalathisi—okanye oobawo bethu babeyibiza ngokuba yiLiyahona, ethi, ukutolikwa, isalathambombo; kwaye iNkosi yayilungiselela.

39 Kwaye qaphela, akukho nawuphina umntu onokuyisebenza ngokohlobo lobugcisa obumangalisa kangako. Kwaye qaphela, yayilungiselelwe ukubonisa koobawo indlela ekumele bahambe ngayo entlango.

40 Kwaye yaye yabasebenzela ngokokholo lwabo kuThixo; ke ngoko, ukuba babenokholo lokukholelwa okokuba uThixo wayenako ukubangela ukuba ezo ntonga zokuluka zalathe indlela ekumele bahambe ngayo, qaphela, kwenzeka; ke ngoko babanawo loo mmangaliso, kananjalo neminye emininzi imimangaliso eyenziwa ngamandla kaThixo, umhla nomhla.

41 Nangona kunjalo, ngenxa yokuba loo mimangaliso yayisetyenzwa ngeendlela ezingenamsebenzi yaye yababonisa imisebenzi emangalisayo. Babengamavila, kwaye belibala ukusebenzisa ukholo lwabo nenkuthalo yaza ke loo misebenzi imangalisayo yaphela, baza ababi nankqubela-phambili kuhambo lwabo;

42 Ke ngoko, bahlala entlango, okanye abazange bahambe ngendlela ethe mbo, kwaye babebandezeleke ngendlala nonxano, ngenxa yeziphoso zabo.

43 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinga ungaqonda okokuba ezi zinto azizozinto zingenasithunzi; kuba njengoko oobawo bethu babengamavila ekunikeleni inyameko kwesi salatha-mbombo (ngoku ezi zinto zazizezomzuzwana) abazange baphumelele; kukwanjalo ke nangezinto ezizezomoya.

44 Kuba qaphela, kukwanjalo ukubalula ukunikela inyameko kulo ilizwi likaKrestu, eliya kukwalathisa indlela ethe tye eya kulonwabo lwanaphakade, njengokuba kwakunjalo koobawo bethu ekunikeleni inyameko kuso esi salatha-mbombo, esasiya kubalathisa indlela ethe tye eya kulo ilizwe lesithembiso.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

45 Kwaye ngoku ndithi, ingaba akukho mzekelo kuyo le nto? Kuba kanye ngokuqinisekileyo njengokuba esi salathisi saye sabazisa oobawo bethu, ngokulandela indlela yaso, ukuya kulo ilizwe lesithembiso, aya kuthi amazwi kaKrestu, ukuba silandela indlela yawo, asithwalele ngaphaya kwale ntlambo yosizi singene kwelilunge kunene ilizwe lesithembiso.

46 Owu nyana wam, musa ukusiyeka sibe ngamavila ngenxa yobulula bendlela; kuba kwakukwanjalo nakoobawo bethu; kuba yayilungiselelwe kwangokunjalo nakubo, okokuba ukuba bangajonga banokuphila; kukwangokunjalo nakuthi. Indlela ilungisiwe, kwaye ukuba siyajonga singaphila ngonaphakade.

47 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, bona ukuba uya zikhathalela ezi zinto zingcwele, ewe, bona okokuba ukhangelana kuThixo uze uphile. Hamba uye kwaba bantu uze uvakalise ilizwi, uze ube nengqiqo. Nyana wam, ndlela ntle.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

## Alma 38

- 1 Nyana wam, wanike indlebe amazwi am, kuba ndithi kuwe, kwananjengokuba ndatshoyo kuHilamani, okokuba kangangokuba uya kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo uya kuphumelela elizweni; kwaye kangangokuba ungasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo uya kusikelwa ngaphandle kobuso bakhe.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndiyathemba okokuba ndiya kuba novuyo olukhulu ngawe, ngenxa yokuzinza kwakho nentembeko yakho kuye uThixo; kuba njengokuba uqalise ebutsheni bakho ukukhangela kuyo iNkosi uThixo wakho, kwangokunjalo ndiyathemba okokuba uya kuqhubeka ekuyigcineni imiyalelo yakhe; kuba usikelelekile lowo unyamezela ukuya esiphelweni.
- 3 Ndithi kuwe, nyana wam, sendibe novuyo olukhulu kuwe, ngenxa yentembeko yakho nenkuthalo yakho, nomonde wakho nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakho phakathi kwabantu bamaZoramayithi.
- 4 Kuba ndiyazi okokuba wawusemakhamandeleni; ewe, kwaye ndiyazi kanjalo okokuba wawuxulutywa ngamatye ngenxa yelizwi; kwaye wazinyamezela zonke ezi zinto ngomonde ngenxa yokuba iNkosi yayinawe; kwaye ngoku uyazi okokuba iNkosi yaye yakuhlangula.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku nyana wam, Shiblani, ndinga ungakhumbula, okokuba kangangokuba uya kubeka ithemba lakho kuThixo kwangokunjalo uya kuhlangulwa uphume kwizilingo zakho, neenkathazo zakho, neembandezelo zakho, kwaye uya kuphakanyiswa ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 6 Ngoku, nyana wam, andinqweneli okokuba ucinge ukuba ndiyazazela ezi zinto, kodwa nguMoya kaThixo okum owenza zazeke ezi zinto kum; kuba ukuba bendingazelwanga ngokukaThixo ngendingazazanga ezi zinto.

## Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblani, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

- 7 Kodwa qaphela, iNkosi ngencebaya yayo engenasiphelo yathumela ingelosi yayo ukuba ivakalise kum okokuba mandiwuyeke umsebenzi wentshabalalo phakathi kwabantu bayo; ewe, kwaye ndiyibonile ingelosi ubuso ngobuso, kwaye yathetha nam, kwaye ilizwi layo lalinje ngendudumo, kwaye lawushukumisa umhlaba wonke uphela.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndandineentsuku ezintathu nobusuku obuthathu ndikweyona ntlungu ikrakra nentuthumbo yomphefumlo; kwaye andizange, ndalufumana uxolelo lwezono zam, ndada ndabe ndakhalela inceba kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu. Kodwa qaphela, ndaye ndakhala kuyo kwaye ndaye ndafumana uxolo emphefumleni wam.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndikuxelele oku ukuze ube nokufunda ubulumko, ukuze ube nokufunda ngam okokuba ayikho enye indlela okanye uhlobo ekunokuthi umntu asindiswe ngalo, kuphela kukuye kwaye kungaye uKrestu. Qaphela, ububomi nokhanyiselo lwehlabathi. Qaphela, ulilizwi lenyaniso nobulungisa.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko uqalisile ukulifundisa ilizwi kwangokunjalo ndinga ungaqhubeka ukufundisa; kwaye ndinga ungakhuthala kwaye ubengcathu kuzo zonke izinto.
- 11 Bona okokuba akuphakamelanga kwikratshi; ewe, bona okokuba akuzigwagwisi kobakho ubulumko, nakukomelela kwakho okukhulu.
- 12 Sebenzisa ukukhalipha, kodwa ingabi lugagamelo; kananjalo bona okokuba uzifaka umkhala zonke iimvakalelo zakho ezinzulu, ukuze ube nokuzaliswa ngothando; bona okokuba uyabuyeka ubuvila.
- 13 Ungathandazi njengokuba amaZoramayithi esenza, kuba ubonile okokuba athandazela ukuba aviwe ngabantu, nokuba anconywe ngobulumko bawo.
- 14 Musa ukuthi: Owu Thixo, ndiyakubulela kuba silunge ngaphezulu kunabo abazalwana bethu; kodwa unokuthi: Owu Nkosi, xolela ukungafaneleki kwam, uze ukhumbule abazalwana bam ngencebaya—ewe, vuma ukungafaneleki kwakho phambi koThixo ngamaxesha onke.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

15      Kwaye akwaba iNkosi ingawusikelela  
umphefumlo wakho, ize ikwamkele ngomhla  
wokugqibela ebukumkanini bayo, ukuba uhlale  
phantsi ngoxolo. Ngoku hamba, uze ufundise ilizwi  
kubo aba bantu. Yiba nengqiqo. Nyana wam, ndlela-  
ntle.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you  
at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace.  
Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this peo-  
ple. Be sober. My son, farewell.

## Alma 39

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinokuthile okungakumbi endimele ndikuthethe kuwe kunako oko ndakuthethayo kumntakwenu; kuba qaphela, awukuqaphelanga na ukuzinza komntakwenu, ukunyaniseka kwakhe, nenkuthalo yakhe ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo? Qaphela, ingaba akakwenzelanga mzekelo mhle kusini na?
- 2 Kuba akuzange uwanyamekele kangako amazwi am njengokuba umntakwenu ebesenza, phakathi kwabantu bamaZoramayithi. Ngoku nantsi into endinayo ngokuchasene nawe; ubuqhubeka uzigwagwisa ngokomelela nobulumko bakho.
- 3 Kwaye akuphelelanga apho, nyana wam. Wenza oko kwakundihlupha; kuba walahla ubulungiseleli, waza waya ngaphesheya elizweni laseSirani phakathi kwemida yamaLeymenayithi, ulandela ihenyukazi uIsabhela.
- 4 Ewe, waye waziba iintliziyo zabaninzi; kodwa eso yayingesiso isizathu sokuzigweba, nyana wam. Ubumele ukuzinikela kubulungiseleli obebuphathiswe ngethemba kuwe.
- 5 Akwazi na, nyana wam, ukuba ezi zinto zilisikizi emehlweni eNkosi; ewe, zilisikizi kakhulu ukudlula zonke izono ngaphandle kokuphalaza igazi elimsulwa okanye ukukhanyela uMoya oyiNgcwele?
- 6 Kuba qaphela, ukuba ukhanyela uMoya oyiNgcwele xa ubukhe wanendawo kuwe, ube wena usazi ukuba uwukhanye; qaphela, esi sisono esingaxolelekiyo; ewe, kwaye nabani na obulala ngokuchasene nokukhanya nolwazi lukaThixo, akulula kulowo ukuba azuze uxolelo; ewe, ndithi kuwe, nyana wam, akulula kulowo ukuba azuze uxolelo.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinga akwaba ubungenatyala lesi sono sikhulu kangaka kuThixo. Bendingeke ndihlale phezu kwamatyala akho, ndihlungise umphefumlo wakho, ukuba ibingekokulungelwa kwakho.

## Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.



- 8 Kodwa qaphela, akunako ukuwafihla amatyala akho kuThixo; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba uguquke aya kuma ebubungqina obuchasene nawe ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 9 Ngoku nyana wam, ndinga ungaguquka uzilahle izono zakho, ungabuye ulandele iinkanuko zamehlo akho, kodwa uzahlule kuzo zonke ezi zinto; kuba ngaphandle kokuba uya kukwenza oku akunakho nangayiphi indlela ukubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo. Owu, khumbula, uthabathele kuwe, uzahlule kwezi zinto.
- 10 Kwaye ndiyakuyalela ukuba uyithabathele kuwe ingcebiso yabakhuluwa bakho ezintweni ozenzayo; kuba qaphela, usebutsheni bakho, kwaye uswele ukondliwa ngabakhuluwa bakho. Kwaye zithabathele ingqalelo iingcebiso zabo.
- 11 Musa ukuzivumela ukuba ulahlekiswe nayintoni na elilize okanye into ebubuyatha; musa ukuvumela umtyholi ukuba atsalele intliziyo yakho emva kwalaa mahenyukazi anenkohlakalo kwakhona. Qaphela, Owu nyana wam, ubugwenxa obukhulu kangaka obuzise phezu kwamaZoramayithi; kuba xa bebona ukuziphatha kwakho abafunanga ukuwakholelwa amazwi am.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku uMoya weNkosi uthi kum: Yalela abantwana bakho ukuba benze okulungileyo, hleze balahlekisele iintliziyo zabantu abaninzi entshabalalweni; ke ngoko ndiya kuyala, nyana wam, ngoloyiko lukaThixo, ukuba uzibuyise kubugwenxa bakho;
- 13 Ukuba uguqukele eNkosini ngengqondo yakho yonke, amandlakazi, nokomelela; ukuze ungalahlekisi iintliziyo zabanye abantu kwakhona ukuba benze ngenkohlakalo; kodwa noko ubuyele kubo, kwaye uzivume iziphosiso zakho nokungalungile okwenzileyo.
- 14 Musa ukungxamela ubutyebi kwanezinto ezililize zeli hlabathi; kuba qaphela, akungeke ubuthwale uhambe nabo.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinqwenela ukuthetha okuthile kuwe malunga nokuza kukaKrestu. Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, nguye ngokwenene oya kuza ukuba athabathele kuye izono zehlabathi; ewe, uyeza ukuze avakalise iindaba zovuyo zosindiso kubantu bakhe.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

- 16 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, obu bubulungiseleli owawubizelwe kubo, ukuba uvakalise ezi ndaba zovuyo kwaba bantu, ukuba ulungise iingqondo zabo; okanye ngenye indlela ukuze usindiso lube nokufika kubo, ukuze babe nokulungisa iingqondo zabantwana babo ukuba balive ilizwi ngelixa lokuza kwakhe.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku ndiza kuyikhulula ingqondo yakho nje noko kulo mba. Qaphela, umangalisiwe okokuba kungani kumele zaziwe ezi zinto kuse kude kangaka ngaphambili. Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, ingaba umphefumlo ngeli lixa awunaxabiso kuThixo njengokuba umphefumlo uya kuba njalo ngelixa lokuza kwakhe?
- 18 Ingaba akuyomfuneko ukuba icebo lenkululeko laziswe kwaba bantu kwaye nakubo abantwana babo?
- 19 Ingaba akululanga na nangalo eli lixa ukuba iNkosi ithumele ingelosi yayo ukuba ivakalise ezi ndaba zovuyo kuthi nanjengakubantwana bethu, okanye njengasemva kwelixa lokuza kwakhe?

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

## Alma 40

- 1 Ngoku nyana wam, naku okunye okuthile okungakumbi endifuna ukukuthetha kuwe; kuba ndiyaqonda okokuba ingqondo yakho ikhathazekile ngokunxulumene novuko lwabafileyo.
- 2 Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, alukho uvuko—okanye, ndingathi, ngamanye amazwi, lo mzimba ufayo awambathi kungafi, oku konakalayo akwambathi kungonakali—kude kube semva kokuza kukaKrestu.
- 3 Qaphela, ubangela ukuba kwenzekwe uvuko lwabafileyo. Kodwa qaphela, nyana wam, uvuko alukenzeki. Ngoku, ndikusombululela imfihlelo; nangona kunjalo zininzi iimfihlelo ezigciniweyo, ukuze zingaziwa mntu ngaphandle koThixo ngokwakhe. Kodwa ndikubonisa into enye endiyibuze ngenkuthalo kuThixo ukuze ndibe nokuyazi—loo nto imalunga novuko.
- 4 Qaphela, kukho ilixa elimisiweyo lokuba bonke beya kuvuka ekufeni. Ngoku ukuba liya kuza nini elo lixa akukho mntu waziyo; kodwa uThixo uyalazi ilixa elimisiweyo.
- 5 Ngoku, nokuba kuya kubakho ilixa elinye, okanye ilixa lesibini, okanye elesithathu, lokuba abantu bavuke ekufeni, akubalulekanga oko; kuba uThixo uyazazi zonke ezi zinto; kwaye kuyandanelisa ukwazi ukuba kuya kubanjalo—ukuba kukho ilixa elimisiweyo lokuba bonke beya kuvuka kwabafileyo.
- 6 Ngoku kuyimfuneko okokuba kubekho ithuba phakathi kwelixa lokufa nelixa lovuko.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku ndinqwenela ukubuza ukuba kwenzeka ntoni na ngemiphefumlo yabantu ukususela kweli lixa lokufa ukuya kwilixa elimiselwe uvuko?
- 8 Ngoku nokuba kukho isihlandlo esingaphezulu kunesinye esimiselweyo kubantu ukuba bavuke akubalulekanga; kuba abafi bonke ngaxesha linye, kwaye oku akubalulekanga; konke kufana nosuku olunye kuThixo, kwaye ngabantu kuphela abazibalela ixesha.

## Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

- 9 Ke ngoko, kukho ilixa elimisiweyo ebantwini lokuba beya kuvuka ekufeni; kwaye kukho ithuba phakathi kwelixa lokufa nokuvuka. Kwaye ngoko, ngokunxulumene nesisithuba sexesha, okwenzekayo ngemiphefumlo yabantu yinto endiyibuze ngenkuthalo eNkosini ukuba ndiyazi; kwaye le yinto enxulumene naleyo endaziyo ngayo.
- 10 Kwaye xa ilixa lifika lokuba bonke beya kuvuka, ke baya kuyazi okokuba uThixo wazi onke amaxesha amiselwe abantu.
- 11 Ngoku, malunga nemo yomphefumlo phakathi kokufa novuko—Qaphela, kwazisiwe kum yingelosi, okokuba imiphefumlo yabo bonke abantu, kwakamsinya nje ukuba iwushiye lo mziba ufayo, ewe, imiphefumlo yabo bonke abantu, nokokuba ilungile okanye mibi, ithatyathelwa ekhaya kuloo Thixo owathi wayinika ubomi.
- 12 Kwaye ke kuya kwenzeka okokuba oomoya babo bangamalungisa bamkelwe kwimo yovuyo, ebizwa ngokuba yiparadesi, imo yokuphumla, imo yoxolo, apho baya kuphumla khona kuzo zonke iinkathazo zabo, kwaye nakuyo yonke inkathalo, nosizi.
- 13 Kwaye ke kuya kwenzeka, okokuba oomoya babakhohlakeleyo, ewe, abangcolileyo—kuba qaphela, abanayo nenxalenye okanye nasuntswana loMoya weNkosi; kuba qaphela, bakhetha imisebenzi emibi kunemihle; ke ngoko umoya kamtyholi waye wangena kubo, waza wayithabathela kuye indlu yabo—kwaye aba baya kukhutshelwa ngaphandle kubumnyama bangaphandle; kuya kubakho izikhalo, nezijwili, nokutshixiza kwamazinyo, kwaye oku kungenxa yobugwenxa babo, kuba bekhokelwa bengabathinjwa ngokwentando kamtyholi.
- 14 Ngoku le yimo yemiphefumlo yabakhohlakeleyo, ewe, ebumnyameni, kwaye nemo embi kakhulu, bekhangeleka bezele kukoyika kuba ingqumbo enkulu engumsindo otshisayo kaThixo iphezu kwabo; njalo ke bahlala bekule meko, ngokunjalo namalungisa eparadesi, kude kube lilixa lovuko lwabo.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

- 15 Ngoku, kukho abathile abayiqondileyo ukuba le mo yovuyo kwaye nale mo yokunxunguphala komphefumlo, phambi kovuko, yayiluvuko lokuqala. Ewe, ndiyavuma inokubizwa ngokuba luvuko, ukunyuswa komoya okanye umphefumlo nokuthunyelwa kwayo eluvuyweni okanye ekunxunguphaleni, ngokwamazwi athethiweyo.
- 16 Kwaye qaphela, kwakhona kuthethiwe, ukuba kukho uvuko lokuqala, uvuko lwabo bonke ababekho, okanye abakhoyo, okanye abaya kubakho, ukwehla ukuya kufika kuvuko lukaKrestu kwelabafileyo.
- 17 Ngoku, asingecingi ukuba olu vuko lokuqala, ekuthethwa ngalo ngolu hlobo, lunokuba luvuko lwemiphefumlo nokuthunyelwa kwayo eluvuyweni okanye ekunxunguphaleni. Aninako ukucinga ukuba oku kuthetha oko.
- 18 Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, Hayi; kodwa ithetha ukubuyelana komphefumlo kunye nomzimba, yabo ukusuka kwimihla ka-Adam ukuhla ukuza kufika ekuvukeni kukaKrestu.
- 19 Ngoku, nokokuba imiphefumlo nemizimba yabo abo ekuthethwe ngabo yonke iya kubuyelana ngaxeshanye, eyabakhohlakeleyo kwakunye neyamalungisa, anditsho; makwanele, xa ndisithi bonke baya kuza ngaphambili; okanye ngamanye amazwi, uvuko lwabo luya kwenzeka phambi kovuko lwabo bafe emva kovuko lukaKrestu.
- 20 Ngoku, nyana wam, anditsho ukuba uvuko lwabo luza ekuvukeni kukaKrestu; kodwa qaphela, ndiyinika njengoluvo lwam, lokuba imiphefumlo nemizimba iyabuyelana, eyamalungisa, ekuvukeni kukaKrestu, nokunyukela kwakhe ezulwini.
- 21 Kodwa nokokuba kusekuvukeni kwakhe okanye ngemva, anditsho; kodwa ndithetha okungaka, okokuba kukho ithuba phakathi kokufa nokuvuka komzimba, kwakunye nemo yomphefumlo ekuvuyeni okanye ekunxunguphaleni kude kube lilixa elimisiweyo nguThixo lokuba abafileyo beze ngaphambili, kwaye zihlanganiswe kwakhona, kunye umphefumlo nomzimba, ize iziswe ime phambi koThixo, ize igwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yayo.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

- 22 Ewe, oku kuzisa ukubuyelana kwezo zinto ebekuthethwe ngazo ngemilomo yabaprofeti.
- 23 Umphefumlo uya kubuyiselwa emzimbeni, kwaye nomzimba emphefumlweni; ewe, kwaye lonke ilungu nelungu liya kubuyiselwa emzimbeni walo; ewe, kwanalo unwele lwentloko aluyi kulahleka; kodwa zonke izinto ziya kubuyiselwa kowona wokwenene nofezekileyo umzimba.
- 24 Ngoku, nyana wam, olu lubuyelwano ebekuthethwe ngalo ngemilomo yabaprofeti—
- 25 Kwaye ke amalungisa aya kukhazimla ebukumkani bukaThixo.
- 26 Kodwa qaphela, ukufa okoyikekayo kuza phezu kwabakhohlakeleyo; kuba bayafa ngokwezinto eziphathelele nezinto zobulungisa; kuba abacocekanga, kwaye akukho nto ingacocekanga eya kubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo; kodwa bakhutshelwa ngaphandle, kwaye bathunyelwe ukuba bathabathe batye kuzo iziqhamo zemigudu okanye imisebenzi yabo, ebe imibi; kwaye basele intlenge yendebe ekrakrayo.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

## Alma 41

- 1 Ngoku, nyana wam, kukho nje okuthile okufuneka ndikuthethe malunga nobuyiselo ebekuthethwe ngalo; kuba qaphela, abanye bazigqwethile izibhalo, kwaye bahambe umgama belahleka ngenxa yale nto. Kwaye ndiyaqonda ukuba ingqondo yakho kanjalo ibikhathazekile malunga nale nto. Kodwa qaphela, ndiza kukuchazela.
- 2 Ndithi kuwe, nyana wam, icebo lobuyiselo liyimfuneko ngokwasebulungiseni bukaThixo; kuba kuyimfuneko ukuba zonke izinto zibuyiselwe ezindaweni zokudalwa. Qaphela, kuyimfuneko kwaye kulungile, ngokwamandla novuko lukaKrestu, ukuba umphefumlo womntu kumele ubuyelane nomzimba wawo, nokuba lonke isuntswana lomzimba kumele libuyele kuwo.
- 3 Kwaye kuyimfuneko kubulungisa bukaThixo ukuba abantu bamele bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo; kwaye ukuba imisebenzi yabo ibilungile kobu bomi, kwaye neminqweno yeentliziyo zabo ibilungile, ukuze nabo kanjalo, ngomhla wokugqibela, ibuyiselwe kuloo nto ilungileyo.
- 4 Kwaye ukuba imisebenzi yabo mibi iya kubuyiselwa kubo ngobubi. Ke ngoko, zonke izinto ziya kubuyiselwa kuhlobo lwazo olufanelekileyo, yonke into kumzimba wayo wendalo—okufayo kuvuselwe kokungafiyo, okonakalayo kokungonakaliyo—zivuselwe kuvuyo olungenasiphelo ukuze zibudle ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo, okanye kwinkxwaleko engenasiphelo ukuze zibudle ilifa ubukumkani bomtyholi, omnye kwesinye isandla, omnye kwesinye—
- 5 Omnye avuselwe kuvuyo ngokweminqweno yakhe yovuyo, okanye ukulunga ngokweminqweno yakhe yokulunga; kwaye omnye ebubini ngokweminqweno yakhe yobubi; kuba njengoko ubunqwenela ukwenza ububi ebudeni bonke bemini kwangokunjalo uya kuwufumana umvuzo wakho wobubi xa ubusuku bufika.
- 6 Kwaye kukwanjalo ke nakwesinye isandla. Ukuba uguqukile ezonweni zakho, waza wanqwenela ubulungisa kude kube sekupheleni kwemihla yakho, ngokunjalo uya kuvuzwa ngobulungisa.

## Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

- 7 Le yileyo yakhululwayo yiNkosi; ewe, le yileyo yakhutshwayo, eyahlangukwa kobo busuku bobumnyama bungenasiphelo; kwaye njalo ke iyema okanye iwe; kuba qaphela, ingabagwebi yeziqo zayo, enokuba kukwenza okulungileyo okanye ukwenza okubi.
- 8 Ngoku, imithetho kaThixo ayiguquleki; ke ngoko indlela ilungiselelwe ukuze nabani na ofunayo angahamba kuyo aze asindiswe.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, nyana wam, musa ukuzibeka engozini ngokwenza elinye ityala ngokuchasene noThixo wakho kwezo ngongoma zemfundiso, ezo othe kude kube leli lixa wazibeka engozini ngazo ngokwenza isono.
- 10 Musa ukucinga ukuba, ngenxa yokuba kuthethiwe malunga nobuyiselo, uya kubuyiswa ukusuka esonweni uye eluvuyweni. Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, inkohlakalo ayizange ibe luvuyo.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, bonke abantu abakwimo yendalo, okanye ndingathi, kwimo yenyama, bakubukrakra benyongo kwaye nakumakhmandela obugwenxa; abanaye uThixo ehlabathini, kwaye bahambe ngokuchasene nendalo kaThixo; ke ngoko, bakwimo echasene nendalo yovuyo.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ingaba intsingiselo yegama ubuyiselo ithetha ukuthabatha into ekwimo yendalo ize iyibeko kwimo engeyiyo eyendalo, okanye ukuyibeka kwimo ephikisa indalo yayo?
- 13 Owu, nyana wam, akunjalo; kodwa intsingiselo yegama ubuyiselo kukubuyisela kwakhona, ububi ngobubi, okanye inyama ngenyama, okanye ubumtyholi ngobumtyholi—okuhle ngoko kuhle; ubulungisa ngoko kunobulungisa; ukulunga ngoko kulungileyo; inceba ngoko kunenceba.
- 14 Ke ngoko, nyana wam, qiniseka ukuba uba nenceba kubazalwana bakho; yenza ngobulungisa, gweba ngobulungisa, kwaye wenze okulungileyo ngamaxesha onke; kwaye ukuba uyazenza zonke ezi zinto uya kuthi ke uwuzuze umvuzo wakho; ewe, inceba iya kubuyiselwa kuwe kwakhona; ukulunga kuya kubuyiselwa kuwe kwakhona; isigwebo sobulungisa siya kubuyiselwa kuwe kwakhona; kwaye uya kuvuzwa ngokulunga kwakhona.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.



15 Kuba oko uthi ukuthumele kuya kubuyela kuwe kwakhona, kwaye kubuyiselwe; ke ngoko, igama elithi ubuyiselo limgweba ngokuphelele ngakumbi umoni, kwaye lingamkhululi kwaphela.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

## Alma 42

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndiyabona ukuba kukho into nje ethile engakumbi ekhathaza ingqondo yakho, into leyo ongakwaziyo ukuyiqonda—enxulumene nobulungisa bukaThixo ekohlwayeni umoni; kuba uyazama ukucinga ukuba asibobulungisa ukuba umoni athunyelwe kwimo yenkxwaleko.
- 2 Ngoku qaphela, nyana wam, ndiza kuyicacisa le nto kuwe. Kuba qaphela, emva kokuba iNkosi uThixo ibandulule abazali bethu bokuqala baphuma emyezweni we-Eden, ukuba bawulime umhlaba, ababethatyathwe kuwo—ewe, yamkhupha umntu, yaza yabeka kwisiphelo sangasempumalanga somyezo we-Eden, ikerubhi, nekrele elinamadangatye elijika-jika nkalo zonke, ukuba ligcine umthi wobomi—
- 3 Ngoku, siyabona okokuba umntu wayesele efana noThixo, esazi okulungileyo nokubi; kwaye hleze asolule isandla sakhe, athabathe aze atye kanjalo kumthi wobomi, kwaye atye aze aphile ngonaphakade, iNkosi uThixo yabeka ikherubhi nekrele elinamalangatye, ukuze angathabathi atye kuso isiqhamo—
- 4 Kwaye njalo siyabona, okokuba kwabakho ilixa awalinikwayo umntu lokokuba aguquke, ewe, ilixa lokulingwa, ilixa lokuguquka kwaye akhonze uThixo.
- 5 Kuba qaphela, ukuba uAdam wayolule isandla sakhe kwangoko, waza wathabatha watya kumthi wobomi, wayeya kuphila ngonaphakade, ngokwelizwi likaThixo, engenalo ithuba lokuguquka; ewe, kananjalo nelizwi likaThixo ngelaba lilize, kwaye necebo elikhulu losindiso ngelaphazamiseka.
- 6 Kodwa qaphela, kwakumisiwe ukuba umntu afe—ke ngoko, njengoko babesikelwe ngaphandle kumthi wobomi, kumele basikelwe ngaphandle nasebusweni bomhlaba—kwaye umntu waba ulahlekile ngonaphakade, ewe, baba ngabantu abawileyo.

## Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be con-signed to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

- 7 Kwaye ngoku, niyabona ngako oku ukuba abazali bethu bokuqala babesikelwe ngaphandle kunye ngokwasenyameni nangokomoya ebusweni beNkosi; kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba baba nokuzilawula belandela intando yabo.
- 8 Ngoku qaphela, kwakungeyomfuneko ukuba umntu abangwe kwakhona koku kufa kwenyama, kuba oko bekuya kutshabalalisa icebo elikhulu lovuyo.
- 9 Ke ngoku, ngenxa yokuba umphefumlo wawungeze ufe, kwaye ukuwa kwakuzise phezu kwalo lonke uluntu ukufa ngokwasemoyeni kwakunye nokufa kwenyama, oko kukuthi, babesikelwe ngaphandle ebusweni beNkosi, kwakuyimfuneko okokuba uluntu lube luya kubangwa kwakhona koku kufa kwasemoyeni.
- 10 Ke ngoku, ngenxa yokuba baba ngabemvelo, baba ngabasemhlabeni, kwaye baba bumtyholi, ngendalo, le mo yokulingwa yaba yimo yabo yokuba balungise; yaba yimo yokuzilungiselela.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku khumbula, nyana wam, ukuba kwakungengalo icebo lenkululeko, (libekwe bucala) kwakamsinya nje ukuba befile imiphefumlo yabo yayixhwaleka, ngenxa yokuba isikelwe ngaphandle ebusweni beNkosi.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku, kwakungekho ndlela yokubakhulula abantu kule mo yokuwa, athe umntu ngokwakhe wayizisa phezu kwakhe ngenxa yokungathobeli kwakhe;
- 13 Ke ngoku, ngokobulungisa, icebo lenkululeko belingako ukwenzeka, kuxhomekeke kuphela kwiimeko zokuguquka kwabantu kule mo yokulingwa, ewe, le mo yokuzilungiselela; kuba ngaphandle kokuba kube kungezi meko, inceba ibingenakho ukuba nesiphumo ngaphandle kokuba ibiya kutshabalalisa umsebenzi wobulungisa. Ngoku umsebenzi wobulungisa ubungenakho ukutshatyalaliswa; ukuba kunjalo, uThixo ebengayeka ukuba nguThixo.
- 14 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba lonke uluntu lwaluwile, kwaye lwalusesandleni sobulungisa; ewe, ubulungisa bukaThixo, obubathumela ngonaphakade ukuba basikelwe ngaphandle kobuso bakhe.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

- 15 Kwaye ngoku, icebo lenceba belingeke lenzeke ngaphandle kokuba intlawulelo yenziwe; ke ngoko uThixo ngokwakhe uhlawulela izono zehlabathi, ukuze icebo lenceba lenzeke, ukukholisa iimfuno zobulungisa, ukuze uThixo abe nguThixo ofezekileyo, uThixo onobulungisa, noThixo onenceba kanjalo.
- 16 Ngoku, inguquko ibingenakuza ebantwini ngaphandle kokuba bekuya kubakho isohlwayo, esaye kanjalo sisesanaphakade njengokuba ubomi bomphefumlo bumele ukuba njalo, esimiselwe ngokuchaseneyo necebo lovuyo, ebe lilelanaphakade kanjalo njengobomi bomphefumlo.
- 17 Ngoku, ingaba umntu angaguquka njani ngaphandle kokuba abe uyona? Ubenak ukwenza isono njani ukuba bekungekho mthetho? Ubungabakho njani umthetho ngaphandle kokuba kubekho isohlwayo?
- 18 Ngoku, kwabakho isohlwayo esimiselweyo, nomthetho wobulungisa onikiweyo, owazisa ukuzisola kwesazela emntwini.
- 19 Ngoku, ukuba kwakungekho mthetho onikiweyo—ukuba umntu ubulele kumele afe—ingaba ubeya koyika ukuba uya kufa ukuba angabulala?
- 20 Kananjalo, ukuba bekungekho mthetho onikiweyo ngokuchasene nesono abantu bebengayi koyika ukwenza isono.
- 21 Kwaye ukuba kwakungekho mthetho onikiweyo, ukuba abantu bonile ubulungisa bebungenza ntoni, okanye inceba leyo, kuba bezingayi kuba nabango phezu kwesidalwa?
- 22 Kodwa ukhona umthetho onikiweyo, nesohlwayo esimiselweyo, nenguquko enikiweyo; nguquko leyo, inceba iyibangayo; ngenye indlela, ubulungisa buyasibanga isidalwa kwaye buwise umthetho, uze umthetho wehlise isohlwayo; ukuba akunjalo, imisebenzi yobulungisa ingatshabalala, kwaye noThixo angayeka ukuba nguThixo.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

- 23 Kodwa uThixo akayeki ukuba nguThixo, kwaye inceba ibanga abazohlwayayo, kwaye inceba iza ngenxa yentlawulelo; kwaye intlawulelo yenza kwenzake uvuko lwabafuleyo; kwaye uvuko lwabafuleyo lubuyisela abantu ebusweni bukaThixo; kwaye njalo ke babuyiselwa ebusweni bakhe, ukuze bagwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yabo, ngokomthetho nobulungisa.
- 24 Kuba qaphela, ubulungisa busebenzisa zonke iimfuno zabo, kananjalo nenceba ibanga konke okukokwayo, kwaye njalo, akukho namnye ngaphandle kwabazohlwaya ngokwenene abasindiswayo.
- 25 Ingaba ucinga ukuba inceba ingabuhlutha ngantoni ubulungisa? Ndithi kuwe, Hayi; nakancinane. Ukuba kunjalo, uThixo angayeka ukuba nguThixo.
- 26 Kwaye njalo ke uThixo uphumeza iinjongo zakhe ezinkulu nezanaphakade, ezazilungiselelwe ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi. Luza njalo ke usindiso nenkululeko yabantu, kananjalo netshabalalo nenkxwaleko yabo.
- 27 Ke ngoko, Owu nyana wam, nabani na onokuza angeza aze athabathe asele emanzini obomi ngokukhululekileyo; kwaye nabani na ongayi kuza lowo akanyanzelwanga ukuba eze; kodwa ngomhla wokugqibela kuya kubuyiselwa kuye ngokwezenzo zakhe.
- 28 Ukuba ebenqwenela ukwenza ububi, kwaye akaguqukanga ngemihla yakhe, qaphela, ububi buya kwenziwa kuye, malunga ngokobuyiselo lukaThixo.
- 29 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinqwenela okokuba ungazivumeli ezi zinto zibuye zikukhathaze, kwaye vumela kuphela izono zakho zikukhathaze, ngoko kukhathazeka okuya kukuthobela ezantsi enguqukweni.
- 30 Owu nyana wam, ndinqwenela ukuba ungabuye ubukhanye ubulungisa bukaThixo. Musa ukuzama ukuzikhulula nakwingongoma encinane ngenxa yezono zakho, ngokukhanyela ubulungisa bukaThixo; kodwa wena buvumele ubulungisa bukaThixo, nenceba yakhe, nokuzeka kade umsindo kwakhe kuphembelele intliziyo yakho ngokupheleleyo; kwaye uvume ukuba bukuzise ezantsi eluthulini ngentobeko.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

31      Kwaye ngoku, Owu nyana wam, ubiziwe  
nguThixo ukuba ushumayele ilizwi kwaba bantu.  
Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, hamba indlela yakho,  
vakalisa ilizwi ngenyaniso nokuzola, ukuze ubenako  
ukuzisa imiphefumlo enguqukweni, ukuze icebo  
elikhulu lenceba libe nebango phezu kwabo. Kwaye  
wanga uThixo angakunika nangokwamazwi am.  
Amen.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach  
the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy  
way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that  
thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the  
great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And  
may God grant unto you even according to my  
words. Amen.

## Alma 43

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba oonyana baka-Alma baye babheka phambili phakathi kwabantu, ukuya kuvakalisa ilizwi kubo. Kwaye uAlma, kanjalo, ngokwakhe, akabanga nakuphumla, waza naye kanjalo wabheka phambili.
- 2 Ngoku asisayi kuphinda sithethe nto malunga nokushumayela kwabo, ngaphandle nje kokuba balishumayela ilizwi, nenyano, ngokomoya wesiprofetho nesityhilelo; kwaye bashumayela ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo abathi babizwa ngalo.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku ndibuyela kwingxelo yeemfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, koweshumi elinesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 4 Kuba qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba amaZoramayithi aba ngamaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko, ekuqalekeni koweshumi elinesibhozo unyaka abantu bamaNifayithi babona okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayesiza phezu kwawo; ke ngoko benza amalungiselelo okulwa imfazwe; ewe, bahlanganisa kunye imikhosi yabo kulo ilizwe laseYershan.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi eza engamawaka; aza angena elizweni lase-Anteyonam, eli lilizwe lamaZoramayithi; kwaye indoda egama layo linguZerahemna yayiyinkokeli yawo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, njengoko ama-Amalekayithi ayengawona anesimilo esikhohlakeleyo nesokubulala kunokuba amaLeymenayithi ayenjalo, bona ngokunokwabo, ke ngoko, uZerahemna wamisa abaphathi-mikhosi abazintloko phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, kwaye bonke babengama-Amalekayithi namaZoramayithi.
- 7 Ngoku oku wakwenza ukuze abe nokuyigcina intiyo yawo ngakumaNifayithi, ukuze abe nokuwazisa phantsi kolawulo lwakhe ukufezekisa iinjongo zakhe.

## Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

- 8 Kuba qaphelani, amayelenqe akhe ayekukuvuselela amaLeymenayithi emsindweni ngokuchasene namaNifayithi; oku wakwenza ukuze abe nokuphanga amandla akumbi phezu kwawo, kananjalo nokuze abe nokuzuza amandla phezu kwamaNifayithi ngokubazisa ebukhobokeni.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku injongo yamaNifayithi yayikukuxhasa imihlaba yawo, nezindlu zawo, nabafazi bawo, nabantwana bawo, ukuze babakhusele kwizandla zeentshaba zawo; kananjalo nokuba balondoloze iimfanelo zabo namalungelo abo awodwa, ewe, kananjalo nenkululeko yabo, ukuze abe nokukhonza uThixo ngokweminqweno yawo.
- 10 Kuba babesazi okokuba ukuba bangawela ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi, nokokuba nabani onganqulawuThixo ngomoya nangenyano, owokwenene nophilayo uThixo, amaLeymenayithi angamtshabalalisa.
- 11 Ewe, kwaye babesazi kanjalo ngobunzulu bentiyo yamaLeymenayithi ngakubazalwana babo, ababengabantu baka-Antayi-Nifayi-Lihayi, ababebizwa ngokuba ngabantu baka-Amon—kwaye babengafuni ukuphakamisa zigalo, ewe, babengene kumnqophiso kwaye babengafuni ukuwophula—ke ngoko, ukuba babengawela ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi babeya kutshatyalaliswa.
- 12 Kwaye amaNifayithi ayengenako ukuyekela ukuba atshatyalaliswe; ke ngoko bawanika imihlaba njengelifa lawo.
- 13 Kwaye abantu baka-Amon baye banikela kumaNifayithi inxalenye enkulu yezinto abanazo ukuba baxhase imikhosi yawo; kwaye njalo amaNifayithi anyanzeleka ukuba, ewodwa, axhathalaze ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, awayeyimbumba kaLeymeni noLemuweli, noonyana baka-Ishmayeli, kwaye nabo bonke abo babekreqe kumaNifayithi, ababe ngama-Amalekayithi namaZoramayithi, nenzala yababingeleli bakaNowa.
- 14 Ngoku loo nzala yayiyintlaninge, phantse, njengokuba ayenjalo amaNifayithi; aza njalo amaNifayithi anyanzeleka ukuba alwe nabazalwana bawo, nokokude baphalaze igazi.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.



- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yayihlanganisene kunye elizweni laseAnteyonam, qaphelani, imikhosi yamaNifayithi yayikulungiselele ukuqubisana nawo elizweni laseYershan.
- 16 Ngoku, inkokeli yamaNifayithi, okanye indoda eyayonyuliwe ukuba ibe ngumphathi oyintloko phezu kwamaNifayithi—ngoku umphathi oyintloko waluthabatha ulawulo lwayo yonke imikhosi yamaNifayithi—kwaye igama lakhe lalinguMoronayi;
- 17 Kwaye uMoronayi waluthabatha lonke ulawulo, nokulawulwa kweemfazwe zabo. Kwaye waye enamashumi amabini anesihlanu kuphela eminyaka ubudala xa wayesonyulwa abe ngumphathi oyintloko phezu kwemikhosi yamaNifayithi.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waqubisana namaLeymenayithi kwimida yaseYershan, kwaye abantu bakhe babexhobe ngamakrele, namakrelana abugwegwe, kwaye nangazo zonke iintlobo zezikhali zemfazwe.
- 19 Kwaye xa imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yabona okokuba abantu bakaNifayi, okanye okokuba uMoronayi, wayebalungiselele abantu bakhe ngeentsimbi ezingcina-sifuba kwaye nangamakhaka aqiniselwa engalweni, ewe, kananjalo amakhaka okukhusela iintloko zabo, kananjalo babenxityiswe nangeempahla ezingqingqwa—
- 20 Ngoku umkhosi kaZerahemna wawungalungiselelwanga nangantoni na elolo hlobo; kuphela wawunamakrele wawo namakrelana abugwegwe wawo, izaphetha zawo neentolo zawo, amatye awo nezilingi zawo; kwaye wawuze, ngaphandle nje kwezikhumba ezazibhinqelwe ezinqeni zawo; ewe, wonke wawuze, ngaphandle kwamaZoramayithi nama-Amalekayithi;
- 21 Kodwa babengaxhobanga ngeentsimbi ezizigcina-sifuba, nangamakhaka—ke ngoko, babeyoyika ngokugqithisileyo imikhosi yamaNifayithi ngenxa yezikrweqe zawo, nangona amanani abo ayemakhulu kakhulu kunawo awamaNifayithi.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jershon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

- 22 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba babengeze balinge ukuhlasela ngokuchasene namaNifayithi kwimida yaseYershan; ke ngoko bemka baphuma elizweni laseAnteyonam bangena entlango, baza bathabatha uhambo lwabo bajikela ngaphaya kwentlango, kude ngakwintloko yomlambo iTsidon, ukuze babe nokuza elizweni laseManti baze bathabathe ulawulo lwelizwe; kuba babengakucingi okokuba imikhosi kaMoronayi ingabazi apho baye ngakhona.
- 23 Kodwa kwenzekile, kwakamsinyane nje bemkile ukuya entlango uMoronayi wathumela iintloka zingene entlango ukuya kulinda iinkampu zawo; kwaye uMoronayi, kanjalo, esazi ngeziprofetho zika-Alma, wathumela amadoda athile kuye, enqwenela okokuba abuze kuyo iNkosi apho imikhosi yamaNifayithi kumele iye khona ukuze izikhusele kumaLeymenayithi.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuye uAlma, waza uAlma wazazisa izigidimi zikaMoronayi, okokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yayimatsha macala onke entlango ukuze ibe nokuwela ingene elizweni laseManti, ukuze ibe nokuqalisa uhlaselo phezu kwaloo mmandla wabantu abangenamandla okuzikhusele. Kwaye ezo zigidimi zahamba zaza zawunikezela umyalezo kuMoronayi.
- 25 Ngoku uMoronayi, eshiya inxalenye yomkhosi wakhe elizweni laseYershan, hleze nangayiphina indlela inxalenye yamaLeymenayithi ize ingene kwelo lizwe ize isibange isixeko, wathabatha inxalenye esalayo yomkhosi wakhe waza wamatshela ngaphaya kwilizwe laseManti.
- 26 Waza wenza okokuba bonke abantu kuloo mbombo yelizwe bahlanganisane kunye ukuba balwe ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, ukuba bakhusele imihlaba yabo nelizwe labo, amalungelo abo neenkululeko zabo; ke ngoko babelilungiselele ixesha lokufika kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wabangela okokuba umkhosi wakhe uzimele kwintlambo eyaye ikufuphi nodonga lomlambo iTsidon, eyaye ingasentshona yomlambo iTsidon entlango.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

28 Waza uMoronayi wabeka iintlola macala onke, ukuze abe nokwazi xa inkampu yamaLeymenayithi inokuza.

29 Kwaye ngoku, njengokuba uMoronayi wayeyazi injongo yamaLeymenayithi, yokokuba yayiyinjongo yawo ukuba atshabalalise abazalwana babo, okanye ukuba babalawule kwaye babazise ebukhobokeni ukuze babe nokuzimisela obabo ubukumkani phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe;

30 Kananjalo esazi okokuba kwakukuphela komnqweno wamaNifayithi ukukhusela imihlaba yawo, nenkululeko yawo, nebandla lawo, ke ngoko wacinga ukuba akusiso isono ukuba bazikhusele ngobuchule; ke ngoko, wafumanisa ngeentlola zakhe indlela awayeza kuyithabatha amaLeymenayithi.

31 Ke ngoko, wayohlula imikhosi yakhe waza wazisa inxalenye ngaphesheya entlanjeni, waza wayifihla ngasempuma, kwaye nasemazantsi enduli iRipla;

32 Waza intsalela wayifihla kwintlambo esentshona, ngakwintshona yomlambo iTsidon, kwaye njalo ke ukuhla ukuya kwimida yelizwe iManti.

33 Waza njalo ewubekile umkhosi wakhe ngokomnqweno wakhe, wayekulungele ukuqubisana nabo.

34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi enyukela ngakumantla enduli, apho inxalenye yomkhosi kaMoronayi yayizifihle khona.

35 Kwaye akuba amaLeymenayithi eyidlule induli iRipla, aza eza entlanjeni, kwaye aqalisa ukuwela umlambo iTsidon, umkhosi lowo wawufihlwe ngasemazantsi enduli, owawukhokelwa yindoda egama layo lalinguLihayi, kwaye yawukhokelela phambili umkhosi wayo yaza yawarhangqa amaLeymenayithi ngapha nangapha ngasempuma ngasemva kwawo.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi, akuwabona amaNifayithi esiza phezu kwawo ngasemva kwawo, ajikaaza aqalisa ukulwa kunye nomkhosi kaLihayi.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

37 Waza umsebenzi wokufa waqalisa kumacala omabini, kodwa wawusoyikeka ngakumbi ngakwicala lamaLeymenayithi, kuba ubuze bawo babutyhilekile kuzo izithonga ezinzima zamaNifayithi ngamakrele awo kwaye nangamakrelana awo abugwegwe, awayesizisa ukufa phantse ngesihlandlo ngasinye.

38 Ngeli lixa kwelinye icala, kwakubakho umntu owayo ngamanye amaxesha phakathi kwamaNifayithi, ngamakrele awo kwaye nangokopha, ekubeni bona bekhuselekile ukusuka kwawona malungu anobomi ngakumbi omzimba, okanye awona malungu anobomi ngakumbi omzimba ekhuselekile kuzo izihlandlo zamaLeymenayithi, ngeentsimbi ezizigcina-sifuba kwaye nangamakhaka awo aqiniselwa engalweni, kwaye nangezirkweqe zentloko; aza njalo ke amaNifayithi awuqhuba umsebenzi wokubulala phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi.

39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukoyika, ngenxa yentshabalalo enkulu phakathi kwawo, ewe nokude aqalise ukwesabela ngakumlambo iTsidon.

40 Kwaye ayesukelwa nguLihayi namadoda akhe; kwaye adudulelwa kumanzi eTsidon nguLihayi, aza awela kumanzi eTsidon. Kwaye uLihayi wayibamba imikhosi yakhe phezu kodonga lomlambo iTsidon ukuze ingaweli.

41 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi nomkhosi wakhe waqubisana namaLeymenayithi entlanjeni, kwelinye icala lomlambo iTsidon, waza waqalisa ukuwawela nokuwabulala.

42 Aza amaLeymenayithi asaba kwakhona phambi kwayo, abheka ngakwilizwe laseManti; aza kwakhona aqubisana nemikhosi kaMoronayi.

43 Ngoku kule meko amaLeymenayithi aye alwa ngokugqithisileyo; ewe, awazange amaLeymenayithi aziwa ngokulwa ngokomelela okugqithise kakhulu ngolo hlobo nenkalipho, hayi, kwankqu nasekuqaleni.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

- 44 Kwaye ayephenjelelwa ngamaZoramayithi nama-Amalekayithi, awaye engabaphathi bawo abaziintloko neenkokeli, kwaye nanguZerahemna, owaye engumphathi wawo oyintloko, okanye inkokeli yawo eyintloko nomphathi-mkhosi; ewe, baye balwa njengeenamba, kwaye abaninzi bamaNifayithi babulawa ngezandla zabo, ewe, kuba baye bazibetha ngamandla zahlukana kubini ezininzi izikrweqe zabo zentloko, kwaye baye bagqobhoza ezininzi iingcina-sifuba zabo, kwaye baye bashunqula ezininzi iingalo zabo; kwaye njalo amaLeymenayithi aye ahlaselela ngomsindo wawo owoyikekayo.
- 45 Nangona kunjalo, amaNifayithi ayephenjelelwa yinjongo elunge kakhulu, kuba ayengalweli bukumkani nalawulo kodwa ayesilwela amakhaya awo nenkululeko yawo, abafazi bawo nabantwana bawo, kwaye nako konke okwawo, ewe, iinkonzo zawo ezizodwa zokunqula nebandla lawo.
- 46 Kwaye ayesenza oko ayekuva kungumsebenzi owawuyimfanelo yawo kuThixo wawo; kuba iNkosi yayithethe ngolu hlobo kuwo, kananjalo nakooyise: Kangangokuba ningenatyala lokuba ngabokuqala ukukhubekisa, nabesibini, anisayi kuziyekela ukuba nibulawe ngezandla zeentshaba zenu.
- 47 Kwaye kwakhona, iNkosi yayithethe ngolu hlobo: Niya kuzikhusela iintsapho zenu nokokude niphalaze igazi. Ke ngoko kungesi sizathu amaNifayithi ayesilwa kunye namaLeymenayithi, ukuze azikhusela, neentsapho zawo, nemihlaba yawo, ilizwe lawo, neemfanelo zawo, nenkolo yawo.
- 48 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa amadoda kaMoronayi abona uburhalarhume nomsindo wamaLeymenayithi, ayesele eza kurhwaqela kwaye asabe kuwo. Waza uMoronayi, eyiqonda injongo yawo, wathumela, waza waziphembelela iintliziyo zawo ngezi ngcinga—ewe, iingcinga zemihlaba yawo, inkululeko yawo, ewe, ukukhululeka kwawo ebukhobokeni.
- 49 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ajika awahlaselela amaLeymenayithi, aza adanduluka ngezwi elinye kwiNkosi uThixo wawo, ngenxa yenkululeko yawo nokukhululeka kwawo ebukhobokeni.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

50 Kwaye baqalisa ukumelana namaLeymenayithi ngamandla; kwaza kanye ngeloo lixa awathi adanduluka eNkosini ngenxa yenkululeko yawo, amaLeymenayithi aqalisa ukusaba phambi kwawo; aza asabela nakuwo amanzi eTsidon.

51 Ngoku, amaLeymenayithi ayeyintlaninge ngaphezulu, ewe, ngokungaphezulu okuphindeneyo ngenani kunamaNifayithi; nangona kunjalo, badudulwa kangankuba bahlanganiswa kunye baliqela elinye entlanjeni, phezu kodonga ngasemlanjeni iTsidon.

52 Ke ngoko imikhosi kaMoronayi yabarhangqa ngapha nangapha, ewe, kwanakumacala omabini omlambo, kuba qaphelani, ngasempuma kwakukho amadoda kaLihayi.

53 Ke ngoko akuba uZerahemna ewabona amadoda kaLihayi empuma yomlambo iTsidon, nemikhosi kaMoronayi entshona yomlambo iTsidon, okokuba ayerhangqwe ngapha nangapha ngamaNifayithi, ahlaselwa luloyiko.

54 Ngoku uMoronayi, akulubona uloyiko lwawo, wayalela amadoda akhe okokuba apheze ukuphalaza igazi labo.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

## Alma 44

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bema baza barhoxa inyathelo nje ukusuka kubo. Waza uMoronayi wathi kuye uZerahemna: Qaphela, Zerahemna, okokuba asinqweneli ukuba ngamadoda egazi. Niyazi okokuba nisezandleni zethu, kanti ke asinqweneli kunibulala.
- 2 Qaphelani, asiphumelanga kulwa dabi ngokuchasene nani ukuze sibe nokuphalaza igazi lenu ukuze sibe nokongama; singanqweneli nakuzisa nabanina kwidyokhwe yobukhoboka. Kodwa esi sisizathu kanye sokuba nizokusihlasela; ewe, kwaye ninomsindo ngakuthi ngenxa yenkolo yethu.
- 3 Kodwa ngoku, niyaqonda okokuba iNkosi inathi; kwaye niyaqonda okokuba ininikezele ezandleni zethu. Kwaye ngoku ndinga ningaqonda okokuba sikwenzelwa oku ngenxa yonqulo lwethu nokholo lwethu kuKrestu. Kwaye ngoku niyaqonda okokuba aninako ukulutshabalalisa olu kholo lwethu.
- 4 Ngoku niyabona okokuba le yinkolo eyinyani kaThixo; ewe, niyabona okokuba uThixo uya kusixhasa, aze asigcine, aze asilondoloze, kangangokuba sinyanisekile kuye, kwaye nakuyo inkolo yethu, nonqulo lwethu; kwaye ingasayi kuze iNkosi ivumele ukuba sitshatyalaliswe ngaphandle kokuba sinokuwela ekoneni kwaye siyikhanyele inkolo yethu.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, Zerahemna, ndiyakuyalela, egameni laloo Thixo unamandla onke, othe wazomeleza iingalo zethu ukuze sibe sinongamele, ngokholo lwethu, ngenkolo yethu, kwaye nangeenkonzozo zethu ezizodwa zokunqula, kwaye nangebandla lethu, kwaye nangenkxaso engcwele eyimfanelo yabafazi bethu nabantwana bethu, ngaloo nkululeko ethi isibophelele kuyo imihlaba yethu nelizwe lethu; ewe, kanaanjalo nangokugcinwa kwelizwi elingcwele likaThixo, kuko esithi sifumane konke ukonwaba kwethu; nangako konke okuthandeka kakhulu kuthi—

## Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 Ewe, kwaye akuphelelanga apho; ndiyaniyalela ngayo yonke iminqweno eninayo yobomi, ukuba ninikezele izikhali zenu zemfazwe kuthi, kwaye asiyi kuzamana nagazi lenu, kodwa siya kubusindisa ubomi benu, ukuba niya kuhamba indlela yenu kwaye ningabuyi kwakhona ukuza kulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene nathi.

7 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba anikwenzi oku, qaphelani, nisezandleni zethu, kwaye ndiya kuyalela amadoda am ukuba aniwele, aze anibethe amaxeba okufa emizimbeni yenu, ukuze nibe ngabangasekhoyo; kwaye ke siya kubona ukuba ngubanina oya kuba nomandla phezu kwaba bantu; ewe, siya kubona ukuba ngubanina oya kuziswa ebukhobokeni.

8 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uZerahemna ezivile ezi ntetha weza ngaphambili waza wanikezela ngekrele lakhe nekrelana elibugwegwe lakhe, nesaphetha sakhe ezandleni zikaMoronayi, waza wathi kuye: Qaphela, nazi izikhali zethu zemfazwe; siya kuzinikezela kuwe, kodwa asiyi kuzivumela ukuba senze isifungo kuwe, esisaziyo ukuba siza kusophula, kananjalo nabantwana bethu; kodwa zithabathe izikhali zethu zemfazwe, kwaye usivumele ukuba sisinge entlango; kungenjalo siya kuwagcina amakrele ethu, kwaye siya kufa okanye soyise.

9 Qaphela, thina asingabo abenkolo yenu; asikholelwa okokuba nguThixo lo usinikezeleyo ezandleni zenu; kodwa sikholelwa ukuba ngamaqhinga akho la anikhuseleyo kumakrele ethu. Qaphela, ziintsimbi ezizigcina-sifuba zenu namakhaka enu la anikhuseleyo.

10 Kwaye ngoku akuba uZerahemna ephezile ukuthetha la mazwi, uMoronayi wawabuyisela amakrele nezikhali zemfazwe, abethe wazamkela, kuZerahemna, esithi: Qaphela, siza kuyiphelisa imbambano.

11 Ngoku andinakho ukuwabuyisela amazwi endiwathethileyo, ke ngoko njengoko iNkosi iphila, anisayi kumka ngaphandle kokuba nimka nesifungo sokokuba anisayi kuphinda nibuye kwakhona ngokuchasene nathi ukulwa imfazwe. Ngoku njengoko nisezandleni zethu siya kuliphalaza igazi lenu phezu komhlaba, okanye niza kululamela imigaqo leyo endiyicebileyo.

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.



- 12 Kwaye ngoku akuba uMoronayi ewathethile la mazwi, uZerahemna waligcina ikrele lakhe, waza waba nomsindo ngakuMoronayi, waza wambonzeleka phambili ukuze abe nokubulala uMoronayi; kodwa njengokuba wayephakamisa ikrele lakhe, qaphelani, elinye lamasoldathi kaMoronayi lalibetha ewe nokude liwele emhlabeni, laza lophuka ngasesiphathweni; laza kanjalo lambetha uZerahemna lamsusa isikhumba sokhakhayi lwakhe saza sawa emhlabeni. Waza uZerahemna warhoxa wasuka phambi kwabo waya embindini wamasoldathi akhe.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isoldathi elalime kufufhi, elathi lambetha lasusa isikhumba sokhakhayi lukaZerahemna, lasithabatha isikhumba sokhakhayi salususa emhlabeni ngonwele, laza lasibeka phezu kwencam yekrele laso, laza lasolulela phambili kuwo, lisithi kubo ngezwi elikhulu:
- 14 Kwananjengokuba esi sikhumba sokhakhayi siwele emhlabeni, esi sisikhumba sokhakhayi lwenkosi yenu, nani niya kuwela emhlabeni kwangolu hlobo ngaphandle kokuba niya kuzinikezela izikhali zenu zemfazwe nize nimke ninomnqophiso woxolo.
- 15 Ngoku babebaninzi, xa sukuba besiva la mazwi kwaye besibona nesikhumba sokhakhayi esasiphezu kwekrele, abathi bafikelwa luloyiko; baza abaninzi beza ngaphambili baza baziphosa phantsi izikhali zabo zemfazwe ezinyaweni zikaMoronayi, baza bangena kumnqophiso woxolo. Kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abathi bangena kumnqophiso bavunyelwa ukuba bemke bangene entlango.
- 16 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uZerahemna waba nomsindo ogqithisileyo, kwaye waye wayivuselela intsalela yamasoldathi emsindweni, ukuba ilwe ngamandla ngakumbi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku uMoronayi waye enomsindo, ngenxa yokuba neenkani kwamaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko wabayalela abantu bakhe ukuba mabawawele kwaye bawabulale. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baqalisa ukuwabulala; ewe, kwaye amaLeymenayithi aye alwa ngamakrele awo kwaye nangamandlakazi awo.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

18 Kodwa qaphelani, izikhumba zawo ezize kwaye neentloko zawo ezingagqunywanga zazityhilekile kumakrele abukhali amaNifayithi; ewe, qaphela babehlatywa kwaye bebethwa, ewe, kwaye aye awa ngokukhawuleza okugqithisileyo phambi kwamakrele amaNifayithi; aza aqalisa ukutshayelwa, kwanjengokuba amasoldathi kaMoronayi ayeprofethile.

19 Ngoku uZerahemna, akubona okokuba bonke babesele beza kutshatyalaliswa, wadanduluka ngamandlakazi kuye uMoronayi, ethembisa okokuba uza kunqophisana kunye nabo kanjalo nabantu bakhe, ukuba bangabusindisa ubomi babo bashiyekileyo, ukuze bangaze baphinde bazokulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene nabo kwakhona.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wenza okokuba umsebenzi wokubulala mawuphele kwakhona phakathi kwabantu. Waza wazithabatha izikhali zemfazwe kuwo amaLeymenayithi; kwaye emva kokuba engene kumnqophiso woxolo kunye naye avunyelwa ukuba emke angene entlango.

21 Ngoku inani labafileyo babo alizange labalwa ngenxa yobukhulu benani; ewe, inani labafileyo babo lalikhulu ngokugqithisileyo, kunye kumaNifayithi nakumaLeymenayithi.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye babaphosela abafileyo babo emanzini eTsidon, baza babheka phambili baza bangcwatywa enzulwini yolwandle.

23 Kwaye imikhosi yamaNifayithi, okanye kaMoronayi, yabuya kwaye yaya ezindlwini zayo nemihlaba yayo.

24 Waza njalo waphela oweshumi elinesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi. Yaza njalo yaphela imbali ka-Alma, eyayibhalwe phezu kwamacwecwe kaNifayi.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

*Ingxelo yabantu bakaNifayi, neemfazwe neempikiswano zabo, ngemibla kaHilamani, ngokwembali kaHilamani, arwatbi wayigcina ngemibla yakbe.*

## Alma 45

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaNifayi babegcobe ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yokuba iNkosi kwakhona ibahlangule baphuma ezandleni zeentshaba zabo; ke ngoko banika imibulelo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo; ewe, kwaye baye bazila ukutya ngakumbi kwaye bathandaza ngakumbi, kwaye baye bamkhonza uThixo ngovuyo olukhulu ngokugqithisileyo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile koweshumi elinesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, okokuba uAlma weza kunyana wakhe uHilamani waza wathi kuye: Uyawakholelwa na amazwi endawathetha kuwe malunga nezo mbali ebeziciniwe?
- 3 Waza uHilamani wathi kuye: Ewe, ndiyakholelwa.
- 4 Waza uAlma wathi kwakhona: Uyakholelwa na kuYesu Krestu, oya kuza?
- 5 Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiyawakholelwa onke amazwi owathethileyo.
- 6 Waza uAlma wathi kuye kwakhona: Ingaba uya kuyigcina na imiyalelo yam?
- 7 Waza wathi: Ewe, ndiya kuyigcina imiyalelo yakho ngentliziyo yam yonke.
- 8 Ngoko wathi uAlma kuye: Usikelelekile wena; kwaye iNkosi iya kukuchumisa kulo eli lizwe.
- 9 Kodwa qaphela, ndinokuthile nje endifuna ukukuprofetha kuwe; kodwa endiza kukuprofetha kuwe akusayi kukwazisa; ewe, oko ndiza kukuprofetha kuwe akusayi kwaziswa, nokokude kube kuzalisekile; ke ngoko wabhale amazwi lawo endiza kuwathetha.
- 10 Kwaye la ngawo amazwi: Qaphela, ndiyabona okokuba kanye aba bantu, amaNifayithi, ngokomoya wesityhilelo okum, kwiminyaka emakhulu mane ukususela kwilixa lokokuba uYesu Krestu eya kuzibonakalisa kubo, baya kuya bephelela ekungakholweni.

*The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.*

## Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

- 11 Ewe, kwaye ke baya kubona iimfazwe noobhubhane, ewe, iindlala nempalalogazi, ewe nokude kube abantu bakaNifayi baya kuba ngabangasekhoyo—
- 12 Ewe, kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba kuya bephelela ekungakholweni kwaye bawele kwimisebenzi yobumnyama, noburheletya, nalo lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa; ewe, ndithi kuwe, kungenxa yokokuba beya kona ngokuchasene nokukhanya okubaluleke kakhulu kangaka nolwazi, ewe, ndithi kuwe, ukususela kuloo mhla, naso isizukulwana sesine asisayi kudlula sonke ngaphambi kokuba obu bugwenxa bukhulu bufike.
- 13 Kwaye xa loo mhla mkhulu ufika, qaphela, ilixa kwakamsinya kakhulu liyeza lokokuba abo bakhoyo ngoku, okanye imbewu yabo ngoku babalelwa phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, abasayi kube baphinde babalelwe phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 14 Kodwa nabanina oseleyo, kwaye engatshatyalaliswanga ngaloo mini nkulu neyoyikekayo, uya kubalelwa phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, kwaye baya kuba njengabo bonke, ngaphandle kokuba ibe ngabambalwa abaya kubizwa ngokuba bangabafundi beNkosi; kwaye wona amaLeymenayithi aya kubazingela ewe nokude babe baya kuba ngabangasekhoyo. Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yobugwenxa, esi siprofetho siya kuzaliseka.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uAlma ezithethile ezi zinto kuHilamani, wamsikelela, kananjalo nabanye oonyana bakhe; waza kanjalo wasikelela nomhlaba ngenxa yabo bangamalungisa.
- 16 Kwaye wathi: Itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo—Liya kuqalekiswa ilizwe, ewe, eli lizwe, kuso sonke isizwe, isalamane, ulwimi, nabantu, kuye entshabalalweni, kwabo benza ngenkohlakalo, bakuba bevuthwe ngokupheleleyo; kwaye njengokuba senditshilo kuya kuba njalo; kuba esi sisiqalekiso nentsikelelo kaThixo phezu kwelizwe, kuba iNkosi ayinako ukusikhangela isono nangelona lincinane iqondo lolwamkelo.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

17 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uAlma ewathethile la mazwi walisikelela ibandla, ewe, bonke abo baya kuma bathi nkqo elukholweni ukususela kwelo lixa ukubheka phambili.

18 Kwaye akuba uAlma ekwenzile oku wemka waphuma elizweni laseZarahemla, ngokungathi ungena kwilizwe laseMeleki. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuzange kuphinde kuviwe ngaye; malunga nokufa kwakhe okanye ukungcwatywa kwakhe asazinto ngoko.

19 Qaphelani, oku siyakwazi, okokuba wayeyindoda elilungisa; kwaye intetha yahamba-hamba ebandleni yokokuba wathatyathelwa phezulu nguMoya, okanye wangcwatywa ngesandla seNkosi, kwananje ngoMoses. Kodwa qaphelani, izibhalo zithi iNkosi yamthabathela kuyo uMoses; kwaye siyacinga okokuba noAlma kanjalo imamkelele kuyo ngomoya, ke ngoko kungesi sizathu singazi nto malunga nokufa kwakhe nokungcwatywa kwakhe.

20 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile ekuqalekeni koweshumi elinesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, okokuba uHilamani wabheka phambili phakathi kwabantu ukuya kuvakalisa ilizwi kubo.

21 Kuba qaphelani, ngenxa yeemfazwe zabo kunye namaLeymenayithi neempikiswano zabo ezincinane ezininzi neziphazamiso ebezikho phakathi kwabantu, kwaye kwayimfuneko okokuba ilizwi likaThixo kufanele livakaliswe phakathi kwabo, ewe, nokokuba ummiselo kufanele wenziwe kulo lonke ibandla.

22 Ke ngoko, uHilamani nabazalwana bakhe babheka phambili ukuya kumisela ibandla kwakhona kulo lonke ilizwe, ewe, kuzo zonke izixeko kulo lonke ilizwe elalimiwe ngabantu bakaNifayi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bamisela ababingeleli neetitshala kulo lonke ilizwe, phezu kwawo onke amabandla.

23 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uHilamani nabazalwana bakhe bemisele ababingeleli neetitshala phezu kwamabandla kwathi kwavuka impikiswano phakathi kwabo, kwaye abazange bafune kunika nyameko kumazwi kaHilamani nabazalwana bakhe;

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

24      Kodwa bakhulelwa likratshi, bephakamile  
ezintliziyweni zabo, ngenxa yobutyebi babo  
obugqithisileyo; ke ngoko bakhulelwa kukutyeba  
emehlweni abo, baza abafuna ukunikela inyameko  
kumazwi abo, ukuze bahambe bethe tye phambi  
koThixo.

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their  
hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches;  
therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and  
would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly  
before God.

## Alma 46

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kangangobuninzi babo abo babengawaphulaphuli amazwi kaHilamani nabazalwana babo babehlanganiswe kunye ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, baba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba babezimisele ukuba bababulale.
- 3 Ngoku inkokeli yabo babe nomsindo ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo yayi yindoda enomzimba nendoda eyomeleleyo; kwaye igama layo lalinguAmalikhaya.
- 4 Kwaye uAmalikhaya wayenqwenela ukuba ngukumkani; kwaye abo bantu babenomsindo kanjalo babenqwenela ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo; kwaye isininzi sabo sasi ngabagwebi ababe kudidi olusezantsi lelizwe, kwaye babefuna amandla.
- 5 Kwaye babethe bakhokelwa bubunyhwalazi buka-Amalikhaya, okokuba ukuba baya kumxhasa baze bammisele ukuba abengukumkani wabo uya kubenza abalawuli phezu kwabantu.
- 6 Njalo bakhokelelwa nguAmalikhaya ekukreqeni, nangona benentshumayelo kaHilamani nabazalwana bakhe, ewe, nangona benenkathalo enkulu ngokugqithisileyo phezu kwebandla, kuba babengababingeleli abakhulu phezu kwebandla.
- 7 Kwaye babebaninzi ebandleni ababekholelwa kumazwi okunyhwalaza ka-Amalikhaya, ke ngoko bakreqa bemka nakulo ibandla; kwaye yaba njalo ke imicimbi yabantu bakaNifayi ukungaqiniseki ngokugqithisileyo nokuba yingozi, nangona babe noloyiso olukhulu phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, nemigcobo yabo emikhulu ababenayo ngenxa yokuhlangulwa kwabo ngesandla seNkosi.
- 8 Njalo ke siyakubona ukukhawuleza kwabo abantwana babantu ukuyilibala iNkosi uThixo wabo, ewe, ukukhawuleza kwabo ukwenza ubugwenxa, nokukhokelelwa kude ngongendawo.
- 9 Ewe, kananjalo siyabona inkohlakalo enkulu enako ukubangelwa yindoda enye phakathi kwabantwana babantu.

## Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hear-ken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and es-tablish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissen-sions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceed-ingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do for-get the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the chil-dren of men.

- 10 Ewe, siyabona okokuba uAmalikhaya, ngenxa yokokuba wayeyindoda yamayelenqe obuqhinga nendoda yamazwi amaninzi okunyhwalaza, kangangokuba wakhokelela kude iintliziyo zabantu abaninzi ukuba benze ngenkohlakalo; ewe, nokuzama ukutshabalalisa ibandla likaThixo, nokutshabalalisa isiseko senkululeko athe uThixo wasinika bona, okanye intsikelelo athe uThixo wayithumela phezu kobuso belizwe ngenxa yobulungisa.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi, owayengumphathi-mikhosi oyintloko wemikhosi yamaNifayithi, evile ngezi mpikiswano, waba nomsindo ngakuAmalikhaya.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wasikrazula isambatho sakhe sangaphezulu; waza wathabatha isiqwenga saso, waza wabhala phezu kwaso—Ngenkumbulo yoThixo wethu, inkolo yethu, nenkululeko, noxolo lwethu, abafazi bethu, nabantwana bethu—waza wasibophelela phezu kwesiphelo sesibonda.
- 13 Waza wasibophelela kwisikrweqe sentloko yakhe, nentsimbi eyingcina sifuba, namakhaka akhe, waza wazibhinqisa isikrweqe sakhe esinqeni sakhe; waza wasithabatha isibonda, esaye esiphelweni saso sinesambatho sakhe sangaphezulu esikrazulweyo, (waza wasibiza ngokuba yibhanile yenkululeko) waza waqubuda emhlabeni, waza wathandaza ngamandlakazi kuThixo wakhe ukuba iintsikelelo zenkululeko ziphumle phezu kwabazalwana bakhe, oko nje kuya kubakho iqela lamaKrestu eliseleyo ukuba libange ilizwe—
- 14 Kuba ayebizwa njalo onke amakholwa okwenene kaKrestu, awayeengawebandla likaThixo, ngabo babengengabo abebandla.
- 15 Kwaye abo babengabebandla babenyanisekile; ewe, bonke abo babengamakholwa okwenene kuKrestu bathabathela kubo, ngovuyo, igama likaKrestu, okanye amaKrestu njengoko babebizwa, ngenxa yokholo lwabo kuKrestu owaye eza kuza.
- 16 Kwaye ke ngoko, ngeli lixa, uMoronayi wathandaza ukuze injongo yamaKrestu, nenkululeko yelizwe zibe nokwamkeleka.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.



17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ewuthululele umphefumlo wakhe kuThixo, walithiya lonke ilizwe elaye lisemazantsi elizwe ngokuba yiNkangala, ewe, kwaye lilonke, lonke ilizwe, kunye emantla kwaye nasemazantsi—Ilizwe elikhethekileyo, nelizwe lenkululeko.

18 Waza wathi: Eneneni uThixo akayi kukuvumela ukuba thina, abacekiswa ngenxa yokokuba sithabathela phezu kwethu igama likaKrestu, sinyathelwe phantsi size sitshatyalaliswe, side sikuzise phezu kwethu ngeziphoso zethu.

19 Kwaye akuba uMoronayi ewathethile la mazwi, wabhaka phambili phakathi kwabantu, ephephezelisa inxenye yesambatho sakhe esikrazulweyo emoyeni, ukuze bonke babe nokuwubona umbhalo awayewubhale phezu kwenxenye ekrazulweyo, kwaye edanduluka ngezwi elikhulu, esithi:

20 Qaphelani, nobanina abaya kuyixhasa le bhanile kweli lizwe, mabeze ngaphambili emandleni eNkosi, baze bangene kuwo umnqophiso wokokuba baya kuzixhasa iimfanelo zabo, nenkolo yabo, ukuze iNkosi uThixo ibe nokubasikelela.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi ewabhengezile la mazwi, qaphelani, abantu beza bebaleka kunye nezikrweqe zabo zibhinquelwe ezinqeni zabo, bekrazula izambatho zabo nje ngomqondiso, okanye nje ngomnqophiso, wokuba abayi kuyishiya iNkosi uThixo wabo; okanye ngamanye amazwi, ukuba bangayona imiyalelo kaThixo, okanye bawele ekoneni, kwaye babe neentloni ukulithabathela kubo igama likaKrestu, iNkosi iya kubakrazula nanjengokuba bezikrazule izambatho zabo.

22 Ngoku lo yayingumnqophiso abawenzayo, baza baziphosa izambatho zabo ezinyaweni zikaMoronayi, besithi: Siyanqophisana kunye noThixo wethu, okokuba siya kutshatyalaliswa, nanjengabazalwana bethu kwilizwe elisemantla, ukuba siya kuwela ekoneni; ewe, angasiphosa ezinyaweni zeentshaba zethu, nanjengokuba siziphosile izambatho zethu ezinyaweni zakho ukuze zinyathelwe phantsi kweenyawo, ukuba siya kuwela ekoneni.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

23 UMoronayi wathi kubo: Qaphelani, siyintsalela yembewu kaYakobi; ewe, siyintsalela yembewu kaYosefu, ongubo yakhe yayikrazulwe ngabazalwana bakhe yaba ziziqwenga ezininzi; ewe, kwaye ngoku qaphelani, masikhumbule ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, okanye izambatho zethu ziya kukrazulwa ngabazalwana bethu, size siphoswe entolongweni, okanye sithengiswe, okanye sibulawe.

24 Ewe, masilondoloze ilungelo lethu njengentsalela kaYosefu; ewe, masikhumbule amazwi kaYakobi, phambi kokufa kwakhe, kuba qaphelani, wabona ukuba inxalenye yentsalela yengubo kaYosefu yalondolozwa kwaye ayibolanga. Kwaye wathi—Kwanjengokuba le ntsalela yengubo yonyana wam ilondolozwe, iya kuba njalo nentsalela yembewu yonyana wam ukulondolozwa ngesandla sikaThixo, ize ithatyathelwe kuye, ngeli lixa intsalela yembewu kaYosefu iya kutshabalala, kwanjengentsalela yengubo yakhe.

25 Ngoku qaphela, oku kuwunika usizi umphefumlo wam; nangona kunjalo, umphefumlo wam unovuyo kunyana wam, ngenxa yaloo nxalenye yembewu yakhe eya kuthatyathelwa kuThixo.

26 Ngoku qaphelani, le yayiyintetho kaYakobi.

27 Kwaye ngoku ngubani owaziyo okokuba iyintoni na intsalela yembewu kaYosefu, eya kutshabalala njengengubo yakhe, ngabo bakreqileyo kuthi? Ewe, kwaye isenokuba sithi ukuba asimi sithi nkqi elukholweni lukaKrestu.

28 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi ewathethile la mazwi wabheka phambili, waza kanjalo wathumela phambili kuzo zonke iindawo zelizwe apho kwakukho iimpikiswano, waza wahlanganisa kunye bonke abantu ababengwenela ukuxhasa inkululeko yabo, ukuba beme ngokuchasene noAmalikhaya kunye nabo babekreqile, ababebizwa ngokuba ngama-Amalikhayayithi.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmalikhaya ebona okokuba abantu bakaMoronayi babeyintlaninge ngaphezulu kunama-Amalikhayayithi—kananjalo wabona okokuba abantu bakhe babethandabuza ngokunxulumene nobulungisa benjongo ababe yamkele—ke ngoko, besoyika ukuba akayi kuyizuza injongo yakhe, wathabatha abo babantu bakhe ababezimisele waza wemka wangena elizweni likaNifayi.
- 30 Ngoku uMoronayi wacinga ukuba kwakungeyomfuneko ukuba amaLeymenayithi angaphinda abenawo amandla angakumbi; ke ngoko wacinga ukuba abohlule abantu baka-Amalikhaya, okanye abathabathe aze ababuyisele emva, aze abulale uAmalikhaya; ewe, kuba wayesazi okokuba uya kuwavuselela emsindweni amaLeymenayithi ngokuchasene nabo, aze ababangele ukuba bazokulwa idabi ngokuchasene nabo; kwaye oku wayekwazi okokuba uAmalikhaya angakwenza ukuze abe nokuzuza iinjongo zakhe.
- 31 Ke ngoko uMoronayi wacinga okokuba kwakuyimfuneko ukuba umele athabathe imikhosi yakhe, eyaye izihlanganise kunye, yaza yazixhobisa, yaza yangena kumnqophiso wokugcina uxolo—kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wawuthabatha umkhosi wakhe waza wamatsha waphuma kunye neentente zakhe wangena entlango, ukuze ayinqamle indlela ka-Amalikhaya entlango.
- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wenza ngokweminqweno yakhe, kwaye wamatshela phambili wangena entlango, wayithintela imikhosi ka-Amalikhaya.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wasaba negcuntswana lamadoda akhe, aza aseleyo anikezelwa ezandleni zikaMoronayi aza abuyiselwa emva elizweni laseZarahemla.
- 34 Ngoku, uMoronayi ekubeni eyindoda eyonyulwe ngabagwebi abaziintloko ngezwi labantu, ke ngoko wayenamandla ngokwentando yakhe kwimikhosi yamaNifayithi, ukuba amisele kwaye asebenzise igunya phezu kwabo.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kuye nobani na abama-Amalikhaya abangavumiyo ukungena kumngqophiso wokuxhasa injongo yenkululeko, ukuze babe nokuxhasa ulawulo olukhululekileyo, wabenza ukuba babulawe; kwaye kwabakho nje abambalwa abawalayo umngqophiso wenkululeko.
- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile kanjalo, okokuba wayibangela ibhanile yenkululeko ukuba inyuselwe phezu kwayo yonke incopho eyayikho kulo lonke ilizwe, eyayilawulwa ngamaNifayithi; kwaye njalo uMoronayi wayimisela ibhanile yenkululeko phakathi kwamaNifayithi.
- 37 Baza kwakhona baqalisa ukuba noxolo elizweni; kwaye njalo baye balugcina uxolo elizweni kwada kwaba phantse ekupheleni koweshumi elinesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 38 Kwaye uHilamani nababingeleli abakhulu baye kanjalo balugcina ucwangco ebandleni; ewe, kwanangaso isithuba seminyaka emine baye baba noxolo olukhulu nokugcoba ngenxa yebandla.
- 39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba baninzi abafayo, bekholelwa ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba imiphefumlo yabo yayikhululwe yiNkosi uYesu Krestu; njalo ke baphuma ehlabathini begcobile.
- 40 Kwaye kwakukho abathile abafa ngemikhuhlane, eyaye ngamaxesha athile onyaka yaxhaphaka elizweni—kodwa kungengayo kangako imikhuhlane, ngenxa yeentlobo ezibalaseleyo zezityalo ezininzi neengcambu ezazilungiselelwe nguThixo ukuba zisuse unobangela wezifo, ababephantsi kwazo abantu ngokohlobo lwemozulu—
- 41 Kodwa babebaninzi abafa ngenxa yobudala beminyaka; kwaye abo bafela elukholweni lukaKrestu bonwabile kuye, njengokuba kuyimfuneko ukuba sicinge njalo.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

## Alma 47

- 1 Ngoku siza kubuyela kwimbali yethu kuAmalikhaya nabo basaba kunye naye bangena entlango; kuba, qaphelani, wayethabathe abo bemka naye, waza wenyukela kwilizwe likaNifayi phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, kwaye waye wawavuselela amaLeymenayithi emsindweni ngokuchasene nabantu bakaNifayi, kangangokuba ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wathumela isibhengezo kulo lonke ilizwe lakhe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakhe, sokokuba kumele bahlanganisane kunye kwakhona ukuba bayokulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sakuba isibhengezo sibheke phambili phakathi kwabo boyika ngokugqithisileyo; ewe, boyika ukungamkholisi ukumkani, kananjalo boyika ukuya kulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi hleze baphulukane nobomi babo. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abazange bavume, okanye isininzi sabo asivumanga, ukuyithobela imiyalelo kakumkani.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani waba nomsindo ngenxa yokungathobeli kwabo; ke ngoko wanika uAmalikhaya ulawulo lwaloo nxalenywe yomkhosi wakhe owawuthobela iziyalo zakhe, waza wamyalela okokuba makabheke phambili kwaye abanyanzelise ukuba bayokulwa.
- 4 Ngoku qaphelani, lo yayingumnqweno ka-Amalikhaya; kuba yena ekubeni eyindoda enobuqhokolo kakhulu ekwenzeni ububi ke ngoko wayecebe entliziyweni yakhe ukuba amhluthe ubukhosi ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku ulufumene ulawulo lwaloo nxalenywe yamaLeymenayithi awayemxhasa ukumkani; kwaye wazama ukuzuza inkxaso yabo babengathobeli; ke ngoko wabheka phambili kwindawo eyayibizwa ngokuba yiOnayida, kuba kulapho onke amaLeymenayithi asabela khona; kuba bawubhaqa umkhosi useza, baza, becinga okokuba babesiza kubatshabalalisa, ke ngoko basabela eOnayida, kwindawo yokuzixhobisa.

## Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

- 6 Kwaye babenyule indoda ukuba ibe ngukumkani nenkokeli phezu kwabo, bezimisele ezingqondweni zabo ngesigqibo sokuzimisela okokuba abasayi kunyanzeliswa ukuba bayokulwa ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babezihlanganise kunye phezu kwencopho yentaba eyayibizwa ngokuba yiAntipasi, belungiselela ukulwa.
- 8 Ngoku kwakungeyonjongo ka-Amalikhaya ukulwa nabo ngokwemiyalelo kakumkani; kodwa qaphela, kwakuyinjongo yakhe ukuba azuze inkxaso yemikhosi yamaLeymenayithi, ukuze abe nokuzibeka esikhundleni aze amhluthe ubukhosi ukumkani kwaye athathe nolawulo lobukumkani.
- 9 Kwaye qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba wabangela ukuba imikhosi yakhe igxumeke iintente kwintlambo eyayikufuphi nentaba iAntipasi.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuba kusebusuku wathumela isigidimi esifihlakeleyo entabeni yeAntipasi, enqwenela okokuba inkokeli yabo babephezu kwentaba, egama layo lalinguLihontayi, ukuba mayihle ize emazantsi entaba, kuba wayenqwenela ukuthetha nayo.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uLihontayi ewufumene umyalezo akazange alinge ukwehlela emazantsi entaba. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wathumela kwakhona okwesibini, enqwenela ukuba ehle eze ezantsi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLihontayi akazange avume; waza wathumela kwakhona okwesithathu.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uAmalikhaya efumanisa okokuba akanako ukumenza uLihontayi ukuba ehle eze ezantsi asuke entabeni, wenyukela entabeni, phantse kufuphi nenkampu kaLihontayi; waza wathumela kwakhona okwesine umyalezo wakhe kuLihontayi, enqwenela okokuba ehlele ezantsi, nokokuba angeza nabo abalindi bakhe.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uLihontayi ehlele ezantsi kunye nabalindi bakhe ukuya kuAmalikhaya, uAmalikhaya wamngwenela okokuba ehle kunye nomkhosi wakhe ngobusuku, baze barhangqe loo madoda ezinkampini zawo lawo ukumkani abewanikezele ulawulo lwawo kuye, nokokuba uza kuwanikezela ezandleni zikaLihontayi, ukuba angamenza yena (Amalikhaya) inkokeli yesibini phezu kwawo wonke umkhosi.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLihontayi wehlela ezantsi kunye namadoda akhe waza wawarhangqa amadoda ka-Amalikhaya, ukuze phambi kokuba avuke ekuqalekeni kwemini babe berhangqwe yimikhosi kaLihontayi.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakubona okokuba barhangqiwe, bamcenga uAmalikhaya ukuba abavumele ukuba bazimanye nabazwalwana babo, ukuze bangabi nakutshatyalaliswa. Ngoku le yayiyeyona nto awayeyinqwenela uAmalikhaya.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wawanikezela amadoda akhe, ngokuphikisana nemiyalelo kakumkani. Ngoku le yayiyinto awayeyinqwenela uAmalikhaya, ukuze abe nokufezekisa amayelenqe akhe okuhlutha ukumkani ubukhosi.

17 Ngoku kwakusisiqhelo phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, okokuba ukuba inkokeli yawo eyintloko ithe yabulawa, konyulwe eyesibini inkokeli ukuba ibe yinkokeli yawo eyintloko.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wabangela okokuba esinye sezicaka zakhe simane sinika uLihontayi ityhefu ngamaqondo, ukuze afe.

19 Ngoku, akuba uLihontayi efile, amaLeymenayithi onyula uAmalikhaya ukuba abe yinkokeli yawo nomphathi wawo oyintloko.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wamatsha kunye nemikhosi yakhe (kuba wayizuza iminqweno yakhe) ukuya kwilizwe likaNifayi, kwisixeko sikaNifayi, esaye isisixeko esiyintloko.

21 Waza ukumkani waphuma ngaphandle ukuba ahlngane naye ekunye nabalindi bakhe, kuba wayecinga okokuba uAmalikhaya wayeyifezekisile imiyalelo yakhe, nokokuba uAmalikhaya wayehlenganise kunye umkhosi ongaka ukuba mkhulu ukuba uhambe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi ukuya kulwa.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

22 Kodwa qaphelani, njengokuba ukumkani waphumela ngaphandle ukuze ahlange naye uAmalikhaya wabangela okokuba izicaka zakhe zibheke phambili ukuya kuhlangu nokumkani. Kwaye zeza zaqubuda phambi kokumkani, ngokungathi ziyamhlonela ngenxa yobungangamsha bakhe.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wasolula isandla sakhe ukuba abaphakamise, njengokuba kwakusisiphelo kumaLeymenayithi, njengomqondiso woxolo, isiphelo eso ababesithabathe kumaNifayithi.

24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba emphakamisile owokuqala emhlabeni, qaphelani wamgwaza ukumkani entliziyweni; waza wawela emhlabeni.

25 Ngoku izicaka zikakumkani zasaba; zaza izicaka zika-Amalikhaya zamemeza ngesikhalo, zisithi:

26 Bonani, izicaka zikakumkani zingwaze entliziyweni, kwaye uwile kwaye zisabile; qaphelani, yizani nibone.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wayalela okokuba imikhosi yakhe imatshele phambili ukuba ibone oko kwakwenzeke kukumkani; yaza yakuba ifikile kuloo ndawo, yaza yamfumana ukumkani elele emahlwilini akhe, uAmalikhaya wazenza ngathi unomsindo, waza wathi: Nabani na obemthanda ukumkani, makabheke phambili, aze azisukele izicaka zakhe ukuze zibe nokubulawa.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke abo bebemthanda ukumkani, bakuba bewavile la mazwi, beza ngaphambili baza bazisukela izicaka zikakumkani.

29 Ngoku zakuba izicaka zikakumkani zibona umkhosi uzisukela, zaye zoyika kwakhona, zaza zasabela entlango, zaza zawelela ngaphesheya kwilizwe laseZarahemla zaza zazimanya nabantu baka-Amon.

30 Waza umkhosi lowo ububasukela wabuya, ekubeni ubasukele ngelize; waza njalo uAmalikhaya, ngobumenemene bakhe, wazizuzisa iintliziyi zabantu.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.



- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile ngengomso wangena kwisixeko sikaNifayi kunye nemikhosi yakhe, waza wasibanga isixeko.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ukumkanikazi, akuba evile okokuba ukumkani ubulewe—kuba uAmalikhaya wayethumele isigidimi kukumkanikazi simazisa okokuba ukumkanani ubulewe zizicaka zakhe, nokokuba uzisukele kunye nomkhosi wakhe, kodwa kwaba lilize, kwaye zibalekile—
- 33 Ke ngoko, akuba ukumkanikazi ewuzuzile lo myalezo wathumela kuAmalikhaya, emnqwenela ukuba abasindise abantu besixeko; kananjalo wayemnqwenela okokuba aze angene ngaphakathi kuye; kananjalo wayemnqwenela okokuba awazise amangqina kunye naye ukuba angqine malunga nokufa kukakumkanani.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wathabatha kwa eso sicaka esasimbulele ukumkanani, kwaye nabo bonke abo babekunye naso, baza bangena ngaphakathi kuye ukumkanikazi, kuyo loo ndawo awayehleli kuyo; baza bonke bangqina kuye okokuba ukumkanani wabulawa zezakhe izicaka; baza kanjalo bathi: Basabile; ingaba oku akungqini ngokuchasene nabo? Baza njalo bamanelisa ukumkanikazi malunga nokufa kukakumkanani.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya wafuna uthando lokumkanikazi, waza wamthabathela kuye ukuba abe ngumfazi; waza njalo ngobumenemene bakhe, kwaye nangoncedo lwezicaka zakhe ezinamaqhinga, wabuzuza ubukumkani; ewe, wavunywa wamkelwa njengokumkanani kulo lonke ilizwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaLeymenayithi, ababequka amaLeymenayithi namaLemuwelayithi namaIshmayelayithi, kwaye nabo bonke abakreqi bamaNifayithi, ukususela kulawulo lukaNifayi ukwehla ukuza kweli lixa limiyo.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

36 Ngoku aba bakreqi, bekwanalo myalelo nolwazi lwamaNifayithi, ewe, ekubeni befundiswe kwangolu lwazi lweNkosi, nangona kunjalo, kuyamangalisa ukubalisa, ukuba kungekudala emva kokreqo lwabo baba nokuqaqadeka ngakumbi nokungazohlwayi, kwaye babakrwada ngakumbi, bekhohlakele kwaye benoburhalarhume kunamaLeymenayithi —berhabula kwizithethe zamaLeymenayithi; bezinikele kubunqenerha, nalo lonke uhlobo loburheletya, ewe, beyilibala ngokupheleleyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

## Alma 48

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba, kwakamsinyane nje akuba uAmalikhaya ebuzuzile ubukumkani waqalisa ukuziphembelela iintliziyo zamaLeymenayithi ngokuchasene nabantu bakaNifayi; ewe, waye wonyula amadoda ukuba athethe kumaLeymenayithi ekwiincopho zawo, ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 2 Kwaye njalo waye waziphembelela iintliziyo zawo ngokuchasene namaNifayithi, kangangokuba esiphelweni sokuphela koweshumi elinesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, yena ekubeni ezifizekile iinjongo zakhe ukuza kuthi ga ngoku, ewe, ekubeni enziwe ukumkani phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, wafuna kanjalo ukulawula phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe, ewe, kwaye nakubo bonke abantu ababekulo ilizwe, amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi ngokunjalo.
- 3 Ke ngoko wayeyizalisekile injongo yakhe, kuba wayeziqaqadekile iintliziyo zamaLeymenayithi kwaye wazimfamekisa neengqondo zawo, kwaye wabavuselela emsindweni, kangangokuba wayehlenganise kunye intlaninge yemikhosi ukuba ihambe iyokulwa ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 4 Kuba wayezimisele, ngenxa yobuninzi benani labantu bakhe, ukuwongamela amaNifayithi nokuwazisa ebukhobokeni.
- 5 Kwaye njalo waye wonyula abaphathi-mkhosi abaziintloko bamaZoramayithi, bona ke bengabona baqhelene ngakumbi nokomelela kwamaNifayithi, neendawo zawo zokwesabela, nezona ndawo zawo ezibuthathaka zezixeko zawo; ke ngoko wabonyula ukuba babengabaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko phezu kwemikhosi yakhe.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bathabatha inkampu yabo, bagqithela phambili ngakwilizwe laseZarahemla entlango.
- 7 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa uAmalikhaya wayezuza njalo ulawulo ngobumenemene nobuqhinga, uMoronayi, kwesinye isandla, ebelungisa iingqondo zabantu ukuba zinyaniseke kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.

## Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

- 8 Ewe, ebesomeleza imikhosi yamaNifayithi, kwaye esakha iinqaba ezincinane, okanye iindawo zokwesabela; ephosa iingqumba zomhlaba ngapha nangapha ukubiyela imikhosi yakhe, kananjalo esakha iindonga zamatye ukuba bazirhangqe, ngapha nangapha kwizixeko zawo nemida yemihlaba yawo; ewe, konke ngapha nangapha ukurhangqa ilizwe.
- 9 Kwaye kwezona ndawo zawo zokuzinqabisa zibuthathaka waye wabeka elona nani likhulu lamadoda; kwaye njalo waye walinqabisa kwaye walomeleza ilizwe elaye lilawulwa ngamaNifayithi.
- 10 Kwaye njalo wayelungiselela ukuxhasa inkululeko yabo, imihlaba, abafazi babo, nabantwana babo, noxolo lwabo, nokokuba babenokuphilela iNkosi uThixo wabo, nokokuba babe nokulondoloza oko kwakubizwa ziintshaba zabo ngokuba yinjongo yamaKrestu.
- 11 Kwaye uMoronayi wayeyindoda eyomeleleyo nenamandlakazi; wayeyindoda enengqiqo egqibeleleyo; ewe, indoda eyayingavuyiswa yimpalalo-gazi; indoda emphefumlo wayo wawuvuya ngenxa yenkululeko nokukhululeka kwelizwe layo, nabazalwana bayo ebukhobokeni nobukhoboka.
- 12 Ewe, indoda entliziyo yayo eyaye yakhukhumala ngokubulela kuThixo wayo, ngenxa yamalungelo awodwa amaninzi neentsikelelo awathi wazibeka phezu kwabantu bayo; indoda eyathi yasebenza ngokugqithisileyo isebenzela intlalo-ntle nokhuseleko lwabantu bayo.
- 13 Ewe, kwaye waye eyindoda eyayizinzile elukholwe lukaKrestu, kwaye yayifunge ngesifungo ukuba ikhusele abantu bayo, amalungelo ayo, nelizwe layo, nenkolo yayo, nokokude iphulukane negazi lakhe.
- 14 Ngoku amaNifayithi ayefundisiwe ukuzikhusela ngokuchasene neentshaba zawo, nokude kube kwimpalalo-gazi ukuba kwakuyimfuneko; ewe, kananjalo babefundisiwe ukuba bangaze bakhubekise, ewe, kwaye bangaze baliphakamise ikrele ngaphandle kokuba kube kungokuchasene notshaba, ngaphandle kokuba kube kukulondoloza ubomi babo.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

- 15 Kwaye olu yayilukholo lwabo, yokokuba ngokwenza njalo uThixo angabaphumelelisa elizweni, okanye ngamanye amazwi, ukuba babenyanisekile ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo ukuze abaphumelelise elizweni; ewe, abalumkise ukuba basabe, okanye ukuba balungiselele imfazwe, ngokwengozi abakuyo.
- 16 Kananjalo, nokokuba uThixo angabazisa apho mabaye khona ukuze bazikhusele ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo, kwaye ngokwenza njalo, iNkosi ingabahlangula; kwaye olu yayilukholo lukaMoronayi, kwaye intliziyo yakhe yaye yagcoba kuyo; ingekuko ekuphalazeni igazi kodwa ekwenzeni okulungileyo, ekulondolozeni abantu bakhe, ewe, ekuyigcineni imiyalelo kaThixo, ewe, kwaye ebuchasa ubugwenxa.
- 17 Ewe, inene, inene ndithi kuni, ukuba bonke abantu bebe, kwaye babe kwaye bebeya kuhlala benjalo, njengoMoronayi, qaphelani, wona ngokwawo amandla esihogo ebeya kugungqiswa ngonaphakade; ewe, umtyholi ebengeze abe namandla phezu kweintliziyo zabantwana babantu.
- 18 Qaphelani, wayeyindoda enjengoAmon, unyana kaMozaya, ewe, kwanabanye oonyana bakaMozaya, nkqu, kananjalo uAlma noonyana bakhe, kuba bonke babengamadoda kaThixo.
- 19 Ngoku qaphelani, uHilamani nabazalwana bakhe babengohlukanga ngokuba luncedo kubo abantu kunokuba wayenjalo uMoronayi; kuba baye balishumayela ilizwi likaThixo, kwaye baye babhaptizela enguqukwani bonke abantu nabanina oya kuwaphulaphula amazwi abo.
- 20 Kwaye njalo babheka phambili, kwaye abantu baye bazithoba ngenxa yamazwi abo, kangangokuba babethandwa kakhulu yiNkosi, baza njalo bakhululeka kwiimfazwe neembambano phakathi kwabo, ewe, kwanakwisithuba seminyaka emine.
- 21 Kodwa, njengokuba nditshilo, ekugqibeleni kwesiphelo soweshumi elinesithuba unyaka, ewe, nangona benoxolo phakathi kwabo, babenyanzelekile benokuthandabuza ekubeni baphikisane nabazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hearken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inasmuch that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nineteenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

22 Ewe, kwaye lilonke, iimfazwe zabo azizange ziphele kangangesithuba seminyaka emininzi kunye namaLeymenayithi, nangona benokuthandabuza okukhulu.

23 Ngoku, babelusizi ukuba bathabathe izikhali ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, ngenxa yokuba babengavuyiswa yimpalalo-gazi; ewe, kwaye kwakungaphelelanga apho—babelusizi ukuba babe yindlela yokuthumela abaninzi kangaka babazalwana babo ngaphandle kweli hlabathi ukuya kwihlabathi lanaphakade, bengazilungiselelanga ukubonana noThixo wabo.

24 Nangona kunjalo, babengenakuziyekela ukuba babeke phantsi ubomi babo, ukuze abafazi babo nabantwana babo babulawe ngendyikithya, ngenkohlakalo yobukrwada yabo abakha baba ngabazalwana babo, ewe, kwaye bekreqile nasebandleni labo, kwaye bebashiyile baza baya kubatshabalalisa ngokuzimanyanisa namaLeymenayithi.

25 Ewe, babengenako ukunyamezela okokuba abazalwana babo mabagcobe phezu kwegazi lamaNifayithi, oko nje kukho nawuphina oya kuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, kuba isithembiso seNkosi sasisesokuba, ukuba bangayigcina imiyalelo yayo bangaphumelela elizweni.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwithstanding their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

## Alma 49

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile kwinyanga yeshumi elinanye koweshumi elinesithoba unyaka, ngomhla weshumi enyangeni, imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yabonwa isondela ngaselizweni laseAmonihah.
- 2 Kwaye qaphelani, isixeko sasakhiwe okutsha, kwaye uMoronayi wayemise umkhosi ngasemideni yesixeko, kwaye wawunqumbe umhlaba ngapha nangapha ukuba ubakhusele kwiintolo namatye amaLeymenayithi; kuba qaphelani, ayesilwa ngamatye nangeentolo.
- 3 Qaphelani, ndithe isixeko saseAmonihah besakhiwe okutsha. Ndithi kuni, ewe, kwezinye iindawo besakhiwe okutsha; kwaye ngenxa yokokuba amaLeymenayithi ayekhe asitshabalalisa ngenxa yobugwenxa babantu, acinga okokuba kwakhona siya kuba lixhoba elilula kuwo.
- 4 Kodwa qaphelani, lwaba njani udano lwawo ukuba lukhulu; kuba qaphelani, amaNifayithi aye omba umqolo womhlaba owajikelezileyo, owawuphakame kangangokuba amaLeymenayithi ayengenako ukugibisela amatye awo neentolo zawo kubo ukuze zibe nokusebenza, engenako nokuza phezu kwawo ngaphandle kokuba kube kungendawo yawo yokungena.
- 5 Ngoku ngeli lixa abaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko bamaLeymenayithi babekhwankqiseke ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yobulumko bamaNifayithi ekulungiseni iindawo zawo zokhuseleko.
- 6 Ngoku iinkokeli zamaLeymenayithi zazicinge, ngenxa yobukhulu bamanani awo, ewe, bacinga okokuba banganelungelo elilodwa lokuza phezu kwabo njengokuba ngaphambili babesenza njalo; ewe, kananjalo ayezilungiselele ngamakhaka, nangeentsimbi eziziingcina-sifuba; kananjalo ayezilungiselele ngeengubo zezikhumba, ewe, iingubo ezishinyene kakhulu ukuba zigqume ubuze bawo.
- 7 Kwaye bezilungiselele njalo babecinga okokuba bangawongamela lula kwaye babazise abazalwana babo phantsi kwedyokwe yobukhoboka, okanye bababulale kwaye bababulale ngendyikityha ngokwentando yawo.

## Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

- 8 Kodwa qaphelani, ngokukhwankqiseka kwawo okukhulu, babewalungele, ngohlobo olungazanga lwaziwa phakathi kwabantwana bakaLihayi. Ngoku babewalungele amaLeymenayithi, ukuze balwe ngokohlobo lweemfundiso zikaMoronayi.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi, okanye ama-Amalikhayayithi, ayekhwankqiseke ngokugqithisileyo ngohlobo lwawo lokulungiselela imfazwe.
- 10 Ngoku, ukuba ukumkani uAmalikhaya wayehlile waphuma kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, entloko yomkhosi wakhe, mhlawumbi ngewayewabangele amaLeymenayithi ukuba abe awahlasele amaNifayithi kwisixeko saseAmoniha; kuba qaphelani, wayengalikhathalelanga igazi labantu bakhe.
- 11 Kodwa qaphelani, uAmalikhaya akazange ehle ngokwakhe ukuza kulwa. Kwaye qaphelani, abaphathi-mikhosi bakhe abaziintloko abazange balinge ukuwahlasela amaNifayithi kuso isixeko saseAmoniha, kuba uMoronayi wayeluguqule ulawulo lwemicimbi phakathi kwamaNifayithi, kangankuba amaLeymenayithi ayedanile ngenxa yeendawo zawo zokubalekela kwaye ayengenako ukuza; phezu kwawo.
- 12 Ke ngoko abalekela entlango, aza athabatha iinkampu zawo aza amatshela ngakulo ilizwe likaNowa, elicingela okokuba liyeyona ndawo ilandelayo yabo yokuza ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 13 Kuba ayengazi okokuba uMoronayi uyinqabisile, okanye wakhe iinqaba zokhuseleko, zazo zonke izixeko kuwo wonke umhlaba orhangqileyo; ke ngoko, bamatshela phambili kulo ilizwe likaNowa benokuzimisela okuzingisileyo; ewe, abaphathi-mkhosi bawo abaziintloko beza ngaphambili baza benza isifungo sokokuba baya kubatshabalalisa abantu beso sixeko.
- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, ekukhwankqisekeni kwabo, isixeko sikaNowa, ebesikade kude kube ngoku siyindawo ebuthathaka, sithe ngoku, ngenzame zikaMoronayi, somelela, ewe, kwanokude sodlule nokomelela kwesixeko iAmoniha.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.



- 15 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, obu yayibubulumko kuMoronayi; kuba wayeyicingile into yokuba babeza koyika esixekweni saseAmoniha; kwaye njengokuba isixeko sikaNowa besikade kude kube leli lixa siyeyona ndawo ibuthathaka, ke ngoko babeza kumatshela khona ukuya kulwa; kwaza njalo kwaba ngokweminqweno yakhe.
- 16 Kwaye qaphelani, uMoronayi wayenyule uLihayi ukuba abe ngumphathi-mkhosi oyintloko phezu kwamadoda eso sixeko; kwaye yayikwanguloo Lihayi owalwa namaLeymenayithi kwintlambo esempuma yomlambo iTsidon.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani kwenzekile, okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi efumanisile okokuba uLihayi wayelawula isixeko kwakhona aye adana, kuba ayemoyika uLihayi ngokugqithisileyo; nangona kunjalo abaphathimkhosi bawo abaziintloko babefungile ngesifungo ukuba basihlasele isixeko; ke ngoko, bayisondeza imikhosi yabo.
- 18 Ngoku qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi ayengenako ukufikelela kwiinqaba zabo zokhuseleko nangayiphina enye indlela ngaphandle kokuba kube kungesango, ngenxa yokuphakama kodonga olwaye lunqunjiwe, nobunzulu bomsele owawombiwe ngapha nangapha, ngaphandle kokuba kube kungesango.
- 19 Kwaye ayelungiselele njalo amaNifayithi ukuze atshalalise bonke abaya kuthi bazame ukuqabela ukuba bangene kwiinqaba nangayiphina enye indlela, ngokuthi bagibisele amatye phezulu kubo neentolo.
- 20 Njalo ke bazilungiselela, ewe, iqela lawona madoda abo awomeleleyo, kunye namakrele awo nezilingi, ukuba bawise phantsi bonke abo baya kuzama ukungena endaweni yabo yokhuseleko ngendawo yokungena; kwaye njalo babezilungiselele ukuba bazikhusele ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaphathi-mkhosi bamaLeymenayithi bayisondeza imikhosi yabo phambi kwendawo yokungena, yaza yaqalisa ukulwa namaNifayithi, ukuba bangena kwindawo yawo yokhuseleko; kodwa qaphelani, badudulelwa emva amaxesha ngamaxesha, kangangokuba baye babulawa ngendyikityha enkulu.
- 22 Ngoku akufumanisa okokuba awanako ukuzuzisa amandla phezu kwamaNifayithi ngendlela yokungena, aqalisa ukuzidiliza iindonga zomhlaba ukuze abe nokuzuzisa indlela yokungena ukuya kuyo imikhosi yawo, ukuze abe nethuba elilinganayo lokulwa; kodwa qaphelani, kuzo ezi nzame batshatyalaliswa ngamatye neentolo ezazigityiselwa kuwo; baza endaweni yokudiba imisele yabo ngokuwisa iindonga zomhlaba, yazaliswa ukuma kumgangatho othile ngezidumbu zawo nemizimba eyonzakeleyo.
- 23 Njalo ke amaNifayithi abanawo onke amandla phezu kweentshaba zawo; kwaye njalo ke amaLeymenayithi aye azama ukuwatshabalalisa amaNifayithi bade abaphathi-mikhosi babo abaziintloko babulawa bonke; ewe, kwaye ngaphezulu kwewaka lamaLeymenayithi abulawa; ngeli lixa, kwelinye icala, kwakungekho nomphefumlo omnye wamaNifayithi owawubulewe.
- 24 Kwakukho malunga namashumi amahlanu ababonzakele, ababechaneke kwiintolo zamaLeymenayithi angena ngendlela yokungena, kodwa babekhuselwe ngamakhaka abo, neentsimbi zabo eziziingcina-sifuba, nezikrweqe zentloko, kangangokuba amanxeba abo ayesemilenzeni, amaninzi awo ayenobungozi.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile, okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebona okokuba abaphathi-mikhosi bawo abaziintloko babulewe bonke basaba bangena entlango. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babuyela kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, ukuba bazise ukumkani wabo, uAmalikhaya, owaye engumNifayithi ngokuzalwa, malunga nokulahlekelwa kwabo okukhulu.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo kunye nabantu bakhe, ngenxa yokuba engawuzuzanga umnqweno wakhe phezu kwamaNifayithi; engabazisanga phantsi kwedyokhwe yobukhoboka.

27 Ewe, wayenomsindo ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye waye wamqalekisa uThixo, noMoronayi kanjalo, efunga ngesifungo okokuba uya kulisela igazi lakhe, kwaye oku kungenxa yokokuba uMoronayi eyigcinile imiyalelo kaThixo ekulungiseleleni ukhuseleko lwabantu bakhe.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile, okokuba kwelinye icala, abantu bakaNifayi baye bayibulela iNkosi uThixo wabo, ngenxa yamandla akhe angenamlinganiselo ekubahlanguleni ezandleni zeentshaba zabo.

29 Waza njalo waphela oweshumi elinesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

30 Ewe, kwaye kwabakho uxolo oluzingisileyo phakathi kwabo, nempumelelo egqithisileyo ebandleni ngenxa yenyameko nenkuthalo abayinikelayo kulo ilizwi likaThixo, elathi lavakaliswa kubo nguHilamani, noShibloni, noKoreyantan, noAmon nabazalwana bakhe, ewe, kwaye nangabo bonke abo babemiselwe ngohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo, bebhaptizelwe enguqukweni, baza bathunyelwa phambili ukuba bashumayele phakathi kwabantu.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

## Alma 50

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi akazange ayeke ukulungiselela imfazwe, okanye ukukhusela abantu bakhe ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi; kuba wayibangela imikhosi yakhe ukuba iqalise ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amabini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, ukuba iqalise ukomba iinqumba zomhlaba macala onke azo zonke izixeko, kulo lonke ilizwe elalilawulwa ngamaNifayithi.
- 2 Kwaye phezu kwale miqolo yomhlaba wabangela ukuba kubekho imithi yamaplanga, ewe, imisebenzi yemithi yamaplanga eyakhiwayo yangangobude bomntu, macala onke ezixeko.
- 3 Waza wabangela okokuba phezu kwaloo misebenzi yemithi yamaplanga ukuba kubekho isakhelo sezibonda ezibaziweyo ezakhelwa phezu kwemithi yamaplanga macala onke; kwaye zazomelele kwaye ziphakamile.
- 4 Kwaye wabangela ukuba kunyuswe iincochoyi ezaziyelela loo misebenzi yezibonda ezibaziweyo, kwaye wabangela ukuba kwakhiwe iindawo zokhuseleko phezu kwezo nkcochoyi, ukuze amatye neentolo zamaLeymenayithi zingabi nakubonzakalisa.
- 5 Kwaye babelungiselele ukuze babenako ukugibisela amatye esuka kumphezulu wazo, ngokwentando yabo nokomelela kwabo, baze bambulale lowo oya kuzama ukusondela kufuphi neendonga zezixeko.
- 6 Njalo ke uMoronayi waye walungisa iinqaba ezinqatyisiweyo ngokuchasene nokuza kweentshaba zabo, macala onke kuzo zonke izixeko kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wayibangela okokuba imikhosi yakhe ibheke phambili ingene kwintlango esempuma; ewe, yaza yabheka phambili yaza yawadudulela amaLeymenayithi awayekwintlango esempuma kwimihlaba yawo, eyaye isemazantsi yelizwe laseZarahemla.
- 8 Kwaye ilizwe likaNifayi lalityhutyha ngomendo othe mbo osuka kulwandle olusempuma ukuya kolusentshona.

## Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi ewadudule onke amaLeymenayithi aphuma kwintlango esempuma, eyaye isemantla yamazwe olawulo lwawo, wabangela okokuba abemi ababe kwilizwe laseZarahemla kwaye nakulo ilizwe elirhangqileyo mababheke phambili bangene kwintlango esempuma, kwa nakuyo imida engasemideni yonxweme lolwandle, baze balilawule ilizwe.

10 Kananjalo wabeka imikhosi emazantsi, emideni yolawulo lwabo, waza wababangela ukuba bamise iinqaba ukuze babe nokunqabisa imikhosi yabo nabantu babo ezandleni zeentshaba zabo.

11 Kwaye njalo wanqamla zonke iinqaba zamaLeymenayithi kwintlango esempuma, ewe, kananjalo nasentshona, enqabisa umda phakathi kwamaNifayithi kunye namaLeymenayithi, phakathi kwelizwe laseZarahemla nelizwe likaNifayi, ukusuka kulwandle olusentshona, olubalekela ngakwintloko yomlambo iTsidon —amaNifayithi elawula lonke ilizwe elingasemantla, ewe, kwanalo lonke ilizwe elaye lingasemantla elizwe iNdyebo, ngokwentando yabo.

12 Njalo ke uMoronayi, kunye nemikhosi yakhe, eyathi yanda mihla yonke ngenxa yokuqinisekiswa kokhuseleko eyathi imisebenzi yakhe yaludala kubo, waye wazama ukunqamla ukomelela namandla amaLeymenayithi ewasusa kumazwe olawulo lwawo, ukuze angabi namandla phezu kwamazwe olawulo lwabo.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aqalisa ukumiswa kwesixeko, aza asibiza igama lesixeko ngokuba siyiMoronayi; kwaye sasingakulwandle olusempuma; kwaye sasingasemazantsi ngakumda wolawulo lwamaLeymenayithi.

14 Kananjalo baqalisa ukumiselwa kwesixeko phakathi kwesixeko sikaMoronayi nesixeko sika-Aron, bedibanisa imida yeAron neMoronayi; baza basibiza igama lesixeko, okanye ilizwe, iNifayiha.

15 Kananjalo baqalisa kwakuloo nyaka ukwakha izixeko ezininzi ngasemantla, esinye ngohlobo oluthile abasibiza ngokuba siyiLihayi, esasingasemantla ngakwimida yonxweme lolwandle.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephiah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

- 16 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini unyaka.
- 17 Kwaye kwezi meko zempumelelo abantu bakaNifayi babe sekuqalekeni kowamashumi amabini ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 18 Kwaye baye baphumelela ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye baba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo; ewe, kwaye baye baphinda-phindeka kwaye baba nokomelela elizweni.
- 19 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba zinjani na ukuba nenceba nokulunga kwazo zonke iintsebenziswano zeNkosi, ekuzalisekiseni onke amazwi ayo kubantwana babantu; ewe, singaqaphela okokuba amazwi ayo aqinisekisiwe, ewe nangalo eli lixa, awathi wawathetha kuLihayi, esithi:
- 20 Usikelelekile kwaye wena nabantwana bakho; kwaye baya kusikeleleka, kangangokuba beya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam baya kuphumelela elizweni. Kodwa khumbulani, kangangokuba bengasayi kuyigcina imiyalelo yam baya kusikelwa ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi.
- 21 Kwaye siyabona okokuba ezi zithembiso ziqinisekisiwe kubo abantu bakaNifayi; kuba ibiziingxabano zabo neembambano zabo, ewe, ukubulala kwabo, nokurhwaphiliza kwabo, ukukhonza izithixo, uhenyuzo lwabo, namasikizi abo, awaye phakathi kwabo, awathi azisa phezu kwabo iimfazwe zabo neentshabalalo zabo.
- 22 Kwaye abo babenyanisekile ekuyigcineni imiyalelo yeNkosi bahlangulwa ngamaxesha onke, ngeli lixa amawaka abazalwana babo abakhohlakeleyo babethunyelwa ebukhobokeni, okanye ukuba batshabalale ngekrele, okanye baphelele ekungakholweni, baze baxubane kunye namaLeymenayithi.
- 23 Kodwa qaphelani akuzange kubekho elona xesha lokonwaba phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, okoko kwangemihla kaNifayi, kunakuyo imihla kaMoronayi, ewe, kwanangalo eli lixa, kowamashumi amabini ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi amabini anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi nawo kanjalo waphela ngoxolo; ewe, kanaanjalo nonyaka wamashumi amabini anesithathu.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amabini anesine unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, ngekwakukho kanjalo uxolo phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi ukuba kwakungengayo imbambano eyathi yabakho phakathi kwabo ngokunxulumene nelizwe likaLihayi, nelizwe likaMoriyantoni, elalidibana kwimida yaseLihayi; eyaye yomibini isemideni ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 26 Kuba qaphelani, abantu ababelilawula ilizwe likaMoriyantoni baye babanga inxalenye yelizwe likaLihayi; ke ngoko kwaqalisa ukubakho imbambano eshushu phakathi kwabo, kangangokuba abantu bakaMoriyantoni baphakamisa izigalo ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo, kwaye babezimisele ngezikhali zabo ukubabulala.
- 27 Kodwa qaphelani, abantu ababelilawula ilizwe likaLihayi basabela kwinkampu kaMoronayi, baza bacela uncedo; kuba qaphelani babengenzanga nto iphosakeleyo.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba abantu bakaMoriyantoni, ababekhokelwa yindoda egama layo lalinguMoriyantoni, bakufumanisa okokuba abantu bakaLihayi basabele kwinkampu kaMoronayi, boyika ngokugqithisileyo hleze umkhosi kaMoronayi uze phezu kwabo uze ubatshabalalise.
- 29 Ke ngoko, uMoriyantoni wabenza okokuba bagqibe ezintliziyweni zabo ukuba mabasabele kwilizwe elalingasemantla, elaligutyungelwe yimfumba yamanzi, baze balithathe balilawula ilizwe elalingasemantla.
- 30 Kwaye qaphelani, ngebabeliqabelisile eli cebo, (ebeliyakuba ngunobangela wokuzisola) kodwa qaphelani, uMoriyantoni ekubeni eyindoda enemvakalelo enkulu, ke ngoko waba nomsindo nomnye wabakhonzazana bakhe, waza wamhlasela wambetha kakhulu.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wasaba, waza wawelela ngaphaya kwinkampu kaMoronayi, waza wamxelela uMoronayi zonke izinto malunga nalo mcimbi, kananjalo malunga neenjongo zokusabela kulo ilizwe elingasemantla.
- 32 Ngoku qaphelani, abantu ababe kwilizwe iNdyebo, okanye ngenye indlela uMoronayi, baba noloyiko lokokuba bangawamamela amazwi kaMoriyantoni baze bazimanye kunye nabantu bakhe, kwaye njalo angazuza ulawulo lwezo nxalenye zelizwe, into leyo engabeka isiseko seziphumo ezibi phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, ewe, iziphumo ezo ezingakhokelela ekutshabalaleni kwenkululeko yabo.
- 33 Ke ngoko uMoronayi wathumela umkhosi, kunye nenkampu yabo ukuba abathintele abantu bakaMoriyantoni, ukuba akunqumamise ukusabela kwabo kwilizwe elingasemantla.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abazange babathintele bade bafika kwimida yelizwe iNkangala; kwaye apho baye babathintela, ngakwindlela emxinwa eyayikhokelela ngaselwandle ingene kwilizwe elingasemantla, ewe, ngaselwandle, ngasentshona kwaye nasempuma.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umkhosi lowo owawuthunyelwe nguMoronayi, owawukhokelwa yindoda egama layo lalinguTiyunikumi, waye wahlangana nabantu bakaMoriyantoni; kwaye babeneenkani gqitha abantu bakaMoriyantoni, (bephejlelwa yinkohlakalo yakhe namazwi akhe anyhwalazayo) kangankokuba kwaqalisa idabi phakathi kwabo, ekwathi kulo uTiyunikumi wambulala uMoriyantoni waza wawoyisa umkhosi wakhe, waza wawuthabatha waba ngamabanjwa, waza wabuyela kuyo inkampu kaMoronayi. Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini anesine unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 36 Kwaye njalo ke babuyiselwa emva abantu bakaMoriyantoni. Kwaye ekunqophiseni kwabo ukuba bagcine uxolo babuyiselwa kulo ilizwe likaMoriyantoni, kwaza kwenzeka umanyano phakathi kwabo kunye nabantu bakaLihayi; kananjalo babuyiselwa kuyo imihlaba yabo.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.



- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuwo loo nyaka ekwathi kubantu bakaNifayi kwabuyiselwa kubo uxolo, uNifayiha, umgwebi wesibini oyintloko, wafa, ekubeni ehleli kwisihlalo-sokugweba ngokuthi aziphathe ngobulungisa okugqibeleleyo phambi kukaThixo.
- 38 Nangona kunjalo, akazange avume kuAlma ukuthabathela kuye iimbali nezo zinto uAlma nooyise babezithatha njengezinto ezingcwele kakhulu, ke ngoko uAlma wazinika unyana wakhe, uHilamani.
- 39 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba unyana kaNifayiha wonyulwa ukuba ahlale kuso isihlalo-sokugweba, endaweni kayise; ewe, wonyulwa ukuba abe ngumgwebi oyintloko nomlawuli phezu kwabantu, ngesifungo nommiselo ongcwele ukuba agwebe ngobulungisa, nokokuba agcine uxolo nenkululeko yabantu, nokubanika amalungelo abo awodwa angcwele okunqula iNkosi uThixo wabo, ewe, ukuxhasa nokulondoloza injongo kaThixo yonke imihla yakhe, nokuzisa abakhohlakeleyo ukuba bohlwaywe ngokwaphula kwabo umthetho.
- 40 Ngoku qaphelani, igama lakhe lalinguPhahorani. Kwaye uPhahorani waye wahlala kuso isihlalo sikayise, kwaye waye waqalisa ukulawula ekupheleni kowamashumi amabini anesine unyaka, phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over the people of Nephi.

## Alma 51

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amabini anesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, ekubeni bona bemisele uxolo phakathi kwabantu bakaLihayi nabantu bakaMoriyantoni ngokwemihlaba yabo, kwaye bewuqalise owamashumi amabini anesihlanu unyaka ngoxolo;
- 2 Nangona kunjalo, abazange balugcine kuyaphi uxolo olupheleleyo elizweni, kuba kwaqalisa ukubakho imbambano phakathi kwabantu malunga nomgwebi oyintloko uPhahorani; kuba qaphelani, kwakukho inxalenye yabantu ababengwenela okokuba imiba ethile embalwa yomthetho kumele iguqulwe.
- 3 Kodwa qaphelani, uPhahorani akayi kuwuguqula engayi kuvumela ukuba umthetho uguqulwe; ke ngoko, akazange abaphulaphule abo bathi bathumela amazwi kunye nezicelo zabo malunga nokuguqulwa komthetho.
- 4 Ke ngoko, abo babengwenela okokuba umthetho uguqulwe baba nomsindo ngakuye, kwaye banqwenela okokuba angabi saba ngumgwebi oyintloko phezu kwelizwe; ke ngoko kwavuka impikiswano eshushu malunga nalo mcimbi, kodwa akwade kwaphalala gazi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abo babengwenela okokuba uPhahorani asuswe esikhundleni sesihlalo sokugweba babebizwa ngokuba ngabathandikumkani, kuba babengwenela okokuba umthetho mawuguqulwe ngohlobo lokuba kubhukuqwe ulawulo olukhululekileyo kwaye kumiselwe ukumkani phezu kwelizwe.
- 6 Kwaye abo babengwenela okokuba uPhahorani makahlale engumgwebi oyintloko phezu kwelizwe bathabathela kubo igama lokuba ngabathandinkululeko; kwaza njalo kwabakho ukwahlukana phakathi kwabo, kuba abathandi-nkululeko babefungele okanye benqophisele ukuzilondoloza iimfanelo zabo namalungelo awodwa enkolo yabo ngolawulo olukhululekileyo.

## Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba lo mcimbi wembambano yabo wagqitywa ngezwi labantu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba izwi labantu lafika livumelana nabathandi-nkululeko, waza uPhahorani wasigcina isihlalo-sokugweba, into leyo eyabangela ukugcoba okukhulu phakathi kwabazalwana bakaPhahorani kananjalo nabaninzi babo bantu benkululeko, abathi kanjalo babavala imilomo abathandi-kumkani, ukuze bangalingi kuphikisa kodwa babopheleleka ekubeni bayigcine injongo yenkululeko.

8 Ngoku abo babethanda ookumkani babengabo babezalelwe kudidi oluphakamileyo, kwaye babefuna ukuba ngookumkani; kwaye babexhaswa ngabo babezungula amandla negunya phezu kwabantu.

9 Kodwa qaphelani, eli yayilixesha elinzima ukuba kubekho iimbambano ezinjalo phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi; kuba qaphelani, uAmalikhaya kwakhona wayezivuselele iintliziyo zabantu bamaLeymenayithi ngokuchasene nabantu bamaNifayithi, kwaye wayehlenganisa kunye amajoni kuzo zonke iindawo zelizwe lakhe, kwaye ewaxhobisa, kwaye elungiselela imfazwe ngayo yonke inkuthalo; kuba wayefungele ukuba asele igazi likaMoronayi.

10 Kodwa qaphelani, siya kuthi sibone okokuba isithembiso sakhe sasi sesobutyhuthu-tyhuthu; nangona kunjalo, waye wazilungiselela nemikhosi yakhe ukuba azokulwa idabi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.

11 Ngoku imikhosi yakhe yayingemikhulu kangangokuba yayisoloko injalo ngaphambili, ngenxa yamawaka amaninzi awabulawayo ngesandla samaNifayithi; kodwa nangona babelahlekelwe kakhulu, uAmalikhaya wayehlenganise kunye umkhosi omkhulu ngokumangalisayo, kangangokuba wayengoyiki ukwehla eze kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

- 12 Ewe, kwa noAmalikhaya ngokwakhe waye wehla, esentloko yamaLeymenayithi. Kwaye kwaku ngowamashumi amabini anesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi; kwaye kwakukwangeli lixa lokokuba babeqalisa ukwenza isigqibo ngemicimbi yeembambano zabo malunga nomgwebi oyintloko, uPhahorani.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amadoda awayebizwa ngokuba ngabathandi-kumkani evile okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayesehla ukuba azokulwa idabi ngokuchasene nabo, avuya ezintliziyweni zawo; aza ala ukuthabatha izikhali, kuba ayenomsindo kakhulu ngakumgwebi oyintloko, kananjalo nangakubantu benkululeko, kangangokuba abazange bathabathe izikhali ukuze bakhusele ilizwe labo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi ekubona oku, kananjalo ebona okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayesiza engena kwimida yelizwe, waba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yokuba neenkani kwabo bantu awayethe wasebenza ngenkuthalo enkulu kakhulu ukuba abakhusele; ewe, waba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo; umphefumlo wakhe wawuzele ngumsindo ngokuchasene nabo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathumela isicelo, ngezwi labantu, kumphathi welizwe, enqwenela okokuba asifunde, aze amnike yena (Moronayi) igunya lokunyanzelisa abo bakreqi ukuba bakhusele ilizwe labo okanye babulawe.
- 16 Kuba kwakuyinkathalo yakhe ukuba aziphelise iimbambano ezinjalo nokreqi phakathi kwabantu; kuba qaphelani, oku ngaphambili bekungunobangela wayo yonke intshabalalo yabo. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwanikwa imvume ngokwezwi labantu.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wayalela umkhosi wakhe okokuba uhlasele ngokuchasene nabo bathandi-kumkani, ukuba uthobe ikratshi labo nokubaluleka kwabo uze ubalinganise nomhlaba, okanye mabaphakamise izigalo baze baxhase injongo yenkululeko.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yaye yamatshela phambili ngokuchasene nabo; kwaye baye balithoba ikratshi labo nempakamo yabo, kangangokuba njengoko babephakamisa izikhali zabo zemfazwe ukuba balwe ngokuchasene namadoda kaMoronayi bakhahlelwa phantsi baze balinganiswa nomhlaba.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babengamawaka amane abo bakreqi abathi bagawulelwa phantsi ngekrele; baza abo beenkokeli zabo ababengabulawanga edabini bathatyathwa baza baphoswa entolongweni, kuba lalingekho ixesha lokuthethwa kwamatyala abo kwesi sigaba sexesha.
- 20 Yaza intsalela yabo bakreqi, kunokuba babethwe bawe phantsi ngekrele, bazinikela kwibhanile yenkululeko, baza banyanzeliswa ukuba bayinyuse ibhanile yenkululeko phezu kweencopho zabo, kwaye nakwizixeko zabo, nokokuba bathabathe izikhali ukukhusela ilizwe labo.
- 21 Kwaye njalo uMoronayi wabaphelisa abo bathandi-kumkani, ukuze kungabikho bambi abaziwa ngeso sihlonipho sabathandi-kumkani; waza njalo waziphelisa iinkani nekratshi labo bantu ababebanga ukuba bangabegazi; kodwa bathotyelwa ezantsi ukuba bazithobe njengabazalwana babo, kwaye bakulwele ngenkalipho ukukhululeka kwabo ebukhobokeni.
- 22 Qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa uMoronayi wayeqhekeza iimfazwe neembambano phakathi kwabakhe abantu, kwaye ebangenisa eluxolweni nenkcubeko, kwaye emisa kakuhle ulawulo ukulungiselela imfazwe ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi athi afika kulo ilizwe likaMoronayi, elalikhwimida ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi ayengomelelanga ngokwaneleyo kwisixeko sikaMoronayi; ke ngoko uAmalikhaya waye wawadudula, ebulala abaninzi. Waza uAmalikhaya waluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko, ewe, ulawulo lwazo zonke iinqaba zawo.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

- 24 Baza bathi abo basabayo baphuma kuso isixeko sikaMoronayi beza kuso isixeko sikaNifayihya; kanaanjalobantu besixeko sikaLihayibazihlanganisa kunye, baza benza amalungiselelo baza bakulungela ukuwamkela amaLeymenayithi edabini.
- 25 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba uAmalikhaya angawavumeli amaLeymenayithi ukuba ahlasele ngokuchasene nesixeko sikaNifayihya ukuba balwe idabi, kodwa wawagcina ezantsi ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle, eshiya amadoda kuzo zonke izixeko ukuba azigcine kwaye azikhusele.
- 26 Waza njalo waqhubeka, ethabatha ulawulo lwezixeko ezininzi, isixeko sikaNifayihya, nesixeko sikaLihayihya, nesixeko sikaMoriyantoni, nesixeko sikaOmna, nesixeko sikaGidi, nesixeko sikaMyuleki, zizonke ezo zazingakuyo imida esempuma ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 27 Kwaye njalo ke amaLeymenayithi athi azuza, ngobuqhinga buka-Amalikhaya, izixeko ezininzi kangako, ngezihlewele zabo ezingenakubalwa, zizonke ezo zazingaqatyiwe ngamandla ngokohlobo lweenqaba zikaMoronayi; zizonke ezo zanika amaLeymenayithi iinqaba.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye amatshela kwimida yelizwe iNdyebo, eqhuba amaNifayithi phambi kwawo kwaye ebulala amaninzi.
- 29 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba aye aqubisana noTiyaniKumi, owayebulele uMoriyantoni waza wabathintela abantu bakhe ekusabeni kwakhe.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathintela uAmalikhaya kanjalo, njengokuba wayematshela phambili kunye nomkhosi wakhe oyintlaninge ukuze abe nokuthabatha ulawulo lwelizwe iNdyebo, kanaanjalobantu nelizwe elingasemantla.
- 31 Kodwa qaphelani waba nokudana ngokuthi agxothwe nguTiyaniKumi kunye namadoda akhe, kuba ayengabalwi abakhulu; kuba indoda nganye kaTiyaniKumi yaye yawogqitha amaLeymenayithi ngokomelela kwaye nangobuchule bawo bemfazwe, kangangokuba baye bazuza ukongama phezu kwamaLeymenayithi.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephiah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephiah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephiah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bawatshutshisa, kangangokuba baye bawabulala kwanokude kube manyama. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uTiyanicumi namadoda akhe baye bagxumeka iintente zabo emideni yelizwe iNdyebo; noAmalikhaya waye wagxumeka iintente zakhe emideni yolwandle ngaselunxwemeni, kwaye ke baqhutywa ngolu hlobo.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuba kufike ubusuku, uTiyanicumi kunye nesicaka sakhe babisa bachwechwela phambili baza baphuma ngobusuku, baza baya kwinkampu ka-Amalikhaya; kwaye qaphelani, babebiwe bubuthongo ngenxa yokudinwa kwabo okukhulu, okwakubangelwa yimisebenzi nobushushu bemini.

34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uTiyanicumi wabisa ngokufihlakeleyo wangena kwintente kakumkani, waza wamhlaba ngentshuntshe entliziyweni yakhe; kwaye waye wakubangela ukufa kukakumkani ngoko nangoko ukuze angazivusi izicaka zakhe.

35 Waza wabuyela kwakho ngokufihlakeleyo kweyakhe inkampu, kwaye qaphelani, amadoda akhe ayelele, waza wawavusa kwaye wawaxelela zonke izinto azenzileyo.

36 Waza wabangela okokuba imikhosi yakhe ihlale ilungile, hleze kuthi kanti amaLeymenayithi avukile aze abe nokubahlasela.

37 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini anesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi; yaza njalo yaphela imihla ka-Amalikhaya.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, in-somuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

## Alma 52

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile kowamashumi amabini anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, qaphelani, akuba amaLeymenayithi evukile ngentsasa yokuqala yenyanga yokuqala, qaphelani, bamfumana uAmalikhaya efile ententeni yakhe; kanaanjalo babona okokuba uTiyantikumi wayekulungele ukulwa nabo ngaloo mini.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku, akuba amaLeymenayithi ekubonile oku oyika; aza aliyeka icebo lawo lokumatshela elizweni elingasemantla, aza abuya umva kunye nayo yonke imikhosi yawo angena kwisixeko sikaMyuleki, aza afuna ukhuseleko kwiinqaba zabo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Amalikhaya wonyulwa njengokumkani phezu kwabantu; kwaye igama lakhe lalingu-Amoroni; njalo ke ukumkani uAmoroni, umntakwabo kumkani Amalikhaya, wonyulwa ukuba alawule endaweni yakhe.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wayalela okokuba abantu bakhe bazigcine ezo zixeko, ababezithabathe ngokuphalaza igazi; kuba babengathabathanga nasiphina isixeko ngaphandle kokuba babe baphalaze igazi elininzi.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, uTiyantikumi wabona okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayezimisele ukuzigcina ezo zixeko awathi azithabatha, nezo ndawo zelizwe awathi wazuza ulawulo lwazo; kanaanjalo ebona ubukhulukazi benani lawo, uTiyantikumi wacinga okokuba akuyomfuneko ukuba makazame ukuwahlasela ekwiinqaba zawo.
- 6 Kodwa wawagcina amadoda akhe macala onke, ngokungathi wayelungiselela imfazwe; ewe, kwaye ngokwenene wayelungiselela ukuzikhusela ngokuchasene nawo, ngokwakha iindonga ezinyukileyo macala onke kwaye elungisa neendawo zokubalekela.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wagcina njalo elungiselela imfazwe wada uMoronayi wathumela inani elikhulu lamadoda ukuba lomeleze umkhosi.

## Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.



8 Kananjalo uMoronayi wathumela imiyalelo yokokuba kufanele awagcine onke amabanjwa athi awela ezandleni zakhe; kuba njengokuba amaLeymenayithi ayethabathe amabanjwa amaninzi, kufanele naye awagcine onke amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi njengendlela yentlawulelo yabo bathi bathatyathwa ngamaLeymenayithi.

9 Kwaye wathumela kananjalo imiyalelo kuye yokokuba kufanele anqabise ilizwe iNdyebo, aze akhusele indlela emxinwa eyayikhokelela kulo ilizwe elingasemantla, hleze amaLeymenayithi abe nokulizuzela elo phondo lomhlatyana elingena elwandle kwaye abe namandla okubahlasela kuwo onke amacala.

10 Kwaye uMoronayi kanjalo wathumela kuye, emnqwenela okokuba angathembeka ekulondolozeni loo mbombo yelizwe, nokokuba ufanele ukuzama ithuba lokuwohlwaya amaLeymenayithi akuloo mbombo, kangangoko kusemandleni akhe, ukuze mhlawumbi anganako ukuzithabatha kwakhona ngobuqhetseba okanye ngandlela thile ezo zixeko ezazithatyathiwe zaphuma ezandleni zabo; nokokuba angazinqabisa kwaye azomeleze kanjalo izixeko ezirhangqileyo, ezazingawelanga ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi.

11 Kananjalo wathi kuye, ngendisiza kuwe, kodwa qaphela, amaLeymenayithi ayasihlasela emideni yelizwe ngakulwandle lwasentshona; kwaye qaphela, ndiyaya ngokuchasene nawo, ke ngoko andinako ukuza kuwe.

12 Ngoku, ukumkani (uAmmoron) wayemkile waphuma kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye wayemazisile ukumkanikazi ngokufa komntakwabo, kwaye wayehlanganise kunye inani elikhulu lamadoda, waza wamatshela phambili ngokuchasene namaNifayithi emideni engakulwandle lwasentshona.

13 Kwaye njalo wayezama ukuhlasela amaNifayithi, nokutsalela inxalenye yemikhosi yawo kuloo ndawo yelizwe, kanti wayeyalele abo wayebashiye ukuba balawule ezo zixeko wayezithabathile, okokuba bamele kanjalo bahlasela amaNifayithi emideni engakulwandle lwasempuma, kwaye bamele bathabathe ulawulo lwemihlaba yawo kangangoko kusemandleni abo, ngokwamandla emikhosi yabo.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

- 14 Kwaye amaNifayithi aye ekwiimeko zobungozi ezinjalo ekupheleni kowamashumi amabini anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 15 Kodwa qaphelani, kwenzekile kowamashumi amabini anesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, okokuba uTiyaniKumi, ngomyalelo kaMoronayi —owayemisele imikhosi ukuba ikhusele amazantsi nentshonalanga yemida yelizwe, kwaye wayeqalisile nokumatshela ngakulo ilizwe iNdyebo, ukuze abe nokumncedisa uTiyaniKumi ngamadoda akhe ekuthabatheni kwakhona izixeko ababephulukene nazo—
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uTiyaniKumi wayefumene imiyalelo yokokuba enze uhlaselo kwisixekho sikaMyuleki, kwaye asithathe kwakhona ukuba kunokwenzeka.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uTiyaniKumi wenza amalungiselelo okwenza uhlaselo kuso isixeko sikaMyuleki, aze amatshela phambili kunye nomkhosi wakhe ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi; kodwa wabona okokuba kwakungena kwenzeka okokuba angawongamela ngeli lixa ayekwiinqaba zawo; ke ngoko wawalahla loo macebo akhe waza wabuyela kwakhona kuso isixeko iNdyebo, ukuba alindele ukufika kukaMoronayi, ukuze abe nokufumana ukomelela emkhosini wakhe.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi waye wafika kunye nomkhosi wakhe kwilizwe iNdyebo, kwisiphelo sokuphela kowamashumi amabini anesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 19 Waza ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amabini anesibhozo, uMoronayi noTiyaniKumi kwaye nabaninzi babaphathi-mkhosi abaziintloko babamba ibhunga lemfazwe—ngemabakwenze ukubangela amaLeymenayithi ukuba aphume eze ngokuchasene nabo ukulwa idabi; okanye ukuze babenako ngandlela ithile ukuwakhohlisa aphume ngaphandle kweenqaba zawo, ukuze babe nokuzuza ukongama phezu kwawo baze kwakhona basithathe isixeko sikaMyuleki.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bathumela abathunywa kumkhosi wamaLeymenayithi, owawukhusele isixeko sikaMyuleki, kwinkokeli yawo, egama layo lalinguYakobi, emnqwenela okokuba aphume kunye nemikhosi yakhe ukuba baqubisane nawo phezu kumathafa aphakathi kwezixeko zombini. Kodwa qaphelani, uYakobi, owaye ngumZoramayithi, akavumanga ukuphuma kunye nemikhosi yakhe ukuba baqubisane phezu kwamathafa.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi, engenathemba lakuqubisana nawo phezu komhlaba ongakhethicala, ke ngoko, wafikelela esigqibeni ukuze abe nokuwenzela umgibe amaLeymenayithi aphume kwiinqaba zawo.
- 22 Ke ngoko wabangela ukuba uTiyantikumi athabathe inani elincinane lamadoda aze amatshela ezantsi kufuphi nonxweme lolwandle, aze uMoronayi nomkhosi wakhe, ngobusuku, amatshela entlango, entshonalanga yesixeko iMyuleki; baza njalo, ngengomso, bakuba abalindi bamaLeymenayithi bemfumanisile uTiyantikumi, babaleka baza bayixelela uYakobi, inkokeli yabo.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yaye yamatshela phambili ngokuchasene noTiyantikumi, icinga ukuba ngamanani ayo ingamoyisa uTiyantikumi ngenxa yobuncinane bamanani akhe. Waza uTiyantikumi akuyibona imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi iphuma ngokuchasene naye waqalisa ukuhlelela ezantsi ngaselunxwemeni, ngasemantla.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebona okokuba uqalisa ukusaba, akhuthazeka aza abasukela ngamandla. Kwaye ngeli lixa uTiyantikumi wayekhokelela kude njalo amaLeymenayithi awayebasukela ngelize, qaphelani, uMoronayi wayalela okokuba inxalenye yomkhosi wakhe owawukunye naye kufanele umatshela phambili ungene esixekweni, uze usithabathe usilawule.
- 25 Waza wenza njalo, waza wabulala bonke abo babesele ngemva ukuba bakhusele isixeko, ewe, bonke abo babengavumi ukunikezela izikhali zabo zemfazwe.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

26 Waba njalo ke uMoronayi uluzuzile ulawulo lwesixeko iMyuleki ngenxalenye yomkhosi wakhe, ngeli lixa wayematsha kunye nentsalela ukuze iqubisane namaLeymenayithi xa ebuya ekusukeleni uTiyanikumi.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye amsukela uTiyanikumi ade eza kufuphi nesixeko iNdyebo, baza ke bahlangatyezwa noLihayi nomkhosi omncinane, owawusele ukuze ukhusele isixeko iNdyebo.

28 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bakuba abaphathi-mkhosi abaziintloko bamaLeymenayithi bembonile uLihayi ekunye nomkhosi wakhe esiza ngokuchasene nabo, basaba bebhideke kakhulu, hleze mhlawumbi bangabi nakusizuka isixeko iMyuleki phambi kokuba uLihayi awadlule; kuba ayekhathazekile ngenxa yokumatsha kwawo, kwaye amadoda kaLihayi ayehlaziyekile.

29 Ngoku amaLeymenayithi ayengazi okokuba uMoronayi ebesemva kwawo kunye nomkhosi wakhe; kwaye konke ababekoyika yayinguLihayi nomkhosi wakhe.

30 Ngoku uLihayi wayenganqweneli ukuwadlula ade aqubisane noMoronayi nomkhosi wakhe.

31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba phambi kokuba amaLeymenayithi ahlehle umgama arhangqwa ngamaNifayithi, ngamadoda kaMoronayi kwesinye isandla, namadoda kaLihayi kwesinye, xa bebonke behlaziyekile kwaye bezele kukomelela; kodwa amaLeymenayithi ayediniwe ngenxa yematshi yawo ende.

32 Waza uMoronayi wayalela amadoda akhe okokuba awahlasele ade abe ayazinikezela izikhali zawo zemfazwe.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYakobi, ekubeni eyinkokeli yawo, ekubeni kanjalo engumZoramayithi, kwaye enomoya ongoyisakaliyo, wawakhokelela phambili amaLeymenayithi ukuba alwe idabi ngoburhalarhume obugqithileyo ngokuchasene noMoronayi.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

34 UMoronayi ekubeni esendleleni yawo yokumatsha, ke ngoko Yakobi wayezimisele ukuba ababulale aze acande indlela yakhe agqithele kwisixeko sikaMyuleki. Kodwa qaphelani, uMoronayi namadoda akhe ayenamandla ngakumbi; ke ngoko awazange awanike ndlela amaLeymenayithi.

35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba balwa macala omabini ngoburhalarhume obugqithileyo; kwaye babebaninzi ababuleweyo kumacala omabini, ewe, kwaye uMoronayi wayonzakele kwaye noYakobi wayebulewe.

36 Waza uLihayi wahlasela ngasemva kwabo ngoburhalarhume obukhulu kunye namadoda akhe awomeleleyo, kangankokuba amaLeymenayithi angasemva azinikezela izikhali zawo zemfazwe; yaza intsalela yawo, ibhideke kakhulu, ayazi nokokuba ihambe okanye ilwe.

37 Ngoku uMoronayi ebona ukubhideka kwawo, wathi kuwo: Ukuba ningazizisa ngaphambili izikhali zenu zemfazwe kwaye ninikezele ngazo, qaphelani siya kupheza ukuphalaza igazi lenu.

38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ewavile la mazwi, abaphathimikhosi babo abaziintloko, bonke abo babengabulawanga, beza ngaphambili baza baziphosa phantsi izikhali zabo zemfazwe ezinyaweni zikaMoronayi, baza kanjalo bayalela amadoda abo okokuba enze ngokunjalo.

39 Kodwa qaphelani, baba baninzi abangavumiyo; baza abo bangavumiyo ukunikezela ngamakrele abo bathatyathwa baza babotshelelwa, zaza izikhali zabo zemfazwe zahluthwa kubo, baza banyanzeliswa ukuba bamatshela phambili kunye nabazalwana babo bangene kulo ilizwe iNdyebo.

40 Kwaye ngoku inani lamabanjwa awayethatyathiwe lagqitha ngaphezulu kunelo nani labo babebulewe, ewe, ngaphezulu kunabo babebulewe macala omabini.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken exceeded more than the number of those who had been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain on both sides.

## Alma 53

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye babeka abalindi phezu kwamabanjwa amaLeymenayithi, baza babanyanzela ukuba babheke phambili baze bangcwabe abafileyo babo, ewe, kananjalo nabafileyo bamaNifayithi ababebulewe; waza uMoronayi wabeka amadoda phezu kwawo ukuba awalinde ngeli lixa eya kuba esenza imisebenzi yawo.
- 2 Waza uMoronayi waya kuso isixeko sikaMyuleki kunye noLihayi, waza waluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko waza walunikela kuLihayi. Ngoku qaphelani, loLihayi waye eyindoda eyaye ikunye noMoronayi kwinxalenye engakumbi yawo onke amadabi akhe; kwaye waye eyindoda efanayo noMoronayi, kwaye babegcotyiswa lukhuseleko lomnye nomnye; ewe, babethandana omnye nomnye, kananjalo bethandwa ngabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba amaLeymenayithi egqibile ukungcwaba abafileyo babo kananjalo nabafileyo bamaNifayithi, bamatshela emva kulo ilizwe iNdyebo; waza uTiyankumi, ngemiyalelo kaMoronayi, wababangela okokuba mabaqalise ukusebenza nzima ukomba umsele orhangqe ilizwe, okanye isixeko, iNdyebo.
- 4 Kwaye wababangela okokuba mabakhe udonga oluphantsi lokukhusela lwemithi; phezu kodonga lwangaphakathi lomngxuma; kwaye bakhuphela ngaphandle komngxuma umhlaba ngakudonga olungaphantsi lokukhusela lwemithi; kwaye njalo baye bawabangela amaLeymenayithi ukuba asebenze ade abe asirhangqile isixeko iNdyebo macala onke ngodonga olomeleleyo lwemithi nomhlaba, lwaba lude ngokugqithileyo.

## Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

5 Kwaye esi sixeko saba yinqaba egqithileyo kunangaphambili emva koko; kwaye kwesi sixeko baye bawalinda amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi; ewe, kwanangaphakathi kodonga abathi bawabangela ukuba balwakhe ngezabo izandla. Ngoku uMoronayi wayenyanzelekile ukuba awabangele amaLeymenayithi ukuba asebenze, ngenxa yokuba kwakulula ukuwalinda ngeli lixa ayekumsembenzi wawo; kwaye wayeyifuna yonke imikhosi yakhe xa kufuneka enze uhlaselo phezu kwamaLeymenayithi.

6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi njalo wazuza uloyiso phezu komnye wemikhosi eyakhe yamikhulu yamaLeymenayithi, kwaye wayezuze nolawulo lwesixeko sikaMyuleki, esaye sisesinye sezona nqaba ziluhlalima zamaLeymenayithi kulo ilizwe likaNifayi; kwaye njalo ke wayethe wakha kanjalo inqaba yokugcina amabanjwa akhe.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akazange aphinde azame ukulwa idabi kunye namaLeymenayithi kuloo nyaka, kodwa waye wasebenzisa amadoda akhe ekulungiseleleni imfazwe, ewe, kwaye nasekwenzeni iinqaba zokulinda ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, ewe, kananjalo ehlangula abafazi babo nabantwana babo endlaleni nembandezelo, kwaye ebonelela nemikhosi yakhe ngokutya.

8 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi, kulwandle olusentshonalanga, emazantsi, ngeli lixa angekhoyo uMoronayi ngesizathu sobuqhophololo obuthile phakathi kwamaNifayithi, obathi babangela ukreko phakathi kwawo, aye azuza umhlaba phezu kwamaNifayithi, ewe, kangangokuba ayezuzo ulawulo lwenani elithile lezixeko zabo kuloo mmandla welizwe.

9 Kwaza njalo ngenxa yobugwenxa phakathi kwabo, ewe, ngenxa yokreko nobuqhophololo phakathi kwabo babekwa kwezona meko zinobungozi ngakumbi.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

- 10 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndinokuthile nje endifuna ukukuthetha malunga nabantu baka-Amon, ababe, ekuqaleni, bengamaLeymenayithi; kodwa ngoAmon nabazalwana bakhe, okanye ngenye indlela ngamandla nelizwi likaThixo, baguqukela eNkosini; kwaye bathotyelwe ezantsi elizweni laseZarahemla, kwaye ukususela oko bakhuselwa ngamaNifayithi.
- 11 Kwaye ngenxa yesifungo sabo bathintelwe ekuthabatheni izikhali ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo; kuba babenze isifungo sokokuba abasokuze baphalaze gazi ngokungakumbi; kwaye ngokwesifungo sabo ngebabetshabalele; ewe, ngebabeziyekele ukuba bawele ezandleni zabazalwana babo, ukuba kwakungengalo usizi nothando olugqithileyo awayenalo uAmon nabazalwana bakhe ngabo.
- 12 Kwaye kungesi sizathu bathi baziswa ezantsi kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla; kwaye ukususela oko bakhuselwa ngamaNifayithi.
- 13 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba bakuba beyibona ingozi, neembandezelo ezininzi neenkxwaleko awathi amaNifayithi azinyamezela ngabo, bachukumiseka ngovelwano baza banqwenela ukuthabatha izikhali ekukhuseleni ilizwe labo.
- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, njengokuba babesele beza kuthabatha izikhali zemfazwe, boyiswa zizicengo zikaHilamani nabazalwana bakhe, kuba babesele beza kusaphula isifungo ababesenzile.
- 15 Kwaye uHilamani woyika hleze ngokwenza njalo bangaphulukana nemiphefumlo yabo; ke ngoko bonke abo babengene kulo mnqophiso banyanzeleka ukuba bababone abazalwana babo benyovula kwiimbandezelo zabo, kwiimeko zabo ezinobungozi ngeli lixa.
- 16 Kodwa qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba babenoonyana abaninzi, ababengangenanga kumnqophiso wokokuba babengasayi kuthabatha zikhali zamfazwe ukuba bazikhusele ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo; ke ngoko baye baqokelelana ngeli lixa, ngobuninzi kangokokuba babenako ukuba bathabathe izikhali, kwaye bazibiza ngokuba bangamaNifayithi.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.



- 17 Baza bangena kumnqophiso wokuba balwele inkululeko yamaNifayithi, ewe, ukukhusela ilizwe ekubekeni phantsi ubomi babo; ewe, bade banqophisa okokuba abasokuze bayinikezele inkululeko yabo, kodwa baya kulwa kuzo zonke iimeko ukukhusela amaNifayithi kunye nabo ebukhobokeni.
- 18 Ngoku qaphelani, kwakungamawaka amabini abo bafana baselula, abathi bangena kuwo lo mnqophiso baza bazithabatha izikhali zabo zemfazwe ukukhusela ilizwe labo.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, njengokuba kude kubengoko bengazange baba yingxaki kumaNifayithi, basuka ngoku ngesi sigaba sexesha kanjalo baba luncedo olukhulu; kuba bazithabatha izikhali zabo zemfazwe, baza banqwenela okokuba uHilamani abe yinkokeli yabo.
- 20 Kwaye bonke babe ngamadodana aselula, kwaye babe khaliphe ngokugqithisileyo ngenkalipho, kananjalo ngokomelela nangenkuthalo; kodwa qaphelani, akuzange kuphelele apho—babe ngamadoda awayenyanisekile ngamaxesha onke nakuyo nantoni na ababeyiphathiswe ngethemba.
- 21 Ewe, babengamadoda enyaniso nangcathu, kuba babefundisiwe ukuba bagcine imiyalelo kaThixo nokuba bahambe ngokuthe tye phambi kwakhe.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uHilamani waye wamatsha esentloko yamawaka akhe amabini angamagatyana amajoni, ekuncediseni abantu emideni yelizwe emazantsi ngakulwandle olusentshona.
- 23 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini anesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Alma 54

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amabini anesithoba unyaka wabagwebi, okokuba uAmoroni wathumela kuMoronayi enqwenela okokuba makatshintshise ngamabanjwa.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi waziva enqwenela ukugcoba ngesi sicelo, kuba wayenqwenela izibonelelo ezazinikwe ukuxhasa amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi ukuba axhase abakhe abantu; kananjalo wayenqwenela abakhe abantu ukuze bomeleze umkhosi wakhe.
- 3 Ngoku amaLeymenayithi ayethabathe abafazi abaninzi nabantwana, kwaye kungekho mfazi namntwana phakathi kwawo onke amabanjwa kaMoronayi, okanye amabanjwa athi uMoronayi wawathabatha; ke ngoku uMoronayi waba nesigqibo sobuchule sokuzuza amabanjwa amaninzi amaNifayithi kuwo amaLeymenayithi kangangoko kwakunokwenzeka.
- 4 Ke ngoku wabhala incwadi, waza wayithumela ngesicaka sika-Amoroni, kwayena lowo wayezise incwadi kuMoronayi. Ngoku la ngamazwi awathi wawabhalela uAmoroni, esithi:
- 5 Qaphela, Amoroni, ndikubhalela okuthile nje malunga nale mfazwe othe wayiqhuba ngokuchasene nabantu bam, okanye ngenye indlela leyo umntakwenu wathi wayiqhuba ngokuchasene nabo, kwaye osazimisele ukuyiqhuba emva kokufa kwakhe.
- 6 Qaphela, ndingakuxelela okuthile nje ngokunxulumene nobulungisa bukaThixo, nekrele elinamandla onke lomsindo wakhe, elijinga phezu kwakho ngaphandle kokuba uyaguquka kwaye uyirhoxisele imikhosi yakho kwawakho amazwe, okanye ilizwe lolawulo lwakho, elilizwe likaNifayi.
- 7 Ewe, bendingakuxelela ezi zinto ukuba ubunganako ukuziphulaphula; ewe, bendingakuxelela ngokunxulumene neso sihogo soyikekayo esilindele ukwamkela ababulali abanjengawe nomntakwenu obenjalo, ngaphandle kokuba uguquke kwaye uzirhoxise iinjongo zakho zokubulala, kwaye ubuyele kunye nemikhosi yakho kwawakho amazwe.

## Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

- 8 Kodwa njengoko ubukhe ngelinye ixesha wazikhanyela ezi zinto, kwaye walwa ngokuchasene nabantu beNkosi, kwangokunjalo ndinokulindela ukuba uya kuyenza loo nto kwakhona.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, sikulungele ukukwamkela; ewe, kwaye ngaphandle kokuba uzirhoxise iinjongo zakho, qaphela, uya kuwuthobela ezantsi phezu kwakho umsindo yaloo Thixo othe wamkhanyela, kwanasekutshatyalalisweni kwakho okupheleleyo.
- 10 Kodwa, njengoko iNkosi iphila, imikhosi yethu iya kuza phezu kwakho ngaphandle kokuba niyarhoxa, kwaye kwakamsinyane niza kuvelelwa kukufa, kuba siza kuzigcina izixeko zethu nemihlaba yethu; ewe, kwaye siza kuyikhusela inkolo yethu nenjongo yoThixo wethu.
- 11 Kodwa qaphela, kukhangeleka kum ngokungathi ndithetha nawe malunga nezi zinto ngelize; okanye kukhangeleka kum ngokungathi ungumntwana wesihogo; ke ngoko ndiza kuyivala incwadi yam ngokukuxelela okokuba andiyi kutshintshisa ngamabanjwa, ngaphandle kokuba kube kungesigqibo sokokuba uza kunikezela ngendoda nomfazi wayo nabantwana bayo ngebanjwa elinye; ukuba unokwenza ngokwale meko, ndiya kutshintshisa.
- 12 Kwaye qaphela, ukuba akukwenzi oku, ndiya kuza ngokuchasene nawe kunye nemikhosi yam; ewe, ndiya kude ndixhobise nabafazi bam nabantwana bam, kwaye ndiya kuza ngokuchasene nawe, kwaye ndiya kukulandela kwanokude kuye kwelakho ilizwe, eli lilizwe lelifa lethu lokuqala; ewe, kwaye kuya kuba ligazi ngegazi, ewe, ubomi ngobomi, kwaye ndiya kuninika idabi nibe nitshatyalalisiwe nisuke ebusweni bomhlaba.
- 13 Qaphela, ndisemsindweni, nabantu bam kanjalo; nizingule ukusibulala, kwaye thina sifune kuphela nje ukuzikhusela. Kodwa qaphela, ukuba nizama ukusitshabalalisa ngakumbi siya kuzama ukunitshabalalisa; ewe, kwaye siya kufuna ilizwe lethu, ilizwe lelifa lethu lokuqala.
- 14 Ngoku ndiyayivala incwadi yam. NdinguMoronayi; ndiyinkokeli yabantu bamaNifayithi.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

- 15 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uAmmoron, akuba eyifumene le incwadi, waba nomsindo; waza wabhala enye incwadi eya kuMoronayi, kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wawabhalela yena, athi:
- 16 NdinguAmmoron, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi; ndingumntakwaboAmalikhaya lowo nambulalayo. Qaphela, ndiya kuliphindezela igazi lakhe phezu kwenu, ewe, kwaye ndiya kunihlasela ngemikhosi yam kuba andizoyiki izoyikiso zakho.
- 17 Kuba qaphela, ooyihlo benza okuphosakeleyo kubantakwabo, kangangokuba baye babaphanga ilungelo labo lolawulo xa eneneni lalilelabo.
- 18 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ukuba niya kuzibeka phantsi izikhali zenu, nize nizingenise phantsi kolawulo lwabo ulawulo ngokwasemthethweni, ke ndiya kubabangela abantu bam ukuba bazibeke phantsi izikhali zabo baze bangabe baphinde balwe mfazwe.
- 19 Qaphela, ufuthe izoyikiso ezininzi ngokuchasene nam nabantu bam; kodwa qaphela, asizoyiki izoyikiso zakho.
- 20 Nangona kunjalo, ndiyakuvuma ukutshintshisa ngamabanjwa ngokwesicelo sakho, ngochulumanco, ukuze ndibe nokulondolozela amadoda am emfazwe ukutya; kwaye siya kuqhuba imfazwe engasayi kuba nasiphelo, nokokuba kuya kuba sekungeniseni amaNifayithi phantsi kwegunya lethu okanye ekubeni babe ngabangasekhoyo ngonaphakade.
- 21 Kwaye ngokunxulumene naloo Thixo othi wena simkhanye, qaphela, asazi mntu unjalo thina; nawe ngokwakho; kodwa ukuba kunokubakho umntu onjalo, asazi kodwa sazi nje okokuba usidalile njengani.
- 22 Kwaye ukuba kunokwenzeka okokuba kukho umtyholi nesihogo, qaphela akayi kukuthumela apho kusini na ukuba uhlale kunye nomntakwethu lowo umbuleleyo, lowo uthe rheshe okokuba uye kwindawo enjalo? Kodwa qaphela ezi zinto azinamsebenzi.
- 23 NdinguAmmoron, nenzala kaZorami, lowo oyihlo bamnyanzelayo kwaye bamkhupha eYerusalem.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

24 Kwaye qaphela ngoku, ndingumLeymenayithi  
okhaliphileyo; qaphela, le mfazwe iqhutyelwe  
ukuphindezela ukuphathwa kakubi kwabo;  
nokugcina nokuzuza iimfanelo zawo kulawulo;  
kwaye ndiyayivala incwadi yam eya kuMoronayi.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold,  
this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs,  
and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the gov-  
ernment; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

## Alma 55

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi eyifumene le ncwadi waba nomsindo ngakumbi, ngenxa yokuba wayesazi okokuba uAmoroni wayenolwazi olugqibeleleyo ngobuqhinga bakhe; ewe, wayesazi okokuba uAmoroni wayesazi okokuba yayingeyonjongo yabulungisa eyayimenza aqhube imfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu bakaNifayi.
- 2 Waza wathi: Qaphelani, andisayi kutshintshisa ngamabanjwa kunye noAmoroni ngaphandle kokuba ayirhoxise injongo yakhe, njengokuba ndichazile kwincwadi yam; kuba andisayi kumnika ukuba abe namandla angakumbi kunalawo aselenawo.
- 3 Qaphelani, ndiyayazi indawo leyo apho amaLeymenayithi alinda khona abantu bam abo athe abathabatha babangamabanjwa; kwaye njengoko uAmoroni engasayi kundinika sicelo sancwadi yam, qaphelani, ndiya kwenza njengokwamazwi am; ewe, ndiya kuzungula ukufa phakathi kwawo ade abe aya kwenza isicelo soxolo.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi ewathethile la mazwi, wabangela okokuba kwenziwe uphando phakathi kwamadoda akhe, ukuze mhlawumbi angafumana indoda eyayiyinzala kaLeymeni phakathi kwawo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bayifumana enye, egama layo lalinguLeymeni; kwaye yayiyenye yezicaka zikakumkani owayebulewe nguAmalikhaya.
- 6 Ngoku uMoronayi wabangela okokuba uLeymeni nenani elincinane lamadoda akhe abheke phambili kubalindi abo babelinde phezu kwamaNifayithi.
- 7 Ngoku amaNifayithi ayelindwe esixekweni sikaGidi; ke ngoko uMoronayi wonyula uLeymeni waza wabangela okokuba inani elincinane lamadoda lihambe kunye naye.
- 8 Kwaza kwakuba ngorhatya uLeymeni waya kubalindi ababelinde phezu kwamaNifayithi, kwaye qaphelani, bambona esiza baza bamkhwaza; kodwa wathi kubo: Musani ukoyika; qaphelani ndingumLeymenayithi. Qaphelani, sizimele kumaNifayithi, kwaye alele; kwaye bonani siyithabathile intwana yewayini yawo saza seza nayo.

## Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

- 9 Ngoku akuba amaLeymenayithi ewavile la mazwi abamkela ngovuyo; aza athi kuye: Siphe kule wayini yenu, ukuze sisele; siyavuya ukuba nithe nathabatha iwayini kunye nani kuba sidiniwe.
- 10 Kodwa uLeymeni wathi kuwo: Masiyigcineni intwana yewayini yethu side siyokuhlasela ngokuchasene namaNifayithi ukulwa idabi. Kodwa le ntetho yabenza banqwenela ngakumbi ukusela intwana yewayini;
- 11 Kuba, batsho: Sidiniwe, ke ngoko masithabathe iwayini, siza kuya sisiya sifumana izabelo zethu zewayini, eya kuthi isomeleze ukuba sihlasele ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 12 Waza uLeymeni wathi kubo: Ningenza ngokweminqweno yenu.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bathabatha iwayini ngokukhululekileyo; kwaye yayimnandi bakuyingcamla, ke ngoko bayithabatha ngokukhululekileyo ngakumbi; kwaye yayitsalile, ekubeni ibilungiselelwe ukuba itsale.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye basela baza bonwaba, baza baye besiya benxila bonke.
- 15 Kwaye ngoku akuba uLeymeni namadoda akhe ebona okokuba bonke babenxilile, kwaye babesebuthongweni obunzulu, babuyela kuMoronayi baza bamxelela zonke izinto ezenzekileyo.
- 16 Kwaye oku kwakungokwecebo likaMoronayi. Kwaye uMoronayi wayewalungiselele amadoda akhe ngezikhali zemfazwe; waza waya kwisixeko sikaGidi, eli lixa amaLeymenayithi ayekobunzulu ubuthongo kwaye enxilile, waza waphosa izikhali zemfazwe ngaphakathi kumabanjwa, kangangokuba onke ayexhobile;
- 17 Ewe, kwanakubafazi bawo, kwaye nakubo bonke abo babantwana bawo, ngobuninzi babo abo babenako ukusisebenzisa isikhali semfazwe, akuba uMoronayi ewaxhobisile onke loo mabanjwa; kwaye zonke ezo zinto zenziwa ngokuzola okunzulu.
- 18 Kodwa ukuba ayewavusile amaLeymenayithi, qaphelani ayenxilile kwaye amaNifayithi ngewayewabulele.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

- 19 Kodwa qaphelani, lo yayingengomnqweno kaMoronayi; wayengavuyiswa kukubulala okanye yimpalalo-gazi, kodwa wayevuyiswa kukusindisa abantu bakhe ekutshatyalalisweni; kwaye kungesi sizathu ukuze angabi nakuzisa phezu kwakhe intswela bulungisa, wayengena kuwahlasela amaLeymenayithi aze awatshabalalise ebunxileni kwawo.
- 20 Kodwa wayeyizuzile iminqweno yakhe; kuba wayewaxhobisile loo mabanjwa amaNifayithi awayengaphakathi kweendonga zesixeko, kwaye wawanika amandla okuzuzisa ulawulo lwezo ndawo ezaye zingaphakathi kweendonga.
- 21 Waza ke wawabangela amadoda lawo ayenaye ukuba arhoxe unyawo nje ukusuka kuwo, aza arhangqe imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi.
- 22 Ngoku qaphelani oku kwenziwa ngobusuku, ukuze xa amaLeymenayithi evuka kusasa abone okokuba arhangqwe ngamaNifayithi ngaphandle, nokokuba amabanjwa awo axhobile ngaphakathi.
- 23 Kwaye njalo abona okokuba amaNifayithi abongamele; aza kwezi meko afumanisa okokuba kwakungeyomfuneko okokuba makalwe kunye namaNifayithi; ke ngoko abaphathi-mikhosi bawo abaziintloko bafuna izikhali zawo zemfazwe, aza azizisa ngaphambili aza aziphosa ezinyaweni zamaNifayithi, ecela inceba.
- 24 Ngoku qaphelani, oku kwakungumqweno kaMoronayi. Wawathabatha abangamabanjwa emfazwe, waza wathabatha ulawulo lwesixeko, waza wabangela okokuba onke amabanjwa akhululeke, awayengamaNifayithi; aza amanyana nomkhosi kaMoronayi, aza aba kukomelela okukhulu emkhosini wakhe.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wawabangela amaLeymenayithi, awayewathabathile njengamabanjwa, okokuba aqalise ukusebenza ekomelezeni iinqaba macala onke esixeko sikaGidi.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba esinqabisile isixeko sikaGidi, ngokweminqweno yakhe, wawabangela amabanjwa akhe okokuba athatyathwe asiwe kwisixeko iNdyebo; waza kanjalo wasikhusela eso sixeko ngomkhosi owomelele ngokugqithisileyo.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.



27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye, nangona enawo bonke ubuqhophololo amaLeymenayithi, awagcina kwaye awakhusela onke amabanjwa awo ababewathabathile, kananjalo awugcina umhlaba nokongama awathi akuthabatha kwakhona.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aqalisa kwakhona ukoyisa, nokubanga ukubuyiselwa kweemfanelo zawo namalungelo awo.

29 Amaxesha amaninzi aye amaLeymenayithi azama ukubarhangqa ngobusuku, kodwa kwezi nzame aye aphulukana namabanjwa amaninzi.

30 Kwaye amaxesha amaninzi aye azama ukunika iwayini yawo kumaNifayithi, ukuze abe nokuwatshabalalisa ngetyhefu okanye ngokunxila.

31 Kodwa qaphelani, amaNifayithi ayengahambi kade ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wawo ngelixa lawo lembandezelo. Ayengenakubanjiswa emigibeni yawo; ewe, awavumanga ukuyithabatha iwayini yawo, ngaphandle kokuba aye ayinika amanye amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi kuqala.

32 Kwaye njalo babekulumkele okokuba makungabikho tyhefu inikwayo phakathi kwabo; kuba ukuba iwayini yawo yayi nokutyhefa umLeymenayithi yayinako kanjalo ukutyhefa umNifayithi, kwaye bazivavanya njalo zonke iindyhwala zawo.

33 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kwaba yimfuneko kuMoronayi ukuba enze amalungiselelo okuhlasela isixeko iMoriyantoni; kuba qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi aye, ngokusebenza kwawo, asinqabisa isixeko iMoriyantoni sada saba yinqaba eggithileyo.

34 Kwaye ayethe rhoqo ukuzisa imikhosi emitsha ingene esixekweni, kananjalo nezibonelelo ezitsha zemiphako.

35 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Alma 56

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amathathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, ngosuku lwesibini kwinyanga yokuqala, uMoronayi wafumana incwadi evela kuHilamani, ichaza ngeemeko zabantu kuloo mmandla welizwe.
- 2 Kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wawabhala, athi: Mzalwana wam othandekayo, Moronayi, njengokwaseNkosini nangokwasezinkxwalekweni zentla-lontle yethu; qaphela, mzalwana wam othandekayo, ndinento nje emandikuxelele yona malunga nentlalo-ntle yethu kulo mmandla welizwe.
- 3 Qaphela, amawaka amabini oonyana baloo madoda awathi uAmon wehla nawo wawakhupha ephuma kwilizwe likaNifayi—ngoku ubusazi okokuba aba babeyinzala kaLeymeni, owayengunyana omkhulu kabawo wethu uLihayi;
- 4 Ngoku akukho mfuneko yakukuchazela malunga nezithethe zabo okanye inkolo yabo, kuba uyazi malunga nezi zinto—
- 5 Ke ngoko kundanele okokuba ndikuxelele okokuba amawaka amabini abafana abaselula bathabathe izikhali zabo zemfazwe, kwaye banga ndinga ndingayinkokeli yabo; kwaye size ngaphambili ukuba sikhusele ilizwe lethu.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku uyazi kanjalo malunga nomnqophiso abathi ooyise bawenza, wokokuba abayi kuzithabatha izikhali zabo zemfazwe ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo ukuba baphalaze igazi.
- 7 Kodwa kunyaka wamashumi amabini anesithandathu, bakubona iimbandezelo zethu neenkxwaleko zethu ngenxa yabo, babesele beza kuwaphula umnqophiso ababewenzile baze bathabathe izikhali zabo zemfazwe ukukhusela thina.
- 8 Kodwa andibavumelanga ukuba bangawaphula lo mnqophiso bawenzayo, kuba ndicinga okokuba uThixo angasomeleza, kangangokude singahlungiseki ngakumbi ngenxa yokuzalisekisa kwabo isifungo abathi basithabatha.

## Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Kodwa qaphela, nantsi into enye esinokuthi kuyo sibenovuyo olukhulu. Kuba qaphela, kunyaka wamashumi amabini anesithandathu, mna, Hilamani, ndaye ndamatsha njengentloko yala mawaka mabini abafana abaselula ndisiya kwisixeko sakwaYuda, ukuya kuncedisa uAntiphasi, owawumonyule njengenkokeli phezu kwabantu baloo mmandla welizwe.
- 10 Kwaye ndaye ndabamanyanisa oonyana bam abangamawaka amabini, (kuba bakulungele ukubizwa ngokuba ngoonyana) kumkhosi ka-Antiphasi, ukomelela oko awathi, ngako uAntiphasi wagcoba ngokugqithisileyo; kuba qaphela, umkhosi wakhe wawuthotywe ngamaLeymenayithi ngenxa yokuba imikhosi yawo yayibulele inani elikhulukazi lamadoda ethu, ekuyinjongo yokuba sibe seluzini.
- 11 Nangona kunjalo, sinokuzithuzela kulo mba, kuba bafele injongo yelizwe labo nekaThixo wabo, ewe, kwaye bonwabile.
- 12 Kwaye nawo amaLeymenayithi kanjalo ayebambe amabanjwa amaninzi, ewonke zagabaphathimikhosi abaziintloko, ekungekho namnye kubo osindileyo. Kwaye sicinga okokuba ngoku ngeli lixa bakwilizwe likaNifayi; kunjalo ukuba ababulawanga.
- 13 Kwaye ngoku ezi zizixeko athe amaLeymenayithi azuza ulawulo kuzo ngokuphalaza igazi la madoda ethu amaninzi kangako akhaliphileyo:
- 14 Ilizwe laseManti, okanye isixeko saseManti, nesixeko sikaZiyezirom, nesixeko sikaKhumenayi, nesixeko saseAntiphara.
- 15 Kwaye ezi zizixeko ayezilawula xa ndandifika esixekweni sakwaYuda; ndaza ndafumana uAntiphasi namadoda akhe ebulaleka ngamandlakazi abo ukunqabisa isixeko.
- 16 Ewe, kwaye babedakumbile emzimbeni ngokunjalo nasemoyeni, kuba babelwe ngenkalipho emini baza babulaleka ngobusuku ukugcina izixeko zabo; kwaye njalo babenyamezele iimbandezelo ezinkulu zalo lonke udidi.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku babezimisele ukoyisa kule ndawo okanye bafe; ke ngoko ungahle ucinge okokuba lo mkhosi mncinane endize nawo, ewe, abo nyana bam, babanika amathemba amakhulu novuyo olukhulu.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

18 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebona okokuba uAntiphasi ufumene ukomelela okukhudlwana emkhosini wakhe, banyanzelwa ngemiyalelo ka-Amoroni ukuba bangahlaseli ngokuchasene nesixeko sakwaYuda, okanye ngokuchasene nathi, ukuba balwe idabi.

19 Saza njalo ke sancedwa yiNkosi; kuba ukuba babesihlasele sikobu buthathaka mhlawumbi ngebabewutshabalalisile umkhosana wethu omncinane; kodwa njalo saye sahlangukwa.

20 Aye ayalelwa nguAmoroni ukuba agcine ezo zixeko ababezithabathile. Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi amabini anesithandathu. Kwaye ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amabini anesixhenxe sasisilungisile isixeko sethu nathi ngokwethu ukukhuseleka.

21 Ngoku sasinqwenela okokuba amaLeymenayithi asihlasele; kuba sasinganqweneli kubahlasela kwiinqaba zabo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sathumela iintlole ngaphandle macala onke, ukuba zijonge iintshukumo zamaLeymenayithi, ukuze angasidluli ngobusuku nasemini ukuba enze uhlaselo kwezinye izixeko zethu ezaye zingasemantla.

23 Kuba sasisazi okokuba kwezo zixeko babengomelelanga ngokwaneleyo ukuba baqubisane nawo; ke ngoko sasinqwenela, ukuba angadlula ngakuthi, ukuba sibahlasele ngasemva kwabo, kwaye njalo size nabo ngasemva ngeli lixa kwakuqutyiswana nabo ngaphambili. Sasicinga okokuba singabongamela, kodwa qaphela, saphoxakala kuwo lo mnqweno wethu.

24 Abazange balinge ukusidlula kunye nomkhosi wabo wonke, bengenako nangenxalenye yawo, hleze bangomeleli ngokwaneleyo baze bawe.

25 Bengenako nokulinga ukumatsha behle ngokuchasene nesixeko saseZarahemla; bengenako nokulinga ukunqumla intloko yeTsidon, bawelele ngaphesheya kwisixeko sikaNifayihah.

26 Aza njalo bekunye nemikhosi yawo, azimisela ukuzigcina ezo zixeko ababezithabathile.

27 Kwaye ngoku kwenzeka kwinyanga yesibini yalo nyaka, kwaziswa kuthi imiphako emininzi evela kooyise baloo mawaka mabini oonyana bam.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

28 Kananjalo kwathunyelwa amawaka amabini  
amadoda kuthi evela kwilizwe laseZarahemla.  
Kwaye salungiselelwa njalo ngamadoda  
angamawaka alishumi, nemiphako yawo, kananjalo  
neyabafazi bawo nabantwana bawo.

29 Aza amaLeymenayithi, ebona njalo imikhosi  
yethu isanda mihla le, kwaye nemiphako ifika ukuze  
sixhaswe, aqalisa ukoyika, aza aqalisa ukutyhoboza  
esiza phambili ukuba bekunokwenzeka aphelise  
ukufumana kwethu imiphako nokomelela.

30 Ngoku sakubona okokuba amaLeymenayithi  
aqalisa ukunxunguphala ngale ndlela, sanqwenela  
ukuba size neqhinga libeneziphumo phezu kwawo;  
ke ngoku uAntiphasi wayalela okokuba ndimatshela  
phambili kunye noonyana bam abancinane ndiye  
kwisixeko esisebumelwaneni, ngokungathi  
sasithwele imiphako eya kwisixeko  
esisebumelwaneni.

31 Kwaye kwakufuneka simatshela kufuphi nesixeko  
saseAntiphara, ngokungathi siya kwisixeko  
esingaphaya, emideni engaselunxwemeni lolwandle.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye samatshela  
phambili, ngokungathi sinemiphako yethu, ukuya  
kweso sixeko.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAntiphasi waye  
wamatshela phambili kunye nenxalenye yomkhosi  
wakhe, eshiya intsalela ukuba igcine isixeko. Kodwa  
akazange amatshela phambili ndade ndaba ndibheke  
phambili kunye nomkhosi wam omncinane, ndaza  
ndeza kufuphi nesixeko iAntiphara.

34 Kwaye ngoku, kwisixeko saseAntiphara  
kwamiswa owona womeleleyo umkhosi  
wamaLeymenayithi; ewe, owona mkhulu.

35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba azisiwe  
ziintlola zawo, eza ngaphambili kunye nomkhosi  
wawo aza amatsha ngokuchasene nathi.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sasaba phambi  
kwawo, ukuya ngasentla. Kwaye njalo saye  
salahlekisa owona mkhosi unamandlakazi  
wamaLeymenayithi;

And also there were sent two thousand men unto  
us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were  
prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for  
them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces in-  
crease daily, and provisions arrive for our support,  
they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it  
were possible to put an end to our receiving provi-  
sions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to  
grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring  
a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus  
ordered that I should march forth with my little sons  
to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provi-  
sions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah,  
as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders  
by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if  
with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth  
with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to  
maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I  
had gone forth with my little army, and came near  
the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the  
strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most nu-  
merous.

And it came to pass that when they had been in-  
formed by their spies, they came forth with their  
army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them,  
northward. And thus we did lead away the most  
powerful army of the Lamanites;

37 Ewe, kwanokude kube ngumgama omde, kangangokuba bakuba bebona umkhosi kaAntiphasi ubasukela, ngamandlakazi awo, awazange aguqukele ngasekunene nangasekhohlo, kodwa aqhubeka ngokumatsha kwawo ngendlela ethe mbo emva kwethu; kwaye, ekucingeni kwethu, kwakuyinjongo yawo ukuba asibulale ngaphambi kokuba uAntiphasi afikelele kuwo, kwaye oku ukuze angabinakurhangqwa ngabantu bethu.

38 Kwaye ngoku uAntiphasi, eyiqaphela ingozi yethu, waye wakukhawulezisa ukumatsha komkhosi wakhe. Kodwa qaphela, kwakusebusuku; ke ngoko awuzange ufikelele kuthi, engazange noAntiphasi afikelele kuwo; ke ngoko saye samisa inkampu ngobo busuku.

39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngaphambi kokuba kuse, qaphela, amaLeymenayithi ayesisukela. Ngoku sasingomelelanga ngokwaneleyo ukuba silwe kunye nawo; ewe, ndandingenako ukuyekela ukuba oonyana bam abancinane bangawela ezandleni zawo; ke ngoko saye saqhubeka ngokumatsha kwethu, saza ukumatsha kwethu sakubhekisa entlango.

40 Ngoku ndandingeke ndilinge ukuguqukela ekunene nangasekhohlo hleze ndifumane, kwaye sasingenako ukuxhathisa ngokuchesene nawo, sisuke sibulawe, kwaye angaphuncuka; kwaye njalo saye sasaba yonke loo mini sangena entlango, kwanokokude kube mnyama.

41 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakhona, kwakufika ukukhanya kwemini sawabona amaLeymenayithi esondela phezu kwethu, saza sasaba phambi kwawo.

42 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba abazange basisukele umgama omde phambi kokuba beme; kwaye kwakuyintsasa yosuku lwesithathu lwenyanga yesixhenxe.

43 Kwaye ngoku, nokokuba aye afunyanwa nguAntiphasi asizange sazi, kodwa ndathi kumadoda am: Qaphelani, asazi kodwa banokuba bamile ngenjongo yokuba sihlasele ngokuchasene nawo, ukuze abe nokusibambisa emgibeni wawo;

44 Ke ngoko nithini, boonyana bam, ningahlasela ngokuchasene nawo ukulwa idabi?

Yea, even to a considerable distance, inasmuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

45 Kwaye ngoku ndithi kuwe, mzalwana wam othandekayo Moronayi, andizange ndayibona inkalipho engako ukubankulu, hayi, ayikho phakathi kwawo onke amaNifayithi.

46 Kuba njengoko bendikade ndibabiza ngokuba ngoonyana bam (kuba xa bebonke bebeselula kakhulu) kwangokunjalo bathi kum: Bawo, qaphela uThixo wethu unathi, kwaye akasayi kusiyekela ukuba masiwe; ke masibheke phambili; besingayi kubabulala abazalwana bethu ukuba bebengasiyekela; ke ngoko masihambe, hleze bawongamele umkhosi ka-Antiphasi.

47 Ngoku abazange bakhe balwe, kanti ke abazange bakoyike ukufa; kwaye baye bacinga ngokungakumbi ngenkululeko looyise kunokuba benza njalo ngobomi babo; ewe, babefundiswe ngoonina babo, okokuba ukuba abathandabuzi, uThixo angabahlangu.

48 Kwaye bawabalisa kum amazwi oonina, besithi: Asibathandabuzi oomama babeyazi.

49 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabuya kunye namawaka am amabini ngokuchasene nala maLeymenayithi ayesisukela. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, imikhosi ka-Antiphasi awafumene, kwaye idabi eloyikekayo liqalisile.

50 Umkhosi ka-Antiphasi ngenxa yokudinwa, ngenxa yobude bokumatsha kwawo ngethuba elifutshane kangako, wawusele uza kuwela ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi; kwaye ukuba bendingabuyanga namawaka am amabini ngewayeyizuzile injongo yawo.

51 Kuba uAntiphasi wayewe ngekrele, nezininzi iinkokeli zakhe, ngenxa yokudinwa kwazo, okwakubangelwa sisantya sokumatsha kwawo—ke ngoko amadoda ka-Antiphasi, ebhidekile ngenxa yokuwa kweenkokeli zawo, aqalisa ukunikezela phambi kwamaLeymenayithi.

52 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi akhuthazeka, aza aqalisa ukubasukela; kwaye amaLeymenayithi ayebasukela njalo xa uHilamani efika ngemva kwawo namawaka akhe amabini, waza waqalisa ukuwabulala ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba wonke umkhosi wamaLeymenayithi wema waza waguqukela kuHilamani.

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

- 53 Ngoku bakuba abantu baka-Antiphasi bebona okokuba amaLeymenayithi aguqukele kwelinye icala, bahlanganisa kunye amadoda abo aza eza kwakhona ngasemva kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 54 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba thina, bantu bakaNifayi, bantu baka-Antiphasi, kwaye nam ndikunye namawaka am amabini, saye sawarhangqa amaLeymenayithi, kwaye saye sawabulala; ewe, kangangokuba banyanzeleka ukuba bazinikezele izikhali zawo zemfazwe kwaye nawo ngokwawo njengamabanjwa emfazwe.
- 55 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba ezinikezele kuthi, qaphela, ndababala abo bafana baselula ababesilwa kunye nam, ndisoyika hleze kubekho abaninzi babo ababuleweyo.
- 56 Kodwa qaphela, ngovuyo lwam olukhulu, kwakungekho nomphfumlo omnye kubo owele emhlabeni; ewe, kwaye babelwe ngokungathi kwakungokomelela kukaThixo; ewe, akuzange kubekho madoda awaziwayo awakhe alwa ngokomelela okumangalisa kangako; kwaye ngamandlakazi kangako baye bagaleleka phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, kangangokuba baye bawoyikisa; kwaye kungesi sizathu athi amaLeymenayithi azinikezela njengamabanjwa emfazwe.
- 57 Kwaye njengoko sasingenandawo yamabanjwa ethu, ukuze sibe nokuwakhusele siwanqandela kwimikhosi yamaLeymenayithi, ke ngoko sawathumela kwilizwe laseZarahemla, nenxalenye yaloo madoda ayengabulawanga ka-Antiphasi, kunye nawo; yaza intsalela ndayithabatha ndayimanyanisa namagatyana am ama-Amonayithi, saza samatshela emva ukuya kwisixeko sakwaYuda.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.



## Alma 57

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ndafumana incwadi evela kuAmoroni, ukumkani, exela okokuba ukuba ndingawanikezela loo mabanjwa emfazwe esasiwathabathile angasinikezela isixeko saseAntiphara kuthi.
- 2 Kodwa ndathumela incwadi kuye ukumkani, ethi sasiqinisekile okokuba imikhosi yethu yayanele ukuba ingasithabatha isixeko saseAntiphara ngomkhosi wethu; kwaye ngokunikezela amabanjwa ngeso sixeko esazibona singenabulumko, nokuthi siya kunikezela amabanjwa ethu ngokutshintshisa.
- 3 Waza uAmoroni wayala incwadi yam, kuba wayengazi kutshintshisa ngamabanjwa; ke ngoko saqalisa ukwenza amalungiselelo okuhlasela ngokuchasene nesixeko saseAntiphara.
- 4 Kodwa abantu baseAntiphara baye basishiya isixeko, basabela kwezinye izixeko zabo, ababenolawulo lwazo, ukuba bazinqabise; saza njalo isixeko saseAntiphara sawela ezandleni zethu.
- 5 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amabini anesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amabini anesithoba, safumana izibonelelo zokutya, kananjalo nokongezwa kumkhosi wethu, zivela kwilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye nakwilizwe elirhangqileyo, ukongeza inani elingamawaka amathandathu amadoda, ngaphandle kwamashumi amathandathu oonyana bama-Amonayithi abezayo ukuza kuhlanguana nabazalwana babo, igqiza elincinane lam lamawaka amabini. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, sasomelele, ewe, kananjalo sasinezibonelelo ezininzi ezaziziswe kuthi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaba ngumnqweno wethu ukuqhuba idabi kunye nomkhosi lowo wawubekiwe ukuba ukhusele isixeko iKhumenayi.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ndiza kukubonisa okokuba kwakamsinyane sawufezekisa umnqweno wethu, ewe, ngomkhosi wethu owomeleleyo, okanye ngenxalenye yomkhosi wethu owomeleleyo, saye sasirhangqa, ngobusuku, isixeko saseKhumenayi, kancinane phambi kokuba babeza kufumana isibonelelo sokutya.

## Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye samisa inkampu macala onke esixeko kangangobusuku obuninzi; kodwa saye salala phezu kwamakrele ethu, kwaye saba nabalindi, ukuze amaLeymenayithi angabinako ukusihlasela ngobusuku aze asibulale, nto leyo awayeyizama amaxesha amaninzi; njengokuba akuzamayo oku amaxesha amaninzi igazi lawo lachithwa.

10 Ethubeni izibonelelo zawo zaye zafika, kwaye ayesele eza kungena esixekweni ngobusuku. Kwaye thina, endaweni yokuba ngamaLeymenayithi, saba ngamaNifayithi; ke ngoko; saye sawathabatha kwakunye nezibonelelo zawo.

11 Kwaye nangona amaLeymenayithi enqanyulelwe izixhaso zawo ngolu hlobo, ayesazimisele ukusigcina isixeko; ke ngoko kwaye kwayimfuneko okokuba sizithabathe ezo zibonelelo size sizithumele kwaYuda, nakumabanjwa ethu kwilizwe laseZarahemla.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuzange kudlule ntsuku zininzi phambi kokuba amaLeymenayithi aqalise ukuphelelwa ngawo onke amathemba oncedo; ke ngoko asinikezela isixeko ezandleni zethu; kwaye njalo sazizalisekisa iinjongo zethu zokuzuza isixeko saseKhumenayi.

13 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba amabanjwa ethu ayemaninzi kangangokuba, nangona sinamanani amakhulukazi, sasinyanzelekile ukuba sisebenzise yonke imikhosi yethu ukuwagcina, okanye siwabulale.

14 Kuba qaphela, ayeya kuqhawula ngamanani amakhulu, kwaye alwe ngamatye, nangamagqudu, okanye nangantonina ayenokuyifumana ezandleni zawo, kangangokuba saye sabulala ngaphezu kwamawaka amabini awo emva kokuba ezinikezele njengamabanjwa emfazwe.

15 Ke ngoko kwaba yimfuneko kuthi, okokuba sibuphelise ubomi bawo, okanye alindwe, ikrele lisesandleni, ezantsi kwilizwe laseZarahemla; kananjalo nezibonelelo zethu zazingenelanga nabantu bethu, nangona sasithabathe nezamaLeymenayithi.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, in-somuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

- 16 Kwaye ngoku, kwezo meko zinzima, yaba ngumcimbi onobungozi ukuwugqiba ngokunxulumene nala mabanjwa emfazwe; nangona kunjalo, saye sagqiba ukuba siwathumele ezantsi kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla; ke ngoko sakhetha inxalenye yamadoda ethu, saza sawawisela umthetho phezu kwamabanjwa ethu ukuba ehle aye kulo ilizwe lazeZarahemla.
- 17 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso aye abuya. Kwaye ngoku qaphela, asizange siwabuze malunga namabanjwa; kuba qaphela, amaLeymenayithi ayephezu kwethu, kwaye abuya ngethuba ukuba asisindise ekuweni ezandleni zawo. Kuba qaphela, uAmmoron wayethumele ukuwaxhasa ngesibonelelo esitsha sokutya kanaanjalo nentlaninge yomkhosi wamadoda.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba loo madoda esasiwathumele kunye namabanjwa aye afika ngethuba ukuze awabambezele, njengokuba ayesele eza kusongamela.
- 19 Kodwa qaphela, iqela lam lamawaka amabini namashumi amathandathu lalwa ngoburhalarhume obukhulu; ewe, lalizinzile phambi kwamaLeymenayithi, kwaye aye azisa ukufa kubo bonke abo babechasene nabo.
- 20 Kwaye njengokuba intsalela yomkhosi wethu yayisele iza kunikezela phambi kwamaLeymenayithi, qaphela, loo mawaka mabini namashumi amathandathu ayezinzile kwaye engoyiki.
- 21 Ewe, kwaye aye athobela kwaye azama ukulenza lonke ilizwi lomyalelo ngokuthe ncam; ewe, kwaye kwanangokokholo lwawo kwenzeka kuwo; kwaye ndaye ndawakhumbula amazwi awawathethayo kum awathi oonina awo awafundisa wona.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, yayingaba nyana bam, naloo madoda onyuliweyo ukuba ahambise amabanjwa, esinombulelo kuwo ngolu loyiso lukhulu; kuba yayingawo awawabethayo amaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko adudulelwa emva kuso isixeko saseManti.
- 23 Saza sasigcina isixeko sethu saseKhumenayi, kwaye sasingatshatyalaliswanga sonke ngekrele; nangona kunjalo, sahlungiswa yilahleko enkulu.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba amaLeymenayithi esabile, ndaye ngoko nangoko ndanika imiyalelo yokokuba amadoda am awayengxwelerhekile mawasuswe phakathi kwabafileyo, ndaza ndabangela okokuba amanxeba awo anyangwe aze abotshwe.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakukho amakhulu amabini, kumawaka amabini am anamashumi amathandathu, awathi ayoba ngenxa yokopha; nangona kunjalo, ngoko kulunga kukaThixo, nasekukhwankqisekeni kwethu okukhulu, kanaanjalo novuyo lomkhosi wethu wonke, kwakungekho nomphfumlo omnye wabo owathi watshabalala; ewe, kwaye kwakungekho namnye umphefumlo phakathi kwabo owawungafumananga manxeba maninzi.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku, ulondolozo lwabo lwalumangalisa kumkhosi wethu wonke, ewe, ukuba basindiswe ngeli lixa kwakukho iwaka labazalwana bethu ababebulewe. Kwaye sikubalela ngokufanelekileyo kumandla kaThixo amangalisayo, ngenxa yokholo lwabo olugqithileyo kuloo nto ebabeyifundisiwe ukuba bayikholelwe—yokokuba kwakukho uThixo olilungisa, kwaye nabani na owayengathandabuzi, okokuba bangalondolozwa ngaloo mandla akhe amangalisayo.
- 27 Ngoku olu yayilukholo lwaba endikhe ndathetha ngabo; baselula, kwaye neengqondo zabo zizinzile, kwaye bayalibeka ithemba labo kuThixo ngamaxsha onke.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba sithe njalo sawakhathalela amadoda angxwelerhekileyo ethu, saza sabangcwaba nabafileyo bethu kanaanjalo nabafileyo bamaLeymenayithi, ababe baninzi, qaphela, saye sabuza kuGidi malunga namabanjwa ababeqalise ukuhamba nawo ukusehlela kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 29 Ngoku uGidi waye engumphathi-mkhosi oyintloko phezu kweqela elaye lonyuliwe ukuba awalinde ukwehla ukuya elizweni.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

30 Kwaye ngoku, la ngamazwi awathi uGidi wawathetha kum: Qaphela, saye saqalisa ukuhamba sehlele kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla kunye namabanjwa ethu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sahlanguana neentlolela zomkhosi wethu, ezazithunyelwe ukuba zilinde inkampu yamaLeymenayithi.

31 Kwaye bamemeza kuthi, besithi: Qaphelani, imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi imatshela ngakwilizwe laseKhumenayi; kwaye qaphelani, iya kubahlasela, ewe, ize ibatshabalalise abantu bethu.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amabanjwa ethu aye aziva izimemezo zabo, zawenza abanenkali pho; aza avukela ngemvukelo ngokuchasene nathi.

33 Kwaye kwenzekile ngenxa yemvukelo yawo saye sawenza amakrele ethu ukuba akhwele kubo. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba laye iqela labalekela kumakrele ethu, ekwathi ngawo, inani elikhulu kakhulu lawo labulawa; yaza intsalela yawo yaphumela ngaphaya yaza yasaba kuthi.

34 Kwaye qaphela, akuba ebalekile kwaye singenakho ukuwafumana, saye samatsha ngokungxama sibhekisa ngakuso isixeko saseKhumenayi; kwaye qaphela, saye safika ngexesha ukuze sibe nokuncedisa abazalwana bethu ekukhuseleni isixeko.

35 Kwaye qaphela, sihlangule kwakhona saphuma ezandleni zeentshaba zethu. Kwaye malingcwaliswe igama likaThixo wethu; kuba qaphela, nguye osihlanguleyo; ewe, osenzele le nto ibaluleke kangaka.

36 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Hilamani, ndiwavile la mazwi kaGidi, ndazala luvuyo olugqithileyo ngenxa yokulunga kukaThixo ngokusikhusela kwakhe, ukuze singabi nakutshabalala sonke; ewe, kwaye ndiyathemba okokuba imiphefumlo yabo babuleweyo ingenile ekuphumleni koThixo wabo.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

## Alma 58

- 1 Kwaye qaphela, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba injongo yethu elandelayo yayikukuzuza isixeko saseManti; kodwa qaphelani, yayingekho indlela esasinokuthi siwakhokelele ekubeni aphume kuso isixeko ngamaqedlana ethu amancinane. Kuba qaphela ayekukhumbula oko ngaphambili sakwenzayo; ke ngoko sasingenako ukuwalukuhlela kude neenqaba zawo.
- 2 Kwaye ayeyintlaninge ngaphezulu nangaphezulu kunomkhosi wethu kangangokuba sasingenakho nokulinga ukubheka phambili kwaye siwahlasele kwiinqaba zawo.
- 3 Ewe, kwaye kwaba yimfuneko okokuba kufanele sisebenzise amadoda ethu ukugcina ezondawo zelizwe esathi sazizuzwa kwakhona zizezethu; ke ngoko kwaba yimfuneko okokuba masilinde, ukuze sibenokufumana ukomelela okongezelelweyo okuvela kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla kananjalo nesibonelelo esitsha semiphako.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye njalo ndathumela abathunywa kumphathi welizwe lethu, ukumazisa malunga nemicimbi yabantu bethu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye salindela ukufumana imiphako nokomelela okuvela kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 5 Kodwa qaphela, oku kwaba yingenelo nje encinane; kuba amaLeymenayithi nawo kananjalo ayefumana ukomelela okukhulu mihla le, kananjalo nemiphako emininzi; kwaye bezinjalo ke iimeko zethu kwesi sigaba sexesha.
- 6 Kwaye amaLeymenayithi ayetyhoboza esiza phambili ngokuchasene nathi amaxesha ngamaxesha, egqiba ngobuqhinga bokuba asitshabalalise; nangona kunjalo sasingenako ukuphuma silwe idabi kunye nawo, ngenxa yeendawo zawo zokubalekela neenqaba zawo.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye salinda kwezi meko zinzima kangangethuba leenyanga ezininzi, kwanokokude sibe saphantse satshabalala ngenxa yokungabi nakutya.

## Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

- 8 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba saye sakufumana ukutya, okwakukhuselelwe thina ngomkhosi wamawaka amabini amadoda ukuba usincedis; kwaye olu kuphela koncedo esaye salufumana, ukuba sizikhusele nelizwe lethu ekubeni liwele ezandleni zeentshaba zethu, ewe, ukuba silwe kunye notshaba olwalu ngenakubaleka.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku unobangela wezi ngxaki, okanye isizathu sokuba kungani babengasithumeleli ukomelela okongezekileyo, asisazi; ke ngoko sasihlungisekile kananjalo sizele luloyiko, hleze nangayiphi indlela izigwebo zikaThixo zehle phezu kwelizwe lethu, ngokoyiswa nokutshatyalaliswa okupheleleyo.
- 10 Ke ngoko saye sayithulula imiphefumlo yethu ngomthandazo kuThixo, ukuze asomeleze kwaye asihlangule siphume ezandleni zeentshaba zethu, ewe, kananjalo asiphe ukomelela ukuze sibe nokuzigcina izixeko zethu, nemihlaba yethu, nezinto ezizezethu, zokuxhasa abantu bethu.
- 11 Ewe, kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi uThixo wethu waye wasivelela ngeziqinisekiso zokokuba uya kusihlangula; ewe, kangangokuba waye wathetha uxolo emiphefumlweni yethu, kwaye waye wasinika ukholo olunamandla, kwaye wasibangela okokuba sibe nethemba lokuhlangulwa kwethu ngaye.
- 12 Kwaye saye sakhuthazeka kumkhosi wethu omcinane esasiwufumene, kwaye saqiniseka ngokuzimisela ukuba sizoyise iintshaba zethu, nokuba siyigcine imihlaba yethu, nezinto ezizezethu, nabafazi bethu, nabantwana bethu, nenjongo yenkululeko yethu.
- 13 Kwaye njalo saye sabheka phambili ngamandlakazi ethu onke ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, awayekwisixeko saseManti; kwaye saye sazigxumeka iintente zethu ngakwicala lasentlango, eyaye ikufuphi nesixeko.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso, akuba amaLeymenayithi ebona okokuba sasingasemideni ngakwintlango eyayikufuphi nesixeko, aye athumela iintlolel zazo macala onke ethu ukuze abe nokufumanisa inani nokomelela komkhosi wethu.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akubona okokuba sasingomelelanga, ngokwamanani ethu, kwaye esoyika ukuba singabanqamla kwisixhaso sawo ngaphandle kokuba bangaphuma bazokulwa idabi ngokuchasene nathi baze basibulale, kanaanjalo becinga okokuba bangasitshabalalisa ngokulula ngentlaninge yezihlewele zawo, ke ngoko aqalisa ukwenza amalungiselelo okuphuma ngokuchasene nathi ukuba alwe idabi.
- 16 Kwaye sakubona okokuba ayesenza amalungiselelo okuba aphume ngokuchasene nathi, qaphelani, ndambangela uGidi okokuba ekunye nenani elincinane lamadoda, makazifihle entlango, kanaanjalo ukuze uTiyomna nenani elincinane lamadoda bazifihle kanaanjalo entlango.
- 17 Ngoku uGidi namadoda akhe babengasekunene baza abanye bangasekhohlo; baza bakuba bezifihle njalo, qaphela, ndasala, ndikunye nentsalela yomkhosi wam, kwakuloo ndawo esasigxumeke kuyo kuqala iintente zethu ukulungiselela ilixa lokuba amaLeymenayithi angaphuma ukuba alwe idabi.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye aphuma kunye nemikhosi yawo emininzi ngokuchasene nathi. Baza bakuba bezile kwaye sele beza kusihlasela ngekrele, ndawabangela okokuba amadoda am, lawo awayekunye nam, ahlehle angene entlango.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye alandela emva kwethu ngesantya esikhulu, kuba ayenqwenela ngokugqithisileyo ukusifumana ukuze abe nokusibulala; ke ngoko aye asilandela angena entlango; kwaye saye sadlula phakathi kukaGidi noTiyomna, kangangokuba abazange babhaqwe ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebadlule, okanye wakuba umkhosi ubadlule, uGidi noTiyomna baye baphakama kwezo ndawo zabo zifihlakeleyo, kwaye baye bazinqamla iintloa zamaLeymenayithi ukuze zingabinakubuyela esixekweni.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inasmuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.



- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bezingamlile, babaleka ukuya esixekweni baza bahlasela abalindi ababeshiyiwe ukuba balinde isixeko, kangangokuba baye babatshabalalisa kwaye baye baluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko.
- 22 Ngoku oku kwenziwa ngenxa yokuba amaLeymenayithi ayekela umkhosi wawo wonke, ngaphandle nje kwabalindi abambalwa, ukuba ukhokelelwe kude ungene entlango.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okuba uGidi noTiyomna ngale ndlela baluzuzwa ulawulo lweenqaba zawo. Kwaye kwenzekile okuba sathabatha indlela yethu, emva kokuba sihambe kakhulu entlango sibhekisa ngakwilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 24 Aza amaLeymenayithi akubona ukuba ayematshele ngakulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, oyika ngokugqithisileyo, hleze kube kukho icebo eliyiliweyo lokuwakhokelela entshabalaweni; ke ngoko aqalisa ukuhlela angene entlango kwakhona, ewe, kwanangasemva kwangaloo ndlela awaye zengayo.
- 25 Kwaye qaphela, kwakusebusuku, kwaye aye azigxumeka iintente zawo, kuba abaphathimikhosi abaziintloko bamaLeymenayithi babecinge okokuba amaNifayithi ayediniwe ngenxa yokumatsha kwawo; kwaye becinga okokuba awududule wonke umkhosi wawo ke ngoko awazange acinge ngokunxulumene nesixeko saseManti.
- 26 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kwakuhlwa, ndawabangela amadoda am okokuba mawangalali, kodwa nje mawamatshela phambili ngenye indlela abhekise ngakulo ilizwe laseManti.
- 27 Kwaye ngenxa yayo le matshi yethu ngexesha lasebusuku, qaphela, ngengomso sasingaphaya kwamaLeymenayithi, kangangokuba safika ngaphambi kwawo esixekweni saseManti.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzeka njalo, okokuba ngeli qhinga saye saluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko saseManti ngaphandle kokuphalazwa kwegazi.
- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi itha yafika kufuphi nesixeko, yaza yabona okokuba sasikulungele ukuqubisana nayo, akhwankqiswa ngokugqithisileyo yaza yahliwa luloyiko olukhulu, kangangokuba yaye yasaba yangena entlango.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

30 Ewe, kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi yaye yasaba yaphuma kuwo wonke lo mmandla welizwe. Kodwa qaphela, yayithwele abafazi abaninzi nabantwana bephuma kunye elizweni.

31 Kwaye ezo zixeko ebezithatyathwe ngamaLeymenayithi, zizonke ngesi sigaba sexesha zikulawulo lwethu; kwaye oobawo bethu nabafazi bethu nabantwana bethu babuyela emakhayeni abo, bonke ngaphandle kwabo babethatyathiwe baba ngamabanjwa baza bathwalwa ngamaLeymenayithi.

32 Kodwa qaphela, imikhosi yethu mincinane ukuba ingagcina inani elikhulu kangaka lezixeko nezinto ezizezethu.

33 Kodwa qaphela, sithembele kuThixo wethu osinike uloyiso phezu kwaloo mazwe, kangangokuba sizizuzile ezo zixeko naloo mihlaba, eyaye iyeyethu.

34 Ngoku asisazi isizathu sokuba urhulumente angasiniki komelela kongezelekileyo; naloo madoda anyuka esiza kuthi engazi okokuba kungani na singafumananga komelezwa kungaphezulu.

35 Qaphela, asazi kodwa ukuba yini na ningaphumelelanga, nasekubeni nizise imikhosi kuloo mmandla welizwe; ukuba kunjalo, asinqweneli kumbombozela.

36 Kwaye ukuba akunjalo, qaphela, sinoloyiko lokokuba kukho ukruthakruthwano eburhulumenteni, ukuze bangasithumeleli madoda angakumbi okusincedisisa; kuba siyazi okokuba maninzi ngaphezulu kunalawo bawathumeleyo.

37 Kodwa, qaphela, akunamsebenzi—siyathemba okokuba uThixo uya kusihlangula, nangona sinobuthathaka emikhosini yethu, ewe, aze asihlangule siphume ezandleni zeentshaba zethu.

38 Qaphela, lo ngunyaka wamashumi amabini anesithoba, kwisiphelo sokugqibela, kwaye sinolawulo lwemihlaba yethu; namaLeymenayithi asabele kwilizwe likaNifayi.

39 Kwaye abo nyana babantu baka-Amon, abandithethe kakhulu ngabo, bakunye nam kuso isixeko saseManti; kwaye iNkosi ibaxhasile, ewe, kwaye yabakhusela ekuweni ngekrele, kangangokuba akukho kwanomphefumlo omnye obuleweyo.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

40 Kodwa qaphela, bafumene amaxheba amaninzi; nangona kunjalo bame nkqo kuloo nkululeko uThixo athe ngayo wabakhulula; kwaye bathe ngqo ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wabo mihla le; ewe, bayakuqwalasela ukuyigcina imithetho yakhe, nezigwebo, nemiyalelo yakhe ngamaxesha onke; nokholo lwabo lomelele kuzo iziprofetho ezinxulumene noko kusezayo.

41 Kwaye ngoku, mzalwana wam othandekayo, Moronayi, inga iNkosi uThixo wethu, osikhululeyo waza wasenza saba ngabakhululekileyo, angakugcina ngamaxesha onke ebusweni bakhe; ewe, kwaye inga ingabathanda ngokukodwa abantu, kwanokuze nibe nempumelelo ekuzuzeni ulawulo lwako konke awathi amaLeymenayithi akuthabatha kuthi, okwaye kukokokuphila kwethu. Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, ndiyayivala incwadi yam. NdinguHilamani, unyana ka-Alma.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

## Alma 59

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile kowamashumi amathathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, emva kokuba uMoronayi eyifumene waza wayifunda incwadi kaHilamani, wavuya ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yentlalontle, ewe, impumelelo egqithileyo awathi wabanayo uHilamani, ekuzuzeni loo mihlaba eyayilahlekile.
- 2 Ewe, kwaye wayenza yazeka kubo bonke abantu bakhe, kulo lonke ilizwe elirhangqileyo kuloo ndawo wayekuyo, ukuze babe nokugcoba nabo kanjalo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngokonangoko wathumela incwadi kuPhahorani, enqwenela okokuba abangele ukuba amadoda ahlanganisane kunye ukuba omeleze uHilamani, okanye imikhosi kaHilamani, kangangokuba abenako ngokulula ukuwugcina loo mmandla welizwe ebethe waphunyezwa ngokumangalisa kangako ekulizuzeni kwakhona.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile akuba uMoronayi eyithumelele ncwadi kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, waqalisa kwakhona ukuyila icebo ukuze abe nokuzuza intsalela yezo zinto ezizezabo nezixeko awathi amaLeymenayithi azithabatha kubo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa uMoronayi wayesenza njalo amalungiselelo okuhlasela ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi ukulwa idabi, qaphela, abantu bakaNifayiha, ababehlanganisene kunye besuka kuso isixeko sikaMoronayi nesixeko sikaLihayi nesixeko sikaMoriyantoni, bahlaselwa ngamaLemenayithi.
- 6 Ewe, kwanabo babenyanzelwe ukuba basabe kulo ilizwe laseManti, nakulo ilizwe elirhangqileyo, babewelege nganeno baze bazimanyanisa namaLeymenayithi kuwo ummandla welizwe.
- 7 Baza njalo beyintlaninge egqithisileyo, ewe, kwaye befumana ukomelela mihla le, ngomyalelo ka-Amoroni eza phambili ngokuchasene nabantu bakaNifayiha, kwaye baye baqalisa ukubabulala ngenyhikityha enkulu.

## Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

- 8 Kwaye imikhosi yawo yayimininzi kakhulu kangangokuba intsalela yabantu bakaNifayiha babenyanzelekile ukuba basabe phambi kwayo; kwaye beza ngokwenene kwaye bazimanya nomkhosi kaMoronayi.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku njengoko uMoronayi wayecinge okokuba kumele kubekho amadoda athunyelwa kuso isixeko sikaNifayiha, ukuncedisa abantu ukuba basigcine eso sixeko, kwaye esazi ukuba kokona kulula ukusigcina isixeko ekubeni siwele ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi kunokusithabatha kwakhona kuwo, wacinga okokuba bangasigcina lula eso sixeko.
- 10 Ke ngoko wawugcina wonke umkhosi wakhe ukuba ugcine ezo ndawo wayezifumene kwakhona.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku, xa uMoronayi wayebona okokuba isixeko sikaNifayiha sasilahlekile waba lusizi ngokugqithisileyo, waza waqalisa ukuthandabuza, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu, nokuba akufanelanga bawele ezandleni zabazalwana babo kusini na.
- 12 Ngoku oku kwakunjalo kubo bonke abaphathimkhosi bakhe abaziintloko. Bathandabuza kwaye bamangaliswa kanjalo ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu, kwaye oku kungenxa yempumelelo yamaLeymenayithi phezu kwabo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wabanomsindo kuye urhulumente, ngenxa yokungakhathali kwabo ngokunxulumene nenkululeko yelizwe labo.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephiah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

## Alma 60

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabhalela kwakhona kwirhuluneli yelizwe, eyayinguPhahorani, kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wawabhala, esithi: Qaphela, ndiyibhekisa incwadi yam kuPhahorani, kuso isixeko saseZarahemla, ongumgwebi oyintloko nerhuluneli phezu kwelizwe, kananjalo nakubo bonke abo bonyuliweyo ngaba bantu ukuba balawule kwaye baphathe imicimbi yale mfazwe.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, ndinokuthile nje endifuna ukukuthetha kubo ngendlela yokugweba; kuba qaphelani, nina ngokwenu niyazi okokuba nonyulwe ukuba nihlanganise kunye amadoda, kwaye niwaxhobise ngamakrele, namakrelana abugwegwe, nazo zonke iintlobo zezikhali zemfazwe zazo zonke iindidi, nize nithumele ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, nakweyiphina imimandla anokuza kuyo angene elizweni lethu.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni mna, kananjalo namadoda am, kananjalo noHilamani namadoda akhe, banyamezele ngokugqithisileyo iintlupheko ezinzima; ewe, kwanendlala, ukunxanwa, nokudinwa, kwaye nazo zonke iintlobo zeembandezelo zalo lonke udidi.
- 4 Kodwa qaphelani, ukuba oku ibe ikukuphela kwesikunyamezeleyo ngesiba asimombozeli singakhalazi.
- 5 Kodwa qaphelani, yabankulu kakhulu inyhikityha phakathi kwabantu bethu; ewe, amawaka awile ngekrele, ngeli lixa ngeyayahlukile ukuba naniyinikile imikhosi yethu ukomelela okwaneleyo noncedo lwayo. Ewe, kube kukhulu ukungakhathali kwenu ngakuthi.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, sinqwenela ukwazi unobangela woku kungathali kukhulu kugqithisileyo; ewe, sinqwenela ukwazi unobangela wemo yentswela-kucinga yenu.
- 7 Ningacinga ukuba nihlale phezu kweetrone zenu ninkwimo yokudangala kwengqondo enentswela-kucinga, ngeli lixa iintshaba zenu zisasaza umsebenzi wokufa macala onke enu? Ewe, ngeli lixa zibulala amawaka abazalwana benu—

## Alma 60

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

- 8 Ewe, kwanabo abo babekhangele kuni ngokhuseleko lwabo, ewe, abanibeke kwindawo yokuba nibe ngenibancedile, ewe, ninge nithumele imikhosi kubo, ukubomeleza, kwaye nisindise amawaka abo ekuweni ngekrele.
- 9 Kodwa qaphelani, akuphelelanga apho—niyibandezile imiphako yenu kubo, kangangokuba abaninzi balwile kwaye bopha baphuma ubomi babo ngenxa yeminqweno yabo emikhulu ababenayo ngentlalo-ntle yaba bantu; ewe, kwaye oku bakwenze xa babesele beza kutshabalala yindlala, ngenxa yokungakhathali okugqithisileyo kwenu ngakubo.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo—kuba nifanele ukuthandeka; ewe, kwaye nifanele ukuba nibe nizivuselele ngala nyameko engakumbi ngentlalo-ntle nenkululeko yesi sizwe; kodwa qaphelani, anibakhathalelanga kangangokuba igazi lamawaka liya kuza phezu kweentloko zenu ngempindezelo; ewe, kuba zaziwa nguThixo zonke izikhalo zabo, kwaye nazo zonke iibandezelo zabo—
- 11 Qaphelani, ninganako ukucinga okokuba ningahlala phezu kweetrone zenu, nize ngenxa yokulunga okugqithisileyo kukaThixo ningabinako ukwenza nto aze abe uya kunihlangula? Qaphelani, ukuba benikucinga oku nicinge ngelize.
- 12 Nicinga okokuba, ngenxa yokokuba abaninzi kangaka abazalwana benu bebulewe kungenxa yenkohlakalo yabo? Ndithi kuni, ukuba benicinga oku nicinge ngelize; kuba ndithi kuni, baninzi abawe ngekrele; kwaye qaphelani kusekugwetyweni kwenu.
- 13 Kuba iNkosi iyawayekela amalungisa ukuba abulawe ukuze impindezelo nesigwebo sibe nokuza phezu kwabakhohlakeleyo; ke ngoko animele ukucinga okokuba amalungisa alahlekile ngenxa yokuba ebulewe; kodwa qaphelani, angena ekuphumleni kweNkosi uThixo wawo.

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

- 14 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ndinoloyiko ngokugqithisileyo lokokuba izigwebo zikaThixo ziya kuza phezu kwaba bantu, ngenxa yobuvila babo obugqithileyo, ewe, kwanobuvila borhulumente wethu, nokungakhathali kwabo okugqithisileyo ngakubazalwana babo, ewe, ngakwabo babuleweyo.
- 15 Kuba ukuba bekungengankohlakalo eyathi kuqala yaqalisa kwintloko yethu, ngesamelana neentshaba zethu ukuze zingabinako ukuzuza amandla phezu kwethu.
- 16 Ewe, ukuba kwakungengayo imfazwe eyathi yaqhambuka phakathi kwethu; ewe, ukuba kwakungengabo aba bathandi-kumkani, abathi babangela impalalo-gazi enkulu kangaka phakathi kwethu; ewe, ngelixa esasisilwa phakathi kwethu, ukuba sasihlanganise ukomelela kwethu njengoko sasenzile ngaphambili; ewe, ukuba kwakungengawo umnqweno wamandla negunya ababenalo abo bathandi-kumkani phezu kwethu; ukuba babenyanisekile kuyo injongo yenkululeko yethu, baza bazimanya kunye nathi, baza babheka phambili ngokuchasene neentshaba zethu, endaweni yokuthabatha amakrele abo ngokuchasene nathi, nto leyo eyayingunobangela wempalalo-gazi engako phakathi kwethu; ewe, ukuba sasibheke phambili ngokuchasene nawo emandleni eNkosi, ngesasizichitha-chithile iintshaba zethu, kuba ngekwakwenzekile, ngokokuzaliseka kwelizwi layo.
- 17 Kodwa qaphelani, ngoku amaLeymenayithi aza kusihlasela, athathe ulawulo lwemihlaba yethu, kwaye ayababulala abantu bethu ngekrele, ewe, abafazi bethu nabantwana bethu, kananjalo babathwalele ebukhobokeni, ebangela okokuba mabanyamezele lonke uhlobo lweembandezelo, kwaye oku kungenxa yenkohlakalo enkulu yabo bafuna amandla negunya, ewe, kwanabo bathandi-kumkani.
- 18 Kodwa kungani ukuba ndithethe kangaka malunga nalo mcimbi? Kuba asazi hleze mhlawumbi nani ngokwenu nifuna igunya. Asazi hleze mhlawumbi nani kanjalo ningabangcatshi elizweni lenu.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.



- 19 Okanye ningasikhathalelanga nje kungenxa yokuba nisentliziweni yelizwe lethu kwaye nirhangqwe ngokhuseleko, ukuze ningabangeli ukuba ukutya kuthunyelwe kuthi, kanaanjalo namadoda ukuba omeleze imikhosi yethu?
- 20 Ingaba niyilibele imiyalelo yeNkosi uThixo wenu? Ewe, ingaba nikulibele ukuthinjwa koobawo? Ingaba niwalibele amaxesha amaninzi ebesihlangulwa siphume ezandleni zeentshaba zethu?
- 21 Okanye nisacinga okokuba iNkosi isaya kube isihlangule, ngeli lixa sihleli phezu kweetrone zethu kwaye singazisebenzisi indlela ethe iNkosi yasibonelela ngazo?
- 22 Ewe, niza kuhlala ebuvileni ngeli lixa nirhangqwe ngamawaka abo, ewe, namashumi amawaka, abathi nabo kanjalo bahlale ebuvileni, ngeli lixa kukho amawaka macala onke emideni yelizwe awa ngekrele, ewe, engxwelerhekile kwaye esopha?
- 23 Ingaba nicinga okokuba uThixo uya kunijonga njengabangenatyala ngeli lixa nime ngxi nibukele ezi zinto? Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi. Ngoku ndinga ningakhumbula okokuba uThixo uthe isitya sangaphakathi siya kucocwa kuqala, kuze ke kucocwe isitya sangaphandle kanjalo.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, ngaphandle kokuba nithi niguquke kuloo nto enithe nayenza, nize niqalise ukuphakama nenze, kwaye nithumele ukutya namadoda kuthi, kanaanjalo nakuHilamani, ukuze abe nokubonelela loo mimandla yelizwe lethu athe wayizuzwa kwakhona, nokokuba singaphinda kanjalo siyifumane intsalela yezinto ezizezethu kule mimandla, qaphelani kuya kuba yimfuneko okokuba singabe siphinde silwe kunye namaLeymenayithi side sibe sisicocile kuqala isitya sethu sangaphakathi, ewe, kwanayo intloko ephezulu karhulumente wethu.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

- 25 Kwaye ngaphandle kokuba niya kuthi nindinike isicelo sencwadi yam, kwaye niphume ngaphandle nize nindibonise umoya wokwenene wenkululeko, kwaye nizame ukomeleza nokunqabisa imikhosi yethu, kwaye niyinine ukutya kokuyixhasa, qaphelani ndiza kushiya inxalenye yamadoda am angabathandinkululeko ukuba agcine lo mmandla welizwe lethu, kwaye ndiya kushiya ukomelela nentsikelelo kaThixo phezu kwawo, ukuze kungabikho mandla wambi anokusebenza ngokuchasene nawo—
- 26 Kwaye oku kungenxa yokholo lwawo olugqithileyo, nomonde wawo kwiinkxwaleko zawo—
- 27 Kwaye ndiya kuza kuni, kwaye ukuba kukho nabanina kuni phakathi kwenu onomnqweno wenkululeko, ewe, ukuba kusekho kwanentlantsi yenkululeko esashiyekileyo, qaphelani ndiya kuvuselela udushe phakathi kwenu, kwanokude abo baneminqweno yokuphanga amandla negunya baya kuba ngabangasekhoyo.
- 28 Ewe, qaphelani andiwoyiki amandla enu nagunya lenu, kodwa nguThixo wam endimoyikayo; kwaye kungemiyalelo yakhe ukuze ndithabathe ikrele ukuba ndikhusele injongo yelizwe lam, kwaye kungenxa yobugwenxa benu ukuze sibandezeleke ngelahleko enkulu kangaka.
- 29 Qaphelani lixsha, ewe, ixsha ngoku selisondele, lokuba ngaphandle kokuba nithi nizivuselele ekukhuseleni ilizwe lenu nabancinane benu, ikrele lobulungisa lijinga phezu kwenu; ewe, kwaye liya kuwa phezu kwenu kwaye linivelele kwanasekutshatyalalisweni kwenu okupheleleyo.
- 30 Qaphelani, ndilindele uncedo oluvela kuni; kwaye, ngaphandle kokuba nithi nisibonelele ngoncedo lwethu, qaphelani, ndiyeza kuni, kwanakulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye ndinibethe ngekrele, kangangokuba ningabe niphinde nibe namandla okuthintela inkqubela yesi sizwe kwinjongo yenkululeko yethu.
- 31 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi ayisayi kunivumela ukuba niphile kwaye niye nisomelela kubugwenxa benu ukuze nibatshabalalise abantu bayo abangamalungisa.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

32 Qaphelani, ingaba ningacinga okokuba iNkosi inganisindisa kwaye iphume ngaphandle ngesigwebo ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, ngeli lixa kuzizithethe zooyise ezabangela intiyo yawo, ewe, kwaye iphinda-phindiwe ngabo bathi bakreqa kuthi, ngeli lixa ubugwenxa benu bubangelwa luthando lwenu lozuko nezinto ezililize zeli hlabathi?

33 Niyazi okokuba nithi niyaphule imithetho kaThixo, kwaye niyazi okokuba nithi niyinyathele phantsi kweenyawo zenu. Qaphelani, iNkosi ithi kum: Ukuba abo nibonyulileyo njengeerhuluneli zenu abaguquki kwizono zabo nobugwenxa, niya kunyuka ukuze nilwe idabi ngokuchasene nabo.

34 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, mna, Moronayi, ndinyanzelwe ngokomnqophiso endiwenzileyo ukuba ndiyigcine imiyalelo kaThixo wam; ke ngoko ndinga ningabambelela kulo ilizwi likaThixo, kwaye nithumele ngokukhawulezileyo kum eminye yemiphako yenu namanye amadoda enu, kananjalo nakuHilamani.

35 Kwaye qaphelani, ukuba aniyi kukwenza oku ndiyeza kuni ngokukhawulezileyo; kuba qaphelani, uThixo akayi kusiyekela ukuba singatshabalala ngendlala; ke ngoko uya kusinika okunye kokutya kwenu, nokokuba kufuneka kube ngekrele. Ngoku bonani okokuba niyalizalisekisa ilizwi likaThixo.

36 Qaphelani, ndinguMoronayi, umphathi-mikhosi wenu oyintloko. Andizami kuzuza amandla, kodwa ukulutsalela ezantsi. Andizami kuzuza imbeko yehlabathi, kodwa ukuzuza uzuko lukaThixo wam, nenkululeko nentlalo-ntle yelizwe lam. Kwaye njalo ndiyayivala incwadi yam.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

## Alma 61

- 1 Qaphela, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kwakamsinya emva kokuba uMoronayi ethumele incwadi yakhe kwirhuluneli eyintloko, wafumana incwadi evela kuPhahorani, irhuluneli eyintloko. Kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wawafumana:
- 2 Mna, Phahorani, oyirhuluneli eyintloko yeli lizwe, ndithumela la mazwi kuMoronayi, umphathimikhosi oyintloko phezu komkhosi. Qaphela, ndithi kuwe, Moronayi, andivuyiswa ziimbandezelo zenu ezinzima, ewe, iyawuhlungisa umphefumlo wam.
- 3 Kodwa qaphela, kukho abo bavuyiswayo ziimbandezelo zenu, ewe, kangangokuba bavukele ngemvukelo ngokuchasene nam, kananjalo nabo babantu bam abangabathandi-nkululeko, ewe, kwaye abo bavukeleyo baninzi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 4 Kwaye ngabo bazame ukuthabatha isihlalo-sokugweba kum abangunobangela wobu bugwenxa bukhulu; kuba basebenzise ukunyhwalaza okukhulu, kwaye balahlekise iintliziyo zabantu abaninzi, nto leyo eya kuba ngunobangela weembandezelo ezibuhlungu phakathi kwethu; bayibambile imiphako yethu, kwaye baboyikisile abathandinkululeko bethu ukuze bangezi kuwe.
- 5 Kwaye qaphela, bandiqhubele ngaphandle phambi kwabo, kwaye ndasabela kulo ilizwe likaGidiyon, kunye namadoda amaninzi kangangoko ndandinokuwafumana.
- 6 Kwaye qaphela, ndithumele isibhengezo kuwo wonke lo mmandla welizwe; kwaye qaphela, bahlanganisana kunye mihla le, ukuthabatha izikhali, ekukhuseleni ilizwe labo nenkululeko yabo, nokuphindezela ukungaphatheki kakuhle kwethu.
- 7 Kwaye bezile kuthi, kangangokuba abo bavukeleyo ngemvukelo ngokuchasene nathi bathe gqolo ngokudelelwa, ewe, kangangokuba bayasoyika kwaye abalingi nokuhlasela ngokuchasene nathi ukuba balwe idabi.

## Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 Balufumene ulawulo lwelizwe, okanye isixeko, saseZarahemla; bonyule ukumkani phezu kwabo, kwaye ubhalele kukumkani wamaLeymenayithi, athe kuye wazibandakanya nomanyano naye; kumanyano olo athe wavuma ukusigcina isixeko saseZarahemla, ugcino olo acinga ukuba luya kuwenza amaLeymenayithi abenako ukuthimba intsalela yelizwe, kwaye uza kubekwa njengokumkani phezu kwaba bantu bakuba boyiselwe phantsi kwamaLeymenayithi.

9 Kwaye ngoku, kuyo incwadi yakho undikhalimele, kodwa akunamsebenzi; andicaphukanga, kodwa ndiyavuya ngesisa sentliziyo yakho. Mna, Phahorani, andizami kuzuza mandla, ngaphandle nje kokugcina isihlalo-sokugweba sam ukuze ndibe nokulondoloza iimfanelo nenkululeko yabantu bam. Umphefumlo wam ume uthe nkqi kuloo nkululeko athe kuyo uThixo wasenza sakhululeka ngayo.

10 Kwaye ngoku, qaphela, siza kumelana nenkohlakalo kwanokude kube kwimpalalo-gazi. Asingekhe siliphalaze igazi lamaLeymenayithi ukuba angahlala kwelawo ilizwe.

11 Asingekhe siliphalaze igazi labazalwana bethu ukuba abangekhe bavukele ngemvukelo kwaye bathabathe ikrele ngokuchasene nathi.

12 Singazinikela kuyo idyokhwe yobukhoboka ukuba bekuyimfuneko ngokobulungisa bukaThixo, okanye ukuba angasiyalela ukuba senze njalo.

13 Kodwa qaphela akasiyaleli okokuba sizinikele ezintshabeni zethu, kodwa nje okokuba simele sibeke ithemba lethu kuye, kwaye uya kusihlangula.

14 Ke ngoko, mzalwana wam othandekayo, Moronayi, masimelane nobubi, kwaye nabuphina ububi esingenako ukumelana nabo ngamazwi ethu, ewe, njengeemvukelo neempikiswano, masimelane nazo ngamakrele ethu, ukuze sibe nokuyigcina inkululeko yethu, ukuze sibe nokugcoba ngelungelo elilodwa elikhulu lebandla lethu, kwaye nakwinjongo yoMkhululi wethu noThixo wethu.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

- 15 Ke ngoko, yiza kum ngokukhawulezileyo kunye nambalwa amadoda akho, kwaye uyishiye intsalela kulawulo lukaLihayi noTiyaniKumi; banike igunya lokuphatha imfazwe kuloo mmandla welizwe, ngokoMoya kaThixo, okwa kanjalo ngumoya wenkululeko okubo.
- 16 Qaphela ndithumele imiphako embalwa kubo, ukuze bangabinakutshabalala ude ube nokuza kum.
- 17 Hlanganisa kunye nawuphina umkhosi onganako ukuza apha ekumatsheni kwenu, kwaye siya kuhlasela ngokukhawulezileyo ngokuchasene nabo bakreqi, emandleni kaThixo wethu ngokokholo olukuthi.
- 18 Kwaye siya kuluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko saseZarahemla, ukuze sibe nokuzuzisa ukutya okungakumbi ukuba sithumele kuLihayi noTiyaniKumi; ewe, siya kubheka phambili ngokuchasene nabo emandleni eNkosi, kwaye siya kuphelisa obu bugwenxa buxhalabisayo.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku, Moronayi, ndiyavuyiswa kukufumana incwadi yakho, kuba bendinokukhathazeka okuthile malunga noko sifanele sikwenze, nokokuba kungaba bubulungisa kuthi ukuhlasela ngokuchasene nabazalwana bethu.
- 20 Kodwa uthe, ngaphandle kokuba baguquke iNkosi ikuyalele okokuba kufanele uhlaselwe ngokuchasene nabo.
- 21 Bona okokuba womeleza uLihayi noTiyaniKumi eNkosini; baxebele ukuba bangoyiki, kuba uThixo uya kubahlangula, ewe, kananjalo bonke abo bema bathi nkqi kuloo nkululeko awathi ngayo uThixo wabenza baba ngabakhululekileyo. Kwaye ngoku ndiyayivala incwadi yam eya kumzalwana wam othandekayo, uMoronayi.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

## Alma 62

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uMoronayi eyifumene le ncwadi intliziyo yakhe yakhuthazeka, yaza yazala luvuyokazi olugqithisileyo ngenxa yokunyaniseka kukaPhahorani, ukuba naye wayengengomngcatshi kanjalo kuyo inkululeko nenjongo yelizwe lakhe.
- 2 Kodwa waye kanjalo wabalusizi ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yobugwenxa babo babegxotho uPhahorani kwisihlalo-sokugweba, ewe, lilonke ngenxa yabo bavukelayo ngokuchasene nelizwe labo kananjalo noThixo wabo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wathabatha inani elincinane lamadoda, ngokomnqweno kaPhahorani, waza wanika uLihayi noTiyani kumi ulawulo phezu kwentsalela yomkhosi wakhe, waza wamatshela ngakulo ilizwe likaGidiyon.
- 4 Kwaye waye wayinyusa ibhanile yenkululeko kuyo nayiphina indawo awathi wangena kuyo, waza wazuza nawuphi umkhosi awayenako ukuwuzuzisa kuko konke ukumatsha kwakhe esiya ngakulo ilizwe likaGidiyon.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amawaka aye ahlanganisana kunye kuloo bhanile yakhe, aza athabatha amakrele awo ngokukhusela inkululeko yawo, ukuze angabinakuba sebukhobokeni.
- 6 Kwaye njalo, akuba uMoronayi ehlanganise kunye nawaphina amadoda awayenako ukuwahlanganisa kuko konke ukumatsha kwakhe, wafika kulo ilizwe likaGidiyon; kwaye emanyanisa imikhosi yakhe kunye naleyo kaPhahorani basuka baba nokomelela okugqithisileyo, kwanokude bomelele nangaphezu kwamadoda kaPhakhasi, owaye engukumkani wabo bakreqi ababedudule abathandi-nkululeko baphuma elizweni laseZarahemla baza baluthabatha ulawulo lwelizwe.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi noPhahorani behla kunye nemikhosi yabo bangena elizweni laseZarahemla, baza babheka phambili ngokuchasene nesixeko, kwaye baye bahlangana namadoda kaPhakhasi, kangangokuba baye balwa idabi.

## Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

8 Kwaye qaphelani, uPhakhasi wabulawa aza amadoda akhe athatyathelwa ekubeni ngama banjwa, waza uPhahorani wabuyiselwa kuso isihlalo-sokugweba sakhe.

9 Kwaye amadoda kaPhakhasi afumana ukuthethwa kwetyala lawo, ngokwasemthethweni, kanaanjalo nabo bathandi-kumkani, abathathwayo baza baphoselwa entolongweni, kwaye baye batshutshiswa ngokomthetho; ewe loo madoda kaPhakhasi nabo bathandi-kumkani, nabanina ongavumiyo ukuthabatha izikhali ukukhusela ilizwe labo, kodwa eya kulwa ngokuchasene nalo, babebulawa.

10 Kwaye njalo kwaba yimfuneko okokuba lo mthetho kufanele uthotyelwe ngokungqongqo ukuze kukhuseleke ilizwe labo; ewe, kwaye nobanina ababefunyanwa besala inkululeko yabo wayebulawa ngokukhawulezileyo ngokwasemthethweni.

11 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amathathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi; uMoronayi noPhahorani bebuyisele uxolo elizweni laseZarahemla, phakathi kwababo abantu, ekubeni bohlaya ngokufa phezu kwabo bonke ababenganyanisekanga kuyo injongo yenkululeko.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amathathu ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, uMoronayi ngoko nangoko wabangela okokuba imiphako ithunyelwe kanaanjalo nomkhosi wamadoda wawumele ukuthunyelwa kuHilamani, ukumncedisa ekulondolozeni loo mmandla welizwe.

13 Kanaanjalo wabangela okokuba umkhosi wamawaka amathandathu amadoda, ekunye nomyinge owoneleyo wokutya, ube uthunyelwe kuyo imikhosi kaLihayi noTiyani-kumi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba oku kwenzelwa ukunqabisa ilizwe ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi noPhahorani, beshiya iqela elikhulu lamadoda elizweni laseZarahemla, bamatsha kunye neqela elikhulu lamadoda bebhakisa ngakulo ilizwe likaNifayiha, bezimisele ukuwabhukuqa amaLeymenayithi kweso sixeko.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephihah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.



- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba babematsha bebhekisa ngakulo ilizwe, bathimba iqela elikhulu lamadoda amaLeymenayithi, baza bawabulala amaninzi awo, baza bayithabatha imiphako yawo nezikhali zawo zemfazwe.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kokuba bewathimbile, bawabangela ukuba angene kumngqophiso wokokuba angabe aphinde athabathe izikhali zawo zemfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 17 Kwaye bakuba bengenile kulo mnqophiso babathumela ukuba bahlale kunye nabantu baka-Amon, kwaye babebaninzi bemalunga namawaka amane ababengabulawanga.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bewathumele baqhubeka nokumatsha kwabo bebhekisa ngakulo ilizwe likaNifayiha. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba befikile kulo ilizwe likaNifayiha, baye bazigxumeka iintente zabo kumathafa aseNifayiha, akufuphi nesixeko sikaNifayiha.
- 19 Ngoku uMoronayi wayenqwenela okokuba amaLeymenayithi aphume alwe idabi ngokuchasene nabo, phezu kwamathafa; kodwa amaLeymenayithi, esazi ngenkalipho yabo egqithisileyo kakhulu, kwaye ebona nobukhulu bamanani abo, ke ngoko awazange alinge ukuza kuhlasela ngokuchasene nabo; ke ngoko awazange aphume ukuba alwe idabi ngaloo mini.
- 20 Kwaye kwakuba kufike ubusuku, uMoronayi wabheka phambili ebumnyameni bobusuku, waza waya phezu kodonga ukuhlola ukuba ingaba kukowuphi na ummandla wesixeko amaLeymenayithi aye amisa khona inkampu kunye nomkhosi wawo.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ayengasempuma, ngasekungeneni; kwaye onke ayelele. Kwaye ngoku uMoronayi wabuyela kumkhosi wakhe, waza wawubangela okokuba ulungise ngokungxama iintambo ezomeleleyo neeleli, ukuba zithotywe zisuke phezu kodonga ziye kumphakathi wodonga.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wabangela okokuba amadoda akhe amatshela phambili aze akhwele phezu kodonga, aze azithobe ezantsi angene kuloo mmandla wesixeko, ewe, kwanangasentshona, apho amaLeymenayithi ayengamisanga nkampu kunye nemikhosi yawo.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke baye bathotyelwa ezantsi bangena esixekweni ngobusuku, besebenzisa iintambo zabo ezomeleleyo neeleli zabo; njalo yakuba ifikile intsasa bonke babengaphakathi kweendonga zesixeko.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, akuba amaLeymenayithi evukile kwaye abona okokuba imikhosi kaMoronayi yayingaphakathi kweendonga, aye oyika ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba aye esaba aphuma ngendlela ephumayo.
- 25 Kwaye ngoku akuba uMoronayi ebona okokuba ayasaba phambi kwakhe, waye wawabangela amadoda akhe okokuba amatshela phambili ngokuchasene nawo, aza abulala amaninzi aza arhangqa amanye amaninzi, aza awathabathela ekubeni ngamabanjwa; yaza intsalela yawo yasabela kulo ilizwe likaMoronayi, elaye lisemideni ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 26 Njalo ke uMoronayi noPhahorani baluzuzwa ulawulo lwesixeko sikaNifayitha ngaphandle kokulahlekelwa nangumphefumlo omnye; kwaye yayimininzi eyamaLeymenayithi eyayibulewe.
- 27 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abaninzi bamaLeymenayithi babengamabanjwa babenqwenela ukuzimanya nabantu baka-Amon baze babe ngabantu abakhululekileyo.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kangangobuninzi babo ababenqwena, banikwa ngokweminqweno yabo.
- 29 Ke ngoko, onke amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi aye azimanya nabantu baka-Amon, baza baqalisa ukusebenza ngokugqithisileyo, belima umhlaba, bekhulisa lonke uhlobo lweenkoko, nempahla emfutshane, nemihlambi yeenkoko yalo lonke udidi; aza njalo ke amaNifayithi aphunyuzwa kumthwalo omkhulu; ewe, kangangokuba aphunyuzwa kuwo onke amabanjwa amaLeymenayithi.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

- 30 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi, emva kokuba ezuze ulawulo lwesixeko sikaNifayiha, ekubeni ebethabathe amabanjwa amaninzi, nto leyo eyaye yayithoba imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye nasekubeni ezuze kwakhona abaninzi bamaNifayithi ababethatyathelwe ekubeni ngamabanjwa, nto leyo eyaye yawomeleza umkhosi kaMoronayi ngokugqithisileyo; ke ngoko uMoronayi wabheka phambili esimka kulo ilizwe likaNifayiha esiya kulo ilizwe likaLihayi.
- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi ebona okokuba uMoronayi wayesiza kuhlasela ngokuchasene nawo, oyika kwakhona aza esaba phambi komkhosi kaMoronayi.
- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi nomkhosi wakhe baye bawasukela ukusuka kwisixeko ukuya kwisixeko, bade bahlangana noLihayi noTiyantikumi; aza amaLeymenayithi asaba kuLihayi noTiyantikumi, kwonokade ehle ngemida engaselunxwemeni lolwandle, ade afika kulo ilizwe likaMoronayi.
- 33 Kwaye imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi ayehlanganisene kunye, kangangokuba onke ayeliqela elinye elizweni likaMoronayi. Ngoku uAmoroni, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi, naye kanjalo wayekunye nawo.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi noLihayi noTiyantikumi baye bamisa inkampu kunye nemikhosi yabo macala onke emideni yelizwe likaMoronayi, kangangokuba amaLeymenayithi ayerhangqiwe emideni ngasentlango emazantsi, kwaye nasemideni ngasentlango empuma.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephiah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephiah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

- 35 Kwaye njalo ke baye bamisa inkampu ngobo busuku. Kuba qaphelani, amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi kanjalo ayediniwe ngenxa yobunzima bokumatsha; ke ngoko abazange bagqibe nakuliphina iqhinga ngobo busuku, ngaphandle koTiyantikumi; kuba wayecaphuke ngokugqithisileyo ngakuAmoroni, kangangokuba wayekhohlelwa okokuba uAmoroni, noAmalikhaya umntakwabo, babengunobangela wale mfazwe inkulu nengapheliyo phakathi kwabo namaLeymenayithi, nto leyo eyayingunobangela wemfazwe enkulu kangako nempalalo-gazi, ewe, nendlala enkulu kangako.
- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uTiyantikumi emsindweni wakhe waye wabheka phambili wangena kuyo inkampu yamaLeymenayithi, kwaye waye wazithoba ngaphaya kweendonga zesixeko. Waza wabheka phambili kunye nentambo, esuka kwindawo esiya kwenye, kangangokuba waye wamfumana ukumkani; kwaye waye wayiphosa intshuntshe kuye, eyathi yamhlaba kufuphi nentliziyo yakhe. Kodwa qaphelani ukumkani waye wazivusa izicaka zakhe phambi kokuba afe, kangangokuba zaye zamsukela uTiyantikumi, zaza zambulala.
- 37 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba bakuba uLihayi noMoronayi besazi okokuba uTiyantikumi wayefile baba lusizi ngokugqithisileyo; kuba qaphelani, ebeyindoda ebililwele ngenkalipho ilizwe layo, ewe, isihlobo senene kuyo inkululeko; kwaye wayenyamezele iimbandezelo ezibuhlungu ezininzi kakhulu ngokugqithisileyo. Kodwa qaphelani, wayefile, kwaye ehambe indlela yawo wonke umhlaba.
- 38 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi wamatshela phambili ngengomso, waza wagagana namaLeymenayithi, kangangokuba baye bawabulala ngenyhikityha enkulu; kwaye baye bawadudulela ngaphandle kwelizwe; kwaye aye asaba, kwanokude angaphindi abuye ngelo xesha ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 39 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amathathu ananye nyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi; kwaye njalo babe neemfazwe, nempalalo-gazi, nendlala, nembandezelo, kangangethuba leminyaka emininzi.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

40 Kwaye kwakukho ukubulala, neembambano, neempikiswano, nazo zonke iintlobo zobugwenxa phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi; nangona kunjalo ngenxa yamalungisa, ewe, ngenxa yemithandazo yamalungisa, basindiswa.

41 Kodwa qaphelani, ngenxa yobude obugqithisileyo kakhulu bemfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi abaninzi baba nokuqaqadeka, ngenxa yobude obugqithisileyo kakhulu bemfazwe; kwaye abaninzi babethambile ngenxa yeembandezelo zabo, kangangokuba baye bazithoba phambi koThixo, kwanasenzulwini yentobeko.

42 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba uMoronayi eyinqabisile loo mimandla yelizwe eyaye iyeyona ibhencekile kuwo amaLeymenayithi, yada yaba yomelele ngokwaneleyo, wabuyela kuso isixeko saseZarahemla; noHilamani kanjalo wabuyela kwindawo yelifa lakhe; kwaye kwakhona kwabakho uxolo olungakumbi olwamiselwayo phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi.

43 Kwaye uMoronayi walunikela ulawulo lwemikhosi yakhe ezandleni zonyana wakhe, ogama lakhe lalinguMoronayihah; waza waphumla kweyakhe indlu ukuze abe nokuyichitha intsalela yemihla yakhe eluxolweni.

44 Kwaye uPhahorani waye wabuyela kuso isihlalo-sokugweba sakhe; waza uHilamani wathabathela kuye kwakhona ukushumayela ebantwini ilizwi likaThixo; kuba ngenxa yeemfazwe ezininzi kangako neembambano kwaba yimfuneko okokuba kufanele kwenziwe ummiselo kwakhona ebandleni.

45 Ke ngoko, uHilamani nabazalwana bakhe babheka phambili, kwaye baye balivakalisa ilizwi likaThixo ngamandla amakhulu ekuqinisekiseni abantu abaninzi malunga nenkohlakalo yabo, nto leyo eyathi yababangela ukuba baguquke ezonweni zabo nokuba babhaptizelwe kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.

46 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye balimisela kwakhona ibandla likaThixo, kulo lonke ilizwe.

47 Ewe, kwaye imimiselo yenziwa malunga nomthetho. Kwaye abagwebi babo nabagwebi abaziintloko babo bonyulwa.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

48 Baza abantu bakaNifayi baqalisa ukuphumelela kwakhona elizweni, baza baqalisa ukuphinda-phindana kwaye baba nokomelela ngokugqithisileyo kwakhona elizweni. Baza baqalisa ukuba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo.

49 Kodwa nangona benobutyebi, okanye ukomelela kwabo, okanye ukuphumelela kwabo, babengaphakamelanga kwikratshi lamehlo abo; bengahambi kade nokuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wabo; kodwa baye bazithoba ngokugqithisileyo phambi kwayo.

50 Ewe, baye bazikhumbula izinto ezinkulu iNkosi ebenzele zona, okokuba yayibahlangule ekufeni, nasezimbophelelweni, nasezintolongweni, nakulo lonke uhlobo lweembandezelo, kwaye yayibahlangule baphuma ezandleni zeentshaba zabo.

51 Kwaye baye bathandaza kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo ngamaxesha onke, kangangokuba iNkosi yaye yabasikelela, ngokwelizwi layo, kangangokuba baye baba nokomelela kwaye baphumelela elizweni.

52 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba zonke ezi zinto zenziwa. Waza uHilamani wafa, kowamashumi amathathu anesihlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Alma 63

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amathathu anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, okokuba uShiblani wathabathela kuye ezo zinto zingcwele ezaziziswe kuHilamani nguAlma.
- 2 Kwaye wayeyindoda elungileyo, kwaye waye wahamba ethe tye phambi kukaThixo; kwaye waye wakuqaphela ukwenza okulungileyo ngamaxesha onke, ukuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi uThixo wakhe; kananjalo nomntakwabo wayesenza njalo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayi kanjalo wafa. Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amathathu anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi amathathu anesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwakukho igqiza elikhulu lamadoda, kwanokude abe enza amawaka amahlanu anamakhulu amane amadoda, ekunye nabafazi bawo nabantwana bawo, emka aphuma kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla angena kulo ilizwe elaye lingasemantla.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uHagoti, yena ke eyindoda ethanda ukwazi ngokugqithisileyo, ke ngoko wabheka phambili waza wazakhela inqanawa enkulu ngokugqithisileyo, kwimida yelizwe iNdyebo, ngakwilizwe iNkangala, waza wayindululela phambili yangena kulwandle olusentshona, ngakwintamo emxinwa eyayikhokelela kulo ilizwe elingasemantla.
- 6 Kwaye qaphelani, babebaninzi abamaNifayithi abaye bangena apho kuyo baza bahamba emanzini babheka phambili kunye nemiphako emininzi, kananjalo nabafazi abaninzi nabantwana; baza bathabatha indlela yabo ngasemantla. Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi amathathu anesixhenxe.
- 7 Kwaye kunyaka wamashumi amathathu anesibhozo, le ndoda yakha ezinye iinqanawe. Kwaye eyokuqala inqanawe yaye yabuya, kwaye abantu abanininzi ngokungakumbi baye bangena kuyo; baza nabo kanjalo bathabatha imiphako emininzi, baza bemka kwakhona ukuya kulo ilizwe elingasemantla.

## Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblón took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagóth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuzange kuphinde kuviwe nto ngabo. Kwaye sicinga okokuba beyela enzulwini yolwandle. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba enye inqanawe kanjalo yaye yahamba emanzini; kwaye apho yayakhona asiyazi.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kulo unyaka baba baninzi abantu ababheka phambili kulo ilizwe elingasentla. Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi amathathu anesibhozo.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amathathu anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, uShiblani wafa kanjalo, kwaye uKoreyantan wayebheke phambili kulo ilizwe elingasemantla ngenqanawe, ukusa imiphako kubantu ababebheke phambili bangena elizweni.
- 11 Ke ngoko kwaba yimfuneko kuShiblani ukuba anikezele ezo zinto zingcwele, ngaphambi kokufa kwakhe, phezu konyana kaHilamani, owayebizwa ngokuba nguHilamani, ebizwa ngegama likayise.
- 12 Ngoko qaphelani, yonke loo mikrolo yayikuHilamani yayibhaliwe yaza yathunyelwa phambili phakathi kwabantwana babantu kulo lonke ilizwe, ngaphandle kwezo nxalenye ebeziyalelwe nguAlma ukuba zingahanjiswa.
- 13 Nangona kunjalo, ezi zinto zaziya kugcinwa zingcwele, zize zinikezelwe ukuhla ukusuka kwesinye isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye; ke ngoko, kulo nyaka, zinikezelwe kuHilamani, ngaphambi kokufa kukaShiblani.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile kananjalo kulo nyaka okokuba kwakukho abakreki abathile ababebheke phambili kuwo amaLeymenayithi; kwaye bavuselwa kwakhona emsindweni ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 15 Kananjalo kwakulo nyaka behla kunye nentlaninge yomkhosi ukuza kulwa imfazwe ngokuchasene nabantu bakaMoronayiha, okanye ngokuchasene nomkhosi kaMoronayiha, awathi kuyo abethwa aza adudulelwa emva kwakhona kweyabo imihlaba, bebandezeleke yilahleko enkulu.
- 16 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amathathu anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblani died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblani to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblani.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.



17 Yaza njalo yaphela ingxelo ka-Alma, noHilamani  
unyana wakhe, kananjalo uShiblani,  
owayengunyana wakhe.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and  
Helaman his son, and also Shiblun, who was his son.

# INcwadi kaHilamani

*Ingxelo yamaNifayithi. Imfazwe zawo neembambano, neempikiswano zawo. Kananjalo neziprofetbo zabaprofeti abangcwele abaninzi, phambi kokuzakukaKrestu, ngokweembali zikaHilamani, owayengunyana kaHilamani, kananjalo ngokweembali zoonnyana bakhe, kwanokubla ukuya ekuzeni kukaKrestu. Kananjalo namaninzi amaLeymenayithi ayaguquka. Ingxelo yokuguquka kwaawo. Ingxelo yobulungisa bamaLeymenayithi, nenkoblakalo namasikizi amaNifayithi, ngokweembali kaHilamani noonyana bakhe, kwanokubla ukuya ekuzeni kukaKrestu, ebizwa ngokuba yincwadi kaHilamani, njalo-njalo.*

## Hilamani 1

- 1 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi amane unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, kwaqalisa ukubakho ubunzima obuxhalabisayo phakathi kwabantu bamaNifayithi.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, uPhahorani wafa, kwaye uhambe indlela yawo wonke umhlaba; ke ngoko kwaqalisa ukubakho iimbambano ezixhalabisayo ngokunxulumene nalowo ekufanele athathe isihlalo-sokugweba phakathi kwabazalwana, ababe ngoonyana bakaPhahorani.
- 3 Ngoku la ngamagama abo baye bakhuphisana ngesihlalo-sokugweba, abaye kanjalo babangela ukuba abantu bakhuphisane: Uphahorani, uPhayankayi, noPhakhyumenayi.
- 4 Ngoku aba ayingabo bonke oonyana bakaPhahorani (kuba babebaninzi), kodwa aba ngabo baye bakhuphisana ngesihlalo-sokugweba; ke ngoko, baye babangela iyantlukwano kathathu phakathi kwabantu.
- 5 Nangona kunjalo, kwenzekile okokuba uPhahorani wonyulwa ngezwi labantu ukuba abe ngumgwebi oyintloko nomphathi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

# The Book of Helaman

*An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.*

## Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uPhakhyumenayi, akubona okokuba akanako ukusizuzisa isihlalo-sokugweba, waye wazimanyanisa kunye nezwi labantu.
- 7 Kodwa qaphelani, uPhayankayi, naloo nxalenye yabantu ababengwenela okokuba angaba yirhuluneli yabo, waba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo; ke ngoko, wayesele eza kunyhwalazela abo bantu ukuba bavukele ngemvukelo ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba wayesele eza kukwenza oku, qaphelani, wathatyathwa, waza wavavanywa ngokwezwi labantu, waza wagwetyelwa ukufa; kuba wayevukele ngemvukelo kwaye wazama ukutshabalalisa inkululeko yabantu.
- 9 Ngoku bakuba abo bantu ababengwenela okokuba angaba yirhuluneli yabo bebona okokuba wayegwetyelwa ukufa, ke ngoko bacaphuka, kwaye qaphelani, bathumela omnye onguKhishkumeni, kwanakuso isihlalo-sokugweba sikaPhahorani, waza wambulala uPhahorani njengokuba wayehleli phezu kwesihlalo-sokugweba.
- 10 Waza wasukelwa zizicaka zikaPhahorani; kodwa qaphelani, wabaleka ngokukhawuleza okukhulu uKhishkumeni kangangokuba kwakungekho mntu wayenganako ukumfumana.
- 11 Waza waya kwabo babemthumile, baza bonke bangena kumnqophiso, ewe, befunga ngoMenzi wabo wanaphakade, okokuba abayi kuxelela nabani na okokuba uKhishkumeni wayembulele uPhahorani.
- 12 Ke ngoko, uKhishkumeni akazange aziwe phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, kuba wayezifihlile ngeli xesha lokokuba ebulale uPhahorani. Kwaye uKhishkumeni neqela lakhe, elalinqophisene kunye naye, baye baxubana phakathi kwabantu, ngohlobo lokokuba bonke bangabi nako ukufumaneka; kodwa kangangobuninzi babo abafunyanwayo bagwetyelwa ukufa.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

- 13 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, uPhakhyumenayi wonyulwa, ngokwezwi labantu, ukuba abe ngumgwebi oyintloko nerhuluneli phezu kwabantu, ukuba alawule endaweni yomntakwabo uPhahorani; kwaye kwakungokwelungelo lakhe. Kwaye konke oku kwenziwa kowamashumi amane unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi; kwaye waba nokuphela.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amane ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayehlangukunge kunye intlaninge yomkhosi wamadoda engenakubaleka, aza awaxhobisa ngamakrele, nangamakrelana abugwegwe nangezaphetha, nangeentolo, nangeentsimbi eziyingcina-ntloko, nangeentsimbi eziyingcina-sifuba, nangazo zonke iintlobo zamakhaka azo zonke iindidi.
- 15 Baza behla kwakhona ukuze babe nokulungiselela ukulwa idabi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi. Kwaye ayekhokelwa yindoda egama layo lalinguKoriyantamri; kwaye wayesisizukulwana saseZarahemla; kwaye wayengumkreki osuka phakathi kwamaNifayithi; kwaye wayeyindoda enomzimba nendoda enamandlakazi.
- 16 Ke ngoko, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi, ogama lakhe lalinguThubhalothi, owaye engunyana ka-Amoroni, ecinga okokuba uKoriyantamri, ekubeni eyindoda enamandlakazi, wayenako ukuma ngokuchasene namaNifayithi, ngokomelela kwakhe kanaanjalo nangobulumko bakhe obukhulu, kangangokuba ngokumthumela kwakhe phambili kwakufanele azuze ukongama phezu kwamaNifayithi—
- 17 Ke ngoko waye wawavuselela emsindweni, kwaye waye wahlangukunge kunye imikhosi yakhe, kwaye waye wonyula uKoriyantamri ukuba abe yinkokeli yawo, kwaye waye wawabangela okokuba amatshelwe ezantsi kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla ukuba alwe idabi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.

And now behold, Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngenxa yembambano eninzi kangako nobunzima obuninzi kangako kubo aburhulumente, kangangokuba babengabanga nako ukugcina abalindi aboneleyo kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla; kuba babecinge okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayengekhe alinge ukuza entliziyweni yemihlaba yabo ukuba ahlasele eso sixekokazi sikhulu iZarahemla.

19 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri waye wamatshela phambili entloko yomkhosi wakhe, yentlaninge waza wabahasela abemi besixeko, kwaye ukumatsha kwayo kwakukhawuleze ngesantya esikhulu ngokugqithisileyo kangangokuba akuzange kwabakho xesha lokokuba amaNifayithi ahlanganise kunye imikhosi yawo.

20 Ke ngoku uKoriyantamri waye wabanqunqela phantsi abalindi ngasesangweni lesixeko, waza wamatshela phambili kunye nawo wonke umkhosi wakhe wangena esixekweni, kwaye baye babulala wonke ubani owathi wabachasa, kangangokuba baye baluthabatha ulawulo lwaso sonke isixeko.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uPhakhyumenayi, owaye engumgwebi oyintloko, waye wasaba phambi kukaKoriyantamri, kwanokude aye kwiindonga zesixeko. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri waye wambethekisa eludongeni, kangangokuba wafa. Yaza njalo yaphela imihla kaPhakhyumenayi.

22 Kwaye ngoku akuba uKoriyantamri ebona okokuba wayenolawulo lwesixeko saseZarahemla, kwaye wabona okokuba amaNifayithi asabile phambi kwabo, kwaye abulewe, kwaye athatyathiwe, kwaye aphoswe entolongweni, nokokuba uzuze ulawulo lweyona nqaba yomeleleyo kulo lonke ilizwe, intliziyo yakhe yakhuthazeka kangangokuba wayesele eza kubheka phambili ngokuchasene nalo lonke ilizwe.

23 Kwaye ngoku akazange ahlale kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, kodwa waye wamatshela phambili kunye nomkhosi omkhulu, kwanangakuso isixeko seNdyebo; kuba yaye ikukuzimisela kwakhe ukuba abheke phambili aze acande indlela yakhe ngekrele, ukuze abe nokuzuza imimandla esemantla yelizwe.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

- 24 Kwaye, ecinga okokuba ukomelela kwawo kusebindini welizwe, ke ngoko waye wamatshela phambili, engawaniki xesha lokuzihlanganisa kunye ngaphandle nje kwamaqela amancinane; baza ngolu hlobo bawa phezu kwawo baza bawanqunqela phantsi emhlabeni.
- 25 Kodwa qaphelani, oku kumatsha kukaKoriyantamri enqumla embindini welizwe kwamnika uMoronayiha inzuzo enkulu phezu kwabo, nangona benenani elikhulu lamaNifayithi elibuleweyo.
- 26 Kuba qaphelani, uMoronayiha wayecinga okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayengekhe alinge ukungena embindini welizwe, kodwa nje abeya kuhlasela izixeko ezirhangqileyo emideni njengoko ebesenza ngaphambili; ke ngoko uMoronayiha wayebangele okokuba imikhosi yakhe eyomeleleyo kufanele igcine loo mimandla irhangqileyo ngasemideni.
- 27 Kodwa qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi ayengoyiki njengokomnqweno wakhe, kodwa ayezile angena embindini welizwe, kwaye ayithabatha intloko-dolophu eyaye isisixeko saseZarahemla, kwaye ayematsha ecanda kweyona mimandla eyintloko yelizwe ebulala abantu ngenyhikityha enkulu, kunye amadoda, abafazi, nabantwana, ethabatha ulawulo lwezixeko ezininzi nolweenqaba ezininzi.
- 28 Kodwa akuba uMoronayiha ekufumanisile oku, wathumela phambili ngoko nangoko uLihayi kunye nomkhosi ngapha nangapha ukuba ubaqhiwule ngaphambi kokuba beze kulo ilizwe iNdyebo.
- 29 Kwaye wenza njalo; waza wabaqhiwulela ngaphambi kokuba bafike kulo ilizwe iNdyebo, waza walwa nabo idabi, kangangokuba baqalisa ukuhlehla umva bebheka ngakulo ilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayiha waye wabaqhiwulela ekuhlehleni kwabo, kwaye waye walwa nabo idabi, kangangokuba laba lidabi elizele ligazi ngokugqithisileyo; ewe, abaninzi babebulewe, kwaye phakathi kwenani lababebulewe uKoriyantamri naye kanjalo wafunyanwa.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

- 31 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi ayengenako ukuhlehlela nakuliphi na icala, kungekuko emantla, kungekuko nangasemazantsi, kungekuko nangasempuma, kungekuko nangasentshona, kuba ayerhangqiwe kuwo onke amacala ngamaNifayithi.
- 32 Kwaye wenjenjalo ke uKoriyantamri ukuwaphosa amaLeymenayithi embindini wamaNifayithi, kangangokuba baba phantsi kolawulo lwamaNifayithi, kwaye yena ngokwakhe wabulawa, kwaye amaLeymenayithi aye azinikela ezandleni zamaNifayithi.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoronayihah aluthabathe ulawulo lwesixeko saseZarahemla kwakhona, waza wabangela okokuba amaLeymenayithi awayethatyathiwe abangamabanjwa aphume alishiye ilizwe ngoxolo.
- 34 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amane ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

## Hilamani 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amane anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, emva kokuba uMoronayiha elumisele kwakhona uxolo phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, qaphelani kwakungekho bani wokusizalisa isihlalo-sokugweba ; ke ngoko kwaqalisa ukubakho imbambano kwakhona phakathi kwabantu ngokunxulumene nalowo ufanele asizalise isihlalo-sokugweba.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uHilamani, owayengunyana kaHilamani, wonyulwa ukuba asizalise isihlalo-sokugweba, ngezwi labantu.
- 3 Kodwa qaphelani, uKhishkumeni, owayebulele uPhahorani, waye walalela ukumtshabalalisa noHilamani kanjalo; kwaye wayexhaswa liqela lakhe, elalingene kumnqophiso wokokuba kungabikho bani owaziyo ngenkohlakalo yakhe.
- 4 Kuba kwakukho uGadiyantoni othile, owaye elichule ngokugqithisileyo ngokwamazwi amaninzi, kananjalo ngobuqhinga bakhe, bokuqhubeka ngomsebenzi wakhe ofihlakeleyo wokubulala nowokuphanga; ke ngoko waba yinkokeli yeqela likaKhishkumeni.
- 5 Ke ngoko waye wabakhohlisa, kananjalo noKhishkumeni, ukuze ukuba bangambeka kuso isihlalo-sokugweba angabanika abo bangabeqela lakhe ukuba babekwe emandleni nasegunyeni phakathi kwabantu; ke ngoko uKhishkumeni wazama ukumtshabalalisa uHilamani.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba wayebheka phambili ngakuso isihlalo-sokugweba ukuba amtshabalalise uHilamani, qaphelani esinye sezicaka zikaHilamani, ekubeni besingaphandle ngobusuku, kwaye nasekubeni sizuze, ngokuzifihla, ulwazi ngaloo macebo abebekiwe leli qela lokuba kutshatyalaliswe uHilamani—
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sahlangana noKhishkumeni, saza samnika umqondiso; ke ngoko uKhishkumeni wasazisa injongo yomnqweno wakhe, enqwenela okokuba simkhokelele kuso isihlalo-sokugweba ukuze abe nokumbulala uHilamani.

## Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.



8 Kwaye sakuba isicaka sikaHilamani siyazile yonke intliziyo kaKishkumeni, nokuba kwaye kuyinjongo yakhe ukubulala, kananjalo nokokuba kwakuyinjongo yabo bonke abo babengabeqela lakhe ukuba babulale, kwaye nokuba baphange, nokuba bazuze amandla, (kwaye oku kwaye kulicebo labo elifihlakeleyo, neyelenqe labo) isicaka sikaHilamani sathi kuye uKishkumeni: Masibheke phambili kuso isihlalo-sokugweba.

9 Ngoku oku kwamkholisa uKishkumeni ngokugqithisileyo, kuba waye wacinga okokuba anganako ukuyizalisekisa injongo yakhe; kodwa qaphelani, isicaka sikaHilamani, njengokuba babebheka phambili kuso isihlalo-sokugweba, saye samhlaba uKishkumeni kwanasentliziyweni, ukuze awe afe ngaphandle kokuncwina. Saza sabaleka saza saxelela uHilamani zonke izinto esizibonileyo, kwaye nesivileyo, kwaye nesizenzileyo.

10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uHilamani waye wathumela ukuba kuthatyathwe eli qela labaphangi nababulali abafihlakeleyo, ukuze babe nokubulawa njengesigwebo ngokwasemthethweni.

11 Kodwa qaphelani, akuba uGadiyantoni efumanise okokuba uKishkumeni akabuyanga woyika okokuba hleze atshatyalaliswe; ke ngoko wabangela okokuba iqela lakhe malimlandele. Kwaye baye basaba baphuma kulo ilizwe, ngendlela efihlakeleyo, basinga entlango; kwaye njalo akuba uHilamani ethumela phambili ukuba bathatyathwe ababanga nakufumaneka naphina.

12 Kwaye okungakumbi ngalo Gadiyantoni kuya kuthethwa emva koku. Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amane anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

13 Kwaye qaphelani, ekupheleni kwale ncwadi niya kubona okokuba lo Gadiyantoni waye wakubonakalisa ukubhukuqa, ewe, phantse intshabalalo epheleleyo yabantu bakaNifayi.

14 Qaphelani andithethi ekupheleni kwencwadi kaHilamani, kodwa ndithetha ukuphela kwencwadi kaNifayi, endithabathe kuyo yonke ingxelo endithe ndayibhala.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

### Hilamani 3

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile kowamashumi amane anesithathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, akubangakho mbambano phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi ngaphandle nje kwekratshi elingephi elaye lisebandleni, elathi labangela iimpikiswano nje ezingephi phakathi kwabantu, imicimbi leyo eyathi yalungiswa ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amane anesithathu.
- 2 Kwaye akubangakho mbambano phakathi kwabantu kunyaka wamashumi amane anesine; kungabangakho mbambano ingako nakunyaka wamashumi amane anesihlanu.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amane anesithandathu, ewe, kwabakho imbambano eninzi neempikiswano ezininzi; ekwathi ngazo kwabakho abaninzi ngokugqithisileyo abemkayo baphuma kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, baza babheka phambili bangena kulo ilizwe elingasemantla ukuba balithabathe ilizwe njengelifa.
- 4 Kwaye baye bahamba umgama omde ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba bafika kuzo izithabazi ezibanzi zamanzi nemilambo emininzi.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye nokude banabele phambili kuyo yonke imimandla yelizwe, bangena nakuyiphi na imimandla engenziwanga nkangala kwaye engenamithi, ngenxa yabemi abaninzi abathi ngaphambili balithabatha ilizwe njengelifa.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku akukho mmandla welizwe owaba yinkangala, ngaphandle nje kokuba kube kungemithi; kodwa ngenxa yobukhulu bentshabalalo yabantu abathi ngaphambili balima ilizwe labizwa ngokuba yinkangala.
- 7 Kwaye kukho nje imithi embalwa phezu kobuso belizwe, nangona kunjalo abantu ababheka phambili baba ziingcali ngokugqithisileyo ekusebenzeni ngesamente; ke ngoko baye bakha izindlu zesamente, abathi bahlala kuzo.

### Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye baphindaphindana baza banaba, kwaye baye babheka phambili ukusuka kulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi ukuya kulo ilizwe elingasemantla, kwaye baye banaba kangokokuba baqalisa ukuwugquma wonke umhlaba, ukususela kulwandle olusemazantsi ukuya kulwandle olusemantla, ukususela kulwandle olusentshona ukuya kulwandle olusempuma.

9 Kwaye abantu ababekulo ilizwe elingasemantla babehlala kwiintente, nakuzo izindlu zesamente, kwaye baye bayekela nawuphina umthi onokuntshula phezu kobuso belizwe okokuba ukhule, ukuze ethubeni babe nokuba nemithi yokuba bakhe izindlu zabo, ewe, nezixeko zabo, neetempile zabo, nezindlu zabo zezikhungo, neendawo zabo zokubalekela, nazo zonke iintlobo zezakhiwo zabo.

10 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba imithi yayinqabe ngokugqithisileyo kulo ilizwe lasemantla, baye bayithumela phambili emininzi ngendlela yeenqanawa.

11 Kwaye njalo baye babanako ukunceda abantu kulo ilizwe elingasemantla okokuba babe nokwakha izixeko ezininzi, kunye ezomthi nezesamente.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakukho abaninzi babantu baka-Amon, ababe ngamaLeymenayithi ngokuzalwa, abaye kanjalo babheka phambili bangena kulo eli lizwe.

13 Kwaye ngoku zininzi iimbali ezigciniweyo ngeenkqubo zaba bantu, ngabaninzi baba bantu, ezichanekileyo kwaye ezininzi kakhulu, ezinxulumene nabo.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, inxalenye esisinye ekhulwini yeenkqubo zaba bantu, ewe, ingxelo yamaLeymenayithi kwaye neyamaNifayithi, neemfazwe zabo, neembambano, neempikiswano, nokushumayela kwabo, neziprofetho zabo, nokuthumela kwabo ngeenqanawa nokwakha kwabo iinqanawa, nokwakha kwabo iitempile, nokwakha izindlu zesikhungo neendawo zabo zokusabela, nobulungisa babo, nenkohlakalo yabo, nokubulala kwabo, nokuphanga kwabo, nokurhwaphiliza kwabo, nazo zonke iintlobo zamasikizi nohenyuzo, azinako ukuqulathwa kulo msebenzi.
- 15 Kodwa qaphelani, kukho iincwadi ezininzi neembali ezininzi zazo zonke iindidi, kwaye bezigcinwe ikakhulu ngamaNifayithi.
- 16 Kwaye bezithotyelwa ezantsi ukusuka kwesinye isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye ngamaNifayithi, kwanokude abe awele ekwaphuleni umthetho nasekubeni abe abulewe, arhwaphiliziwe, abe azingelwe, abe agxothelwe kude, abe abulawe, abe asasazwe phezu kobuso bomhlaba, aza axubana namaLeymenayithi ade awabasaphinda abangamaNifayithi, akhohlakala, kwaye bandlongo-ndlongo, kwaye abanoburhalarhume, ewe, kwanokude abe ngamaLeymenayithi.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku ndibuyela kwakhona kuyo ingxelo yam; ke ngoko, oko ndikuthethileyo kwenzeke emva kokuba kubekho iimbambano ezinkulu, neziphazamiso, neemfazwe, neempikiswano, phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayithi.
- 18 Owamashumi amane anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi waphela;
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakusekho imbambano enkulu elizweni, ewe, kwanakuwo owamashumi amane anesixhenxe unyaka, kananjalo nakuwo owamashumi amane anesibhozo unyaka.
- 20 Nangona kunjalo uHilamani waye wasizalisa isihlalo-sokugweba ngobulungisa nokulingana; ewe, wakuqwalasela ukuyigcina imimiselo, nezigwebo, nemiyalelo kaThixo; kwaye waye wenza oko kwakulungile emehlweni kaThixo rhoqo; kwaye waye wahamba kuzo iindlela zikayise, kangangokuba waye waphumelela elizweni.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robberies, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waba noonyana ababini. Wamnika oyena mdala igama likaNifayi, waza oyena mncinane, igama likaLihayi. Baza baqalisa ukukhulela eNkosini.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iimfazwe neembambano zaqalisa ukupheza, ngeqondo eliphantsi, phakathi kwabantu bamaNifayithi, kwisiphelo sokuphela kowamashumi amane anesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amane anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwabakho uxolo oluqhubekayo olwamiselwayo elizweni, konke ngaphandle nje kwamayelenqe afihlakeleyo awathi uGadiyantoni umphangi wawamisela kuloo mimandla imiwe ngokungakumbi yelizwe, eyaye ngelo xesha ingaziwa ngabo babekwintloko yoburhulumente; ke ngoko awazange atshatyalaliswa angabikho elizweni.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuwo lo nyaka kwabakho impumelelo enkulu ngokugqithisileyo ebandleni, kangangokuba kwakukho amawaka awathi azimanya nebandla kwaye abhaptizelwa enguqukweni.
- 25 Kwaye yabankulu kakhulu impumelelo ebandleni, kwaye zabaninzi iintsikelelo ezathululwayo phezu kwabantu, kangangokuba kwankqu nababingeleli abakhulu nootitshala nabo ngokwabo babekhwankqiseke ngaphaya komlinganiselo.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umsebenzi weNkosi waye waphumelela ngokubhaptizwa nokumanyaniswa kulo ibandla likaThixo imiphefumlo emininzi, ewe, kwanawo amashumi amawaka.
- 27 Njalo ke singabona okokuba iNkosi inenceba kubo bonke abaya kuthi, ngokunyaniseka kweentliziyo zabo, balibize igama layo elingcwele.
- 28 Ewe, njalo siyabona okokuba isango lezulu livuliwe kubo bonke, kwanakubo abo baya kukholelwa kulo igama likaYesu Krestu, onguNyana kaThixo.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, inasmuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

- 29 Ewe, siyabona okokuba nabanina onqwenayo anganako ukubambelela kulo ilizwi likaThixo, elikhawulezayo nelinamandla, eliya kwahlula kubini bonke ubuqhinga nezabatha namayelenqe omtyholi, kwaye likhokelele umntu kaKrestu kuyo indlela ecutheneyo nemxinwa awele loo msantsa wanaphakade wenkxwaleko elungiselelwe ukugubungela abakhohlakeleyo—
- 30 Kwaye ifikise imiphefumlo yabo, ewe, imiphefumlo yabo engenako ukufa, ekunene kukaThixo ebukumkanini bamazulu, ukuba ihlale phantsi kunye noAbraham, noIsake, kunye noYakobi, kwaye kunye nabo bonke oobawo bethu abangcwele, ukuze ingaze iphinde iphume.
- 31 Kwaye kulo nyaka kwabakho ukugcoba okuqhubekayo elizweni laseZarahemla, nakuzo zonke iingingqi ezirhangqileyo, kwanakulo lonke ilizwe elalilawulwa ngamaNifayithi.
- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho uxolo novuyo olukhulu ngokugqithisileyo kuyo intsalela yonyaka wamashumi amane anesithoba; ewe, kananjalo kwabakho uxolo oluqhubekayo novuyo olukhulu kowamashumi amahlanu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 33 Kwaye kowamashumi amahlanu ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi kanjalo kwabakho uxolo, ngaphandle nje kwekratshi elaqalisayo ukungena ebandleni—ingekuko kulo ibandla likaThixo, kodwa ezintliziyweni zabantu ababesithi bangabebandla likaThixo—
- 34 Kwaye babephakamele ekratshini, kwanokude batshutshise abaninzi babazalwana babo. Ngoku oku yayibububi obukhulu, obathi babangela abo bathobeke ngakumbi babantu ukuhlungiswa ngeentshutshiso ezinkulu, nokunyovula kwiimbandezelo ezininzi.
- 35 Nangona kunjalo baye bazila ukutya kwaye bathandaza rhoqo, kwaye baye baba nokomelela ngakumbi nangakumbi kuyo intobeko yabo, kwaye bazinza ngokuzinga elukholweni lwabo kuKrestu, ngokude imiphefumlo yabo izale luvuyo nentuthuzelo, ewe, kwanasekuhlanjululweni nokungcwaliswa kweentliziyo zabo, ungcwaliseko olo oluza ngenxa yokuyekela kwabo iintliziyo zabo kuThixo.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba unyaka wamashumi amahlanu anesibini waphela kanjalo ngoxolo, ngaphandle nje kwekratshi elikhulu ngokugqithisileyo elathi langena ezintliziyweni zabantu; kwaye kwakungenxa yobutyebi babo obuninzi ngokugqithisileyo nokuphumelela kwabo elizweni; kwaye laye lakhula kubo mihla le.

37 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amahlanu anesithathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, uHilamani wafa waza ongoyena mdala unyana wakhe uNifayi waqalisa ukulawula endaweni yakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wasizalisa isihlalo-sokugweba ngobulungisa nokulingana; ewe, waye wayigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye waye wahamba kuzo iindlela zikayise.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

## Hilamani 4

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka wamashumi amahlanu anesine kwabakho iimpikiswano ezininzi ebandleni, kanaanjalo kwabakho imbambano phakathi kwabantu, kangangokuba kwabakho impalalo-gazi eninzi.
- 2 Kwaye inxalenye eyayivukela yaye yagxothelwa ngaphandle kwelizwe, yaza yaya kuye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bazama ukuvuselela amaLeymenayithi ukuba alwe imfazwe ngokuchasene namaNifayithi; kodwa qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi aye oyika ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba awazange avume ukuwaphulaphula amazwi abo bakreqi.
- 4 Kodwa kwenzekile kowamashumi amahlanu anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwabakho abakreqi abanyukayo besuka kumaNifayithi besiya kumaLeymenayithi; kwaye baphumelela kwabanye abo ekubavuseleleni emsindweni ngokuchasene namaNifayithi; kwaye bonke kuloo nyaka babelungiselela imfazwe.
- 5 Kwaye kunyaka wamashumi amahlanu anesixhenxe baye behla ngokuchasene namaNifayithi ukuba balwe idabi, kwaye baye bawuqalisa umsebenzi wokubulala; ewe, kangangokuba kowamashumi amahlanu anesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi baye baphumelela ekuzuzeni ulawulo lwelizwe laseZarahemla; ewe, kanaanjalo yonke imihlaba, kwanokuya kuwo umhlaba owaye ukufuphi nelizwe iNdyebo.
- 6 Aza amaNifayithi nemikhosi kaMoronayihah adudulelwa kwanakulo ilizwe iNdyebo;
- 7 Kwaye apho aye azinqabisa ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, ukususela kulwandle olusentshonalanga, kwanokuya kolusempuma; olo ke ibiluhambo losuku olunye kumNifayithi, kumgca ababewunqabisile baza bamisa imikhosi yabo ukuba ikhusele ilizwe labo elisemantla.
- 8 Baza njalo abo bakreqi bamaNifayithi, ngoncedo lomkhosi oyintlaninge wamaLeymenayithi, bazuza yonke into anayo amaNifayithi eyaye ikulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi. Kwaye konke oku kwenziwa kwiminyaka yamashumi amahlanu anesibhozo nanesithoba yolawulo lwabagwebi.

## Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.



- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi amathandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, uMoronayiha waye waphumelela kunye nemikhosi yakhe ekuzuzeni imimandla emininzi yelizwe; ewe, bazizuka kwakhona izixeko ezininzi ezaye ziwele ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amathandathu ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi baye baphumelela ekuzuzeni kwakhona kwanesiqingatha sazo zonke izinto ezizezabo.
- 11 Ngoku le lahleko inkulu yamaNifayithi, nenyhikityha enkulu eyaye iphakathi kwawo, ngeyaye ingenzekanga ukuba kwakungengayo inkohlakalo yawo nesikizi lawo elaye liphakathi kwawo; ewe, kwaye laye liphakathi kwabo babezibiza ngokuba bangabebandla likaThixo.
- 12 Kwaye kwakungenxa yekratshi leentliziyo zawo, ngenxa yobutyebi bawo obugqithisileyo, ewe, kwakungenxa yengcinezelo yawo kumahlwempu, ekuvimba ukutya kwawo kubo abalambileyo, eyivimba impahla yawo kwabo baze, kwaye ebabetha abazalwana bawo abathobekileyo esidleleni, esenza intlekisa ngako oko kwakungcwele, ekhanyela umoya wesiprofetho nesityhilelo, ebulala, erhwaphiliza, exoka, esiba, esenza ukrexezo, enyukela kwiimbambano ezinkulu, kwaye ekreqela kude kulo ilizwe likaNifayi, phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi—
- 13 Kwaye ngenxa yoku inkohlakalo yawo enkulu, nokuzigwagwisa ngokomelela kwawo, ashiywa koko komelela kwawo; ke ngoko awazange aphumelele, kodwa abandezeleka kwaye abethwa, kwaye asukelwa phambi kwawo amaLeymenayithi, ade aphulukana nezinto ezizezawo phantse nayo yonke imihlaba yawo.
- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, uMoronayiha waye washumayela izinto ezininzi kubo abantu ngenxa yobugwenxa babo, kananjalo noNifayi noLihayi, babengoonyana bakaHilamani, baye bashumayela izinto ezininzi kubo abantu, ewe, kwaye baye baprofetha izinto ezininzi kubo ngokunxulumene nobugwenxa babo, noko kuya kuthi kubafikele ukuba babengaguquki kuzo izono zabo.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye baguquka, kwaye kangangokuba baye baguquka baye baqalisa ukuphumelela.
- 16 Kuba akuba uMoronayiha ebona okokuba baye baguquka waye wenza ilinge elinobungozi lokubakhokelela phambili besuka kwenye indawo besiya kwenye, kwaye nakwesinye isixeko besiya kwesinye, kwanokude babe basizuzile kwakhona isiqingatha esinye sezinto zabo nesiqingatha esinye semihlaba yabo.
- 17 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi amathandathu ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amathandathu anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, okokuba uMoronayiha akazange abenakho ukuphinda azuze amabango angakumbi phezu kolawulo lwamaLeymenayithi.
- 19 Ke ngoko baye bayiyeke injongo yabo yokuzuzisa intsalela yemihlaba yabo, kuba ayeyintlaninge kakhulu amaLeymenayithi kangangokuba akuzange kube nokwenzeka ukuba amaNifayithi azuze amandla angakumbi phezu kwawo; ke ngoko uMoronayiha waye wayisebenzisa yonke imikhosi yakhe ukugcina loo mimandla ebeyithabathile.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile, ngenxa yobukhulu bamanani amaLeymenayithi, amaNifayithi abanobungozi olukhulu lokokuba onganyelwe, kwaye baxushelwe phantsi, kwaye babulawe, kwaye batshatyalaliswe.
- 21 Ewe, baye baqalisa ukuzikhumbula iziprofetho zika-Alma, kananjalo namazwi kaMozaya; kwaye babona okokuba bebengabantu abantamo zilukhuni, nokokuba babeyithabathe njengento engento imiyalelo kaThixo;
- 22 Nokokuba babeyiguqule kwaye bayinyathela phantsi kweenyawo zabo imithetho kaMozaya, okanye oko iNkosi yayimiyalele ukuba akunikele kubo abantu; kwaye babona okokuba imithetho yabo yonakalisiwe, kwa nokokuba basuka babangabantu abakhohlakeleyo, kangangokuba babekhohlakele babede baba njengamaLeymenayithi.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

- 23 Kwaye ngenxa yobugwenxa babo ibandla laqalisa ukuya liphela; baza baqalisa ukungakholelwa kumoya wesiprofetho nakumoya wesityhilelo; kwaye izigwebo zikaThixo zaye zabathi ntsho ebusweni.
- 24 Kwaye babona okokuba basuke baba buthathaka, njengabazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi, nokokuba uMoya weNkosi awusabakhuseli; ewe, wawurhoxile kubo ngenxa yokokuba uMoya weNkosi awuhlali kuzo iitempile ezingengcwele—
- 25 Ke ngoko iNkosi yaye yapheza ukubakhusela ngaloo mandla ayo amangalisayo namandla angenamlinganiselo, kuba babewele kwimo yokungakholelwa nenkohlakalo eyoyikekayo; kwaye babona okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayeyintlaninge engaphezulu ngokugqithisileyo kunabo, kwaye ngaphandle kokuba bancamathele kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo kufuneka ngokungaphephekiyo batshabalale.
- 26 Kuba qaphelani, babona okokuba ukomelela kwamaLeymenayithi kwakulingana njengokwabo ukomelela, kwanendoda endodeni. Kwaye njalo babethe bawela kolu lwaphulo mthetho lukhulu; ewe, njalo babesuke baba buthathaka, ngenxa yolwaphulo mthetho lwabo, ngethuba leminyaka engephi.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

## Hilamani 5

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakulo nyaka, qaphelani, uNifayi wasinikezela isihlalo-sokugweba kwindoda egama layo lalinguSezoram.
- 2 Kuba njengoko imithetho yabo noorhulumente babo babemiselwe ngezwi labantu, kwaye abo bakhetha ububi babeyintlaninge ngaphezulu kunabo bakhetha okulungileyo, ke ngoko babevuthelwa intshabalalo, kuba imithetho yasuka yonakaliswa.
- 3 Ewe, kwaye oku kwakungaphelelanga apho; babengabantu abantamo zilukhuni, kangangokuba babengenako ukulawulwa ngomthetho nangabulungisa, ngaphandle kokuba kube kusekutshatyalalisweni kwabo.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi wasuka wadinwa ngenxa yobugwenxa babo; waza wasinikezela isihlalo-sokugweba, waza wakuthabathela kuye ukushumayela ilizwi likaThixo yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe, kanaanjalono nomntakwabo uLihayi, yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe;
- 5 Kuba bawakhumbula amazwi awathi uyise wabo uHilamani wawathetha kubo. Kwaye la ngamazwi awawathethayo:
- 6 Qaphelani, bonyana bam, ndinqwenela okokuba ningakhumbula ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo; kwaye ndinga ningawavakalisa ebantwini la mazwi. Qaphelani, ndininike amagama abazali bethu bokuqala ababephuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem; kwaye oku ndikwenze ukuze nakuba nikhumbula amagama enu nibe nokukhumbula bona; kwaye nakuba nibakhumbula nikhumbule imisebenzi yabo; kwaye nakuba nikhumbula imisebenzi yabo nibe nokwazi okokuba kungani kuthethiwe, kanaanjalono kubhaliwe, okokuba babelungile.
- 7 Ke ngoko, bonyana bam, ndinga ningenza oko kulungileyo, ukuze kube nokuthethwa ngani, kanaanjalono kubhalwe, kwananjengokuba bekuthethiwe kwaye kubhaliwe ngabo.

## Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.

8 Kwaye ngoku bonyana bam, qaphelani ndinokuthile nje okungakumbi endikunqwenelayo kuni, umnqweno lowo ongulo, wokokuba ningabi nakuzenza ezi zinto ukuze nibe nokuzigwagwisa, kodwa okokuba nibe nokuzenza ezi zinto ukuze niziqwebele ubutyebi ezulwini, ewe, obungunaphakade, kwaye obungatshitshiyoy; ewe, ukuze nibe nokufumana eso siphosixabisekileyo sobomi obungunaphakade, esinesizathu sokucinga ukuba sanikwa oobawo bethu.

9 Owu khumbulani, khumbulani, bonyana bam, amazwi awathi ukumkani uBhenjamin wawathetha kubo abantu bakhe; ewe, khumbulani okokuba ayikho enye indlela nalulobo anokuthi ngalo umntu asindiswe, kuphela kungalo igazi lentlawulelo likaYesu Krestu, oya kuza; ewe, khumbulani okokuba uyeza ukuze akhulule ihlabathi.

10 Kwaye khumbulani kanjalo amazwi awathi uAmyuleki wawathetha kuye uZiyezirom, kuso isixeko sika-Amoniha; kuba wathi kuye iNkosi ngokwenene kufanele ize ukuze ikhulule abantu bayo, kodwa ingezi ukuba ibakhulule besezonweni zabo, kodwa ukuba ibakhulule kuzo izono zabo.

11 Kwaye unamandla awanikiweyo avela kuBawo ukuze abakhulule ezonweni zabo ngenxa yenguquko; ke ngoko uthumele iingelosi zakhe ukuba zivakalise iindaba zeemeko zenguquko, ezisa emandleni oMkhululi, elusindisweni lwemiphefumlo yabo.

12 Kwaye ngoku, bonyana bam, khumbulani, khumbulani okokuba kuphezu kweliwa loMkhululi wethu, onguKrestu, uNyana kaThixo, apho kufuneka nakhele isiseko senu; ukuze xa umtyholi eya kuthumela phambili imimoya yakhe enamandlakazi, ewe, imibane yakhe njengesitshingitshane, ewe, xa sonke isichotho sakhe noqhwithela olunamandlakazi lubetha phezu kwenu, aluyi kuba namandla phezu kwenu ukunirhuqela ezantsi kumsantsa wenkxwaleko nesimbonono esingenasiphelo, ngenxa yeliwa elo enakhelwe phezu kwalo, elisisiseko esiqinisekileyo, isiseko apho ukuba abantu bakhela kuso abanako ukuwa.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba la ngamazwi awathi uHilamani wawafundisa koonyana bakhe; ewe, waye wabafundisa izinto ezininzi ezingabhalwanga, kanaanjalo nezinto ezininzi ezibhaliweyo.
- 14 Kwaye baye bawakhumbula amazwi akhe; kwaye ke ngoko babheka phambili, beyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, yokuba bafundise ilizwi likaThixo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi, beqalisa esixekweni iNdyebo;
- 15 Kwaye ukusuka apho ukuya phambili kuso isixeko saseGidi; kwaye ukusuka kwisixeko saseGidi ukuya kwisixeko saseMyuleki;
- 16 Kwaye kwanokude asuke kwesinye isixeko ukuya kwesinye, bade baba babheke phambili phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi ababekulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi; kwaye ukusuka apho bangena kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bashumayela ngamandla amakhulu, kangangokuba baye bakhwankqisa abaninzi babo bakreqi ababewelele ngaphaya besuka kumaNifayithi, kangangokuba beza ngaphambili kwaye baye bazivuma izono zabo baza babhaptizelwa enguqukweni, baza ngoko nangoko babuyela kumaNifayithi ukuzama ukulungisa kuwo okungalunganga abathi bakwenza.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi noLihayi baye bashumayela kuwo amaLeymenayithi ngamandla amakhulu negunya, kuba babenamandla negunya elalinikelwe kubo ukuze babe nokuthetha, kanaanjalo babenako bekunikiwe oko kwakufanele bakuthethe—
- 19 Ke ngoko baye bathetha ekukhwankqisekeni kwamaLeymenayithi, ekubaqinisekiseni, kangangokuba baba ngamawaka asibhozo abamaLeymenayithi ababekulo ilizwe laseZarahemla kwaye macala onke ababhaptizelwa enguqukweni, kwaye baqinisekiswa ngenkohlakalo yezithethe zooyise.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi noLihayi baye baqhubeka ukusuka apho ukuya kulo ilizwe likaNifayi.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bathatyathwa ngumkhosi wamaLeymenayithi baza baphoswa entolongweni; ewe, kwakuyo yona loo ntolongo ekwakuphoswe kuyo uAmon nabazalwana bakhe zizicaka zikaLimhayi.
- 22 Kwaye emva kokuba bephoswe entolongweni iintsuku ezininzi ngaphandle kokutya, qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi angena abheka phambili entolongweni ukuba abathabathe ukuze abe nokubabulala.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi noLihayi barhangqwa macala onke ngokungathi kungomlilo, kangangokude abazange balinge ukubeka nezandla zabo phezu kwabo ngoloyiko lokokuba hleze batshe. Nangona kunjalo uNifayi noLihayi babengatshanga; kwaye njengokuba babemi phakathi emlilweni babengatshanga.
- 24 Kwaye bakubona okokuba barhangqwe macala onke ngentsika yomlilo, nokokuba ibingabatshisi, iintliziyo zabo zaye zakhuthazeka.
- 25 Kuba babona okokuba amaLeymenayithi awangeke alinge ukuzibeka izandla zawo phezu kwabo; engenako nokulinga ukusondela kufuphi nabo, kodwa ema ngokungathi abethwe abazizimumu kukumangaliseka.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi noLihayi baye bema ngaphambili baza baqalisa ukuthetha nawo, besithi: Musani ukoyika, kuba qaphelani, nguThixo othe wanibonisa le nto ingummangaliso, into leyo ngayo ekuboniswa kuni okokuba aninako ukuzibeka izandla zenu kuthi ukuba nisibulale.
- 27 Kwaye qaphelani, bakuba bewathethile la mazwi, umhlaba washukuma ngokugqithisileyo, zaza iindonga zentolongo zashukuma ngokungathi zazisele ziza kudilikela emhlabeni; kodwa qaphelani, azizange ziwe. Kwaye qaphelani, abo babengaphakathi entolongweni babengamaLeymenayithi namaNifayithi awayengabakreqi.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bagutyungelwa ngelifu lobumnyama, kwaye uloyiko olubi nolunzulu lwafika phezu kwabo.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwafika ilizwi ngokungathi lalingentla kwelifu lobumnyama, lisithi: Guqukani, guqukani, kwaye ningabe niphinde nifune ukutshabalalisa izicaka zam endizithumileyo kuni ukuba zivakalise iindaba ezilungileyo.
- 30 Kwaye kwenzekile bakuliva eli lizwi, baza baqaphela okokuba lalingelilo ilizwi lendudumo, ingelilo nelizwi lengxokolo yesiphithiphithi, kodwa qaphelani, yaye ilizwi elizolileyo elithambe ngokugqibeleleyo, ngokungathi ibikukusebeza, kwaye laye lahlaba kwanakuwo ngqo umphefumlo—
- 31 Kwaye nangona linentobeko ilizwi, qaphelani, umhlaba washukuma ngokugqithisileyo, zaza iindonga zentolongo zangcangcazela kwakhona, ngokungathi yayisele iza kudilikela emhlabeni; kwaye qaphelani ilifu lobumnyama, elalibagubungele, alizange lichithakale—
- 32 Kwaye qaphelani ilizwi lafika kwakhona, lisithi: Guqukani, guqukani, kuba ubukumkani bamazulu busondele; kwaye musani ukufuna ukutshabalalisa izicaka zam. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umhlaba washukuma kwakhona, zaza iindonga zangcangcazela.
- 33 Kananjalo ilixa lesithathu ilizwi lafika kwakhona, kwaye laye lathetha nabo amazwi amangalisayo angenako ukuthethwa ngumntu; zaza iindonga zangcangcazela kwakhona, waza umhlaba washukuma ngokungathi uza kwahlukana kubini.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayengenako ukusaba ngenxa yelifu lobumnyama elathi lawagubungela; ewe, kananjalo ayengenakushukunyiswa ngenxa yoloyiko olwathi lwafika phezu kwawo.
- 35 Ngoku kwakukho omnye phakathi kwawo owaye engumNifayithi ngokuzalwa, owayekhe ngaxesha lithile wangowebandla likaThixo kodwa wakreqa kubo.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.



- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waguquka, kwaye qaphelani, wabona ngaphaya kwelifu lobumnyama ubuso booNifayi noLihayi; kwaye qaphelani, baye bakhazimla ngokugqithisileyo, kwananjengabo ubuso beengelosi. Kwaye wabona okokuba baye bawaphakamisela amehlo abo ezulwini; kwaye babekwimo yokungathi bancokola okanye baphakamisela amazwi abo kumntu othile ababembona.
- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba le ndoda yaye yadanduluka kuso isihlwele, ukuze sibe nokuguquka sikhangele. Kwaye qaphelani, kwabakho amandla anikwayo kuso wokokuba sibe nokujika size sijonge; kwaye saye sazibona iibuso zooNifayi noLihayi.
- 38 Saza sathi kuyo indoda: Qaphela, ingaba zonke ezi zinto zithetha ntoni, kwaye ngubani yena lo, la madoda ancokola naye?
- 39 Ngoku igama lendoda leyo lalinguAminadabhi. Waza uAminadabhi wathi kuso: Bancokola kunye neengelosi zikaThixo.
- 40 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi athi kuye: Siza kwenza ntoni, ukuze eli lifu lobumnyama libe nokususwa ekubeni lisigubungele?
- 41 Waza uAminadabhi wathi kuwo: Kufuneka niguquke, kwaye nidanduluke kulo ilizwi, kwanokude nibe niya kuba nokholo kuKrestu, owayefundisiwe kuni nguAlma, noAmyuleki, noZiyezirom; kwaye xa niya kukwenza oku, ilifu lobumnyama liya kususwa ekubeni linigubungele.
- 42 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bonke baqalisa ukudanduluka kulo ilizwi lalowo wayewushukumisile umhlaba; ewe, baye badanduluka kwanokude ilifu lobumnyama lachithakala.
- 43 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bephosa amehlo abo macala onke, baza babona okokuba ilifu lobumnyama lalichithakele ekubagubungeleni, qaphelani, babona okokuba barhangqwe macala onke, ewe wonke umntu, ngentsika yomlilo.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

44 Kwaye uNifayi noLihayi babesembindini wayo; ewe, ayerhangqiwe macala onke; ewe, ayengathi asembindini wedangatyelomlilo, kanti alizange libonzakalise, lingazange lizintumeke neendonga zentolongo; kwaye bazaliswa lolo vuyo lungathethekiyo kwaye bezele luzuko.

45 Kwaye qaphelani, uMoya oyiNgcwele kaThixo waye wehla uvela emazulwini, kwaye waye wangena ezintliziyweni zawo, kwaye ayezaliswe ngokungathi kungomlilo, kwaye ayenako ukuthetha phandle amazwi amangalisayo.

46 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwafika ilizwi kuwo, ewe, ilizwi elimnandi, ngokungathi kukusebeza, lisithi:

47 Uxolo, uxolo malube nani, ngenxa yokholo lwenu kowam oYintanda, owayekho ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi.

48 Kwaye ngoku, bakuba bekuvile oku bawaphosa phezulu amehlo abo ngokungathi angabona apho lalivela khona ilizwi; kwaye qaphelani, bawabona amazulu evuleka; zaza iingelosi zehlela ezantsi ziphuma emazulwini zaza zabalungiselela.

49 Kwaye kwakukho kangangamakhulu amathathu emiphefumlo eyabonayo kwaye yaziva ezi zinto; kwaye yayalelwa ukuba ibheke phambili kwaye ingamangaliswa, ingathandabuzi nokuthandabuza.

50 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba zaye zabheka phambili, zaze zabalungiselela abantu, bavakalisa kuzo zonke iingingqi ezirhangqileyo zonke izinto ababevile nabazibonileyo, kangangokuba inxalenye eninzi yamaLeymenayithi yaneliswa zizo, ngenxa yobukhulu bobungqina ababebufumene.

51 Kwaye kangangobuninzi bawo awayeqinisekisiwe aye azibeka phantsi izikhali zawo zemfazwe, kanaanjalonentiyo yawo nesithethe sooyise.

52 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye ayinikela kuwo amaNifayithi imihlaba eyaye iphantsi kolawulo lwawo.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

## Hilamani 6

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wakuba owamashumi amathandathu anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi uphelile, zonke ezi zinto zazenekile kwaye amaLeymenayithi asuka, inxalenye yawo engakumbi, yaba ngabantu abangamalungisa, kangangokuba ubulungisa bawo babodlula obo bamaNifayithi, ngenxa yokuzinza kwawo nokuqina kwawo elukholweni.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, babebaninzi abamaNifayithi ababesuke baqaqadeka kwaye beyimiqaqoba kwaye bekhohlakele ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba baye balikhanyela ilizwi likaThixo kwaye nako konke ukushunyayelwa nokuprofetha okwathi kwafika phakathi kwabo.
- 3 Nangona kunjalo, abantu bebandla baye baba novuyo olukhulu ngenxa yenguquko yamaLeymenayithi, ewe, ngenxa yebandla likaThixo, ebelimiselwe phakathi kwabo. Kwaye baye baba nobudlelane omnye komnye, kwaye bagcoba omnye komnye, kwaye baye baba novuyo olukhulu.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaninzi bamaLeymenayithi baye behlela ezantsi bangena kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye baye bavakalisa kubo abantu bamaNifayithi uhlobo lwenguquko yabo, kwaye baye bawabongozela kulo ukholo nenguquko.
- 5 Ewe, kwaye amaninzi aye ashumayela ngamandla amakhulu ngokugqithisileyo negunya, ekuthobeleni ezantsi abaninzi babo enzulwini yentobeko, ukuba babe ngabalandeli abathobekileyo bakaThixo neMvana.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaninzi bamaLeymenayithi baye bahamba bangena kulo ilizwe elingasemantla; kananjalo noNifayi noLihayi bahamba bangena kulo ilizwe elingasemantla, ukuya kushumayela kubo abantu. Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesithathu.
- 7 Kwaye qaphelani, kwabakho uxolo kulo lonke ilizwe, kangangokuba amaNifayithi aye ahamba aya nakuwuphina ummandla welizwe abawufunayo, nokokuba kuphakathi kwamaNifayithi okanye amaLeymenayithi.

## Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, in-  
somuch that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, insomuch that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, insomuch that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye nawo kanjalo aya naphina apho afuna khona, nokokuba kwakuphakathi kwamaLeymenayithi okanye phakathi kwamaNifayithi; kwaye njalo aye aba nokuhambelana okukhululekileyo omnye kunye nomnye, ukuthenga nokuthengisa, kwaye nokufumana inzuzo, ngokweminqweno yabo.

9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye basuka baba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo, kunye amaLeymenayithi namaNifayithi; kwaye baba nobuninzi obugqithileyo begolide nobesilivere, kwaye nobalo lonke uhlobo lwezinyithi ezixabisekileyo, kulo ilizwe elisemazantsi kwakunye nakulo ilizwe elisemantla.

10 Ngoku ilizwe elisemazantsi lalibizwa ngokuba yiLihayi, laza ilizwe elisemantla labizwa ngokuba yiMyuleki, elabizwa ngonyana kaZedekiya; kuba iNkosi yaye yamzisa uMyuleki kulo ilizwe elisemantla, yaza yazisa uLihayi kulo ilizwe elisemazantsi.

11 Kwaye qaphelani, kwakukho lonke uhlobo lwegolide kuwo omabini la mazwe, nolwesilivere, nesinyithi esikrwada yalo lonke udidi; kwaye kwakukho kananjalo abasebenzi abanobuchule, abathi basebenza lonke udidi lwesinyithi esikrwada kwaye aye asicolisisa; kwaye njalo baye basuka baba zizityebi.

12 Baye balima iinkozo ngobuninzi, kunye emantla kwaye nasemazantsi; kwaye baye bachuma ngokugqithisileyo, kunye emantla kwaye nasemazantsi. Kwaye baye baphinda-phindeka baza baba nokomelela ngokugqithisileyo elizweni. Kwaye baye bafuya imihlambi yempahla emfutshane emininzi nemihlambi yeenkomo, ewe, kwaye namathole atyetyisiweyo amaninzi.

13 Qaphelani abafazi babo baye basebenza nzima kwaye besoluka, kwaye baye benza lonke uhlobo lwelaphu, lwelineni eyolukwe ngokucekethekileyo nelaphu lwalo lonke udidi, ukuba bambese ubuze babo. Waza njalo unyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesine wegqitha ngoxolo.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

- 14 Kwaye ngonyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesihlanu baye kanjalo baba novuyo olukhulu noxolo, ewe, ukushumayela okuninzi neziprofetho ezininzi ngokunxulumene noko kwakusezayo. Waza njalo wegqitha unyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesihlanu.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi amathandathu anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, qaphelani, uSezoram wabulawa ngesandla esingaziwayo njengokuba wayehleli phezu kwesihlalo-sokugweba. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuwo lo nyaka, wathi unyana wakhe, owayenyulwe ngabantu esikhundleni sakhe, naye kanjalo wabulawa. Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesithandathu.
- 16 Kwaza ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesixhenxe abantu baqalisa ukukhulelwa kukukhohlakala okugqithisileyo kwakhona.
- 17 Kuba qaphelani, iNkosi yayibasikelele ixesha elide ngobutyebi behlabathi ukuze bangavuselelwa emsindweni, nakwiimfazwe, nakwimpalalo-gazi; ke ngoko baqalisa ukubeka iintliziyo zabo phezu kobutyebi babo; ewe, baqalisa ukuzama ukufumana inzuzo ukuze babe nokuphakanyiselwa phezulu omnye ngaphezulu kunomnye; ke ngoko baqalisa ukwenza ukubulala okusekhusini, nokuphanga nokurhwaphiliza, ukuze babe nokufumana inzuzo.
- 18 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, abo babulali nabarhwaphilizi babeliqela elalibunjwe nguKishkumeni noGadiyantoni. Kwaye ngoku kwaye kwenzeka okokuba baba baninzi, kwanaphakathi kwamaNifayithi, abeqela likaGadiyantoni. Kodwa qaphelani, babebaninzi ingakumbi phakathi kwexalenye ekhohlakele ngakumbi yamaLeymenayithi. Kwaye babebizwa ngokuba ngabaphangi bakaGadiyantoni nababulali.
- 19 Kwaye yayingabo abaye babulala umgwebi oyintloko uSezoram, nonyana wakhe, ngelixa babekuso isihlalo-sokugweba ; kwaye qaphelani, abazange bafunyanwa.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

20 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba amaLeymenayithi efumanisile okokuba kwakukho abaphangi phakathi kwawo abalusizi ngokugqithisileyo; kwaye aye asebenzisa iintlobo zonke ezisemandleni awo ukubatshabalalisa baphele phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

21 Kodwa qaphelani, uSathana waye wazivuselela iintliziyo zenxalenye engakumbi yamaNifayithi, kangangokuba aye amanyana kunye naloo maqela abaphangi, aza angena kuyo iminqophiso yawo nezifungo zawo, zokokuba aya kukhuselana kwaye alondolozane omnye nomnye nakuziphina iimeko ezinzima anokuthi abekwe kuzo, ukuze angeva bunzima ngokubulala kwawo, nokurhwaphiliza kwawo, nokuba kwawo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye baba nemiqondiso yabo, ewe, imiqondiso yabo eyimfihlelo namagama abo ayimfihlelo; kwaye oku ukuze babe nokumahlula umlingane ongene kuwo umnqophiso, ukuze nayiphina inkohlakalo umlingane wakhe anokuyenza angenzakaliswa ngumlingane wakhe, nangabo abo abangabeqela lakhe, abathabathe lo mnqophiso.

23 Baze njalo babe nokubulala, kwaye barhwaphilize, kwaye bebe, kwaye benze uhenyuzo nalo lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo, ephikisana nemithetho yelizwe kananjalo nemithetho yoThixo wabo.

24 Kwaye nobanina ababo abangabeqela labo abangayivezayo ehlabathini inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abo, bangacikidwa, ingekuko okwasemithethweni yelizwe, kodwa ngokwemithetho yenkohlakalo yabo, eyayinikwe nguGadiyantoni noKishkumeni.

25 Ngoku qaphelani, zizo ezi zifungo zifihlakeleyo neminqophiso awathi uAlma wayalela unyana wakhe ukuba zingabheki phambili ziye ehlabathini, hleze zibe yindlela yokubazisa ezantsi abantu entshabalalweni.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

- 26 Ngoku qaphelani, ezo zifungo zifihlakeleyo neminqophiso ayizange ize ngaphambili ize kuGadiyantoni isuka kuzo iimbali ezaye zinikelwe kuye uHilamani; kodwa qaphelani, zaye zafakwa entliziyweni kaGadiyantoni kwanguye laa mntu owathi walukuhla abazali bethu bokuqala ukuba bathabathe batye kuso isiqhamo esalelweyo—
- 27 Ewe, kwayena loo mntu owaye wenza iyelenqe kunye noKayin, lokokuba ukuba angambulala umntakwabo uAbheli ayinakwaziwa ehlabathini. Kwaye waye wenza iyelenqe kunye noKayin nabalandeli bakhe ukususela kwelo lixa ukubheka phambili.
- 28 Kananjalo ikwanguye loo mntu owathi wayifaka ezintliziyweni zabantu ukuba bakhe inkcochoyi ephakame ngokwaneleyo ukuze babe nokufikelela ezulwini. Kwaye yayikwanguye loo mntu owathi wakhokelela abantu ababesuka kuloo ncochoyi kulo eli lizwe; owathi wasasaza imisebenzi yobumnyama namasikizi phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, wada wabarhuqela abantu ezantsi kuyo intshabalalo epheleleyo, nakuso isihogo sanaphakade.
- 29 Ewe, ikwanguye loo mntu owathi wayifaka entliziyweni kaGadiyantoni into yokuba aqhubeke njalo nomsebenzi wobumnyama, nowokubulala okufihlakeleyo; kwaye uyizise ngaphambili ukususela ekuqalekeni komntu kwanokuhla ukuza kweli lixa.
- 30 Kwaye qaphelani, nguye oyimbangyi yaso sonke isono. Kwaye qaphelani, uthi aqhubeke ngayo imisebenzi yakhe yobumnyama nokubulala okufihlakeleyo, kwaye uthi awanikezele ukuhlela ezantsi amayelenqe abo, nezifungo zabo, neminqophiso yabo, namacebo enkohlakalo eyoyikekayo, ukusuka kuso isizukulwana ukuya kwesinye isizukulwana ngokokufikelela kwakhe phezu kweentliziyi zabantwana babantu.
- 31 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ufikelele kakhulu phezu kweentliziyi zamaNifayithi; ewe, kangangokuba asuke akhohlakala ngokugqithisileyo; ewe, inxalenye engakumbi yawo iphambukile endleleni yobulungisa, kwaye ayinyathele phantsi kweenyawo zawo imiyalelo kaThixo, aza aphambukela kwezawo iindlela, aza azakhela ezawo izithixo zegolide yawo nesilivere yawo.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

- 32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke obu bugwenxa baye beza kubo ngethuba leminyaka emininzi, kangangokuba inxalenye eninzi yabo yeza kubo kowamashumi amathandathu anesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 33 Kwaye baye bakhula kubugwenxa babo kunyaka wamashumi amathandathu anesibhozo kanjalo, kusizi olukhulu nesijwili kumalungisa.
- 34 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba amaNifayithi aye aqalisa ukunya ephelela ekungakholweni, kwaye akhula ngenkohlakalo namasikizi, ngeli lixa amaLeymenayithi eqalisa ukukhula ngokugqithisileyo elwazini ngoThixo wawo; ewe, aye aqalisa ukuyigcina imimiselo yakhe nemiyalelo, nokuhamba enyanisweni nokuthi mbo phambi kwakhe.
- 35 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba uMoya weNkosi waqalisa ukurhoxa kuwo amaNifayithi, ngenxa yenkohlakalo nokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zawo.
- 36 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba iNkosi yaye yaqalisa ukuwuthulula uMoya wayo phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, ngenxa yokukhaphukhaphu nokuzimisela kwawo ukuwakholelwa amazwi ayo.
- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye abazingela abaphangi bakaGadiyantoni; kwaye aye alishumayela ilizwi likaThixo phakathi kwalawo akhohlakele ngakumbi abo, kangangokuba eli qela labaphangi latshatyalaliswa ngokupheleleyo phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 38 Kwaye kwenzekile kwelinye icala, okokuba amaNifayithi aye abakhulisa kwaye abaxhasa, eqalisa kuloo nxalenye ikhohlakele ngakumbi yabo, bade basasazeka phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe lamaNifayithi, kwaye bahenda inxalenye engakumbi yamalungisa ade ehlela ekukholelweni kuyo imisebenzi yabo kwaye bathabatha kuzo izinto abaziphangileyo, nokuzimanyanisa kunye nabo ekubulaleni kwabo okufihlakeleyo namayelenqe abo.
- 39 Kwaye njalo baye bazuza ulawulo loburhulumente bodwa, kangangokuba baye babanyathela phantsi kweenyawo zabo kwaye bababetha kwaye babahlungisa kwaye babafulathela abangamahlwempu nabalulamileyo, nabalandeli abathobekileyo bakaThixo.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, inso-much that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.



40 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba babekwimo  
eyoyikekayo, kwaye bevuthelwa intshabalalo  
yanaphakade.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state,  
and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

41 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njalo waphela  
owamashumi amathandathu anesibhozo unyaka  
wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and  
eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people  
of Nephi.

*ISIPROFETHO SIKANIFAYI, UNYANA KAHILAMANI*  
 —*UThixo usongela abantu bakaNifayi okokuba uya kubavelela ngomsindo wakhe, ekutshatyalalisweni kwabo okupheleleyo ngaphandle kokuba baguquke kuyo inkohlakalo yabo. UThixo ubetha abantu bakaNifayi ngesifo esibulalayo; bayaguquka baze baguqukele kuye. USamuweli, umLeymenayithi, uprofetha kuwo amaNifayithi.*

## Hilamani 7

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile kowamashumi amathandathu anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bamaNifayithi, okokuba uNifayi unyana kaHilamani, wabuyela kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla esuka kulo ilizwe elingasemantla.
- 2 Kuba wayephumile phakathi kwabantu ababekulo ilizwe elingasemantla, waye washumayela ilizwi likaThixo kubo, kwaye waprofetha izinto ezininzi kubo;
- 3 Kwaye baye bawala onke amazwi akhe, kangangokuba akazange abenako ukuhlala phakathi kwabo, kodwa wabuyela kwakhona kulo ilizwe lakhe lokuzalwa.
- 4 Waza ebona abantu bekwimo eyoyikeka kangako yenkohlakalo, kwaye nabo baphangi bakaGadiyantoni bezalise izihlalo zokugweba —ekubeni bephange amandla negunya lelizwe; beyibekele bucala imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye bengalunganga nakancinane phambi kwakhe; bengenzi bulungisa kubo abantwana babantu;
- 5 Begweba abangamalungisa ngenxa yobulungisa bawo; beyeka abanetyala nabakhohlakeleyo bahambe ngaphandle kwesohlwayo ngenxa yemali yabo; kwaye ngaphezu koko babekwe esikhundleni kwintloko yoburhulumente, ukuba balawule kwaye benze ngokweentando zabo, ukuze babe nokufumana inzuzo nozuko lwehlabathi, kwaye, ngaphezu koko, ukuze babe nokwenza ukrexezo ngokulula ngakumbi, kwaye babe, kwaye babulale, kwaye benze ngokweentando zabo—

*THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—*  
*God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.*

## Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

- 6 Ngoku obu bugwenxa bukhulu bafika kumaNifayithi, ngethuba leminyaka engephi; waza uNifayi akukubona oku, intliziyo yakhe yadumba ngosizi ngaphakathi kwesifuba sakhe; kwaye wadanduluka ngentlungu yomphefumlo wakhe:
- 7 Owu, akwaba ndandifumene imihla yam ngemihla xa ubawo uNifayi waqala ukufika ephuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, akwaba ndandibe nokuvuya kunye naye kulo ilizwe lesithembiso; ke ngoko abantu bakhe babelula ukufikeleleka bezinzile ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, kwaye behamba kancinane ukukhokelwa ukuba benze ubugwenxa; kwaye babekhawuleza ekuphulaphuleni amazwi eNkosi—
- 8 Ewe, ukuba imihla yam yayinokuba kuloo mihla, ngoko umphefumlo wam ngewawunovuyo kubo ubulungisa babazalwana bam.
- 9 Kodwa qaphelani, ndithunyelwe kuba le yimihla yam, nokokuba umphefumlo wam uya kuzaliswa lusizi ngenxa yale nkohlakalo yabazalwana bam.
- 10 Kwaye qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kwakuphezu kwenkcochoyi, eyaye isemyezweni kaNifayi, eyaye ingakumendo wendlela eyayikhokelela kwimarike ephambili, eyaye ikuso isixeko saseZarahemla; ke ngoko, uNifayi wayequbude phezu kwenkcochoyi eyaye isemyezweni wakhe, nkcochoyi leyo eyaye kanjalo ikufuphi nesango lomyezo elalikhokelela kuhola wendlela.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho madoda athile agqithayo, aza ambona uNifayi njengokuba wayethululela umphefumlo wakhe kuThixo phezu kwenkcochoyi; aza abaleka aza axelela abantu oko ayekubonile, baza abantu beza kunye bezizihlwele ukuze babe nokwazi unobangela wenzilo enkulu kangaka ngenkohlakalo yabantu.
- 12 Kwaye ngoku, akuba uNifayi ephakamile wazibona izihlwele zabantu ababehlanganisene kunye.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wawuvula umlomo wakhe waza wathi kubo: Qaphelani, kungani nizihlanganise kunye? Ukuba ndibe nokunixeleva ngobugwenxa benu?

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

- 14 Ewe, ngenxa yokuba ndize phezu kwenkcochoyi yam ukuze ndibe nokuphalaza umphefumlo wam kuye uThixo wam, ngenxa yosizi lwentliziyo yam, olubangelwa bubugwenxa benu!
- 15 Kwaye ngenxa yenzila yam nesijwili nihlanganisene kunye, kwaye niyamangaliswa; ewe, kwaye ninemfuneko enkulu yokumangaliswa; ewe, nimele kukumangaliswa ngenxa yokokuba ninikezelwe, ukuze umtyholi abe nolawulo phezu kweentliziyo zenu.
- 16 Ewe, kungani na ukuba nivumele ukulukuhla kwalowo uzungula ukuyiphosa ezantsi ngamandla imiphefumlo yenu ezantsi kuyo inkxwaleko yanaphakade nosizi olungenasiphelo?
- 17 Owu guqukani, guqukani! Kungani na nisiya kufa? Buyani, nibuyele kuyo iNkosi uThixo wenu. Kungani na enilahlile nje?
- 18 Kungenxa yokuba niziqaqadekisile iintliziyo zenu; ewe, anivumi ukuliphulaphula ilizwi lomalusi olungileyo; ewe, nimcaphukisele ukuba abenomsindo ngokuchasene nani.
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani, endaweni yokunihlanganisa, ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka, qaphelani, uya kunisasazela kude ukuze nibeyinyama yezinja nezilo zasendle.
- 20 Owu, kwenzeka njani ukuba nimlibale uThixo wenu kanye ngalo mhla wokokuba enihlangule?
- 21 Kodwa qaphelani, kungokufumana inzuzo, ukuze nidunyiswe ngabantu, ewe, nokokuba nibe nokufumana igolide nesilivere. Kwaye nizibeke iintliziyo zenu phezu kobutyebi nezinto ezililize zeli hlabathi, enithi ngenxa yazo nibulale, kwaye nirhwaphilize, kwaye nibe, kwaye ningqine ubungqina bobuxoki ngokuchasene nommelwane wenu, kwaye nenze lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa.
- 22 Kwaye ngesi sizathu isiqalekiso siya kufika kuni ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka. Kuba ukuba anyi kuguquka, qaphelani, esi sixeko sikhulu, kananjalo nazo zonke ezo zixeko zikhulu zirhangqileyo, ezikulo ilizwe lolawulo lwethu, ziya kuhluthwa ukuze ningabinandawo kuzo; kuba qaphelani, iNkosi ayisayi kuninika komelela, njengokuba kude kube kalokunje yayenzile, ukuba nimelane ngokuchasene neentshaba zenu.

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

- 23 Kuba qaphelani, itsho njalo iNkosi: Andisayi kubonisa kwabo bakhohlakeleyo ngokomelela kwam, komnye ngaphezu komnye, ngaphandle kokuba kube kwabo baguqukayo ezonweni zabo, baze bawaphulaphule amazwi am. Ke ngoko ngoku, ndinga ningaqaphela, bazalwana bam, ukuba kuya kulunga ngakumbi kumaLeymenayithi kunakuni ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka.
- 24 Kuba qaphelani, angamalungisa ngakumbi kunani, kuba abenzanga sono ngokuchasene nolo lwazi lukhulu enithe nalufumana; ke ngoko iNkosi iya kuba nenceba kuwo; ewe, iya kuyolula imihla yawo kwaye iyandise imbewu yawo, kwanasekubeni niya kuba nitshatyalalisiwe ngokupheleleyo ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka.
- 25 Ewe, yeha kuni ngenxa yelo sikizi likhulu elithe lafika phakathi kwenu; kwaye nizimanyanise nalo, ewe, kwelo qela lifihlakeleyo elamiselwa nguGadiyantoni!
- 26 Ewe, isiqalekiso siya kufika kuni ngenxa yelo kratshi enithe nalivumela ukuba lingene ezintliziyweni zenu, elithe laniphakamisa ngaphaya kwaloo nto ilungileyo ngenxa yobutyebi benu obugqithisileyo kakhulu!
- 27 Ewe, isiqalekiso masibe kuni ngenxa yenkohlakalo yenu namasikizi!
- 28 Kwaye ngaphandle kokuba niguquke niya kutshabalala; ewe, kwanemihlaba yenu iya kuhluthwa kuni, kwaye niya kutshatyalaliswa nisuke kubuso bomhlaba.
- 29 Qaphelani ngoku, anditsho ukuthi ezi zinto ziya kubakho, ngokwam, ngenxa yokuba asikokwam ukuba ndazi ngazo ezi zinto; kodwa qaphelani, ndiyazi okokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani ngenxa yokokuba iNkosi uThixo izazisile kum, ke ngoko ndiyangqina okokuba ziya kubakho.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianton!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

## Hilamani 8

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uNifayi ewathethile la mazwi, qaphelani, kwakukho amadoda awayengabagwebi, awaye kanjalo engaweqela elifihlakeleyo likaGadiyantoni, kwaye ayenomsindo, aza adanduluka ngokuchasene naye, esithi kubo abantu: Kungani ningayithabathi le ndoda nize niyizise apha, ukuze ibe nokugwetywa ngokwetyala elo ilenzileyo?
- 2 Kungani niyibukele le ndoda kwaye niyiva isenyelisa ngokuchasene naba bantu nangokuchasene nomthetho wethu?
- 3 Kuba qaphelani, uNifayi wayethethe nabo malunga nokonakaliswa komthetho wabo; ewe, zininzi izinto uNifayi awazithethayo ezingenako ukubhalwa; kwaye ayikho into awayithethayo eyayiphikisana nemiya lelo kaThixo.
- 4 Kwaye abo bagwebi babenomsindo kuye ngenxa yokuba wathetha ngokucacileyo kubo malunga nemisebenzi yabo efihlakeleyo yobumnyama; nangona kunjalo, babengenakulinga ukubeka izandla zabo phezu kwakhe, kuba babesoyika abantu hleze badanduluke ngokuchasene nabo.
- 5 Ke ngoko baye badanduluka ebantwini, besithi: Kungani niyivumela le ndoda ukuba yenyelise ngokuchasene nathi? Kuba qaphelani uyabagweba bonke aba bantu, kwanasekutshatyalalisweni; ewe, kananjalo okuba nezi zixeko zethu zikhulu ziya kuhluthwa kuthi, nokuba asiyi kuba nandawo kuzo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku siyazi okokuba oku akunako ukwenzeka, kuba qaphelani, sinamandla, kwaye nezixeko zethu zikhulu, ke ngoko iintshaba zethu azinakuba nawo amandla phezu kwethu.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngalo ndlela baye babavuselela abantu emsindweni ngokuchasene noNifayi, baza bavuselela iimbambano phakathi kwabo; kuba kwakukho abathile abaye badanduluka: Yiyekeni le ndoda, kuba iyindoda elungileyo, kwaye ezo zinto izithethayo ngokwenene ziza kwenzeka ngaphandle kokuba siguquke;

## Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

- 8 Ewe, qaphelani, zonke izigwebo ziya kufika phezu kwethu athe wazingqina kuthi; kuba siyazi okokuba ungqine kakuhle kuthi malunga nobugwenxa bethu. Kwaye qaphelani buninzi, kwaye uzazi kakuhle zonke izinto eziya kuthi zisehlele njengokuba esazi nangobugwenxa bethu;
- 9 Ewe, kwaye qaphelani, ukuba ebengenguye umprofeti abengeze abenako ukungqina malunga nezo zinto.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abo bantu babezama ukutshabalalisa uNifayi banyanzeleka ngenxa yoloyiko lwabo, ukuba bangazibeki izandla zabo kuye; ke ngoko waqalisa kwakhona ukuthetha nabo, ebona okokuba uzuze ubabalo emehlweni abanye, kangangokuba intsalela yabo yaye yoyika.
- 11 Ke ngoko wanyanzeleka ukuba athethe ngokungakumbi kubo esithi: Qaphelani, bazalwana bam, anifundanga na okokuba uThixo wanika amandla kwindoda enye, kwanaye uMoses, ukuba abethe phezu kwamanzi oLwandle oluBomvu, aza ahlukana ngapha nangapha, kangangokuba amaSirayeli, awayengobawo bethu, awela phezu komhlaba owomileyo aza amanzi ayivalela imikhosi yamaYiputa aza ayiginya?
- 12 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ukuba uThixo wayinika le ndoda amandla anjalo, ke kungani niphikisana phakathi kwenu, kwaye nisithi akandinikanga mandla endinokuthi ngawo ndibe nokwazi malunga nezigwebo eziya kuza phezu kwenu ngaphandle kokuba niguquke?
- 13 Kodwa, qaphelani, anikhanyeli nje kuphela amazwi am, kodwa kanjalo nikhanyela onke amazwi athethiweyo ngoobawo, kanjalo namazwi athethwe yile ndoda, uMoses, owayenamandla amakhulu kangako awawanikwayo, ewe, amazwi athe wawathetha malunga nokuza kukaMesiya.
- 14 Ewe, akazange na anike ubungqina bokokuba uNyana kaThixo kumele afike? Kwaye njengoko wayiphakamisayo inyoka yobhedu entlango, kwangolo hlobo uya kuphakanyiswa lowo umele ukuza.

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

- 15 Kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abo baya kukhangela phezulu kuloo nyoka baya kuphila, ngokunjalo nangobuninzi babo abo baya kukhangela kuye uNyana kaThixo ngokholo, benomoya otyumkileyo, banokuphila, kwanakobo bomi bungunaphakade.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, uMoses akazange angqine yedwa ngezi zinto, kodwa kanjalo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele, ukususela kwimihla yakhe kwanokuya kuyo imihla ka-Abraham.
- 17 Ewe, kwaye qaphelani, uAbraham wabona ngokuza kwakhe, waza wazaliswa luvuyo kwaye wagcoba.
- 18 Ewe, kwaye qaphelani ndithi kuni, uAbraham asinguye yedwa owayesazi ngezi zinto, kodwa babe baninzi ngaphambi kwemihla ka-Abraham ababebiziwe ngohlobo lukaThixo; ewe, kwana ngokohlobo loNyana wakhe; kwaye oku ukuze kube nokubonakaliswa kubo abantu, iminyaka yamawaka amaninzi kakhulu phambi kokuza kwakhe, ukuze kwanenkululeko ize ifike kubo.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku ndinga ningazi, okokuba kwanokusuka kwimihla ka-Abraham babekhona abaprofeti abaninzi ababezingqinile ezi zinto; ewe, qaphelani, umprofeti uZenoshe waye wangqina ngenkalipho; nto leyo awathi wabulawa ngayo.
- 20 Kwaye qaphelani, uZenokhi kanjalo, kananjalo noEziyasi, kananjalo noIsaya noYeremiya, (uYeremiya ekwanguloo mprofeti owangqina ngentshabalalo yeYerusalem) kwaye ngoku siyazi okokuba iYerusalem yatshatyalaliswa ngokwamazwi kaYeremiya. Owu ke kungani ukuba uNyana kaThixo angezi, ngokwesiprofetho sakhe?
- 21 Kwaye ngoku uza kuphika okokuba iYerusalem yatshatyalaliswa? Uya kutsho okokuba oonyana bakaZedekiya abazange babulawe, bonke ngaphandle kokuba ibe nguMyuleki? Ewe, kwaye aniqapheli okokuba imbewu kaZedekiya inathi, kwaye babegxothiwe baphuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem? Kodwa qaphelani, akuphelelanga apha—

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—



- 22 Ubawo wethu uLihayi wagxothwa waphuma eYerusalem ngenxa yokokuba wangqina ngezi zinto. UNifayi kanjalo wangqina ngezi zinto, kananjalo phantse bonke oobawo bethu, kwanasekuhleni ukuza kweli lixa; ewe, bangqinile ngokuza kukaKrestu, kwaye babekhangele phambili, kwaye begcobile ngomhla wakhe osaya kuza.
- 23 Kwaye qaphelani, unguThixo, kwaye ukunye nabo, kwaye waye wazibonakalisa kubo, okokuba babekhululwe nguye; kwaye bamnika uzuko, ngenxa yoko kwakusezayo.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, ekubeni nizazi ezi zinto kwaye ningenako ukuzikhanyela ngaphandle kokuba niza kuxoka, ke ngoko kule nto nonile, kuba nizikhanyele zonke ezi zinto, nangona ninemiqondiso emininzi kangaka enithe nayifumana; ewe, nizifumene zonke izinto, kunye izinto ezisezulwini, kwaye nazo zonke izinto ezisemhlabeni, njengobungqina bokuba ziyinyani.
- 25 Kodwa qaphelani, niyikhanyele inyaniso, naza navukela ngokuchasene noThixo wenu ongwele; kwaye kwanangalo eli lixa, endaweni yokuzibekela ubutyebi ezulwini, apho kungekho nto yonakalayo, kwaye apho kungekho nto inokuza engacocekanga, nizifumbela phezu kwenu ingqumbo ngomhla womgwebo.
- 26 Ewe, kwanangalo eli lixa niyavuthwa, ngenxa yokubulala kwenu nokubula kwenu nenkohlakalo, ukwenzela intshabalalo yanaphakade; ewe, kwaye ngaphandle kokuba niyaguquka iya kuza kuni kwakamsinyane.
- 27 Ewe, qaphelani kwanakalokunje isemasangweni enu; ewe, hambani niye kuso isihlalo-sokugweba, nize niphengulule; kwaye qaphelani, umgwebi wenu ubulewe, kwaye ulele egazini lakhe; kwaye ubulewe ngumntakwabo, ofuna ukuhlala kuso isihlalo-sokugweba.
- 28 Kwaye qaphelani, bobabini bangabeqela lenu elifihlakeleyo, omseki walo unguGadiyantoni nongendawo ofuna ukutshabalalisa imiphefumlo yabantu.

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

## Hilamani 9

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uNifayi ewathethile la mazwi, amadoda athile awayephakathi kwabo abaleka aya kuso isihlalo-sokugweba ; ewe, kwabakho nkqu isihlanu sabo bayayo, baza bathi phakathi kwabo, njengoko babehamba:
- 2 Qaphelani, ngoku siza kuyazi ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba ingaba le ndoda ingumprofeti kwaye noThixo uyiya lelele ukuba iprofethe izinto ezimangalisa kangaka kuthi. Qaphelani, asikholelwa ukuba wenze njalo; ewe, asikholelwa okokuba ungumprofeti; nangona kunjalo, ukuba le nto ayithethileyo malunga nomgwebi oyintloko iyinyani, yokokuba ufile, ke siyakukholelwa okokuba namanye amazwi awathethileyo ayinyani.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babaleka ngamandlakazi abo, baza bangena ngaphakathi kuso isihlalo-sokugweba ; kwaye qaphelani, umgwebi oyintloko wayewele emhlabeni, kwaye wayelele egazini lakhe.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, bakukubona oku bakhwankqiseka ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba bawela emhlabeni; kuba babengawakholelwanga amazwi awayewathethile uNifayi malunga nomgwebi oyintloko.
- 5 Kodwa ngoku, bakubona bakholelwa, lwaza uloyiko lwabafikela hleze zonke izigwebo athe uNifayi wazithetha zize phezu kwabantu; ke ngoko baye bangangcazela, baza bawela emhlabeni.
- 6 Ngoku, ngoko-nangoko akuba umgwebi ebulewe —ekubeni ehlatywe ngumntakwabo onxibe isinxibo semfihlakalo, waza wasaba, zaza izicaka zabaleka zaza zaxelela abantu, besenza isikhalo sokubulala phakathi kwabo;
- 7 Kwaye qaphelani abantu baye bazihlanganisa kunye kuyo indawo yesihlalo sokugweba—kwaye qaphelani, ekukhwankqisekeni kwabo babona loo madoda mahlanu awayewele emhlabeni.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, abantu babengazi nto malunga nesihlwele esasihlanganisene kunye esitinyeni sikaNifayi; ke ngoko bathi phakathi kwabo: La madoda ngawo la abulele umgwebi, kwaye uThixo uwabethile ukuze angasabi kuthi.

## Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bawabamba, baza bawabophelela baza bawaphosa entolongweni. Kwaza kwabakho isibhengezo esithunyelwayo ngaphandle sokokuba umgwebi wayebulewe, nokokuba ababulali bathatyathiwe baza baphoswa entolongweni.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso abantu baye bazihlanganisa kunye ukuba balile kwaye bazile ukutya, ekungcwatyweni koyena uyintloko umgwebi owayebulewe.
- 11 Baza njalo kanjalo abo bagwebi ababesitiyeni sikaNifayi, baza baweve amazwi akhe, kanjalo nabo babehlanganisene kunye emngcwabeni.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babuza phakathi kwabantu, besithi: Baphi abahlanu ababethunyelwe ukubuzisa malunga nomgwebi oyintloko okokuba wayefile kusini na? Baza baphendula baza bathi: Malunga nesihlanu enithi nisithumele, asazi nto; kodwa kukho abahlanu abangababulali, esibaphose entolongweni.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abagwebi banqwenela okokuba mabaziswe; baza baziswa, kwaye qaphelani yayisisihlanu esasithunyelwe; kwaye qaphelani abagwebi babuza kubo ukuze bazi malunga nalo mba, baza babaxelela konke ababekwenzile, besithi:
- 14 Sabaleka saza safika kuyo indawo yesihlalo sokugweba, sakuba sibone zonke izinto nanjengokuba uNifayi wayengqinile, sakhwankqiseka kangangokuba sawela emhlabeni; kwaye xa savukayo ekukhwankqisekeni kwethu, qaphelani basiphosa entolongweni.
- 15 Ngoku, ngokufa kwale ndoda, asazi nto ngalowo uyenzileyo; sazi okungaka kuphela, sabaleka saza safika njengomnqweno wenu, kwaye qaphelani wayefile, ngokwamazwi kaNifayi.
- 16 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abagwebi baye bawuchaza umba lowo kubo abantu, baza badanduluka ngokuchasene noNifayi, besithi: Qaphelani, siyazi okokuba lo Nifayi kunokuba uvumelene namntu uthile ukuba abulale umgwebi, aze ke abe nokuyibhengeza kuthi, ukuze abe nokusiguqulela kuyo inkolo yakhe, ukuze abe nokuziphakamisa ukuba abe yindoda enamandlakazi, eyonyulwe nguThixo, nomprofeti.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

- 17 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, siza kuyiphanda le ndoda, kwaye iza kulivuma ityala layo ize isazise umbulali wokwenyani walo mgwebi.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isihlanu sakhululwa ngosuku lo mngcwabo. Nangona kunjalo, baye babakhalimela abagwebi kuwo amazwi ababewathethile ngokuchasene noNifayi, baza baxoxa kunye nabo ngabanye ngabanye, kangangokuba baye baboyisa.
- 19 Nangona kunjalo, babangela okokuba uNifayi makathatyathwe aze abotshelwe aze aziswe phambi kwesihlele, baza baqalisa ukumgocagoca ngeendlela ezahlukeneyo ukuze babe nokumphikisa, ukuze babe nokumtyhola ukuze abulawe—
- 20 Besithi kuye: Ukwiyelenqe; ngubani le ndoda ibuleleyo? Ngoku sixelele, kwaye ulivume ityala lakho, besithi; Qaphela nantsi imali; kanzalo siya kubusindisa ubomi bakho ukuba uya kusixelela, kwaye usivume isivumelwano osenzileyo kunye nale ndoda.
- 21 Kodwa uNifayi wathi kubo: Owu ziyathandini, nina ningolukanga entliziyweni, zimfamandini, nani bantundini bantamo zilukhuni, ingaba niyazi na ukuba kukangakanani iNkosi uThixo wenu iya kuniyekela ukuba niza kuqhubeka ngezi ndlela zenu zesono?
- 22 Owu nifanele ukuba niqalise ukubhomboloza kwaye nilile, ngenxa yentshabalalo enkulu eya kuthi ngeli lixa inilindele, ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka.
- 23 Qaphelani nithi ndivumelene kunye nendoda ukuba ibulale uSezoram, umgwebi wethu oyintloko. Kodwa qaphelani, ndithi kuni, oku kungenxa yokokuba ndingqine kuni ukuze nibe nokwazi malunga nale nto; ewe, kwanangobungqina kuni, bokokuba ndazi ngenkohlakalo namasikizi aphakathi kwenu.
- 24 Kwaye ngenxa yokokuba ndikwenzile oko, nithi ndivumelene kunye nendoda okokuba mayenze le nto; ewe, ngenxa yokuba ndinibonise lo mqondiso ninomsindo kum, kwaye nizungula ukutshabalalisa ubomi bam.

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Sezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

25 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, ndiza kunibonisa omnye umqondiso, kwaye ndibone ukuba niya kuthi ngale nto nifune ukutshabalalisa ubomi bam.

26 Qaphelani ndithi kuni: Hambani niye kuyo indlu kaSeyantam, ongumntakwabo Sezoram, nize nithi kuye—

27 Ingaba uNifayi, ozenza umprofeti, othi aprofethe ububi obungaka malunga naba bantu, uvumelene kunye nawe kusinina, enithe ngaso isivumelwano eso nabulala uSezoram, ongumntakwenu?

28 Kwaye qaphelani, uya kuthi kuni, Hayi.

29 Kwaye niya kuthi kuye: Ingaba umbulele kusinina umntakwenu?

30 Kwaye uya kuma ngoloyiko, aze angazazi oko makakuthethe. Kwaye qaphelani, uya kukhanyela kuni; kwaye uya kuzenza ngathi umangalisiwe; nangona kunjalo, uya kuthi kuni akanatyala.

31 Kodwa qaphelani, niya kumvavanya, kwaye niya kufumana igazi emibhinqweni yesambatho sakhe.

32 Kwaye nakuba nikubonile oku, niya kuthi: Livelya phi eli gazi? Asazi kusini na okokuba ligazi lomntakwenu?

33 Kwaye ke uya kuthi angangcazele, aze akhangeleke mpatsha-mpatsha, kwanokungathi ukufa kumfikele.

34 Kwaye ke niya kuthi: Ngenxa yolu loyiko nobu bumpatsha-mpatsha ethe yeza ebusweni bakho, qaphela, siyazi okokuba unetyala.

35 Kwaye ke luya kuthi uloyiko olukhulu kakhulu lumfikele; aze ke avume kuni, aze angabe aphinde akhanyele ukuba ukwenzile oku kubulala.

36 Aze ke athi kuni, mna, Nifayi, andazi nto malunga nalo mba ngaphandle kokuba ube unikelwe kum ngamandla kaThixo. Nize ke nazi okokuba ndiyindoda enyanisekileyo, nokokuba ndithunywe kuni nguThixo.

37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bahamba benza, kwananjengoko uNifayi watshoyo kubo. Kwaye qaphelani, amazwi lawo awathethayo ayeyinyani; kuba ngokwamazwi waye wakhanyela; kwanjalo ngokwamazwi waye wavuma.

38 Kwaye waziswa ukuba aqinisekise okokuba yena ngokwakhe wayengoyena mbulali, kangangokuba abahlanu bakhululwa, kwanjalo noNifayi.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Sezoram, and say unto him—

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Sezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

39 Kwaze kwakho abanye bamaNifayithi abakholelwayo kumazwi kaNifayi; kwaye kwakukho kanjalo, abakholelwayo ngenxa yobungqina besihlanu eso, kuba babeguqulwe ngeli lixa babesentolongweni.

40 Kwaye ngoku kwakukho abanye phakathi kwabantu, abathi uNifayi wayengumprofeti.

41 Kwaye kwakukho nabanye abathi: Qaphelani, unguthixo, kuba ngaphandle kokuba abe unguthixo ebengenako ukwazi ngazo zonke izinto. Kuba qaphelani, usixelele iingcinga zeentliziyo zethu, kananjalo usixelele izinto; kwaye ukwasizisele ukwazi ngombulali wokwenene womgwebi wethu oyintloko.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

## Hilamani 10

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwavuka ukwahlukana phakathi kwabantu, kangangokuba bohluhana ngapha nangapha baza bahamba iindlela zabo, bemshiya uNifayi yedwa, njengokuba wayemi embindini wabo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi wahamba indlela yakhe ebheka ngakweyakhe indlu, ecingisisa ngezinto ethe iNkosi yazibonisa kuye.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba wayecingisisa njalo—edakumbile kakhulu ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu bamaNifayithi, imisebenzi yabo efihlakeleyo yobumnyama, nokubulala kwabo, nokurhwaphiliza kwabo, nalo lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa—kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba wayecingisisa njalo entliziyweni yakhe, qaphelani, ilizwi lafika kuye lisithi:
- 4 Usikelelekile wena, Nifayi, ngezo zinto othe wazenza; kuba ndikuqaphele indlela othe ngokungadinwa walivakalisa ilizwi, endithe ndakunika lona, kubo aba bantu. Kwaye akuboyikanga, kwaye akufunanga kulondoloza obakho ubomi, kodwa ufune intando yam, nokugcina imiyalelo yam.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokokuba ukwenzile oku ngokungadinwa okungaka, qaphela, ndiya kukusikelela ngonaphakade; kwaye ndiya kukwenza ube namandlakazi ngokuthetha nangezenzo, elukholweni nangemisebenzi; ewe, kwanokokuba zonke izinto ziya kwenzeka kuwe ngokwamazwi akho, kuba akuyi kucela oko kuphikisana nentando yam.
- 6 Qaphela, wena unguNifayi kwaye mna ndinguThixo. Qaphela, ndiyibhengeza kuwe kubukho beengelosi zam, okokuba uya kuba namandla phezu kwaba bantu, kwaye uya kuwubetha umhlaba ngendlala, nangesifo esosulelayo esibulalayo, nentshabalalo, ngokwenkohlakalo yabo aba bantu.
- 7 Qaphela, ndikunika amandla okokuba nantonina oya kuyitywina emhlabeni iya kutywinwa ezulwini; kwaye nantoni na oya kuyikhulula emhlabeni iya kukhululwa nasezulwini; kwaye njalo uya kuba namandla phakathi kwaba bantu.

## Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

- 8 Kwaye njalo, ukuba uya kuthi kuyo le tempile iya kuqhekeka kubini, kuya kwenzeka.
- 9 Kwaye ukuba uya kuthi kule ntaba, Khahleleka phantsi uze ugude, kuya kwenzeka.
- 10 Kwaye qaphela, ukuba uya kuthi uThixo uya kubabetha aba bantu, kuya kwenzeka.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, ndiya kuyalela, okokuba uya kuhamba uze uvakalise kwaba bantu, okokuba itsho njalo iNkosi uThixo, onguSomandla: Ngaphandle kokuba niya guquka niya kubethwa, kwanokokude kuye entshabalalweni.
- 12 Kwaye qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba yakuba iNkosi iwathethile la mazwi kuye uNifayi, waye wema kwaye akaya kweyakhe indlu, kodwa waye wabuyela kuso isihlwele esasisasazeke ngapha nangapha phezu kobuso belizwe, waza waqalisa ukulivakalisa kuso ilizwi leNkosi elalithethiwe kuye, malunga nentshabalalo yabo ukuba babengaguquki.
- 13 Ngoku qaphelani, nangona babenaloo mmangaliso mkhulu awayethe wawenza uNifayi ngokubaxelela malunga nokufa komgwebi oyintloko, baye baziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo kwaye abawaphulaphula amazwi eNkosi.
- 14 Ke ngoko uNifayi waye walivakalisa kubo ilizwi leNkosi, esithi: Ngaphandle kokuba niguquke, itsho njalo iNkosi, niya kubethwa kude kuse entshabalalweni.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uNifayi elivakalisile kubo ilizwi, qaphelani, baye bathi gqolo ukuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo kwaye bengafuni ukuwaphulaphula amazwi akhe; ke ngoko baye bamnyelisa, kwaye bafuna ukuzibeka izandla zabo phezu kwakhe ukuze babe nokumphosa entolongweni.
- 16 Kodwa qaphelani, amandla kaThixo ayekunye naye, kwaye babengakwazi ukumthabatha ukuba bamphose entolongweni, kuba wayethatyathwe ngoMoya waza wakhatshelwa kude waphuma phakathi kwabo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njalo waye wabhaka phambili eseMoyeni, ukusuka kwisihlwele ukuya kwisihlwele, evakalisa ilizwi likaThixo, kwanokude abe ulivakalise kubo bonke, okanye ulithumele phambili phakathi kwabo bonke abantu.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.



18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abafunanga  
ukuwaphulaphula amazwi akhe; kwaye kwaqalisa  
ukubakho kweembambano, kangangokuba  
babohlukene bechasene bodwa baza baqalisa  
ukubulalana ngekrele.

19 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi asixhenxe  
ananye unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu  
kwabantu bakaNifayi.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken  
unto his words; and there began to be contentions,  
insomuch that they were divided against themselves  
and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the  
reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Hilamani 11

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile kowamashumi asixhenxe anesibini unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi okokuba iimbambano zaye zanda, kangangokuba kwabakho iimfazwe kulo lonke ilizwe phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi.
- 2 Kwaye yayileli qela lifihlakeleyo labaphangi elaye laqhubeka nalo msebenzi wentshabalalo nenkohlakalo. Kwaye le mfazwe yaye yaqhubeka wonke loo nyaka; kwaye kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesithathu yaye kanjalo yaqhubeka.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kulo nyaka uNifayi waye wadanduluka eNkosini, esithi:
- 4 Owu Nkosi, musa ukuyivumela into yokokuba aba bantu babe baya kutshatyalaliswa ngekrele; kodwa Owu Nkosi, endaweni yoko yeka kubekho indlala elizweni ukubavuselela kuyo inkumbulo yeNkosi uThixo wabo, kwaye mhlawumbi baya kuguquka kwaye baguqukele kuwe.
- 5 Kwaza kwenziwa njalo ke, ngokwamazwi kaNifayi. Kwaza kwabakho indlala enkulu phezu kwelizwe, phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi. Kwaye njalo kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesine yaye yaqhubeka indlala, waza umsebenzi wentshabalalo waphela ngekrele kodwa waba lusizi ngendlala.
- 6 Kwaye lo msebenzi wentshabalalo waye kanjalo waqhubeka kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesihlanu. Kuba umhlaba wabethwa ukuze wome, kwaye awuzange uvelise zinkozo ngexesha leenkozi; kwaye wonke umhlaba wawubethwe, kwanaphakathi kwamaLeymenayithi nanjengokuba kunjalo phakathi kwamaNifayithi, ukuze babethwe ukuze batshabalale ngamawaka kuloo mimandla ikhohlakele ngakumbi yelizwe.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu babona okokuba sele beza kutshabalala ngendlala, baza baqalisa ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wabo; baza baqalisa ukuwakhumbula amazwi kaNifayi.

## Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

- 8 Baza abantu baqalisa ukubacenga abagwebi babo abaziintloko neenkokeli zabo, ukuba maze bathi kuye uNifayi: Qaphela, siyazi okokuba ungumntu kaThixo, kwaye ke ngoko khala kuyo iNkosi uThixo wethu ukuze ayisuse kuthi le ndlala, hleze onke amazwi owathethileyo malunga nentshabalalo yethu azaliseke.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abagwebi baye batsho kuNifayi, ngokwamazwi lawo abenqwenelwa. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uNifayi ebona okokuba abantu baguqukile kwaye baye bazithoba ngeengubo ezirhwexayo, waye wakhala kwakhona kuyo iNkosi, esithi:
- 10 Owu Nkosi, qaphela aba bantu bayaguquka; kwaye balitshayebele kude iqela likaGadiyantoni alabikho phakathi kwabo kangangokuba lisuke laye liphela, kwaye liwaqhushekile amayelenqe alo afihlakeleyo emhlabeni.
- 11 Ngoku, Owu Nkosi, ngenxa yoku kuthobeka kwabo akungewubuyisi kusini na umsindo wakho, uze uwuvumele umsindo wakho waneliseke ekutshatyalalisweni kwaloo madoda akhohlakeleyo lawo osele uwatshabalalisile.
- 12 Owu Nkosi, akungewubuyisi umsindo wakho kusini na, ewe, umsindo wakho owoyikekayo, uze ubangele okokuba le ndlala ibe nokuphela kulo eli lizwe.
- 13 Owu Nkosi, ungandiphulaphula kusini na, uze ubangele okokuba kube nokwenziwa ngokwamazwi am, uze uthumele imvula phezu kobuso bomhlaba, ukuze ube nokuzisa iziqhamo zawo, neenkozo zawo ngexesha leenkozo.
- 14 Owu Nkosi, waye wawaphulaphula amazwi am xa ndandisithi, Makubekho indlala, ukuze intshabalalo yekrele ibe nokuphela; kwaye ndiyazi okokuba uya kubanako, kwanangalo eli lixa, ukuwaphulaphula amazwi am, kuba wathi: Ukuba aba bantu bayaguquka uya kubasindisa.
- 15 Ewe, Owu Nkosi, kwaye uyabona okokuba baguqukile, ngenxa yendlala nesifo esosulelayo esibulalayo nentshabalalo ethe yafika kubo.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

- 16 Kwaye ngoku, Owu Nkosi, ungawubuyisa umsindo wakho kusini na, uze ubazame kwakhona ukuba abangekukhonzi na? Kwaye ukuba kunjalo, Owu Nkosi, unako ukubasikelela ngokwamazwi akho owawuthe wawathetha.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesithandathu iNkosi yaye yawubuyisa umsindo wayo ebantwini, yaza yabangela okokuba imvula mayine phezu komhlaba, kangangokuba waye wazisa iziqhamo zawo ngexesha leziqhamo zawo. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wazisa iinkozo zawo ngexesha leenozo zawo.
- 18 Kwaye qaphelani, abantu baye bagcoba baza bamzukisa uThixo, baza bonke ubuso belizwe bazaliswa yimigcobo; baza abaphinda bafune ukumtshabalalisa uNifayi, kodwa baye bamthatha njengomprofeti omkhulu, nomntu kaThixo, onamandla amakhulu negunya alinikiweyo elivela kuThixo.
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani, uLihayi, umntakwabo, wayengasondelanga nakancinane emva kwakhe ngokwezinto eziphathelele nobulungisa.
- 20 Kwaye njalo kwaye kwenzeka okokuba abantu bakaNifayi baqalisa ukuphumelela kwakhona elizweni, baza baqalisa ukwakha iindawo zabo ezingamanxiwa, baza baqalisa ukuphinda-phindeka nokunaba, kwanokude babuzalise bonke ubuso belizwe, kunye ngasemantla nangasemazantsi, ukususela kulwandle olusentshona ukuya kulwandle olusempuma.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba unyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesithandathu waye waphela ngoxolo. Waze nonyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesixhenxe waqalisa ngoxolo; kwaye ibandla laye linabela kubo bonke ubuso belizwe; kwaye inxalenye engakumbi yabantu, kunye amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, baye baba ngabebandla; kwaye babanoxolo olugqitshisileyo kakhulu elizweni; waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesixhenxe.
- 22 Kananjalo baba noxolo kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesibhozo, ngaphandle nje kweembambano ezimbalwa malunga neengongoma zemfundiso ezimiswe ngabaprofeti.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

- 23 Kwaye kunyaka wamashumi asixhenxe anesithoba kwaqalisa ukubakho kokukrutha-kruthana okukhulu. Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi noLihayi, nabaninzi kubazalwana babo ababesazi malunga neengongoma eziyinyani zemfundiso, ekubeni benezityhilelo ezininzi imihla ngemihla, ke ngoko baye bashumayela ebantwini, kangangokuba baye baluphelisa ukrutha-kruthano lwabo kwakuwo loo nyaka.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi asibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi, kwabakho inani elithile labakreqi ababesuka kubantu bakaNifayi, ababethe kwiminyaka ethile ngaphambili bawelela kumaLeymenayithi, baza bazithabathela kubo igama lamaLeymenayithi, kananjalo nenani elithile elaliyinzala yokwenene yamaLeymenayithi, ekubeni livuselelwe emsindweni ngabo, okanye ngabo bakreqi, ke ngoko baqalisa imfazwe kunye nabazalwana babo.
- 25 Kwaye baye babulala baze barhwaphiliza; baze ke babuyela emva ezintabeni, nasentlango kwaye nakwiindawo ezifihlakeleyo, bezifihla ukuze bangabi nakufunyanwa, befumana mihla le isongezo kumanani abo, kangangokuba kwakukho abakreqi abawelela kubo.
- 26 Kwaza njalo ethubeni, ewe, kwanangalo ithuba leminyaka engephi, baba liqela elikhulu ngokugqithisileyo labaphangi; kwaye baye baphanda onke amayelenqe afihlakeleyo kaGadiyantoni; baza njalo baba ngabaphangi bakaGadiyantoni.
- 27 Ngoku qaphelani, aba baphangi baye benza umonakalo omntu, ewe, intshabalalo enkulu phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi, kananjalo phakathi kwabantu bamaLeymenayithi.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwaba yimfuneko okokuba kumele kupheliswe lo msebenzi wentshabalalo; ke ngoko bathumela umkhosi wamadoda awomeleleyo wangena entlango naphezu kweentaba ukufunisisa ngeli qela labaphangi, nokuba balitshabalalise.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

29 Kodwa qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba kwakuwo loo nyaka badudulelwa emva kwanakuwo amazwe abo. Waza njalo waphela owamashumi asibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi asibhozo ananye waye wabheka phambili kwakhona ngokuchasene neli qela labaphangi, waza watshabalalisa abaninzi; nabo kanjalo bavelelwa ngentshabalalo enkulu.

31 Kwaye kwakhona kwanyanzeleka ukuba babuye baphume entlango kwaye baphume nasezintabeni bangene kwawabo amazwe, ngenxa yobukhulu obugqithisileyo bamanani abo baphangi ababezalise iintaba nentlango.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waphela njalo lo nyaka. Kwaye abaphangi baye baqhubeka ngokwanda kwaye baba nokomelela, kangangokuba baya bayidela yonke imikhosi yamaNifayithi, kananjalo neyamaLeymenayithi; kwaye baye babangela ukuba uloyiko olukhulu lubafikele abantu phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe.

33 Ewe, kuba baye bayivelela yonke imimandla yelizwe, kwaye baye benza intshabalalo enkulu kubo; ewe, baye babulala abaninzi, baza babathuthela abanye ekuthinjweni bangena entlango, ewe, kwaye ngokungakumbi abafazi babo nabantwana babo.

34 Ngoku obu bubi buxhalabisaya, obathi bafikela abantu ngenxa yobugwenxa babo, baye babavuselela kwakhona kwinkumbulo yeNkosi uThixo wabo.

35 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi asibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.

36 Kwaye kunyaka wamashumi asibhozo anesibini baye baqalisa kwakhona ukuyilibala iNkosi uThixo wabo. Baza kunyaka wamashumi asibhozo anesithathu baqalisa baba nokomelela kubugwenxa. Kwaye kunyaka wamashumi asibhozo anesine abazange bazilungise iindlela zabo.

37 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka wamashumi asibhozo anesihlanu baye baba nokomelela ngakumbi nangakumbi kwikratshi labo, kwaye nakuyo inkohlakalo yabo; kwaye njalo babeyivuthelwa kwakhona intshabalalo.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inso-much that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

38 Waza njalo waphela unyaka wamashumi asibhozo  
anesihlanu.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

## Hilamani 12

- 1 Kwaye njalo sinokukuqaphela ukunganyaniseki, kananjalo nokungazinzi kweentliziyo zabantwana babantu; ewe, sinokubona okokuba iNkosi ngokulunga kwayo okukhulu okungenasiphelo ithi ibasikelele kwaye ibaphumelelise abo babeka ithemba labo kuyo.
- 2 Ewe, kwaye singabona ngexesha kanye xa ithi ibaphumelelise abantu bayo, ewe, ngokwanda kwamasimi abo, imihlambi yabo nemihlambi yabo yeenkomo, nakuyo igolide, nakuyo isilivere, nakuzo zonke iintlobo zezinto ezixabisekileyo zalo lonke udidini nomsebenzi wobugcisa; isindisa ubomi babo, kwaye ibahlangula baphume ezandleni zeentshaba zabo; izithambisa iintliziyo zeentshaba zabo ukuze zingabhengezi iimfazwe ngokuchasene nabo; ewe, kwaye lilonke, ibenzela zonke izinto zentlalontle nolonwabo lwabantu bayo; ewe, elo ke lilixa abathi baziqaqadekise iintliziyo zabo, kwaye bathi bayilibale iNkosi uThixo wabo, kwaye bathi bamnyathelele phantsi kweenyawo zabo oyiNgcwele—ewe, kwaye oku kungenxa yolonwabo lwabo, nokuphumelela kwabo kakhulu ngokugqithisileyo.
- 3 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba ngaphandle kokuba iNkosi ithi ibakhalimele abantu bayo ngeembandezelo ezininzi, ewe, ngaphandle kokuba ithi ibaxelele ngokufa kwaye nangoloyiko, kwaye nangendlala kwaye nangalo lonke uhlobo lwesifo esosulelayo esibulalayo, abasayi kuyikhumbula.
- 4 Owu obunjani ubuyatha, kwaye okunjani ukuba lilize, kwaye obunjani ububi, nobudemonirha, kwaye okunjani ukukhawuleza ukwenza ubugwenxa, kwaye okunjani ukuhamba kade ekwenzeni okulungileyo, kwabantwana babantu; ewe, okunjani ukukhawuleza ukuwaphulaphula amazwi akhe ongendawo, nokubeka iintliziyo zabo phezu kwezinto ezililize zehlabathi!

## Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!



- 5 Ewe, okunjani ukukhawuleza ukuphakamela ekratshini; ewe, okunjani ukukhawuleza ukuzigwagwisa, nokwenza lonke uhlobo lwaloo nto ibubugwenxa; kwaye okunjani ukuhamba kade kwabo ukuyikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wabo, nokunika indlebe kuzo iingcebiso zakhe, ewe, okunjani ukuhamba kade ekuhambeni ngeendlela zobulumko!
- 6 Qaphelani, abanqweleni okokuba iNkosi uThixo wabo, obadalileyo, angaphatha kwaye alawule phezu kwabo; nangona enokulunga okukhulunenceba ngakubo, bazithatha njengento engento iingcebiso zakhe, kwaye abanqweleni okokuba angaba ngumkhokeli wabo.
- 7 Owu okunjani ukuba kukhulu ukungabinto kwabantwana babantu; ewe, bakwa ngaphantsi nakunalo uthuli lomhlaba.
- 8 Kuba qaphelani, uthuli lomhlaba lushukumela ngapha nangapha, ekwahlukaniseni kubini, ngokuyalela kwakhe onamandlakazi noThixo ongunaphakade.
- 9 Ewe, qaphelani ngezwi lakhe zithi iinduli neentaba zingcangcazele kwaye zinyikime.
- 10 Kwaye ngamandla ezwi lakhe ziyaqhekeka, kwaye zigude, ewe, kwananjengentlambo.
- 11 Ewe, ngamandla ezwi lakhe uthi umhlaba wonke unyikime;
- 12 Ewe, ngamandla ezwi lakhe, zithi zigungqe iziseko, ewe kwanakuwo umbindi ngokwawo.
- 13 Ewe, kwaye ukuba uthi kuwo umhlaba—Shenxa—uyashenxa.
- 14 Ewe, ukuba uthi kuwo umhlaba—Uya kubuyela emva, ukuze uyolule imini kangange-eyure ezininzi—iyenzeka;
- 15 Kwaye njalo, ngokwezwi lakhe umhlaba ubuyela emva, kwaye kukhangeleke ebantwini ngokungathi ilanga lime ngxixi; ewe, kwaye qaphelani, oku kunjalo; kuba ngokwenene ngumhlaba oshenxayo kwaye asililo ilanga.
- 16 Kwaye qaphelani, kanjalo, ukuba uthi kuwo amanzi enzonzobila enkulu—Yomiswa—kwenzekile.
- 17 Qaphelani, ukuba uthi kule ntaba—Nyuka, kwaye uze ngapha kwaye uwele phezu kwesisa sixeko, ukuze singcwabeke—qaphelani kwenzekile.

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

18 Kwaye qaphelani, ukuba umntu ufihla ubutyebi emhlabeni, kwaye iNkosi iya kuthi—Mabuqalekiswe, ngenxa yobugwenxa bakhe lowo ubufihlileyo—qaphelani, buya kuqalekiswa.

19 Kwaye ukuba iNkosi iya kuthi—Mawuqalekiswe, ukuze kungabikho namntu uya kukufumana ukususela kweli lixa ukubheka phambili nangonaphakade—qaphelani, akukho mntu ukufumanayo ukuya phambili nangonaphakade.

20 Kwaye qaphelani, ukuba iNkosi iya kuthi emntwini—Ngenxa yobugwenxa bakho, uya kuqalekiswa ngonaphakade—kuya kwenzeka.

21 Kwaye ukuba iNkosi iya kuthi—Ngenxa yobugwenxa bakho uya kusikelwa ngaphandle kobuso bam—iya kubangela ukuba kubenjalo.

22 Kwaye yeha kulowo eya kukuthetha kuye oku, kuba kuya kubanjalo kulowo uya kwenza ubugwenxa, kwaye akanako ukusindiswa; ke ngoko, ngale njongo, ukuze abantu babe nokusindiswa, inguquko yathi yavakaliswa.

23 Ke ngoko, basikelelekile abo baya kuguquka baze baliphuphule ilizwi leNkosi uThixo wabo; kuba abangabo baya kusindiswa.

24 Kwaye wanga uThixo anganika, ngokugqibelela kwakhe okungenamlinganiselo, okokuba abantu babe nokuziswa kuyo inguquko nemisebenzi emihle, ukuze babe nokubuyiselwa kubabalo ngobabalo, ngokwemisebenzi yabo.

25 Kwaye ndinga bonke abantu bangaba nokusindiswa. Kodwa sifunda okokuba ngomhla omkhulu nowokugqibela kukho abanye abaya kukhutshelwa ngaphandle, ewe, abaya kukhutshelwa ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi;

26 Ewe, abaya kuthunyelwa kwimo yenkxwaleko engenasiphelo, kuzalisekiswa amazwi athi: Abo benze okulungileyo baya kuba nobomi obungunaphakade; kwaye abo benze okubi baya kuba nesigwebo sanaphakade. Kwaye kunjalo. Amen.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

*Isiprofetho sikaSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, esibhekisa kumaNifayithi.*

## Hilamani 13

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile kunyaka wamashumi asibhozo anesithandathu, amaNifayithi ayesahleli enkohlakalweni, ewe, enkohlakalweni enkulu, ngeli lixa amaLeymenayithi ayekuqwalasele ngqongqo ukuyigcina imiyalelo kaThixo, ngokomthetho kaMoses.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kulo nyaka kwabakho omnye onguSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, oweza elizweni laseZarahemla, waza waqalisa ukushumayela ebantwini. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye washumayela, iintsuku ezininzi, inguquko ebantwini, kwaye baye bamkhuphela ngaphandle, kwaye wayesele eza kubuyela elizweni lakhe.
- 3 Kodwa qaphelani, ilizwi leNkosi leza kuye, lokokuba makabuyele kwakhona, aze aprofethe ebantwini nangantoni na eya kufika entliziyweni yakhe.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bangamvumeli okokuba angene kuso isixeko; ke ngoko wahamba waza wakhwela phezu kodonga lwaso, kwaye wolula isandla sakhe waza wadanduluka ngelizwi elikhulu, waza waprofetha ebantwini nantoni na iNkosi ethe yayifaka entliziyweni yakhe.
- 5 Waza wathi kubo: Qaphelani, mna, Samuweli, umLeymenayithi, ndithetha amazwi eNkosi ethe yawafaka entliziyweni yam; kwaye qaphelani ufake entliziyweni yam ukuba ndithi kwaba bantu, ikrele lobulungisa lijinga phezu kwaba bantu; kwaye amakhulu amane eminyaka awayi kudlula ngaphandle kokuba eli krele lobulungisa liwele phezu kwaba bantu.
- 6 Ewe, aba bantu balindwe yintshabalalo enzima, kwaye ngokwenene iyeza kwaba bantu, kwaye akukho nto inokubasindisa aba bantu ngaphandle kokuba kube yinguquko nokholo eNkosini uYesu Krestu, oya kuza ngokwenene emhlabeni, uya kunyamezela izinto ezininzi kwaye uya kubulawa ngenxa yabantu bakhe.

*The prophecy of Samuel, the Lamanite, to the Nephites.*

## Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

- 7 Kwaye qaphelani, ingelosi yeNkosi ikuvakalisile kum, kwaye izise iindaba zovuyo emphefumleni wam. Kwaye qaphelani, ndithunyelwe kuni ukuza kunibhengezela kanjalo, ukuze nibe nokufumana iindaba zovuyo; kodwa qaphelani anifunanga kundamkela.
- 8 Ke ngoko, itsho njalo iNkosi: Ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabantu bamaNifayithi, ngaphandle kokuba baguquke ndiya kulisusa ilizwi lam kubo, kwaye ndiya kuwurhoxisa noMoya wam kubo, kwaye andiyi kuphinda ndibayekele, kwaye ndiya kuziguqula iintliziyo zabazalwana babo ngokuchasene nabo.
- 9 Kwaye iminyaka engamakhulu amane ayisayi kudlula ngaphambi kokuba ndibabangele ukuba babethwe; ewe, ndiya kubavelela ngekrele nendlala nangobhubhane.
- 10 Ewe, ndiya kubavelela ngomsindo wam owoyikekayo, kwaye kuya kubakho abo benzala yesizukulwana sesine abaya kuphila, abeentshaba zenu, ukuba babone ukutshabalala kwenu okupheleleyo; kwaye oku kuya kwenzeka ngokwenene ngaphandle kokuba niguquke, itsho iNkosi; kwaye abo besizukulwana sesine baya kuyivelela intshabalalo yenu.
- 11 Kodwa ukuba niya kuguquka nize nibuyele kuyo iNkosi uThixo wenu ndiya kuwususa umsindo wam, itsho iNkosi; ewe, itsho njalo iNkosi, basikelelekile abo baya kuguquka kwaye baguqukele kum, kodwa yeha lowo ungaguqukiyo.
- 12 Ewe, yeha kwesi sixeko sikhulu saseZarahemla; kuba qaphelani, kungenxa yabo bangamalungisa ukuba sisindiswe; ewe, yeha kwesi sixeko sikhulu, kuba ndiyaqiqa, itsho iNkosi, okokuba baninzi, ewe, kwanenxalenye eninzi yesi sixeko sikhulu, abaya kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene nam, itsho iNkosi.
- 13 Kodwa basikelelekile abo baya kuguquka, kuba bona ndiya kubasindisa. Kodwa qaphelani, ukuba bekungengawo amalungisa akwesi sixeko sikhulu, qaphelani, bendiya kubangela ukuba umlilo wehla uphuma ezulwini uze usitshabalalise.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

- 14 Kodwa qaphelani, kungenxa yamalungisa ukuze sisindiswe. Kodwa qaphelani, ilixa liyeza, itsho iNkosi, lokokuba xa niwakhuphela ngaphandle amalungisa phakathi kwenu, ke niya kuba nikuvuthelwe ukutshatyalaliswa; ewe, yeha kwesi sixeko sikhulu, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi akuso.
- 15 Ewe, kwaye yeha kwisixeko sikaGidiyon, ngenkohlakalo namasikizi akuso.
- 16 Ewe, kwaye yeha kuzo zonke izixeko ezikulo ilizwe elirhangqileyo, elilawulwa ngamaNifayithi, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi akuzo.
- 17 Kwaye qaphelani, isiqalekiso siya kuza phezu kwelizwe, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi, ngenxa yezenzo zabantu abaselizweni, ewe, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi abo.
- 18 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi, ewe, uThixo wethu omkhulu nowenene, okokuba nabani na oya kufihla ubutyebi emhlabeni akayi kuphinda abufumane, ngenxa yesiqalekiso esikhulu selizwe, ngaphandle kokuba abe ngumntu olilungisa kwaye oya kubufihlela eNkosini.
- 19 Kuba ndinga, itsho iNkosi, okokuba baya kubufihlela phezulu ubutyebi babo kum; kwaye baqalekisiwe abo bangabufihleli phezulu kum ubutyebi babo; kuba akukho namnye ubufihlayo ubutyebi bakhe kum ngaphandle kokuba kube ngamalungisa; kwaye lowo ongabufihleli phezulu ubutyebi bakhe kum, uqalekisiwe, kananjalo nobutyebi obo, kwaye akukho namnye oya kubukhulula ngenxa yesiqalekiso selizwe.
- 20 Kwaye uya kufika umhla wokokuba baya kubufihla ubutyebi babo, ngenxa yokuba bebeke iintliziyo zabo phezu kobutyebi; kwaye nangenxa yokokuba bebeke iintliziyo zabo phezu kobutyebi babo, kwaye baya kubufihla ubutyebi babo xa beya kusaba phambi kweentshaba zabo; ngenxa yokuba bengafuni ukubufihlela kum, baqalekisiwe bona kananjalo nobutyebi babo; kwaye ngaloo mhla baya bethwa, itsho iNkosi.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

- 21 Qaphelani nina, bantu besi sixeko sikhulu, kwaye niwaphulaphule amazwi am; ewe, phulaphulani amazwi athethwa yiNkosi; kuba qaphelani, ithi niqalekisiwe ngenxa yobutyebi benu, kananjalo nobutyebi benu buqalekisiwe ngenxa yokuba nibeke iintliziyo zenu kubo, kwaye ningawaphulaphulanga amazwi akhe lowo uninike bona.
- 22 Aniyikhumbuli iNkosi uThixo wenu ngezinto ethe yanisikelela ngazo, kodwa nisoloko nibukhumbula ubutyebi benu, hayi ukubulela iNkosi uThixo wenu ngabo; ewe, iintliziyo zenu azitsalekelanga eNkosini, kodwa zithi zikhukhumale likratshi elikhulu, ekuzigwagwiseni, nasekukhukhumaleni okukhulu, oomona, iingxabano, inzondo, iintshutshiso, nokubulala, nalo lonke uhlobo lobubi.
- 23 Kungeso sizathu iNkosi uThixo ibangele ukuba isiqalekiso sibe siya kwehlela phezu kweli lizwe, kananjalo naphezu kobutyebi benu, kwaye oku, kungenxa yobugwenxa benu.
- 24 Ewe, yeha kwaba bantu, ngenxa yeli lixa lifikileyo, lokokuba nithi nibakhuphele ngaphandle abaprofeti, kwaye nihlekise ngabo, kwaye nibaxulube ngamatye, kwaye nibabulale, kwaye nenze lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa kubo, kwananjengoko babesenza kwabamandulo.
- 25 Kwaye ngoku xa nithetha, nithi: Ukuba iintsuku imihla yethu yayingemihla yoobawo bethu bakudala, ngesingababulalanga abaprofeti; ngesingabaxulubanga ngamatye, kwaye sibakhuphele ngaphandle.
- 26 Qaphelani, nibabi ngakumbi kunabo; kuba njengoko iNkosi iphila, ukuba umprofeti uza phakathi kwenu aze avakalise kuni ilizwi leNkosi, elingqina ngezono zenu nobugwenxa, niba nomsindo kuye, nimgxothele ngaphandle kwaye nifune zonke iintlobo zeendlela zokumtshabalalisa; ewe, niya kuthi ungumprofeti wobuxoki, nokuba ungumoni, kwaye ungowomtyholi, ngenxa yokuba engqina okokuba izenzo zenu zibi.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

- 27 Kodwa qaphelani, ukuba umntu uya kuza phakathi kwenu aze athi: Yenzani oku, kwaye akukho bugwenxa; yenzani okuya aniyi kubandezeleka; ewe, uya kuthi: Landelani ikratshi leentliziyo zenu; ewe, landelani ikratshi lamehlo enu, kwaye nenze nantoni na enqwenelwa ziintliziyo zenu—kwaye ukuba umntu uya kuza phakathi kwenu aze athethe oku, niya kumamkela, kwaye nithi ungumprofeti.
- 28 Ewe, niya kumphakamisa, kwaye niya kumnika ezinye zezinto zenu; niya kumnika enye yegolide yenu, nenye yesilivere yenu, kwaye niya kumnxibisa izivatho ezinexabiso; ngenxa yokuba ethetha amazwi anyhwalazayo kuni, kwaye esithi konke kulungile, ke aniyi kufumana siphene kuye.
- 29 Owu, nina sizukulwana esikhohlakeleyo nesineenkani; nina sizwe siqaqadekileyo nesintamo zilukhuni, nicinga ukuba iNkosi iya kuniyekela kude kube nini? Ewe, kuya kude kube nini niziyekela ukuba nilawulwe ziinkokeli eziziziyatha nezizimfama? Ewe, kuya kude kube nini nikhetha ubumnyama endaweni yokukhanya?
- 30 Ewe, qaphelani, umsindo weNkosi sewuphenjiwe ngokuchasene nani; qaphelani, iliqalekise ilizwe ngenxa yobugwenxa benu.
- 31 Kwaye qaphelani, liyeza ilixa lokuba abuqalekise ubutyebi benu, ukuze bube mpunyululu, ukuze ningakwazi ukububamba; kwaye ngemihla yenu yobuhlwempu aninako ukubugcina.
- 32 Kwaye ngemihla yenu yobuhlwempu niya kukhala eNkosini; kwaye niya kukhalela ilize, kuba intshabalalo yenu iya kuba seyifikile phezu kwenu, kwaye nentshabalalo yenu iqinisekisiwe; kwaye ke niya kulila nigxwale ngaloo mhla, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi. Kwaye ke niya kulila, nize nithi:
- 33 Owu akwaba bendiguqukile, kwaye ndingababulalanga abaprofeti, kwaye ndingabaxulubanga ngamatye, kwaye ndingabakhuphelanga ngaphandle. Ewe, ngaloo mhla niya kuthi: Owu akwaba besiye sayikhumbula iNkosi uThixo wethu mhla yasipha ubutyebi bethu, kwaye ke ngebungasukanga baba mpunyululu ukuze siphulukane nabo; kuba qaphelani, ubutyebi bethu bumkile kuthi.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

34 Qaphelani, sibeka isixhobo sokusebenza apha kwaye ngengomso simkile; kwaye qaphelani, amakrele ethu athatyathiwe kuthi ngomhla besiwafunela idabi.

35 Ewe, siye sabufihla ubutyebi bethu kwaye buphuncukile kuthi, ngenxa yesiqalekiso selizwe.

36 Owu akwaba sasiguqukile ngomhla ilizwi leNkosi lifika kuthi; kuba qaphelani ilizwe liqalekisiwe, kwaye zonke izinto zaba mpunyululu, kwaye asinako ukuzibamba.

37 Qaphelani, singqongwe ziidimoni, ewe, sirhangqwe ngapha nangapha ziingelosi zalowo obefuna ukutshabalalisa imiphfumlo yethu. Qaphelani, ubugwenxa bethu bukhulu. Owu Nkosi, ingaba akungeke uwubuyise umsindo wakho kuthi kusinina? Kwaye le iya kuba yintetho yenu ngaloo mihla.

38 Kodwa qaphelani, imihla yobulingwa benu idlule; niye nawulibazisa umhla wosindiso lwenu nade nabasemva kwexesha ngokugqithise ngonaphakade, kwaye intshabalalo yenu iqinisekisiwe; ewe, kuba ngayo yonke imihla yobomi benu benifuna oko beningeke nikuzuze; kwaye nifune ulonwabo ngokwenza ubugwenxa, into leyo ephikisana nendalo yobo bulungisa obukwiNtloko yethu enkulu kwaye yaNaphakade.

39 Owu nina bantu belizwe, yanga ningaweve amazwi am! Kwaye ndithandazela okokuba umsindo weNkosi ubuyiswe kuni, nokokuba ningaguquka kwaye nisindiswe.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.



## Hilamani 14

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba uSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, waye waprofetha ezinye izinto ezinkulu ezininzi ngakumbi ezingenako ukubhalwa.
- 2 Kwaye qaphelani, wathi kubo: Qaphelani, ndininika umqondiso; kuba kuseza iminyaka emihlanu engakumbi, kwaye qaphelani, ngoko uyeza uNyana kaThixo ukuza kukhulula bonke abo baya kukholwa egameni lakhe.
- 3 Kwaye qaphelani, oku ndiza kuninika njengomqondiso ngelixa lokuza kwakhe; kuba qaphelani, kuya kubakho ukukhanya okukhulu ezulwini, kangangokuba ngobusuku obandulela ukuza kwakhe akuyi kubakho bumnyama, kangangokuba kuya kukhangeleka ebantwini ngokungathi kwakusemini.
- 4 Ke ngoko, kuya kubakho imini enye nobusuku nemini, ngokungathi bekuyimini enye kwaye bungekho ubusuku; kwaye oku kuya kuba njengomqondiso kuni; kuba niya kube nisazi ngokuvela kwelanga kananjalo nokutshona kwalo; ke ngoko baya kukwazi ngokuqinisekileyo ukuba kuya kubakho iimini ezimbini nobusuku; nangona kunjalo ubusuku abuyi kuba mnyama; kwaye buya kuba bubusuku obandulela ukuzalwa kwakhe.
- 5 Kwaye qaphelani, kuya kuvela inkwenkwezi entsha, eningazange nayibone enjengayo; kwaye oku kanjalo kuya kuba ngumqondiso kuni.
- 6 Kwaye qaphelani akuphelelanga apho, kuya kubakho imiqondiso nemimangaliso emininzi ezulwini.
- 7 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba nonke niya kukhwankqiswa, kwaye nimangaliswe, kangangokuba niya kuwela emhlabeni.
- 8 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba nabani na oya kukholwa kuNyana kaThixo, lowo uya kufumana ubomi obungunaphakade.
- 9 Kwaye qaphelani, iNkosi indiyalele njalo, ngengelosi yayo, ukuba mandize kwaye ndiyixelele nto kuni; ewe, iyalele okokuba mandiprofethe ezi zinto kuni; ewe, ithe kum: Danduluka kwaba bantu, guqukani niwulungise umendo weNkosi.

## Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

- 10 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokokuba ndingumLeymenayithi, kwaye ndithethe nani amazwi ethe iNkosi yandiyalela, nangenxa yokuba abelukhuni kuni, ninomsindo ngakum kwaye nifuna ukunditshabalalisa, kwaye nindigxothele ngaphandle ndiphume phakathi kwenu.
- 11 Kwaye niza kuwaphulaphula amazwi am, kuba, kungeso sizathu ndize phezu kwezi ndonga zesi sixeko, ukuze nibe kwaye nazi ngezigwebo zikaThixo ezinilindileyo ngenxa yobugwenxa benu, kananjalo kwakunye nokuze nazi ngeemfuneko zemigaqo yenguquko;
- 12 Kananjalo nokuze nibe nokwazi ngokuza kukaYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, uYise wezulu nomhlaba, uMdali wento zonke ukususela ekuqalekeni; kwaye nokuze nibe nokwazi ngemiqondiso yokuza kwakhe, ngenjongo yokokuba nikhohle egameni lakhe.
- 13 Kwaye ukuba niyakhohle egameni lakhe niya kuguquka kuzo zonke izono zenu, ukuze ngalo nibe nokufumana uxolelo lwazo ngemisebenzi yakhe emihle.
- 14 Kwaye qaphelani, kwakhona, ndininika omnye umqondiso, ewe, umqondiso wokufa kwakhe.
- 15 Kuba qaphelani, ngokuqinisekileyo kufuneka ukuba afe ukuze usindiso lufike; ewe, kufanele kwaye kuyimfuneko ukuba afe, ukuze kwenzekwe uvuko lwabafileyo, ukuze ngalo abantu babenako ukuziswa ebusweni beNkosi.
- 16 Ewe, qaphelani, oku kufa kuzisa uvuko, kwaye kukhulula lonke uluntu ekufeni kokuqala—okwa kufa kwasemoyeni; kuba lonke uluntu, ngokuwa kuka-Adam belusikelwe ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi, luthatyathwa njengabafileyo, kunye ngokwezinto zenyama kwaye nakuzo izinto zomoya.
- 17 Kodwa qaphelani, uvuko lukaKrestu lukhulula uluntu, ewe, kwanalo lonke uluntu, kwaye lubabuyisela ebusweni beNkosi.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

18 Ewe, kwaye kuzisa imfuneko yokuguquka, ukuze nabani na oguqukayo kwaye nalowo akayi kugawulelwa phantsi aze aphoswe emlilweni; kodwa nabani na ongaguqukiyo ugawulelwa phantsi aze aphoswe emlilweni; kwaye kuze kwakhona ukufa komoya phezu kwabo, ewe, ukufa kwesibini, kuba basikelwa ngaphandle kwakhona ngokwezinto eziphathelene nobulungisa.

19 Ke ngoko guqukani, guqukani, hleze ngokuba nizazi ezi zinto nize ningazenzi niya kuziyekela ukuba nize phantsi kwesigwebo, kwaye nithotyelwe ezantsi kokukufa kwesibini.

20 Kodwa qaphelani, njengoko senditshilo kuni malunga nomnye umqondiso, umqondiso wokufa kwakhe, qaphelani, ngaloo mhla xa eya kunyamezela ukufa ilanga liya kuba mnyama lingafuni ukunika ukukhanya kwalo; kananjalo nenyanga neenkwenkwezi; kwaye akuyi kubakho kukhanya phezu kobuso beli lizwe, kwanokususela kwilixa lokokuba esiya kunyamezela ukufa, kangangesithuba seentsuku ezintathu, ukuya kwelo lixa lokokuba ngexesha eya kuvuka kwakhona kwelabafileyo.

21 Ewe, ngelixa lokokuba eya kunikezela umphefumlo kuya kubakho iindudumo nemibane kangangesithuba seeyure ezininzi, kwaye umhlaba uya kunyikima kwaye ungcangcazele; aze amatye aphezu kobuso balo mhlaba, ekunye ngaphezu komhlaba kwaye nangaphantsi, eniwaziyo ukuba ngeli lixa aluqilima, okanye inxalenye engakumbi yawo isisithabazi esinye esiliqilima, aya kuqhekeka.

22 Ewe, aya kuqhekeka kubini, kwaye emva koko aya kufunyanwa esoloko enjalo eziingcamba, kwaye eziintanda, kwaye ephuke aziingceba phezu kobuso bawo wonke umhlaba, ewe, kunye phezu komhlaba kwaye nangaphantsi.

23 Kwaye qaphelani, kuya kubakho izaqhwithi ezoyikekayo, kwaye kuya kubakho iintaba ezininzi eziwiswe phantsi, zifane nentlambo, kwaye kuya kubakho iindawo ezininzi ngoku ezibizwa ngokuba zizintlambo eziya kuba ziintaba, ezinokuphakama okukhulu.

24 Kwaye imimendo emininzi iya kuqhekezwa, kwaye nezixeko ezininzi ziya kuba yinkangala.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

25 Kwaye amangcwaba amaninzi aya kuvuleka, kwaye aya kubakhupha abaninzi abafileyo bawo; kwaye abangcwele abaninzi baya kubonakala kwabaninzi.

26 Kwaye qaphelani, ithethe njalo ke ingelosi kum; kuba ithe kum kuya kubakho iindudumo nemibane kangangethuba leeyure ezininzi.

27 Kwaye yathi kum zakuba iindudumo nombane ziphelile, noqhwithelo, ezi zinto ziya kubakho, kwaye nokuba ubumnyama buya kubugubungela ubuso bawo wonke umhlaba kangangesithuba seentsuku ezintathu.

28 Kwaye ingelosi yathi kum abaninzi baya kubona izinto ezinkulu ngaphezulu kunezi, ngenjongo yokokuba babe nokukholelwa okokuba le miqondiso nemimangaliso kumele yenzeke phezu kwabo bonke ubuso beli lizwe, ngenjongo yokokuba kungabikho nobangela wokungakholwa phakathi kwabantwana babantu—

29 Kwaye oku kungenjongo yokokuba nabanina oya kukholelwa abe nokusindiswa, nokokuba nabanina abangayi kukholelwa, isigwebo sobulungisa sibe nokufika phezu kwabo; kananjalo ukuba bayagwetywa bazizisele phezu kwabo esabo isigwebo.

30 Kwaye ngoku khumbulani, khumbulani, bazalwana bam, okokuba nabani na otshabalalayo, uya zitshabalalela; kwaye nabani na owenza ubugwenxa, uyazenzela; kuba qaphelani, nikhululekile; nivunyelwe ukuba nizenzele, kuba qaphelani, uThixo uninikile ulwazi kwaye unenze nakhululeka.

31 Uninikile okokuba nibe nokwazi okulungileyo kokubi, kwaye uninikile okokuba nibe nokukhetha ubomi okanye ukufa; kwaye ninokwenza okulungileyo nize nibuyiselwe koko kulungileyo, okanye nibenako oko kulungileyo kubuyiselwe kuni; okanye ninokwenza ububi nize nifumane ukuba oko kubi kubuyiselwa kuni.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunders and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

## Hilamani 15

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, qaphelani, ndivakalisa kuni okokuba ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka izindlu zenu ziya kushiyelwa kuni ziyinkangala.
- 2 Ewe, ngaphandle kokuba niguquke, abafazi benu baya kuba nesizathu esikhulu sokulila ngomhla wabo wokwanyisa; kuba niya kuzama ukusaba kwaye akuyi kubakho ndawo yokhuseleko; ewe, kwaye yeha kwabo bakhulelweyo, kuba baya kuba besindeka kwaye bengenako ukusaba; ke ngoko, baya kunyathelwa phantsi kwaye bayakushiywa ukuba bafe.
- 3 Ewe, yeha kwaba bantu babizwa ngokuba ngabantu bakaNifayi ngaphandle kokuba baya kuguquka, bakuba beyibona yonke le miqondiso nemimangaliso eya kuthi iboniswe kubo; kuba qaphelani, babengabantu abakhethiweyo beNkosi; ewe, abantu bakaNifayi ibibathandile, kananjalo ubebakhalimela; ewe, ngemihla yabo yobugwenxa ubakhalimele ngenxa yokuba ebathandile.
- 4 Kodwa qaphelani bazalwana bam, wayewathiyile amaLeymenayithi ngenxa yezenzo zawo ezimbi ngamaxesha onke, kwaye oku kungenxa yobugwenxa besithethe sooyise. Kodwa qaphelani, usindiso lufikile kubo ngenxa yokushumayela kwamaNifayithi; kwaye kungale njongo iNkosi ithe yayandisa imihla yawo.
- 5 Kwaye ndinqwenela ukuba ningaqaphela okokuba inxalenye engakumbi ubukhulu becala yawo isendleleni yomsebenzi yabo, kwaye bahamba belumkile phambi koThixo, kwaye baya kuqwalasela ukuyigcina imiyalelo nemimiselo yakhe nezigwebo zakhe ngokomthetho kaMoses.
- 6 Ewe, ndithi kuni, inxalenye engakumbi yabo iyakwenza oku, kwaye iyazama ngenkuthalo engadinwayo ukuze babe nokuzisa intsalela yabazalwana babo kulwazi lwenyaniso; ke ngoko baninzi abongeza amanani abo imihla ngemihla.

## Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

7 Kwaye qaphelani, niyazi ngokwenu, kuba nibubonile ubungqina, bokokuba ngobuninzi babo abathe baziswa kulwazi lwenyaniso, nokwazi ngenkohlakalo kwaye nangamasikizi ezithethe zooyise, kwaye bakhokelwa ukuba bazikholelelwe izibhalo ezingcwele, ewe, iziprofetho zabaprofeti abangcwele, ezibhaliweyo, ezibakhokelela ekukholweni eNkosini, kwaye nasekuguqukeni, ukholo olo nenguquko oluzisa inguqu ezintliziyweni zabo—

8 Ke ngoko, ngobuninzi babo abafikeleleyo koku, niyazazela ngokwenu ukuba abagungqi kwaye bazinzile elukholweni, kwaye nakuloo nto abathe bakhululwa ngayo.

9 Kwaye niyazi kanjalo okokuba bazingcwabile izikhali zabo zemfazwe, kwaye bayoyika ukuzithabatha kuba hleze nangayiphina indlela babe baya kona; ewe, ningabona okokuba bayoyika ukona—kuba qaphelani baya kuzivumela ukuba banyathelwe phantsi kwaye babulawe ziintshaba zabo, kwaye abayi kuwaphakamisa amakrele abo ngokuchasene nazo, kwaye oku kungenxa yokholo lwabo kuKrestu.

10 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yenzondelelo yabo xa bekhola kuloo nto bakholwa kuyo, kuba ngenxa yokuzinza kwabo xa bekhe bafumana ukhanyiselo, qaphelani, iNkosi iya kubasikelela ize iyandise imihla yabo, nangona benobugwenxa—

11 Ewe, nokuba baya bephelela ekungakholweni iNkosi iya kuyandisa imihla yabo, lide libe liya kufika ilixa ekwakuthethiwe ngalo ngoobawo bethu, kananjalo ngumprofeti uZenoshe, nabanye abaprofeti abaninzi, malunga nokubuyiselwa kwabazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi, kwakhona kulwazi lwenyaniso—

12 Ewe, ndithi kuni, ngamaxesha amva izithembiso zeNkosi zidluliselwe kubazalwana bethu, amaLeymenayithi; kwaye nangona beneembandezelo ezininzi abaya kubanazo, kwaye nangona beya kuqhutyelwa ngapha nangapha phezu kobuso bomhlaba, kwaye bazingelwe, kwaye beya kubethwa baze basasazelwe kude, bengenayo indawo yokhuseleko, iNkosi iya kuba nenceba kubo.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

- 13 Kwaye oku kungokwesiprofetho, sokokuba beya kuphinda baziswe kulwazi oluyinyani, okululwazi ngoMkhululi wabo, nomalusi wabo omkhulu wokwenyani, kwaye babalelwe phakathi kwezimvu zakhe.
- 14 Ke ngoko ndithi kuni, kuya kulunga kubo ngakumbi kunani ngaphandle kokuba niguquke.
- 15 Kuba qaphelani, ukuba imisebenzi enamandlakazi yayiboniswe kubo, ewe, kubo abaya bephelela ekungakholweni ngenxa yezithethe zooyise, ningazibonela ukuba ngebengazanga babe kwakhona baye bephelela ekungakholweni.
- 16 Ke ngoko, ithi iNkosi: Andiyi kubatshabalalisa kwaphela, kodwa ndiya kubabangela okokuba ngomhla wobulumko bam baya kubuyela kwakhona kum, itsho iNkosi.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, itsho iNkosi, malunga nabantu bamaNifayithi: Ukuba abayi kuguquka, kwaye baqwalasele ukwenza intando yam, ndiya kubatshabalalisa kwaphela, itsho iNkosi, ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo nangona ndinemisebenzi emininzi enamandlakazi endiyenzileyo phakathi kwabo; kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo njengoko iNkosi iphila ezi zinto ziya kwenzeka, itsho iNkosi.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

## Hilamani 16

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, kwenzekile okokuba babebaninzi abathi bawaphulaphula amazwi kaSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, awathi wawathetha phezu kweendonga zesixeko. Kwaye ngobuninzi babo abathi bakholelwa kumazwi akhe babheka phambili baza bakhangela uNifayi; kwaye bakuba beze ngaphambili kwaye bemfumene baye bazivuma izono zabo kuye kwaye abazikhanyela, benqwenela ukuba babe nokubhaptizelwa eNkosini.
- 2 Kodwa ngobuninzi babo ababengakholwa kumazwi kaSamuweli baba nomsindo ngakuye; bamxuluba ngamatye ephezu kodonga, kananjalo nabaninzi bamdubula ngeentolo njengokuba wayemi phezu kodonga; kodwa uMoya weNkosi wawunaye, kangangokuba babengenako ukumchana ngamatye abo nangazo iintolo zabo.
- 3 Ngoku bakubona ukuba abanako ukumchana, kwabakho abaninzi ngakumbi abakholelwayo kumazwi akhe, kangangokuba bemka baya kuNifayi ukuya kubhaptizwa.
- 4 Kuba qaphelani, uNifayi wayebhaptiza, kwaye eprofetha, kwaye eshumayela, ekhwaza inguquko ebantwini, ebonisa imiqondiso nemimangaliso, esenza imimangaliso phakathi kwabantu, ukuze babenokwazi okokuba uKrestu kufuneka ezile kamsinyane—
- 5 Ebaxelela ngezinto ekufuneka zizile kwakamsinyane, ukuze babe nokwazi kwaye bakhumbule ngelixa lokufika kwazo okokuba zazazisiwe kubo kwangaphambili, ngenjongo yokokuba babe nokukholelwa; ke ngoko kangangobuninzi babo abakholelwayo kumazwi kaSamuweli babheka phambili kuye ukuba babhaptizwe, kuba babesiza beguquka kwaye bezivuma izono zabo.

## Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.



- 6 Kodwa inxalenye engakumbi yabo babengakholelwa kumazwi kaSamuweli; ke ngoko, bakuba bebona okokuba abanako ukumchana ngamatye abo nangeentolo zabo, bakhala kubaphathi-mikhosi babo besithi: Thabathani lo mfo nimbophelele, kuba qaphelani unomtyholi; kwaye ngenxa yamandla kamtyholi okuye asinako ukumchana ngamatye neentolo zethu; ke ngoko mthabatheni kwaye nimbophelele, kwaye nimsuse apha.
- 7 Kwaye kuthe xa bebheka phambili ukuya kumbamba, qaphelani, waye waziphosa phantsi esuka eludongeni, waze wasaba waphuma emihlabeni yabo, ewe, kwanakulo ilizwe lakhe, waza waqalisa ukushumayela nokuprofetha phakathi kwabantu bakhe.
- 8 Kwaye qaphelani, akuzange kuphinde kuviwe ngaye phakathi kwamaNifayithi; kwaye yayinjalo ke imicimbi yabantu.
- 9 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi asibhozo anesithandathu unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 10 Kwaye njalo waphela kanjalo owamashumi asibhozo anesixhenxe unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, inxalenye engakumbi yabantu ihleli ekratshini layo nenkohlakalo, kwaye iqaqobana labambalwa lihamba lilumke ngakumbi phambi koThixo.
- 11 Kwaye zazingjalo iimeko kanjalo kowamashumi asibhozo anesibhozo unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 12 Kwaye kwakukho umahluko nje omncinane ezindabeni kwiimeko zabantu, ngaphandle kokuba abantu baqalisa ukuqaqadeka ngakumbi ngobugwenxa, kwaye benza izinto ezininzi ngakumbi ezichasene nemiyalelo kaThixo, kowamashumi asibhozo anesithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi.
- 13 Kodwa kwenzekile kowamashumi asithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi, kwabakho imiqondiso emikhulu enikwa abantu, nemimangaliso; aza amazwi abaprofeti aqalisa ukuzaliseka.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

- 14 Kwaye iingelosi zaye zabonakala ebantwini, kumadoda azizilumko, zaye zavakaliswa kubo iindaba ezilungileyo zovuyo olukhulu; njalo ke, kulo nyaka izibhalo zaqalisa ukuzaliseka.
- 15 Nangona kunjalo, abantu baqalisa ukuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, bonke ngaphandle kwaloo nxalenye yaye yakholwa ngakumbi, phakathi kwamaNifayithi kanjalo nabamaLeymenayithi, baye baqalisa ukuxhomekeka emandleni abo kwaye nakubulumko babo, besithi:
- 16 Ezinye izinto banokuba bazithelekelele kakuhle, phakathi kwezininzi kangako; kodwa qaphelani, siyazi okokuba yonke le misebenzi mikhulu nemangalisayo kuthethwe ngayo, ayinako ukwenzeka.
- 17 Baza baqalisa ukuqondisisana bephikisana phakathi kwabo, besithi:
- 18 Akukho ngqiqo yokokuba umntu ofana noKrestu uya kuza; ukuba kunjalo, kwaye unguNyana kaThixo, uYise wamazulu nowomhlaba, njengoko kuthethiwe, kungani engayi kuzibonakalisa kuthi nakwabo baya kubaseYerusalem?
- 19 Ewe, kutheni engayi kuzibonakalisa kweli lizwe nakulo ilizwe laseYerusalem?
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani, siyazi okokuba esi sisithethe esikhohlakeleyo, esinikezelwe kuthi ukwehla ukusuka kuthi ngoobawo, ukusibangela ukuba sikholelwe kwinto ethile enkulu emangalisayo eza kwenzeka, kodwa hayi phakathi kwethu, kodwa kwilizwe elikude, ilizwe esingalaziyo; ke ngoko banokusigcina ekungazini, kuba asinako ukungqina ngamehlo ethu okokuba ziyinyaniso.
- 21 Kwaye baya kwenza njalo, ngokusebenzisa amaqhinga nobugcisa obufihlakeleyo balowo ungumtyholi, benze imfihlakalo enkulu esingenako ukuyiqonda, eya kusigcina phantsi sibe sizizicaka kumazwi abo, kananjalo nezicaka zabo, kuba sixhomekeke kubo ukuba basifundise ilizwi; kwaye njalo baya kusigcina ekungazini, ukuba sizinikela kubo, yonke imihla yobomi bethu.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

- 22 Kwaye zininzi nezinye izinto ezithe zacingwa ngabantu ezintliziyweni zabo, izezobuyatha nezingento; baye babekhathazeke kakhulu, kuba uSathana waye wabavuselela ukuba benze ubugwenxa ngamaxesha onke; ewe, waye wahamba etyala amarhe neengxabano phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, ukuze abe nokuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabantu ngokuchasene naloo nto ilungileyo kwaye nangokuchasene naloo nto iya kuza.
- 23 Kwaye nangona benemiqondiso nemimangaliso eyenziwayo phakathi kwabantu beNkosi, nemiqondiso emininzi abayenzayo, uSathana waye wabambeleva ngamandla ezintliziyweni zabantu phezu kobuso bonke belizwe.
- 24 Waza njalo waphela owamashumi alithoba unyaka wolawulo lwabagwebi phezu kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 25 Yaza njalo yaphela incwadi kaHilamani, ngokwengxelo kaHilaman noonyana bakhe.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman and his sons.

# UNifayi Wesithathu

## INcwadi kaNifayi

### Unyana kaNifayi, Owayengunyana kaHilamani

*Kwaye uHilamani waye engunyana kaHilamani, owaye engunyana ka-Alma, owaye engunyana ka-Alma, owaye eyinzala kaNifayi owaye engunyana kaLibayi, owaphuma eYerusalem kowokuqala unyaka wolawulo lukaZedekiya, ukumkani wakwaYuda.*

### 3 Nifayi 1

- 1 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba owamashumi asithoba ananye unyaka wadlula kwaye kwakuyiminyaka engamakhulu amathandathu ukususela kwilixa uLihayi wayishiyayo iYerusalem; kwaye yayingunyaka apho uLakhoniyas wayengumgwebi oyintloko nerhuluneli phezu kwelizwe.
- 2 Kwaye uNifayi, unyana kaHilamani, wayemkile waphuma elizweni laseZarahemla, enikela umthetho kunyana wakhe uNifayi, owaye engunyana wakhe olizibulo, malunga namacwecwe obhedu, kwaye nazo zonke iimbali ezazigciniwe, kwaye nazo zonke ezo zinto ezayzigcinwe zingcwele ukususela kuhambo lukaLihayi ephuma eYerusalem.
- 3 Waza ke wemka waphuma elizweni, kwaye apho waya khona, akukho mntu waziyo; kwaye unyana wakhe uNifayi waye wazigcina iimbali endaweni yakhe, ewe, imbali yaba bantu.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni kowamashumi asithoba anesibini unyaka, qaphelani, iziprofetho zabaprofeti zaqalisa ukuzaliseka ngokuphelele ngakumbi; kuba kwaqalisa ukubakho imiqondiso emikhulu kakhulu nemimangaliso emikhulu kakhulu eyenziwayo phakathi kwabantu.
- 5 Kodwa kwakukho abanye abaqalisa ukuthi ilixa lidlule lokokuba amazwi azalisekiswe, awayethethwe nguSamuweli, umLeymenayithi.
- 6 Kwaye baqalisa ukubavuyelela abazalwana babo, besithi: Qaphelani, ilixa lidlule, kwaye amazwi kaSamuweli awazalisekanga; ke ngoko, uvuyo nokholo lwenu malunga nale nto lube lilize.

# Third Nephi

## The Book of Nephi

### the Son of Nephi, Who Was the Son of Helaman

*And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.*

### 3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye benza ingxolo enkulu kulo lonke ilizwe; baza abantu ababekholwa baqalisa ukuba lusizi kakhulu, hleze nangayiphina indlela ezo zinto ezazithethiwe zingabi nakwenzeka.

8 Kodwa qaphelani, baye balulindela ngenzondelelo olo suku nobo busuku neemini eziya kuba njengemini enye ngokungathi bekungekho busuku, ukuze babe nokwazi okokuba ukholo lwabo belungelolize.

9 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho usuku olwalubekelwe bucala ngabangakhulwayo, lokokuba bonke abakholelwayo kwezo zithethe mababulawe ngalo ngaphandle kokuba umqondiso wenzeke, owawunikwe nguSamuweli umprofeti.

10 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uNifayi, unyana kaNifayi, eyibona le nkohlakalo yabantu bakhe, intliziyo yakhe yaba lusizi ngokugqithisileyo.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waphuma phandle waza waqubuda phantsi phezu komhlaba, wadanduluka ngamandlakazi kuThixo wakhe ngenxa yabantu bakhe, ewe, abo babesele beza kutshatyalaliswa ngenxa yokholo lwabo kwizithethe zooyise.

12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wadanduluka ngamandlakazi eNkosini yonke loo mini; kwaye qaphelani, ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuye, lisithi:

13 Yiphakamise intloko yakho uze ube nolonwabo; kuba qaphela, ixesha lisondele, kwaye ngabo obu busuku umqondiso uya kunikwa, kwaye ngengomso ndiza ehlabathini, ukuba ndibonise ihlabathi okokuba ndiya kukuzalisekisa konke endikubangele ukuba kuthethwe ngemilomo yabaprofeti bam abangcwele.

14 Qaphela, ndiza kwabam, ukuza kuzalisekisa zonke izinto endithe ndazazisa kubo abantwana babantu ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi, nokwenza intando, kunye ekaYise neyoNyana—ekaYise ngenxa yam, kwaye neyoNyana ngenxa yenyama yam. Kwaye qaphela, ixesha lisondele, kwaye ngobu busuku umqondiso uya kunikwa.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amazwi lawo athi afika kuNifayi azalisekiswa, njengoko ayethethiwe; kuba qaphelani, ekutshoneni kwelanga akuzange kubekho bumnyama; baza abantu baqalisa ukukhwankqiseka ngenxa yokuba kwakungekho bumnyama bakuba bufikile ubusuku.
- 16 Kwaye babebaninzi, ababengawakholelwanga amazwi abaprofeti, abawela emhlabeni baza babangathi babefile, kuba babesazi okokuba icebo elikhulu lentshabalalo ababelibekela abo babekhohlelwa kumazwi abaprofeti laliphanzisiwe; kuba umqondiso owawunikiwe wawusele ufikile.
- 17 Baye baqalisa ukwazi okokuba uNyana kaThixo kamsinyane kufuneka abonakale; ewe, lilonke, bonke abantu phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba ukusuka entshona ukuye empuma, kunye elizweni elisemantla kwaye naselizweni elisemazantsi, babekhwankqiseke kakhulu ngokugqithisileyo kangangokuba bawela emhlabeni.
- 18 Kuba babesazi okokuba abaprofeti babengqinile ngezi zinto kangangeminyaka emininzi, nokokuba umqondiso lowo uthe wanikwa wawusele ufikile; baza baqalisa ukoyika ngenxa yobugwenxa babo nokungakhohlelwa kwabo.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuzange kubekho bumnyama ngabo bonke obo busuku, kodwa kwakukhanya ngokungathi kusemini emaqanda. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ilanga laye laphuma kusasa kwakhona, ngokohlobo lwalo olufanelekileyo; kwaye babesazi okokuba yaye iyimini yokuba iNkosi kufanele izalwe, ngenxa yomqondiso othe wanikwa.
- 20 Kwaye kwakwenzekile, ewe, zonke izinto, lonke isuntswana, ngokwamazwi abaprofeti.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile kanjalo okokuba inkwenkwezi entsha ibonakale, ngokwelizwi.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukususela kweli lixa ukubheka phambili kwaqalisa ukubakho ubuxoki obathunyelwa phakathi kwabantu, nguSathana, ukuqaqadekisa iintliziyi zabo, ngenjongo yokokuba bangabi nakukholelwa kuyo loo miqondiso nemimangaliso leyo babeyibonile; kodwa nangona kukho obu buxoki neenkohliso inxalenye engakumbi yabantu yaye yakholelwa, yaza yaguqukela eNkosini.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi wabheka phambili phakathi kwabantu, kwaye nakwabanye abaninzi, eabhaptizela enguqukweni, ekwakukho kuyo uxolelo olukhulu lwezono. Baza njalo abantu baqalisa kwakhona ukuba noxolo elizweni.

24 Kwaye kwakungekho zimbambano, ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa abaqalisa ukushumayela, bezama ukubonisa ngezibhalo okokuba kwakungasekho mfuneko yakuwugcina umthetho kaMoses. Ngoku kuyo le nto baye baphazama, kuba bengaziqondanga izibhalo.

25 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba kwakamsinya baqalisa ukuguquka, baze baqinisekiswa ngempazamo ababekuyo, kuba kwaziswa kubo okokuba umthetho wawungekazalisekiswa, nokuba kufuneka uzalisekisiwe ngalo lonke isuntswana; ewe, ilizwi lafika kubo lokuba kufuneka lizalisekisiwe; ewe, okokuba iganyana okanye isuntswana aliya kudlula ude wonke uzalisekisiwe; ke ngoko kwakuwo lo nyaka mnye baziswa kulwazi lwempazamo yabo kwaye baye bawavuma amatyala abo.

26 Kwaye njalo owamashumi asithoba anesibini unyaka waye wadlula, uzise iindaba zovuyo ebantwini ngenxa yemiqondiso eyathi yenzeka, ngokwamazwi esiprofetho sabo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi asithoba unyaka anesithathu waye nawo kanjalo wadlula ngoxolo, ngaphandle nje kwabaphangi bakaGadiyantoni, ababehlala phezu kweentaba, abaye balizalisa ilizwe; kuba zazomelele iinqaba zabo neendawo zabo ezifihlakeleyo kangangokuba abantu babengakwazi ukubongamela; ke ngoko baye babulala abaninzi, kwaye baye benza inyhikityha enkulu phakathi kwabantu.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamashumi asithoba anesine unyaka baqalisa ukwanda ngeqondo elikhulu, ngenxa yokokuba kwakukho abakreqi abaninzi bamaNifayithi abaye basabela kubo, into leyo eyabangela usizi olukhulu kuloo maNifayithi awasala elizweni.
- 29 Kwaye kwakukho kanjalo unobangela wosizi phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi; kuba qaphelani, babenabantwana abaninzi abaye bakhula baza baba nokomelela ngeminyaka, ukuze babe nokuzibonela, kwaye balahlekiswa ngabanye ababengamaZoramayithi, ngobuxoki babo nangamazwi abo anyhwalazayo, ukuba bamanyane nabo baphangi bakaGadiyantoni.
- 30 Kwaye njalo amaLeymenayithi nawo kananjalo abandezeleka, aza aqalisa ukuncipha malunga naselukholweni lwawo nobulungisa, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yesizukulwana esikhulayo.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.



### 3 Nifayi 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngolo hlobo wadlula kanjalo unyaka wamashumi asithoba anesihlanu, baza abantu baqalisa ukuyilibala loo miqondiso nemimangaliso ababeyivile, baza baqalisa kancinci nakancinci ukungakhwankqiseki kumqondiso okanye kummangaliso ovela ezulwini, kangangokuba baqalisa ukuqaqadeka ezintliziyweni zabo, nokumfameka ezingqondweni zabo, kwaye baqalisa ungakukholelwa kuko konke oko babekuvile kwaye bekubonile—
- 2 Beqikelela ngento elilize ezintliziyweni zabo, okokuba yayenziwe ngabantu nangamandla kamtyholi, ukulahlekisa nokukhohlisa iintliziyo zabantu; kwaye njalo uSathana waye wazilawula iintliziyo zabantu kwakhona, kangangokuba waye wawamfamekisa amehlo abo waza wabalahlekisela ekubeni bakholelwe okokuba imfundiso kaKrestu yayiyinto yobuyatha nelilize.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baqalisa baba nokomelela ngenkohlakalo namasikizi; kwaye babengakholwa okokuba kumele kubekho eminye engakumbi imiqondiso okanye imimangaliso enikwayo; kwaye uSathana waye wahamba-hamba, elahlekisa iintliziyo zabantu, ebahenda kwaye ebabangela okokuba mabenze inkohlakalo enkulu elizweni.
- 4 Kwaye njalo waye wadlula unyaka wamashumi asithoba anesithandathu; kananjalo unyaka wamashumi asithoba anesixhenxe; kananjalo unyaka wamashumi asithoba anesibhozo; kananjalo unyaka wamashumi asithoba anesithoba;
- 5 Kananjalo iminyaka elikhulu yadlula ukususela kwimihla kaMozaya, owaye engukumkani phezu kwabantu bamaNifayithi.
- 6 Kwaye amakhulu amathandathu anesithoba ayedlule ukususela oko uLihayi walishiyayo elaseYerusalem.
- 7 Kwaye iminyaka esithoba yayidlule ukususela kwilixa xa umqondiso wawunikwa, okwakuthethwe ngawo ngabaprofeti, wokokuba uKrestu kumele eze ehlabathini.

### 3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

- 8 Ngoku amaNifayithi aqalisa ukubala ixesha lawo ukusuka kwesi sigaba sexesha xa umqondiso wawunikwa okanye ukususela ekufikeni kukaKrestu; ke ngoko, iminyaka esithoba yayidlule.
- 9 Kwaye uNifayi, owaye enguyise kaNifayi, owaye egcine iimbali, akazange abuyele kulo ilizwe laseZarahemla, kwaye akazange abe nokufumaneka kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baye baqhubeka ukuhlala enkohlakalweni, nangona intshumayelo inininzi nokuprofetha okwakuthunyelwe phakathi kwabo; waza njalo wadlula kanjalo oweshumi unyaka; noweshumi elinanye unyaka kanjalo wadlula ngobugwenxa.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka weshumi elinesithathu kwaqalisa ukubakho iimfazwe neembambano kulo lonke ilizwe; kuba abaphangi bakaGadiyantoni basuka baba yintlaninge, kwaye babulala abantu abaninzi kakhulu, baza batshabalalisa izixeko ezininzi kakhulu, baza basasaza ukufa okuninzi nenyhikityha kulo lonke ilizwe, kangangokuba kwaba yimfuneko okokuba abantu, kunye amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, mabathabathe izikhali ngokuchasene nabo.
- 12 Ke ngoko, onke amaLeymenayithi awayeguqukele eNkosini aye amanyana kunye nabazalwana awo, amaNifayithi, aza anyanzeleka, ngenxa yokhuseleko lobomi bawo nabafazi bawo nabantwana bawo, ukuba bathabathe izikhali ngokuchasene nabo baphangi bakaGadiyantoni, ewe, kananjalo nokugcina amalungelo abo, kwanamalungelo awodwa ebandla labo nawonqulo lwabo, nokukhululeka kwabo nenkululeko yabo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngaphambi kokuba udlule lo nyaka weshumi elinesithathu amaNifayithi oyikiswa ngentshabalalo epheleleyo ngenxa yale mfazwe, esuke yaba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba loo maLeymenayithi awayemanyene kunye namaNifayithi abalelwa phakathi kwamaNifayithi;
- 15 Saza isiqalekiso sawo sasuswa kuwo, saza isikhumba sawo saba mhlophe ngokufanayo namaNifayithi;

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

- 16 Baza abafana bawo abaselula neentombi zawo zabantle ngokugqithisileyo, baza babalelwa phakathi kwamaNifayithi, baza babizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi. Waza njalo waphela oweshumi elinesithathu unyaka.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile ekuqalekeni konyaka weshumi elinesine, imfazwe phakathi kwabaphangi nabantu bakaNifayi yaye yaqhubeka kwaye yaye yababuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo; nangona kunjalo, abantu bakaNifayi baye bazuza ukongama phezu kwabaphangi, kangangokuba baye babadudulela emva baphuma emihlabeni yabo bangena ezintabeni nakwiindawo zabo ezifihlakeleyo.
- 18 Waza njalo waphela unyaka weshumi elinesine. Kwaye kunyaka weshumi elinesihlanu baye beza phambili ngokuchasene nabantu bakaNifayi; kwaye ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu bakaNifayi, neembambano zabo ezininzi nokreko, abaphangi bakaGadiyantoni baye bazuza ukongama okuninzi phezu kwabo.
- 19 Waza njalo waphela unyaka weshumi elinesihlanu, kwaye njalo abantu babekwimeko yeembandezelo ezininzi; kwaye nekrele lentshabalalo laye lajinga phezu kwabo, kangangokuba babesele beza kusikelwa phantsi ngalo, kwaye oku kungenxa yobugwenxa babo.

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

### 3 Nifayi 3

- 1 Kwaza ke ngoku kwenzeka okokuba kunyaka weshumi elinesithandathu ukusuka ekuzeni kukaKrestu, uLakhoniyas, irhuluneli yelizwe, wafumana incwadi evela kwinkokeli nomphathi weli qela labaphangi; kwaye la ngamazwi awayebhaliwe, esithi:
- 2 Lakhoniyas, obekeke kakhulu nerhuluneli eyintloko yelizwe, qaphela, ndikubhalele le ncwadi, kwaye ndikunika udumo olukhulu ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yokuzinza kwakho, kananjalo ukuzinza kwabantu bakho, ngokugcina oko nicinga ukuba lilungelo lenu nenkululeko; ewe, nime kakuhle, ngokungathi nixhaswe sisandla sothixo, ekukhuseleni inkululeko yenu, nezinto zenu, nelizwe lenu, okanye oko nithi nikubize njalo.
- 3 Kwaye kukhangeleka kulusizi kum, Lakhoniyas obekeke kakhulu, ukuba ungasisiyatha kangaka kwaye uzingce ngokucinga ukuba ungamelana namadoda amaninzi akhaliphe kangaka akulawulo lwam, ami ngoku ngalo eli lixa exhobile, kwaye alilindele ngexhala elikhulu ilizwi—Hambani nihle nihlasele amaNifayithi kwaye niwatshabalalise.
- 4 Kwaye mna, ndisazi ngomoya wabo ongena koyiswa, ekubeni ndibavavanyile ethafeni ledabi, kwaye ndisazi ngentiyo yabo engenasiphelo ngakuni ngenxa yokungalungi enikwenzileyo kubo, ke ngoko, ukuba bangehla ngokuchasene nani banganivelela ngentshabalalo ephелеleyo.
- 5 Ke ngoko ndibhale le ncwadi, ndiyitywina ngesam isandla, ndinovelwano ngentlalontle yenu, ngenxa yokuzinza kwenu kuloo nto eniyikholelwa ukuba ilungile, nomoya wenu obalaseleyo kwithafa ledabi.
- 6 Ke ngoko ndiya kubhalela, ndinqwenela okokuba unganikezela kubo aba bantu bam, izixeko zenu, imihlaba yenu, nezinto zenu, kunokuba banivelele ngekrele nokokuba intshabalalo ibe nokufika phezu kwenu.
- 7 Okanye ngamanye amazwi, zinikezeleni kuthi, kwaye nizimanye kunye nathi kwaye niziqhelanise kunye nemisebenzi yethu efihlakeleyo, kwaye nibe ngabazalwana bethu ukuze nibe njengathi—ningabi ngamakhoboka ethu, kodwa abazalwana bethu nabalingane kuzo zonke izinto zethu.

### 3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

- 8 Kwaye qaphela, ndiyafunga kuni, ukuba niya kukwenza oku, ngesifungo, anisayi kutshatyalaliswa; kodwa ukuba aniyi kukwenza oku, ndiyafunga kuni ngesifungo, okokuba ngenyanga elandelayo ndiya kuyalela okokuba imikhosi yam yehle ngokuchasene nani, kwaye ayisayi kusibamba isandla sayo kwaye ayiyi kusindisa bani, kodwa iya kunibulala, kwaye iya kuliwisa ikrele phezu kwenu kwanokude nibe niya kuba ngabangasekhoyo.
- 9 Kwaye qaphela, ndinguGidiyanhayi; kwaye ndiyirhuluneli yalo mbutho ufihlakeleyo kaGadiyantoni; umbutho lowo nemisebenzi yawo endiyaziyo ukuba ilungile; kwaye endiyaziyo okokuba yeyomhla wamandulo kwaye yanikezelwa ukuhla ukuza kuthi.
- 10 Kwaye ndikubhalela le ncwadi, Lakhoniyas, kwaye ndiyathemba okokuba niya kuyinikezela imihlaba yenu nezinto zenu, ngaphandle kokuphalazwa kwegazi, ukuze aba bantu bam babe nokuphinda bawafumane amalungelo abo norhulumente, abakreqela kude kuni ngenxa yenkohlakalo yenu ekubabandezeleni amalungelo abo karhulumente, kwaye ngaphandle kokuba nikwenze oku, ndiya kukuphindezela ukungalungi okwenziwa kubo. NdinguGidiyanhayi.
- 11 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile akuba uLakhoniyas efumana le ncwadi wakhwankqiseka ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yobugagu bukaGidiyanhayi obanga ulawulo lwelizwe lamaNifayithi, kananjalo nobokusongela abantu nokuphindezela ukungalungi kwabo babengafumananga kungalungi, ngaphandle kokuba ingabo abazenzele okungalunganga ngokukreqela kwabo baphangi bakhohlakeleyo nabamasikizi.
- 12 Ngoku qaphelani, lo Lakhoniyas, irhuluneli, wayeyindoda enobulungisa, kwaye engena koyikiswa ziimfuno nezisongelo zomphangi; ke ngoko akazange ayiphulaphule incwadi kaGidiyanhayi, irhuluneli yabaphangi, kodwa waye wababangela abantu bakhe ukuba mabakhale eNkosini ukuba bazuze ukomelela ngeli lixa lokuba abaphangi beya kuhla ngokuchasene nabo.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

- 13 Ewe, wathumela isibhengezo phakathi kwabantu bonke, sokuba kumele bahlanganise kunye abafazi babo, nabantwana babo, imihlambi yabo neenkomo zabo nazo zonke izinto zabo, ngaphandle nje kwelizwe labo, ndawonye.
- 14 Waza wabangela ukuba makwakhiwe iinqaba macala onke abo, kwaye nokomelela kwazo kumele kube kukhulu ngokugqithisileyo. Waza wabangela ukuba imikhosi, yomibini eyamaNifayithi neyamaLeymenayithi, okanye eyabo bonke ababebalelwa phakathi kwamaNifayithi, kumele babekwe njengabalindi macala onke ukuba babalinde, nokuba babalinde kubaphangi imini nobusuku.
- 15 Ewe, wathi kubo: Njengoko iNkosi iphila, ngaphandle kokuba niyaguquka kubo bonke ubugwenxa benu, kwaye nikhale kuyo iNkosi, aninako nangayiphi indlela ukuhlangulwa niphume ezandleni zabo baphangi bakaGadiyantoni.
- 16 Kwaye ayebaluleke kakhulu kwaye emangalisa amazwi neziprofetho zikaLakhoniyas kangangokuba aye abangela ukuba uloyiko lubafikele bonke abantu; kwaye bazizama ngamandlakazi abo ukuba benze ngokwamazwi kaLakhoniyas.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLakhoniyas onyule abaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko phezu kwayo yonke imikhosi yamaNifayithi, ukuba bayilawule ngelixa lokuba abaphangi beya kuhla baphume entlango ngokuchasene nabo.
- 18 Ngoku oyena uyintloko phakathi kwabo bonke abaphathi-mikhosi abaziintloko nomphathi wayo yonke imikhosi yamaNifayithi wonyulwa, kwaye igama lakhe lalinguGidgidonayi.
- 19 Ngoku yayilisiko phakathi kwawo onke amaNifayithi ukuba azonyulele njengabaphathi babo abaziintloko, (ngaphandle kokuba kwakungamaxesha abo enkohlakalo) loo mntu unomoya wesityhilelo kananjalo owesiprofetho; ke ngoko, lo Gidgidonayi waye engumprofeti onamandlakazi phakathi kwabo, njengoko wayekwinjalo kanjalo umgwebi oyintloko.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

- 20 Ngoku abantu bathi kuye uGidgidonayi: Thandaza eNkosini, kwaye sivumele sinyuke siye ezintabeni kwaye singene nasentlango, ukuze sibe nokubahlasela abaphangi kwaye sibatshabalalisele kweyabo imihlaba.
- 21 Kodwa uGidgidonayi wathi kubo: INkosi iyala; kuba ukuba siya kunyuka ngokuchasene nabo iNkosi iya kusinikezela ezandleni zabo; ke ngoko siza kuzilungiselela embindini wemihlaba yethu, kwaye siza kuhlanganisa yonke imikhosi yethu kunye, kwaye asiya kuya ngokuchasene nabo, kodwa siza kulinda bade beze ngokuchasene nathi; ke ngoko njengoko iNkosi iphila, ukuba siya kwenza oku iya kubanikezela ezandleni zethu.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka weshumi elinesixhenxe, esiphelweni samva sonyaka, isibhengezo sikaLakhoniyas sasibheke phambili kubo bonke ubuso belizwe, kwaye babewathabathile amahashe abo, neenqwelo zabo zokulwa, neenkomo zabo, nayo yonke impahla yabo emfutshane, nemihlambi yabo yeenkomo, neenkozo zabo, nazo zonke izinto abanazo, kwaye baye bamatshela phambili ngamawaka nangamashumi amawaka, bade bonke baba babheke phambili kwindawo leyo eyayonyulwe ukuze bazihlanganise kunye, ukuzikhusela ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo.
- 23 Kwaye ilizwe elalonyuliwe yayililizwe laseZarahemla, nelizwe elaye liphakathi kwelizwe iZarahemla nelizwe iNdyebo, ewe, ukuya kumda owawuphakathi kwelizwe iNdyebo nelizwe iNkangala.
- 24 Kwaye kwakukho amawaka amaninzi kakhulu abantu ababebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi, abaye bahlanganisana kunye kweli lizwe. Ngoku uLakhoniyas waye wabangela ukuba bazihlanganise kunye kulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi, ngenxa yesiqalekiso esingqongqo esasiphezu kwelizwe elingasemantla.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

25 Kwaye baye bazinqabisa ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo; baze bahlala kwilizwe elinye, baye beyimbumba enye, baza bawoyika amazwi awayethethwe nguLakhoniyas, kangangokuba baye baguquka kuzo zonke izono zabo; kwaye baye banyusela imithandazo yabo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo, ukuba ize ibahlangule ngelixa lokokuba iintshaba zabo zinokuhla ngokuchasene nabo ukuba zilwe idabi.

26 Kwaye babelusizi ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yeentshaba zabo. Kwaye uGidgidonayi waye wababangela ukuba mabenze izikhali zemfazwe zalo lonke udidi, nokokuba mabomelele ngezikrweqe, kwaye nangamakhaka, kwaye nangamakhaka amancinane angqukuva, ngokohlobo lomyalelo wakhe.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgidoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.



### 3 Nifayi 4

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwisiphelo samva sonyaka weshumi elinesibhozo loo mikhosi yabaphangi yayilungiselele ukulwa idabi, yaza yaqalisa ukuhla nokufunzela phambili isuka ezindulini, kwaye iphuma nasezintabeni, nasentlango, nakuzo iinqaba zayo, nakuzo iindawo zayo ezifihlakeleyo, yaza yaqalisa ukuthabatha ulawulo lwemihlaba, yomibini eyaye iselizweni elisemazantsi naleyo yayiselizweni elisemantla, yaza yaqalisa ukuthabatha ulawulo lwayo yonke imihlaba eyaye ishiywe ngamaNifayithi, nezixeko ezazishiywe ziyinkangala.
- 2 Kodwa qaphelani, kwakungekho zilo zasendle nazinyamakazi zizingelwayo kuloo mihlaba eyayishiywe ngamaNifayithi, kwaye kwakungekho zinyamakazi zizingelwayo zabaphangi ngaphandle kokuba kube sentlango.
- 3 Kwaye abaphangi babengenako ukuphila ngaphandle kokuba kube kusentlango, ngenxa yemfuno yokutya; kuba amaNifayithi ayeyishiye imihlaba yawo iyinkangala, kwaye ayeyihlanganisile imihlambi yawo neenkomo zawo nazo zonke izinto awayenazo, kwaye aye ekumzimba omnye.
- 4 Ke ngoko, kwakungekho thuba lokuba abaphangi barhwaphilize nokuba bazuze ukutya, ngaphandle kokuba bahlasele kwidabi eliselubala ngokuchasene namaNifayithi; kwaye amaNifayithi ekumzimba enye, kwaye benenani elikhulu kangako, kwaye ezigcinele imiphako, namahashe, neenkomo, nemihlambi yazo zonke iindidi ukuze abe nokuphila kangangethuba leminyaka esixhenxe, kwixa elo abaye banethemba lokubatshabalalisa abaphangi basuke phezu kobuso belizwe; waza njalo wadlula unyaka weshumi elinesibhozo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kunyaka weshumi elinesithoba uGidiyanhayi wafumanisa ukuba kwakuyimfuneko okokuba makanyuke ukuya kulwa idabi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi, kuba kwakungekho ndlela yokuba bangaphila ngaphandle kokuba barhwaphilize baze baphange kwaye babulale.

### 3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

- 6 Kwaye babengekhe balinge ukuzisasaza phezu kobuso belizwe kangangokuba babenako ukukhulisa iinkozo, hleze amaNifayithi abahlasele kwaye ababulale; ke ngoko uGidiyanhayi wanika umyalelo kuyo imikhosi yakhe kuba kuwo lo nyaka kumele banyuke ukuya kulwa idabi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye benyuka ukuba balwe idabi; kwaye kwakukuyo inyanga yesithandathu; kwaye qaphelani, wawubalasele kwaye usoyikeka umhla wokokuba baye benyuka ukuba balwe idabi; kwaye babebhinqe ngokohlobo lwabaphangi; kwaye babeneemfele zeegusha ezinqeni zabo, kwaye babezijiike umbala ngegazi, kwaye iintloko zabo zazichetyiwe, kwaye babenezigcina-ntloko kubo; kwaye yayibalasele kwaye isoyikeka inkangeleko yemikhosi kaGidiyanhayi, ngenxa yezikrweqe zabo, nangenxa yokuba bezijiike ibala ngegazi.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaNifayithi, yakuba ibona inkangeleko yemikhosi kaGidiyanhayi, yonke yathi yawela emhlabeni, kwaye yaye yaphakamisela izikhalo zayo kuyo iNkosi uThixo wayo, ukuze ayisindise kwaye ayihlangule iphume ezandleni zeentshaba zayo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba imikhosi kaGidiyanhayi ikubona oku yaye yaqalisa ukumemeza ngezwi elikhulu, ngenxa yovuyo lwayo, kuba yayicinga okokuba amaNifayithi ayewile luloyiko ngenxa yoloyiko lwemikhosi yabo.
- 10 Kodwa kuyo le nto badaniswa, kuba amaNifayithi ayengaboyiki; kodwa ayesoyika uThixo wawo kwaye ayembongozela ukhuseleko lwawo; ke ngoko, xa imikhosi kaGidiyanhayi ifunzela kuwo ayekulungele ukuqubisana nayo; ewe, emandleni eNkosi aye ayamkela.
- 11 Kwaye idabi laqalisa kule nyanga yesithandathu; kwaye lalibalasele kwaye lisoyikeka idabi elo, ewe, yayibalasele kwaye isoyikeka inyhikityha yalo, kangangokuba ayizange yaziwa inyhikityha enkulu kangako phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaLihayi ukususela oko balishiyayo elaseYerusalem.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

- 12 Kwaye nangona wayenezisongelo nezifungelo awayezenzile uGidiyanhayi, qaphelani, amaNifayithi aye aboyisa, kangangokuba baye babuya umva bemka phambi kwabo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uGidgidonayi wayalela okokuba imikhosi yakhe mayibasukele ukuya kutsho kwimida yentlango, nokokuba mabangasindisi namnye oya kuthi awele ezandleni zabo endleleni; kwaye njalo baye babasukela baza bababulala, ukuya kutsho kwimida yentlango, kwanokude babe bawuzalisekisile umyalelo kaGidgidonayi.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uGidiyanhayi, owathi wema kwaye walwa ngobugagu, wasukelwa njengokuba wayesaba; kwaye ekubeni wayediniwe ngenxa yokulwa kwakhe okukhulu waye wafunyanwa waza wabulawa. Kwaye sabanjalo ke isiphelo sikaGidiyanhayi umphangi.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaNifayithi yaye yabuyela kwakhona kwindawo yawo yokhuseleko. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba lo weshumi elinesithoba unyaka waye wadlula, kwaye abaphangi abazange babuye kwakhona ukuza kulwa idabi; bengazange beze kwakhona kowamashumi amabini unyaka.
- 16 Kwaye kowamashumi amabini ananye unyaka abazange beze ukuba balwe idabi, kodwa beza benyuka kumacala onke ukuba babarhangqe macala onke abantu bakaNifayi; kuba baye bacinga okokuba ukuba bangabavalela abantu bakaNifayi ukuphuma emihlabeni yabo, kwaye babarhangqe ngaphakathi macala onke, kwaye ukuba bangabavalela ngaphandle kuwo onke amalungelo abo awodwa angaphandle, ukuze babe nokubabangela ukuba bazinikezele ngokweminqweno yabo.
- 17 Ngoku babezonyulele enye inkokeli, egama layo lalinguZemnariha; ke ngoko yayinguZemnariha lo waye wabangela okokuba olu rhangqo lwenzeke.
- 18 Kodwa qaphelani, oku kwakuluncedo kumaNifayithi; kuba kwakungenakwenzeka ukuba abaphangi barhangqe ithuba elide ngokwaneleyo ukuze kusebenze kumaNifayithi, ngenxa yemiphako yawo emininzi awayezibekele yona elugcinweni.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariha; therefore it was Zemnariha that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

- 19 Kwaye ngenxa yokungoneli kwemiphako phakathi kwabaphangi; kuba qaphelani, babengenanto ngaphandle nje kwenyama yokuphila kwabo inyama leyo abaye bayizuza entlango.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iinyamakazi zasandle zasuka zanqaba entlango kangangokuba abaphangi babesele beza kutshabalala yindlala.
- 21 Kwaye amaNifayithi ayethe rhoqo ematshela ngaphandle emini nangobusuku, kwaye eyihlasela imikhosi yabo; kwaye ebulala ngamawaka kwaye nangamashumi amawaka.
- 22 Kwaza njalo kwaba ngumnqweno wabantu bakaZemnariha ukuba barhoxe kwiyelenqe labo, ngenxa yentshabalalo enkulu eyayifika phezu kwabo ngobusuku nangemini.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uZemnariha waye wanika umyalelo kubantu bakhe wokokuba mabazirhoxise kulo urhangqo, baze bamatshela kweyona ikude imimandla yelizwe ngasemantla.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, uGidgidonayi eliqonda icebo labo, kwaye esazi ngobuthathaka babo ngenxa yokungabikho kokutya, nenyhikityha enkulu eyayenziwe phakathi kwabo, ke ngoko waye wathumela imikhosi yakhe ngobusuku, waza wayinqamla indlela yabo yokubuya umva, kwaye waye wayibeka imikhosi yakhe kwindlela yabo yokubuya umva.
- 25 Kwaye oku baye bakwenza ngelixa lasebusuku, kwaye bamatshela mgama kubaphangi, ukuze ngengomso, xa abaphangi beqalisa imatshi yabo, baqubisana nemikhosi yamaNifayithi macala omabini ngaphambi kwabo nasemva kwabo.
- 26 Kwaye abaphangi ababesemazantsi baye kanjalo banqanyulwa kwiindawo zabo zokubalekela. Kwaye zonke ezi zinto zazisenziwa ngomyalelo kaGidgidonayi.
- 27 Kwaye kwakukho amawaka amaninzi awaye azinikezela aba ngamabanjwa kumaNifayithi, yaza intsalela yabo yabulawa.
- 28 Kwaye inkokeli yabo, uZemnariha, yathatyathwa yaza yaxhonywa emthini, ewe, kwanakumphezulu wawo wada waba ufile. Kwaye bakuba bemxhomile wada waba ufile baye bawuwisela umthi emhlabeni, kwaye baye badanduluka ngelizwi elikhulu, besithi:

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnariha to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

And it came to pass that Zemnariha did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnariha, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

- 29 Inga iNkosi ingabalondoloza abantu bayo ngobulungisa nobungcwele bentliziyo, ukuze babe nesizathu sokuwisela emhlabeni bonke abo baya kufuna ukubabulala ngenxa yamandla namayelenqe afihlakeleyo, kwananjengokuba le ndoda iwiselwe emhlabeni.
- 30 Kwaye baye bagcoba baza badanduluka kwakhona ngazwinye, besithi: Wanga uThixo ka-Abraham, noThixo kaIsake, noThixo kaYakobi, angabakhusela aba bantu ngobulungisa, kangangoko beya kulibiza igama likaThixo wabo ngokhuseleko.
- 31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bagqabhuka, bonke kunye, engomeni, kwaye bedumisa uThixo wabo ngezinto ezinkulu awayebenzele zona, ngokubalondoloza ekubeni bawele ezandleni zeentshaba zabo.
- 32 Ewe, baye badanduluka: Hosana kuThixo oseNyangweni. Kwaye baye badanduluka: Malibongwe igama leNkosi uThixo uSomandla, uThixo oseNyangweni.
- 33 Kwaye iintliziyo zabo zazikhukhumele luvuyo, ekutsazeni kweenyembezi ezininzi, ngenxa yokulunga okukhulu kukaThixo ngokubahlangula baphume ezandleni zeentshaba zabo; kwaye babesazi okokuba kwakungenxa yenguquko yabo nentobeko yabo ukuba bahlangulwe kwintshabalalo yanaphakade.

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

### 3 Nifayi 5

- 1 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, kwakungekho namnye umphefumlo ophilayo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bamaNifayithi owaye wawathandabuza nakancinane amazwi abo bonke abaprofeti abangcwele ababethethile; kuba babesazi okokuba kwakuyimfuneko okokuba kufuneka azalisekiswe.
- 2 Kwaye babesazi okokuba yayiyimfuneko into yokokuba uKrestu weza, ngenxa yemiqondiso emininzi eyayinikiwe, ngokwamazwi abaprofeti; kwaye nangenxa yezinto ezenzekayo babesazi okokuba kuyimfuneko okokuba zonke izinto kufanele zenzeke ngokwa loo nto eyayithethiwe.
- 3 Ke ngoko baye bazilahla zonke izono zabo, namasikizi abo, nohenyuzo lwabo, kwaye baye bamkhonza uThixo ngayo yonke inkuthalo imini nobusuku.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bebathabathile bonke abaphangi bangamabanjwa, kangangokuba babakho abaye baphuncuka ababengabulawanga, baye bawaphosa amabanjwa abo entolongweni, kwaye baye balibangela ukuba ilizwi likaThixo lishunyayelwe kubo; kwaye kangangobuninzi babo ababeguquka ezonweni zabo baza bangena kumnqophiso wokokuba abasayi kuze baphinde babulale baze bakhululwa.
- 5 Kodwa kangangobuninzi babo abo bangazange bangene kumnqophiso, kwaye abaye baqhubeka ukubanako oko kubulala kufihlakeleyo ezintliziyweni zabo, ewe, kangangobuninzi babo abo babefunyenwe befutha izisongelo ngokuchasene nabazalwana babo bagwetywa kwaye bohlwaywa ngokwasemthethweni.
- 6 Kwaye njalo baye bawaphelisa onke loo mayelenqe akhohlakeleyo, kwaye nasemfihlakalweni, namasikizi, ekwakukho kuwo inkohlakalo eninzi, nokubulala okuninzi kakhulu okwenziwayo.
- 7 Kwaye njalo ke wadlula owamashumi amabini anesibini unyaka, kananjalo nowamashumi amabini anesithathu, nowamashumi amabini anesine, nowamashumi amabini anesihlanu; kwaye njalo ke yadlula iminyaka engamashumi amabini anesihlanu.

### 3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

- 8 Kwaye kwakukho izinto ezininzi ezavakalayo ezaye, emehlweni abanye, zabalasela kwaye zamangalisa; nangona kunjalo, azinako ukubhalwa zonke kule ncwadi; ewe, le ncwadi ayinako ukuqulatha kwanesinye isiqingatha ekhulwini senxalenye yoko kwakwenziwe phakathi kwabantu abaninzi kangako ngesithuba seminyaka engamashumi amabini anesihlanu;
- 9 Kodwa qaphelani kukho iimbali eziqulathe zonke iinkqubo zaba bantu; kwaye eyona imfutshane kodwa eqinisekileyo ingxelo yanikwa nguNifayi.
- 10 Ke ngoko mna ndiyenze imbali yam yezi zinto ngokwembali kaNifayi, eyaye ikrolwe kumacwecwe awayebizwa ngokuba ngamacwecwe kaNifayi.
- 11 Kwaye qaphelani, ndiyenza imbali kumacwecwe endiwenze ngezam izandla.
- 12 Kwaye qaphelani, mna ndibizwa ngokuba ndinguMormoni, ndibizwa ngelizwe likaMormoni, ilizwe awathi kulo uAlma wamisela ibandla phakathi kwabantu, ewe, ibandla lokuqala elathi lamiselwa phakathi kwabo emva kokona kwabo.
- 13 Qaphelani, mna ndingumfundi kaYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo. Ndibizwe nguye ukuba ndivakalise ilizwi lakhe phakathi kwabantu bakhe, ukuze babe nokuba nobomi obungunaphakade.
- 14 Kwaye kuye kwaba yimfuneko okokuba mna, ngokwentando kaThixo, ukuze imithandazo yabo basandulelayo, ababe ngabangcwele, mayizalisekiswe ngokokholo lwabo, kumele ndenze imbali yezi zinto zenziweyo—
- 15 Ewe, imbali encinane yoko kwenzekayo ukususela ngelixa lokokuba uLihayi elishiya elaseYerusalem, kwanokuhla kude kube leli lixa limiyo.
- 16 Ke ngoko mna ndiyenza imbali yam ukusuka kwiingxelo ezazinikwe ngabo babekho phambi kwam, kude kube sekuqalekeni komhla wam;
- 17 Kwaye ngoko ndenza imbali yezinto endiziboneleyo ngawam amehlo.
- 18 Kwaye ndiyayazi imbali endiyenzayo ukuba ichanekile nembali enyanisekileyo; nangona kunjalo zininzi izinto, ngokolwimi lwethu, esingenako ukuzibhala.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraved on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

19 Kwaye ngoku ndiyayiphelisa intetho yam, engam,  
ndize ndiqhubeka ukunika ingxelo yam yezinto  
ezaye zikho phambi kwam.

20 Mna ndinguMormoni, nenzala ethe ngqo  
kaLihayi. Ndinesizathu sokumsikelela uThixo wam  
noMsindisi wam uYesu Krestu, kuba wabakhupha  
baphuma oobawo bethu kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem,  
(kwaye akukho wayeyazi ngaphandle kwakhe nabo  
wabakhuphayo baphuma kwelo lizwe) nokokuba  
undinike mna nabantu bam ulwazwi olukhulu  
olungaka lokusindisa imiphefumlo yethu.

21 Ngokuqinisekileyo uyisikelele indlu kaYakobi,  
kwaye ube nenceba kuyo imbewu kaYosefu.

22 Kwaye kangangokuba abantwana bakaLihayi  
beyigcinile imiyalelo yakhe ubasikelele kwaye  
wabaphumelelisa ngokwelizwi lakhe.

23 Ewe, kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo kwakhona uya  
kuyizisa intsalela yembewu kaYosefu kulwazi lwayo  
iNkosi uThixo wayo.

24 Kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo njengoko iNkosi iphila,  
iya kuyihlanganisela ngaphakathi isuka  
kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba yonke intsalela  
yembewu kaYakobi, esasazwe kude phezu kwabo  
bonke ubuso bomhlaba.

25 Kwaye njengoko wayenqophisene kunye nayo  
yonke indlu kaYakobi, kwangokunjalo umnqophiso  
awathi wanqophisana ngawo kunye nendlu  
kaYakobi uya kuzalisekiswa ngelakhe ilixa  
elifanelekileyo, ekubuyiseleni yonke indlu kaYakobi  
kulwazi ngomnqophiso awathi wanqophisana  
ngawo kunye nabo.

26 Kwaye ke baya kumazi uMkhululi wabo,  
onguYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo; kwaye ke baya  
kuhlanganiselwa ngaphakathi ukusuka  
kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba ukuya kweyabo  
imihlaba, ukusuka apho babesasazelwe khona; ewe,  
njengoko iNkosi iphila kuya kuba njalo. Amen.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of  
myself, and proceed to give my account of the things  
which have been before me.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I  
have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus  
Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of  
Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself  
and those whom he brought out of that land) and  
that he hath given me and my people so much  
knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and  
hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept  
his commandments he hath blessed them and pros-  
pered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of  
the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their  
God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in  
from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of  
the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all  
the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of  
Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath  
covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his  
own due time, unto the restoring all the house of  
Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he  
hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is  
Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be  
gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto  
their own lands, from whence they have been dis-  
persed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.



### 3 Nifayi 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abantu bamaNifayithi baye bonke babuyela kweyabo imihlaba kunyaka wamashumi amabini anesithandathu, wonke umntu, kunye nosapho lwakhe, imihlambi yakhe nemihlambi yeenkomo zakhe, amahashe akhe neenkomo zakhe, kwaye nazo zonke izinto nantonina eyaye iyeyabo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babengayigqibanga yonke imiphako yabo; ke ngoku baye bazithabathela konke oko babengakubimbithanga, okweenkoko zabo zalo lonke udidi, negolide yabo, nesilivere yabo, nazo zonke izinto zabo ezixabisekileyo, baze babuyela kweyabo imihlaba nezinto abanazo, kunye ngasemantla nangasemazantsi, nakulo ilizwe elingasemantla nakulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi.
- 3 Kwaye banikela kwabo baphangi ababengene kumnqophiso wokugcina uxolo lwelizwe, ababengwenela ukuhlala bengamaLeymenayithi, imihlaba, ngokwamanani abo, ukuze babenayo, ngokusebenza kwabo, into abanokuphila ngayo; kwaye njalo baye balumisela uxolo kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 4 Baza baqalisa kwakhona ukuphumelela kwaye baba namandla; waza owamashumi amabini anesithandathu nesixhenxe unyaka wadlula, kwaza kwabakho ucwangco olukhulu elizweni; baza bamisa imithetho ngokobulungisa nokungabinamkhethe.
- 5 Kwaye ngoku kwakungekho nto kulo lonke ilizwe yokubathintela abantu ekubeni baphumelele ngalo lonke ixesha, ngaphandle kokuba bangawela kulwaphulo-mthetho.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku yaba nguGidgidonayi, nomgwebi, uLakhoniyas, nabo babonyuliwe njengeenkokeli, ababemisele olu xolo lukhulu elizweni.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho izixeko ezininzi ezakhiwa ngokutsha, kwaye kwabakho nezixeko ezininzi ezidala ezilungiswayo.
- 8 Kwaye kwabakho iimendo ezininzi ezakhiwayo, neendlela ezininzi ezeniwayo, ezikhokelela ukusuka kwisixeko kuye esixekweni, nokusuka kwilizwe kuye elizweni, nokusuka kwindawo kuye endaweni.

### 3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

- 9 Waza njalo wadlula owamashumi amabini  
anesibhozo unyaka, kwaye abantu babenoxolo ngalo  
lonke ixesha. And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year,  
and the people had continual peace.
- 10 Kodwa kwenzekile kowamashumi amabini  
anesithoba unyaka kwaqalisa ukubakho  
iimpikiswano ezithile phakathi kwabantu; kwaye  
abanye baphakamela ekratshini  
nasekuzigwagwiseni ngenxa yobutyebi babo  
obukhulu ngokugqithisileyo, ewe, kwanokude kuye  
kwiintshutshiso ezinkulu; But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year  
there began to be some disputings among the people;  
and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings be-  
cause of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even  
unto great persecutions;
- 11 Kuba babebaninzi abarhwebi elizweni, kanaanjalalo  
nabaqondisi-mthetho abaninzi, nabaphathi  
abaninzi. For there were many merchants in the land, and  
also many lawyers, and many officers.
- 12 Baza abantu baqalisa ukwahlulwa ngeendidi,  
ngokobutyebi babo namathuba abo okufumana  
imfundo; ewe, abanye babengazi nto ngenxa  
yobuhlwempu babo, kwaye abanye baye bafumana  
imfundo enkulu ngenxa yobutyebi babo. And the people began to be distinguished by  
ranks, according to their riches and their chances for  
learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their  
poverty, and others did receive great learning be-  
cause of their riches.
- 13 Abanye babephakamele ekratshini, kwaye abanye  
babelulame ngokugqithisileyo; abanye baphindisela  
izinyeliso ngezinyeliso, ngeli lixa abanye  
babefumana isinyeliso nentshutshiso nalo lonke  
uhlobo lweembandezelo, kwaye bengaguquki baze  
bathukise kwakhona, kodwa babelulamile kwaye  
bezohlwaya phambi koThixo. Some were lifted up in pride, and others were ex-  
ceedingly humble; some did return railing for rail-  
ing, while others would receive railing and persecu-  
tion and all manner of afflictions, and would not  
turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent  
before God.
- 14 Kwaza njalo kwabakho ukungalingani okukhulu  
kulo lonke ilizwe, kangangokuba ibandla laqalisa  
ukuqhekeka; ewe, kangangokuba kunyaka  
wamashumi amathathu ibandla laliqhekekile kulo  
lonke ilizwe ngaphandle kwaphakathi  
kwabambalwa bamaLeymenayithi ababeguqukele  
elukholweni lokwenene; kwaye babengemki kulo,  
kuba babezinzile kwaye bethe nkqi, kwaye  
bengagungqiswa, bevuma ngayo yonke inkuthalo  
ukuyigcina imiyalelo yeNkosi. And thus there became a great inequality in all the  
land, insomuch that the church began to be broken  
up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the  
church was broken up in all the land save it were  
among a few of the Lamanites who were converted  
unto the true faith; and they would not depart from  
it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable,  
willing with all diligence to keep the commandments  
of the Lord.
- 15 Ngoku unobangela wabo obu bugwenxa babantu  
yayingulo—uSathana wayenamandla amakhulu,  
ekuvuseleleni abantu ukuba benze lonke uhlobo  
lobugwenxa, nokubakhukhumalisa ngekratshi,  
ebahenda ukuba bafune amandla, negunya,  
nobutyebi, nezinto ezililize zehlabathi. Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was  
this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of  
the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the  
puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek  
for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain  
things of the world.
- 16 Kwaye njalo uSathana waye wazilahlekisa  
iintliziyo zabantu ukuba benze lonke uhlobo  
lobugwenxa; ke ngoko baluvuyela uxolo iminyaka  
embalwa nje kuphela. And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the  
people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they  
had enjoyed peace but a few years.

- 17 Kwaye njalo, ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amathathu—ekubeni abantu benikezelwe kangangethuba lexesha elide ukuba babhekiswe ngapha nangapha ngezihendo zomtyholi naphina apho anqwenela ukubabhekisa khona, nokuba benze nabuphina ubugwenxa abanqwenela ukuba mababenze—kwaza njalo ekuqalekeni kwalo, unyaka wamashumi amathathu, babekwimo yenkohlakalo eyoyikekayo.
- 18 Ngoku babengoni ngokungazi, kuba babeyazi intando kaThixo malunga nabo, kuba yayifundisiwe kubo; ke ngoko baye bavukela ngabom ngokuchasene noThixo.
- 19 Kwaye ngoku kwakungemihla kaLakhoniyas, unyana kaLakhoniyas, kuba uLakhoniyas waye wasizalisa isihlalo sikayise kwaye waye wabalawula abantu ngaloo nyaka.
- 20 Kwaye kwaqalisa ukubakho amadoda aphenjelelwe ngokubela ezulwini aza athunyelwa phambili, esima phakathi kwabantu kulo lonke ilizwe, eshumayela kwaye engqina ngenkalipho ngezono nobugwenxa babantu, kwaye engqina kubo malunga nenkululeko eya kuthi iNkosi iyenzele abantu bayo, okanye ngamanye amazwi, uvuko lukaKrestu; kwaye aye angqina ngenkalipho ngokufa kwakhe neentlungu.
- 21 Ngoku babebaninzi kubantu ababenomsindo ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yabo babengqina ngezi zinto; kwaye abo babenomsindo yaye ikakhulu ingabagwebi abaziintloko, nabo babengababingeleli abakhulu nabaqondisi-mthetho; ewe, bonke abo babengabaqondisi-mthetho babenomsindo ngakwabo babengqina ngezi zinto.
- 22 Ngoku kwakungekho mqondisi-mthetho namgwebi nambingeleli mkhulu owayenako ukuba namandla okugwebela nabani na ekufeni ngaphandle kokuba isigwebo sabo sasisayinwe yirhuluneli yelizwe.
- 23 Ngoku babebaninzi kwabo bangqina ngezi zinto ziphathelele noKrestu abathi bangqina ngenkalipho, abathatyathwayo baza babulawa emfihlakalweni ngabagwebi, ukuze ulwazi ngokufa kwabo lungafiki kuyo irhuluneli yelizwe kude kube semva kokufa kwabo.

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

- 24 Ngoku qaphelani, oku kwakuphikisana nemithetho yelizwe, ukuba nawuphina umntu makabulawe ngaphandle kokuba bafumana igunya kwirhuluneli yelizwe—
- 25 Ke ngoko isikhalazo savela elizweni laseZarahemla, sisiya kwirhuluneli yelizwe, ngokuchasene naba bagwebi abagwebele abaprofeti beNkosi ekufeni, ingekuko okwasemthethweni.
- 26 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba bathatyathwa baza baziswa phambi komgwebi, ukuba bagwetywe ngolwaphulo-mthetho abalwenzileyo, ngokwasemthethweni owawunikwe ngabantu.
- 27 Ngoku kwenzekile okokuba abo bagwebi babenezihlobo ezininzi nezalamane; kwaye intsalela, ewe, kwaphantse bonke abaqondisimthetho nababingeleli abakhulu, baye bazihlanganisa kunye, baza bamanyana kunye nezalamane zaboo bagwebi ababeza kuvavanywa ngokwasemthethweni.
- 28 Kwaye baye bangena kumnqophiso omnye nomnye, ewe, kwanakuwo loo mnqophiso owawunikwe ngabo bakudala, umnqophiso lowo owawunikwe waza wasetyenziswa ngumtyholi, wokumanyana ngokuchasene nabo bonke ubulungisa.
- 29 Ke ngoko baye bamanyana ngokuchasene nabantu beNkosi, baza bangena kumnqophiso wokubatshabalalisa, nokuhlangula abo babenetyala lokubulala ekubanjweni bubulungisa, obabuza kusetyenziswa ngokomthetho.
- 30 Kwaye baye bawudela umthetho neemfanelo zelizwe labo; kwaye baye banqophisana omnye kunye nomnye ekuyitshabalaliseni irhuluneli, nokumisela ukumkani phezu kwelizwe, ukuze ilizwe lingabe liphinde libe senkululekweni kodwa libe phantsi kolawulo loo kumkani.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

### 3 Nifayi 7

- 1 Ngoku qaphelani, ndiza kunibonisa okokuba abazange bamisele ukumkani phezu kwelizwe; kodwa kwakulo nyaka, ewe, unyaka wamashumi amathathu, baye batshabalalisa phezu kwesihlalo sokugweba, ewe, baye babulala umgwebi oyintloko welizwe.
- 2 Kwaye abantu babohlulwe omnye ngokuchasene nomnye; kwaye baye bohluhana omnye komnye ngezizwe, wonke umntu ngokosapho lwakhe nezalamane zakhe nezihlobo; kwaye njalo baye bamtshabalalisa urhulumente welizwe.
- 3 Kwaye zonke izizwe zaye zonyula inkosi okanye inkokeli phezu kwazo; baza njalo baba nezizwe neenkokeli zezizwe.
- 4 Ngoku qaphelani, kwakungekho mntu phakathi kwabo ngaphandle kokuba abe unosapho oluninzi nezalamane ezininzi nezihlobo; ke ngoko izizwe zabo zabaninzi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 5 Ngoku konke oku kwenziwa, kwaye kwakungekho zimfazwe ngokwangoku phakathi kwabo; kwaye bonke obu bugwenxa bubafikele abantu ngenxa yokuba baye bazinikela kuwo amandla kaSathana.
- 6 Kwaye imimiselo karhulumente yatshatyalaliswa, ngenxa yeyelenqe elifihlakeleyo lezihlobo nezalamane zabo babulala abaprofeti.
- 7 Kwaye baye babangela imbambano enkulu elizweni, kangangokuba eyona nxalenye yamalungisa engakumbi yabantu yasuka phantse yonke yakhohlakala; ewe, kwakukho nje ambalwa amadoda angamalungisa phakathi kwabo.
- 8 Kwaye njalo emithandathu iminyaka ayidlulanga okoko inxalenye engakumbi yabantu yaphambukayo kubo ubulungisa babo, njengenja kumhlanzo wayo, okanye imazi yehagu ekuziqikaqikeni kwayo emxobhozweni.
- 9 Ngoku eli yelenqe lifihlakeleyo, elithe lazisa ubugwenxa obukhulu kangaka phezu kwabantu, laye lazihlanganisa kunye, laza labeka kwintloko yalo indoda ababeyibiza ngokuba nguYakobi;

### 3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

10 Kwaye baye bambiza ngokuba ngukumkani wabo; ke ngoko waba ngukumkani phezu kweli qela likhohlakeleyo; kwaye wayengomnye wabakhulu owayenike izwi lakhe ngokuchasene nabaprofeti abathi bangqina ngoYesu.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babengomelelanga ngenani njengezizwea zabantu, ababemanyene kunye ngaphandle nje kweenkokeli zazo ezaye zamisela eyazo imithetho, wonke umntu ngokwesizwe sakhe; nangona kunjalo babeziintshaba; nangona babengabantu abangengawo amalungisa, kanti ke babemanyene kuyo intiyo yabo babengene kumnqophiso wokutshabalalisa urhulumente.

12 Ke ngoko, uYakobi ebona okokuba iintshaba zabo zaziyantlaninge ngaphezulu kunabo, yena ke ekubeni engukumkani weqela, ke ngoko wabayalela abantu bakhe okokuba basabe bangene kumantla akude ommandla welizwe, baze apho bazakhele ubukumkani, bade bangenelelwe ngabakreqi, (kuba wabathembisa okokuba kuya kubakho abakreqi abaninzi) baze bade bomelele ngokwaneleyo ukuba balwe kunye nezizwe zabantu; kwaye benza njalo.

13 Kwaye umatsho lwabo lwalukhawuleze kangangokuba lwalungena kuthintelwa bade babe babheke phambili bangafikelelwa ngabantu. Kwaye waphela njalo unyaka wamashumi amathathu; kwaye yaba njalo imicimbi yabantu bakaNifayi.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka wamashumi amathathu ananye bethe bohluwa baba zizizwe, wonke umntu ngokosapho lwakhe, isalamane, nezihlobo; nangona kunjalo babefikelele kwisigqibo sokokuba abayi kuya emfazweni omnye nomnye; kodwa babengamanyananga ngokwemithetho yabo, nohlobo lwabo lorhulumente, kuba babemiselwe ngokweengqondo zabo babe ziinkosi zabo neenkokeli zabo. Kodwa baye bamisela imithetho engqongqo kakhulu yokokuba isizwe esinye singangeni ngaphandle kwemvume ngokuchasene nesinye, kangangokuba kwinqanaba elithile babe noxolo elizweni; nangona kunjalo, intliziyo zabo zaziphambukile kwiNkosi uThixo wabo, kwaye baye babaxuluba abaprofeti kwaye baye babakhuphela ngaphandle baphume phakathi kwabo.

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi—ekubeni ebehanjelwe ziingelosi kananjalo nelizwi leNkosi, ke ngoko ekubeni ebone iingelosi, kwaye elingqina eliziboneleyo, kwaye ekubeni ebenamandla awanikiweyo okokuba abe nokwazi malunga nobubingeleli bukaKrestu, kananjalo ekubeni ebelingqina eliziboneleyo ngokubuya kwabo okukhawulezileyo ukusuka ebulungiseni ukuya enkohlakalweni yabo namasikizi;
- 16 Ke ngoko, elusizi ngokuqadeka kweentliziyo zabo nokumfameka kweengqondo zabo—wabheka phambili phakathi kwabo kwakuwo loo nyaka, waza waqalisa ukungqina, ngenkalipho, ngenguquko noxolelo lwezono ngokholo kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu.
- 17 Kwaye waye wafundisa izinto ezininzi kubo; kwaye xa zizonke azinako ukubhalwa, kwaye isuntswana lazo alinakwanelisa, ke ngoko azibhalwanga kuyo le ncwadi. Kwaye uNifayi waye wafundisa ngamandla negunya elikhulu.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baba nomsindo kuye, kwanangenxa yokokuba wayenamandla amakhulu kunabo, kuba kwakungena kwenzeka okokuba banokungawakholelwa amazwi akhe, kuba lwalomelele kakhulu ukholo lwakhe kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu kangangokuba iingelosi zaye zamlungiselela yonke imihla.
- 19 Kwaye egameni likaYesu waye wakhuphela ngaphandle oomtyholi noomoya abangcolileyo; kwaye kwanomntakwabo waye wamvusa kwabafuleyo, emva kokuba wayexulutyiwe waza wanyamezela ukufa ngabo abantu.
- 20 Kwaye abantu bakubona baza bangqina ngoko, kwaye babenomsindo ngakuye ngenxa yamandla akhe; kwaye waye kanjalo wenza eminye engakumbi imimangaliso, emehlweni abantu, egameni likaYesu.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba unyaka wamashumi amathathu ananye waye wadlula, kwaye kwakukho nje abambalwa ababeguqukele eNkosini; kodwa kangangobuninzi babo ababeguqukile baye ngokwenene babonisa ebantwini okokuba babevelelwe ngamandla noMoya kaThixo, owaye ukuye uYesu Krestu, kulowo babekholelwa kuye.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

- 22 Kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abo babenoomtyholi abakhutshelwa ngaphandle kubo, kwaye bephilisiwe kuzo izigulo zabo nobuthathaka babo, baye ngokwenene babonakalisa kubo abantu okokuba babesetyenziwe ngoMoya kaThixo, kwaye babephilisiwe; kwaye baye babonakalisa imiqondiso phakathi kwabantu.
- 23 Njalo ke wadlula kanjalo unyaka wamashumi amathathu anesibini. Kwaye uNifayi waye wadanduluka kubo abantu ekuqalekeni konyaka wamashumi amathathu anesithathu; kwaye waye washumayela kubo inguquko noxolelo lwezono.
- 24 Ngoku ndinqwenela ukuba nikhumbule kanjalo, okokuba kwakungekho kwababeziswe enguqukwani ababengabhaptizwanga ngamanzi.
- 25 Ke ngoko, kwakumiselwe nguNifayi, amadoda kubo obu bulungiseleli, ukuze bonke abanjalo abaya kuthi beze kubo kumele babhaptizwe ngamanzi, ukuze oku kube njengengqina nobungqina phambi koThixo, nakubo abantu, bokokuba baguqukile kwaye bafumene uxolelo lwezono zabo.
- 26 Kwaye babebaninzi ekuqalekeni kwawo loo nyaka ababebhaptizelwe enguqukwani; kwaye njalo inxalenye engakumbi yonyaka yaye yadlula.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.



### 3 Nifayi 8

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba ngokwembali yethu, kwaye sazi imbali yethu iyinyani, kuba qaphelani, yayiyindoda elungileyo eyaye yayigcina imbali—kuba ngokwenene yaye yenza imimangaliso emininzi egameni likaYesu; kwaye kwakungekho nayiphina indoda eyayinako ukwenza ummangaliso egameni likaYesu ngaphandle kokuba yayihlanjululwe ngokupheleleyo kubugwenxa bayo—
- 2 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile, ukuba kwakungekho mpazamo yenziwayo yile ndoda ekulibaleni ixesha lethu, unyaka wamashumi amathathu anesithathu wawudlule;
- 3 Kwaye abantu baqalisa ukukhangela ngokuzimisela okukhulu umqondiso obunikiwe ngumprofeti uSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, ewe, ilixa apho kwakuya kubakho ubumnyama kangangethuba leentsuku ezintathu phezu kobuso belizwe.
- 4 Kwaye kwaqalisa ukubakho iintandabuzo neempikiswano phakathi kwabantu, nangona imiqondiso emininzi kangako yayinikiwe.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka wamashumi amathathu anesine, kuyo inyanga yokuqala, kusuku lwesine lwayo inyanga, kwavuka isaqhwithi esikhulu, esingazange saziwa esinjalo elizweni lonke.
- 6 Kwaye kwabakho kanjalo uqhwithela olukhulu noloyikekayo; kwaye kwabakho nendudumo eyoyikekayo, kangangokuba yaye yawuzama-zamisa wonke umhlaba ngokungathi wawumalunga nokwahlukana kubini.
- 7 Kwaye kwakukho imibane eyaye ibukhali ngokugqithisileyo, engazanga yaziwa enjalo elizweni lonke.
- 8 Kwaye isixeko saseZarahemla saye sathabatha umlilo.
- 9 Kwaye isixeko sikaMoronayi saye sazikela enonzobileni yolwandle, baza abemi baso barhaxwa.
- 10 Waza umhlaba wanyuselwa phezu kwesixeko saseMoronayihah, kangangokuba endaweni yesixeko kwasuka kwabakho intaba enkulu.

### 3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

- 11 Kwaye kwabakho intshabalalo enkulu  
neyoyikekayo kulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi.
- 12 Kodwa qaphelani, kwabakho intshabalalo enkulu  
ngakumbi neyoyikekayo elizweni elingasemantla;  
kuba qaphelani, bonke ubuso belizwe babujikekile,  
ngenxa yoqhwithela nezitshingitshane neendudumo  
nemibane, nokunyikima okukhulu  
ngokugqithisileyo kwawo wonke umhlaba;
- 13 Kwaye iimendo zaziqhekekile, zaza iindlela  
ezilungeleleneyo zonakala, zaza iindawo ezininzi  
ezimpuluswa zasuka zabarhabaxa.
- 14 Kwaye izixeko ezininzi eziqaphelekayo  
nezibalulekileyo zazizikile, zaza ezininzi zatsha,  
kwaye ezininzi zashukunyiswa zaza izakhiwo zazo  
zawela emhlabeni, baza abemi bazo babulawa, zaza  
iindawo zasala ziyinkangala.
- 15 Kwaye kwabakho ezinye zezixeko ezathi zasala;  
kodwa umonakalo wazo wawumkhulu  
ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye babebaninzi ababekuzo  
ababulawayo.
- 16 Kwaye kwakukho abanye abathi bathwalelwa  
kude kwisitshingitshane; kwaye apho baya khona  
akukho mntu waziyo, ngaphandle nje kokwazi  
okokuba bathwalelwa kude.
- 17 Baza njalo ubuso bomhlaba bonakaliswa, ngenxa  
yoqhwithela, neendudumo, nemibane, nokunyikima  
komhlaba.
- 18 Kwaye qaphelani, amatye aqhekeka kubini;  
ayeqhekekele phezu kobuso bonke bomhlaba,  
kangangokuba afunyanwa eziingceba ezaphukilelo,  
kwaye ecandekile kwaye eneentanda, phezu kwabo  
bonke ubuso belizwe.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba zakuba iindudumo,  
nemibane, nesaqhwathi, noqhwithela, nonyikimo  
lomhlaba zathi zapheza—kuba qaphelani, zaye  
zathatha kangangethuba leeyure ezintathu; kwaye  
kwathiwa ngabanye ilixa labalide ngaphezulu;  
nangona kunjalo, zonke ezi zinto zinkulu kwaye  
nezoyikekayo zenziwa kwisithuba esimalunga  
neeyure ezintathu—kwaye ke qaphelani, kwabakho  
ubumnyama phezu kobuso belizwe.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in  
the land southward.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible de-  
struction in the land northward; for behold, the  
whole face of the land was changed, because of the  
tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings  
and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quak-  
ing of the whole earth;

And the highways were broken up, and the level  
roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became  
rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and  
many were burned, and many were shaken till the  
buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the in-  
habitants thereof were slain, and the places were left  
desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but  
the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there  
were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in  
the whirlwind; and whither they went no man  
knoweth, save they know that they were carried  
away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became de-  
formed, because of the tempests, and the thunder-  
ings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the  
earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they  
were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, in-  
somuch that they were found in broken fragments,  
and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the  
land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings,  
and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest,  
and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold,  
they did last for about the space of three hours; and  
it was said by some that the time was greater; never-  
theless, all these great and terrible things were done  
in about the space of three hours—and then behold,  
there was darkness upon the face of the land.

- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho  
intsunguzi yobumnyama phezu kwabo bonke ubuso  
belizwe, kangangokuba abemi balo ababengawanga  
babenukuwuva umphunga wobumnyama;
- 21 Kwaye kwakungenakubakho sikhanyiso, ngenxa  
yobumnyama namakhandlela, nazitotshi;  
kwakungenakubakho namililo ibaswayo ngeenkuni  
zabo ezintle nezome ngokugqithisileyo,  
ezazinokubanako ukwenza nakuphi na kukonke  
ukukhanya;
- 22 Kwaye kwakungekho nakuphina ukukhanya  
okubonwayo, namlilo, nankazimlo, nalanga,  
nanyanga, nazinkwenkwezi, kuba zazinjalo  
ukushinyana iinkungu zobumnyama ezaye ziphezu  
kobuso belizwe.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaye yathatha  
kangangeentsuku ezintathu ukuze kungabikho  
kukhanya kubonwayo; kwaye kwabakho ukulila  
okukhulu nokubhombolozela nokulila phakathi  
kwabo bonke abantu ngamaxesha onke; ewe,  
zabankulu iincwina zabantu, ngenxa yobumnyama  
nentshabalalo enkulu eyathi yabafikela.
- 24 Kwaye kwindawo enye baviwa bekhala, besithi:  
Owu akwaba besiguqukile ngaphambi kwale mini  
inkulu neyoyikekayo, kwaye ke abazalwana bethu  
ngebesindile, kwaye ngebengatshelanga kwesa  
sixeko sikhulu iZarahemla.
- 25 Kwaye kwenye indawo baviwa bekhala kwaye  
belila, besithi: Owu akwaba besiguqukile  
ngaphambi kwale mini inkulu neyoyikekayo, kwaye  
singababulalanga saza sabaxuluba ngamatye  
abaprofeti, kwaye sabakhuphela ngaphandle; ke  
ooma neentombi zethu ezintle, nabantwana bethu  
ngebesindile, kwaye bengangcwatyelwanga kwesa  
sixeko sikhulu iMoronayihah. Kwaye zazinjalo ke  
izibhombolozela zabantu ukuba zikhulu nokoyikeka.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness  
upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the in-  
habitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the  
vapor of darkness;

And there could be no light, because of the dark-  
ness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could  
there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly  
dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor  
glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the  
stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which  
were upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of  
three days that there was no light seen; and there  
was great mourning and howling and weeping  
among all the people continually; yea, great were the  
groanings of the people, because of the darkness and  
the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O  
that we had repented before this great and terrible  
day, and then would our brethren have been spared,  
and they would not have been burned in that great  
city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and  
mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this  
great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned  
the prophets, and cast them out; then would our  
mothers and our fair daughters, and our children  
have been spared, and not have been buried up in  
that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howl-  
ings of the people great and terrible.

### 3 Nifayi 9

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho izwi elaviwayo phakathi kwabo bonke abemi bomhlaba, phezu kobuso bonke beli lizwe, lidanduluka:
- 2 Yeha, yeha, yeha kubo aba bantu; yeha kubemi bawo wonke umhlaba ngaphandle kokuba bangaguquka; kuba umtyholi uyahleka, kwaye iingelosi zakhe ziyagcoba, ngenxa yababuleweyo kwabahle oonyana neentombi zabantu bam; kwaye kungenxa yobugwenxa babo namasikizi ukuze bawe!
- 3 Qaphelani, esa sixeko sikhulu iZarahemla ndisitshise ngomlilo, nabemi baso.
- 4 Kwaye qaphelani, esa sixeko sikhulu iMoronayi ndisibangele ukuba sizike enzulwini yolwandle, kwaye nabemi baso ukuba barhaxwe.
- 5 Kwaye qaphelani, esa sixeko sikhulu iMoronayihla ndisigqumelele ngomhlaba, nabemi baso, ukuze ndibufihle ubugwenxa babo namasikizi abo busuke phambi kobuso bam, ukuze igazi labaprofeti nabangcwele lingaphindi lize kum ngokuchasene nabo.
- 6 Kwaye qaphelani, isixeko saseGilgali ndisibangele ukuba sizike, nabemi baso ukuba bangcwatyelwe enzonzobileni yomhlaba;
- 7 Ewe, nesixeko saseOnayihla nabemi baso, nesixeko saseMokham nabemi baso, nesixeko saseYerusalem nabemi baso, kwaye amanzi ndiwabangele ukuba enyuke endaweni yazo, ukuze ndiyifihle inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi zisuke phambi kobuso bam, ukuze igazi labaprofeti nabangcwele lingaphindi linyukele kum ngokuchasene nabo.
- 8 Kwaye qaphelani, isixeko saseGadiyandayi, nesixeko saseGadiyomna, nesixeko sikaYakobi, nesixeko saseGimgimno, zonke ezi ndizibangele ukuba zizike, ndaza ndenza iinduli neentlambo endaweni yazo; kwaye abemi bazo ndibangcwebele enzonzobileni yomhlaba, ukuba ndiyifihle inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi zisuke phambi kobuso bam, ukuze igazi labaprofeti nabangcwele lingaphindi linyukele kum ngokuchasene nabo.

### 3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 Kwaye qaphelani, esa sixeko sikhulu iYakobugathi, esaye simiwe ngabantu bakakumkani uYakobi, ndisibangele ukuba sitshiswe ngomlilo ngenxa yezono zabo nenkohlakalo yabo, eyaye ingaphezulu kunayo yonke inkohlakalo yawo wonke umhlaba, ngenxa yokubulala kwabo okufihlakeleyo namayelenqe; kuba yayingabo abo batshabalalisa uxolo lwabantu bam norhulumente welizwe; ke ngoko ndaye ndababangela ukuba batshiswe, ukuba ndibatshabalalise basuke phambi kobuso bam, ukuze igazi labaprofeti nabangcwele lingaphindi linyukele kum ngokuchasene nabo.

10 Kwaye qaphelani, isixeko sikaLeymeni, nesixeko sikaYoshe, nesixeko sikaGadi, nesixeko sikaKhishkumeni, ndizibangele ukuba zitshiswe ngomlilo, nabemi bazo, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo ngokubakhuphela ngaphandle abaprofeti, nokubaxuluba ngamatye abo ndaye ndabathumela ukuba bavakalise kubo malunga nenkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abo.

11 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba baye babakhuphela ngaphandle bonke, ukuze kungabikho namnye olilungisa phakathi kwabo, ndaye ndathoba umlilo ndaza ndabatshabalalisa, ukuze inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abe nokufihlakala asuke phambi kobuso bam, ukuze igazi labaprofeti nabangcwele endathi ndabathumela phakathi kwabo lingabi nakundikhalela lisuka emhlabeni ngokuchasene nabo.

12 Kwaye iintshabalalo ezininzi ezinkulu ndizibangele ukuba zize phezu kwalo eli lizwe, kwaye naphezu kwaba bantu, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abo.

13 Owu nina basindileyo ngenxa yokuba ningamalungisa ngakumbi kunabo, anisayi kuthi kaloku nje nibuyele kum kusini na, kwaye niguquke kuzo izono zenu, kwaye niguquke, ukuze ndibe nokuniphilisa?

14 Ewe, inene ndithi kuni, ukuba niya kuza kum niya kuba nobomi obungunaphakade. Qaphelani, ingalo yam yenceba yolulelwe ngakuni, kwaye nabani na oya kuza, yena ndiya kumamkela; kwaye basikelelekile abo bezayo kum.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

- 15 Qaphelani, Ndinguye uYesu Krestu uNyana kaThixo. Ndawadala amazulu nomhlaba, kwaye nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo. Ndandikunye noBawo ukususela ekuqalekeni. Ndikuye uBawo, noBawo ukum; kwaye kum uBawo ulizukisile igama lakhe.
- 16 Ndeza kwabam, baza abam abandamkela. Kwaye izibhalo ezinxulumene nokuza kwam zizalisekisiwe.
- 17 Kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abandamkeleyo, kubo ndinika ukuba babe ngoonyana bakaThixo; kwaye ngokukwanjalo ndiya kwenza kwabaninzi kangangoko baya kukholelwa kulo igama lam, kuba qaphelani, ngam inkululeko iyeza, kwaye kum umthetho kaMoses uzalisekisiwe.
- 18 Ndikukukhanya nobomi behlabathi. NdinguAlfa no-Omega, isiqalo nesiphelo.
- 19 Kwaye aniyi kuphinda ninikele kum impalalogazi; ewe, amadini enu namadini enu anyukayo aya kupheliwa, kuba andikwamkela naliphina kumadini enu namadini enu anyukayo.
- 20 Kwaye niya kunikela njengedini kum intliziyo eyaphulikileyo nomoya otyumkileyo. Kwaye lowo uzayo kum enentliziyo eyaphukileyo nomoya otyumkileyo, yena ndiya kumbhaptiza ngomlilo kwaye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwananje ngamaLeymenayithi, ngenxa yokholo lwawo kum ngelixa lenguquko yawo, ayebhaptizwe ngomlilo kwaye nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwaye bengayazi.
- 21 Qaphelani, ndize kulo ihlabathi ukuze ndizise inkululeko kulo ihlabathi, ukuze ndisindise ihlabathi kuso isono.
- 22 Ke ngoko, nabanina oguqukayo kwaye eze kum njengomntwana omncinane, yena ndiya kumamkela, kuba ubukumkani bukaThixo bubobanjalo. Qaphelani, kwabanjalo ndibubeke phantsi ubomi bam, ndaza ndabuthabatha kwakhona; ke ngoko guqukani, kwaye nize kum nina ziphelo zomhlaba, nize nisindiswe.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

### 3 Nifayi 10

- 1 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba bonke abantu belizwe baye baziva ezi ntetha, kwaye baye bangqina ngayo. Kwaza emva kwezi ntetha kwabakho inzolo elizweni kangangethuba leeyure ezininzi;
- 2 Kuba lwalulukhulu kakhulu ukhwankqiseko lwabantu kangangokuba baye bapheza ukulila nokubhombolozela ukulahlekelwa zizalamane zabo ezazibulewe; ke ngoko kwabakho inzolo elizweni kangangesithuba seeyure ezininzi.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwafika izwi kwakhona kubo abantu, kwaye bonke abantu baye baliva, kwaye baye bangqina ngalo, lisithi:
- 4 Owu nina bantu bezi zixeko zikhulu ezithe zawa, abayinzala kaYakobi, ewe, abangabendlu kaSirayeli, kukangaphi ndinhlanganisa njengesikhukukazi sihlanganisa amantshontsho aso phantsi kwamaphiko aso, kwaye ndinondla.
- 5 Kwaye kwakhona, bendiya kunihlanganisa kangaphi njengesikhukukazi sihlanganisa amantshontsho aso phantsi kwamaphiko aso, ewe, Owu nina bantu bendlu kaSirayeli, abawileyo; ewe, Owu nina bantu bendlu kaSirayeli, nina bahlala eYerusalem, njengabo abo bawileyo; ewe, bendiya kunihlanganisa kangaphi njengesikhukukazi sihlanganisa amantshontsho aso, kwaye ningavumi.
- 6 Owu nina ndlu kaSirayeli endithe ndayisindisa, kuya kuba kangaphi ndinhlanganisa njengesikhukukazi sihlanganisa amantshontsho aso phantsi kwamaphiko aso, ukuba niya kuguquka nize nibuyelo kum ngenjongo epheleleyo yentliziyo.
- 7 Kodwa ukuba kunjalo, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, iindawo zokuhlala zenu ziya kuba yinkangala kude kube lilixa lokuzalisekiswa komnqophiso kooyihlo.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba abantu bewavile la mazwi, qaphelani, baqalisa ukulila nokubhombolozela kwakhona ngenxa yokulahlekelwa zizalamane zabo nezihlobo.

### 3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njalo zaye zadlula iintsuku ezintathu. Kwaye kwakungentsasa, kwaye ubumnyama baphela basuka kubuso belizwe, kwaye nomhlaba waye wapheza ukunyikima, aza namatye apheza ukuqhekeka, zaze neencwina ezoyikisayo zaye zapheza, kwaye zonke iziphithiphithi zeengxolo zaye zadlula.
- 10 Kwaye umhlaba waye wanamathela kunye kwakhona, ukuze uzinze; kwaza ukulila, nokukhala, nesijwili sabantu ababesindile baphila saye sapheza; kwaza ukulila kwabo kwaguqukela eluvuyweni, nezijwili zabo endumisweni nokubulela kuyo iNkosi uYesu Krestu, uMkhululi wabo.
- 11 Kwaye njalo kude kuba ngoku izibhalo zazalisekiswa ezazithethwe ngabaprofeti.
- 12 Kwaye yayiyeyona nxalenye engakumbi yabantu abangamalungisa abasindayo, kwaye yayingabo babamkelayo abaprofeti baza ababaxuluba ngamatye; kwaye yayingabo babengaliphalazanga igazi labangcwele, ababesindile—
- 13 Kwaye basinda kwaye babengazikanga baza bangcwatyelwa emhlabeni; kwaye babengeyelanga enzulwini yolwandle; kwaye babengatshanga ngomlilo, babengawelwanga baza batyunyuzwa bafa; kwaye babengathwalelwanga kude kwisitshingitshane; bengazange boyiswa ngumphunga womsi nowobumnyama.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku, nabanina ofundayo, makaqiqe; lowo unazo izibhalo, makaziphengulule, aze abone aze aqaphele okokuba konke oku kufa neentshabalalo ngomlilo, nangomsi, nangoqhwithela, nangezitshingitshane, nangokuvuleka komhlaba ukuba ubamkele, kwaye zonke ezi zinto azizezokuzalisekiswa kweziprofetho zabaprofeti abaninzi abangcwele kusini na.
- 15 Qaphelani, ndithi kuni, Ewe, abaninzi bangqinile ngazo ezi zinto ekuzeni kukaKrestu, baza babulawa ngenxa yokuba bangqina ngazo ezi zinto.
- 16 Ewe, umprofeti uZenoshe waye wangqina ngezi zinto, kananjalo noZenokhi wathetha malunga nezi zinto, ngenxa yokuba zazingqina ngokungakumbi malunga nathi, abayintsalela yembewu yabo.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.



- 17 Qaphelani, ubawo wethu uYakobi wangqina kanjalo malunga nentsalela yembewu kaYosefu. Kwaye qaphelani, asiyiyo kusini na thina imbewu kaYosefu? Kwaye nezi zinto ezingqina ngathi, azibhalwanga na phezu kwamacwecwe obhedu awathi ubawo wethu uLihayi waza nawo ephuma eYerusalem?
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ekupheleni konyaka wamashumi amathathu anesine, qaphelani, ndiza kunibonisa okokuba abantu bakaNifayi ababesindile, kananjalo abo babebizwa ngokuba ngamaLeymenayithi, ababesindile, baye babonelelwa kakhulu, zaza neentsikelelo ezinkulu zathululelwa phezu kweentloko zabo, kangangokuba kamsinyane emva konyuko lukaKrestu ukuya ezulwini waye ngokwenene wazibonakalisa kubo—
- 19 Ebonisa umzimba wakhe kubo, kwaye efundisa kubo kwaye ingxelo yokufundisa kwakhe iza kunikwa apha emva koku. Ke ngoko ngokweli lixa ndenza isiphelo seentetha zam.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inso-much that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.

*UYesu Krestu waye wazibonakalisa kubo abantu bakaNifayi, njengokuba isibhwele sasiblanganisene kunye kulo ilizwe iNdyebo, kwaye waye wafundisa kuso; kwaye ngale ndlela waye wazibonakalisa kuso.*

### 3 Nifayi 11

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kubekho isihlwele esikhulu sihlanganisane kunye, sabantu bakaNifayi, macala onke etempile eyaye ikulo ilizwe iNdyebo; kwaye babemangele kwaye bemangalisiwe omnye nomnye, kwaye bebonisana omnye nomnye utshintso olukhulu nolumangalisayo olwenzekileyo.
- 2 Kwaye babencokola kanjalo ngalo Yesu Krestu, ekwakunikwe umqondiso ngaye malunga nokufa kwakhe.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa babencokola njalo omnye nomnye, beva izwi ngokungathi laliphuma emazulwini; baza baphosa amehlo abo macala onke, kuba babengaliqondi izwi elo ababeliva; kwaye yayingelozwi lirhabaxa, ingelilo nezwi elikhulu; nangona kunjalo, laye ililizwi elincinane elaye labahlaba abo baye baliva embindini, kangangokuba kwakungekho lungu lomzimba wabo elalingazange lingenzeki ukuba lingangcazele; ewe, laye labahlaba kanye emphefumleni, kwaye laye lazibangela iintliziyo zabo ukuba zitshise.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakhona baliva izwi, baza abaliqonda.
- 5 Kwaye kwakhona ilixa lesithathu baye baliva izwi, kwaye baye bazivula iindlebe zabo ukuba balive; kwaye amehlo abo ayejolise ngakuso isandi salo; kwaye baye bakhangela ngokuthe ntshongasezulwini, apho isandi sasivela ngakhona.
- 6 Kwaye qaphelani, okwesithathu baye baliqonda izwi abalivayo; laza lathi kubo:
- 7 Mboneni uNyana wam oyiNtanda, endikholiweyo nguyeyeyo, endilizukisileyo ngaye igama lam—mveni yena.

*Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.*

### 3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile, bakube beliqonda bawaphosa amehlo abo phezulu kwakhona ngasezulwini; kwaye qaphelani, babona iNdoda isehla iphuma ezulwini; kwaye yayinxibe isambatho esimhlophe; yaze yehlela ezantsi yaza yema embindini wabo; aza amehlo aso sonke isihlwele aguqukela kuyo, kwaye babengekhe balinge ukuyivula imilomo yabo, kwanomnye komnye, kwaye bengazi ukuba yayithetha ntoni na, kuba babecinga ukuba yayiyingelosi leyo yayibonakala kubo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yasolula isandla sayo yaza yabhekisa kubo abantu, isithi:
- 10 Qaphelani, Mna ndinguYesu Krestu, lowo abaprofeti bangqinayo uya kuza ehlabathini.
- 11 Kwaye qaphelani, mna ndikukukhanya nobomi behlabathi; kwaye ndisele kuloo ndebe ikrakra awathi uBawo wandinika yona, kwaye ndamzukisa uBawo ngokuthabathela kum izono zehlabathi, endithe ngayo ndathobela intando kaBawo kuzo zonke izinto ukususela ekuqalekeni.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi isihlwele sonke siphela sawela emhlabeni; kuba sakhumbula okokuba kwakuprofethiwe phakathi kwaso okokuba uKrestu kumele azibonakalise kubo emva kokunyukela kwakhe ezulwini.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathetha kubo isithi:
- 14 Phakamani nize nisondele kum, ukuze nibe nokufaka izandla zenu ecaleni lam, kananjalo nokuba nibe nokuweva amaxeba ezikhonkwane ezandleni zam kwaye nasezinyaweni zam, ukuze nazi okokuba mna ndinguThixo kaSirayeli, noThixo wawo wonke umhlaba, kwaye ndabulawa ngenxa yezono zehlabathi.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba isihlwele sabheka phambili, saza sazifaka izandla zaso ecaleni lakhe, baza baweva amaxeba ezikhonkwane ezandleni zakhe nasezinyaweni zakhe; kwaye oku baye bakwenza, bebhaka phambili ngabanye ngabanye bade bonke babe babheke phambili, kwaye baye babona ngamehlo abo kwaye baye beva ngezandla zabo, kwaye bazi ngokuqinisekileyo kwaye baye banika ubungqina, bokokuba yayinguye, lowo kwakubhaliwe ngaye ngabaprofeti, oya kuza.

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

16 Kwaye bakuba bonke bebheke phambili kwaye bezingqinele ngokwabo, baye badanduluka ngamxhelo mnye, besithi:

17 Hosana! Malibongwe igama loThixo oseNyangweni! Kwaye baye bawela phantsi ezinyaweni zikaYesu, kwaye baye bamnqula.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabhekisa kuNifayi (kuba uNifayi wayephakathi kwesihlwele) waza wamyalela okokuba makeze ngaphambili.

19 Waza uNifayi waphakama waza wabheka phambili, waza waqubuda phambi kwayo iNkosi kwaye waye wazanga iinyawo zayo.

20 Yaza iNkosi yamyalela okokuba makaphakame. Waza waphakama waza wema phambi kwayo.

21 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Ndikunika igunya lokokuba uya kubabhaptiza aba bantu xa ndiya kube kwakhona ndinyukele ezulwini.

22 Yaza kwakhona iNkosi yabiza abanye, yaza yathetha kubo ngokunjalo; yaza yabanika igunya lokubhaptiza. Kwaye yathi kubo: Ngolu hlobo niya kubhaptiza; kwaye akuyi kubakho zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu.

23 Inene ndithi kuni, ukuthi nabanina oguqukayo ezonweni zakhe ngenxa yamazwi enu, kwaye anqwenele ukubhaptizwa egameni lam, ngale ndlela niya kubabhaptiza—Qaphelani, niya kwehlela ezantsi nize nime emanzini, kwaye egameni lam niya kubabhaptiza.

24 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, la ngamazwi eniya kuwathetha, nibabiza ngegama, niya kuthi:

25 Ndinegunya endilini kiweyo nguYesu Krestu, ndiya kubhaptiza egameni loYise, neloNyana, neloMoya oyiNgcwele. Amen.

26 Kwaye ngoko niya kubantywilisela emanzini, nize niphume kwakhona emanzini.

27 Kwaye ngolu hlobo niya kubabhaptiza egameni lam; kuba qaphelani, inene ndithi kuni, ukuthi uYise, noNyana, noMoya oyiNgcwele banye, kwaye mna ndikuye uBawo, kwaye noBawo ukum, kwaye uBawo kunye nam sibanye.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them— Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

28 Kwaye ngokohlobo endiniyalele ngalo njalo niya kubhaptiza. Kwaye akusayi kubakho zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu, njengokuba kude kube ngoku bekunjalo; kungayi kubakho zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu malunga namanqaku emfundiso yam, njengokuba kude kwaba ngoku bekunjalo.

29 Kuba inene, inene ndithi kuni, lowo unomoya wembambano akanguye owam, kodwa ungowakhe umtyholi, onguyise wembambano, kwaye uyazivuselela iintliziyo zabantwana babantu ukuba balwe ngomsindo, omnye nomnye.

30 Qaphelani, le asiyiyo imfundiso yam, ukuvuselela iintliziyo zabantu ngomsindo, omnye ngokuchasene nomnye; kodwa le yiyo imfundiso yam, yokokuba izinto ezinjalo kumele zipheliswe.

31 Qaphelani, inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ndiya kuyivakalisa kuni imfundiso yam.

32 Kwaye le yiyo imfundiso yam, kwaye iyiyiyo imfundiso awathi uBawo wandinika yona; kwaye ndinika ubungqina ngoBawo, noBawo unika ubungqina ngam, noMoya oyiNgcwele unika ubungqina ngoBawo nangam; kwaye ndinika ubungqina bokokuba uBawo uyalela bonke abantu, endaweni zonke, ukuba baguquke kwaye bakholelwe kum.

33 Kwaye nobani abakholelwayo kum, baze babhaptizwe, kwabona abo baya kusindiswa; kwaye bangabo baya kubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo.

34 Kwaye nabani na ongakholelwayo kum, aze angabhaptizwa, uya kugwetywa.

35 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ukuthi le yimfundiso yam, kwaye ndinika ubungqina ngayo ivela kuBawo; kwaye nabani na okholelwayo kum uyakholelwa nakuBawo kanjalo; kwaye kulowo uBawo uya kunika ubungqina ngam, kuba uya kumvelela ngomlilo nangawo uMoya oyiNgcwele.

36 Kwaye njalo uBawo uya kunika ubungqina ngam, kwaye uMoya oyiNgcwele uya kunika ubungqina kulowo ngoBawo nangam; kuba uBawo, nam, noMoya oyiNgcwele sibanye.

37 Kwaye ndithi kwakhona kuni, kufuneka niguquke, nize nibhaptizwe egameni lam, nibe njengabantwana abancinane, nize egameni, okanye aninako nangayiphina indlela ukuzifumana ezi zinto.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

- 38 Kwaye kwakhona ndithi kuni, kufuneka niguquke, kwaye nibhaptizwe egameni lam, kwaye nibe njengomntwana omncinane, okanye aninako nangayiphina indlela ukubudla ilifa ubukumkani bukaThixo.
- 39 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ukuthi le yiyo imfundiso yam, kwaye nabani na owakhela phezu kwale wakhela phezu kolwalwa lwam, kwaye amasango esihogo awayi koyisa ngokuchasene nabo.
- 40 Kwaye nabani na oya kuvakalisa ngaphezulu okanye ngaphantsi kunoku, aze ayimisele njengemfundiso yam, yena lowo uvela kongendawo, kwaye akakhelwanga phezu kolwalwa lwam; kodwa wakhelwe phezu kwesiseko sentlabathi, kwaye amasango esihogo ahleli evulekile ukuba amamkele onjalo zakuba zifikile izikhukula kwaye nemimoya ibethe phezu kwakhe.
- 41 Ke ngoko, bhekani phambili kubo aba bantu, nize niwavakalise amazwi lawo endiwathethileyo, kuzo zonke iziphelo zomhlaba.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

### 3 Nifayi 12

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi kuye uNifayi, kwaye nakwabo babebiziwe, (ngoku inani labo babebiziwe, kwaye bamkela amandla negunya lokubhaptiza, babelishumi elinambini) kwaye qaphelani, wasolulela phambili isandla sakhe kuso isihlwele, waza wadanduluka kuso, esithi: Ninoyolo nina ukuba niya kunika inyameko kuwo amazwi aba balishumi elinambini endibonyuleyo phakathi kwenu ukuba bafundise kuni, nokuba babe zizicaka zenu; kwaye kubo ndinike amandla ukuze babe nokunibhaptiza ngamanzi; kwaye emva kokuba nibhaptiziwe ngamanzi, qaphelani, ndiya kunibhaptiza ngomlilo kwaye nangawo uMoya oyiNgcwele; ke ngoku ninoyolo nina ukuba niya kukholelwa kum kwaye nibhaptizwe, emva kokuba nindibonile kwaye nisazi okokuba ndikho.
- 2 Kwaye kwakhona, banoyolo ngakumbi abaya kukholelwa kuwo amazwi enu ngenxa yokuba niya kungqina okokuba nindibonile, nokuba niyazi okokuba ndikho. Ewe, banoyolo abo baya kukholelwa kuwo amazwi enu, baze behlele ezantsi kwinzulu yentobeko baze babhaptizwe, kuba baya kuvelelwa ngomlilo nangoMoya oyiNgcwele, kwaye baya kufumana uxolelo lwezono zabo.
- 3 Ewe, banoyolo abangamahlwempu ngomoya abathi beze kum, kuba ubukumkani bezulu bobabo.
- 4 Kwaye kwakhona, banoyolo bonke abo bakhedamileyo, kuba baya konwatyiswa bona.
- 5 Kwaye banoyolo abanobulali, ngokuba umhlaba baya kuwudla ilifa bona.
- 6 Kwaye banoyolo bonke abo balambela baze banxanelwe ubulungisa, ngokuba baya kuzaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 7 Kwaye banoyolo abanenceba, ngokuba baya kwenzelwa inceba bona.
- 8 Kwaye banoyolo bonke abahlambulukileyo intlinziyo, ngoku baya kumbona uThixo.
- 9 Kwaye banoyolo bonke abaxolisi, ngokuba baya kubizwa ngokuba bangabantwana bakaThixo.
- 10 Kwaye banoyolo bonke abo batshutshiswa ngenxa yegama lam, ngokuba ubukumkani bamazulu bobabo.

### 3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

- 11 Kwaye ninoyolo nina xa abantu beya kuningcikiva banitshutshise, kwaye beya kuthetha zonke izinto ezikhohlakeleyo ngani bexoka, ngenxa yam;
- 12 Kuba niya kuba novuyo olukhulu kwaye nivuye ngokugqithisileyo, kuba uya kuba mkhulu umvuzo wenu ezulwini; kuba babatshutshisa njalo abaprofeti ababekho ngaphambi kwenu.
- 13 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ndininika ukuba nibe yityuwa yomhlaba; kodwa ukuba ityuwa iya kuphelelwa sisongo sayo uya kuvakaliswa ngantoni na umhlaba? Ityuwa emva koko ayi kulungela nto, kodwa ukulahlelwa ngaphandle nokunyathelwa phantsi kweenyawo zabantu.
- 14 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ndininika ukuba nibe kukukhanya kubo aba bantu. Isixeko esimiswe endulini asinakufihlakala.
- 15 Qaphelani, ingaba abantu bayalikhanyisa na ikhandlela baze balibeke phantsi kwesitya? Hayi, kodwa phezu kwesiphatho sekhandlela, lize linike ukukhanya kubo bonke abo basendlwini;
- 16 Ke ngoko makukhanye kangako ukukhanya kwenu phambi kwabo aba bantu, ukuze babe nokuyibona imisebenzi yenu emihle baze bamdumise uYihlo osemazulwini.
- 17 Musani ukucinga ukuba ndize ukuba nditshabalalise umthetho okanye abaprofeti. Andizanga kutshabalalisa kodwa ukuzalisekisa;
- 18 Kuba inene ndithi kuni, iganyana elinye nasuntswana linye alidlulanga kuwo umthetho, kodwa ngam yazalisekiswa.
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani, ndininikile umthetho nemiyalelo kaBawo, ukuze nibe nokukholelwa kum, nokuze niguquke ezonweni zenu, kwaye nize kum ngentliziyo eyaphukileyo nomoya otyumkileyo. Qaphelani, ninayo imiyalelo phambi kwenu, kwaye umthetho uzalisekisiwe.
- 20 Ke ngoko yizani kum nize nisindiswe; kuba inene ndithi kuni, ukuthi ngaphandle kokuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, endiniyalele yona ngeli lixa, aniyi kubanako nangayiphina indlela ukungena kubo ubukumkani bamazulu.

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.



- 21 Nivile okokuba kuthethiwe ngabo belixa lakudala, kananjalo kubhaliwe phambi kwenu, okokuba akusayi kubulala, kwaye nabanina oya kubulala uya kuba sengozini yomgwebo kaThixo;
- 22 Kodwa nditsho kuni, ukuthi nabani na onomsindo kumntakwabo uya kuba sengozini yomgwebo wakhe. Kwaye nabanina oya kuthi kumntakwabo, Rakha, uya kuba sengozini yequmrhu; kwaye nabani na oya kuthi, Siyathandini, uya kuba sengozini kuso isihogo somlilo.
- 23 Ke ngoko, ukuba uya kuza kum, okanye uya kunqwenela ukuza kum, uze ukhumbule okokuba umntakwenu unento ngokuchasene nawe—
- 24 Hamba uye kumntakwenu, uze kuqala uxolise kumntakwenu, uze ke uze kum ngenjongo epheleleyo yentliziyo, kwaye ndiya kukwamkela.
- 25 Vumelanani kunye notshaba lwenu ngokukhawuleza ngeli lixa nisendleleni kunye nalo, hleze nangaliphi na ilixa lunizuze, nize niphoswe entolongweni.
- 26 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, anisayi kubanako ukuphuma apho nide nibe nihlawule neyona yokugqibela isenayini. Kwaye ngeli lixa nisentolongweni ingaba ninako ukuhlawula kwanenye isenayini? Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, Hayi.
- 27 Qaphelani, kubhaliwe ngabo abamandulo, okokuba anisayi kukrexeza;
- 28 Kodwa ndithi kuni, ukuthi nabani na okhangela kumfazi, ukuze amnqwenele, sele ekrexezile entliziyweni yakhe.
- 29 Qaphelani, ndininika umyalelo, okokuba ningavumeli nanye yezi zinto ukuba ingene entliziyweni yenu;
- 30 Kuba kulungile ukuba ningazilvimba kwezi zinto, ngokuthi niwuthwale umnqamlezo wenu, kunokuba ningaphoselwa esihogweni.
- 31 Kubhaliwe, okokuba nabani na oya kumlahla umfazi wakhe, makamnike uqhawulo mtshato olubhaliweyo.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorce-ment.

32 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ukuthi nabani na oya kumlahla umfazi wakhe, ngaphandle kwesizathu sokubula, umbangela ukuba akrexeze; kwaye nabani na oya kuthi amtshate lowo ulahliweyo uyakrexeza.

33 Kwaye kwakhona kubhaliwe, anisayi kufunga nixoka, kodwa niya kuzenza kuyo iNkosi izifungo zenu;

34 Kodwa inene, inene, ndithi kuni, musani ukufunga kwaphela; nangezulu, kuba liyitrone kaThixo;

35 Nangawo umhlaba, kuba usisihlalo seenyawo zakhe;

36 Ningasayi kufunga nangentloko yenu, ngenxa yokuba akunako nokwenza nonwele olunye lubemnyama okanye mhlophe;

37 Kodwa uthungelwano lwenu malube nguEwe, ewe; Hayi, hayi; kuba nantoni na ephumayo engaphezulu kunezi ibububi.

38 Kwaye qaphelani, kubhaliwe, iliso ngeliso, nezinyo ngezinyo;

39 Kodwa nditsho kuni, ukuthi aniyi kumelana nobubi, kodwa nabani na oya kunibetha esidleleni senu sasekunene, guqulela kuye nesinye kanjalo;

40 Kwaye ukuba nawuphina umntu uya kukumangalela emthethweni aze ahluthe ingubo yakho yangaphantsi, mnike nesambatho sakho kanjalo;

41 Kwaye nabani na oya kuninyanzela ukuba nihambe imayile, hambani naye ezimbini.

42 Mpheni lowo ucelayo kuni, kwaye nalowo oya kuthi aboleke kuni ningamgxothe.

43 Kwaye qaphelani kubhaliwe kanjalo, okokuba uya kumthanda ummelwane wakho uze uluthiye utshaba lwakho;

44 Kodwa qaphelani ndithi kuni, thandani iintshaba zenu, nibasikelele abo baniqalekisayo, yenza okulungileyo kwabo banithiyileyo, nize nibathandazele abo benza ngenkohlakalo kuni baze banitshutshise;

45 Ukuze nibe nokuba ngabantwana boYihlo osezulwini; kuba ulenza ilanga lakhe liphakame kwabanobubi kwaye nakwabalungileyo.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who spitefully use you and persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

46 Ke ngoko ezo zinto ezaye zizezamaxesha akudala, ezaye ziphantsi komthetho, ngam zonke zizalisekisiwe.

47 Izinto ezindala zidlule, kwaye zonke izinto zisuke zabantsha.

48 Ke ngoko ndinga ningafezeka kwananjengokuba mna, okanye uYihlo osemazulwini efezekile.

Therefore those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

### 3 Nifayi 13

- 1 Inene, inene, nditsho ukuthi ndinga ningenza amalizo kwabangamahlwempu; kodwa lumkani ukuze ningenzi amalizo enu phambi kwabantu ukuba nibonwe ngabo; okanye aninamvuzo kuYihlo osezulwini.
- 2 Ke ngoko, xa sukuba niya kwenza amalizo enu musani ukukhalisa ixilongo phambi kwenu, njengokuba abahanahanisi beya kwenza kwizindlu zesikhungo kwaye nasezitrateni, ukuze babe nokufumana uzuko lwabantu. Inene ndithi kuni, bawufumene umvuzo wabo.
- 3 Kodwa xa sukuba usenza amalizo musa ukusivumela isandla sakho sokhohlo sazi oko kwenziwa sisandla sakho sokunene;
- 4 Ukuze amalizo akho abe nokuba sekhusini; aze uYihlo obona emfihlakalweni, yena ngokwakhe uya kuvuza elubala.
- 5 Kwaye xa sukuba uthandaza akuyi kuba njengabahanahanisi, kuba bayathanda ukuthandaza, bemi kwizindlu zezikhungo nakwiimbombo zezitrato, ukuze babe nokubonwa ngabantu. Inene ndithi kuni, bawufumene umvuzo wabo.
- 6 Kodwa wena, xa sukuba uthandaza, ngena egumbini lakho langase, uze wakuba ulivalile ucango lwakho, uthandaze kuYihlo osemfihlakalweni; kwaye uYihlo, obona emfihlakalweni, uya kuvuza elubala.
- 7 Kodwa xa sukuba uthandaza, musa ukusebenzisa uphindaphindo olulilize, njengomhedeni, kuba ecinga okokobu uya kuviwa ngokuthetha kwakhe okuninzi.
- 8 Ke wena ngoko musa ukuba njengabo, kuba uYihlo uyazi ukuba zinto zini na ozisweleyo ngaphambi kokuba umcele.
- 9 Ngolu hlobo ke ngoko thandazani: Bawo wethu osezulwini, malingcwaliswe igama lakho.
- 10 Intando yakho mayenziwe emhlabeni njengokuba isenziwa ezulwini.
- 11 Uze usixolele amatyala ethu, njengokuba nathi sibaxolela abanamatyala kuthi.
- 12 Ungasingenisi ekuhendweni, kodwa usihlangule eububini.

### 3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

13 Kuba ubukumkani bobakho, namandla, nozuko, ngonaphakade. Amen.

14 Kuba, ukuba uyabaxolela abantu ukona kwabo uYihlo osezulwini uyakukuxolela nawe kanjalo;

15 Kodwa ukuba akubaxoleli abantu ukona kwabo nawe akasayi kukuxolela uYihlo okwakho ukona.

16 Ngaphezu koko, xa sukuba uzila ukutya musa ukuba njengabahanahanisi, ngembonakalo yobuso elusizi, kuba bayayonakalisa imbonakalo yobuso babo ukuze babe nokukhangeleka ebantwini ngokungathi bazile ukutya. Inene ndithi kuwe bawufumene umvuzo wabo.

17 Kodwa wena, xa sukuba uzile ukutya, yithambise intloko yakho, uze ubuhlambe ubuso bakho;

18 Ukuze ungabonakali ebantwini ukuba uzile ukutya, kodwa nje kuYihlo, osemfihlakalweni; kwaye uYihlo, obona emfihlakalweni, uya kukuvuza elubala.

19 Musani ukuziqwebela ubutyebi phezu komhlaba, apho inundu nomhlwa zithi zonakalise, kwaye namasela aqhekeze aze abe;

20 Kodwa ziqwebeleni ubutyebi ezulwini, apho kungekho nundu namhlwa othi wonakalise, kwaye nalapho amasela angaqhekeziyo angebiyo.

21 Kuba apho ubutyebi bakho bukhoyo, nentliziyo yakho kanjalo iya kubalapho.

22 Ukukhanya komzimba liliso; ukuba, ke ngoko, iliso lakho linyanisekile, umzimba wakho uphela uya kuzala kukukhanya.

23 Kodwa ukuba iliso lakho libububi, umzimba wakho uphela uya kuzala bubumnyama. Ukuba, ke ngoko, ukukhanya okukuwe bubumnyama, bungakanani ukuba nzulu obo bumnyama!

24 Akukho mntu unako ukukhonza iinkosi ezimbini; kuba usenokuyithiya enye aze ayithande enye, okanye kungenjalo uya kubambelela kwenye aze ayicekise enye. Akunako ukukhonza uThixo neSithixo Sorhalo.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

25 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi wakhangela kubo abalishumi elinambini awayebanyulile, waza wathi kubo: Khumbulani amazwi endiwathethileyo. Kuba qaphelani, ningabo abo endibanyulileyo ukuba nikhonze kubo aba bantu. Ke ngoko ndithi kuni, musani ukubuxhalabela ubomi benu, oko niya kukutya okanye oko niya kukusela; okanye nangomzimba wenu, into eniya kuyambatha. Ingaba ubomi abungaphezulu na kunokutya, nomzimba kunesambatho?

26 Qaphelani iintaka zezulu, kuba azihlwayeli, zingavuni zingakubutheli nakovimba; kanti ke uYihlo osezulwini uyazondla. Ingaba anilungile ngaphezulu kunazo kusini na?

27 Nguwuphi kuni ngokucinga nje onganako ukongeza ikubhite enye kubude bakhe?

28 Kwaye kungani nicinge ngezinxibo? Cingelani iinyibiba zasendle indlela ezikhula ngayo; azisebenzi nzima, zingasoni nakusonta;

29 Kanti ke nditsho kuni, ukuthi kwanoSolomon, kubo bonke ubungangamsha bakhe, wayengambathiswanga njengenye yezi.

30 Ngako oko, ukuba uThixo uyambathisa ngolo hlobo ingca yasendle, ethi ibekho namhla, ize ngomso iphoswe eziko, kwangokunjalo uya kunambathisa nani, ukuba aningabo abokholo oluncinane.

31 Ke ngoko musani ukuzicingela, nisithi, Siya kutya ntoni na? okanye, Siya kusela ntoni na? okanye, Siya kwambathiswa ngantoni na?

32 Kuba uYihlo osezulwini uyazi okokuba ninentswelo yezi zinto.

33 Kodwa funani tanci ubukumkani bukaThixo nobulungisa bakhe, kwaye zonke ezi zinto ziya kongezelelwa kuni.

34 Musani ke ngoko ukulicingela ingomso, kuba ingomso liya kuzicingela ngezinto zalo. Usuku lwanele bububi balo.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people. Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

### 3 Nifayi 14

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi waguqukela kwakhona kuso isihlwele, kwaye waye wawuvula umlomo wakhe kuso kwakhona, esithi: Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, Ningagwebi, ukuze nani ningagwetywa.
- 2 Kuba ngesigwebo enigweba ngaso, nani niya kugwetywa ngaso; kwaye ngomlinganiselo enilinganisela ngawo, kuya kulinganiselwa ngawo kuni kwakhona.
- 3 Kwaye kungani ukuba ubone isibi esiselisweni lomzalwana wakho, kodwa ungawugqali umqadi okwelakho iliso?
- 4 Okanye uya kutsho njani kumzalwana wakho: Ndivumele ndisitsale isibi siphume elisweni lakho—kwaye qaphela, umqadi ukwelakho iliso?
- 5 Mhanahanisindini, kuqala khupha umqadi uphume kwelakho iliso; uze ke ubone ngokucacileyo ukuze usikhuphe isibi siphume elisweni lomzalwana wakho.
- 6 Musa ukunikela loo nto ingcwele ezinjani, ungaziphosi iiperile zakho phambi kweehagu, hleze zizinyathele phantsi kweenyawo zazo, zize ziguquke kwakhona zize zikuqwenge.
- 7 Cela, kwaye uya kunikwa; funa, kwaye uya kufumana; nkqonkqoza, kwaye uya kuvulelwa.
- 8 Kuba wonke ocelayo, uyafumana; kwaye nalowo ufunayo, uyafumana; kwaye nakuye lowo unkqonkqozayo, kuya kuvulwa.
- 9 Okanye yeyiphi na indoda kuni, eya kuthi, ukuba unyana wayo ucela isonka, imnike ilitye?
- 10 Okanye ukuba ucela intlanzi, ingaba iya kumnika inyoka?
- 11 Ukuba ke nina, ekubeni ningabangendawo, niyakwazi ukunika izipho ezilungileyo kubo abantwana benu, kuya kubangaphezulu kangakanani kuYihlo osezulwini ukunika izinto ezilungileyo kwabo bacelayo kuye?
- 12 Ke ngoko, zonke izinto nantonina onqwenela okokuba abantu bazenze kuwe, yenza nawe kwangokunjalo kubo, kuba lo ngumthetho nabaprofeti.

### 3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

13 Ngena ngesango elimxinwa; kuba libanzi isango, kwaye iphangalele nendlela ekhokelela kwintshabalalo, kwaye baninzi abo bahamba ngayo;

14 Ngenxa yokuba isango limxinwa, kwaye nendlela icuthene, ekhokelela ebomini, kwaye bambalwa abo balifumanayo.

15 Lumkela abaprofeti abobuxoki, abeza kuni benxibe iingubo zeegusha, kodwa ngaphakathi baziingcuka eziqwengayo.

16 Niya kubaqonda ngeziqhamo zabo. Ingaba abantu babutha iidiliya emithaneni yameva, okanye amakhiwane ezinkunzaneni?

17 Kwangokunjalo wonke umthi olungileyo uvelisa isiqhamo esihle; kodwa umthi owonakeleyo uvelisa isiqhamo esibi.

18 Umthi olungileyo awunako ukuvelisa isiqhamo esibi, nomthi owonakeleyo ungenako ukuvelisa isiqhamo esihle.

19 Wonke umthi ongavelisi siqhamo sihle ugawulelwa phantsi, uze uphoswe emlilweni.

20 Ngako oko, ngeziqhamo zabo niya kubaqonda.

21 Asinguye wonke umntu othi kum, Nkosi, Nkosi, oya kungena ebukumkanini bezulu; kodwa lowo ukwenzayo ukuthanda kukaBawo osezulwini.

22 Abaninzi baya kuthi kum ngaloo mhla: Nkosi, Nkosi, asiprofethanga na egameni lakho, saza egameni lakho sakhuphela ngaphandle oomtyholi, saza egameni lakho senza imisebenzi emininzi emangalisayo?

23 Kwaye ke ndiya kuthi kubo: Andizange ndanazi; mkani kum, nina nisebenza ngobutshinga.

24 Ke ngoko, nabani na ozivayo ezi ntetha zam aze azenze, ndiya kumfanekisa nendoda esisilumko, eyayakhela indlu yayo phezu kolwalwa—

25 Yaza imvula yehla, zaza nezikhukula zeza, yaza nemimoya yavuthuza, yaza yabetha phezu kwayo loo ndlu; yaza ayawa, kuba yayakhelwe phezu kolwalwa.

26 Kwaye wonke ubani ozivayo ezi ntetha zam aze angazenzi uya kufanekiswa nendoda esisiyatha, eyayakhela indlu yayo phezu kwentlabathi—

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—



27      Yaza imvula yehla, zaza izikhukula zeza, yaza  
imimoya yavuthuza, yaza yabetha phezu kwayo loo  
ndlu; yaza yawa, kwaza kwaba kukhulu ke ukuwa  
kwayo.

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and  
the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell,  
and great was the fall of it.

### 3 Nifayi 15

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ephezile ngezi ntetha wawaphosa amehlo akhe macala onke kuso isihlwele, waza wathi kuso: Qaphelani, nizivile izinto endazifundisayo phambi kokuba ndinyukele kuBawo; ke ngoko, nabani na ozikhumbulayo ezi ntetha zam aze azenze, yena ndiya kumvusa ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi waqwalasela okokuba kwakukho abanye phakathi kwabo abakhwankqiswayo, kwaye bamangaliseka ngoko wayeza kukwenza malunga nomthetho kaMoses; kuba abazange bayiqonde intetha yokokuba izinto ezindala zidlule, nokokuba zonke izinto zisuke zabantsa.
- 3 Waza wathi kubo: Musani ukumangaliswa ukuba ndithe kuni izinto ezindala zidlule, nokokuba zonke izinto zisuke zabantsa.
- 4 Qaphelani, nditsho kuni ukuthi umthetho uzalisekisiwe owawunikelwe kuMoses.
- 5 Qaphelani, ndinguye owanika umthetho, kwaye ndinguye owanqophisana nabantu bam uSirayeli; ke ngoko, umthetho ngam uzalisekisiwe, kuba ndize ukuza kuzalisekisa umthetho; ke ngoko uphelisiwe.
- 6 Qaphelani, andibatshalalisi abaprofeti, kuba kangangobuninzi bazo ezingekazalisekiswa ngam, inene ndithi kuni, zonke ziya kuzalisekiswa.
- 7 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba nditshilo kuni ukuthi izinto zakudala zidlule, andikutshalalisi oko bekuthethiwe malunga nezinto ezisezayo.
- 8 Kuba qaphelani, umnqophiso endiwenzileyo kunye nabantu bam awuzalisekiswa wonke; kodwa umthetho owawunikwe kuMoses uphelisiwe ngam.
- 9 Qaphelani, ndim umthetho, nokukhanya. Khangelani kum, kwaye ninyamezele kude kube sesiphelweni, kwaye niya kuphila; kuba kulowo unyamezelayo kude kube sesiphelweni ndiya kumnika ubomi obungunaphakade.
- 10 Qaphelani, ndininikile imiyalelo; ke ngoko gcinani imiyalelo yam. Kwaye lo ngumthetho nabaprofeti, kuba ngokwenene bangqina ngam.

### 3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

11 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi, wathi kwelo shumi linambini awayelinyulile:

12 Nina ningabafundi bam; kwaye nikukukhanya kubo aba bantu, bayintsalela yendlu kaYosefu.

13 Kwaye qaphelani, eli lilizwe lelifala lenu; kwaye uBawo ulinikele kuni.

14 Kwaye akakhange nangaliphi na ilixa uBawo andinike umyalelo wokokuba mandiyithethe kubazalwana benu abaseYerusalem.

15 Engakhange nangaliphi na ilixa uBawo andinike umyalelo wokokuba mandithethe kubo malunga nezinye izizwe zendlu kaSirayeli, awathi uBawo wazikhokelela kude zaphuma kulo ilizwe.

16 Kukangaka awathi uBawo wandiyalela kona, okokuba mandixele kubo:

17 Okokuba ezinye izimvu ndinazo ezingezizo ezobubuhlanti; nazo kanjalo kufuneka ndizizise kwaye ziya kuliva izwi lam; kwaye kuya kubakho ubuhlanti obunye, nomalusi omnye.

18 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yokuba kweentamo nokungakholwa abazanga baliqonda ilizwi lam; ke ngoko ndayalelwa nguBawo ukuba ndingaphindi ndithethe malunga nale nto kubo.

19 Kodwa inene, nditshilo kuni ukuthi uBawo undiyalele, kwaye ndiyithetha kuni, into yokokuba nahlukaniswa nisuke phakathi kwabo ngenxa yobugwenxa babo; ke ngoko kungenxa yobugwenxa babo ukuba bengazi ngani.

20 Kwaye inene, nditsho kuni kwakhona ukuthi ezinye izizwe uBawo uzohlukanisile kubo; kwaye kungenxa yobugwenxa babo ukuba bengazi ngazo.

21 Kwaye inene nditsho kuni, ukuthi ningabo abo endathi ngabo: Ezinye izimvu ndinazo ezingezizo ezalo mhlambi; nazo kanjalo kufuneka ndizizise, kwaye ziya kuliva izwi lam; kwaye kuya kubakho umhlambi omnye, nomalusi omnye.

22 Kwaye abazange bandiqonde, kuba babecinga ukuba zazingabeeNtlanga; kuba babengaqondi ukuba abeeNtlanga kwakufanele baguquke ngokushumayela kwabo.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

23 Kwaye abazange bandiqonda xa ndandisithi ziya kuliva izwi lam; kwaye abazange bandiqonde okokuba abeeNtlanga akufanele nangaliphi na ilixa balive izwi lam—okokuba akufanele ndizibonakalise kubo ngaphandle kokuba kube kungoMoya oyiNgcwele.

24 Kodwa qaphelani, nina kunye nilivile izwi lam, kwaye nandibona; kwaye nizizimvu zam, kwaye nibalelwa phakathi kwezo uBawo athe wandinika zona.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

### 3 Nifayi 16

- 1 Kwaye inene, inene, nditsho kuni ukuthi ndinazo nezinye izimvu, ezingekhoyo kweli lizwe, zingekho nakulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, nakuyiphina imimandla kwelo lizwe lirhangqileyo apho bendikho ukuba ndilungiselele.
- 2 Kuba ezo endithetha ngazo zezo zingekaliva ngokwa kaloku nje izwi lam; ndingakhange nangaliphi na ilixa ndizibonakalise kubo.
- 3 Kodwa ndifumene umyalelo ovela kuBawo wokokuba ndiza kuya kuzo, nokokuba ziya kuliva izwi lam, kwaye ziya kubalelwa phakathi kwezimvu zam, ukuze kubekho umhlambi omnye nomalusi omnye; ke ngoko ndiyahamba ukuya kuzibonisa kuzo.
- 4 Kwaye ndiniyalela okokuba niya kuzibhala ezi ntetha emva kokuba ndihambile, ukuze ukuba kunokwenzeka okokuba abantu bam eYerusalem, abo bathe bandibona kwaye babe kunye nam kubulungiseleli bam, abambuzi uBawo egameni lam, ukuze babe nokufumana ulwazi ngani ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, kananjalo nangezinye izizwe abangaziyo ngazo ukuze ezi ntetha eniya kuthi nizibhale zigcinwe kwaye zibonakaliswe kubo abeeNtlanga, ukuze ngexesha elimisiweyo kubo abeeNtlanga; intsalela yembewu yabo, eya kusasazelwa kude phezu kobuso bomhlaba ngenxa yokungakholwa kwabo, babe nokuziswa ngaphakathi, okanye babe nokuziswa kulwazi ngam, uMkhululi wabo.
- 5 Ndize ke ndibahlanganisele ngaphakathi ukusuka kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba; ndiya kuthi ke ndiwuzalisekise umnqophiso awathi uBawo wawenza kubo bonke abantu bendlu kaSirayeli.
- 6 Kwaye basikelelekile abeeNtlanga, ngenxa yokholo lwabo kum, kuwo kwaye nangowo uMoya oyiNgcwele, ongqina kubo ngam kwaye nangoBawo.
- 7 Qaphelani, ngenxa yokholo lwabo kum, utsho uBawo, kwaye nangenxa yokungakholwa kwenu, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, ngomhla wokugqibela inyaniso iya kuza kubo abeeNtlanga, ukuze ngexesha elimisiweyo lazo ezi zinto zize zaziswe kubo.

### 3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

- 8 Kodwa yeha, utsho uBawo, kwabangakholwayo beeNtlanga—kuba nangona bephumile beza phezu kobuso beli lizwe, baza babasasaza abantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli; kwaye nabantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli bekhutshelwe ngaphandle basuka phakathi kwabo, baza banyathelwa phantsi kweenyawo ngabo;
- 9 Kwaye ngenxa yeenceba zikaBawo kubo abeeNtlanga, kananjalo nezigwebo zikaBawo phezu kwabantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli, inene, inene, nditsho kuni ukuthi emva kwako konke oku, kwaye emva kokuba ndibabangele abantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli ukuba bahlungiswe nokuba babandezeleke, nokuba babulawe, nokuba bakhutshelwe ngaphandle basuke phakathi kwabo, nokuba basuke bathiywe ngabo, nokuba basuke babe ngumzekelo ombi nento yokuhlekisa phakathi kwabo—
- 10 Kwaye njalo ke wayalela uBawo okokuba mandithi kubo: Ngaloo mhla xa abeeNtlanga beya kona ngokuchasene nevangeli yam, kwaye beya kuyala ivangeli yam epheleleyo, kwaye beya kuphakamela kwikratshi leentliziyo zabo ngaphezu kwazo zonke izizwe, nangaphezu kwabo bonke abantu bawo wonke umhlaba, kwaye beya kuzaliswa lulo lonke uhlobo lokuxoka, nolwamaqhinga, nolweentloni, nalo lonke uhlobo lohanahaniso, nokubulala, nobubingeleli bobuxoki, nohenyuzo, nolwamasikizi afihlakeleyo; kwaye ukuba baya kuzenza zonke ezo zinto, kwaye beya kwala ivangeli yam epheleleyo, qaphelani, uthi uBawo, ndiya kuzisa ivangeli yam epheleleyo phakathi kwabo.
- 11 Kwaye ke ndiya kuwukhumbula umnqophiso wam endithe ndawenza kunye nabo abantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, kwaye ndiya kuyizisa ivangeli yam kubo.
- 12 Kwaye ndiya kunibonisa, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, okokuba abeeNtlanga abasayi kuba namandla phezu kwenu; kodwa ndiya kuwukhumbula umnqophiso wam kunye nani, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, kwaye niya kuza kulwazi lwayo ivangeli yam epheleleyo.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

- 13 Kodwa ukuba abeeNtlanga bayaguquka baze babuyele kum, utsho uBawo, qaphelani baya kubalelwa phakathi kwabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 14 Kwaye andiyi kubavumela abantu bam, abangabendlu kaSirayeli, ukuba bedlule phakathi kwabo, baze babanyathelele phantsi, utsho uBawo.
- 15 Kodwa ukuba abayi kuguqukela kum, baze baliphulaphule izwi lam, ndiya kubavumela, ewe, ndiya kubavumela abantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, ukuba baya kudlula phakathi kwabo, kwaye babanyathelele phantsi, kwaye baya kuba njengetyuwa ephelwe sisongo sayo, ethi ke ukususela oko ingalungeli nto kodwa ukuba iphoselwe phandle, nokuba inyathelwe phantsi kweenyawo zabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 16 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, undiyalele njalo uBawo—ukuba mandinikele kwaba bantu eli lizwe njengelifa labo.
- 17 Kwaye ke amazwi omprofeti uIsaya aya kuzalisekiswa, athi:
- 18 Abalindi bakho baya kuliphakamisa izwi; ngezwi kunye baya kuvuma ingoma, kuba baya kubona ngasonye xa sukuba iNkosi iya kuyizisa kwakhona iZiyon.
- 19 Gqabhukelani eluvuyweni, vumani ingoma kunye, nina zindawo ezingumqwebedu zayo iYerusalem; kuba iNkosi ibathuthuzele abantu bayo, iyikhulule iYerusalem.
- 20 INkosi iyityhilile ingalo yayo engcwele emehlweni azo zonke izizwe; kwaye zonke iziphelo zomhlaba ziya kulubona usindiso lukaThixo.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

### 3 Nifayi 17

- 1 Qaphelani, ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi wakhangela macala onke kwakhona kuso isihlwele, waza wathi kuso: Qaphelani, ilixa lam selikufuphi.
- 2 Ndiyaqonda okokuba nibuthathaka, nokokuba aninako ukuwaqonda onke amazwi am endiwayalelwe nguBawo ukuba ndiwathethe kuni ngalo eli lixa.
- 3 Ke ngoko, hambani niye emakhayeni enu, nize nicinge nzulu ngezinto endithe ndazithetha, nize nibuze kuBawo, egameni lam, ukuze nibe nokuqonda, kwaye nizilungiselele ingomso iingqondo zenu, kwaye ndiyeza kuni kwakhona.
- 4 Kodwa ngokwalokunje ndiya kuBawo, kanaanjalokuzibonakalisa kuzo izizwe ezilahlekileyo zikaSirayeli, kuba azilahlekanga kuye uBawo, kuba uyazi apho azithabathele khona.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ethethe njalo, wawaphosa amehlo akhe macala onke kwakhona kuso isihlwele, waza wasibona sisezinyembesini, kwaye saye sakhangela kuye ngenzondelelo ngokungathi singamcela ukuba ahlale ithutyana elidana kunye naso.
- 6 Waza wathi kuso: Qaphelani, izibilini zam zizele yimfesane ngakuni.
- 7 Ingaba ninabo na abagulayo phakathi kwenu? Baziseni ngapha. Ingaba ninabo na abaziziqhwala, okanye abazimfama, abazizilima okanye abalimeleyo, okanye abaneqhenqa, okanye abashwabene amalungu omzimba, okanye abazizithulu, okanye ababandezeleke nangaluphi na uhlobo? Baziseni ngapha kwaye ndiza kubaphilisa, kuba ndinemfesane ngani; izibilini zam zizaliswe yinceba.
- 8 Kuba ndiyabona ukuba ninqwenela okokuba ndinganibonisa oko ndikwenzileyo kubazalwana benu abaseYerusalem, kuba ndiyabona okokuba ukholo lwenu lwanele lokokuba ndinganiphilisa.

### 3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.



- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ethethe njalo, sonke isihlwele, ngamxhelo mnye, saye sabheka phambili kunye nabagulayo baso nababandezelekileyo baso, neziqhwalaza zaso, kunye neemfama zaso, kunye nezimumu zaso, kunye nabo bonke abo babandezeleke nangaluphi na uhlobo; kwaye waye wabaphilisa bonke njengokuba babesiziswa ngaphambili kuye.
- 10 Kwaye baye bonke, kunye abo babephilisiwe nabo babesempilweni, baqubuda phantsi ezinyaweni zakhe, kwaye baye bamnqula; kwangobuninzi babo abo babenako ukuza kuba isihlwele saye sazanga iinyawo zakhe, kangangokuba saye sazihlamba iinyawo zakhe ngeenyembezi zaso.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wayalela okokuba iintsana zabo maziziswe.
- 12 Ke bazizisa iintsana zabo baze bazibeka phantsi emhlabeni macala onke kuye, waza uYesu wema embindini; saza isihlwele savula indlela bada bonke baba bazisiwe kuye.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke bezisiwe, waza uYesu wema embindini, wasiyalela isihlwele ukuba siguqe phantsi emhlabeni.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sakuba siguqile emhlabeni, uYesu wancwina ngaphakathi kuye, waza wathi: Bawo, ndikhathazekile ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabantu bendlu kaSirayeli.
- 15 Waza akuba ewathethile la mazwi, yena ngokwakhe kanjalo waguqa emhlabeni; kwaye qaphelani wathandaza kuye uBawo, kwaye izinto ezo awayezithandazela azinako ukubhalwa, kwaye isihlwele esamvayo saye sanika ubungqina.
- 16 Kwaye banika ubungqina ngolu hlobo: Iliso alizange labona, kwaye nendlebe ingazange yeva, ngaphambili, izinto ezinkulu kangaka nezimangalisayo njengokuba sambonayo kwaye samva uYesu ethetha kuBawo;

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

17 Kwaye akukho lwimi lunokuthetha, kungenako nakubhalwa nangowuphi na umntu, zingenako neentliziyo zabantu ukuziqiqa izinto ezinkulu kangako nezimangalisayo njengokuba sambonayo kwangokunjalo samva uYesu ethetha; kwaye akukho namntu unokuqiqa ngovuyo olwazalisa imiphefumlo yethu ngelixa sasimva esithandazela kuBawo.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ephezile ukuthandaza kuBawo, waphakama; kodwa lwabalukhulu kakhulu uvuyo lwaso isihlwele kangangokuba sasoyisakele.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYesu wathetha naso, waza wasiyalela ukuba siphakame.

20 Saza saphakama sasuka emhlabeni, waza wathi kuso: Nisikelelekile ngenxa yokholo lwenu. Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, uvuyo lwam luzele.

21 Kwaye akuba ewathethile la mazwi, walila, kwaye isihlwele sinika ubungqina ngayo, waza wazithabatha iintsana zaso, nganye nganye, waza wazisikelela, waza wazithandazela kuBawo.

22 Kwaye akuba ekwenzile oku walila kwakhona;

23 Waza wathetha naso isihlwele, waza wathi kuso: Qaphelani iintsana zenu.

24 Kwaye njengokuba sasikhangela ukuze siqaphele saye saphosa amehlo aso ngasezulwini, saza sawabona amazulu evuleka, saza sazibona iingelosi zisihla ziphuma ezulwini ngokungathi kwakusembindini womlilo; zaza zehlela ezantsi zaza zazingqonga ezo ntsana ngapha nangapha, kwaye zangqongwa ngapha nangapha ngomlilo; kwaye iingelosi zaye zabalungiselela.

25 Kwaye isihlwele saye sabona kwaye seva saza sanika ubungqina; kwaye siyazi okokuba ubungqina baso buyinyani kuba xa bebonke baye babona kwaye beva, wonke umntu ngokwakhe; kwaye ngenani sasimalunga namawaka amabini namakhulu amahlanu emiphefumlo; kwaye saye sinamadoda, abafazi, nabantwana.

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and the multitude bare record of it, and he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, and prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the midst of fire; and they came down and encircled those little ones about, and they were encircled about with fire; and the angels did minister unto them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear record; and they know that their record is true for they all of them did see and hear, every man for himself; and they were in number about two thousand and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men, women, and children.

### 3 Nifayi 18

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYesu ayalele abafundi bakhe okokuba mabazise ngaphambili isonka newayini kuye.
- 2 Kwaye ngeli lixa besahambile ukuya kufuna isonka newayini, wayalela isihlwele okokuba masihlale phantsi emhlabeni.
- 3 Kwaye bakuba abafundi bebuyile kunye nesonka newayini, wathabatha esinye isonka waza wasiqhekeza waza wasisikelela; waza wasinikela kubafundi waza wayalela okokuba mabatye.
- 4 Baza bakuba betyile baza bahlutha, wayalela okokuba mabasinikele kuso isihlwele.
- 5 Saza sakuba isihlwele sityile saza sahlutha, wathi kubo abafundi: Qaphelani kuya kubakho omnye omiselwayo phakathi kwenu, kwaye kuye ndiya kunikela amandla okokuba uya kuqhekeza isonka aze asisikelele aze asinikele kubo abantu bebandla lam, kubo bonke abo baya kukholelwa baze babhaptizwe egameni lam.
- 6 Kwaye oku ngamaxesha onke niya kuqaphela ukukwenza, kwananjengokuba ndenzile, kwananjengokuba ndisiqhekezile isonka ndaza ndasisikelela ndaza ndasinikela kuni.
- 7 Kwaye oku niya kukwenzela ukukhumbula umzimba wam, endiwubonisileyo kuni. Kwaye kuya kuba bubungqina kuye uBawo bokokuba ngamaxesha onke nithi nindikhumbule. Kwaye ukuba ngamaxesha onke nithi nindikhumbule niya kuba nawo uMoya ukuba ube kunye nani.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba ewathethile la mazwi, wayalela abafundi bakhe okokuba mabathabathe, enye yewayini kuyo indebe baze basele enye yayo, nokokuba mabanikele kanjalo kuso isihlwele ukuze sibe nokusela kuyo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba benza njalo, baza bayisela baza bahlutha, baza banikela kuso isihlwele, kwaye saye sasela, saza sahlutha.
- 10 Kwaye bakuba abafundi bekwenzile oko, uYesu wathi kubo: Nisikelekile ngenxa yale nto niyenzileyo, kuba oku kukuzalisekisa imiyalelo yam, kwaye oku kuyangqina kuBawo okokuba niyavuma ukukwenza oko ndithe ndaniyalela kona.

### 3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 Kwaye oku niya kukwenza ngamaxesha onke kwabo baguqukayo baze babaptizwe egameni lam; kwaye niya kuyenzela ukukhumbula igazi lam, endiliphalazele nina, ukuze nibe nokungqina kuye uBawo okokuba nithi nindikhumbule. Kwaye ukuba nithi nindikhumbule ngamaxesha onke niya kuba nawo uMoya wam ukuba ube kunye nani.
- 12 Kwaye ndininika umyalelo wokokuba niya kuzenza ezi zinto. Kwaye ukuba niya kuzenza ezi zinto ngamaxesha onke nisikelelekile nina, kuba nakhelwe phezu kolwalwa lwam.
- 13 Kodwa nabani na phakathi kwenu abaya kuthi benze ngaphezulu okanye nganeno kunezi abakhelwanga phezu kolwalwa lwam, kodwa bakhelwe phezu kwesiseko sentlabathi; kwaye yakuba imvula isehla, zize nezikhukula zifike, nemimoya ivuthuze, ize ibethe phezu kwabo, baya kuwa, kwaye amasango esihogo sele evulekile ukuba abamkele.
- 14 Ke ngoko nisikelelekile nina ukuba niya kuyigcina imiyalelo yam, leyo uBawo andiyalele okokuba mandininike yona.
- 15 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, kufuneka nilinde kwaye nithandaze rhoqo, hleze nihendwe ngumtyholi, kwaye nikhokelelwe kude ebukhobokeni nguye.
- 16 Kwaye njengokuba ndithandazile phakathi kwenu kwangokunjalo niya kuthandaza ebandleni lam, phakathi kwabantu bam abathi baguquke kwaye babaptizwe egameni lam. Qaphelani ndikukukhanya; ndinibekele umzekelo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi kubo abafundi bakhe, waguqukela kwakhona kuso isihlwele waza wathi kuso:
- 18 Qaphelani, inene, inene, ndithi kuni, kufuneka nilinde kwaye nithandaze rhoqo hleze ningene ekuhendweni; kuba uSathana unqwanela ukunifumana, ukuze abe nokunela njengengqolowa.
- 19 Ke ngoko kufuneka ngamaxesha onke nithandaze kuBawo egameni lam;
- 20 Kwaye nantoni na eniya kuthi niyicele kuBawo egameni lam, elungileyo, nikholelwa okokuba niya kuyifumana, qaphelani iya kunikelwe kuni.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

- 21 Thandazani kwiitsapho zenu kuBawo, ngamaxesha onke egameni lam, ukuze abafazi benu nabantwana benu babe nokusikeleleka.
- 22 Kwaye qaphelani, niya kuhlangana kunye rhoqo; kwaye anisayi kwalela nabani na ukuba eze kuni xa sukuba niya kuhlangana kunye, kodwa bavumeleni ukuba babe nokuza kuni nize ningabaleli;
- 23 Kodwa niya kubathandazela, kwaye anisayi kubakhuphela ngaphandle, kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka okokuba beze kuni rhoqo niya kubathandazela kuBawo, egameni lam.
- 24 Ke ngoko, kuphakamiseleni phezulu ukukhanya kwenu ukuze kukhanyisele ihlabathi. Qaphelani mna ndikukhanya eniya kukuphakamisela phezulu—okukoko nindibone ndikwenza. Qaphelani niyabona okokuba ndithandaze kuye uBawo, kwaye ninonke ningqinile.
- 25 Kwaye niyabona ukuba ndiyalele okokuba kungabikho namnye wenu omkayo, kodwa endaweni yoko ndiyalele okokuba manize kum, ukuze nibe nokuweva amanxeba kwaye nibone; kwangokunjalo ke niya kwenza kulo ihlabathi; kwaye nabani na owaphulayo lo myalelo uziyekela ukuba akhokelelwe ekuhendweni.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi, wawaguqulela amehlo akhe kwakhona kubo abafundi bakhe awaye ebenyulile, waza wathi kubo:
- 27 Qaphelani inene, inene, ndithi kuni, ndininika omye umyalelo, kwaye ke kufuneka ndiye kuye uBawo ukuze ndibe nokuzalisekisa eminye imiyalelo andinike yona.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, lo ngumyalelo endininika wona, wokokuba anisayi kuvumela nabani na ngokwazi athabathe kumzimba wam negazi ngokungafanelekanga, xa sukuba niya kuwunikela.
- 29 Kuba nabani na otya aze asele umzimba wam negazi ngokungafanelekanga utya aze asele umgwebo emphefumleni wakhe; ke ngoko ukuba niyazi okokuba umntu akafanelekanga ukuba atye aze asele kuwo umzimba negazi lam niya kumalela.

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

30 Nangona kunjalo, anisayi kumkhuphela ngaphandle asuke phakathi kwenu, kodwa niya kumnceda kwaye nimthandazele kuye uBawo, egameni lam, kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba aguquke aze abhaptizwe egameni lam, niya kuthi ke nimamkele, nize ke ninikele kuye ngomzimba wam negazi.

31 Kodwa ukuba akaguquki akasayi kubalelwa phakathi kwabantu bam, ukuze angabi nakubatshabalalisa abantu bam, kuba qaphelani ndiyazazi izimvu zam, kwaye zibaliwe.

32 Nangona kunjalo, anisayi kumkhuphela ngaphandle kwezindlu zenu zesikhungo, okanye kwiindawo zenu zokukhonzela, kuba kwabanjalo niya kuqhubeka ukubanceda; kuba anazi nokokuba baya kubuya kwaye baguquke, kwaye beze kum ngenjongo ephелеleyo yentliziyo, kwaye ndiya kubaphilisa; kwaye niya kuba yindlela yokuzisa usindiso kubo.

33 Ke ngoko, zigcineni ezi ntetha endiniyalele zona ukuze ningezi phantsi komgwebo; kuba yeha kulowo athi uBawo amgwebe.

34 Kwaye ndininika le miyalelo ngenxa yeempikiswano ebezikho phakathi kwenu. Kwaye nisikelelekile nina ukuba akukho zimpikiswano phakathi kwenu.

35 Kwaye ngoku ndiyahamba ndiya kuBawo, ngenxa yokuba kuyimfuneko okokuba mandihambe ndiye kuBawo ngenxa yenu.

36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ephezile ngezi ntetha, wabachukumisa ngesandla sakhe abafundi awaye ebanyulile, ngabanye ngabanye, kwanokude abe ubachukumise bonke, kwaye wathetha kunye nabo njengokuba wayebachukumisa.

37 Kwaye isihlwele asizange sikuve oko wayekuthetha, ke ngoko abazange banike bungqina; kodwa abafundi banika ubungqina bokuba wabanika amandla okunikela uMoya oyiNgcwele. Kwaye ndiza kunibonisa emva koku ukuba le mbali iyinyani.

38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ebachukumise bonke, kwafika ilifu laza lasigubungela isihlwele ukuze singabi nakumbona uYesu.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39 Kwaza ngeli lixa sasigutyungelwe wemka kubo, waza wenyukela ezulwini. Kwaye abafundi babona kwaye baye banika ubungqina bokokuba wenyukela kwakhona ezulwini.

And while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

### 3 Nifayi 19

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu enyukele ezulwini, isihlwelwe saye sachithakala, waza wonke umntu wathabatha umfazi wakhe nabantwana bakhe kwaye waye wabuyela kwelakhe ikhaya.
- 2 Kwaye kwaziswa kulo lonke phakathi kwabantu ngoko nangoko, ngaphambi kokuba kube mnyama, okokuba isihlwele simbonile uYesu, nokokuba wasilungiselela, nokokuba uya kuzibonakalisa kanjalo ngengomso kuso isihlwele.
- 3 Ewe, kwanobusuku bonke kwavakaliswa kulo lonke malunga noYesu; kangangokuba baye bathumela kubo abantu kangangokuba baba baninzi, ewe, inani elikhulu ngokugqithisileyo, laye lasebenza nzima bonke obo busuku, ukuze babenako ngengomso ukuba sendaweni leyo apho uYesu aya kuzibonakalisa khona kuso isihlwele.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso, sakuba isihlwele sihlanganisene kunye, qaphelani, uNifayi nomntakwabo lowo wayemvuse kwelabafileyo, ogama lakhe lalinguTimoti, kananjalo nonyana wakhe, ogama lakhe lalinguYona, kanjalo noMathonayi, noMathonayihah, umntakwabo, noKhumeni, noKhumenonhayi, noYeremiya, noShemnoni, noYona, noZedekiya, noIsaya—ngoku la yayingamagama abafundi awathi uYesu wabonyula—kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babheka phambili baza bema embindini wesihlwele.
- 5 Kwaye qaphelani, isihlwele sasisikhulu kangangokuba saye sabangela ukuba masahlulwe sibe ziimbumba ezilishumi elinambini.
- 6 Kwaye abalishumi elinambini baye basifundisa isihlwele; kwaye qaphelani, baye basibangela isihlwele ukuba masiguqe phantsi phezu kobuso bomhlaba, nokokuba masithandaze kuBawo egameni likaYesu.
- 7 Kwaye abafundi baye bathandaza kuBawo kanjalo egameni likaYesu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye baphakama baza balungiselela abantu.
- 8 Kwaye bakuba belungiselele kwangaloo mazwi awathi uYesu wawathetha—kungekho nto yahlukileyo kumazwi awathi uYesu wawathetha—qaphelani, baguqa kwakhona baza bathandaza kuBawo egameni likaYesu.

### 3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.



9 Kwaye baye bathandazela oko babekunqwenela ngakumbi; kwaye babenqwenela okokuba uMoya oyiNgcwele mawunikelwe kubo.

10 Kwaye bakuba bethandaze njalo behla baya enyeleni yamanzi, saza isihlwele sabalandela.

11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi wehla waya emanzini waza wamkela ubhaptizo.

12 Waza waphakama waphuma emanzini waza waqalisa ukubhaptiza. Kwaye wabhaptiza bonke abo uYesu wayebanyulile.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile bakuba bonke bebhaptiziwe baze baphume emanzini, uMoya oyiNgcwele waye wawela phezu kwabo, baza bazaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele nangomlilo.

14 Kwaye qaphelani, barberhanqwe macala onke ngokungathi kungomlilo; kwaye wehla uvela ezulwini, kwaye isihlwele saye sakungqina, saza sanika ubungqina; kwaye iingelosi zaye zehla ziphuma ezulwini zaza zabalungiselela.

15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngeli lixa iingelosi zazilungiselela abafundi, qaphelani, uYesu weza waza wema embindini waza wabalungiselela.

16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathetha kuso isihlwele, waza wasiyalela okokuba masiguqe phantsi kwakhona emhlabeni, kwanjalo okokuba abafundi bakhe mabaguqe phantsi emhlabeni.

17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke beguqe phantsi emhlabeni, wayalela abafundi bakhe okokuba mabathandaze.

18 Kwaye qaphelani, baqalisa ukuthandaza; kwaye baye bathandaza kuye uYesu, bembiza ngokuba yiNkosi yabo noThixo wabo.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYesu wemka waphuma embindini wabo, waza wahamba umganyana ukusuka kubo waza waqubuda emhlabeni, waza wathi:

20 Bawo, ndiyakubulela ngokuba unikezele uMoya oyiNgcwele kwaba ndibanyulileyo; kwaye kungenxa yokholo lwabo kum ukuze ndibanyule baphume ehlabathini.

21 Bawo, ndiya kuthandaza ukuba unikele uMoya oyiNgcwele kubo bonke abo abaya kukholelwa kumazwi abo.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

- 22 Bawo, ubanikile uMoya oyiNgcwele ngenxa yokuba bekhola kum; kwaye uyabona okokuba bayakholelwa kum kuba uyabeva, kwaye bathandaza kum; kwaye bathandaza kum ngenxa yokuba ndinabo.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku Bawo, ndiyabathandazela kuwe, kananjalo nabo bonke abo baya kukholelwa kumazwi abo, ukuze babe nokukholwa kum, ukuze ndibe nokuba kubo njengokuba wena, Bawo, ukum, ukuze sibe nokuba banye.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ethandaze njalo kuye uBawo, weza kubafundi bakhe, kwaye qaphelani, babesaqhubeka, bengaphezi, ukuthandaza kuye; kwaye babengaphindaphindi mazwi maninzi, kuba babekutyhilelwe oko mabakuthandazele, kwaye babezele lulangazelelo.
- 25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYesu wabasikelela njengokuba babethandaza kuye; kwaye imbonakalo yobuso bakhe yaye yancuma phezu kwabo; kwaye nokukhanya kwembonakalo yobuso bakhe kwaye kwakhazimla phezu kwabo, kwaye qaphelani babemhlophe njengembonakalo kananjalo neengubo zikaYesu; kwaye qaphelani ubumhlophe obo baye babugqitha bonke ubumhlophe, ewe, kwanokude kungabikho nto phezu kwalo mhlaba emhlophe kakhulu njengobo bumhlophe.
- 26 Waza uYesu wathi kubo: Qhubekani nithandaza; nangona kunjalo abaphezanga ukuthandaza.
- 27 Waza wabafulathela kwakhona, waza wacebuka umganyana omncinane waza waqubuda emhlabeni; waza wathandaza kwakhona kuye uBawo, esithi:
- 28 Bawo, ndiyakubulela ukuba ubahlambulule abo ndibanyulileyo, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, kwaye ndiyabathandazela, kananjalo nabo baya kukholelwa kumazwi abo, ukuze babe nokuhlanjululwa ngam, ngokholo kumazwi abo, kwanjengokuba nabo behlanjululwe ngam.
- 29 Bawo, andithandazeli hlabathi, kodwa abo uthe wandinika bona baphuma ehlabathini, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, ukuze babe nokuhlanjululwa ngam, ukuze ndibe nokuba kubo njengokuba wena, Bawo, ukum, ukuze sibe banye, ukuze ndibe nokuzukiswa ngabo.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

30 Kwaye akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi weza kwakhona kubo abafundi bakhe; kwaye qaphelani babethandaza ngenzondelelo, bengaphezi, kuye; kwaye waye wabancumela kwakhona; kwaye qaphelani babemhlophe, kwanjengoYesu.

31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wahamba kwakhona umganyana omncinane waza wathandaza kuye uBawo;

32 Kwaye ulwimi alunako ukuwathetha amazwi awathandazayo, engenako nokubhalwa ngumntu amazwi awawathandazayo.

33 Kwaye isihlwele saye seva kwaye sinika ubungqina; kwaye iintliziyo zaso zazivulekile kwaye saye sawaqonda ezintliziyweni zaso amazwi awathandazayo.

34 Nangona kunjalo, ayengako ukubamakhulu nokumangalisa amazwi awathandazayo kangangokuba awanako ukubhalwa, engenako nokuthethwa ngumntu.

35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ephezile ukuthandaza weza kwakhona kubafundi, waza wathi kubo: Ukholo olungaka andizange ndalubona phakathi kwawo onke amaYuda; ngako oko ndandingenako ukuwabonisa enamandla kangaka imimangaliso, ngenxa yokungabi nakholo kwawo.

36 Inene ndithi kuni, akukho namnye kuwo owakhe wazibona ezingaka ukubaluleka izinto njengokuba nibonile; engakhange azive ezingaka ukubaluleka izinto njengokuba nivile.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

### 3 Nifayi 20

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wayalela isihlwele okokuba masipheze ukuthandaza, kanjalo nabafundi bakhe. Kwaye wabayalela okokuba bangaphezi ukuthandaza ezintliziyweni zabo.
- 2 Kwaye wabayalela okokuba mabaphakame kwaye beme ngeenyawo zabo. Baza baphakama kwaye bema ngeenyawo zabo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waqhekeza isonka kwakhona waza wasisikelela, waza wasinikela kubafundi ukuba badle.
- 4 Baza bakuba bedlile wabayalela okokuba mabaqhekeze isonka, baze banikele kuso isihlwele.
- 5 Kwaye bakuba benikele kuso isihlwele wabanika kanjalo iwayini ukuba basele, waza wabayalela okokuba mabanikele kuso isihlwele.
- 6 Ngoku, kwakungekho sonka, nawayini, ziziswe ngabafundi, nasiso isihlwele;
- 7 Kodwa ngokwenene wabanika isonka ukuba badle, kananjalo nawayini ukuba basele.
- 8 Waza wathi kubo: Lowo udla esi sonka umzimba wam uwudlela umphefumlo wakhe; kwaye lowo usela kule wayini uliselela umphefumlo wakhe igazilam; kwaye umphefumlo wakhe awusokuze ulambe nakunxanwa, kodwa uya kuzaliswa.
- 9 Ngoku, sakuba isihlwele sonke sidlile saza sasela, qaphelani, sazaliswa nguMoya; saza sadanduluka ngazwinye, saza sanikela uzuko kuYesu, lowo bambonayo baze bamva.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke benikele uzuko kuye uYesu, wathi kubo: Qaphelani kaloku nje ndiyawugqiba umyalelo athe uBawo wandiyalela wona malunga naba bantu, esiyintsalela yendlu kaSirayeli.
- 11 Niyakhumbula okokuba ndathetha kuni, ndaza ndatsho ukuthi xa sukuba amazwi kaIsaya eya kuzalisekiswa—qaphelani abhaliwe, ninawo phambi kwenu, ke ngoko waphengululeni—
- 12 Kwaye inene, inene, nditsho kuni, ukuthi xa sukuba eya kuzalisekiswa ke kukuzalisekiswa komnqophiso awenzayo uBawo kunye nabantu bakhe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.

### 3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

- 13 Kwaye ke iintsalela ziya kuthi, eziya kusasazelwa kude phezu kobuso bomhlaba, zihlanganiselwe ngaphakathi zisuke empuma nasentshona, nasemazantsi nasemantla; kwaye ziya kuziswa kulwazi lweNkosi uThixo wazo, ozikhululeyo ngokuzihlawulela.
- 14 Kwaye uBawo undiyalele okokuba mandinike eli lizwe, njengelifa lenu.
- 15 Kwaye nditsho kuni, ukuthi ukuba abeeNtlanga abaguquki emva kwentsikelelo abaya kuyifumana, emva kokuba bebasasazile abantu bam—
- 16 Ke niya kuthi, nina bayintsalela yendlu kaYakobi, nibheke phambili phakathi kwabo; kwaye niya kuba sembindini wabo abo baya kuba baninzi; kwaye niya kuba phakathi kwabo njengengonyama phakathi kwezilo zehlathi, kwaye nanjengengonyama eselula phakathi kwemihlambi yezimvu, ethi ukuba iyadlula inyathelele phantsi kwaye iqwenge kube ziziqqa, kwaye akukho bani oya kuzihlangula.
- 17 Isandla senu siya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu phezu kwabachasi benu, kwaye zonke iintshaba zenu ziya kusikelelwa ngaphandle.
- 18 Kwaye ndiya kubahlanganisa abantu bam kunye njengendoda ebuthela izithungu zayo esandeni.
- 19 Kuba ndiya kubenza abantu bam abo uBawo anqophisene nabo, ewe, ndiya kulenza uphondo lwenu lube yintsimbi, kwaye ndiya kuzenza impuphu zenu zibe lubhedu. Kwaye niya kubabetha abantu abaninzi babe ziziqwenga; kwaye ndiya kuyingcwalisa inzuzo yabo kuyo iNkosi, nezinto abanazo kuyo iNkosi yawo wonke umhlaba. Kwaye qaphelani, mna ndinguye okwenzayo oko.
- 20 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, utsho uBawo, ukuthi ikrele lobulungisa bam liya kulengalenga phezu kwabo ngaloo mhla; kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baguquke liya kuwela phezu kwabo, utsho uBawo, ewe, kwanaphezu kwazo zonke izizwe zabeeNtlanga.
- 21 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba ndiya kubamilisela abantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

- 22 Kwaye qaphelani, aba bantu ndiya kubamilisela kweli lizwe, ekuzalekiseni umnqophiso endawenza kunye nooyihlo uYakobi; kwaye iya kuba yiYerusalem eNtsha. Kwaye amandla ezulu aya kuba sembindini waba bantu; ewe, kwanam ndiya kuba sembindini wenu.
- 23 Qaphelani, mna ndinguye owathi wathetha ngaye uMoses, esithi: Iya kuthi iNkosi uThixo wenu iniphakamisele umprofeti kubazalwana benu, njengam; yena niya kumphulaphula kuzo zonke izinto nantoni na aya kuthi ayithethe kuni. Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba wonke umphefumlo ongasayi kumphulaphula loo mprofeti uya kusikelwa ngaphandle usuke phakathi kwabantu.
- 24 Inene ndithi kuni, ewe, kwaye bonke abaprofeti ukususela kuSamuweli nabo balandelayo, kangangobuninzi babo abathethileyo, bangqinile ngam.
- 25 Kwaye qaphelani, ningabantwana babaprofeti; kwaye ningabendlu kaSirayeli; kwaye ningabomnqophiso awathi uBawo wawenza kunye nooyihlo, esithi kuAbraham: Kwaye kuyo imbewu yakho ziya kuthi zonke izalamane zomhlaba zisikeleleke.
- 26 UBawo ekubeni endivusele kuni kuqala, waye wandithumela ukuba ndinisikelele ngokuguqulela umntu ngamnye kuni asuke kubugwenxa bakhe; kwaye oku ngenxa yokuba ningabantwana bomnqophiso—
- 27 Kwaye emva kokuba nasikelelwa ke uBawo uzalisekisa umnqophiso awathi wawenza kunye noAbraham, esithi: Kuyo imbewu yakho ziya kuthi zonke izalamane zomhlaba zisikeleleke —ekuthululelweni koMoya oyiNgcwele phezu kwabeeNtlanga, intsikelelo leyo phezu kwabeeNtlanga eya kuthi ibenze babe namandlakazi phezu kwabo bonke, ukuya ekusasazweni kwabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 28 Kwaye baya kuba sisibetho kubo abantu beli lizwe. Nangona kunjalo, xa sukuba beyamkele ivangeli yam epheleleyo, ke ukuba baya kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene nam ndiya kububuyisela ubugwenxa babo phezu kwezabo iintloko, utsho uBawo.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

29 Kwaye ndiya kuwukhumbula umnqophiso endiwenzileyo kunye nabantu bam; kwaye ndinqophisene kunye nabo okokuba ndiya kubahlanganisa kunye ngelixa lam elifanelekileyo, okokuba ndiya kulinikela kubo kwakhona ilizwe looyise njengelifa labo, eli lilizwe laseYerusalem, eli lilizwe lesithembiso kubo ngonaphakade, utsho uBawo.

30 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba ilixa lifike, xa sukuba ivangeli yam epheleleyo iya kushunyayelwa kubo;

31 Kwaye baya kukholwa kum, ukuba ndinguYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, kwaye baya kuthandaza kuBawo egameni lam.

32 Ke abalindi babo baya kuliphakamisa izwi labo, kwaye ngezwi kunye baya kuvuma ingoma; kuba baya kubona ngasonye.

33 Ke uBawo uya kubahlanganisa kunye kwakhona, aze anikele kubo iYerusalem njengelizwe lelififa labo.

34 Ke baya kugqabhukela eluvuyweni—Vumani ingoma kunye, nina zindawo ezingumqwebedu zaseYerusalem; kuba uBawo ubathuthuzele abantu bakhe, uyikhulule iYerusalem.

35 UBawo uyityhilile ingalo yakhe engcwele emehlweni azo zonke izizwe; kwaye zonke iziphelo zomhlaba ziya kulubona usindiso lukaBawo; kwaye uBawo kunye nam sibanye.

36 Kwaye ke kuya kuphunyezwa oko kubhaliweyo: Vuka, vuka kwakhona, uze uvathe ukomelela kwakho, Owu Ziyon; uvathe izambatho zakho ezibukekayo, Owu Yerusalem, isixeko esingcwele, kuba ukususela ngoku akusayi kuphinda kuze kuwe abangolukanga nabazinqambi.

37 Zivuthulule eluthulini; phakama, hlala phantsi, Owu Yerusalem; zikhulule kwizibophelelo zentamo yakho, Owu mthinjwa wentombi yayo iZiyon.

38 Kuba itsho njalo iNkosi: Nizithengise ngokungento, kwaye niya kukhululwa ngokuhlawulelwa ngaphandle kwemali.

39 Inene, inene, nditsho kuni, ukuthi abantu bam baya kulazi igama lam; ewe, ngaloo mhla baya kwazi okokuba ndinguye othi athethe.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

40 Kwaye ke baya kuthi: Hayi ukubantle phezu  
kweentaba iinyawo zakhe lowo ozisa iindaba  
ezilungileyo kubo, ovakalisa uxolo; ozisa iindaba  
ezilungileyo kwabo bakulungeleyo, ovakalisa  
usindiso; othi kuyo iZiyon: UThixo wakho  
uyalawula!

41 Kwaye ke isibhengezo siya kubheka phambili:  
Mkani, mkani, hambani niphume apho, musani  
ukukuchukumisa oko kuyinqambi; hambani  
niphume embindini wakhe; nibe msulwa nina  
nithwele izitya zeNkosi.

42 Kuba anisayi kuphuma ngokungxama nihambe  
ngokusaba; kuba iNkosi iya kuhamba phambi  
kwenu, kwaye uThixo kaSirayeli uya kuba ngumva  
wenu.

43 Qaphelani, isicaka sam siya kusebenza  
ngobulumko; siya kuphakanyiswa kwaye  
sidunyiswe kwaye sibe phezulu kakhulu.

44 Njengokuba bebaninzi abakhwankqisiweyo  
kuwe—inkangeleko yakhe yayonakalisiwe kakhulu,  
ngaphezu kwayo nayiphina indoda, kwaye  
nokumila kwakhe konakaliswe ngaphezulu  
kunakoonyana babantu—

45 Ngokunjalo uya kuzifefa izizwe ezininzi;  
ookumkani baya kuyivala imilomo yabo kuye,  
ngenxa yokuba oko bekungaxelwanga kubo baya  
kukubona; kwaye oko babengakuvanga baya  
kukugqala.

46 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, zonke ezi zinto  
ngokuqinisekileyo ziza kufika, kwananjengokuba  
uBawo endiyalele. Ke lo mnqophiso athe uBawo  
wanqophisana kunye nabantu bakhe ngawo uya  
kuzalisekiswa; ize ke iYerusalem imiwe kwakhona  
kunye nabantu bam, kwaye iya kuba lilizwe lelifa  
labo.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the  
mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tid-  
ings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth  
good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth sal-  
vation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye,  
go ye out from thence, touch not that which is un-  
clean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that  
bear the vessels of the Lord.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight;  
for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel  
shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall  
be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was  
so marred, more than any man, and his form more  
than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall  
shut their mouths at him, for that which had not  
been told them shall they see; and that which they  
had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall  
surely come, even as the Father hath commanded  
me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath  
covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then  
shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people,  
and it shall be the land of their inheritance.



### 3 Nifayi 21

- 1 Kwaye inene ndithi kuni, ndininika umqondiso, ukuze nilazi ilixa xa sukuba ezi zinto ziya kuba malunga nokwenzeka—endiya kuhlanganisela ngaphakathi, ukusuka kusasazo lwabo olude, abantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, kwaye ndiya kumisela kwakhona phakathi kwabo iZiyon yam;
- 2 Kwaye qaphelani, le yinto endiza kuninika yona njengomqondiso—kuba inene ndithi kuni ukuthi xa sukuba ezi zinto ndizivakalisayo kuni, kwaye nendisaya kuzivakalisa kuni emva koku ngokwam, kwaye nangamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele oya kunikelwa kuni nguBawo, ziya kwaziswa kubo abeeNtlanga ukuze babe nokwazi malunga naba bantu bayintsalela yendlu kaYakobi, kwaye nangokunxulumene naba bantu bam esiya kusasazwa ngabo;
- 3 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, xa sukuba ezi zinto ziya kwaziswa kubo nguBawo, kwaye ziya kuza ngaphambili ngoBawo, zisuka kubo zisiza kuni;
- 4 Kuba kububulumko kuBawo ukuba mabamiselwe kulo eli lizwe, kwaye babekwe njengabantu abakhululekileyo ngamandla kaBawo, ukuze ezi zinto zibe nokuza ngaphambili ziphuma kubo zisiya kwintsalela yembewu yenu, ukuze umnqophiso kaBawo ube nokuzalisekiswa athe wanqophisana ngawo kunye nabantu bakhe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli;
- 5 Ke ngoko, xa sukuba le misebenzi nemisebenzi eya kuthi yenziwe phakathi kwenu emva koku iya kuza ngaphambili isuka kwabeeNtlanga, isiza kuyo imbewu yenu eya kuya iphelela ekungakholweni ngenxa yobugwenxa;
- 6 Kuba njalo kuyintando kaBawo ukuba kumele zize ngaphambili zisuka kwabeeNtlanga, ukuze abe nokubonakalisa amandla akhe kubo abeeNtlanga, kungesi sizathu ukuba abeeNtlanga, ukuba abayi kuziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, ukuze babe nokuguquka baze beze kum kwaye babhaptizwe egameni lam kwaye bazi ngamanqaku ayinyani emfundiso yam, ukuze babe nokubalelwa phakathi kwabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli;

### 3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

- 7 Kwaye xa sukuba ezi zinto zisenzeka ukuze imbewu yakho ibe nokuqalisa ukuzazi ezi zinto—iya kuba ngumqondiso kubo, wokuba babe nokwazi okokuba umsebenzi kaBawo sele uqalisile ekuzalisekiseni umnqophiso awathi wawenza kubo abantu abangabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 8 Kwaye xa sukuba loo mhla uya kufika, kuya kwenzeka okokuba ookumkani baya kuyivala imilomo yabo; kuba oko kungekaxelwa kubo baya kukubona; kwaye oko bangekakuva baya kukuqonda.
- 9 Kuba ngawo loo mhla, ngenxa yam uBawo uya kusebenza umsebenzi, oya kuba ngumsebenzi obalulekileyo nomangalisayo phakathi kwabo; kwaye kuya kubakho phakathi kwabo abo bangasayi kuwukholelwa, nangona umntu eya kuwuvakalisa kubo.
- 10 Kodwa qaphelani, ubomi besicaka sam buya kuba sesandleni sam; ke ngoko abasayi kusenzakalisa, nangona siya konakaliswa ngenxa yabo. Kanti ke ndiya kusiphilisa, kuba ndiya kubonisa kubo okokuba ubulumko bam bukhulu ngakumbi kunobuqhetseba bomtyholi.
- 11 Ke ngoko kuya kwenzeka okokuba nabani na ongayi kukholelwa kuwo amazwi am, endinguye uYesu Krestu, aya kuthi uBawo ambangele ukuba azise ngaphambili kubo abeeNtlanga, kwaye uya kunikela kuye amandla okokuba uya kubazisa ngaphambili kubo abeeNtlanga, (kuya kwenziwa nanjengoko uMoses watshoyo) baya kusikelwa ngaphandle ukusuka phakathi kwabantu bam abangabomnqophiso.
- 12 Kwaye abantu bam abayintsalela kaYakobi baya kuba phakathi kwabeeNtlanga, ewe, embindini wabo njengengonyama phakathi kwezilo zehlathi, njengengonyama eselula phakathi kweemihlambi yezimvu, ethi, ukuba iyadlula inyathelele phantsi kwaye iqwenge kube ziziqqa, kwaye akukho bani oya kuhlanguka.
- 13 Isandla sabo siya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu phezu kwabachasi babo, kwaye zonke iintshaba zabo ziya kubulawa.

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

14 Ewe, yeha kubo abeeNtlanga ngaphandle kokuba baguquke; kuba kuya kwenzeka ngaloo mhla, utsho uBawo, ukuthi ndiya kuwabulala amahashe enu asuke phakathi kwenu, kwaye ndiya kuzitshabalalisa iinqwelo zenu zamahashe;

15 Kwaye ndiya kuzisikela ngaphandle izixeko zelizwe lenu, ndize ndizikhahlele phantsi zonke iinqaba zenu;

16 Kwaye ndiya kubusikela ngaphandle ubugqwirha benu busuke elizweni lenu, kwaye nina anisayi kuphinda nibe nabo osiyazi;

17 Imifanekiso yenu eqingqiweyo nayo kanjalo ndiya kuyisikela ngaphandle, kwaye nemifanekiso yenu emileyo isuke phakathi kwenu, kwaye anisayi kuphinda ninqule misebenzi yazandla zenu;

18 Kwaye ndiya kuwancothula amagcume emithi yenu ongabikho embindini wenu, ngokunjalo ndiya kuzitshabalalisa izixeko zenu.

19 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka okokuba bonke ubuxoki, neenkohliso, noomona, neengxabano, nobubingeleli bobuxoki, nohenyuzo, zibe ziya kupheliiswa.

20 Kuba kuya kwenzeka, utsho uBawo, ukuthi ngaloo mhla nabani na abangayi kuguquka baze beze kuNyana wam oyiNtanda, bona ndiya kubasikela ngaphandle basuke phakathi kwabantu bam, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli;

21 Kwaye ndiya kwenza impindezelo noburhalarhume phezu kwabo, nanjengakubahedeni, abangazange bayive enjalo.

22 Kodwa ukuba bayaguquka baze bawaphulaphule amazwi am, kwaye bangaziqadekisi iintliziyozabo, ndiya kulimisela ibandla lam phakathi kwabo, kwaye baya kungena ngaphakathi kumnqophiso baze babalelwe phakathi kwentsalela kaYakobi, kwabo ndibanike eli lizwe njengelifa labo;

23 Kwaye baya kubancedisa abantu bam, intsalela kaYakobi, kananjalo njengabaninzi bendlu kaSirayeli njengoko beya kuza, ukuze babe nokwakha isixeko, esiya kubizwa ngokuba yiYerusalem eNtsha.

24 Kwaye ke baya kubancedisa abantu bam ukuze babe nokuhlanganiselwa ngaphakathi, abasasazelwe phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, ngaphakathi kuyo iYerusalem eNtsha.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

- 25 Kwaye ke amandla ezulu aya kwehlela ezantsi phakathi kwabo; kananjalo nam ndiya kuba sembindini.
- 26 Kwaye ke umsebenzi kaBawo uya kuqalisa ngaloo mhla, naxa sukuba le vangeli iya kushunyayelwa phakathi kwentsalela yaba bantu. Inene ndithi kuni, ngaloo mhla umsebenzi kaBawo uya kuqalisa phakathi kwabo bonke abachithachithiweyo babantu bam ewe, kwanazo izizwe ebezilahlekile, awathi uBawo wazikhokelela kude zaphuma eYerusalem.
- 27 Ewe, umsebenzi uya kuqalisa phakathi kwabo bonke abachithachithiweyo babantu bam, ngoBawo ukulungiselela indlela abanokuthi ngayo babe nokuza kum, ukuze babe nokubiza kuBawo egameni lam.
- 28 Ewe, kwaye ke umsebenzi uya kuqalisa, ngoBawo phakathi kwazo zonke izizwe ekulungiseleleni indlela abanokuthi ngayo bahlanganiselwe ekhaya kulo ilizwe lelifa labo.
- 29 Kwaye baya kuphuma besuka kuzo zonke izizwe; kwaye abasayi kuphuma ngokungxama, nangakusaba, kuba ndiya kuhamba phambi kwabo, utsho uBawo, kwaye ndiya kuba ngumva wabo.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

### 3 Nifayi 22

- 1 Kwaye ke oko kubhaliweyo kuya kwenzeka: Vuma ingoma, Owu dlolokazi, wena ungakhange uzale; gqabhukela ekuvumeni ingoma, uze udandulukele kakhulu, wena ungakhange ube nanimba yakuzala; ngenxa yokuba bangaphezulu abantwana bedlolokazi kunabantwana bomfazi otshatileyo, itsho iNkosi.
- 2 Yandise indawo yentente yakho, uze ubavumele bayitwabulule imidiyadiya yeendawo zakho zokuhlala, ungoyikiseli, zolule iintambo zakho uze womeleze iziteyki zakho;
- 3 Kuba uya kugqobhozela phambili ngakwisandla sokunene kwaye nangasekhohlo, kwaye imbewu yakho iya kubazuza njengelifa abeeNtlanga kwaye wenze ukuba eziyinkangala izixeko zihlalwe.
- 4 Musa ukoyika, kuba akuyi kuhlaziswa; ungasayi kubhidaniswa, kuba akuyi kuhlaziswa; kuba uya kulilibala ihlazo lobutsha bakho, kwaye akuyi kulikhumbula ihlazo lobutsha bakho, kwaye akusayi kuphinda ulikhumbule ihlazo lobuhlolokazi bakho.
- 5 Kuba umenzi wakho, umyeni wakho, iNkosi yemiKhosi ligama lakhe; kwaye uMkhululi wakho, OyiNgcwele kaSirayeli—uThixo wawo wonke umhlaba uya kubizwa njalo.
- 6 Kuba iNkosi ikubizile njengomfazi olahliweyo kwaye nolusizi emoyeni, nomfazi wobutsha, ngelixa lokwaliwa, utsho uThixo wakho.
- 7 Okomzuzwana bendikulahlile, kodwa ngeenceba ezinkulu ndiya kukubutha.
- 8 Ngengqumbo encinane ndabufihla ubuso bam kuwe okwethutya, kodwa ngobubele obungunaphakade ndiya kuba nemfesane kuwe, itsho iNkosi uMkhululi wakho.
- 9 Kuba oku, kunje ngamanzi kaNowa kum, kuba njengoko ndifungile okokuba amanzi kaNowa awanakube aphinde awugubungele umhlaba, ngokunjalo ndifungile okokuba andingekhe ndicatshukiswe nguwe.
- 10 Kuba iintaba ziya kumka zize iinduli zishenxiswe, kodwa ububele bam abusayi kumka kuwe, nomnqophiso woxolo lwam ungasayi kushenxiswa, itsho iNkosi leyo inemfesane ngawe.

### 3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

- 11 Owu wena ubandezelekileyo, untlitheka  
luqhwithela, nongathuzelwanga! Qaphela ndiya  
kuwabeka amatye akho ngemibala emihle, ndize  
ndisibeke isiseko sakho ngeesafire.
- 12 Ndize ndizenze iifestile zakho ngeogeyithi, entle  
kwaye namasango akho ngeekharbankile ezintle  
ezibengezelayo, kwaye yonke imida yakho ngamatye  
abukekayo.
- 13 Kwaye bonke abantwana bakho baya kufundiswa  
yiNkosi; kwaye luya kuba lukhulu uxolo  
lwabantwana bakho.
- 14 Ngobulungisa uya kumiselwa; uya kuba kude  
nengcinezelo ngenxa yokuba wena akusayi koyika,  
nakulo unkwantyo kuba alusayi kusondela kuwe.
- 15 Qaphela, ngokuqinisekileyo baya kuhlanganisana  
kunye ngokuchasene nawe, kungengam; abo baya  
kuhlanganisana kunye ngokuchasene nawe baya  
kuwa ngenxa yakho.
- 16 Qaphela, ndimdalile umkhandi weentsimbi  
ovuthela amalahle emlilweni, nozisa isixhobo  
somsebenzi wakhe; kwaye ndimdalile umonakalisi  
ukuba atshabalalise.
- 17 Akukho sikhali esenzelwe ukuchasa wena siya  
kuphumelela; kwaye lonke ulwimi oluya kwenyelisa  
ngokuchasene nawe ngesigwebo uya kulugweba. Eli  
lilifa lezicaka zeNkosi, nobulungisa babo buvela  
kum, itsho iNkosi.
- O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not  
comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair col-  
ors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.
- And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy  
gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant  
stones.
- And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord;  
and great shall be the peace of thy children.
- In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou  
shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear,  
and from terror for it shall not come near thee.
- Behold, they shall surely gather together against  
thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together  
against thee shall fall for thy sake.
- Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the  
coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instru-  
ment for his work; and I have created the waster to  
destroy.
- No weapon that is formed against thee shall pros-  
per; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in  
judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of  
the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of  
me, saith the Lord.

### 3 Nifayi 23

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ndithi kuni, ukuthi kufanele niziphengulule ezi zinto. Ewe, umyalelo ndiyaninika wokokuba niziphengulule ezi zinto ngenkuthalo; kuba abalulekile amazwi kaIsaya.
- 2 Kuba ngokuqinisekileyo wathetha ngokubhekisele kuzo zonke izinto ezinxulumene nabantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli; ke ngoko kuyimfuneko okokuba kufuneka ethethile kanjalo kubo abeeNtlanga.
- 3 Kwaye zonke izinto awazithethayo zibekho kwaye zisaya kubakho, kwanangokunxulumene namazwi awayewathethile.
- 4 Ke ngoko nika inyameko kumazwi am; zibhaleni izinto endinixelele zona; kwaye ngokwelixa nentando kaBawo ziya kubheka phambili kubo abeeNtlanga.
- 5 Kwaye nabani na oya kuwaphulaphula amazwi am aze aguquke aze abhaptizwe, kwayena lowo uya kusindiswa. Baphengululeni abaprofeti, kuba bakho abaninzi abangqinayo ngezi zinto.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi wathi kubo kwakhona, emva kokuba ezicacisile zonke izibhalo kubo ababezifumene, wathi kubo: Qaphelani, ezinye izibhalo ndinga ningazibhala, ezo ningenazo.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi kuye uNifayi: Zisa apha imbali oyigcinileyo.
- 8 Waza akuba uNifayi ezizisile iimbali, waza wazibeka phambi kwayo, yawaphosa amehlo ayo phezu kwazo yaza yathi:
- 9 Inene ndithi kuni, ndasiyalela isicaka sam uSamuweli, umLeymenayithi, ukuba maze singqine kwaba bantu, okokuba ngomhla aya kuthi uBawo alizukise igama lakhe ngam okokuba kwakukho abaninzi abangcwele abaya kuvuka kwelabafileyo, kwaye baya kubonakala kwabaninzi, kwaye baya kulungiselela kubo. Yaza wathi kubo: Kwakungenjalo na?
- 10 Baza abafundi bayo bayiphendula baza bathi: Ewe, Nkosi, uSamuweli waye waprofetha ngokwamazwi akho, kwaye onke azalisekiswa.

### 3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

- 11 Waza uYesu wathi kubo: Yintoni isizathi sokuba ingabhalwa le nto, okokuba abaninzi abangcwele baye bavuka baza babonakala kwabaninzi baza balungiselela kubo?
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi wakhumbula okokuba le nto ibingabhalwanga.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYesu wayalela okokuba mayibhalwe; ke ngoko yabhalwa njengokuyalela kwakhe.
- 14 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ezicacisile zonke izibhalo ngobunye, ababezibhalile, wabayalela okokuba mabazifundise izinto ezo wayezicacisile kubo.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written, he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.



### 3 Nifayi 24

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabayalela okokuba mabawabhale amazwi awathi uBawo wawanikela kuMalaki, ekwakumele abaxelele wona. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba ebhaliwe wawacacisa. Kwaye la ngamazwi awathi wabaxelela wona esithi: Wathetha nje uBawo kuMalaki—Qaphelani, ndiya kuthumela umthunywa wam, kwaye uya kulungisa indlela phambi kwam, kwaye iNkosi leyo niya kuyifuna iya kufika ngequbuliso etempileni yayo, naye umthunywa womnqophiso, enivuyayo ngaye; qaphelani, uya kuza, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi.
- 2 Kodwa ngubani oya kuwunyamezela umhla wokuza kwayo, kwaye ngubani oya kuma xa sukuba ibonakala? Kuba injengomlilo womcokisi, nanjengesepha yomxovuli.
- 3 Kwaye iya kuhlala njengomcokisi nomcoci wesilivere; kwaye iya kuhlambulula oonyana bakaLevi, ize ibahlambulule njengegolide nesilivere, ukuze babe nokunikela eNkosini umnikelo ngobulungisa.
- 4 Ke umnikelo oya kuvela kwaYuda naseYerusalem uya kuba myoli kuyo iNkosi, njengakwimihla yakudala nanjengakwiminyaka yangaphambili.
- 5 Kwaye ndiya kuza kufuphi nakuni emgwebeni; kwaye ndiya kuba lingqina elikhawulezayo ngokuchasene nabakhafuli, nangokuchasene nabakrexezi, nangokuchasene nabafungi ababubuxoki, nangokuchasene nabo bacinizela umqeshwa emvuzweni wakhe, umhlolokazi noyinkedama, nabo bagxotha umhambi, baze bangandoyiki mna, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi.
- 6 Kuba ndiyiyo iNkosi, andiguquguquki, ke ngoko nina bonyana bakaYakobi anibhangiswanga.
- 7 Kwanokususela kwimihla yooyihlo nimkile kuyo imimiselo yam, kwaye aniyigcinanga. Buyelani kum kwaye nam ndiya kubuyela kuni, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi. Kodwa nina nithi: Siza kubuyela ngaluphi uhlobo?
- 8 Ingaba umntu uya kumphanga na uThixo? Kanti ke nindiphangile. Kodwa nithi: Sikuphange ngani? Ngezishumi neminikelo.

### 3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

- 9 Niqalekiswe ngesiqalekiso, kuba nindiphangile, kwanaso esi sizwe siphelile.
- 10 Ziziseni zonke izishumi kuvimba, ukuze kubekho ukudla endlwini yam; nize nindicikide ngale nto, yatsho iNkosi yemiKhosi, okokuba andisayi kunivulela na iingcango zezulu, ndize ndinithululele intsikelelo ukuze kungabikho ndawo yaneleyo yokuyamkela.
- 11 Kwaye ndiya kumkhalimela umtshabalalisi ngenxa yenu, kwaye akasayi kuzitshabalalisa iziqhamo zomhlaba wenu; singasayi kuziwise iziqhamo isidiliya senu ngaphambi kwexesha emasimini, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi.
- 12 Kwaye zonke izizwe ziya kunibiza ngokuba nisquelelele, kuba niya kuba lilizwe elivuyayo, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi.
- 13 Amazwi enu ebekhaliphile ngokuchasene nam, itsho iNkosi. Kanti ke nithi: Sithethe ntoni ngokuchasene nawe?
- 14 Nithe: kulilize ukukhonza uThixo, kwaye kusinceda ntoni na ukuba siyigcinile imimiselo nokuba sihambe ngosizi phambi kweNkosi yemiKhosi?
- 15 Kwaye ngoku sibabiza abanekratshi ngokuba bonwabile; ewe, abo basebenza inkohlakalo baphumelele; ewe, abo balinga uThixo ngokwenene bahlangulwe.
- 16 Ke abo babeyoyika iNkosi babethetha rhoqo omnye komnye, yaza iNkosi yaphulaphula yaza yeva; kwaye incwadi yenkumbulo yabhalwa phambi kwayo ibhalelwa abo babeyoyika iNkosi, kwaye nabo babelikhumbula igama layo.
- 17 Kwaye baya kuba ngabam, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi, ngaloo mhla xa sukuba ndiya kulungisa amatye am axabisekileyo; kwaye ndiya kubasindisa njengendoda esindisa owayo unyana oyikhonzayo.
- 18 Ke niya kubuya nize nahlule phakathi kwabangamalungisa nabakhohlakeleyo, phakathi kwakhe okhonza uThixo nalowo ungamkhonziyo.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

### 3 Nifayi 25

- 1 Kuba qaphelani, umhla uyeza oya kutshisa njengeziko; kwaye bonke abanekratshi, ewe, nabo bonke abo benza ngenkohlakalo, baya kuba ziindiza; kwaye umhla ozayo uya kubatshisa baphele, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi, ukuze ingabashiya nazingcambu nasebe.
- 2 Kodwa kuni nina niloyikayo igama lam, uNyana woBulungisa uya kuphakama enokuphilisa emaphikweni akhe; kwaye niya kubheka phambili nize nikhule njengamankonyane esitalini.
- 3 Kwaye niya kubanyathelela phantsi abakhohlakeleyo; kuba baya kuba luthuthu phantsi kweentende zeenyawo zenu ngomhla endiya kuthi ndikwenze oku, itsho iNkosi yemiKhosi.
- 4 Khumbulani nina umthetho kaMoses, isicaka sam, endawuyalela kuye eHorebhe ndiwuyalela uSirayeli wonke, kunye nemimiselo nezigwebo.
- 5 Qaphelani, ndiya kunithumelela uEliya umprofeti ngaphambi kokufika komhla omkhulu nowoyikekayo weNkosi;
- 6 Kwaye uya kuyjikela intliziyo yoobawo ebantwaneni, nentliziyo yabantwana kooyise, hleze ndifike ndize ndiwohlwaye umhlaba ngesiqalekiso.

### 3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

### 3 Nifayi 26

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ezixelile ezi zinto wazicacisa kuso isihlwele, kwaye waye wazicacisa zonke izinto kubo, kunye ezinkulu nezincinane.
- 2 Waza wathi: Ezi zibhalo, ebeningenazo kuni, uBawo uyalele okokuba mandizinikele kuni; kuba yayibubulumko kuye ukuba mazinikelwe kwizizukulwana zexesha elizayo.
- 3 Kwaye waye wacacisa zonke izinto, kwanokususela ekuqaleni kude kube lilixa lokuba eya kufika esebuqaqawulini bakhe—ewe, kwanazo zonke izinto eziya kwenzeka phezu kobuso bomhlaba, kwanokude kube zizinto eziziqalelo eziya kunyityilikiswa ngobushushu obutshisayo, kwaye nomhlaba uya kusongwa njengencwadi, kwaye amazulu nomhlaba aya kudlula;
- 4 Kwanokude kuye kumhla omkhulu nowokugqibela, xa sukuba bonke abantu, nazo zonke izalamane, nazo zonke izizwe neelwimi, ziya kuma ngaphambi koThixo, ukuba zigwetywe ngemisebenzi yabo, nokuba ilungile okanye nokuba mibi—
- 5 Ukuba ilungile, ukuya kuvuko lobomi obungunaphakade; ize ukuba mibi, ukuya kuvuko lomgwebo; zinxusene, enye ikwesinye isandla kwaye nenye ikwesinye isandla, ngokwenceba, nobulungisa, nobungcwele obukuKrestu, owayekho ngaphambi kokuba ihlabathi liqale.
- 6 Kwaye kalokunje akunako ukubhalwa kule ncwadi kwanesinye ekhulwini ngezinto athe uYesu ngokwenene wazifundisa kubo abantu;
- 7 Kodwa qaphelani amacwecwe kaNifayi aqulethe inxalenye engakumbi yezinto awazifundisa abantu.
- 8 Kwaye ezi zinto ndizibhalile, ezinyinxalenye enganeno yezinto awathi wazifundisa abantu; kwaye ndizibhale ngenjongo yokuba zibe nokuziswa kwakhona kubo aba bantu, zisuka kwabeeNtlanga, ngokwamazwi uYesu awathethileyo.

### 3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

- 9 Kwaye xa sukuba beya kuba bekwamkela oku, okuyimfuneko ukuba babenako kuqala, kukuvavanya ukholo lwabo, kwaye ukuba kuya kwenzeka okokuba baya kuzikholelwa ezi zinto ke, ezona zinto zinentsingiselo enkulu ziya kubonakaliswa kubo.
- 10 Kwaye ukuba kuya kwenzeka ukuba bangabinakuzikholelwa ezi zinto, ke ezona zinto zinentsingiselo enkulu ziya kufihlwa kubo, ukuya ekugwetyweni kwabo.
- 11 Qaphelani, bendisele ndiza kuzibhala, zonke ezazikrolwe phezu kwamacwecwe kaNifayi, kodwa iNkosi yakwalela, isithi: Ndiya kuluvavanya ukholo lwabantu bam.
- 12 Ke ngoko mna, Mormoni, ndibhala izinto endiziyalelweyo yiNkosi. Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndiyapheza ngeentetha zam, ndize ndiqhubeke ukubhala izinto endiziyalelweyo.
- 13 Ke ngoko, ndinga ningaqonda okokuba iNkosi ngokwenene yaye yabafundisa abantu, kangangesithuba seentsuku ezintathu; kwaye emva koko waye wazibonakalisa kubo rhoqo, kwaye waye wasiqhekeza isonka rhoqo, waza wasisikelela, waza wasinikela kubo.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wafundisa kwaye walungiselela kubo abantwana baso isihlwele ebesele kuthethiwe ngaso, kwaye waye wazikhulula iilwimi zabo, baza bathetha kooyise izinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo, kwanezinkulu ngaphezulu kunezo wayezityhilile kubo abantu; kwaye wawakhulula amalwimi abo kangangokuba babanakho ukuthetha.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba enyukele ezulwini—isihlandlo sesibini sokuba ebezibonakalisile kubo, kwaye ebemkile ukuya kuBawo, emva kokuba ephilise bonke abagulayo babo, neziqhwalala zabo, waze wavula namehlo eemfama zabo waza wavula neendlebe zezithulu kwaye ngokwenene enze lonke uhlobo lokunyanga phakathi kwabo, kwaye evuse umntu kwelabafileyo, kwaye ewabonakalisile amandla akhe kubo, kwaye enyukele kuye uBawo—

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

16 Qaphelani, kwenzekile ngengomso okokuba isihlwele sahlanganisana kunye, kwaye bababona baza babeva aba bantwana; ewe, kwaneentsana zaye zayivula imilomo yazo zaza zathetha izinto ezimangalisayo; kwaye izinto ezaye zizithetha zalelwa ukuba kubekho nawuphina umntu ozibhalayo.

17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abafundi abo uYesu wayebanyulile baqalisa ukususela kwelo lixa ukubheka phambili ukubhaptiza nokufundisa abaninzi kangangokuba baye beza kubo; kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abo babhaptizwayo egameni likaYesu bazaliswa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele.

18 Kwaye abaninzi babo babona baza beva izinto ezingathethekiyo, ekungekho mthethweni ukuba zibhalwe.

19 Baza bafundisa, kwaye baye balungiselela omnye komnye; kwaye babenezinto bonke ngokufanayo phakathi kwabo, wonke umntu esenza ngobulungisa, omnye kunye nomnye.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye benza zonke izinto nanjengokuba uYesu wayebayalele.

21 Kwaye bona abo babebhaptizwe egameni likaYesu babebizwa ngokuba libandla likaKrestu.

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

And they taught, and did minister one to another; and they had all things common among them, every man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

### 3 Nifayi 27

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njengokuba abafundi bakaYesu babethabatha uhambo kwaye babeshumayela izinto ababezivile kwaye bezibonile, kwaye babebhaptiza egameni likaYesu, kwenzekile okokuba abafundi babehlenganisene kunye kwaye bemaneyene ngomthandazo onamandlakazi kwaye bezile ukutya.
- 2 Waza uYesu kwakhona wazibonakalisa kubo, kuba babethandaza kuBawo egameni lakhe; waza uYesu weza wema embindini wabo, waza wathi kubo: Yintoni eninqwenela ukuba ndinganinika yona?
- 3 Baza bathi kuye: Nkosi, sinqwenela ukuba ungasixelela igama esinokuthi silibize ngalo eli bandla; kuba kukho iimpikiswano phakathi kwabantu ngokunxulumene nalo mba.
- 4 Yaza iNkosi yathi kubo: Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, kungani ukuba abantu mabambombozele kwaye baphikisane ngenxa yale nto?
- 5 Ingaba abazifundanga na izibhalo, ezithi kufuneka nizithathele phezu kwenu igama likaKrestu, eli ligama lam? Kuba ngalo eli gama niya kwaziwa ngomhla wokugqibela;
- 6 Kwaye nabani na othabathela phezu kwakhe igama lam, aze anyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, kwayena lowo uya kusindiswa ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 7 Ke ngoko, nantoni na eniya kuyenza, niya kuyenza ngegama lam; ke ngoko niya kulibiza ibandla ngegama lam; kwaye niya kucela kuBawo egameni lam ukuze alisikelele ibandla ngenxa yam.
- 8 Kwaye lingaba libandla lam njani ngaphandle kokuba libizwe ngegama lam? Kuba ukuba ibandla libizwa ngegama likaMoses ke libandla likaMoses; okanye ukuba libizwa ngegama lomntu ke libandla lomntu; kodwa ukuba libizwa ngegama lam ke libandla lam, ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba bakhelwe phezu kwevangeli yam.
- 9 Inene ndithi kuni, ukuthi nina nakhelwe phezu kwevangeli yam; ke ngoko niya kucela naziphi na izinto enithi nizicele, egameni lam; ke ngoko ukuba nicela kuBawo, nicelela ibandla, ukuba kungegama lam uBawo uya kuniva;

### 3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

10 Kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba ibandla lakhelwe phezu kwevangeli yam ke uBawo uya kuyibonisa eyakhe imisebenzi kulo.

11 Kodwa ukuba ayakhelwanga phezu kwevangeli yam, kwaye yakhelwe phezu kwemisebenzi yabantu, okanye phezu kwemisebenzi yomtyholi, inene ndithi kuni banovuyo ngemisebenzi yabo okwexesha, kwaye kungekudala isiphelo siyeza, kwaye bagawulelwa phantsi baze baphoswe emlilweni, apho kungekho kubuya khona.

12 Kuba imisebenzi yabo iyabalandela, kuba kungenxa yemisebenzi yabo ukuba bagawulelwe phantsi; ke ngoko zikhumbuleni izinto ezo endinixelele zona.

13 Qaphelani, ndininikile ivangeli yam, kwaye le vangeli yam endininike yona—okokuba ndeza ehlabathini ukuba ndenze intando kaBawo, ngenxa yokuba uBawo wandithuma.

14 Kwaye uBawo wandithuma ukuze ndibe nokuphakanyiselwa phezulu emnqamlezweni; kwaye emva kokuba ndiphakanyiselwe phezulu emnqamlezweni, ukuze ndibe nokusondeza bonke abantu kum, ukuze njengokuba bendiphakanyiselwe phezulu ngabantu kwangokunjalo abantu baya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu nguBawo, ukuba beme phambi kwam, ukuba bagwetywe ngemisebenzi yabo, nokuba mihle okanye nokuba mibi—

15 Kwaye kungesi sizathu ukuba ndiphakanyiselwe phezulu; ke ngoko, ngokwamandla kaBawo ndiya kubasondeza bonke abantu kum, ukuze babe nokugwetywa ngokwemisebenzi yabo.

16 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, okokuba nabani na oqukayo aze abhaptizwe egameni lam uya kuzaliswa; kwaye ukuba unyamezela kuye esiphelweni, qaphelani, yena ndiya kumgweba njengongenatyala phambi koBawo ngaloo mhla xa sukuba ndiya kuma ukuba ndigwebe ihlabathi.

17 Kwaye lowo unganyamezeliyo kuye esiphelweni, kwayena ngulowo uya kuthi kanjalo agawulelwe phantsi aze aphoswe emlilweni, apho bangenakuphinda babuye khona, ngenxa yobulungisa bukaBawo.

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.



- 18 Kwaye eli lilizwi athe walinikela kubantwana babantu. Kwaye ngesi sizathu uzalisekisa amazwi athe wawanika, kwaye akaxoki, kodwa uzalisekisa onke amazwi akhe.
- 19 Kwaye akukho nto iyinqambi enako ukungena kubo ubukumkani bakhe; ke ngoko ayikho into engenayo ekuphumleni kwakhe ngaphandle kokuba ibe ngabo bazihlambileyo iingubo zabo ngegazi lam, ngenxa yokholo lwabo, nenguquko lwazo zonke izono zabo, nokuthembeka kwabo ukuya esiphelweni.
- 20 Ngoku lo ngumyalelo: Guqukani, nonke nina ziphelo zomhlaba, kwaye nize kum kwaye nibhaptizwe egameni lam, ukuze nibe nokungcwaliswa ngolwamkelo loMoya oyiNgcwele, ukuze nibe nokuma ningenachaphaza phambi kwam ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 21 Inene, inene, ndithi kuni, le yivangeli yam; kwaye niyazazi izinto ekufuneka nizenze ebandleni lam; kuba imisebenzi enindibone ndiyenza leyo kanjalo niya kuyenza; kuba oko nindibone ndikwenza kwanako oko niya kukwenza;
- 22 Ke ngoko, ukuba niyazenza ezi zinto nisikelelwe nina, kuba niya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 23 Zibhaleni izinto enizibonileyo naze naziva, ngaphandle kokuba kube zezo zalelweyo.
- 24 Yibhaleni imisebenzi yaba bantu, eya kubakho, kwananjengokuba bekubhaliwe, ngaleyo yayikho.
- 25 Kuba qaphelani, okuphuma kwiincwadi ebezibhaliwe, nezo ziya kubhalwa, aba bantu baya kugwetywa ngazo, kuba ngazo imisebenzi yabo iya kwaziwa ebantwini.
- 26 Kwaye qaphelani, zonke izinto zibhalwe ngenxa kaBawo; ke ngoko okuphuma kuzo iincwadi eziya kubhalwa ihlabathi liya kugwetywa ngazo.
- 27 Kwaye yazini nina okokuba niya kuba ngabagwebi baba bantu, ngokwesigwebo endiya kuninika sona, esiya kuba silungile. Ke ngoko, ngabantu abaluhlobo luni ekufanele nibe ngabo? Inene ndithi kuni, kwananjengokuba ndinjalo mna.
- 28 Kwaye ngoku ndiya kuBawo. Kwaye inene ndithi kuni, nazintozini na eniya kuzicela kuBawo egameni lam niya kuzinikwa.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

- 29 Ke ngoko, celani, kwaye niya kuphiwa; nkqonkqozani, niya kuvulelwa, kuba lowo ucelayo, uyaphiwa; kwaye kulowo unkqonkqozayo, kuya kuvulwa.
- 30 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, uvuyo lwam lukhulu, kwanasekuphuphumaleni, ngenxa yenu, kananjalo nesi sizukulwana; ewe, kwanoBawo uyagcoba, kananjalo zonke iingelosi ezingcwele, ngenxa yenu nesi sizukulwana; kuba akukho nabani na kuso olahlekileyo.
- 31 Qaphelani, ndinga ningaqonda; kuba ndithetha bona abo kaloku nje baphilayo besi sizukulwana; kwaye akukho nabani na kuso olahlekileyo; kwaye ngabo ndinovuyo oluzeleyo.
- 32 Kodwa qaphelani, ndiva usizi ngenxa yesizukulwana sesine ukususela kwesi sizukulwana, kuba sikhokelelwe kude ekuthinjweni nguye owaye kwanjengokuba unyana wesihogo wayenjalo; kuba siya kundithengisa ngesilivere nangegolide, nangaloo nto lithi inundu liyonakalise naleyo anokuthi amasela aqhekeze aze ayibe. Kwaye ngaloo mhla ndiya kubavelela, nangokujikela imisebenzi yabo phezu kwezabo iintloko.
- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ephezile ngezi ntetha wathi kubo abafundi bakhe: Ngenani nina ngaphakathi ngesango elimxinwa; kuba limxinwa isango, kwaye icuthene nendlela ekhokelela ebomini, kwaye bambalwa abathi bayifumane; kodwa libanzi isango, kwaye iphangalele nendlela ekhokelela ekufeni, kwaye baninzi abahamba ngayo, kude kufike ubusuku, apho kungeko mntu unokusebenza.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fullness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.

### 3 Nifayi 28

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi, wathetha nabafundi bakhe, ngabanye ngabanye, esithi kubo: Ingaba yintoni na eniyinqwenelayo kum, emva kokuba ndihambile ukuya kuBawo?
- 2 Baza bonke bathetha, ngaphandle kwabathathu, besithi: Sinqwenela okokuba emva kokuba siphile kangangeminyaka yomntu, ukuba ubulungiseleli bethu, osibizele kubo, bungaphela, ukuze sibe nokuza kuwe ngokukhawulezileyo kubukumkani bakho.
- 3 Waza wathi kubo: Nisikelelekile nina ngenxa yokuba ninqwenela le nto kum; ke ngoko, emva kokuba ninamashumi asixhenxe ubudala niya kuza kum ebukumkanini bam; kwaye niya kufumana ukuphumla kunye nam.
- 4 Kwaye akuba ethethile nabo, waguqkela kuso isithathu, waza wathi kuso: Ingaba yintoni endinokunenzela yona, ndakuba ndihambile ukuya kuBawo?
- 5 Baza babalusizi ezintliziyweni zabo, kuba babengekhe balinge ukuyithetha kuye into ababeyinqwenela.
- 6 Waza wathi kubo: Qaphelani, ndiyazazi iingcinga zenu, kwaye ninqwenele into awathi uYohane, intandane yam, owaye ekunye nam kubulungiseleli bam, ngaphambi kokuba ndiphakanyiselwe phezulu ngamaYuda, wayinqwenela kum.
- 7 Ke ngoko, nisikelelekile ngakumbi nina, kuba anisokuze nikungcamle ukufa; kodwa niya kuphila ukuze nizibone zonke izenzo zikaBawo kubo abantwana babantu, kwanokude kube zonke izinto ziya kuzalisekiswa ngokwentando kaBawo, xa sukuba ndiya kuza ndisebuqaqawulini bam ndinamandla ezulu.
- 8 Kwaye anisokuze ninyamezele iintlungu zokufa; kodwa xa sukuba ndiya kuza ndisebuqaqawulini bam niya kuguqulwa ngokuqhwayaza kweliso ukusuka emzimbeni onokufa ukuya ekungafini; kwaye ke niya kusikelelwa ebukumkanini bukaBawo.

### 3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

- 9 Kwaye kwakhona, anisayi kuba nantlungu ngeli lixa niya kuba nihleli nisenyameni, nantsizi ngaphandle kokuba kungezono zehlabathi; kwaye konke oku ndiya kukwenza ngenxa yento eniyinqweneleyo kum, kuba ninqwenele okokuba nibe nokuzisa imiphefumlo yabantu kum, ngeli lixa ihlabathi lisamile.
- 10 Kwaye kungesi sizathu niya kuba novuyo olupheleleyo; kwaye niya kuhlala phantsi ebukumkanini bukaBawo; ewe, uvuyo lweni luya kuphelela, kwananjengokuba uBawo endinike uvuyo olupheleleyo; kwaye niya kuba kwananjengokuba ndinjalo mna, kwaye mna ndikwanje ngokuba uBawo enjalo; kwaye uBawo kunye nam sibanye;
- 11 Kwaye uMoya oyiNgcwele unika ubungqina ngoBawo kunye nam; kwaye uBawo unika uMoya oyiNgcwele kubo abantwana babantu, ngenxa yam.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uYesu ewathethile la mazwi, wabachukumisa bebonke ngomnwe wakhe ngaphandle kwesithathu esasiya kushiyeka, waza ke wemka.
- 13 Kwaye qaphelani, amazulu avuleka, baza baxwilelwa emazulwini, baza babona kwaye beva izinto ezingathethekiyo.
- 14 Kwaye balelwa ukuba bangazithetha; kungazange kunikelwe kubo mandla wokokuba bangazithetha izinto abathi bazibona kwaye baziva;
- 15 Kwaye nokuba babesenyameni okanye ngaphandle kwayo, babengenako ukuxela; kuba kwaye kwangathi kubo kwakufana nokwenziwa kumila kumbi kwabo, ukuze baguqulwe kulo mzimba wenyama ukuya kwimo yokungabi nakufa, ukuze babe nokuzibona izinto zikaThixo.
- 16 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba baye kwakhona balungiselela phezu kobuso bomhlaba; nangona kunjalo abazange balungiselele ngezinto ababezivile kwaye bazibona, ngenxa yomyalelo ababewunikiwe emazulwini.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, nokuba babenokufa okanye ukungabi nakufa, ukususela ngomhla wokwenziwa kumila kumbi kwabo, andazi;

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

- 18 Kodwa ndazi kangaka, ngokwembali ebini kiwe—  
 baye babheka phambili phezu kobuso belizwe,  
 kwaye baye balungiselela kubo bonke abantu,  
 bebamanya abaninzi kangangoko ebandleni  
 njengokuba babeya kukholelwa ekushumayeleni  
 kwabo; bebabhaptiza, kwaye kangangobuninzi babo  
 ababhaptizwayo baye bamkela uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 19 Kwaye baphoswa entolongweni ngabo  
 babengengabo abebandla. Kwaye iintolongo  
 azizange zibe nokubagcina, kuba zaqhekeka kubini.
- 20 Baza baphoswa phantsi emhlabeni; kodwa baye  
 bawohlwaya umhlaba ngelizwi likaThixo,  
 kangangokuba ngamandla akhe bahlangulwa  
 baphuma enzulwini yomhlaba; kwaye ke ngoko  
 abazange babenako ukomba mihadi yaneleyo ukuba  
 ibagcine.
- 21 Kwaye kathathu baphoswa ezikweni baze  
 abafumana kwenzakala.
- 22 Kwaye kabini baphoswa emhadini wezilo  
 zasendle; kwaye qaphelani baye badlala kunye nazo  
 izilo njengomntwana kunye netakane elanyayo,  
 baza abafumana konzakala.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njalo baye babheka  
 phambili phakathi kwabo bonke abantu bakaNifayi,  
 kwaye baye bashumayela ivangeli kaKrestu kubo  
 bonke abantu phezu kobuso belizwe; kwaye  
 baguqukela eNkosini, baza babamanya nebandla  
 likaKrestu, baza njalo abantu beso sizukulwana  
 basikelelwa, ngokwelizwi likaYesu.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndiyapheza  
 ukuthetha malunga nezi zinto okwethutyana.
- 25 Qaphelani, besele ndiza kuwabhala amagama abo  
 babengenakuze bakungcamle ukufa, kodwa iNkosi  
 yala; ke ngoko andiwabhali, kuba afihliwe  
 ehlabathini.
- 26 Kodwa qaphelani, ndibabonile, kwaye  
 bandilungiselele.
- 27 Kwaye qaphelani baya kuba phakathi  
 kwabeeNtlanga, kwaye abeeNtlanga abasayi kubazi.
- 28 Baya kuba kanjalo phakathi kwamaYuda, kwaye  
 amaYuda awasayi kubazi.

But this much I know, according to the record  
 which hath been given—they did go forth upon the  
 face of the land, and did minister unto all the people,  
 uniting as many to the church as would believe in  
 their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as  
 were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did  
 not belong to the church. And the prisons could not  
 hold them, for they were rent in twain.

And they were cast down into the earth; but they  
 did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch  
 that by his power they were delivered out of the  
 depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig  
 pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and re-  
 ceived no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts;  
 and behold they did play with the beasts as a child  
 with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth  
 among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the  
 gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the  
 land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and  
 were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the  
 people of that generation were blessed, according to  
 the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking  
 concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those  
 who were never to taste of death, but the Lord for-  
 bade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid  
 from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have min-  
 istered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and  
 the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews  
 shall know them not.

- 29 Kwaye kuya kwenzeka, xa sukuba iNkosi ibona kufanelekile ngobulumko bayo okokuba baya kulungiselela kuzo zonke izizwe ezisasazekileyo zikaSirayeli, kwaye nakuzo zonke izizwe, izalamane, iilwimi nabantu, kwaye baya kubakhupha kuzo bazise kuYesu imiphfumlo emininzi, ukuze iminqweno yabo ibe nokuzalisekiswa, kananjalo nangenxa yamandla okuqinisekisa kaThixo akubo.
- 30 Kwaye banjengeengelosi zikaThixo, kwaye ukuba baya kuthandaza kuye uBawo egameni likaYesu banako ukuzibonakalisa nakuye nabani na umntu ababona kubalungele.
- 31 Ke ngoko, emikhulu nemangalisayo imisebenzi iya kwenziwa ngabo, ngaphambi kwawo omkhulu nozayo umhla xa sukuba bonke abantu kufuneka ngokuqinisekileyo beme phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaKrestu;
- 32 Ewe kwanaphakathi kwabeeNtlanga kuya kubakho omkhulu nomangalisayo umsebenzi owenziwayo ngabo, ngaphambi kwaloo mhla womgwebo.
- 33 Kwaye ukuba beninazo zonke izibhalo ezinika ingxelo yayo yonke emangalisayo imisebenzi kaKrestu, beniya kuthi, ngokwamazwi kaKrestu, nazi okokuba ezi zinto kufuneka ngokuqinisekileyo zifike.
- 34 Kwaye yeha kulowo ungayi kuwaphulaphula amazwi kaYesu, kananjalo nakwabo abanyulileyo waza wabathuma phakathi kwabo; kuba nabani na ongawamkeliyo amazwi kaYesu namazwi abo athe wabathuma abamkeli yena; kwaye ke ngoko akasayi kubamkela ngomhla wokugqibela;
- 35 Kwaye bekungalunga kubo ukuba ngebengazelwanga. Kuba nicinga okokuba ningabususa ubulungisa boThixo ocaphukileyo, obenyathelwe phantsi kweenyawo zabantu, ukuze ngaye usindiso lube nokufika?
- 36 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, njengokuba nditshilo malunga nabo iNkosi ibanyulileyo, ewe, kwanesithathu esasixwilelwe emazulwini, ukuba andazi nokuba babehlanjululwe kumzimba onokufa baya kumzimba ongenakufa—

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

- 37 Kodwa qaphelani, okoko ndabhalayo, ndibuzile eNkosini, kwaye ukwenze kwatyhilwa kum okokuba kufuneka kubekho inguqu eyenziwayo emizimbeni yabo, okanye kungenjalo kuyimfuneko okokuba bamele bakungcamle ukufa;
- 38 Ke ngoko, ukuze bangabi nakukungcamla ukufa kwabakho utshintsho olwenziwayo kuyo imizimba yabo, ukuze bangabi nakuva zintlungu nantsizi ngaphandle kokuba kungezono zehlabathi.
- 39 Ngoku olu tshintsho lwalungalingani noko kwakuza kwenzeka ngomhla wokugqibela; kodwa kwabakho utshintsho olwenziwayo kubo, kangangokuba uSathana akazange abenako ukuba namandla phezu kwabo, ukuze angabinako ukubahenda; kwaye babengcwalisiwe enyameni, ukuze babe nokubangcwele, nokokuba amandla omhlaba angabinako ukulawula.
- 40 Kwaye bekule mo kwakufuneka bahlale kude kube ngomhla womgwebo kaKrestu; kwaye ngaloo mhla babeya kufumana olukhulu ngaphezulu utshintsho, nokwamkelwa ebukumkanini bukaBawo bangaze baphinde baphume, kodwa baze bahlale kunye noThixo ngonaphakade emazulwini.

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

### 3 Nifayi 29

- 1 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, nditsho kuni ukuthi xa sukuba iNkosi ibona kufanelekile ukuba, ngobulumko bayo, ukuba ezi ntetha ziya kufika kubo abeeNtlanga ngokwamazwi ayo, ke ninokwazi okokuba umnqophiso awathi uBawo wawenza kunye nabantwana bakaSirayeli, malunga nokubuyiselwa kwabo kumazwe elifa labo, sele uqalisile ukuzalisekiswa.
- 2 Kwaye nibe nokwazi okokuba amazwi eNkosi lawo athethiweyo ngabaprofeti abangcwele, aya kuzalisekiswa onke; kwaye maningathi iNkosi iya kulibazisa ukuza kwayo kubantwana bakaSirayeli.
- 3 Kwaye maningacingi ezintliziyweni zenu ukuba amazwi abethethiwe alilize, kuba qaphelani, iNkosi iya kuwukhumbula umnqophiso wayo ewenzileyo kubo abantu bayo bendlu kaSirayeli.
- 4 Kwaye nakuba niya kuzibona ezi zinto zisiza ngaphambili phakathi kwenu, ke maningabe niphinde nizicekise izenzo zeNkosi, kuba ikrele lobulungisa bayo lisesandleni sayo sokunene; kwaye qaphelani, ngaloo mhla, ukuba niya kuzicekisa izenzo zayo iya kubangela okokuba kwakamsinyane linifikele.
- 5 Yeha kuye lowo ucekisa izenzo zeNkosi; ewe, yeha kuye lowo uya kumkhanyela uKrestu nemisebenzi yakhe!
- 6 Ewe, yeha kuye lowo uya kuzikhanyela izityhilelo zeNkosi, kwaye noya kuthi iNkosi ayisasebenzi ngezityhilelo, okanye isiprofetho, okanye ngeziphopho, okanye ngeelwimi, okanye ngokuphilisa, okanye ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele!
- 7 Ewe, kwaye yeha kuye lowo uya kuthi ngaloo mhla, ukuze afumane inzuzo, athi akunakubakho mmangaliso wenziwayo nguYesu Krestu; kuba lowo ukwenzayo oku uya kuba njengonyana wesihogo, lowo kwakungekho nceba ngaye, ngokwelizwi likaKrestu!
- 8 Ewe, kwaye maningaphindi nifuthe, nakucekisa, nakwenza ntlekisa ngamaYuda, nawuphina kwabayintsalela yendlu kaSirayeli; kuba qaphelani, iNkosi iyawukhumbula umnqophiso wayo kuyo, kwaye iya kwenza kuwo ngokwaloo nto ithe yayifungela.

### 3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.



9 Ke ngoko maningacingi okokuba ninako  
ukusijikela isandla sasekunene seNkosi ekhohlo,  
ukuze angabi nakuwenza umgwebo  
ekuzalisekisweni komnqophiso eyathi yawenza  
kuyo indlu kaSirayeli.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the  
right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not  
execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant  
which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

### 3 Nifayi 30

- 1 Phulaphulani, Owu nina beeNtlanga, nize niwawe amazwi kaYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo ophilayo, athe wandiyalela okokuba mandiwathethe malunga nani, kuba, qaphelani undiyalele okokuba mandibhale, ndisithi:
- 2 Buyani, nonke nina beeNtlanga, kuzo iindlela zenu ezikhohlakeleyo; nize nizohlwaye ngezenzo zenu ezibi, ngobuxoki benu neenkohliso, nangohenyuzo lwenu, nangamasikizi enu afihlakeleyo, nangokunqula izithixo kwenu, nasekubulaleni kwenu, nobubingeleli benu bobuxoki, noomona benu, neengxabano zenu, nakuyo yonke inkohlakalo yenu namasikizi, kwaye nize kum, nize nibhaptizwe egameni lam, ukuze nibe nokufumana uxolelo lwezono zenu, nize nizaliswe ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, ukuze nibe nokubalwa kunye nabantu bam abangabendlu kaSirayeli.

### 3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.

# UNifayi Wesine

## INcwadi kaNifayi

### Ongunyana kaNifayi—Omnye Wabafundi bakaYesu Krestu

*Ingxelo yabantu besizwe bakaNifayi, ngokwembali yakhe.*

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba owamashumi amathathu anesine unyaka wadlula, kananjalo nowamashumi amathathu anesihlanu, kwaye qaphelani abafundi bakaYesu bathi bamisela ibandla likaKrestu kuwo onke amazwe arhangqileyo. Kangangobuninzi babo abaye beza kubo, baza baguquka ngokwenene ezonweni zabo, babhaptizwa egameni likaYesu; kwaye baye kanjalo bamkela uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamashumi amathathu anesithandathu unyaka, abantu bonke baye baguqukela eNkosini, phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, kunye amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, kwaye kungekho zimbambano nazimpikiswano phakathi kwabo, kwaye wonke umntu wayesebenzisana ngobulungisa omnye nomnye.
- 3 Kwaye babenezinto zonke ngokufanayo phakathi kwabo; ke ngoko kwakungekho zityebi namahlwempu, makhoboka nabakhululekileyo, kodwa bonke babenziwe abakhululekileyo, nabaxhamli kwizipho zasezulwini.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba owamashumi amathathu anesixhenxe unyaka wadlula kanjalo, kwaye kwakusaqhubeka ukubakho koxolo elizweni.
- 5 Kwaye kwakukho imisebenzi emikhulu nemangalisayo eyenziwa ngabafundi bakaYesu, kangangokuba baye baphilisa imilwelwe, kwaye bavusa abafuleyo, baza babangela ukuba iziqhwala zihambe, neemfama ukuba zifumane ukubona, nezithulu ukuba zive; nazo zonke iintlobo zemimangaliso bazenzile phakathi kwabantwana babantu; kwaye ayikho nanye into abenze imimangaliso kuyo ngaphandle kokuba kube egameni likaYesu.

# Fourth Nephi

## The Book of Nephi

### Who Is the Son of Nephi—One of the Disciples of Jesus Christ

*An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.*

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

6 Kwaye njalo ke wadlula owamashumi amathathu anesibhozo unyaka, waza kanjalo nawamashumi amathathu anesithoba, nowamashumi amane ananye, nowamashumi amane anesibini, ewe, kwade kwabe nowamashumi amane anesithoba udlule, kananjalo nowamashumi amahlanu ananye, nowamashumi amahlanu anambini; ewe, kwaye kwade kwaba nowamashumi amahlanu anesithoba udlule.

7 Kwaye iNkosi yaye yabaphumelelisa ngokugqithisileyo elizweni; ewe, kangangokuba baye bakha izixeko kwakhona apho kwakukho izixeko ezazitshisiwe.

8 Ewe, kwanaso eso sixekokazi saseZarahemla baye babangela ukuba sakhiwe kwakhona.

9 Kodwa zazininzi izixeko ezazikiswayo, kwaza kwavela amanzi endaweni yazo; ke ngoko ezi zixeko zazingenako ukuvuselelwa.

10 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba abantu bakaNifayi baye baba nokomelela, kwaye baye baphindaphindeka ngokukhawuleza okugqithisileyo, baza baba ngabantu ababukeka ngokugqithisileyo nabantu abonwabileyo.

11 Kwaye babetshata, kwaye betshatiswa, kwaye besikelelwa ngokobuninzi bezithembiso eyathi iNkosi yazenza kubo.

12 Kwaye babengasahambi ngokwezenzo nemimiselo yomthetho kaMoses; kodwa baye bahamba ngokwemiyalelo ababeyifumene kuyo iNkosi yabo noThixo wabo, beqhubeka ngokuzila ukutya nomthandazo, nokuhlangana kunye rhoqo ukuba bathandaze nokuva ilizwi leNkosi.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakungekho zimbambano phakathi kwabo bonke abantu, kulo lonke ilizwe; kodwa kwabakho imimangaliso enamandlakazi phakathi kwabafundi bakaYesu.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba owamashumi asixhenxe ananye unyaka wadlula, waza kanjalo nowamashumi asixhenxe anambini unyaka, ewe, kwaye lilonke, kwade kwaba owamashumi asixhenxe anesithoba unyaka udlule; ewe, kwanekhulu leminyaka ladlula, kwaye abafundi bakaYesu, awayebanyule, babemkile bonke baya eparadesi kaThixo, ngaphandle kwabo bathathu ababeya kusala; kwaye kwakukho abanye abafundi abamiselwayo endaweni yabo; kananjalo nesininzi seso sizukulwana sasilule.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kungabikho mbambano elizweni, ngenxa yothando lukaThixo olwaye lwazinja lwahlala ezintliziyweni zabantu.
- 16 Kwaye kwakungekho mona, nazingxabano, naziphithiphithi, nahenyuzo, nabuxoki, nakubulala, okanye naluphi na uhlobo loburheletya, kwaye ngokwenene kwakungenakubakho bantu babonwabe ngakumbi kunabo phakathi kwabo bonke abantu ababedalwe ngesandla sikaThixo.
- 17 Kwakungekho baphangi, nababulali, kwakungekho namaLeymenayithi, naluphi na uhlobo lwama-ayithi; kodwa babeyinto enye, abantwana bakaKrestu, neendlalifa zobukumkani bukaThixo.
- 18 Kwaye babenokunjani ukusikeleleka! Kuba iNkosi yaye yabasikelela kuzo zonke izenzo zabo; ewe, kwanokude basikelelwe kwaye baphunyeleliswa yade iminyaka elikhulu elineshumi yabe idlule; kwaye isizukulwana sokuqala ukusuka kuKrestu sadlula, kwaye kwakungekho mbambano kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNifayi, yena owayegcine le mbali yokugqibela, (kwaye wayeyigcine kumacwecwe kaNifayi) wafa, waza unyana wakhe uAmos wayigcina esikhundleni sakhe; naye kanjalo wayigcina kumacwecwe kaNifayi.
- 20 Kwaye wayigcina amashumi asibhozo anane eminyaka, kwaye kwakusekho uxolo elizweni, ngaphandle nje kweqela elincinane labantu elalivukela lishiya ibandla laza lazithabathela igama lamaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko kwaqalisa kwakho ubukho bamaLeymenayithi elizweni.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAmos wafa kanjalo (kwaye kwakulikhulu elinamashumi asithoba anane leminyaka ukusuka ekuzeni kukaKrestu) waza unyana wakhe uAmos wayigcina imbali esikhundleni sakhe, waza naye kanjalo wayigcina kumacwecwe kaNifayi; kananjalo yayibhaliwe kwincwadi kaNifayi, eyiyo le ncwadi.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba engamakhulu amabini iminyaka yadlula, nesizukulwana sesibini sasidlule ngaphandle kwabambalwa.
- 23 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndinqwenela ukuba ningazi okokuba abantu babephindaphindeke, kangangokuba babenabele phezu kobuso balo lonke ilizwe, nokuba babesuke babazizityebi ngokugqithisileyo, ngenxa yokuba nempumelelo kwabo kuKrestu.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku, kulo wamakhulu amabini ananye unyaka kwaqalisa ukubakho phakathi kwabo abo babephakamele ekratshini, elinjengokunxiba izambatho zentengo ephhezulu, kwaye nalo lonke uhlobo lweeperile ezicwengileyo, nazo zonke izinto ezicwengileyo zehlabathi.
- 25 Kwaye ukususela ngelo lixa ukuya phambili abazange baphinde babe nampahla nazinto zabo ngokufanayo phakathi kwabo.
- 26 Baza baqalisa ukwahlukana ngokweendidi; baza baqalisa ukuzakhela amabandla ukuze bafumane inzuzo, baza baqalisa ukulikhanyela ibandla lenene likaKrestu.
- 27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba engamakhulu amabini aneshumi iminyaka idlule kwabakho amabandla amaninzi elizweni; ewe, abamaninzi amabandla abanga ukumazi uKrestu, kanti ke ayeyikhanyela inxalenye engakumbi yevangeli yakhe, kangangokuba aye afumana lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo, kwaye aye anikela izinto ezingcwele kwabo babengavumelekanga ngenxa yokungafaneleki.
- 28 Kwaye eli bandla laye laphindaphindeka ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yobugwenxa, nangenxa yamandla kaSathana owaye wazithimba iintliziyo zabo.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

- 29 Kwaye kwakhona, lalikhona elinye ibandla elalimkhanyela uKrestu; kwaye laye lalitshutshisa ibandla lokwenene likaKrestu, ngenxa yentobeko yalo nokholo lwalo kuKrestu; kwaye baye babathiya ngenxa yemimangaliso emininzi eyayisenziwa phakathi kwabo.
- 30 Ke ngoko baye basebenzisa amandla negunya phezu kwabafundi bakaYesu abaye basala kunye nabo, kwaye baye babaphosa entolongweni; kodwa amandla elizwi likaThixo, awayekubo, iintolongo zaqhekeka kubini, baza babheka phambili besenza imimangaliso enamandlakazi phakathi kwabo.
- 31 Nangona kunjalo, nangona ikho yonke le mimangaliso, abantu baye baziqaqadekisa iintliziyi zabo, kwaye baye bazama ukubabulala, kwananjengokuba amaYuda eYerusalem ayezama ukumbulala uYesu, ngokwelizwi lakhe.
- 32 Kwaye baye babaphosa kumaziko omlilo, baza baphumela ngaphandle bengafumananga kwenzakala.
- 33 Kananjalo baye babaphosa emihadini yamarhamncwa, kwaye baye badlala nawo amarhamncwa kwananjengomntwana kunye netakane; kwaye baye baphumela ngaphandle besuka phakathi kwawo, bengafumananga kwenzakala.
- 34 Nangona kunjalo, abantu baye baziqaqadekisa iintliziyi zabo, kuba babekhokelwa ngababingeleli abaninzi nabaprofeti bobuxoki ukuba bamisele amabandla amaninzi, nokwenza lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa. Kwaye baye bababetha abantu bakaYesu; kodwa abantu bakaYesu abazange baphindise. Baza njalo baya bephelela ekungakholweni nakwinkohlakalo, ukususela kunyaka ukuya kunyaka, kwanokude kube amawaka amabini anamashumi amathathu eminyaka idlule.
- 35 Kwaye kwakhona kwenzekile kulo unyaka, ewe, kowamakhulu amabini anamashumi amathathu ananye unyaka, kwabakho ukwahlukana okukhulu phakathi kwabantu.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kulo nyaka kwabakho, abantu ababebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi, kwaye babengamakholwa okwenyani kuKrestu; kwaye phakathi kwabo kwakukho abo babebizwa ngokuba ngamaLeymenayithi—amaYakobayithi, namaYosefayithi, namaZoramayithi;
- 37 Ke ngoko amakholwa okwenyani kuKrestu, nabakhonzi bokwenyani bakaKrestu, (ekwakukho phakathi kwabo abathathu abafundi bakaYesu ababeza kusala) ababebizwa ngokuba ngamaNifayithi, namaYakobayithi, namaYosefayithi, namaZoramayithi.
- 38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bona abo bayalayo ivangeli babebizwa ngokuba ngamaLeymenayithi, namaLemuwelayithi, namaIshmayelayithi; kwaye abazange baye bephelela ekungakholweni, kodwa baye ngokuthanda bavukela ngokuchasene nevangeli kaKrestu; kwaye baye babafundisa abantwana babo okokuba mabangakholelwa, kwananje ngooyise, ukususela ekuqalekeni, baye besiya bephela.
- 39 Kwaye kwakungenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi ooyise, kwananjengokuba kwakunjalo ekuqalekeni. Kwaye babefundiswa ukubathiya abantwana bakaThixo, kwananjengokuba amaLeymenayithi ayefundiswa ukubathiya abantwana bakaNifayi ukususela ekuqalekeni.
- 40 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amakhulu amabini anamashumi amane anesine eminyaka ayedlule, kwaye yayinjalo ke imicimbi yabantu. Kwaye inxalenye engakumbi ekhohlakeleyo yabantu yaye yaba nokomelela, yaza yasuka yaba yintlaninge engakumbi ngokugqithisileyo kunokuba babenjalo abantu bakaThixo.
- 41 Kwaye babesaqhubeka ukuzimisela amabandla, kwaye bawahombise ngalo lonke uhlobo lwezinto ezixabisekileyo. Kwaye njalo yaye ingamakhulu amabini anamashumi amahlanu iminyaka yadlula, kwananjalo namakhulu amabini anamashumi amathandathu eminyaka.
- 42 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba inxalenye ekhohlakeleyo yabantu yaqalisa kwakhona ukumisela izifungo ezisemfihlakalweni namayelenqe kaGadiyantoni.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.



- 43 Kananjalo nabantu ababebizwa ngokuba ngabantu bakaNifayi baqalisa ukuba nekratshi ezintliziyweni zabo, ngenxa yobutyebi babo obugqithileyo, baza baqalisa ukuzicingela njengabazalwana babo, amaLeymenayithi.
- 44 Baza ukususela ngeli lixa abafundi baqalisa ukuba lusizi ngenxa yezono zehlabathi.
- 45 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yakuba engamakhulu amathathu iminyaka idlule, kunye abantu bakaNifayi namaLeymenayithi babesuke bakhohlakala ngokugqithisileyo omnye njengomnye.
- 46 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaphangi bakaGadiyantoni baye banabela phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe; kwaye kwakungekho namnye owayelilungisa ngaphandle nje kwabafundi bakaYesu. Kwaye igolide nesilivere baye bazifumbela elugcinweni ngobuninzi, kwaye baye barhweba ngokungekho mthethweni ngalo lonke uhlobo lwempahla.
- 47 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba amakhulu amathathu anesihlanu eminyaka idlule, (kwaye abantu babesahleli enkohlakalweni) uAmos wafa; kwaye umntakwabo, uAmaroni, waye wayigcina imbali esikhundleni sakhe.
- 48 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amakhulu amathathu anamashumi amabini eminyaka edlule, uAmaroni, ekubeni eqhutywa nguMoya oyiNgcwele, waye wazifihla phezulu iimbali ezaye zingcwele—ewe, kwanazo zonke iimbali ezingcwele ezaye zinikezelwe ukuhla ukususela kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana, ezaye zingcwele—okoko kwade kwaba ngamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amabini eminyaka ukususela ekuzeni kukaKrestu.
- 49 Kwaye waye wazifihla phezulu eNkosini, ukuze zibe nokuza kwakhona kuyo intsalela yendlu kaYakobi, ngokweziprofetho nezithembiso zeNkosi. Kwaye sinjalo ke isiphelo sembali ka-Amaroni.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

# INcwadi kaMormoni

## Mormoni 1

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndenza imbali yezinto endizibonileyo nendizivileyo, kwaye ndiyibiza ngokuba yiNcwadi kaMormoni.
- 2 Kwaye malunga nelixa lokokuba uAmaroni efihla iimbali phezulu eNkosini, weza kum, (mna ke ndandimalunga neshumi leminyaka ubudala, kwaye ndaqalisa ukufunda nje noko ngokohlobo lokufunda lwaba bantu bakowethu) waza uAmaroni wathi kum: Ndiyaqonda okokuba ungumntwana ondilisekileyo, kwaye uyakhawuleza ukuqwalasela;
- 3 Ke ngoko, xa sukuba umalunga namashumi amabini anesine eminyaka ndinga ungazikhumbula izinto othe wazigqalisela ngokunxulumene naba bantu; kwaye xa sukuba ukuloo minyaka hamba uye elizweni laseAntam, kwinduli eyayibizwa ngokuba yiShim; kwaye apho ndibeke eNkosini yonke imikrolo engcwele enxulumene naba bantu.
- 4 Kwaye qaphela, uya kuwathabathela kuwe amacwecwe kaNifayi, kwaye intsalela uya kuyishiya kuloo ndawo ikuyo; kwaye uya kukrola kumacwecwe kaNifayi zonke izinto othe waziqwalasela ngokunxulumene naba bantu.
- 5 Kwaye mna, Mormoni, ekubeni ndiyinzala kaNifayi, (kwaye igama likabawo lalinguMormoni) ndiye ndazikhumbula izinto endandiziyalelwe nguAmaroni.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, ekubeni ndineshumi elinanye leminyaka ubudala, ndafuduswa ngubawo sangena elizweni elisemazantsi, nakwilizwe laseZarahemla.
- 7 Ubuso belizwe buphela babuzaliswe zizakhiwo, nabantu babebaninzi phantse, njengentlabathi yolwandle.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile kulo nyaka kwaqalisa imfazwe phakathi kwamaNifayithi, awayequka amaNifayithi, namaYakobayithi, namaYosefayithi, namaZoramayithi; kwaye le mfazwe yayiphakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi, namaLemuwelayithi namaIshmayelayithi.

# The Book of Mormon

## Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

- 9 Ngoku amaLeymenayithi namaLemuwelayithi namaIshmayelayithi ayebizwa ngokuba ngamaLeymenayithi, kwaye la maqela mabini ayengamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imfazwe yaqalisa ukuba phakathi kwabo emideni yaseZarahemla, ecaleni kwamanzi aseTsidon.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi ahlanganisana kunye inani elikhulu lamadoda, kwanokwedlula inani elingamawaka angamashumi amathathu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye kwakuwo loo nyaka baba namadabi amaninzi, apho amaNifayithi aye awabetha amaLeymenayithi aza abulala abaninzi awo.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye alirhoxisa icebo lawo, kwaza kwabakho uxolo olufikelelwayo elizweni; lwaza uxolo lwahlala isithuba esimalunga neminyaka emine, ukuba kungabikho mpalalo-gazi.
- 13 Kodwa inkohlakalo yaye yoyisa phezu kobuso balo lonke ilizwe, kangangokuba iNkosi yaye yabathabatha abafundi bayo abathandekayo, yaza imisebenzi yemimangaliso nokuphilisa yaphela ngenxa yobugwenxa babantu.
- 14 Kwaye kwakungekho zipho zivela eNkosini, noMoya oyiNgcwele awuzange wehlele phezu kwakhe nawuphi na, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo nokungakholwa.
- 15 Kwaye mna, ekubeni ndineshumi elinantlanu leminyaka ubudala, kwaye noko ndinondiliseko lwengqondo, ke ngoko ndaye ndavelelwa yiNkosi, ndaza ndangcamla ndaza ndabanolwazi ngokulunga kukaYesu.
- 16 Kwaye ndaye ndazama ukushumayela kwaba bantu, kodwa umlomo wam wavalwa, kwaye ndalelwa ukuba ndishumayele kubo; kuba qaphelani babevukela ngabom ngokuchasene noThixo wabo; baza abafundi abayintanda basuswa elizweni, ngenxa yobugwenxa babo.
- 17 Kodwa ndaye ndasala phakathi kwabo, kodwa ndalelwa ukushumayela kubo, ngenxa yokuqadadeka kweentliziyo zabo; kwaye ngenxa yokuqadadeka kweentliziyo zabo ilizwe laqalekiswa ngenxa yabo.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

18 Kwaye aba baphangi bakaGadiyantoni, ababephakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, baye balizalisa ilizwe, kangangokuba abemi balo baqalisa ukufihla ubutyebi babo emhlabeni; kwaye babampunyululu, ngenxa yokuba iNkosi yayiliqalekisile ilizwe, ukuze bangakwazi ukububamba, okanye bangaphindi babufumane.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho abakhafuli, nobugqwirha, nobugqi; namandla alowo ongendawo ayesebenza phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, kwanasekuzalisekisweni kwawo onke amazwi ka-Abhinadayi, kananjalo noSamuweli umLeymenayithi.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and also Samuel the Lamanite.

## Mormoni 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile kwakuwo loo nyaka kwaqalisa ukubakho iimfazwe kwakhona phakathi kwamaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi. Kwaye nangona mna ndandiselula, ndandimde ngesithomo; ke ngoko abantu bakaNifayi bonyula mna ukuba mandibe yinkokeli yabo, okanye inkokeli yemikhosi yabo.
- 2 Ke ngoko kwaye kwenzekile kunyaka wam weshumi elinesithandathu mna ndaye ndabheka phambili entloko yomkhosi wamaNifayithi, ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi; ke ngoko amakhulu amathathu anamashumi amabini anesithandathu eminyaka ayedlule.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amabini anesixhenxe unyaka amaLeymenayithi aye asihlasela ngamandla amakhulu ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba aye ayoyikisa imikhosi yam; ke ngoko ayizange ivume ukulwa, yaza yaqalisa ukubuyela emva ngakumazwe angasentla.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye safika kwisixeko saseAngola, kwaye saye saluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko, saza senza amalungiselelo okuzikhusela ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sasinqabisa isixeko eso ngamandlakazi ethu; kodwa nangona sinazo zonke iinqaba amaLeymenayithi aye asihlasela aza asidudulela ngaphandle kwesixeko.
- 5 Kwaye aye kanjalo asidudulela kude ngaphandle kwelizwe likaDavide.
- 6 Saza samatshela phambili saza safika kulo ilizwe likaYoshuwa, elaye lisemideni esentshona ngeselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sabahlanganisela ngaphakathi abantu bethu ngokukhawuleza kangangoko sasinako, ukuze sibenako ukubahlanganisa kunye beyimbumba enye.

## Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

- 8 Kodwa qaphelani, ilizwe lalizaliswe ngabaphangi nangamaLeymenayithi; kwaye nangona kwakukho intshabalalo enkulu eyayijinga phezu kwabantu bam, abazange baguquke kwizenzo zabo zobubi; ke ngoko kwabakho igazi nendyhikityha eyanabela kubo bonke ubuso belizwe, kunye ngakwicala lamaNifayithi kwaye ngokunjalo nangakwicala lamaLeymenayithi; kwaye kwakuyimvukelo enye ephheleleyo kubo bonke ubuso belizwe.
- 9 Kwaye ngoko, amaLeymenayithi ayenokumkani, kwaye igama lakhe lalinguAron; kwaye weza ngokuchasene nathi kunye nomkhosi ongamawaka angamashumi amane anesine. Kwaye qaphelani, mna ndaye ndaxhathisa kuye ngamawaka angamashumi amane anesibini. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndamoyisa ngomkhosi wam kangangokuba wasaba phambi kwam. Kwaye qaphelani, konke oku kwenzeka, kwaye amakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathathu eminyaka athi adlula.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aqalisa ukuguquka kubugwenxa bawo, aza aqalisa ukukhalaza kwananjengokuba kwakuprofethiwe nguSamuweli umprofeti; kuba qaphelani akukho mntu wayenako ukukugcina oko kwakukokwakhe, ngenxa yamasela, nabaphangi, nababulali, nobugcisa bobugqi, nobugqwirha obabukulo ilizwe.
- 11 Njalo ke kwaqalisa ukubakho ukuzila nesililo kulo lonke ilizwe ngenxa yezi zinto, kwaye ngokungakumbi phakathi kwabantu bakaNifayi.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndakuba mna, Mormoni, ndibona izililo zabo nokuzila kwabo nosizi lwabo phambi kweNkosi, intliziyo yam yaye yagcoba ngaphakathi kwam, ndizazi iinceba nokuzeka kade umsindo kweNkosi, ke ngoko ndacinga okokuba angaba nenceba kubo ukuze kwakhona babe ngabantu abangamalungisa.
- 13 Kodwa qaphelani olu vuyo lwam lwaba lilize, kuba ukuzila kwabo kwakungekuko okokuguquka, ngenxa yokulunga kukaThixo; kodwa kwakulusizi nje noko lwabagwetyiweyo, ngenxa yokuba iNkosi ingayi kusoloko ibavumela ukuba bafumane ulonwabo esonweni.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

- 14 Kwaye abazange beze kuYesu ngeentliziyo ezaphukileyo noomoya abatyumkileyo, kodwa baye bamqalekisa uThixo, baza banqwenela ukufa. Nangona kunjalo babeya kulwa ngekrele ngenxa yobomi babo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba usizi lwam lwaye lwabuyela kum kwakhona, ndaza ndabona okokuba umhla wobabalo wawudlule kubo, kunye ngokwasenyameni nangokwasemoyeni; kuba ndabona amawaka abo egawulelwe phantsi ngemvukelo ephandle ngokuchasene noThixo wabo, kwaye befunjwe njengobulongwe phezu kobuso belizwe. Yaza njalo engamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amane anesine iminyaka yadlula.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwengamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amane anesihlanu iminyaka amaNifayithi aye aqalisa ukusaba phambi kwamaLeymenayithi; kwaye asukelwa ade afika kwanakwilizwe likaYashoni, phambi kokuba kubenokwenzeka ukuba angamiswa ekuhleleni umva kwawo.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, isixeko sikaYashoni sasikufuphi nelizwe apho uAmaroni wayebeke khona iimbali eNkosini, ukuze zingabi nakutshatyalaliswa. Kwaye qaphelani mna ndandihambe ngokwelizwi lika-Amaroni, ndaza ndawathabatha amacwecwe kaNifayi, kwaye ndaye ndenza imbali ngokwamazwi ka-Amaroni.
- 18 Kwaye phezu kwamacwecwe kaNifayi mna ndaye ndenza ingxelo ezeleyo yayo yonke inkohlakalo namasikizi; kodwa phezu kwala macwecwe mna ndiye ndazibamba ukuba ndenze ingxelo ezeleyo yenkohlakalo yawo namasikizi, kuba qaphelani, umbono oqhubekayo wenkohlakalo namasikizi aphantsi kwamehlo am okokoko mna bendinako ukuzibona iindlela zomntu.
- 19 Kwaye yeha kum ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo; kuba intliziyo yam izele lusizi ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo, yonke imihla yam; nangona kunjalo, mna ndiyazi okokuba mna ndiya kuphakanyiswa ngomhla wokugqibela.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kuwo lo nyaka abantu bakaNifayi kwakhona bazingelwa baza badudulwa. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sadudulelwa kude sada saba sifike emantla kwilizwe elalibizwa ngokuba yiShem.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sasinqabisa isixeko sikaShem, kwaye saye sabahlanganisela ngaphakathi abantu kangangoko kwakunokwenzeka, ukuze mhlawumbi singabanako ukubasindisa kwintshabalalo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amane anesithandathu unyaka aqalisa ukusihlasela kwakhona.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna ndaye ndathetha nabantu bam, kwaye ndaye ndabakhuthaza ngamandla amakhulu, okokuba bangema ngenkalipho phambi kwamaLeymenayithi kwaye balwele abafazi babo, nabantwana babo, nezindlu zabo, namakhaya abo.

24 Kwaye amazwi am aye abavuselela noko emandleni, kangangokuba abazange basabe phambi kwamaLeymenayithi, kodwa baye bema ngenkalipho ngokuchasene nawo.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye salwa ngomkhosi wamawaka angamashumi amathathu ngokuchasene nomkhosi ongamawaka angamashumi amahlanu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye sema phambi kwawo ngozinzo olungako kangangokuba aye asaba emka phambi kwethu.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba esabile saye sawasukela ngemikhosi yethu, kwaye saye sahlanguana nawo kwakhona, kwaye saye sawoyisa; nangona kunjalo ukomelela kweNkosi kwakungekho kuthi; ewe, sasishiywe sodwa, ukuze uMoya weNkosi unghlali kunye nathi; ke ngoko sasisuke saba buthathaka nje ngabazalwana bethu.

27 Kwaye intliziyo yam yaye yalusizi ngenxa yale ntlekele inkulu yabantu bam, ngenxa yenkohlakalo yabo namasikizi abo. Kodwa qaphelani, saye sabheka phambili ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi nabaphangi bakaGadiyantoni, sade saba kwakhona siluthabathile ulawulo lwamazwe elifa lethu.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.



28 Kwaye owamakhulu amathathu anamashumi  
amane anesithoba unyaka wawudlule. Saza  
kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amahlanu  
unyaka senza isivumelwano kunye  
namaLeymenayithi nabaphangi bakaGadiyantoni,  
esathi kuso senza amazwe elifa lethu ukuba ohlulwe.

29 Kwaye amaLeymenayithi aye asinika ilizwe  
elingasemantla, ewe, kwanokuya kwindlela  
emxinwa eyaye ikhokelela kwilizwe  
elingasemazantsi. Kwaye saye sawanika  
amaLeymenayithi lonke ilizwe elingasemazantsi.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year  
had passed away. And in the three hundred and fifti-  
eth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the  
robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands  
of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land  
northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which  
led into the land southward. And we did give unto  
the Lamanites all the land southward.

## Mormoni 3

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi awazange eze ukuba alwe idabi kwakhona yada iminyaka elishumi nangaphezulu yathi yadlula. Kwaye qaphelani, mna ndibasebenzisile abantu bam, amaNifayithi, ekulungiseni imihlaba yabo nezikhali zabo ekulungiseleleni ilixa lokulwa idabi.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile ukuba iNkosi ithi kum: Danduluka kubo aba bantu—Guqukani, kwaye nize kum, kwaye nibhaptizwe, nize nilakhe kwakhona ibandla lam, naye niya kusinda.
- 3 Kwaye mna ndaye ndadandaluka kubo aba bantu, kodwa kwaba lilize; kwaye abazange baqonde okokuba yaye iyiNkosi leyo yayibasindisile, yaza yabanika nethuba lenguquko. Kwaye qaphelani baye baziqaqadekisa iintliziyi zabo ngokuchasene neNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba lo nyaka weshumi udlule, usenza, xa iyonke, engamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathandathu iminyaka ukususela ekuzeni kukaKrestu, ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi wathumela incwadi kum, eyayindazisa okokuba ayelungiselela ukuza kwakhona ukuba alwe idabi ngokuchasene nathi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna ndaye ndabenza abantu bam okokuba mabazihlanganise kunye kulo ilizwe iNkangala, kwisixeko esaye sisemideni, ngakwindlela emxinwa eyayikhokelela kwilizwe elisemazantsi.
- 6 Kwaye apho saye sayimisa imikhosi yethu, ukuze sibe nokuyinqanda imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi, ukuze ingabinako ukufumana ulawulo lwemihlaba yethu; ke ngoko saye sanqabisa ngokuchasene nawo ngawo wonke umkhosi wethu.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathandathu ananye unyaka amaLeymenayithi aye ehlela ezantsi kuso isixeko iNkangala ukuba alwe idabi ngokuchasene nathi; kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngawo loo nyaka saye sawoyisa, kangangokuba aye abuyela kwawawo amazwe kwakhona.

## Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

- 8 Kwaye kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathandathu anesibini unyaka aye ehlela ezantsi kwakhona ukuba alwe idabi. Kwaye saye sawoyisa kwakhona, kwaye saye sabulala inani elikhulu lawo, baza abafileyo bawo baphoswa elwandle.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku, ngenxa yale nto inkulu abathe abantu bam, amaNifayithi, athi ayenza, baqalisa ukuzigwagwisa ngokomelela kwabo, baza baqalisa ukufunga phambi kwamazulu okokuba baya kuziphindezela ngegazi labazalwana babo ababebulewe ziintshaba zabo.
- 10 Kwaye baye bafunga ngamazulu, kananjalo nangetrone kaThixo, okokuba baya kunyukela phezulu ukuya kulwa idabi ngokuchasene neentshaba zabo, kwaye baya kuzisikela ngaphandle zisuke kubuso belizwe.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba mna, Mormoni, ndize ndale kwaphela ukususela ngeli lixa ukubheka phambili ukuba ngumphathi nenkokeli yesi sizwe, ngenxa yenkohlakalo namasikizi aso.
- 12 Qaphelani, mna ndandibakhokele, nangona benenkohlakalo ndandibakhokele amaxesha amaninzi edabini, kwaye ndibathanda, ngokothando lukaThixo olwaye lukum, ngentliziyo yam yonke; kwaye umphefumlo wam ndawuthululela emthandazweni kuye uThixo wam ebudeni bemini yonke ngenxa yabo; nangona kunjalo, wawungena lukholo, ngenxa yokuqaqadeka kweentliziyo zabo.
- 13 Kwaye kathathu ndibahlangule baphuma ezandleni zeentshaba zabo, kwaye abaguqukanga ezonweni zabo.
- 14 Kwaye xa babefunga ngako konke ababekwalelwe yiNkosi yethu noMsindisi uYesu Krestu, okokuba baza kunyuka baye kuzo iintshaba zabo ukuya kulwa idabi, baze baziphindezele ngegazi labazalwana babo, qaphelani izwi leNkosi lafika kum, lisithi:
- 15 Impindezelo yeyam, kwaye mna ndiya kubuyekeza; kwaye ngenxa yokuba aba bantu bengaguquki emva kokuba ndibahlangule, qaphelani, baya kusikelwa ngaphandle basuke phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndala kwaphela ukunyuka ngokuchasene neentshaba zam, ndaza ndenza kwananjengokuba iNkosi yandiyalelayo; kwaye ndaye ndema njengengqina elingumbukeli ukubonakalisa kulo ihlabathi izinto endazibonayo kwaye ndaziva, ngokweembonakalo zoMoya ezazingqinile ngezinto ezisezayo.
- 17 Ke ngoko ndibhalela kuni, beeNtlanga, kananjalo nakuni, ndlu kaSirayeli, xa sukuba umsebenzi uya kuqalisa, wokokuba niya kuba seniza kulungiselela ukubuyela kwilizwe lelifafa lenu;
- 18 Ewe, qaphelani, ndibhalele kuzo zonke iziphelo zomhlaba; ewe, kuni, zizwe ezilishumi elinambini zikaSirayeli, eniya kugwetywa ngokwemisebenzi yenu ngabalishumi elinambini awathi uYesu wabanyula ukuba babe ngabafundi bakhe kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem.
- 19 Kwaye ndibhalela kanjalo kuyo intsalela yaba bantu, eya kuthi kanjalo igwetywe ngabalishumi elinambini awathi uYesu wabanyula kulo eli lizwe; kwaye bona baya kugwetywa lelinye ishumi elinambini awathi uYesu walinyula kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem.
- 20 Kwaye ezi zinto uthi uMoya uzibonakalise kum; ke ngoko ndibhalela kuni nonke. Kwaye kungesi sizathu ndinibhalela, ukuze nibe nokwazi okokuba kufuneka nonke nime phambi kwesihlalo-sokugweba sikaKrestu, ewe, wonke umphefumlo ongowalo usapho loluntu lonke luka-Adam; kwaye kufuneka nime ukuba nigwetywe ngemisebenzi yenu, nokuba ilungile okanye mibi.
- 21 Kananjalo nokuze nibe nokukholelwa yivangeli kaYesu Krestu, eniya kuthi nibenayo phakathi kwenu; kananjalo nokokuba amaYuda, abantu bomnqophiso weNkosi, aya kuba nelinye ingqina ngaphandle kwakhe lowo bambonayo baza bamva, loo Yesu, abathi bambulala, waye enguye ngokwenene uKrestu kwaye nowokwenene uThixo.
- 22 Kwaye ndinga ndinganithundeza nonke nina ziphelo zomhlaba ukuba niguquke kwaye nilungiselele ukuma phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaKrestu.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

## Mormoni 4

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba kowamakhulu amathathu amamashumi amathandathu anesithathu unyaka amaNifayithi aye enyuka kunye nemikhosi yawo ukuya kulwa ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi, aphuma kulo ilizwe iNkangala.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi yamaNifayithi yadudulelwa emva kwakhona ukuya kulo ilizwe iNkangala. Aza ngeli lixa ayesadiniwe, umkhosi ohlaziyekileyo wamaLeymenayithi waye wabahasela; baza baba nedabi elibuhlungu, kangangokuba amaLeymenayithi aye asithabatha asilawula isixeko iNkangala, kwaye aye abulala abaninzi bamaNifayithi, aza athabatha amabanjwa amaninzi.
- 3 Kwaye abaseleyo baye basaba baza bamanyana nabemi besixeko iTiyanikumi. Ngoku isixeko iTiyanikumi sasimi kwimida engaselunxwemeni lolwandle; kananjalo sasikufuphi nesixeko iNkangala.
- 4 Kwaye kwakungenxa yokuba imikhosi yamaNifayithi yenyukela kuwo amaLeymenayithi ukuze iqalise ukubethwa; kuba ukuba kwakungekuko oko, amaLeymenayithi ngewaye engabanga nako ukuba namandla phezu kwayo.
- 5 Kodwa, qaphelani, izigwebo zikaThixo ziya kufika kwabakhohlakeleyo; kwaye abakhohlakeleyo bohlwaywa ngabakhohlakeleyo; kuba ngabakhohlakeleyo abavuselela iintliziyo zabantwana babantu kwimpalalo-gazi.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye enza amalungiselelo okuhlasela isixeko iTiyanikumi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile ngowamakhulu amathathu amamashumi amathandathu anesine unyaka amaLeymenayithi aye asihlasela isixeko iTiyanikumi, ukuze abe nokulithabatha ulawulo lwesixeko iTiyanikumi kanjalo.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba aye abhebhethwa aza adudulelwa emva ngamaNifayithi. Aza amaNifayithi akubona okokuba awadudule amaLeymenayithi aye kwakhona azigwagwisa ngokomelela kwawo; aza abheka phambili ngawawo amandlakazi, aza aluthabatha kwakhona ulawulo lwesixeko iNkangala.

## Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

- 9 Kwaye ngoku zonke ezi zinto zenziwa, kwaye kwakukho amawaka abulawayo kuwo omabini amacala, kunye amaNifayithi namaLeymenayithi.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba owamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathandathu anesithandathu unyaka wawudlule, aza amaLeymenayithi eza kwakhona phezu kwamaNifayithi ukuba alwe idabi; kanti ke amaNifayithi awazange aguquke kububi awayebewenzile kodwa azingisa ukuqhubeka ngenkohlakalo yawo.
- 11 Kwaye kuyinto engenakwenzeka ukuba ulwimi lukwezi ukuchazae, okanye umntu abhale inkcazelo egqibeleleyo yombono owoyikekayo wempalalo-gazi nendyikityha eyayikho phakathi kwabantu, kunye kwabamaNifayithi nakwabamaLeymenayithi; kwaye yonke intliziyo yayiqaqadekile, kangangokuba babevuyiswa yimpalalo-gazi ethe rhoqo.
- 12 Kwaye akuzange kwabakho nkohlakalo igqithise kangako phakathi kwabo bonke abantwana bakaLihayi, nakwaphakathi kwayo yonke indlu kaSirayeli, ngokwamazwi eNkosi, njengokuba kwakunjalo phakathi kwaba bantu.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye aluthabatha ulawulo lwesixeko iNkangala, kwaye oku kungenxa yokuba inani lawo laye lalogqitha inani lamaNifayithi.
- 14 Kwaye aye kanjalo amatshela phambili ngokuchasene nesixeko iTiyanikumi, kwaye aye abadudulela kude abemi baphuma kuso, kwaye aye athabatha amabanjwa amaninzi kunye abafazi nabantwana, kwaye aye abanikela nje ngeminikelo kuzo izithixo zawo.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi amathandathu anesixhenxe unyaka, amaNifayithi ekubeni enomsindo ngenxa yokuba amaLeymenayithi enze idini ngabafazi nabantwana bawo, kuba aye aya kuhlasela ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi ngomsindo omkhulu ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba aye owoyisa kwakhona amaLeymenayithi, aza awadudulela ngaphandle kwemihlaba yawo.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

16 Aza amaLeymenayithi aweza kwakhona ngokuchasene namaNifayithi kwade kwaba ngowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi asixhenxe anesihlanu unyaka.

17 Kwaye kulo nyaka aye ehlela ezantsi ngokuchasene namaNifayithi ngayo yonke imikhosi yawo; kwaye ayengabalwanga ngenxa yobukhulu benani lawo.

18 Kwaye ukususela ngeli lixa ukuya phambili awazange amaNifayithi azuze mandla phezu kwamaLeymenayithi, kodwa aqalisa ukutshayelwa ngawo kwananjengombethe phambi kwelanga.

19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye ehlela ezantsi ngokuchasene nesixeko iNkangala; kwaza kwabakho idabi elibuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo elaliwayo kulo ilizwe iNkangala; awathi kulo awabetha amaNifayithi.

20 Aza asaba kwakhona emka phambi kwawo, aza afika kwisixeko iBhohazi; kwaye apho aye ema ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi ngenkalipho egqithisileyo, kangangokuba amaLeymenayithi awazange awabethe ada abe ezile kwakhona okwesibini.

21 Kwaye akuba ezile okwesibini, amaNifayithi adudulwa aza abulawa ngendyikityha enkulu ngokugqithisileyo; abafazi bawo nabantwana bawo kwakhona benziwa idini kwizithixo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaNifayithi aye kwakhona asaba emka phambi kwawo, ethabatha bonke abemi kunye nawo, kunye ezidolophini nakwiidolophana.

23 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormoni, ndakubona okokuba amaLeymenayithi ayesele eza kulibhukuqa ilizwe, ke ngoko ndaye ndaya kuyo induli iShim, kwaye ndaye ndazikhupha zonke iimbali awaye uAmaroni ezifihlele phezulu eNkosini.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an exceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

## Mormoni 5

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndaye ndabheka phambili phakathi kwamaNifayithi, kwaye ndaye ndaguquka kwisifungo endandisenzile sokokuba andisokuze ndiphinde ndiwancedise; aza andinika ulawulo kwakhona lwemikhosi yawo, kuba babendingela ngokungathi ndandinako ukuwahlangula kuzo iimbandezelo zawo.
- 2 Kodwa qaphelani, mna ndandingenathemba, kuba ndandizazi izigwebo zeNkosi ezazimele ukwehla phezu kwabo; kuba abazange baguquke kubugwenxa babo, kodwa baye batsala nzima ebomini babo bengabizi kwesoo Siqu sabadalayo.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaLeymenayithi aye eza ngokuchasene nathi njengokuba sasisabele kwisixeko saseYordan; kodwa qaphelani, badudulelwa emva ukuze bangasithabathi isixeko ngelo lixa.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye beza ngokuchasene nathi kwakhona, kwaye saye sasigcina isixeko. Kananjalo kwakukho nezinye izixeko ezaye zigcinwe ngamaNifayithi, iinqaba ezo ezaye zawanqamla ukuze angabinako ukungena elizweni elalime phambi kwethu, ukuba babatshabalalise abemi belizwe lethu.
- 5 Kodwa kwenzekile okokuba nayiphina imihlaba esasithe sadlula ngakuyo, nabemi bayo babengahlanganiselwanga ngaphakathi, batshatyalaliswa ngamaLeymenayithi, needolophu zabo, needolophana, zaza izixeko zatshiswa ngomlilo; aza njalo amakhulu amathathu anamashumi asixhenxe anesithoba eminyaka adlula.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowamakhulu amathathu anamashumi asibhozo unyaka amaLeymenayithi aye eza kwakhona ngokuchasene nathi ukulwa idabi, kwaye saye sema ngokuchasene nawo ngenkalipho; kodwa konke kwaba lilize, kuba ayemakhulu kakhulu amanani awo kangangokuba aye abanyathela abantu bamaNifayithi phantsi kweenyawo zawo.

## Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.



- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye kwakhona sasaba, kwaye abo ukusaba kwabo kwakunesantya esingaphezulu kunesamaLeymenayithi baye basinda, baza abo ukusaba kwabo kwakungakogqithi okwamaLeymenayithi batshayeelwa phantsi baza batshatyalaliswa.
- 8 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, mna, Mormoni, andinqweneli kuhlupha miphefumlo yabantu ngokuphosa phambi kwabo umbono onjalo ukoyikeka wegazi nendyikityha njengalowo wawubekwe phambi kwamehlo am; kodwa mna, ndisazi okokuba ezi zinto ngokuqinisekileyo kufuneka zazisiwe, nokokuba zonke izinto ezifihliweyo kufuneka zityhilwe phezu kwamaphahla ezindlu—
- 9 Kananjalo nokokuba ulwazi lwezi zinto kufuneka lufike kuyo intsalela yaba bantu, kananjalo nakubo abeeNtlanga, eyathi iNkosi kumele basisasaze esi sizwe kwaye esi sizwe kumele sibalelwe njengento engento phakathi kwabo—ke ngoko ndibhala isishwankathelo esincinane, ndingalingi kunika ngxelo izeleyo yezinto endizibonileyo, ngenxa yomyalelo endiwufumeneyo, kananjalo nokokuba ningabi nakuba nalusizi lukhulu ngenxa yenkohlakalo yaba bantu.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, oku ndikuthetha kuyo imbewu yabo, kananjalo nakubo abeeNtlanga abanenkathalo ngendlu kaSirayeli, abaqondayo kwaye besazi apho iintsikelelo zabo zivela khona.
- 11 Kuba ndiyazi okokuba abanjalo baya kuba lusizi ngentlekele yendlu kaSirayeli; ewe, baya kuba lusizi ngentshabalalo yaba bantu; baya kuba lusizi kuba aba bantu bengaguqukanga ukuze babe nokuba bawolelwe ezingalweni zikaYesu.
- 12 Ngoku ezi zinto zibhalelwa intsalela yendlu kaYakobi; kwaye zibhalwe ngolu hlobo, ngenxa yokuba ziyaziwa nguThixo okokuba inkohlakalo ayisayi kuzizisa ngaphambili kubo; kwaye ziya kufihlwa phezulu eNkosini ukuze zibe nokuza ngaphambili ngelakhe ilixa elifanelekileyo.
- 13 Kwaye lo ngumyalelo endithe ndawufumana; kwaye qaphelani, ziya kuza ngaphambili ngokomyalelo weNkosi, xa sukuba iya kubona kulungile, ngobulumko bayo.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

- 14 Kwaye qaphelani, ziya kuya kubo abangakhohwayo bamaYuda; kwaye kungale njongo ziya kuya—ukuze abe nokuthundezwa okokuba uYesu unguye uKrestu, uNyana woThixo ophilayo; ukuze uBawo abe nokuzisa, ngokwakhe oyena uyiNtanda kakhulu ngokugqithileyo, enkulu neyanaphakade injongo yakhe, ekubuyiseleni amaYuda, okanye yonke indlu kaSirayeli, kulo ilizwe lelifawo, eyathi iNkosi uThixo wawo yawanika lona, ekuzalisekiseni umnqophiso wayo;
- 15 Kananjalo nokokuba imbewu yaba bantu ibe nokukholelwa ngokuphelele ngakumbi kwivangeli yakhe, eya kuthi ibheke phambili kubo isuka kwabeeNtlanga; kuba aba bantu baya kusasazwa, kwaye baya kuba sisizwe esintsundu, esinyhuku-nyhuku, nesingathandekiyo, ngaphaya kwenkcazelo yoko kwakukhe kwabakho phakathi kwethu, ewe, noko kwakukhe kwabakho phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi, kwaye oku kungenxa yokungakhohwa kwabo nokukhonza izithixo.
- 16 Kuba qaphelani, uMoya weNkosi sele uphezile ukuhlala kunye nooyise; kwaye abanaye uKrestu noThixo ehlabathini; kwaye baqhutyelwa ngapha nangapha njengomququ phambi komoya.
- 17 Babekhe ngelinye ilixa baba ngabantu abonwabisayo, kwaye babenaye uKrestu njengomalusi wabo; ewe, kwaye babekhokelwa kwananguye uThixo uBawo.
- 18 Kodwa ngoku, qaphelani, sikhokelelwa ngapha nangapha nguSathana, kwananjengomququ uphetshethwa ngumoya, okanye nanjengokuba inqanawa iphoswa ngapha nangapha phezu kwamaza, ingenayo iseyile okanye i-ankile, okanye ingenayo nantoni na enokuthi iqhutywe ngayo; kwaye kwananjengokuba injalo, nabo banjalo.
- 19 Kwaye qaphelani, iNkosi izibambile iintsikelelo zabo, engebabezifumene elizweni, izibambe abeeNtlanga abaya kulilawula ilizwe.
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani, kuya kwenzeka okokuba baya kuqhutywa baze basasazwe ngabo abeeNtlanga; kwaye emva kokuba beqhutyiwe baze basasazwa ngabo abeeNtlanga, qaphelani, iya kuthi ke iNkosi iwukhumbule umnqophiso eyawenzayo kuye uAbraham nakuye yonke indlu kaSirayeli.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightful people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

21 Kananjalo iNkosi iya kuyikhumbula imithandazo yamalungisa, eyayinyuselwe kuyo ngenxa yabo.

22 Kwaye ke, Owu nina beeNtlanga, ningathini na ukuma phambi kwamandla kaThixo, ngaphandle kokuba niya kuguquka nize nibuye kuzo iindlela zenu ezimbi?

23 Anazi na okokuba nisezandleni zikaThixo? Anazi na okokuba unawo onke amandla, kwaye ngomyalelo wakhe owoyikekayo umhlaba uya kusongwa njengencwadi esongwayo?

24 Ke ngoko, guqukani, nize nizithobe phambi kwakhe, hleze aphume eze ngesigwebo ngokuchasene nani—hleze intsalela yembewu kaYakobi ibheke phambili phakathi kwenu njengengonyama, ize iniqwenge nibe ziziqwenga, kwaye akukho bani uya kuhlanguka.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

## Mormoni 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ndiyayiphetha imbali yam ngokunxulumene nentshabalalo yabantu bam, amaNifayithi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye samatshela phambili phambi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 2 Kwaye mna, Mormoni, ndabhalela incwadi kuye ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi, ndaza ndacela kuye okokuba makasivumele okokuba sibe nokuhlanganisana kunye abantu bethu kulo ilizwe laseKhumora, ngakuyo induli eyayibizwa ngokuba yiKhumora, kwaye apho singalwa nabo idabi.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani wamaLeymenayithi waye wandinika into leyo endandiyinqwenela.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba saye samatshela phambili kulo ilizwe laseKhumora, kwaye saye sazigxumeka iintente zethu macala onke enduli iKhumora; kwaye yayikwilizwe lamanzi amaninzi, imilambo, nemithombo; kwaye apha sasinethemba lokuzuza ukongama phezu kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 5 Kwaye akuba amakhulu amathathu anamashumi asibhozo anesine eminyaka edlule, sasihlanganisele ngaphakathi yonke intsalela yabantu bethu kulo ilizwe laseKhumora.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba sakuba sibahlanganisele ngaphakathi bonke abantu bethu kwimbumba enye kulo ilizwe laseKhumora, qaphelani mna, Mormoni, ndaqalisa ukuba mdala; kwaye ndisazi okokuba iya kuba ngumlo wokugqibela wabantu bam, kwaye ekubeni ndayalelwa yiNkosi okokuba mandingaziyekeli iimbali ezazinikelwe ukuhlela ezantsi koobawo, ezazingcwele, ukuba ziwele ezandleni zamaLeymenayithi, (kuba amaLeymenayithi angazitshabalalisa) ke ngoko ndayenza le mbali ngamacwecwe kaNifayi, ndaza ndazifihla phezulu kuyo induli iKhumora zonke iimbali endaye ndaziphathiswa ngethemba ngesandla seNkosi, ngaphandle nje kwala ambalwa amacwecwe endaye ndawanikela kunyana wam uMoronayi.

## Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu bam, bekunye nabafazi babo nabantwana babo, baye kalokunje bayiqaphela imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi imatshela ngakubo; baza ngolo loyiko lubi kakhulu lokufa oluthi luzalise izifuba zabo bonke abakhohlakeleyo, baye balindela ukuwamkela.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba beza ukuza kulwa idabi ngokuchasene nathi, kwaye wonke umphefumlo wawuzaliswe lunkwantyo ngenxa yobukhulu bamanani awo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bawela phezu kwabantu bam ngekrele, nangesaphetha, nangotolo, nangezembe, nangalo lonke uhlobo lwesikhali semfazwe.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amadoda am ayegawulelwe phantsi, ewe, kwanamashumi amawaka am awaye ekunye nam, ndaza ndawa embindini ndonzakele; aza adlula ngakum kangangokuba awazange abuphelise ubomi bam.
- 11 Kwaye bakuba begqithile kwaye begawulele phantsi bonke abantu bam ngaphandle nje kwabangamashumi amabini anesine ethu, (phakathi kwabo kwakukho unyana wam uMoronayi) saza thina ekubeni sasisinde ekufeni kwabantu bethu, saye saqaphela ngengomso, akuba amaLeymenayithi ebuyele kuzo iinkampu zawo, kwincopho yenduli iKhumora, ishumi lamawaka labantu bam ababegawulelwe phantsi, ababekhokelwe ndim ngaphambili.
- 12 Kananjalo sabona abalishumi lamawaka babantu bam ababekhokelwa ngunyana wam uMoronayi.
- 13 Kwaye qaphelani, ishumi lamawaka likaGidigidona laliwile, naye kanjalo esembindini.
- 14 NoLeyma wayewile kunye namawaka akhe alishumi; noGilgali wayewile kunye namawaka akhe alishumi; noLimha wayewile kunye namawaka akhe alishumi; noYeneyam wayewile kunye namawaka akhe alishumi; noKhumenayihah, noMoronayihah, noAnteyonam, noShiblam, noShem, noYoshe, babewile kunye namawaka abo alishumi emnye.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho ishumi elingaphezulu elaye lawa ngekrele, ngamawaka abo alishumi emnye; ewe, kwanabo bonke abantu bam ngaphandle nje kwabo bangamashumi amabini anesine ababekunye nam, kananjalo nabambalwa ababebalekele kumazwe asemazantsi, nabambalwa ababekrelele kumaLeymenayithi, babewile; yaza inyama yabo, namathambo, negazi zalala phezu kobuso bomhlaba, ekubeni zishiywe zizandla zabo bababulalayo ukuba zibole phezu kwelizwe, nokuba zivuthulukele kwaye zibuyele kunina wazo umhlaba.
- 16 Kwaye umphefumlo wam ukrazukile kukuthuthumbeka, ngenxa yababuleweyo abantu bam, ndaza ndakhala:
- 17 Owu nina bahle, kungani na nimkile kuzo iindlela zeNkosi! Owu nina bahle, kungani na nimlahlile laa Yesu, owathi wema eneengalo ezivulekileyo ukuba anamkele!
- 18 Qaphelani, ukuba beningakwenzanga oku, ningeningawanga. Kodwa qaphelani, niwile, kwaye mna ndilusizi ngokulahleka kwenu.
- 19 Owu nina zintombi noonyana abahle, nina bobawo noma, nina bayeni nabafazi, nina bahle, kungani na ukuba niwe!
- 20 Kodwa qaphelani, nimkile, kwaye iintsizi zam azinako ukunibuyisa.
- 21 Kwaye umhla uyeza kwakamsinya wokokuba okufayo kwenu kufuneka kwambathe ukungafi, kwaye le mizimba ethi ngoku ibole kukonakala kufuneka kwakamsinya ibe enokungonakali; kwaye ke kufuneka nime phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaKrestu, ukuba nigwetywe ngokwemisebenzi yenu; kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba ningamalungisa, ke nisikelelekile kunye nooyihlo abahambileyo ngaphambi kwenu.
- 22 Owu ukuba beniguqukile ngaphambi kokuba le ntshabalalo inkulu ibe ifikile phezu kwenu. Kodwa qaphelani, nimkile, kwaye uBawo, ewe, uBawo onguNaphakade wasezulwini, uyayazi imeko yenu; kwaye wenza ngani ngokobulungisa nenceba yakhe.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

## Mormoni 7

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ndiza kuthetha nje noko kuyo intsalela yaba bantu abasindileyo, ukuba kuyenzeka okokuba uThixo angayinika amazwi am, ukuze ibe nokwazi ngezinto zooyise; ewe, ndibhekisa kuni, nina niyintsalela yendlu kaSirayeli; kwaye la ngamazwi endiwathethayo:
- 2 Yazini okokuba ningabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 3 Yazini okokuba kufuneka nize enguqukweni, okanye aninako ukusindiswa.
- 4 Yazini okokuba kufuneka nizibeke phantsi izikhali zenu zemfazwe, kwaye ningabe niphinde nivuyiswe yimpalalo-gazi, kwaye ningazithabathi kwakhona, ngaphandle kokuba uThixo uya kuniyalela.
- 5 Yazini okokuba kufuneka nize kulwazi looyihlo, nize niguquke kuzo zonke izono zenu nobugwenxa, nize nikholelwe kuYesu Krestu, okokuba unguNyana kaThixo, nokokuba wabulawa ngamaYuda, kwaye ngamandla kaBawo uvukile kwakhona, athe ngako wazuza uloyiso phezu kwengcwaba; kananjalo ngaye ulwamvila lokufa luginyiwe.
- 6 Kwaye wenza ukuba kwenzeke uvuko lwabafileyo, ekuya kuthi ngalo uluntu kufuneka luvuswe ukuze lume phambi kwesihlalo sakhe sokugweba.
- 7 Kwaye wenza ukuba kwenzeke inkululeko yehlabathi, ekuya kuthi ngayo lowo ufunyenwe engenatyala phambi kwakhe ngomhla womgwebo kunikwe kuye ukuhlala ebusweni bukaThixo kubukumkani bakhe, ukuze avume iindumiso ezingenasiphelo kunye neekwayari phezulu, kuye uBawo, nakuye uNyana, nakuwo uMoya oyiNgcwele, abanguThixo omnye, kwimo yolonwabo olungenaso isiphelo.
- 8 Ke ngoko guqukani, nize nibhaptizelwe egameni likaYesu, nize namkele ivangeli ikaKrestu, eya kubekwa phambi kwenu, kungekuyo le mbali kuphela kodwa kanjalo kuyo imbali eya kuthi ize kubo abeeNtlanga isuka kumaYuda, imbali leyo eya kuza isuka kwabeeNtlanga ize kuni.

## Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

9 Kuba qaphelani, oku kubhalwe ngenjongo yokokuba nibe nokukholelwa kuko; kwaye ukuba niyakholelwa kuko niya kukholelwa koku kanjalo; kwaye ukuba niya kukholelwa koku niya kwazi malunga nooyihlo, kananjalo nemisebenzi emangalisayo eyathi yasetyenzwa ngamandla kaThixo phakathi kwabo.

10 Kwaye niya kuthi kanjalo nazi okokuba niyintsalela yembewu kaYakobi; ke ngoko nibalelwa phakathi kwabantu bomnqophiso wokuqala; kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka okokuba nikholelwe kuKrestu, nize nibhaptizwe, kuqala ngamanzi, nize ke ngomlilo nangawo uMoya oyiNgcwele, nilandela umzekelo woMsindisi wethu, ngokwa loo nto athe wasiyalela yona, kuya kulunga kuni ngomhla womgwebo. Amen.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.



## Mormoni 8

- 1 Qaphelani mna, Moronayi, ndiya yigqibezela imbali kabawo, uMormoni. Qaphelani, ndinezinto nje ezimbalwa zokuba ndizibhale, izinto ezo endiziyalelwe ngubawo.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku kwenzekile okokuba emva kwedabi elikhulu nelikhwankqisayo eKhumora, qaphelani, amaNifayithi abalekele kulo ilizwe elisemazantsi ezingelwa ngamaLeymenayithi, ada onke atshatyalaliswa.
- 3 Nobawo kanjalo wabulawa ngawo, kwaye mna ndikwasele nedwa ukuba ndibhale ibali elilusizi lokutshatyalaliswa kwabantu bam. Kodwa qaphelani, bemkile, kwaye mna ndizalisekisa umyalelo kabawo. Kwaye nokokuba baya kundibulala, andazi.
- 4 Ke ngoko ndiza kuzibhala kwaye ndizifihle iimbali emhlabeni; kwaye nokuba ndiyephi na akunamsebenzi.
- 5 Qaphelani, ubawo uyenzile le mbali, kwaye uyibhalile nenjongo yayo. Kwaye qaphelani, bendiya kuyibhala kanjalo ukuba bendinayo indawo phezu kwamacwecwe, kodwa andinayo; nesinyithi esikrwada andinaso, kuba ndindodwa. Ubawo ubulewe edabini, nazo zonke izizalwana zam, kwaye andinazihlobo nandawo yakuya kuyo; kwaye ukuba kuya kuba kangakanani na iNkosi iya kundivumela ukuba ndiphile andazi.
- 6 Qaphelani, amakhulu amane eminyaka adlule ukususela ekuzeni kweNkosi yethu noMsindisi.
- 7 Kwaye qaphelani, amaLeymenayithi abazingele abantu bam, amaNifayithi, ukuhla ukusuka kwisixeko ukuya kwisixeko nokusuka kwindawo ukuya kwindawo, kwanokude babe abasekho; kwaye kwaba kukhulu ukuwa kwabo; ewe, inkulu kwaye iyamangalisa intshabalalo yabantu bam, amaNifayithi.
- 8 Kwaye qaphelani, sisandla seNkosi esiyenzileyo. Kwaye qaphelani kanjalo, amaLeymenayithi asemfazweni omnye kunye nomnye; kwaye bonke ubuso beli lizwe bungumjikelo omnye oqhubekayo wokubulala nempalalo-gazi; kwaye akukho usaziyo isiphelo semfazwe.

## Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

- 9 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, andiphindi ndithethe malunga nabo, kuba akukho bani ngaphandle kokuba kube ngamaLeymenayithi nabaphangi abakhoyo phezu kobuso belizwe.
- 10 Kwaye akukho nawuphina owaziyo ngoThixo wokwenene ngaphandle kokuba kube ngabafundi bakaYesu, abaye basala elizweni yada inkohlakalo yabantu yabankulu kakhulu kangangokuba iNkosi ayizange ibavumele ukuba bahlale kunye nabantu; kwaye nokuba baphina phezu kobuso belizwe akukho mntu waziyo.
- 11 Kodwa qaphelani, ubawo kunye nam sibabonile, kwaye basilungiselele.
- 12 Kwaye nabani na oyamkelayo le mbali, kwaye engayi kuyigweba ngenxa yeziphene ezikuyo, kwayena lowo uyakwazi ngezinto ezinkulu ngaphezulu kunezi. Qaphelani, mna ndinguMoronayi; kwaye ukuba bekunokwenzeka, bendingazenza zonke izinto zazeke kuni.
- 13 Qaphelani, ndiyapheza ukuthetha ngokunxulumene naba bantu. Ndingunyana kaMormoni, kwaye ubawo waye eyinzala kaNifayi.
- 14 Kwaye ndikwanguye ofihlela le mbali eNkosini; amacwecwe ayo awanalo ixabiso, ngenxa yomyalelo weNkosi. Kuba ngokwenene utsho ukuthi akukho bani oya kuwafumanela ukuba azuze ingeniso; kodwa imbali yawo yeyexabiso elikhulu; kwaye nabani na oya kuyizisa ekukhanyeni, yena iNkosi iya kumsikelela.
- 15 Kuba akukho bani onokuba namandla okuyizisa ekukhanyeni ngaphandle kokuba awanikwe nguThixo; kuba uThixo unqwenela okokuba iya kwenziwa ngeliso elingenakumbi kuphela kuzuko lwakhe, okanye intlalo-ntle yabo bamandulo nabasazwa kudala abantu bomnqophiso weNkosi.
- 16 Kwaye makasikelelwe lowo uya kuzisa le nto ekukhanyeni; kuba iya kukhutshwa ebumnyameni iziswe ekukhanyeni, ngokwelizwi likaThixo; ewe, iya kukhutshwa emhlabeni, kwaye iya kukhanyisa iphuma ebumnyameni, kwaye ize kulwazi lwabantu; kwaye iya kwenziwa ngamandla kaThixo.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

- 17 Kwaye ukuba kukho iziphene ziya kuba ziziphene zomntu. Kodwa qaphelani, asazi siphene; nangona kunjalo uThixo wazi zonke izinto; ke ngoko, lowo ugwebayo, makaqonde hleze abe uya kuba sengozini yomlilo wesihogo.
- 18 Kwaye lowo uthi: Ndibonise, okanye uya kubethwa—makalumke hleze ayalele oko kwalelweyo yiNkosi.
- 19 Kuba qaphelani, kwayena lowo ugweba ngobutyhuthu-tyhuthu uya kugwetywa ngobutyhuthu-tyhuthu kwakhona; kuba ngokwemisebenzi yakhe umvuzo wakhe uya kuba njalo; ke ngoko, lowo ubethayo uya kubethwa kwakhona, yiNkosi.
- 20 Qaphela oko izibhalo zikutshoyo—umntu akasayi kubetha, engasayi kugweba; kuba umgwebo ngowam, itsho iNkosi, nempindezelo kanjalo yeyam, kwaye ndiya kubuyekeza.
- 21 Kwaye lowo uya kufutha umsindo neengxabano ngokuchasene nomsebenzi weNkosi, nangokuchasene nabantu bomnqophiso weNkosi abayindlu kaSirayeli, kwaye eya kuthi: Siya kuwutshabalalisa umsebenzi weNkosi, kwaye iNkosi ayisayi kuwukhumbula umnqophiso ewenzileyo kuyo indlu kaSirayeli—kwayena lowo usengozini yokugawulelwa phantsi aze aphoswe emlilweni.
- 22 Kuba iinjongo zanaphakade zeNkosi ziya kuqhubekela phambili, kude kube zonke izithembiso zayo ziya kuzalisekiswa.
- 23 Ziphengululeni iziprofetho zikaIsaya. Qaphelani, mna andinako ukuzibhala. Ewe, qaphelani nditsho kuni, ukuthi abo bangcwele abahambileyo ngaphambi kwam, ababelilawula eli lizwe, baya kukhala, ewe, kwanaseluthulini baya kukhala eNkosini, kwaye njengoko iNkosi iphila iya kuwukhumbula umnqophiso eyathi yawenza kunye nabo.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

24 Kwaye iyayazi imithandazo yabo, okokuba yayingenxa yabazalwana babo. Kwaye iyalwazi ukholo lwabo, kuba egameni lakhe babenako ukushenxisa iintaba; kwaye egameni lakhe babenako ukuwubangela umhlaba ukuba unyikime; kwaye ngamandla elizwi layo baye bazibangela iintolongo ukuba zidilikele emhlabeni; ewe, kwanalo iziko elivuthayo lalingenako ukubonzakalisa, nazilo zasendle nanyoka zinobuhlungu, ngenxa yamandla elizwi layo.

25 Kwaye qaphelani, imithandazo yabo kanjalo yayingenxa yakhe lowo iNkosi iya kuthi imvumele ukuba azise ezi zinto ngaphambili.

26 Kwaye akukho namnyei onokuthi azisayi kuza, kuba ngokuqinisekileyo ziya kuza, kuba iNkosi ikuthethile; kuba ziphuma emhlabeni ziya kuza, ngesandla seNkosi, kwaye akukho bani unako ukukuithintela; kwaye iya kuza ngomhla ekuya kuba kusitshiwo ukuthi imimangaliso iphelisiwe; kwaye iya kuza kwanokungathi ubani angathetha ekwabafileyo.

27 Kwaye iya kuza ngomhla xa sukuba igazi labangcwele liya kukhala kuyo iNkosi, ngenxa yamayelenqe afihlakeleyo nemisebenzi yobumnyama.

28 Ewe, iya kuza ngomhla xa sukuba amandla kaThixo eya kukhanyelwa, namabandla esuke onakaliswa kwaye aphakamele kwikratshi lentliziyo zawo; ewe, kwanangomhla eziya kuba iinkokeli zamabandla nootishala ziya kuphakama ngekratshi leentliziyo zazo, kwanasekumoneleni abo bangabamabandla azo.

29 Ewe, iya kuza ngomhla xa sukuba kuya kuvakala ngemililo, noqhwithela, nemiphunga yomsi emazweni asemzini;

30 Kananjalo kuya kuvakala ngeemfazwe, amarhe eemfazwe, neenyikima kwiindawo ezahlukeneyo.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

31 Ewe, iya kuza ngomhla xa sukuba kuya kubakho ukungcola okukhulu phezu kobuso bomhlaba; kuya kubakho ukubulala, nokuphanga, nokuxoka, neenkohliso, nohenyuzo, kwanalo lonke uhlobo lwamasikizi; xa sukuba kuya kubakho abaninzi abaya kuthi: Yenza oku, okanye yenza okuya, kwaye akunamsebenzi, kuba iNkosi iya kubaxhasa abanjalo ngomhla wokugqibela. Kodwa yeha kwabanjalo, kuba bakwinyongo yobukrakra nakumakhmandela obugwenxa.

32 Ewe, iya kuza ngomhla xa sukuba kuya kubakho amabandla akhiweyo aya kuthi: Yizani kum, kwaye ngemali yakho uya kuxolelwa izono zakho.

33 Owu nina bakhohlakeleyo nabagqwethekileyo nabantu abantamo zilukhuni, kungani ukuba nizakhele amabandla ukuba nizuze ingeniso? Kungani niliguqule ilizwi elingcwele likaThixo, ukuze nibe nokuzisa isigwebo phezu kwemiphefumlo yenu? Qaphelani, khangelani kuzo izityhilelo zikaThixo; kuba qaphelani, ilixa liyeza ngaloo mhla xa sukuba zonke ezi zinto kufuneka zizalisekisiwe.

34 Qaphelani, iNkosi indibonise ezinkulu nezimangalisayo izinto malunga noko kufuneka kwakufutshane kuzile, ngaloo mhla xa sukuba ezi zinto ziya kuza ngaphambili phakathi kwenu.

35 Qaphelani, ndithetha nani ngokungathi nikhona, kanti ke anikho. Kodwa qaphelani, uYesu Krestu unibonisile kum, kwaye ndiyazazi izenzo zenu.

36 Kwaye ndiyazi okokuba nithi nihambe ngekratshi leentliziyo zenu; kwaye akukho namnye ngaphandle nje kwabambalwa abangaziphakamiseli kwikratshi leentliziyo zabo, ngokunxiba izivatho ezisulungekileyo, ngoomona, neengxabano, nenzondo, neentshutshiso, kwanalo lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa; kwaye amabandla enu, ewe, kwanawo onke, asuke onakala ngenxa yekratshi leentliziyo zenu.

37 Kuba qaphelani, nithi nithande imali, nezinto zenu, nezivatho zenu ezisulungekileyo, nokuhombisa izindlu zenu zokukhonzela, ngaphezulu kunokuba nithanda amahlwempu nabasweleyo, abagulayo nababandezelekileyo.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

- 38 Owu nina bangcolileyo, nina bahana-hanisi, nina zithitshala, abazithengisela oko kuya kudliwa ngumhlwa, kungani na nilingcolisile ibandla elingcwele likaThixo? Kungani na ukuba nibe neentloni ukuthabathela kuni igama likaKrestu? Kungani na ningacingi okokuba likhulu ngaphezulu ixabiso lolonwabo olungenasiphelo kunaloo nkxwaleko engaze ife—kungenxa yodumo lwehlabathi?
- 39 Kungani nizihombisa ngoko kungenabo ubomi, kanti ke niyekele abalambileyo, nabasweleyo, nabaze, nabagulayo nababandezelekileyo ukuba badlule ngakuni, nize ningabaniki ngqalelo?
- 40 Ewe, kungani na nizakhela amasikizi enu afihlakeleyo ukuze nizuze ingeniso, nize nibangele okokuba abahlolokazi mababelusizi phambi kweNkosi, kananjalo neenkedama ukuba zibelusizi phambi kweNkosi, kananjalo negazi looyise nabayeni babo ukuba bakhale kuyo iNkosi ukusuka emhlabeni, ngempindezelo phezu kweentloko zenu?
- 41 Qaphelani, ikrele lempindezelo lilengalenga phezu kwenu; kwaye ilixa kwakamsinyane liyeza lokokuba aliphindezele igazi labangcwele phezu kwenu, kuba akasayi kube aphinde azinyamezele izikhalo zabo.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

## Mormoni 9

- 1 Kwaye ngoku, ndithetha kanjalo malunga nabo bangakholelwayo kuKrestu.
- 2 Qaphelani, ingaba niya kukholelwa na ngomhla wokuvelelwa kwenu—qaphelani, xa sukuba iNkosi iya kuza, ewe, kwanawo loo mhla mkhulu xa sukuba umhlaba uya kusongwa njengencwadi esongwayo, neziqalelo zomhlaba ziya kunyibilika bubushushu obukhulu, ewe, ngaloo mhla mkhulu xa sukuba niya kuziswa ukuba nime phambi kweMvana kaThixo —ngoko niya kutsho na ukuthi akukho Thixo?
- 3 Ngoko ingaba niya kuba saqhubeka na nimkhanyela uKrestu, okanye ningayibona na iMvana kaThixo? Nicinga okokuba niya kuhlala kunye nayo phantsi kwengqiqo yetyala lenu? Nicinga okokuba ningonwaba ukuhlala kunye nesoo Siqu singcwele, xa imiphefumlo yenu ithuthunjiswa yingqiqo yetyala lenu ngenxa yokokuba benisoloko niyaphula imithetho yaso?
- 4 Qaphelani, nditsho kuni ukuthi ningangonwabi ngakumbi ukuhlala kunye naye ongcwele nolungileyo uThixo, phantsi kwengqiqo yobunyhuku-nyhuku benu phambi kwakhe, kunokuba beninokuba njalo ukuhlala kunye nemiphefumlo yabagwetyiweyo esihogweni.
- 5 Kuba qaphelani, xa sukuba niya kuziswa ukuba nibubone ubuze benu phambi koThixo, kananjalo nobuqaqawuli bukaThixo, nobungcwele bukaYesu Krestu, buya kuphamba ilangatyelomlilo ongacimiyo phezu kwenu.
- 6 Owu ke nina bangakholwayo, guqukelani kuyo iNkosi; khalani ngamandlakazi kuye uBawo egameni likaYesu, ukuze mhlawumbi ninokufunyanwa ningenachaphaza, nimsulwa, ningenasiphako, kwaye nimhlophe, ekubeni nicocwe ngegazi leMvana, ngalowo mkhulu nowokugqibela umhla.
- 7 Kwaye kwakhona ndibhekisa kuni nina bakhanyela izityhilelo zikaThixo, nize nithi ziphelisiwe, nokokuba akukho zityhilelo, naziprofetho, nazipho, nakuphilisa, nakuthetha ngeelwimi, nakutolikwa kweelwimi;

## Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

- 8 Qaphelani ndithi kuni, lowo uzikhanyelayo ezi zinto akayazi ivangeli kaKrestu; ewe, akazifundanga izibhalo; ukuba kunjalo, akaziqondi.
- 9 Kuba ingaba asifundi na ukuba uThixo ukwanguye izolo, namhla, nangonaphakade, kwaye kuye akukho kuguqu-guquka nasithunzi sokutshintsha?
- 10 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba nizicingele ezingqondweni zenu uthixo othi atshintsha-tshintshe, kwaye ekukho kuye isithunzi sokutshintsha, ke nizicingele ezingqondweni zenu uthixo ongenguye uThixo wemimangaliso.
- 11 Kodwa qaphelani, mna ndiza kunibonisa uThixo wemimangaliso, kwanoThixo ka-Abraham, noThixo kaIsake, noThixo kaYakobi; kwaye ikwa nguye loo Thixo owadala amazulu nomhlaba, nazo zonke izinto ezikuwo.
- 12 Qaphelani, wadala uAdam, kwaza ngoAdam kwafika ukuwa komntu. Kwaza ngenxa yokuwa komntu kweza uYesu Krestu, okwanguBawo noNyana; kwaye ngenxa kaYesu Krestu kweza inkululeko yomntu.
- 13 Kwaye ngenxa yenkululeko yomntu, eyeza ngoYesu Krestu, babuyiselwa ebusweni beNkosi; ewe, le yindlela abathi bonke abantu bakhululwa ngayo, ngenxa yokuba ukufa kukaKrestu kwenza kwabakho uvuko, olwenza kwabakho inkululeko kuko ukulala okungenasiphelo, ukulala oko bonke abantu baya kuthi bavuke kuko ngamandla kaThixo xa sukuba ixilongo liya kukhala; kwaye baya kuphuma kunye abancinane nabakhulu, kwaye bonke baya kuma phambi kwenkundla yakhe, bekhululwe kwaye bakhutshiwe kweli khamandela lanaphakade lokufa, ukufa oko kukukufa kwenyama.
- 14 Kwaye ngoko kuze umgwebo wOngcwele phezu kwabo; kwaye ke kuze ilixa lokokuba lowo unyhuku-nyhuku eya kuba esenyhuku-nyhuku; kwaye lowo ulilungisa uya kuba eselilungisa; lowo wonwabileyo uya kuba esonwabile; kwaye lowo ungonwabanga uya kuba esengonwabanga.

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.



- 15 Kwaye ngoku, Owu nina nonke abathe bazicingela ezingqondweni zenu uthixo ongenakwenza mimangaliso, ndinga ndingabuza kuni, ingaba zonke ezi zinto zenzekile na, endithethe ngazo? Ingaba isiphelo seside safika? Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi; noThixo akaphezanga ukuba nguThixo wemimangaliso.
- 16 Qaphelani, ingaba izinto athe uThixo wazenza azimangalisi emehlweni ethu? Ewe, kwaye ngubani na onako ukuyiqiqqa imisebenzi emangalisayo kaThixo?
- 17 Ngubani na oya kutsho ukuthi yayingenguwo na ummangaliso okokuba ngelizwi lakhe amazulu nomhlaba mawabekho; nangamandla elizwi lakhe umntu wadalwa ngothuli lomhlaba; nangamandla elizwi lakhe imimangaliso yenziwa?
- 18 Kwaye ngubani na oya kutsho ukuthi uYesu Krestu akazange enze mimangaliso mininzi enamandlakazi? Kwaye yayikho imimangaliso emininzi enamandlakazi eyenziwayo ngezandla zabapostile.
- 19 Kwaye ukuba kwakukho imimangaliso eyenziwayo ngoko, kungani na uThixo ephezile ukuba nguThixo wemimangaliso aze kanti abe usiSiqu esingaguqu-guqukiyo? Kwaye qaphelani, ndithi kuni akatshintshi; ukuba kunjalo angapheza ukuba nguThixo; kwaye akaphezi ukuba nguThixo, kwaye unguThixo wemimangaliso.
- 20 Kwaye isizathu sokokuba apheze ukwenza imimangaliso phakathi kwabantwana babantu kungenxa yokokuba baya besithelela ekungakholweni, baze bemke endleleni eyiyo, baze bangamazi uThixo lowo bamele bathembele kuye.
- 21 Qaphelani, nditsho kuni ukuthi nabani na okholelwayo kuKrestu, engathandabuzi nto, nantoni na aya kuyicela kuBawo egameni likaKrestu uya kuyinikwa; kwaye esi sithembiso sikubo bonke, kwanokuya eziphelweni zomhlaba.
- 22 Kuba qaphelani, watsho njalo uYesu Krestu, uNyana kaThixo, kubo abafundi bakhe ababeya kusala, ewe, kananjalo nakubo bonke abafundi bakhe, sisiva isihlwele: Hambani niye kulo lonke ihlabathi, nize nishumayele ivangeli kuso sonke isidalwa;

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

- 23 Kwaye lowo ukholwayo aze abhaptizwe uya kusindiswa, kodwa lowo ungakholelwayo uya kugwetywa;
- 24 Kwaye le miqondiso iya kubalandela abo bakholwayo—egameni lam baya kukhuphela ngaphandle oomtyholi; baya kuthetha ngeelwimi ezintsha; baya kuphakamisa iinyoka ezinobuhlungu; kwaye ukuba basela nantoni na ebulalayo ayisayi kubenzakalisa; baya kubeka izandla kwabagulayo kwaye baya kuphila;
- 25 Kwaye nabani na oya kukholelwa egameni lam, engathandabuzi nto, kuye ndiya kuwaqinisekisa onke amazwi am, kwanokuya kuzo iziphelo zomhlaba.
- 26 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, ngubani na onako ukuma ngokuchasene nemisebenzi yeNkosi? Ngubani na onako ukuzikhanyela ezi ntetha? Ngubani na oya kuvukela ngokuchasene namandla onke amandla eNkosi? Ngubani na oya kuyenyelisa imisebenzi yeNkosi? Ngubani na oya kubenyelisa abantwana bakaKrestu? Qaphelani, nonke nina bangabanyelisi bemisebenzi yeNkosi, kuba niya kumangaliswa nize nitshabalale.
- 27 Owu ke musani ukwenyelisa, kwaye ningamangaliswa, kodwa waphulaphuleni amazwi eNkosi, nize nicele kuBawo egameni likaYesu ezo zinto nazinto zini na eniya kuthi niziswele. Musani ukuthandabuza, kodwa yibani ngabakholelwayo, nize niqalise njengakumaxesha akudala, kwaye nize kuyo iNkosi ngazo zonke iintliziyo zenu, nize nilusebenze olwenu usindiso ngoloyiko nonkwantyo phambi kwakhe.
- 28 Yibani nobulumko ngemihla yobulingwa benu; zihlubeni kuko konke ukungcola; ningaceli, ukuze nibe nokubugqibela kwiinkanuko zenu, kodwa celani ngenzondelelo engagungqiyo, ukuze ningazinikeli ekuhendweni, kodwa ukuze nikhonze owokwenene nophilayo uThixo.

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

- 29 Bonani ukuba anibhaptizwa ningafanelekanga; bonani okokuba anithabathi nitye kuwo umthendeleko kaKrestu ningafanelekanga; kodwa bonani okokuba nizenza zonke izinto ngemfaneleko, kwaye nizenze egameni likaYesu Krestu, uNyana woThixo ophilayo; kwaye ukuba niyakwenza oku, nize ninyamezele kude kube sekupheleni, anisayi kuze nangayiphina indlela nikhutshelwe ngaphandle.
- 30 Qaphelani, ndibhekisa kuni ngokungathi ndathetha ndiphuma kwelabafileyo; kuba ndiyazi okokuba niya kuba nawo amazwi am.
- 31 Musani ukundigweba ngenxa yokungafezeki kwam, nobawo ngokunjalo, ngenxa yokungafezeki kwakhe, nabo abo babhalayo ngaphambi kwakhe; kodwa kunoko nikani imibulelo kuye uThixo kuba ekubonakalisile kuni ukungafezeki kwethu, ukuze nibe nokufunda ukulumka ngakumbi kunokuba besinjalo.
- 32 Kwaye ngoku, qaphelani, siyibhale le mbali ngokolwazi lwethu, ngabalinganiswa ababizwa phakathi kwethu ngokuba sisiYiputa esiguqulweyo, ekubeni sinikezelwe ezantsi saza salungiswa sithi, ngokohlobo lwethu lwentetho.
- 33 Kwaye ukuba amacwecwe ethu ebemakhulu ngokwaneleyo singe sibhale ngesiHebhere; kodwa isiHebhere sitshintshwe sithi kanjalo; kwaye ukuba besibhale ngesiHebhere, qaphelani, ninge ningafumananga ziphene kuyo imbali yethu.
- 34 Kodwa iNkosi iyazazi izinto ezo sizibhalileyo, kananjalo nokokuba abakho abanye abantu abalwaziyo ulwimi lwethu, nangenxa yokuba kungekho abanye abantu abalwaziyo ulwimi lwethu, nike ngoko uyilungiselele enye indlela yokutolikwa kwalo.
- 35 Kwaye ezi zinto zibhalwe ukuze sibe nokususa kwizambatho zethu igazi labazalwana bethu, abaye besithelela ekungakholweni.
- 36 Kwaye qaphelani, ezi zinto esizingweneleyo ngokunxulumene nabazalwana bethu, ewe, ngokukodwa ubuyiselo lwabo kulwazi lukaKrestu, zingokwemithandazo yabo bonke abangcwele ababefudula behlala elizweni.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

37      Kwaye inga iNkosi uYesu Krestu ingabanika  
okokuba imithandazo yabo ingaphendulwa  
ngokokholo lwabo; kwaye wanga uThixo uBawo  
angawukhumbula umnqophiso awathi wawenza  
kunye nayo indlu kaSirayeli; kwaye wanga  
angabasikelela ngonaphakade, ngokholo kulo igama  
likaYesu Krestu. Amen.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their  
prayers may be answered according to their faith;  
and may God the Father remember the covenant  
which he hath made with the house of Israel; and  
may he bless them forever, through faith on the  
name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

# INcwadi kaEtere

*Imbali yamaYeredayithi, etbatyathwe kumacwecwe angamashumi amabini anesine afunyanwa ngabantu bakaLimbayi ngemibla kaKumkani uMozaya.*

## Etere 1

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndiyaqhubeka ukunika ingxelo yabo bemi bamandulo ababetshatyalalisiwe ngesandla seNkosi phezu kobuso beli lizwe lasemantla.
- 2 Kwaye ndiyithabatha ingxelo yam kumacwecwe angamashumi amabini anesine awaye-funyenwe ngabantu bakaLimhayi, ebizwa ngokuba yiNcwadi kaEtere.
- 3 Kwaye ndicinga okokuba inxalenye yokuqala yale mbali, ethetha ngokunxulumene nendalo yehlabathi, kananjalo neka-Adam, nengxelo esuka kwelo lixa kwanakuyo inkcochoyi enkulu, nazo naziphina izinto ezenzekayo phakathi kwabantwana babantu kude kube lelo lixa, ikhona phakathi kwamaYuda—
- 4 Ke ngoko andizibhali ezo zinto zenzekayo ukusuka kwimihla ka-Adam kude kube lelo lixa; kodwa zikho phezu kwamacwecwe; kwaye nabani na owafumanayo, kwayena lowo uya kuba namandla okokuba angayifumana ingxelo ezeleyo.
- 5 Kodwa qaphelani, andiniki ingxelo ezeleyo, kodwa inxalenye yengxelo ndiyinika, ukusuka kuyo inkcochoyi ukuhla kude kube batshatyalalisiwe.
- 6 Kwaye ngale ndlela ndinika ingxelo. Lowo wabhala le mbali wayenguEtere, kwaye wayeyinzala kaKoriyantori.
- 7 UKoriyantori wayengunyana kaMoron.
- 8 Kwaye uMoron wayengunyana kaEtem.
- 9 Kwaye uEtem wayengunyana ka-Aha.
- 10 Kwaye uAha wayengunyana kaSete.
- 11 Kwaye uSete wayengunyana kaShiblani.
- 12 Kwaye uShiblani wayengunyana kaKhom.
- 13 Kwaye uKhom wayengunyana kaKoriyantam.
- 14 Kwaye uKoriyantam wayengunyana ka-Amnigada.
- 15 Kwaye uAmnigada wayengunyana ka-Aron.

# The Book of Ether

*The record of the Jaredites, taken from the twenty-four plates found by the people of Limbi in the days of King Mosiah.*

## Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblani.

And Shiblani was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

16 Kwaye uAron wayeyinzala kaHeti, owaye engunyana kaHiyatham.

17 Kwaye uHiyatham wayengunyana kaLib.

18 Kwaye uLib wayengunyana kaKishe.

19 Kwaye uKishe wayengunyana kaKoromi.

20 Kwaye uKoromi wayengunyana kaLevi.

21 Kwaye uLevi wayengunyana kaKhim.

22 Kwaye uKhim wayengunyana kaMoriyantoni.

23 Kwaye uMoriyantoni wayeyinzala kaRiplakhish.

24 Kwaye uRiplakhish wayengunyana kaShez.

25 Kwaye uShez wayengunyana kaHeti.

26 Kwaye uHeti wayengunyana kaKhom.

27 Kwaye uKhom wayengunyana kaKoriyantam.

28 Kwaye uKoriyantam wayengunyana ke-Emeri.

29 Kwaye uEmeri wayengunyana kaOmeri.

30 Kwaye uOmeri wayengunyana kaShule.

31 Kwaye uShule wayengunyana kaKib.

32 Kwaye uKib wayengunyana kaOriha, owaye engunyana kaYerede;

33 UYerede lowo weza ngaphambili kunye nomntakwabo neentsapho zabo, kunye nabanye abathile kunye neentsapho zabo, besuka kwinkcochoyi enkulu, ngelixa iNkosi yalubhidanisa ulwimi lwabantu, yaza yafunga ngomsindo wayo ukuba baya kusasazwa phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba; kwaye ngokwelizwi leNkosi abantu basasazwa.

34 Waza umntakwabo Yerede ekubeni eyindoda enkulu nenamandlakazi, nendoda ethandwa kakhulu yiNkosi, uYerede, umntakwabo, wathi kuye: Khala kuyo iNkosi, ukuze ingasibhidanisi ukuze singabinako ukuwaqonda amazwi ethu.

35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede waye wakhala kuyo iNkosi, yaza iNkosi yaba nemfesane kuYerede; ke ngoko ayizange ilubhidanise ulwimi lukaYerede; waza uYerede kunye nomntakwabo ababhidaniswa.

36 Ngoko wathi uYerede kuye umntakwabo: Khala kwakhona kuyo iNkosi, kwaye kunokuthi kanti iya kuwubuyisa umsindo wayo kubo abo bangabahlobo bethu, ukuze ingalubhidanisi ulwimi lwabo.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

And Corom was the son of Levi.

And Levi was the son of Kim.

And Kim was the son of Morianton.

And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.

And Riplakish was the son of Shez.

And Shez was the son of Heth.

And Heth was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Emer.

And Emer was the son of Omer.

And Omer was the son of Shule.

And Shule was the son of Kib.

And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;

Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.

And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.

Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.

37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede waye wakhala kuyo iNkosi, yaza iNkosi yaba nemfesane kubahlobo babo neentsapho zabo kanjalo, ukuze bangabhidaniswa.

38 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYerede wathetha kwakhona kuye umntakwabo, esithi: Hamba uze uyibuze iNkosi ukuba ingaba iya kusidudulela ngaphandle kwelizwe kusini na, kwaye ukuba iya kusidudulela ngaphandle kwelizwe, khala kuyo apho siya kuya khona. Kwaye ngubani owaziyo kunokuthi kanti iNkosi iya kusithwalela phambili kulo ilizwe elikhethekileyo naphezu kwawo wonke umhlaba? Kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka, masinyaniseke kuyo iNkosi, ukuze sibe nokulifumana njengelifa lethu.

39 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede waye wakhala kuyo iNkosi ngokwaloo nto eyayithethiwe ngomlomo kaYerede.

40 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yamva umntakwabo Yerede, yaza yanemfesane kuye, yaza yathi kuye:

41 Hamba uze uhlanganise kunye imihlambi yakho, kunye inkunzi nemazi, zalo lonke udidi; kananjalo nolwembewu yomhlaba yalo lonke udidi; neentsapho zenu; kananjalo noYerede umntakwenu nosapho lwakhe; kananjalo nabahlobo bakho neentsapho zazo, nabahlobo bakaYerede neentsapho zabo.

42 Kwaye wakuba ukwenzile oku uya kuhamba entloko yabo wehle ungene kwintlambo esemantla. Kwaye apho ndiya kuhlangana nani, kwaye ndiya kuhamba phambi kwenu ukuya kulo ilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo onke amazwe omhlaba.

43 Kwaye apho ndiya kunisikelela, nembewu yenu, kwaye ndizikhulisele kwimbewu yenu, nakwimbewu yomntakwenu, nabo baya kuhamba kunye nani, isizwe esinamandla. Kwaye akusayi kubakho nasinye esinamandla kunaso isizwe endiya kuzikhulisele sona kwimbewu yenu, phezu kwabo bonke ubuso bomhlaba. Kwaye ndiya kwenza njalo kuwe ngenxa yokuba ebudeni beli xesha nikhali kum.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

## Etere 2

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYerede nomntakwabo, neentsapho zabo, kananjalo nabahlobo bakaYerede nomntakwabo neentsapho zabo, behla baya kwintlambo eyaye ingasemantla, (kwaye igama lentlambo lalinguNimrodi, libizwa ukulandela umzingeli onamandlakazi) kunye nemihlambi yabo ababeyihlanganise kunye, inkunzi nemazi, zalo lonke udidi.
- 2 Kwaye baye kanjalo babeka izabatha baza babambisa iintaka zezulu; kwaye baye kanjalo balungisa iingxowa, abathi ngazo bazithwalela iintlanzi zamanzi.
- 3 Kwaye baye kanjalo baziphathela idezeret, ngokutolikwa, yinyosi yobusi; baza njalo bazithwalela amabubu eenyosi, nalo lonke uhlobo lwaloo nto eyaye ikho phezu kobuso belizwe, iimbewu zalo lonke udidi.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba behlele ezantsi kwintlambo kaNimrodi iNkosi yehlela ezantsi yaza yathetha kunye nomntakwabo Yerede; kwaye yayikulo ilifu, waza umntakwabo Yerede akayibona.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yabayalela okokuba mababheke phambili bangene entlango, ewe, kuloo mbombo apho kungazange kubekho mntu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yahamba phambi kwabo, kwaye yaye yathetha kunye nabo njengokuba yayimi kulo ilifu, yaza yanika umkhombandlela apho kumele bahambe khona.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bahamba entlango, kwaye baye bakha izikhephe ezincinane ezikhaphukhaphu, abathi ngazo banqumla amanzi amaninzi, ekubeni bekhonjiswa ngamaxsha onke ngesandla seNkosi.
- 7 Kwaye iNkosi yayingabavumelanga ukuba mabeme ngaphesheya kolwandle entlango, kodwa yanqwenela okokuba mabeze phambili kwanakulo ilizwe lesithembiso, elaye likhethekile ngaphezu kwawo onke amanye amazwe, elo iNkosi uThixo yayililondolozele abantu abangamalungisa.

## Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.



- 8 Kwaye yayifungile ngomsindo wayo kuye umntakwabo Yerede, okokuba nobani na abaya kulilawula eli lizwe lesithembiso, ukususela kwelo lixa ukubheka phambili nangonaphakade, kumele bamkhonze, oyinyani nokuphela kwakhe uThixo, okanye kumele batshayelelwe kude xa sukuba ukuzaliseka kwengqumbo yakhe kuya kuza phezu kwabo.
- 9 Kwaye ngoku, sinako ukuyiqaphela imimiselo kaThixo malunga neli lizwe, ukuba lilizwe lesithembiso; kwaye nasiphina isizwe esiya kulilawula siya kumkhonza uThixo, okanye siya kutshayelelwa kude xa sukuba kuzaliseka umsindo yakhe eya kuza phezu kwaso. Kwaye ukuzaliseka kwengqumbo yakhe kuyeza phezu kwaso wa sukuba sivuthelwe kubugwenxa.
- 10 Kuba qaphelani, eli lilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo onke amanye amazwe; ngako oko lowo uthi alilawule uya kumkhonza uThixo okanye uya kutshayelelwa kude; kuba ingummiselo ongunaphakade kaThixo. Kwaye akusayi kude kube sekuzalisekeni kobugwenxa phakathi kwabantwana belizwe, ukuze batshayelelwe kude.
- 11 Kwaye oku kuza kuni, Owu nina beeNtlanga, ukuze nibe nokuyazi imimiselo kaThixo—ukuze nibe nokuguquka, nize ningaqhubeki ngobugwenxa benu kude kufike ukuzaliseka, ukuze ningabi nakuzithobela ukuzaliseka kwengqumbo kaThixo phezu kwenu njengokuba abemi beli lizwe benzile kude kube kaloku nje.
- 12 Qaphelani, eli lilizwe elikhethekileyo, kwaye nasiphina isizwe esiya kulilawula siya kukhululeka ebukhobokeni nasekuthinjweni, nakuzo zonke ezinye izizwe phantsi kwezulu, ukuba baya kuthi nje bamkhonze uThixo welizwe, onguYesu Krestu, obebonakaliswe ngezinto ezo esizibhalileyo.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

13 Kwaye ngoku ndiyaqhubeka nembali yam; kuba qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yamzisa uYerede nabazalwana bakhe phambili kwanakulo olo lwandle lukhulu oluthi lwahlule amazwe. Kwaye njengokuba bathi bafika kunxweme lolwandle bazigxumeka iintente zabo; baza bayibiza igama lendawo ngokuba yiMoriyankhumer; kwaye bahlala kwiintente, kwaye bahlala kwiintente phezu konxweme lolwandle kangangesithuba seminyaka emine.

14 Kwaye kwenzekile ekupheleni kweminyaka emine okokuba iNkosi yeza kwakhona kuye umntakwabo Yerede, yaza yema kulo ilifu yaza yathetha kunye naye. Kwaye kangangesithuba seeyure ezintathu yaye iNkosi yathetha kunye nomntakwabo Yerede, yaza yamkhalimela ngenxa yokuba akazange akhumbule ukulibiza igama leNkosi.

15 Waza umntakwabo Yerede waguquka kububi obo wayebenzile, kwaye waye walibiza igama leNkosi ngenxa yabazalwana bakhe ababekunye naye. Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Ndiya kukuxolela nabazalwana bakho ngezono zabo; kodwa uze ungabe uphinde wone, kuba uya kukhumbula okokuba uMoya wam awusayi kusoloko usebenza kunye nomntu; ngako oko, ukuba niya kona nide nibe nivuthwe ngokupheleleyo niya kusikelwa ngaphandle nisuke ebusweni beNkosi. Kwaye ezi ziingcinga zam malunga nelizwe endiya kulinika nina njengelifa lenu; kuba liya kuba lilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezulu kunawo onke amanye amazwe.

16 Yaza iNkosi yathi: Hamba uyokusebenza uze wakhe, ngokohlobo lwezikhophe ezincinane ezikhaphukhaphu ezo nithe kude kube kaloku nje nazakha. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede waye waya kusebenza, kananjalo nabazalwana bakhe, waza wakha izikhophe ezincinane ezikhaphukhaphu ngokohlobo ababesakhe ngalo, ngokwemiyalelo yeNkosi. Kwaye zazincinane, kwaye zazikhaphukhaphu phezu kwamanzi, kwananje ngobukhaphukhaphu bentaka phezu kwamanzi.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

- 17 Kwaye zazakhiwe ngokohlobo lokokuba zibe nokuvaleka gingci okugqithisileyo, kwanokokuba maze ziwabambe amanzi ngokufana nesitya; kwaye umphantsi wazo wawuvaleke gingci ngokufana nesitya; kwaye amacala azo ayevaleke gingci ngokufana nesitya; kwaye iziphelo zazo zazitsolo; kwaye umphezulu wazo wawuvaleke gingci ngokufana nesitya; kwaye ubude bazo yayibubude bomthi; kwaye isango lazo, xa sukuba livaliwe, lalingangeni manzi ngokufana nesitya.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede wakhala kuyo iNkosi, esithi: Owu Nkosi, ndiwenzile umsebenzi lowo obe undiyalele wona, kwaye ndizenzile izikhophe ezincinane ezikhaphukhaphu njengoko ube undiyalele.
- 19 Kwaye qaphela, Owu Nkosi, ngaphakathi kuzo akukho ukukhanya; siya kuqhubela phi na? Kananjalo siya kutshabalala, kuba ngaphakathi kuzo asinako ukuphefumla, ngaphandle kokuba kukho umoya kuzo; ke ngoko siya kutshabalala.
- 20 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye umntakwabo Yerede: Qaphela, uya kwenza umngxunya kumphezulu, kananjalo ngaphantsi; kwaye nakuba niphelelwe ngumoya niya kuwuvula umngxunya nize nifumane umoya. Kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka okokuba amanzi angene ngaphakathi kuni, qaphelani, niya kuwuvula umngxunya, ukuze ningabi nakutshabalala kuyo impuphuma.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede wenza njalo, njengoko iNkosi yayiyalele.
- 22 Waza wakhala kwakhona kuyo iNkosi esithi: Owu Nkosi, qaphela ndenze kwananjengokuba undiyalele; kwaye ndibalungiselele izikhophe abantu bam, kwaye qaphela akukho ukukhanya ngaphakathi kuzo. Qaphela, Owu Nkosi, ingaba uya kusiyekela na ukuba siwawele la manzi maninzi ebumnyameni?
- 23 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye umntakwabo Yerede: Ingaba yintoni na onqwenela ukuba mandiyenze ukuze nibe nokufumana ukukhanya kuzo izikhophe zenu? Kuba qaphela, aninako ukuba neefestile, kuba ziya kutshizwa zibe ziingceba; ningasayi kuzithabathela mlilo, kuba anisayi kuhamba ngokukhanya komlilo.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

24 Kuba qaphelani, niya kuba njengomnenga embindini wolwandle; kuba amaza ayintaba aya kunitshiza. Nangona kunjalo, ndiya kunizisa ngaphezulu kwakhona niphume enzulwini yolwandle, kuba imimoya iza ngaphambili iphuma emlonyeni wam, kwanjalo neemvula nezikhukhula ndizithumele.

25 Kwaye qaphelani, ndinilungiselela ukuzilindela ezi zinto; kuba aninako ukuyiwela le nzulu inkulu ngaphandle kokuba ndinilungiselele ngokuchasene namaza olwandle, nemimoya ebheke phambili, nezikhukhula eziya kuza. Ke ngoko ingaba yintoni na onqwenela ukuba ndinilungiselele yona ukuze nibe nokufumana ukukhanya xa sukuba niginyelwe enzulwini yolwandle?

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

### Etere 3

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwabo Yerede, (ngoku inani lezikhephe ebezilungiselelwe zazisibhozo) wabheka phambili ukuya entabeni, ababeyibiza ngokuba yintaba iShelem, ngenxa yokuphakama kwayo okugqithileyo, kwaye waye wanyibilikisa eliweni amatye alishumi elinesithandathu amancinane; kwaye ayemhlophe kwaye ecacile, kwananje ngobukrelekrele beglasi; kwaye waye wawathutha ewathuthela phezu kwentaba ngezandla zakhe, waza wakhala kuyo iNkosi, esithi:
- 2 Owu Nkosi, uthe kufuneka sirhangqwe zizikhukhula. Ngoku qaphela, Owu Nkosi, kwaye musa ukucatshukiswa sisicaka sakho ngenxa yobuthathaka baso phambi kwakho; kuba siyakwazi ukuba ungwele kwaye uhlala emazulwini, nokokuba asifanelekanga phambi kwakho; ngenxa yokuwa indalo zethu zisuke zaba nobubi ngalo lonke ixesha; nangona kunjalo, Owu Nkosi, usinike umyalelo wokokuba kufuneka sikubize, ukuze kuwe sibe nokufumana ngokweminqweno yethu.
- 3 Qaphela, Owu Nkosi, usibethe ngenxa yobugwenxa bethu, waza wasiqhubela kude, kwaye ngale minyaka mininzi besisentlango; nangona kunjalo, ube nenceba kuthi. Owu Nkosi, ndikhangele ngosizi, uze uwubuyise umsindo wakho kwesi isizwe sakho, uze ungasiyekeli ukuba sibheke phambili ngaphaya kwale nzulu igqumayo ebumnyameni; kodwa qaphela ezi zinto ndizinyibilikise ziphuma eliweni.
- 4 Kwaye ndiyazi, Owu Nkosi okokuba unawo onke amandla, kwaye unako ukwenza nantoni na oyingwenelayo nokuze kulungelwe abantu; ke ngoko chukumisa la matye, Owu Nkosi, ngomnwe wakho, uze uwalungise ukuze ube nokukhanyisa ebumnyameni, kwaye aya kusikhanyisela ngaphakathi kuzo izikhephe esizilungisileyo, ukuze sifumane ukukhanya ngeli lixa siya kuwela ulwandle.
- 5 Qaphela, Owu Nkosi, unako ukukwenza oku. Siyazi okokuba unako ukubonisa amandla amakhulu, akhangeleka emancinane kwingqiqo yabantu.

### Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba umntakwabo Yerede ewathethile la mazwi, qaphelani, iNkosi yasolula isandla sayo yaza yawachukumisa amatye ngamanye ngamanye ngomnwe wayo. Laza ikhuselo lasuswa emehlweni omntakwabo Yerede, waza wawubona umnwe weNkosi; kwaye wawungumnwe womntu, ofana nenyama negazi; waza umntakwabo Yerede wawa phantsi phambi kweNkosi, kuba wonganyelwa luloyiko.

7 Yaza yabona iNkosi okokuba umntakwabo Yerede waye ewele emhlabeni; yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Phakama, kungani na ukuba uwe?

8 Waza wathi kuyo iNkosi: Ndibone umnwe weNkosi, ndaza ndoyika hleze indibethe; kuba ndandingazi ukuba iNkosi yayinenyama negazi.

9 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Ngenxa yokholo lwakho ubonile okokuba ndiya kuthabathela kum inyama negazi; kwaye akazange umntu eze phambi kwam enokholo olugqithise kangaka njengokuba unalo; kuba ukuba bekungenjalo unge ungawubonanga umnwe wam. Ingaba ubone ngaphezulu kunoku na?

10 Waza wathi: Hayi; Nkosi, zibonakalise kum.

11 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Ingaba uyakholwa na ngamazwi endiza kuwathetha?

12 Waza waphendula: Ewe, Nkosi, ndiyazi okokuba uthetha inyaniso, kuba unguThixo wenyaniso, kwaye akunako ukuxoka.

13 Waza akuba ewathethile la mazwi, qaphelani, iNkosi yazibonakalisa kuye, yaza yathi: Ngenxa yokuba uzibonile ezi zinto ukhululwe ngokuhlalulelwa ekuweni; ke ngoko ubuyiselwe ebusweni bam; ke ngoko ndizibonakalisa kuwe.

14 Qaphela, ndinguye lowo walungiswa ukususela kuso isiseko sehlabathi ukuba ndibakhulule abantu bam. Qaphela ndinguye uYesu Krestu. Ndinguye uBawo noNyana. Kum lonke uluntu luya kuba nobomi, nobo bungunaphakade, kwanabo abo baya kukholelwa kulo igama lam; kwaye baya kuba ngoonyana bam neentombi zam.

15 Kwaye andizange ndazibonakalisa ebantwini endibadalileyo, kuba akazange umntu akholelwe kum njengokuba wenzile. Uyabona na okokuba udalwe ngokomfuziselo wam? Ewe, kwanabo bonke abantu badalwa ekuqalekeni ngokomfuziselo wam.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

- 16 Qaphela, lo mzimba, uwubonayo ngoku nje, ngumzimba womoya wam; kwaye abantu ndibadale ngokomzimba womoya wam; kwaye kwananjengokuba ndibonakala kuwe ndingumoya ndiya kubonakala kubo abantu bam enyameni.
- 17 Kwaye ngoku, njengokuba mna, Moronayi, ndithe bendingenakho ukwenza ingxelo ezeleyo yezi zinto zibhaliweyo, ke ngoko kundanele ukutsho ukuthi uYesu wazibonakalisa kuyo le ndoda engumoya, kwanangokohlobo nangemfano yakwalo mzimba mnye kwananjengokuba wazibonakalisayo kuwo amaNifayithi.
- 18 Kwaye wamlungiselela kwananjengokuba wawalungiselelayo amaNifayithi; kwaye konke oku, ukuze le ndoda ibe nokwazi okokuba wayenguThixo, ngenxa yemisebenzi emininzi emikhulu eyathi iNkosi yayibonisa kuyo.
- 19 Kwaye ngenxa yolwazi enalo le ndoda ayinako ukuthintelwa ekuboneni ngaphakathi kwikhuselo; kwaye yawubona umnwe kaYesu, eyathi, yakuwubona, yawa luloyiko; kuba yayisazi okokuba yayingumnwe weNkosi; yaza ayabe ibe nakholo, kuba yayisazi, ngaphandle kwamathandabuzo.
- 20 Ngako oko, ekubeni inalo olu lwazi lugqibeleleyo lukaThixo, yayingenako ukuthintelwa ngaphakathi kwekhuselo; ke ngoko yambona uYesu; kwaye waye wayilungiselela.
- 21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathi kuye umntakwabo Yerede: Qaphela, akusayi kuziyekela ezi zinto uzibonileyo waza waziva ukuba zibheke phambili kulo ihlabathi, lide ilixa lifike lokokuba ndiya kulizukisa igama lam enyameni; ngako oko, uya kuzigcinela amaxesha ezayo izinto ozibonileyo waza waziva, kwaye ungazibonisi mntu.
- 22 Kwaye qaphela, xa sukuba uya kuza kum, uya kuzibhala uze uzitywinele phezulu, ukuze kungabikho bani onako ukuzitolika; kuba uya kuzibhala ngolwimi lokokuba zingabinako ukufundwa.
- 23 Kwaye qaphela, la matye mabini ndiza kuwanikela kuwe, kwaye uya kuwatywinela phezulu kanjalo kunye nezinto ezo oya kuzibhala.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

- 24 Kuba qaphela, ulwimi olo oya kulubhala ndilubhidanisile, ngako oko ndiya kuwabangela ngelam ilixa elifanelekileyo ukuba la matye aya kuzicacisa emehlweni abantu ezi zinto oya kuthi uzibhale.
- 25 Yaza yakuba iNkosi iwathethile la mazwi, yambonisa umntakwabo Yerede bonke abemi bomhlaba ababekho, kanaanjalo bonke abaya kubakho; kwaye ayizange izifihle emehlweni akhe, kwanokuzo iziphelo zomhlaba.
- 26 Kuba yayitshilo kuye kumaxesha angaphambili, ukuthi ukuba angakholelwa kuyo okokuba ingambonisa zonke izinto—zingaboniswa kuye, ke ngoko iNkosi yayingenako ukufihla nantoni na kuye, kuba wayesazi okokuba iNkosi ingambonisa zonke izinto.
- 27 Yaza iNkosi yathi kuye: Zibhale ezi zinto uze uzitywinele phezulu; kwaye ndiya kuziveza ngelam ilixa elifanelekileyo kubo abantwana babantu.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yamyalela ukuba makawatywinele phezulu amatye amabini awaye ewafumene, aze angawavezi, ide iNkosi ibe iya kuwaveza kubo abantwana babantu.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.



## Etere 4

- 1 Kwaye iNkosi yamyalela umntakwabo Yerede ukuba ehle esuke entabeni ebusweni beNkosi, aze azibhale izinto ezo ebezibonile; kwaye zaye zalelwa ukuba zize kubo abantwana babantu kude kube semva kokuba eya kunyuselwa phezulu emnqamlezweni; kwaye kungesi sizathu ukuba ukumkani uMozaya azigcine, ukuze zingabi nakuza kulo ihlabathi kude kube semva kokuba uKrestu eya kuzibonakalisa kubo abantu bakhe.
- 2 Kwaza emva kokuba uKrestu ngokwenene ezibonakalisile kubo abantu bakhe wayalela okokuba mazenziwe zityhileke.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, emva koko, bonke baye baphelela ekungakholweni; kwaye akukho namnye ngaphandle kokuba kube ngamaLeymenayithi, kwaye bayala ivangeli kaKrestu; ke ngoko ndiyalelwe okokuba mandizifihlele phezulu kwakhona kuwo umhlaba.
- 4 Qaphelani, ndibhale phezu kwala macwecwe kanye izinto awathi umntakwabo Yerede wazibona; kwaye azizange zabakho izinto ezibalasele ngaphezulu ezatyhilwayo kunazo ezo zatyhilwa kuye umntakwabo Yerede.
- 5 Ngako oko iNkosi indiyalele ukuba ndizibhale; kwaye ndizibhalile. Kwaye indiyalele okokuba ndizitywinele phezulu; kwanjalo indiyalele okokuba mandizitywinele phezulu inguqulelo yazo; ngako oko ndizitywinele phezulu izitoliki, ngokomyalelo weNkosi.
- 6 Kuba iNkosi yathi kum: Azisayi kubheka phambili kubo abeeNtlanga kude kube ngumhla wokokuba beya kuguquka kubo ubugwenxa babo, baze bacoceke phambi kweNkosi.
- 7 Kwaye ngawo loo mhla wokokuba beya kusebenzisa ukholo kum, itsho iNkosi, kwananjengokuba umntakwabo Yerede wenzayo, ukuze babe nokungcwaliseka ngam, ngoko ndiya kuzityhila izinto awathi umntakwabo Yerede wazibona, kwanokude kube kuse kubatyhileleni zonke izityhilelo zam, utsho uYesu Krestu, uNyana ka-Thixo, uYise wamazulu nomhlaba, nazo zonke izinto ezikuzo zinjalo.

## Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

- 8 Kwaye lowo uya kulwa ngokuchasene nelizwi leNkosi, makaqalekiswe; kwaye lowo uya kuzikhanyela ezi zinto, makaqalekiswe; kuba kubo andisayi kuzibonisa izinto ezinkulu ngakumbi, utsho uYesu Krestu; kuba ndinguye lowo uthethayo.
- 9 Kwaye ngomyalelo wam amazulu ayavuleka aze avaleke; kwaye ngelizwi lam umhlaba uya kunyikima; kwaye ngomyalelo wam abemi bawo baya kudlula, nanjalo ngomlilo.
- 10 Kwaye lowo ungawakholelwayo amazwi am akabakholelwa abafundi bam; kwaye ukuba kunjalo koba andithethi, zigwebele; kuba uya kwazi okokuba ndim lowo uthethayo, ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 11 Kodwa lowo uzikholelwayo ezi zinto endizithethileyo, yena ndiya kumvelela ngezityhilelo zoMoya wam, kwaye uya kwazi kwaye anike ubungqina. Kuba ngenxa yoMoya wam uya kwazi okokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani; kuba uthundeza abantu ukuba benze okulungileyo.
- 12 Kwaye nantoni na ethundeza abantu ukuba benze okulungileyo iyeyam; kuba ukulunga akuphumi nakubani na ngaphandle kokuba kube kokwam. Ndikwanguye lowo ukhokelela abantu kuko konke ukulunga; lowo ungasayi kuwakholelwa amazwi am akasayi kundikholelwa mna—okokuba ndinguye; kwaye lowo ungasayi kundikholelwa akasayi kumkholelwa uBawo owandithumayo. Kuba qaphela, mna ndinguBawo, ndikukukhanya, nobomi, nenyano yehlabathi.
- 13 Yizani kum, Owu nina beeNtlanga, kwaye ndiya kunibonisa izinto ezinkulu ngakumbi, ulwazi olufihlelwe phezulu ngenxa yokungakholwa.
- 14 Yizani kum, Owu nina ndlu kaSirayeli, kwaye kuya kutyhilwa kuni ezinjani izinto ukuba nkulu uBawo anilungiselele zono, ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi; kwaye azizanga kuni, ngenxa yokungakholwa.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

- 15 Qaphelani, xa sukuba niya kulikrazula eloo khuselo lokungakholwa elinibangela ukuba nihlale kwimo yenu eyoyikekayo yenkohlakalo, nokuqadadeka kwentliziyo, nokumfameka kwengqondo, ke ziya kuthi izinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo ebezifihlwe phezulu kuni ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi—ewe, xa sukuba niya kumemeza kuBawo egameni lam, ngentliziyo eyaphukileyo nomoya otyumkileyo, ke niya kwazi okokuba uBawo uwukhumbule umnqophiso awathi wawenza kooyihlo, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli.
- 16 Kwaye ke ziya kuthi izityhilelo zam ezo ndizibangele ukuba zibhalwe sisicaka sam uYohane ziconjululwe emehlweni abo bonke abantu. Khumbulani, xa sukuba nizibona ezi zinto, niya kwazi okokuba ilixa likufuphi lokokuba ziya kubonakaliswa ngezenzo kanye.
- 17 Ke ngoko, xa sukuba niya kuyifumana le mbali ninokwazi okokuba umsebenzi kaBawo uqalisile phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe.
- 18 Ke ngoko, guqukani nina nonke ziphelo zomhlaba, kwaye nize kum, kwaye nikholelwe yivangeli yam, nize nibhaptizwe egameni lam; kuba lowo ukholelwayo aze abhaptizwe uya kusindiswa; kodwa lowo ungakholelwayo uya kugwetywa; kwaye imiqondiso iya kubalandela abo bakholelwayo kulo igama lam.
- 19 Kwaye usikelelekile lowo ufunyenwe enyanisekile kulo igama lam ngomhla wokugqibela, kuba uya kuphakanyiselwa phezulu ukuze ahlale ebukumkanini obulungiselelwe yena ukususela kwisiseko sehlabathi. Kwaye qaphelani ndim okuthethileyo. Amen.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

## Etere 5

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndiwabhalile amazwi endaye ndiwayalelwe, ngokwenkumbulo yam; kwaye ndikuxelele ngezinto ezo zitywinelwe phezulu; ke ngoko musa ukuzichukumisa ngenjongo yokokuba ungaziguqula; kuba loo nto yalelwe kuwe, ngaphandle kokuba kube lelo lixa ekuya kuba bubulumko kuThixo.
- 2 Kwaye qaphela unganalo ilungelo elikhethekileyo lokokuba ungawabonisa amacwecwe kwabo baya kuncedisa ukuzisa ngaphambili lo msebenzi;
- 3 Kwaye kwabathathu aya kuboniswa ngamandla kaThixo; ngako oko baya kuyazi ngokuqinisekileyo okokuba ezi zinto ziyinyani.
- 4 Kwaye ngomlomo wamangqina amathathu ezi zinto ziya kumiselwa; kwaye ubungqina babo bathathu, nalo msebenzi, ekuya kuthi kuwo kuboniswe amandla kaThixo kananjalo nelizwi lakhe, athe ngalo uBawo, noNyana, noMoya oyiNgcwele banika ubungqina—kwaye konke oku kuya kuma njengobungqina ngokuchasene nehlabathi ngomhla wokugqibela.
- 5 Kwaye ukuba kuthe kanti bayaguquka baze beze kuye uBawo egameni likaYesu, baya kwamkelwa kubo ubukumkani bukaThixo.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, ukuba andinalo igunya ngezi zinto, gwebani, kuba niya kuyazi okokuba ndinalo igunya xa sukuba niya kundibona, kwaye siya kuma phambi koThixo ngomhla wokugqibela. Amen.

## Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

## Etere 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndiyaqhubeka ukunika imbali kaYerede nomntakwabo.
- 2 Kuba kwenzekile emva kokuba iNkosi ilungiselele amatye awathi umntakwabo Yerede wawathuthela ndaweni ithile entabeni, umntakwabo Yerede wehlela ezantsi wasuka entabeni, kwaye waye wawabeka amatye kuzo izikhephe ezaye zilungiselelwe, elinye kuso ngasinye isiphelo saso; kwaye qaphelani, aye anika ukukhanya kuzo izikhephe.
- 3 Kwaye njalo iNkosi yawabangela amatye ukuba akhanye ebunyameni, ukuba anike ukukhanya kuwo amadoda, abafazi nabantwana, ukuze bangabi nakuwawela amanzi amakhulu ebumnyameni.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba belungiselele lonke uhlobo lokutya, ukuze ngako babe nokuphila phezu kwamanzi, kananjalo ukutya kwemihlambi yabo nemihlambi yeenkomo, naso nasiphina isilo okanye isilwanyana okanye intaka ababeya kuyithabatha kunye nabo—kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bezenzile zonke ezi zinto bazikhwela izikhephe okanye izikhephe ezincinane ezikhaphukhaphu, baza babheka phambili bangena elwandle, bezinikela kuyo iNkosi uThixo wabo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi uThixo yaye yabangela okokuba kubekho umoya onamandla ovuthuzayo phezu kobuso bamanzi, ukuya ngakulo ilizwe lesithembiso; kwaye njalo zaziphoswa ngapha nangapha phezu kwamaza olwandle ngaphambi komoya.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba amaxesha amaninzi babengcwatyelwa enzonzobileni yolwandle, ngenxa yentaba yamazwe awaye ebetheka kubo, kananjalo olukhulu oloyikekayo uqhwithela olwalubangelwa bubudlongodlongo bomoya.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba xa babengcwatye enzonzobileni kwakungekho manzi ayenako ukubenzakalisa, ekubeni izikhephe zabo zingena kungena manzi ngokufana nesitya, kananjalo zazingena kungena manzi ngokufana nomkhombe kaNowa; ke ngoko xa baberhangqwe macala onke ngamanzi amaninzi baye bakhala kuyo iNkosi, kwaye yaye yabakhupha kwakhona ngaphezu kwamanzi.

## Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umoya waye waphenza ukuvuthuzela ngakulo ilizwe lesithembiso ngeli lixa babephezu kwamanzi; kwaye njalo babeqhutyelwa phambili ngaphambi komoya.
- 9 Kwaye baye bavuma iindumiso kuyo iNkosi; ewe, umntakwabo Yerede waye wavuma iindumiso kuyo iNkosi, kwaye waye wabulela kwaye wayidumisa iNkosi ebudeni bemini yonke, kwaye bakuba ubusuku bufikile, abazange bapheza ukuyidumisa iNkosi.
- 10 Kwaye njalo ke baqhutyelwa phambili; kwaye kwakungekho rhamncwa loyikekayo lolwandle lalinako ukuzaphula, namnenga owawunako ukuzonakalisa; kwaye baye baba nako ukukhanya ngamaxesha onke, nokuba kwakungaphezu kwamanzi okanye ngaphantsi kwamanzi.
- 11 Kwaye njalo ke babeqhutyelwa phambili, amakhulu amathathu anamashumi amane anesine eentsuku phezu kwamanzi.
- 12 Kwaye baye bafika elunxwemeni lwelizwe lesithembiso. Baza bakuba bezibekile iinyawo zabo kumanxweme elizwe lesithembiso baye baqubuda phantsi phezu kobuso belizwe, kwaye baye bazithoba phambi kweNkosi, kwaye baye baphalaza iinyembezi zovuyo phambi kweNkosi, ngenxa yobuninzi beenceba ezinemfesane zayo phezu kwabo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babheke phambili phezu kobuso belizwe, baza baqalisa ukuwulima umhlaba.
- 14 Waza uYerede waba noonyana abane; kwaye babebizwa ngokuba nguYakom, noGilga, noMaha, no-Oriha.
- 15 Waza umntakwabo Yerede naye kanjalo wazala oonyana neentombi.
- 16 Kwaye abahlobo bakaYerede nomntakwabo ngenani babemalunga namashumi amabini anambini emiphefumlo; baza nabo kanjalo bazala oonyana neentombi ngaphambi kokuba beze elizweni lesithembiso; baza ke ngoko baqalisa ukuba baninzi.
- 17 Kwaye bafundiswa ukuba bahambe bethobekile phambi kweNkosi; kananjalo bafundiswa naphezulu.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baqalisa ukunaba phezu kobuso belizwe, nokuphinda-phindana nokuwulima umhlaba; kwaye baye baba nokomelela elizweni.

19 Waza umntakwabo Yerede waqalisa ukuba mdala, waza wabona okokuba kufuneka kwakamsinyane ehlele ezantsi engcwabeni; ngako oko wathi kuye uYerede: Masibahlanganise kunye abantu bethu ukuze sibe nokubabala, ukuze sibe nokwazi kubo ukuba yintoni na abaya kuyinqwenela kuthi ngaphambi kokuba sihle siye kumangcwaba ethu.

20 Kwaye ngokolo hlobo abantu bahlanganiswa kunye. Ngoku inani loonyana neentombi zomntakwabo Yerede lalingamashumi amabini anesibini emiphfumlo; kwaye inani loonyana neentombi zikaYerede lalilishumi elinambini, yena ke enoonyana abane.

21 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bababala abantu babo; baza emva kokuba bebabalile, baye babuza kubo izinto ababenga bangabenzela zona ngaphambi kokuba behlele ezantsi kumangcwaba abo.

22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu babuza kubo ukuba bamthambise na omnye wonyana babo ukuba abe ngukumkani phezu kwabo.

23 Kwaye ngoku qaphelani, oku kwaba lusizi kubo. Waza umntakwabo Yerede wathi kubo: Ngokuqinisekileyo le nto ikhokelela ekuthinjweni.

24 Kodwa uYerede wathi kuye umntakwabo: Bavumele ukuba babenaye ukumkani. Waza ke ngoko wathi kubo: Zikhetheleni phakathi koonyana bethu ukumkani, kwalowo nimnqwanelayo.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakhetha kwanalo izibulo lomntakwabo Yerede; kwaye igama lalo lalinguPagag. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wala waza akafuna ukuba ngukumkani wabo. Baza abantu bafuna ukuba uyise makamnyanzele, kodwa uyise akazange avume; waza wabayalela ukuba banganyanzeli mntu ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba babakhetha bonke abantakwaboPagag, baza abavuma.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba nabo oonyana bakaYerede bangavumi, kwanabo bonke ngaphandle komnye; waza uOriha wathanjiswa ukuba abe ngukumkani phezu kwabo abantu.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

28 Waza waqalisa ukulawula, baza abantu baqalisa ukuphumelela; baza baba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYerede wafa, nomntakwabo kanjalo.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uOriha waye wahamba ngokuthobeka phambi kweNkosi, kwaye waye wazikhumbula izinto ezinkulu iNkosi eyamenzela zona uyise, waza kanjalo wabafundisa abantu bakhe izinto ezinkulu iNkosi eyazenzela ooyise.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.



## Etere 7

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uOriha waye wawisa isigwebo phezu kwelizwe ngobulungisa yonke imihla yakhe, omihla yakhe yaba mininzi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 2 Waza wazala oonyana neentombi; ewe, wazala amashumi amathathu ananye, phakathi kwazo kwakukho oonyana abangamashumi amabini anesithathu.
- 3 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wazala kanjalo uKib ebudaleni bakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKib walawula esikhundleni sakhe; waza uKib wazala uKoriho.
- 4 Waza uKoriho akuba neminyaka engamashumi amathathu anesibini ubudala wavukela ngokuchasene noyise, waza wawelela ngaphesheya waza wahlala kulo ilizwe likaNehore; waza wazala oonyana neentombi, baza bababahle ngokugqithisileyo; ngako oko uKoriho watsalela kude abantu abaninzi bamlandela.
- 5 Waza akuba ehlanganise kunye umkhosi wanyukela kulo ilizwe likaMoron apho ukumkani wayehlala khona, waza wamthabathela ekuthinjweni, into leyo eyenza kwenzeka intetha yomntakwabo Yerede yokokuba baya kuziswa ekuthinjweni.
- 6 Ngoku ilizwe likaMoron, apho ukumkani wayehlala khona, lalikusufuphi nelizwe elibizwa ngokuba yiNkangala ngamaNifayithi.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKib wahlala ekuthinjweni, baza abantu bakhe baba phantsi koKoriho unyana wakhe, waza waba mdala ngokugqithisileyo; nangona kunjalo uKib wazala uShule ebudaleni bakhe, ngeli lixa waye sesekuthinjweni.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShule waba nomsindo ngakumntakwabo; waza uShule waba nokomelela, waza waba namandlakazi njengokomelela komntu; kananjalo waba namandlakazi ekwenzeni isigqibo esilungileyo.

## Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

- 9 Ngako oko, weza kuyo induli iEfrayim, kwaye waye wanyibilikisa intsimbi ekrwada ephuma kuyo induli, waza webenzela amakrele ngentsimbi eyomeleleyo esenzela abo waye ebatsalele kude kunye naye; waza emva kokuba ebaxhobisile ngamakrele wabuyela kuso isixeko iNehore, waza waya kulwa idabi nomntakwabo uKoriho, ngalo ndlela wabuzuzwa ubukumkani waza wabubuyisela kuyise uKib.
- 10 Kwaye ngoku ngenxa yento leyo awathi uShule wayenza, uyise wabunikela kuye ubukumkani; ke ngoko waqalisa ukulawula esikhundleni sikayise.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wawisa isigwebo ngobulungisa; kwaye waye wabandisa ubukumkani bakhe phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, kuba abantu basuka baba baninzi ngokugqithisileyo.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShule kanjalo wazala oonyana abaninzi neentombi.
- 13 Waza uKoriho wazohlwaya ngobubi obuninzi awathi wabenza; ngako oko uShule wamnika ukongama ebukumkanini bakhe.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriho waba noonyana abaninzi neentombi. Kwaye phakathi koonyana bakaKoriho kwakukho omnye ogama lakhe lalinguNowa.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNowa wavukela ngokuchasene noShule, ukumkani, kananjalo noyise uKoriho, waza watsalela kuye uKohore umntakwabo, kananjalo nabo bonke abazalwana bakhe nesininzi sabantu.
- 16 Waza walwa idabi noShule, ukumkani, awathi kulo walizuzwa ilizwe lelifa labo lokuqala; waza waba ngukumkani phezu kwaloo mmandla welizwe.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba walwa idabi kwakhona noShule, ukumkani, waza wamthabatha uShule, ukumkani, waza wamthwalela kude njengomthinjwa wangena eMoron.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile njengokuba wayesele eza kumbulala, oonyana bakaShule bachwechwa bangena endlwini kaNowa ngobusuku baza bambulala, baza baluqhekeza ucango lwentolongo baza bamkhuphela ngaphandle uyise wabo, baza bambeka etroneni yakhe kobakhe ubukumkani.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

- 19 Ngako oko, unyana kaNowa waye wabakha ubukumkani bakhe esikhundleni sakhe; nangona kunjalo abazange baphinde bazuze mandla ngaphezu koShule ukumkani, kwaye abantu ababephantsi kolawulo lukaShule ukumkani baye baphumelela ngokugqithisileyo baza baba namandla.
- 20 Kwaye ilizwe lohlukana; kwaza kwabakho izikumkani ezimbini, ubukumkani bukaShule, nobukumkani bukaKohore, unyana kaNowa.
- 21 Waza uKohore, unyana kaNowa, wababangela abantu bakhe ukuba balwe idabi ngokuchasene noShule, awathi uShule kulo waboyisa waza wambulala uKohore.
- 22 Kwaye ngoku uKohore waye enonyana owayebizwa ngokuba nguNimrodi; waza uNimrodi wabunikezela ubukumkani bukaKohore kuye uShule, kwaye waye wazuza ubabalo emehlweni kaShule; ngako oko uShule waye wanikela izenzo ezinkulu zesisa phezu kwakhe, kwaye waye wenza kubukumkani bukaShule ngokweminqweno yakhe.
- 23 Kananjalo kulawulo lukaShule kwafika abaprofeti phakathi kwabantu, abaye bethunyelwe bevela eNkosini, beprofetha okokuba inkohlakalo nonqulo lwezithixo lwabantu lwaluzisa isiqalekiso phezu kwelizwe, kwaye kumele batshatyalaliswe ukuba babengaguquki.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baye benyelisa ngokuchasene nabaprofeti, kwaye baye babahleka. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ukumkani uShule waye wawisa isigwebo ngokuchasene nabo bonke abaye benyelisa ngokuchasene nabaprofeti.
- 25 Kwaye waye wawisa umthetho kulo lonke ilizwe, owawunika amandla kubo abaprofeti okokuba bangaya naphina apho bafuna khona; kwaye ngenxa yoku abantu baziswa enguqukweni.
- 26 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba abantu baye baguquka kubugwenxa babo nonqulo lwezithixo iNkosi yaye yabasindisa, baza baqalisa ukuphumelela kwakhona elizweni. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShule wazala oonyana neentombi ebudaleni bakhe.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

27      Kwaye kwakungasekho zimfazwe ngemihla  
kaShule; kwaye wazikhumbula izinto ezinkulu  
eyathi iNkosi yabenzela zona ooyise ngokubazisa  
ngaphesheya kwenzonzobila enkulu bangena kulo  
ilizwe lesithembiso; ngako oko waye wawisa  
isigwebo ngobulungisa ngayo yonke imihla yakhe.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule;  
and he remembered the great things that the Lord  
had done for his fathers in bringing them across the  
great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did  
execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

## Etere 8

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wazala uOmeri, waza uOmeri walawula esikhundleni sakhe. Waza uOmeri wazala uYerede; waza uYerede wazala oonyana neentombi.
- 2 Waza uYerede wavukela ngokuchasene noyise, waza weza wahlala kwilizwe likaHetu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wabanyhwalaza abantu abaninzi, ngenxa yamazwi akhe obuqhophololo, wada waba uzuze isiqingatha sobukumkani.
- 3 Waza akuba ezuze isiqingatha sobukumkani walwa idabi noyise, kwaye waye wamthwalela uyise ekuthinjweni, kwaye waye wamenza ukuba akhonze esekuthinjweni.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku, ngemihla yolawulo lukaOmeri waye esekuthinjweni isiqingatha semihla yakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wazala oonyana neentombi, ekwakukho phakathi kwabo uHetseron noKoriyantamri;
- 5 Kwaye babenomsindo ngokugqithisileyo ngenxa yezenzo zikaYerede umntakwabo, kangangokuba baye bahlanganisa umkhosi baza baya kulwa idabi noYerede. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye baya kulwa idabi naye ngobusuku.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bewubulele umkhosi kaYerede babesele beza kumbulala naye kanjalo; waza wabacenga ukuba bangambulali, kwaye uza kubunikezela ubukumkani kuye uyise. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bamyeka ukuba aphile.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku uYerede wasuka waba lusizi ngokugqithisileyo ngokuphulukana nobukumkani, kuba wayeyibeke intliziyo yakhe phezu kobukumkani naphezu kozuko lwehlabathi.
- 8 Ngoku intombi kaYerede ekubeni iyingqondi ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye ilubona usizi lukayise, yacinga ukuyila icebo enokuthi ngalo ikhululele ubukumkani kuyise.

## Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

9 Ngoku intombi kaYerede yayintle ngokugqithisileyo. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaye yathetha kunye noyise, yaza yathi kuye: Kungasizathu sini ukuba ubawo abelusizi kangaka? Ingaba akayifundanga na imbali abathi oobawo bethu bayizisa ngaphesheya kwenzulu enkulu? Qaphela, ingaba ayikho na ingxelo malunga nabakudala, yokokuba bona ngamacebo abo afihlakeleyo baye bazuza izikumkani nozuko?

10 Kwaye ngoku, ke ngoko, ubawo makathumele kuAkhish, unyana kaKhimno; kwaye qaphela, ndimhle, kwaye ndiya kungqungqa phambi kwakhe, kwaye ndiya kumonwabisa, ukuze andinqwenelele ukuba ndibe ngumfazi wakhe; ngako oko ukuba uya kukunqwenela uya kumnika mna ndibe ngumfazi wakhe, ke uya kuthi wena: Ndiya kukunika yena ukuba uya kundizisela intloko kabawo, ukumkani.

11 Kwaye ngoku, uOmeri waye esisihlobo kuAkhish; ngako oko, akuba uYerede ethumele ukuba abizwe uAkhish, intombi kaYerede yangqungqa phambi kwakhe ukuze imonwabise, kangangokuba wayinqwenelela ukuba ibe ngumfazi wakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wathi kuye uYerede: Ndinike yona ukuba ibe ngumfazi wam.

12 Waza uYerede wathi kuye: Ndiya kuyinikela kuwe, ukuba uya kundizisela intloko kabawo, ukumkani.

13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAkhish wahlanganisela kuyo indlu kaYerede zonke izizalwana zakhe, waza wathi kuzo: Ingaba niya kufunga na kum okokuba niya kunyaniseka kum kwinto leyo endiya kuyinqwenelela kuni?

14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bonke bafunga kuye, ngoThixo wezulu, kananjalo nangamazulu, kananjalo nangomhlaba, nangeentloko zabo, okokuba nabani na onokwahluka kuncedo olo uAkhish alunqweneleyo uya kuphulukana nentloko yakhe; kwaye nabani na oya kubhengeza nantoni na uAkhish aya kuyazisa kubo, kwayena lowo uya kuphulukana nobomi bakhe.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba njalo baye bavumelana kunye noAkhish. Kwaye uAkhish waye wazinikela kubo izifungo ezaye zinikwe ngabo abakudala ababe kanjalo befuna amandla, ezazinikelwe ukuhla kwanokususela kuKayin, lowo wayengumbulali ukususela ekuqalekeni.
- 16 Kwaye zagcinwa ngamandla omtyholi ukuze zinikelwe ezi zifungo kubo abantu, ukuze bazigcine ebumnyameni, ukuze zincede abafuna amandla ukuze bazuze amandla, nokubulala, nokurhwaphiliza, nokuxoka, nokwenza lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo nohenyuzo.
- 17 Kwaye yaba yintombi kaYerede eyayifakayo entliziyweni yakhe ukuba aziphande ezi zinto zakudala; waza uYerede wayifaka entliziyweni ka-Akhish; ngako oko, uAkhish wayinikela kuzo izalamane zakhe nezihlobo, ebalahlekisela kude ngezithembiso ezinomtsalane ukuze benze nantoni na ayinqwenelayo.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bayila iyelenqe elifihlakeleyo, kwananjengabo abakudala; iyelenqe elo elimasikizi ngakumbi kwaye elikhohlakele ngaphezu kwawo wonke, emehlweni kaThixo;
- 19 Kuba iNkosi ayisebenzi ngamayelenqe afihlakeleyo, inganqweneli nokokuba uluntu maluphalaze igazi, kodwa kuzo zonke izinto ukwalele, ukususela ekuqalekeni komntu.
- 20 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, andilubhali uhlobo lwezifungo zabo namayelenqe, kuba yazisiwe kum okokuba akho phakathi kwabo bonke abantu, kwaye akho, phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 21 Kwaye abangele intshabalalo yesi sizwe ndithetha ngaso kaloku nje, kananjalo nentshabalalo yabantu bakaNifayi.
- 22 Kwaye nasiphina isizwe esiya kuwaxhasa la mayelenqe afihlakeleyo, ukuze sifumane amandla nenzuzo, ade abe aya kunabela kulo lonke ilizwe, qaphelani, siya kutshatyalaliswa, kuba iNkosi ayisayi kuliyekela ukuba igazi labangcwele bayo, eliya kuphalazwa ngabo, ukuba lisoloko likhalela kuyo liphuma emhlabeni ngempindezelo phezu kwabo aze kanti akasayi kubaphindezela.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

23 Ngako oko, Owu nina beeNtlanga, kububulumko kuThixo ukuba ezi zinto maziboniswe kuni, ukuze ngazo nibe nokuguquka kwizono zenu, kwaye ningavumeli ukuba la mayelenqe abulalayo abe nokunongamela, athi abunjelwa ukufumana amandla nenzuzo—nomsebenzi, ewe, kwanawo umsebenzi wentshabalalo uze phezu kwenu, ewe, kwanalo ikrele lobulungisa loThixo onguNaphakade zibe ziya kuwela phezu kwenu, ukuya ekubhukuqweni kwenu nentshabalalo ukuba niya kuzivumele ezi zinto ukuba zibekho.

24 Ngako oko, iNkosi iya niyalela, xa sukuba niya kuzibona ezi zinto zisiza phakathi kwenu okokuba nize niphaphamele kwingqiqo yemeko yenu eyoyikekayo, ngenxa yeli yelenqe lifihlakeleyo eliya kuthi libekho phakathi kwenu; okanye yeha kulo, ngenxa yegazi labo ababuleweyo; kuba bakhala ukusuka eluthulini ngempindezelo phezu kwalo, kananjalo naphezu kwabo balibumbayo.

25 Kuba kuyenzeka okokuba nabani olibumbayo uzungula ukubhukuqa inkululeko yawo onke amazwe, izizwe, namazwe; kwaye wenza kwenzeke intshabalalo yabo bonke abantu, kuba libunjwe ngumtyholi, onguyise wabo bonke ubuxoki; kwanalo eloo xoki linye elalukuhlela abazali bethu bokuqala, ewe kwanalo eloo xoki linye labangela umntu ukuba abulale ukususela ekuqalekeni; oziqaqadekisileyo iintliziyo zabantu kangangokuba bababulale abaprofeti, baze babaxulube ngamatye, baze babakhuphele ngaphandle ukususela ekuqalekeni.

26 Ngako oko, mna, Moronayi, ndiyalelwe ukuba ndizibhale ezi zinto ukuze ububi bube nokupheliwa, kwaye nokokuba ilixa libe nokufika lokokuba uSathana angabi nawo amandla phezu kweentliziyo zabantwana babantu, kodwa ukuze babe nokuthundezwa ekubeni benze okulungileyo ngamaxesho onke, ukuze babe nokuza kuwo umthombo wabo bonke ubulungisa baze basindiswe.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.



## Etere 9

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndiyaqhubeka nembali yam. Ke ngoko, qaphelani, kwenzekile okokuba ngenxa yamayelenqe afihlakeleyo ka-Akhish nezihlobo zakhe, qaphelani, baye babubhukuqa ubukumkani bukaOmeri.
- 2 Nangona kunjalo, iNkosi yaba nenceba kuye uOmeri, kananjalo nakoonyana bakhe nakuzo iintombi zakhe ezazingayifuni intshabalalo yakhe.
- 3 Yaza iNkosi yamlumkisa uOmeri ephupheni okokuba makemke aphume elizweni; ngako oko uOmeri wemka waphuma elizweni kunye nosapho lwakhe, waza wahamba iintsuku ezininzi, waza wawelega ngaphesheya waza wadlula ngakwinduli iShim, waza wawelega ngaphesheya ngakwindawo apho amaNifayithi ayetshatyalaliswe khona, waza ukusuka apho waya ngasempumalanga, waza wafika kwindawo eyayibizwa ngokuba yiAblom, ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle, waza apho wayigxumeka intente yakhe, kananjalo noonyana bakhe neentombi zakhe, nayo yonke indlu yakhe, ngaphandle koYerede nosapho lwakhe.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uYerede wathanjiswa waba ngukumkani phezu kwabantu, ngesandla senkohlakalo; waza wanikela kuAkhish intombi yakhe ukuba ibe ngumfazi.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAkhish wazungula ubomi bukayisezala; waza wacela uncedo kwabo wayebafungise ngesifungo sabamandulo, baza bayizuza intloko kayisezala, njengokuba wayehleli phezu kwetrone yakhe, ephulaphule abantu bakhe.
- 6 Kuba lwaba lukhulu kakhulu usasazeko lwenkohlakalo yakhe noluntu olufihlakeleyo kangangokuba wayezonakalisile iintliziyo zabo bonke abantu; ke ngoko uYerede wabulawa phezu kwetrone yakhe, waza uAkhish walawula esikhundleni sakhe.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAkhish waqalisa ukummonela unyana wakhe, ke ngoko wamvalela entolongweni, waza wamgcina ngokutya okuncinane okanye ngaphandle kwako wada waba uva intlungu yokufa.

## Ether 9

And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

- 8 Waza ngoku umntakwabo lowo wayeve intlungu yokufa, (kwaye igama lakhe lalinguNimra) waba nomsindo kuyise ngenxa yoko uyise wakwenzayo kumntakwabo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uNimra wahlanganisa kunye inani elincinci lamadoda, waza wasaba waphuma elizweni, waza wawelela ngaphesheya waza wahlala kunye no-Omeri.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAkhish wazala abanye oonyana, baza bazithabathekisa iintliziyi zabantu, nangona babefungile kuye ukwenza lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa ngokwaloo nto ayinqwenelayo.
- 11 Ngoku abantu baka-Akhish babenqwenela inzuzo, kwanjengokuba uAkhish wayenqwenela amandla; ngako oko, oonyana baka-Akhish baye babanika imali, ngayo loo ndlela bathi batsalela kubo inxalenye engakumbi yabantu yabalandela.
- 12 Kwaza kwaqalisa ukubakho kwemfazwe phakathi koonyana baka-Akhish noAkhish, eyathabatha kangangethuba leminyaka emininzi, ewe, ukuya kwintshabalalo yaphantse bonke abantu bobukumkani, ewe, kwanabo bonke, ngaphandle kokuba kube yimiphefumlo engamashumi amathathu, kwaye nabo basaba kunye nendlu kaOmeri.
- 13 Ngako oko, uOmeri wabuyiselwa kwakhona kwilizwe lelifakhe.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uOmeri waqalisa ukwaluphala; nangona kunjalo, ebudaleni bakhe wazala uEmeri; waza wamthambisa uEmeri ukuba abe ngukumkani ukuze alawule esikhundleni sakhe.
- 15 Waza emva kokuba wathambisa uEmeri ukuba abe ngukumkani walubona uxolo elizweni kangangesithuba seminyaka emibini, waza wafa, ekubeni ebone iintsuku ezininzi ngokugqithisileyo, ezazizele lusizi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uEmeri waye walawula esikhundleni sakhe, kwaye waye wanyathela emkhondweni kayise.
- 16 Yaza iNkosi yaqalisa kwakhona ukusithabatha isiqalekiso sasuka elizweni, yaza indlu kaEmeri yaphumelela ngokugqithisileyo phantsi kolawulo lukaEmeri; kwaye ngethuba lamashumi amathandathu anesibini eminyaka babesuke bomelela ngokugqithisileyo, kangangokuba basuka baba zizityebi ngokugqithisileyo—

And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

17 Benazo zonke iintlobo zeziqhamo, nezeenkozo, nezesilika, nezelineni, nezegolide, nezesilivere, nezezinto ezixabisekileyo;

18 Kananjalo nalo lonke uhlobo lweenkomo, lweenkabi zenkomo, neemazi zenkomo, nezezimvu, nezeehagu, nezeebhokhwe, kananjalo neendidi ezininzi zezilwanyana ezaye ziluncedo ekutyeni kwabantu.

19 Kananjalo babenawo amahashe, nama-esile, kwaye kwakukho neendlovu neekurelom neekhumom; zizonke zaziluncedo ebantwini, kwaye ngokungakumbi iindlovu neekurelom neekhumom.

20 Kwaye njalo iNkosi yaye yazithulula iintsikelelo phezu kwelizwe, elaye likhethekile ngaphezu kwawo onke amanye amazwe; yaza yayalela okokuba nabani na oya kulilawula ilizwe makalilawulele eNkosini, okanye baya kutshatyalaliswa xa sukuba bevuthelwe kubugwenxa; kuba kwabo banjalo, ithi iNkosi: Ndiya kuwuthulula umsindo wam opheleleyo.

21 Kwaye uEmeri waye wawisa isigwebo ngobulungisa yonke imihla yakhe, waza wazala oonyana neentombi; waza wazala uKoriyantam, waza wathambisa uKoriyantam ukuba alawule esikhundleni sakhe.

22 Waza emva kokuba ethambise uKoriyantam ukuba alawule esikhundleni sakhe waphila iminyaka emine, waza walubona uxolo elizweni; ewe, kwaye wabona kwa noNyana woBulungisa, kwaye waye wagcoba kwaye wazuka ngomhla wakhe; waza wafela eluxolweni.

23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantam waye wahamba emikhondweni kayise, kwaye waye wakha izixeko ezininzi ezinkulu nezibalulekileyo, kwaye waye wabonelela ngokulungileyo kubo abantu bakhe ngayo yonke imihla yakhe. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akabanga nabantwana kwanokude abe woluphele ngokugqithisileyo.

24 Kwaye kwenzeka okokuba umfazi wakhe afe, ekubeni enekhulu elinambini leminyaka ubudala. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantam wathabatha umfazi, ekwaluphaleni kwakhe, intombi eselula, waza wazala oonyana neentombi; ngako oko waphila wada wanekhulu elinamashumi amane anesibini eminyaka ubudala.

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

25 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wazala uKhom, waza uKhom walawula esikhundleni sakhe; kwaye walawula amashumi amane anesithoba eminyaka, waza wazala uHeti; waza naye kanjalo wazala abanye oonyana neentombi.

26 Kwaye abantu babenabele kwakhona phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, kwaza kwaqalisa kwakhona ukubakho inkohlakalo egqithisileyo kakhulu phezu kobuso belizwe, waza uHeti waqalisa ukuwamkela kwakhona ngokungxama amayelenqe afihlakeleyo akudala, ukuze atshabalalise uyise.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wamsusa esikhundleni uyise, kuba wambulala ngelakhe ikrele; kwaye waye walawula esikhundleni sakhe.

28 Kwaye kwafika abaprofeti elizweni kwakhona, bememeza inguquko kubo—okokuba kufuneka bawulungiselele umendo weNkosi okanye kuya kuza isiqalekiso phezu kobuso belizwe; ewe, kwanokuba kuya kubakho indlala enkulu, ekuya kuthi kuyo batshatyalaliswe ukuba babengaguquki.

29 Kodwa abantu abawakholelwanga amazwi abaprofeti, kodwa babakhuphela ngaphandle; baza abanye babo babaphosa emihadini baza babashiya ukuze batshabalale. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bazenza zonke ezi zinto ngokomyalelo kakumkani, uHeti.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwaqalisa ukubakho kokunqaba kokutya phezu kwelizwe, baza abemi baqalisa ukutshabalala ngokukhawuleza okugqithisileyo ngenxa yokunqaba kokutya, kuba kwakungekho mvula phezu kobuso bomhlaba.

31 Kwaye kwafika iinyoka ezinobuhlungu kanjalo phezu kobuso belizwe, kwaye zaye zatyhefa abantu abaninzi. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imihlambi yabo yaqalisa ukusaba phambi kweenyoka ezinobuhlungu, zisiya ngakwilizwe elingasezantsi, elalibizwa ngamaNifayithi ngokuba yiZarahemla.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwabakho abaninzi babo abathi bafela endleleni; nangona kunjalo, kwabakho abathile abasabela kulo ilizwe elingasemazantsi.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

- 33 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yaye yazibangela iinyoka okokuba zingaphindi zibasukele, kodwa okokuba ziyithintele indlela ukuze abantu bangabinako ukudlula, ukuze nabani na oya kuzama ukudlula abe nokuwiswa ziinyoka ezinobuhlungu.
- 34 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baye balandela umkhondo wezilwanyana, kwaye baye babimbithela izidumbu zazo ezaziwele ngasemendweni, bade bazibimbitha zonke. Ngoku bakuba abantu bebona okokuba kufuneka betshabalele baqalisa ukuguquka kubugwenxa babo baza bakhala kuyo iNkosi.
- 35 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bezithobe ngokwaneleyo phambi kweNkosi yaye yathumela imvula phezu kobuso bomhlaba; baza abantu baqalisa ukuvuseleleka kwakhona, kwaza kwaqalisa ukubakho iziqhamo kumazwe asemantla, nakuwo onke amazwe arhangqileyo. Kwaye iNkosi yaye yawabonakalisa amandla ayo kubo ngokubahlangula endlaleni.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

## Etere 10

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShez, owaye eyinzala kaHeti—kuba uHeti wayetshabalele ngendlala, kwaye yonke indlu yakhe ngaphandle koShez —ngako oko, uShez waqalisa ukusakha kwakhona isizwe esaphukileyo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShez waye wayikhumbula intshabalalo yooyise, kwaye waye wakha ubukumkani bobulungisa; kuba wakukhumbula oko iNkosi yakwenzayo ngokuzisa uYerede nomntakwabo ngaphesheya kwenzonzobila; kwaye waye wahamba emendweni yeNkosi; waza wazala oonyana neentombi.
- 3 Kwaye unyana wakhe oyinkulu, ogama lakhe lalinguShez, waye wavukela ngokuchasene naye; nangona kunjalo uShez wabethwa ngesandla somphangi, ngenxa yobutyebi bakhe obugqithileyo, into leyo eyazisa uxolo kwakhona kuye uyise.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uyise waye wakha izixeko ezininzi phezu kobuso belizwe, baza abantu baqalisa kwakhona ukunabela phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe. Kwaye uShez waye waphila waluphala ngokugqithisileyo; waza wazala uRiplakhish. Waza wafa, waza uRiplakhish walawula esikhundleni sakhe.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uRiplakhish akazange enze oko kwakulungile emehlweni eNkosi, kuba waye waba nabafazi abaninzi namashweshwe, kwaye waye wakubeka oko phezu kwamagxa abantu nto leyo ekwakubuhlungu ukuyithwala; ewe, waye wabarhafisa ngeerhafu ezinzima; kwaye ngeerhafu waye wakha izakhiwo eziphangaleleyo ezininzi.
- 6 Kwaye waye wazimisela itrone entle ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye waye wakha iintolongo ezininzi, waza nabani na owayesala ukuhlawula iirhafu waye wamphosa entolongweni; waza nabani na owayengenako ukuzihlawula iirhafu waye wamphosa entolongweni; kwaye waye wababangela okokuba mabazisebenzele ngamaxesha onke inkxaso yabo; kwaye nabani na owalayo ukusebenza waye wambangela ukuba abulawe.

## Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

- 7 Ngako oko waye wawuzuza wonke umsebenzi wakhe ocwengileyo, ewe kwanayo igolide yakhe ecwengileyo waye wayibangela ukuba icokiswe entolongweni; kwaye lonke uhlobo lobuchule obucwengileyo waye wabangela ukuba benziwe entolongweni. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba waye wabahlungisa abantu ngohenyuzo lwakhe namasikizi.
- 8 Kwaye akuba elawule kangangesithuba samashumi amane anesibini eminyaka abantu baye baphakama ngemvukelo ngokuchasene naye; kwaza kwaqalisa ukubakho imfazwe kwakhona elizwen, kangangokuba uRiplakhish wabulawa, yaza inzala yakhe yadudulelwa ngaphandle kwelizwe.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile emva kwesithuba seminyaka emininzi, uMoriyantoni, (ekubeni yena eyinzala kaRiplakhish) wahlanganisa kunye umkhosi wabagxothwa, waza wabheka phambili waza walwa idabi nabantu; waza wazuza amandla phezu kwezixeko ezininzi; kwaye imfazwe yasuka yaba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye yaye yathabatha kangangesithuba seminyaka emininzi; kwaye waye wazuza amandla phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe, kwaye waye wazimisela njengokumkani phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe.
- 10 Kwaye emva kokuba ezimisele njengokumkani waye wawuphungula umthwalo wabantu, nto leyo awathi ngayo wazuza ukuthandandwa ngokukodwa emehlweni abantu, kwaye baye bamthambisa ukuba abe ngukumkani wabo.
- 11 Kwaye waye wenza ubulungisa kubo abantu, kodwa kungekuye ngenxa yohenyuzo lwakhe oluninzi; ngako oko wakhutshelwa ngaphandle kobuso beNkosi.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoriyantoni wakha izixeko ezininzi, baza abantu basuka babazizityebi ngokugqithisileyo phantsi kolawulo lwakhe, kunye ngezakhiwo, nangegolide nesilivere, nasekukhuliseni iinkozo, kwaye nakuyo imihlambi, nemihlambi yeenkomo, nezinto ezinjalo ezazibuyiselwe kubo.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakhish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakhish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

- 13 Kwaye uMoriyantoni waye waphila waluphala ngokugqithisileyo, waza ke wazala uKhim; waza uKhim walawula esikhundleni sikayise; kwaye waye walawula iminyaka esibhozo, waza uyise wafa. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKhim akazange alawule ngobulungisa, ngako oko akazange wathandwa ngokukodwa yiNkosi.
- 14 Kwaye umntakwabo waye waphakama ngemvukelo ngokuchasene naye, awathi ngayo wamzisa ekuthinjweni; kwaye waye wahlala esekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe; waza wazala oonyana neentombi esekuthinjweni, waza ekwaluphaleni kwakhe wazala uLevi; waza wafa.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLevi waye wakhonza ekuthinjweni emva kokufa kukayise, kangangesithuba samashumi amane anambini eminyaka. Kwaye waye wenza imfazwe ngokuchasene nokumkani welizwe, awathi ngayo wazizuzela ubukumkani.
- 16 Waza emva kokuzizuzela ubukumkani wenza oko kulungileyo emehlweni eNkosi; kwaye abantu baye baphumelela elizweni; kwaye waye waphila iminyaka emininzi, waza wazala oonyana neentombi; waza kanjalo wazala uKoromi, awathi wamthambisa njengokumkani esikhundleni sakhe.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoromi waye wenza oko kwakulungile emehlweni eNkosi yonke imihla yakhe; waza wazala oonyana abaninzi neentombi; kwaye emva kokuba ebone imihla emininzi waye wafa, kwananjengawo wonke umhlaba; waza uKishe walawula esikhundleni sakhe.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKishe waye wafa naye kanjalo, waza uLib walawula esikhundleni sakhe.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLib waye kanjalo wenza oko kwakulungile emehlweni eNkosi. Kwaye ngemihla kaLib iinyoka ezinobuhlungu zatshatyalaliswa. Ngako oko baye baya kulo ilizwe elisemazantsi, ukuya kuzingela ukutya kwabantu belizwe, kuba ilizwe laligutyungelwe zizilo zehlathi. Waza uLib ngokwakhe kanjalo wasuka waba ngumzingeli omkhulu.
- 20 Baza bakha isixeko esikhulu ngakwintamo emxinwa yelizwe, ngakwindawo apho ulwandle lwahlula khona ilizwe.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.



21 Kwaye baye balilondoloza ilizwe elisemazantsi njengentlango, ukuze bafumane izilo. Kwaye bonke ubuso belizwe elingasemantla babugutyungelwe ngabemi.

22 Kwaye babekhuthele ngokugqithisileyo, kwaye babethenga kwaye bethengisa kwaye berhwebelana omnye kunye nomnye, ukuze babe nokufumana ingeniso.

23 Kwaye baye basebenza ngalo lonke uhlobo lwentsimbi ekrwada, kwaye baye benza igolide, nesilivere, nentsimbi, nobhedu, nalo lonke uhlobo lwezinyithi; kwaye baye bayomba beyikhupha ngaphandle komhlaba; ngako oko, baye baphosa imfumba enkulu yomhlaba ukuze bafumane isinyithi esikrwada, segolide, nesesilivere, nesentsimbi, nesekopolo. Kwaye baye basebenza lonke uhlobo lomsebenzi ocwengileyo.

24 Kwaye baye benazo neesilika, nelineni eyolukwe ngokucekethekileyo; kwaye basebenza lonke uhlobo lwelaphu, ukuze babe nokuzambathisa kubuze babo.

25 Kwaye baye benza lonke uhlobo lwezixhobo zokusebenza ukuze bawulime umhlaba, kunye ezokugelesha nokutyala, ezokuvuna nokuhlakula, kanjalo nezokubhula.

26 Kwaye baye benza lonke uhlobo lwezixhobo zokusebenza abathi ngazo basebenzisa izilo zabo.

27 Kwaye baye benza lonke uhlobo lwezixhobo zemfazwe. Kwaye baye basebenza lonke uhlobo lomsebenzi onobuchule obubukeka ngokugqithisileyo.

28 Kwaye kwakungazange kubekho sizwe sisikeleleke ngakumbi kunokuba babenjalo, nesiphunyeleliswe ngakumbi ngesandla seNkosi. Kwaye babekwilizwe elaye likhetheke ngakumbi kunawo onke amazwe, kuba iNkosi yayiyithethile.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLib waye waphila iminyaka emininzi, waza wazala oonyana neentombi; waza kanjalo wazala uHiyatham.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uHiyatham walawula esikhundleni sikayise. Waza akuba uHiyatham elawule amashumi amabini anane eminyaka, qaphelani, ubukumkani bahluthwa kuye. Waza wakhonza iminyaka emininzi ekuthinjweni, ewe, kwanayo yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

31 Waza wazala uHeti, waza uHeti wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe. Waza uHeti wazala uAron, waza uAron wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe. Waza wazala uAmnigada, waza uAmnigada kanjalo wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe; waza wazala uKoriyantam, waza uKoriyantam wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe; waza wazala uKhom.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKhom watsalela kude isiqingatha sobukumkani. Waza walawula phezu kwesiqingatha sobukumkani amashumi amane anambini eminyaka; waza waya kulwa idabi ngokuchasene nokumkani, uAmgidi, baza balwa kangangesithuba seminyaka emininzi, ngelixa elo uKhom wathi wazuza amandla phezu koAmgidi, waza wazuza amandla phezu kwentsalela yobukumkani.

33 Kwaza ngemihla kaKhom kwaqalisa ukubakho abaphangi elizweni; kwaye basebenzisa amayelenqe akudala, baza banika izifungo ngokohlobo lwamandulo, baza bafuna kwakhona ukubutshabalalisa ubukumkani.

34 Ngoku uKhom waye walwa kakhulu ngokuchasene nabo; nangona kunjalo, akazange aboyise.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

## Etere 11

- 1 Kwaye kwafika kanjalo ngemihla kaKhom abaprofeti, baza baprofetha ngentshabalalo yeso sizwe sikhulu ngaphandle kokuba baya kuguquka, baze baguqukele eNkosini, baze bakulahle ukubulala kwabo nenkohlakalo.
- 2 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abaprofeti baliwa ngabantu, baza babalekela kuKhom ngokhuseleko, kuba abantu babezungula ukubatshabalalisa.
- 3 Baza baprofetha kuye uKhom izinto ezininzi; waza wasikelelwa ngayo yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe.
- 4 Waze waphila iminyaka emininzi, kwaye wazala uShiblam; waza uShiblam walawula esikhundleni sakhe. Waza umntakwaboShiblam wavukela ngokuchasene naye, kwaza kwaqalisa ukubakho imfazwe enkulu ngokugqithisileyo kulo lonke ilizwe.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwaboShiblam wabangela okokuba bonke abaprofeti abathi baprofethe ngentshabalalo yabantu mababulawe.
- 6 Kwaza kwabakho intlekele enkulu kulo lonke ilizwe, kuba babengqinile okokuba isiqalekiso esikhulu siya kufika phezu kwelizwe, kananjalo naphezu kwabantu, nokokuba kuya kubakho intshabalalo enkulu phakathi kwabo, engazange enjalo ibekho phezu kobuso bomhlaba, kwaye amathambo abo aya kusuka abe njengemfumba yomhlaba phezu kobuso belizwe ngaphandle kokuba baya kuguquka kuyo inkohlakalo yabo.
- 7 Baza abaliphulaphulanga ilizwi leNkosi, ngenxa yamayelenqe abo akhohlakeleyo; ngako oko, kwaqalisa ukubakho iimfazwe neembambano kulo lonke ilizwe, kananjalo neendlala ezininzi nezifo ezosulelayo ezibulalayo, kangangokuba kwabakho intshabalalo enkulu, enjenge ngazange yaziwa phezu kobuso bomhlaba; kwaye konke oku kwenzeka ngemihla kaShiblam.
- 8 Baza abantu baqalisa ukuguquka kubo ubugwenxa babo; kwaye kangangokuba benza njalo iNkosi yaye yanenceba kubo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShiblam wabulawa, waza uSete waziswa ekuthinjweni, waza wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe.

## Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inasmuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.

- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uAha, unyana wakhe, waye wabuzuza ubukumkani; kwaye waye walawula phezu kwabantu yonke imihla yakhe. Kwaye waye wenza lonke uhlobo lobugwenxa ngemihla yakhe, awathi ngabo wabangela impalalo yegazi elininzi; kwaye yabambalwa imihla yakhe.
- 11 Kwaye uEtem, ekubeni eyinzala ka-Aha, waye wabuzuza ubukumkani; kwaye naye kanjalo waye wenza oko kwakukhohlakele ngemihla yakhe.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngemihla kaEtem kwafika abaprofeti abaninzi, baza baprofetha kwakhona kubo abantu; ewe, baye baprofetha okokuba iNkosi iya kubatshabalalisa ngokupheleleyo basuke ebusweni bomhlaba ngaphandle kokuba baguqukile kubo ubugwenxa babo.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo, baza abaphulaphula kuwo amazwi abo; baza abaprofeti balusizi baza barhoxa bemka phakathi kwabantu.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uEtem waye wawisa isigwebo ngenkohlakalo yonke imihla yakhe; waza wazala uMoron. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoron waye walawula esikhundleni sakhe; waza uMoron wenza oko kwakukhohlakele phambi kweNkosi.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwavuka imvukelo phakathi kwabantu, ngenxa yelo yelenqe lifihlakeleyo elaye lakhelwe ukufumana amandla nenzuzo; kwaza kwavela indoda enamandlakazi phakathi kwabo ebugwenxeni, yaza yalwa idabi noMoron eyathi ngalo yabhukuqa isiqingatha sobukumkani; kwaye yaye yasigcina isiqingatha sobukumkani kangangeminyaka emininzi.
- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uMoron waye wayibhukuqa, waza wabuzuza ubukumkani kwakhona.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwavela enye indoda enamandlakazi; kwaye yaye iyinzala yomntakwabo Yerede.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yaye yambhukuqa uMoron yaza yabuzuza ubukumkani; ngako oko, uMoron wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke intsalela yemihla yakhe; waza wazala uKoriyantori.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantori wahlala ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe.
- 20 Kwaye ngemihla kaKoriyantori kwaye kanjalo kwafika abaprofeti, baza baprofetha ngezinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo, baza bakhwaza inguquko kubo abantu, kwaye ngaphandle kokuba baya kuguquka iNkosi uThixo iya kuwisa isigwebo ngokuchasene nabo ukuya kwintshabalalo yabo ephelileyo.
- 21 Kwaye nokokuba iNkosi uThixo iya kuthumela okanye izise ngaphambili esinye isizwe ukuba silibange ilizwe, ngamandla ayo, ngokohlobo eyathi yabazisa ngalo ooyise.
- 22 Kwaye baye bawala onke amazwi abaprofeti, ngenxa yombutho wabo ofihlakeleyo namasikizi akhohlakeleyo.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantori wazala uEtere, waza wafa, ekubeni ehleli ekuthinjweni yonke imihla yakhe.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

## Etere 12

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imihla kaEtere yayingemihla kaKoriyantamri; kwaye uKoriyantamri wayengukumkani phezu kwelizwe.
- 2 Kwaye uEtere wayengumprofeti weNkosi; ngako oko ke uEtere weza ngaphambili ngemihla kaKoriyantamri, waza waqalisa ukuprofetha kubo abantu, kuba waye engenako ukuzibamba ngenxa yoMoya weNkosi owaye ukuye.
- 3 Kuba waye wadanduluka ukususela ngentsasa, kwanokude kube kukutshona kwelanga, eyala abantu ukuba bakholelwe kuThixo ukuya enguqukweni hleze batshatyalaliswe, esitsho kubo okokuba ngokholo zonke izinto zizalisekisiwe—
- 4 Ngako oko, nabani na okholelwayo kuThixo unako ngokuqinisekileyo ukubalithemba lehlabathi elilunge kunene, ewe, kwanayo indawo ngakuso esokunene isandla sikaThixo, ithemba elo eliza ngokholo, lenza iankile emiphefumleni yabantu, eya kuthi ibenze babenako ukuqiniseka nokuzinza, besoloko bephuphuma yimisebenzi emihle, bekhokelelwa ekubeni bamzukise uThixo.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uEtere waye waprofetha izinto ezinkulu nezimangalisayo kubo abantu, abangazanga bazikholelwa, ngenxa yokuba babengaziboni.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, mna, Moronayi, ndiza kuthetha nje noko malunga nezi zinto; ndiza kubonisa kulo ihlabathi okokuba ukholo luzizinto esinethemba lazo kwaye ezingabonwayo; ngako oko, musani ukuphikisa ngenxa yokuba ningaboni, kuba anifumani bungqina kude kube semva kokuvavanywa kokholo lwenu.
- 7 Kuba kwakungokholo ukuze uKrestu azibonakalise koobawo, emva kokuba evukile kwabafuleyo; kwaye akazibonakalisanga kubo kwade kwaba semva kokuba benokholo kuye; ngako oko, kuyimfuneko okokuba abanye babenokholo kuye, kuba akazibonakalisi kulo ihlabathi.
- 8 Kodwa ngenxa yokholo lwabantu uzibonakalisile kulo ihlabathi, waza walizukisa igama likaBawo, waza walungiselela indlela yokokuba ngalo abanye bangaba ngabaxhamli kwisipho sasezulwini, ukuze babe nokuba nethemba kwezo zinto bangazibonanga.

## Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

- 9 Ngako oko, ninganako kanjalo ukuba nethemba, nize nibe ngabaxhamli kwisipho, ukuba ningathi nje nibe nokholo.
- 10 Qaphelani kwakungokholo ukuze abo bakudala babizwe ngokohlobo olungcwele lukaThixo.
- 11 Ngako oko, ngokholo umthetho kaMoses wanikwa. Kodwa ngesipho soNyana wakhe uThixo ulungiselele eyona ndlela ilunge ngakumbi; kwaye kungokholo ukuba uzalisekisiwe.
- 12 Kuba ukuba alukho ukholo phakathi kwabantwana babantu uThixo akanako ukuwenza ummangaliso phakathi kwabo; ngako oko, akazibonakalisanga kubo kwada kwaba semva kokukholwa kwabo.
- 13 Qaphelani, yayilukholo luka-Alma noAmyuleki olwabangela ukuba intolongo idilikele emhlabeni.
- 14 Qaphelani, yayilukholo lukaNifayi noLihayi olwazisa inguqu kumaLeymenayithi, ukuze abhaptizwe ngomlilo nangoMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 15 Qaphelani, yayilukholo luka-Amon nabazalwana bakhe olwazisa ummangaliso omkhulu kangaka phakathi kwamaLeymenayithi.
- 16 Ewe, kwaye kwanabo bonke abenza imimangaliso bayenza ngokholo, kwanabo abo babe ngaphambi koKrestu kananjalo nabo ababengasemva.
- 17 Kwaye kwakungokholo ukuze abafundi abathathu bazuze isithembiso sokokuba abasayi kuze bakungcamle ukufa; kwaye abasizuzanga isithembiso kwada kwaba kusemva kokholo lwabo.
- 18 Kwaye kungakhange nangaliphi na ilixa kubekho nawuphina owenza imimangaliso kwada kwasemva kokholo lwabo; ngako oko baqala bakholelwa kuNyana kaThixo.
- 19 Kwaye kwakukho abaninzi abakholo lwabo lwalomelele ngokugqithisileyo, kwanangaphambi kokuba uKrestu afike, ababengenako ukuba bangathintelwa ngaphakathi kwekhuselo, kodwa ngokwenene bazibona ngamehlo abo izinto ababezibone ngeliso lokholo, baza bavuya.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

- 20 Kwaye qaphelani, sibonile kule mbali okokuba omnye wabo waye engumntakwabo Yerede; kuba lwalulukhulu kangako ukholo lwakhe kuThixo, kangangokuba xa uThixo waveza umnwe wakhe wayengenako ukuwufihla emehlweni omntakwabo Yerede, ngenxa yelizwi lakhe awaye elithethile kuye, ilizwi elo awayelizuze ngokholo.
- 21 Kwaye emva kokuba umntakwabo Yerede ewubonile umnwe weNkosi, ngenxa yesithembiso awathi umntakwabo Yerede wasizuzwa ngokholo, iNkosi ayibanganako ukufihla nantoni na emehlweni akhe; ngako oko yambonisa zonke izinto, kuba wayengasenakube athintelwe ngaphandle kwekhuselelo.
- 22 Kwaye kungokholo ukuze oobawo bazuze isithembiso sokokuba ezi zinto zimele ukuza kubo abazalwana babo ngabo abeeNtlanga; ke ngoko iNkosi indiyalele, ewe, kwanaye uYesu Krestu.
- 23 Kwaye ndathi kuyo: Nkosi, abeeNtlanga baya kuhlekisa ngezi zinto, ngenxa yobuthathaka bethu ekubhaleni; kuba Nkosi usenze saba namandlakazi elizwini ngokholo, kodwa akusenzanga saba namandlakazi ekubhaleni; kuba ubenze bonke aba bantu ukuba babenako ukuthetha kakhulu, ngenxa yoMoya oyiNgcwele othe wabanika wona;
- 24 Kwaye usenze okokuba sibe nokubhala nje kancinane, ngenxa yokuba athalala kwezandla zethu. Qaphela, akusenzanga saba namandlakazi ekubhaleni njengomntakwabo Yerede, kuba umenze okokuba izinto azibhalayo zibe namandlakazi kwananjengokuba enjalo, ukuze zibe namandla okubangela ukuba abantu bazifunde.
- 25 Uwenze kanjalo amazwi ethu anamandla kwaye abamakhulu, nokude singabinako ukuwabhala; ngako oko, xa sukuba sibhala siyabubona ubuthathaka bethu, kwaye sikhubeke ngenxa yokubekwa kwamazwi ethu; kwaye ndinoloyiko hleze abeeNtlanga bahlekise ngamazwi ethu.
- 26 Ndaza ndakuba ndikuthethile oku, iNkosi yathetha nam, isithi: Izinyatho ziyahlekisa, kodwa ziya kuba lusizi; kwaye ubabalo lwam lubanele abalulamileyo, ukuze bangenzi nzuzo ngobuthathaka benu;

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;



27 Kwaye ukuba abantu bayeza kum ndiya kubabonisa ubuthathaka babo. Ndibanika abantu ubuthathaka ukuze babe nokuthobeka; kwaye ubabalo lwam lubanele bonke abantu abathi bazithobe phambi kwam; kuba ukuba bayazithoba phambi kwam, baze babe nokholo kum, ke ngoko ndiya kuzenza izinto ezibuthathaka zisuke zomelele kubo.

28 Qaphela, ndiya kubabonisa abeeNtlanga ubuthathaka babo, kwaye ndiya kubabonisa okokuba ukholo, ithemba, nothando lwenene zibasondeza kum—umthombo wabo bonke ubulungisa.

29 Kwaye mna, Moronayi, ekubeni ndiwavile la mazwi, ndathuthuzeleka, ndaza ndathi: Owu Nkosi, ubulungisa bakho buya kwenziwa, kuba ndiyazi okokuba wenza kubo abantwana babantu ngokokholo lwabo;

30 Kuba umntakwabo Yerede wathi kuyo intaba iZerini, Shenxa—yaza yashenxiswa. Kwaye ukuba wayengabanga nalo ukholo ngeyayingazanga yashenxa; ngako oko usebenza emva kokuba abantu benokholo.

31 Kuba njalo waye wazibonakalisa kubo abafundi bakho; kuba emva kokuba baba nokholo, kwaye baye bathetha egameni lakhe, waye wazibonisa kubo ngamandla amakhulu.

32 Kananjalo ndiyakhumbula okokuba umlungiselele indlu umntu, ewe, kwanaphakathi kwezindlu ezinkulu zikaYihlo, aya kuthi kuyo umntu abe nokuba nethemba elilunge kakhulu ngakumbi; ngako oko umntu kufuneka athembe, okanye akanako ukwamkela ilifa endaweni leyo uyilungisileyo.

33 Kwaye kwakhona, ndiyakhumbula okokuba watsho ukuthi walithanda ihlabathi, kwanokude ububeke phantsi ubomi bakho ngenxa yehlabathi, ukuze ube nokubuthabatha kwakhona ukuze ulungiselele indawo yabantwana babantu.

34 Kwaye ngoku ndiyazi okokuba olu thando owabanalo ngabantwana babantu luthando lwenene; ngako oko, ngaphandle kokuba abantu baya kuba nothando lwenene abanako ukuyidla ilifa loo ndawo othe wayilungisa kuzo izindlu ezinkulu zikaYihlo.

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

- 35 Ngako oko, ndiyazi ngale nto uyithethileyo, okokuba ukuba abeeNtlanga abanalo uthando lwenene, ngenxa yobuthathaka bethu, uya kubavavanya, kwaye usihluthethe isiphiwo sabo, ewe, kwanako oko bakufumeneyo, uze usinikele kwabo baya kuba nokuninzi ngakumbi.
- 36 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ndathandaza kuyo iNkosi okokuba ingabanika abeeNtlanga ubabalo, ukuze babe nokubanalo uthando lwenene.
- 37 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba iNkosi yathi kum: Ukuba abanalo uthando lwenene akunamsebenzi kuni, nina beninyanisekile; ngako oko, izambatho zenu ziya kwenziwa zicoceke. Kwaye ngenxa yokuba nibubonile ubuthathaka benu niya kwenziwa nomelele, kwanokude nihlale phantsi kuyo indawo endiyilungisileyo ezindlwini ezinkulu zikaBawo.
- 38 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndithi salani kakuhle kubo abeeNtlanga, ewe, kananjalo nakubo abazalwana bam endibathandayo, side sibe siya kuhlangana phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba sikaKrestu, apho bonke abantu baya kwazi okokuba izambatho zam azichatshazelwanga ngegazi lenu.
- 39 Kwaye ke niya kwazi okokuba ndimbonile uYesu, nokokuba uthethile kunye nam ubuso ngobuso, nokokuba wandixelela ngentobeko ecacileyo, kwananje ngomntu exelela omnye ngolwam ulwimi, malunga nezi zinto.
- 40 Kwaye zimbalela kuphela endizibhalileyo, ngenxa yobuthathaka bam ekubhaleni.
- 41 Kwaye ngoku, ndiza kuniyala ukuba nimfune lo Yesu lowo abaprofeti nabapostile babhalileyo ngaye, ukuze ubabalo lukaThixo uBawo, kananjalo neNkosi uYesu Krestu, noMoya oyiNgcwele, onika ubungqina ngabo, unganani kwaye uhlale kuni ngonaphakade. Amen.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

## Etere 13

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndiyaqhubeka ukugqibezela imbali yam malunga nentshabalalo yabantu abo bendibhala ngabo.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, bawala onke amazwi kaEtere; kuba okwenene wabaxelela ngazo zonke izinto, ukususela ekuqalekeni komntu; nokokuba emva kokuba amanzi ebuyele umva ukusuka kubuso belilizwe laba lilizwe elikhethekileyo ngaphezu kwawo onke amanye amazwe, ilizwe elonyuliweyo leNkosi; ngako oko iNkosi ibinga okokuba bonke abantu bangayikhonza abahlala phezu kobuso balo;
- 3 Nokokuba yayiyindawo yeYerusalem eNtsha, eya kuthi yehlele ezantsi iphuma ezulwini, nendawo engcwele yeNkosi.
- 4 Qaphelani, uEtere wayibona imihla kaKrestu, waza wathetha ngokunxulumene neYerusalem eNtsha phezu kweli lizwe.
- 5 Kwaye wathetha kanjalo ngokunxulumene nendlu kaSirayeli, neYerusalem apho uLihayi wayeza kusuka khona—emva kokuba iya kutshatyalaliswa iya kwakhiwa kwakhona, isixeko esingcwele eNkosini; ngako oko, ayingekhe ibe yiYerusalem entsha kuba yayikho ngelixa lamandulo; kodwa iya kwakhiwa kwakhona, ize ibe sisixeko esingcwele seNkosi; kwaye siya kwakhelwa indlu kaSirayeli—
- 6 Nokokuba iYerusalem eNtsha iya kwakhelwa phezu kweli lizwe, kuyo intsalela yembewu kaYosefu, ngenxa yezo zinto ebekukho umzekelo ngazo.
- 7 Kuba njengoko uYosefu wamzisa uyise wehlela kulo ilizwe laseYiputa, kwangokunjalo wafela apho; ngako oko, iNkosi yayizisa intsalela yembewu kaYosefu yaphuma kulo ilizwe laseYerusalem, ukuze ibe nemfesane kuyo imbewu kaYosefu ukuze ingatshabalali, kwananjengokuba yayinemfesane kuye uyise kaYosefu ukuze angatshabalali.
- 8 Ngako oko, intsalela yendlu kaYosefu iya kwakhelwa phezu kweli lizwe; kwaye liya kuba lilizwe lelifa labo; kwaye baya kwakhela isixeko esingcwele kuyo iNkosi, njengayo iYerusalem yakudala; kwaye abasayi kuze baphinde babhidaniswe, kude kufike isiphelo xa sukuba umhlaba uya kudlula.

## Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.

- 9 Kwaye kuya kubakho izulu elitsha nomhlaba omtsha; kwaye aya kuba njengalawo akudala ngaphandle nje kokuba awakudala adlule, kwaye zonke izinto zisuke zabantsha.
- 10 Kuze ngoko kufike iYerusalem eNtsha; kwaye basikelelekile abo bahlala kuyo, kuba ngabo abangubo zabo zimhlophe ngegazi leMvana; kwaye bangabo abo babalelwa phakathi kwentsalela yembewu kaYosefu, ababengabendlu kaSirayeli.
- 11 Kuze ngoko kufike kanjalo iYerusalem yakudala; nabemi balapho, basikelelekile bona, kuba bahlanjiwe egazini leMvana; kwaye bangabo abo babesasaziwe baza bahlanganiselwa ngaphakathi ukusuka kwiimbombo zone zomhlaba, kwaye nokusuka nakumazwe asemantla, kwaye nabangabaxhamli bokuzalisekiswa komnqophiso awathi uThixo wawenza kunye noyise, uAbraham.
- 12 Kwaye xa sukuba ezi zinto zisiza, zenza kwenzeke isibhalo esithi, kukho abo ababengabokuqala, abaya kuba ngabokugqibela; kwaye kukho abo ababengabokugqibela, abaya kuba ngabokuqala.
- 13 Kwaye besele ndiza kubhala okungakumbi, kodwa ndalelwe; kodwa ezinkulu nezimangalisayo iziprofetho zikaEtere; kodwa bamthabatha njengento engento, kwaye bamkhuphela ngaphandle; waza wazifihla emqolombeni weliwa emini, waza ngobusuku wabheka phambili ephonoonga izinto eziya kuthi zibafikele abantu.
- 14 Kwaye njengokuba wayehlala emqolombeni weliwa waye wenza intsalela yembali yakhe, ephonoonga iintshabalalo ezathi zeza phezu kwabantu, ngobusuku.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuwo loo mnyaka awayekhutshelwe ngaphandle ngawo waphuma phakathi kwabantu ke kwaqala ukubakho kwemfazwe enkulu phakathi kwabantu, kuba babebaninzi abaphakamayo, ababengamadoda anamandlakazi, baza bazungula ukumtshabalalisa uKoriyantamri ngamacebo abo afihlakeleyo enkohlakalo, lawo ebekuthethiwe ngawo.

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

- 16 Kwaye ngoku uKoriyantamri, ekubeni ubuqu, efunde nzulu, ngabo bonke ubuchule bemfazwe nangabo bonke ubuqhinga behlabathi, ngako oko waye walwa idabi nabo babezungula ukumtshabalalisa.
- 17 Kodwa akaguqukanga, nanyana bakhe abahle nazintombi zakhe; nanyana bahle nazintombi zikaKohore; nanyana bahle nazintombi zikaKoriho; nangokuacileyo, kwakungekho nawuphina koonyana abahle neentombi phezu kobuso bawo wonke umhlaba abaguqukayo kwizono zabo.
- 18 Ngako oko, kwenzekile okokuba kowokuqala unyaka wokuba uEtere ehlala emqolombeni weliwa, kwabakho abantu abaninzi ababulawayo ngekrele laloo mayelenqe afihlakeleyo, besilwa ngokuchasene noKoriyantamri ukuze babe nokuzuza ubukumkani.
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba oonyana bakaKoriyantamri balwa kakhulu baza bopha kakhulu.
- 20 Kwaza kowesibini unyaka ilizwi leNkosi lafika kuEtere, lokokuba makahambe aze aprofethe kuye uKoriyantamri okokuba, ukuba angaguquka, nayo yonke indlu yakhe, iNkosi ingamnika ubukumkani bakhe ize ibasindise abantu—
- 21 Kungenjalo baya kutshatyalaliswa, nayo yonke indlu yakhe ngaphandle kwakhe. Kwaye wayeya kuphilela kuphela ukuba abone ukuzalisekiswa kwesiprofetho esasithethiwe malunga nabanye abantu befumana ilizwe njengelifa labo; kwaye uKoriyantamri wayeya kufumana ukungcwatywa ngabo; kwaye wonke umphefumlo uya kutshatyalaliswa ngaphandle kokuba kube nguKoriyantamri.
- 22 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri akazange aguquke, nandlu yakhe, nabantu; kwaye iimfazwe azizange zipheze; kwaye bazungula ukumbulala uEtere, kodwa wasaba wemka phambi kwabo waza wazimela kwakhona emqolombeni weliwa.
- 23 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwavela uSharedi, waza naye kanjalo walwa idabi noKoriyantamri; kwaye waye wambetha, kangangokuba kwesithathu unyaka waye wamzisa ekuthinjweni.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

- 24 Kwaye oonyana bakaKoriyantamri, kowesine unyaka, baye bambetha uSharedi, kwaye baye bamzuzela ubukumkani kwakhona uyise wabo.
- 25 Ngoku kwaqalisa ukubakho kwemfazwe phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe, wonke umntu kunye nelakhe iqela esilwela oko wayekunqwenela.
- 26 Kwaye kwakukho abaphangi, ngokucacileyo, lonke uhlobo lwenkohlakalo phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe.
- 27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri waba nomsindo ngokugqithisileyo kuye uSharedi, waza waya ngokuchasene naye kunye nomkhosi wakhe ukuya kulwa idabi; kwaye baye bahlangana ngomsindo omkhulu, kwaye baye bahlangana kwintlambo yaseGilgali; laza idabi laba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo.
- 28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uSharedi walwa ngokuchasene naye kangangesithuba seentsuku ezintathu. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri wambetha, kwaye waye wamsukela wada wafika kumathafa aseHeshloni.
- 29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uSharedi waye walwa idabi kunye naye kwakhona phezu kwamathafa; kwaye qaphelani, waye wambetha uKoriyantamri, waza wamdudulela emva kwakhona kwintlambo yaseGilgali.
- 30 Waza uKoriyantamri wanika uSharedi idabi kwakhona kwintlambo yaseGilgali, awathi kulo wambetha uSharedi waza wambulala.
- 31 Waza uSharedi wamonzakalisa uKoriyantamri ethangeni lakhe, kangangokuba akazange ayokulwa dabi kwakhona kangangesithuba seminyaka emibini, ngelixa elo bonke abantu phezu kobuso belizwe babephalaza igazi, kwaye kwakungekho namnye wokubanqanda.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

## Etere 14

- 1 Kwaye ngoku kwaqalisa ukubakho isiqalekiso esikhulu phezu kwalo lonke ilizwe ngenxa yobugwenxa babantu, ekwathi kuso, ukuba umntu angasibeka phantsi isixhobo sakhe okanye ikrele lakhe phezu kongqameko lwakhe, okanye phezu kwendawo apho angasigcina khona, qaphelani, ngengomso, akangekhe asifumane, sasisikhulu kangako isiqalekiso phezu kwelizwe.
- 2 Ngako oko wonke umntu waye wanamathela kuloo nto eyaye iyeyakhe, ngezandla zakhe, kwaye engaboleki engenako nakubolekisa; kwaye wonke umntu wasigcina isiphatho sekrele lakhe esandleni sakhe sokunene, ukukhusela izinto anazo nobakhe ubomi nobomfazi wakhe nabantwana.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku, emva kwesithuba seminyaka emibini, nasemva kokufa kukaSharedi, qaphelani, kwavela umntakwaboSharedi waza walwa idabi noKoriyantamri, ekwathi kulo uKoriyantamri wambetha wamsukela ukuya kwintlango yaseAkhish.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umntakwaboSharedi waye walwa idabi naye kwintlango yaseAkhish; laza idabi lasuka laba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, baza abangamawaka amaninzi bawa ngekrele.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri waye wayingqinga intlango; kwaye umntakwabo Sharedi waye wamatshela phambili waphuma entlango ngobusuku, waza wabulala inxalenye yomkhosi kaKoriyantamri, njengoko yayinxilile.
- 6 Waza waphumela kulo ilizwe likaMoron, waza wazibeka phezu kwetrone kaKoriyantamri.
- 7 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri wahlala kunye nomkhosi wakhe entlango kangangesithuba seminyaka emibini, awathi kuyo wafumana ukomelela okukhulu kumkhosi wakhe.
- 8 Ngoku umntakwabo Sharedi, ogama lakhe lalinguGiliyadi, kanjalo wafumana ukomelela okukhulu kumkhosi wakhe, ngenxa yamayelenqe afihlakeleyo.
- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba umbingeleli wakhe omkhulu wambulala njengokuba wayehleli phezu kwetrone yakhe.

## Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba omnye kumayelenqe afihlakeleyo wambulala kwindlela esemfihlakalweni, waza wazizuzela ubukumkani; kwaye igama lakhe lalinguLib; kwaye uLib wayeyindoda enesithomo esikhulu, ngaphezulu kunayo nayiphina indoda phakathi kwabo bonke abantu.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kowokuqala unyaka kaLib, uKoriyantamri wanyukela phezulu kulo ilizwe likaMoron, waza walwa idabi noLib.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba walwa kunye noLib, awathi kulo uLib wambetha engalweni yakhe kangangokuba wonzakala; nangona kunjalo, umkhosi kaKoriyantamri waye wafunzela phambili kuLib, kangangokuba wasabela kwimida yonxweme yolwandle.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri wamsukela; waza uLib walwa idabi naye ngaselunxwemeni lolwandle.
- 14 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLib waye wawubetha umkhosi kaKoriyantamri, kangangokuba basabela kwakhona kuyo intlango ka-Akhish.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uLib waye wamsukela wada wafika kumathafa aseAgoshe. Kwaye uKoriyantamri wayebathabathile bonke abantu kunye naye njengokuba wayesaba phambi koLib kuloo mbombo yelizwe apho wayesabele khona.
- 16 Waza akuba efikile kumathafa aseAgoshe walwa idabi noLib, waza wambetha wade wafa; nangona kunjalo, umntakwabo Lib waye wahlasela ngokuchasene noKoriyantamri endaweni yakhe, laza idabi laba buhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, awathi kulo uKoriyantamri wasaba kwakhona phambi komkhosi womntakwabo Lib.
- 17 Ngoku igama lomntakwabo Lib laye linguShiz. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShiz waye wasukela emva koKoriyantamri, kwaye waye wabhukuqa izixeko ezininzi, waza wabulala kunye abafazi nabantwana, kwaye waye wazitshisa izixeko.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.



- 18 Kwaza kwatyhutyha ukoyikwa kukaShiz kulo lonke ilizwe; ewe, isikhalo saphumela kulo lonke ilizwe—Ngubani onokuma phambi komkhosi kaShiz? Qaphelani, utshayela umhlaba phambi kwakhe!
- 19 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu baqalisa ukuhlangana kunye ngemikhosi, kubo bonke ubuso belizwe.
- 20 Kwaye babohlukene; yaza inxalenye yabo yasabela kumkhosi kaShiz, yaza inxalenye yabo yasabela kumkhosi kaKoriyantamri.
- 21 Kwaye yabankulu kakhulu kwaye yathabatha ixesha elide imfazwe, kwaye wabamde kakhulu umbono wempalalo-gazi nendyikityha, kangangokuba bonke ubuso belizwe bagutyungelwa yimizimba yabafileyo.
- 22 Kwaye yayingxame kakhulu kwaye ikhawulezile imfazwe kangangokuba kwakungekho bani oseleyo wokungcwaba abafileyo, kodwa baye bamatshela phambili besuka kwimpalalogazi besiya kwimpalalogazi, beshiya imizimba kunye eyamadoda neyabafazi nabantwana ithe saa phezu kobuso belizwe, ukuze isuke ibe lixhoba leempethu zenyama.
- 23 Kwaye ivumba layo labheka phambili phezu kobuso belizwe, kwanakubo bonke ubuso belizwe; ngako oko abantu basuka bakhathazeka emini nangobusuku, ngenxa yevumba layo.
- 24 Nangona kunjalo, uShiz akazange wapheza ukumsukela uKoriyantamri kuba wayefungile ukuba uya kuziphindezela kuKoriyantamri ngegazi lomntakwabo, owaye ebulewe, nalilizwi leNkosi elathi lafika kuEtere lokokuba uKoriyantamri akasayi kuwa ngekrele.
- 25 Kwaye njalo siyabona okokuba iNkosi yaye yabavelela ngomsindo wayo ophелеleyo, kwaye inkohlakalo yabo namasikizi ayebalungiselele indlela yentshabalalo yabo engunaphakade.
- 26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShiz waye wamsukela uKoriyantamri ngasempuma, kwanokuya kuyo imida engaselunxwemeni lolwandle, waza apho walwa idabi naye uShiz kangangesithuba seentsuku ezintathu.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land— Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

27 Kwaye yayisoyikeka kakhulu intshabalalo phakathi kwemikhosi kaShiz kangangokuba abantu baqalisa ukoyika, baza baqalisa ukusaba phambi kwemikhosi kaKoriyantamri; baza basabela kwilizwe likaKoriho, kwaye babatshayela kwaphela abemi phambi kwabo, bonke abo babengazimanyanisi nabo.

28 Baza bazigxumeka iintente zabo kwintlambo kaKoriho; waza uKoriyantamri wazigxumeka ezakhe iintente kwintlambo kaShure. Ngoku intlambo kaShure yaye ikufuphi nenduli kaKomnore; ngako oko, uKoriyantamri waye wahlanganisa kunye imikhosi yakhe phezu kwenduli iKomnore, kwaye waye wavuthela isigodlo kuyo imikhosi kaShiz ukuyimemela ekulweni idabi.

29 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yeza ngaphambili, kodwa yadudulelwa emva kwakhona; yaza yeza ilixa lesibini, yaza yadudulwa kwakhona ilixa lesibini. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba yeza kwakhona ilixa lesithathu, laza idabi lasuka lababuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uShiz wabetha kuKoriyantamri kangangokuba waba namanxeba amaninzi anzulu; waza uKoriyantamri, ekubeni ophe igazi kakhulu, wawa isiqaqqa, waza wathwalelwa kude ngokungathi wayefile.

31 Ngoku ukulahlekelwa ngamadoda, abafazi, nabantwana kuwo omabini amacala kwakukuninzi kakhulu kangangokuba uShiz wayalela abantu bakhe okokuba mabangayisukeli imikhosi kaKoriyantamri; ngako oko, baye babuyela kwinkampu yabo.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds; and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

## Etere 15

- 1 Kwaye kwenzekile akuba uKoriyantamri ephilile kumanxeba akhe, waqalisa ukuwakhumbula amazwi awathi uEtere wawathetha kuye.
- 2 Wabona okokuba sekubulewe ngekrele kufuphi nezigidi ezibini zabantu bakhe, waza waqalisa ukuba lusizi entliziyweni yakhe; ewe, kwakubulewe izigidi ezibini zamadoda akhe anamandlakazi, kanaanjalo nabafazi bawo nabantwana bawo.
- 3 Waqalisa ukuguquka ngobubi athe wabenza; waqalisa ukuwakhumbula amazwi awayethethiwe ngomlomo wabo bonke abaprofeti, waza wawabona okokuba ayezalisekisiwe kude kube kalokunje, lonke isuntswana; waza umphefumlo wakhe walusizi waza wala ukuthuthuzelwa.
- 4 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wabhala incwadi eya kuShiz, enqwenela okokuba makabasindise abantu, kwaye uya kubunikezela ubukumkani ngenxa yobomi babantu.
- 5 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uShiz eyifumene incwadi yakhe wabhala incwadi eya kuKoriyantamri, yokokuba ukuba angazinikezela, ukuze abe nokumbulala ngelakhe ikrele, ukuze abusindise ubomi babantu.
- 6 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba abantu abazange baguquke kubugwenxa babo; baza abantu bakaKoriyantamri bavuseleleka emsindweni ngokuchasene nabantu bakaShiz; nabantu bakaShiz bavuseleleka emsindweni ngokuchasene nabantu bakaKoriyantamri; ngako oko, abantu bakaShiz baye balwa nabantu bakaKoriyantamri.
- 7 Waza akuba uKoriyantamri ebona okokuba wayesele eza kuwa wasaba kwakhona phambi kwabantu bakaShiz.
- 8 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba wafika kumanzi aseRipliyankam, ngokutolikwa, ithetha ubukhulu, okanye ukwedlula konke; ngako oko, bakuba befikile kula manzi bazigxumeka iintente zabo; waza uShiz kanjalo wazigxumeka nezakhe iintente kufuphi nabo; kwaye ke ngoko ngengomso beza ukuze balwe idabi.

## Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

- 9 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba balwa idabi elibuhlungu ngokugqithisileyo, awathi kulo uKoriyantamri wonzakala kwakhona, waza wawa isiqaqqa ngenxa yokuphalala kwegazi.
- 10 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi kaKoriyantamri yaye yafunzela kuyo imikhosi kaShiz kangangokuba yayibetha, kangangokuba yayibangela ukuba isabe phambi kwayo; kwaye yaye yasabela ngasemazantsi, kwaye yaye yazigxumeka iintente zayo kwindawo eyayibizwa ngokuba yiOgathi.
- 11 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba imikhosi kaKoriyantamri yaye yazigxumeka ezayo iintente ngakuyo induli iRama; kwaye yayikwayiyo loo nduli apho ubawo uMormoni waye wafihlela iimbali eNkosini, ezaye zingcwele.
- 12 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba baye bahlanganisa kunye bonke abantu phezu kobuso belizwe, abaye bengabulawanga, ngaphandle koEtere.
- 13 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uEtere waye wazibona zonke izenzo zabantu; waza wabona okokuba abantu ababe ngakuKoriyantamri babehlanganisene kunye kumkhosi kaKoriyantamri; baza abantu ababe ngakuShiz bahlanganisana kunye kumkhosi kaShiz.
- 14 Ngako oko, bona kangangesithuba seminyaka emine babehlanganise kunye abantu, ukuze babe nokubafumana bonke ababephezu kobuso belizwe, nokokuba babe nokufumana konke ukomelela ababengabanako ukuba bangakufumana.
- 15 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke behlanganisene kunye, wonke umntu kumkhosi awunqwenelayo, kunye nabafazi babo nabantwana babo—kunye amadoda, abafazi nabantwana bexhotyiswe ngezikhali zemfazwe, benamakhaka, neengcina-sifuba, nezikrweqe zentloko, kwaye benxityiswe ngokohlobo lwemfazwe—baye bamatshela phambili omnye ngokuchasene nomnye ukuba balwe idabi; baza balwa yonke loo mini, baza aboyisa.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

- 16 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba kwakuba kuhlwile babediniwe, baza baya kuphumla kwiinkampu zabo; baza emva kokuba beyokuphumla kwiinkampu zabo baqalisa ukubhomboloza nokulila ngokulahlekelwa ngababuleweyo kubantu babo; kwaye zazizikhulu kakhulu izikhalo zabo, ukubhomboloza nokulila kwabo, kangangokuba baye bawuhlaba umoya ngokugqithisileyo.
- 17 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba ngengomso baya baya kwakhona ukuya kulwa idabi, kwaye yayinkulu kwaye isoyikeka loo mini; nangona kunjalo, abazange boyise, baza bakufika ubusuku kwakhona baye bawuhlaba umoya ngezikhalo zabo, nokubhomboloza kwabo, nosizi lwabo, ngokulahlekelwa ngababuleweyo kubantu babo.
- 18 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri wabhala kwakhona incwadi eya kuShiz, enqwenela okokuba angezi kulwa dabi kwakhona, kodwa angeza azokubuthabatha ubukumkani, aze abusindise ubomi babantu.
- 19 Kodwa qaphelani, uMoya weNkosi wawuphezile ukuzama-zamana kunye nabo; kwaye uSathana waye enamandla apheleleyo phezu kweentliziyo zabantu; kuba babezinikele ngokupheleleyo ekuqaqadekeni kweentliziyo zabo, nokumfameka kweengqondo zabo ukuze babe nokutshatyalaliswa; ngako oko bahamba kwakhona ukuya kulwa idabi.
- 20 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba balwa yonke loo mini, baza ubusuku bakufika balala phezu kwamakrele abo.
- 21 Baza ngengomso balwa kwanokokude kufike ubusuku.
- 22 Kwaye bakuba bufikile ubusuku babenxilile ngumsindo, kwananjengendoda enxiliswe yiwayini; baza balala kwakhona phezu kwamakrele abo.
- 23 Baza ngengomso balwa kwakhona; baza bakuba ubusuku bufikile bonke babewile ngekrele ngaphandle kwabangamashumi amahlanu anambini kubantu bakaKoriyantamri, namashumi amathandathu anesithoba kubantu bakaShiz.
- 24 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba balala phezu kwamakrele abo ngobo busuku, baza ngengomso balwa kwakhona, kwaye balwa ngamandlakazi abo ngamakrele abo nangamakhaka abo, yonke loo mini.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

25 Kwaye bakuba ubusuku bufikile kwakukho amashumi amathathu anambini kubantu bakaShiz, namashumi amabini anesixhenxe kubantu bakaKoriyantamri.

26 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba batya baza balala baza balungiselela ukufa ngengomso. Kwaye babengamadoda amakhulu nanamandlakazi njengokomelela kwamadoda.

27 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba balwe kangangesithuba seeyure ezintathu, baza bawa isiqaqqa ngenxa yokuphalala kwegazi.

28 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba amadoda kaKoriyantamri efumene ukomelela okwaneleyo ukuze abenako ukuhamba, ayesele eza kusabela ubomi bawo; kodwa qaphelani, uShiz waphakama, kananjalo namadoda akhe, waza wafunga ngoburhalarhume bakhe okokuba uza kumbulala uKoriyantamri okanye uya kutshabalala ngekrele.

29 Ngako oko, waye wawasukela, kwaye ngengomso waye wawafumana; baza balwa kwakhona ngekrele. Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba bakuba bonke bewile ngekrele, ngaphandle kokuba kube nguKoriyantamri noShiz, qaphelani uShiz wayewe isiqaqqa ngenxa yokuphalala kwegazi.

30 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba akuba uKoriyantamri esoyama ngekrele lakhe, ukuze aphumle kancinane, wayishunqula intloko kaShiz.

31 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba emva kokuba eyishunqule intloko kaShiz, kangokuba uShiz waphakama ngezandla zakhe waza wawa; waza emva kokuba ezamazame ukuphefumla, wafa.

32 Kwaye kwenzekile okokuba uKoriyantamri wawela emhlabeni, waza wasuka wabangathi akanabo ubomi.

33 Yaza iNkosi yathetha kuye uEtere, yaza yathi kuye: Bheka phambili. Waza wabheka phambili, waza wabona okokuba amazwi eNkosi onke ayezalisekisiwe; waza wayigqiba imbali yakhe; (kwaye isinye ekhulwini andisibhalanga) waza wazifihla ngohlobo lokokuba abantu bakaLimhayi baze bazifumane.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

34 Ngoku amazwi okugqibela abhalwe nguEtere  
ngala: Nokokuba iNkosi ithande okokuba ndenziwe  
kumila kumbi, okanye okokuba ndinyamezele  
intando yeNkosi enyameni, akukhathaliseki, ukuba  
nje ndisindiselwa ebukumkanini bukaThixo. Amen.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are  
these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or  
that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mat-  
tereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom  
of God. Amen.

# INcwadi kaMoronayi

## Moronayi 1

- 1 Ngoku mna, Moronayi, emva kokuba ndiphezile ukushwankathela ingxelo yabantu bakaYerede, ndandicinge ukuba andingebhali okungakumbi, kodwa okwangoku andikatshabalali; kwaye andizazisi kumaLeymenayithi hleze anditshabalalise.
- 2 Kuba qaphelani, iimfazwe zawo zoyikeka ngokugqithisileyo phakathi kwawo; kwaye ngenxa yentiyo yawo abulala wonke umNifayithi ongasayi kumkhanyela uKrestu.
- 3 Kwaye mna, Moronayi, andisayi kumkhanyela uKrestu; ngako oko, ndihamba-hamba naphina apho ndinako ukuze kusinde ubomi bam.
- 4 Ngako oko, ndibhala ezinye ezimbalwa izinto, ngokuphikisana noko bendikucinga; kuba bendicinge ukuba ndingaphindi ndibhale; kodwa ndibhala ezinye ezimbalwa izinto, ukuze mhlawumbi zingaba nexabiso kubazalwana bam, amaLeymenayithi, ngamhla uthile ozayo, ngokwentando yeNkosi.

# The Book of Moroni

## Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.



## Moronayi 2

- 1 Amazwi kaKrestu, awathi wawathetha kubo abafundi bakhe, ishumi elinambini awalonyulayo, njengokuba wayebeke izandla zakhe phezu kwabo—
- 2 Kwaye wababiza ngegama, esithi: Niya kubiza kuBawo egameni lam, ngomthandazo onamandlakazi; kwaye emva kokuba nikwenzile oku niya kuba namandla okokuba kulowo eniya kuthi nibeke izandla zenu phezu kwakhe, niya kunikela uMoya oyiNgcwele; kwaye egameni lam niya kuwunika, kuba benza njalo abapostile bam.
- 3 Ngoku uKrestu wawathetha la mazwi kubo ngelixa lokuqala lokubonakala kwakhe; saza isihlwele asaweve, kodwa abafundi baweve; kwaye phezu kwabaninzi kangangoko babebeka izandla zabo kubo, wehla uMoya oyiNgcwele.

## Moroni 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

## Moronayi 3

- 1 Uhlobo abathi ngalo abafundi, ababebizwa ngokuba ngabadala bebandla, bamisela ababingeleli neetitshala—
- 2 Emva kokuba bethandazile kuye uBawo egameni likaKrestu, babeka izandla zabo phezu kwabo, baza bathi:
- 3 Egameni likaYesu Krestu ndiya kumisela ukuba ube ngumbingeleli, (okanye, ukuba uyititshala, ndiya kumisela ukuba ube yititshala) ukuba ushumayele inguquko noxolelo lwezono ngoYesu Krestu, ngonyamezelo lokholo egameni lakhe kuye esiphelweni. Amen.
- 4 Kwaye ngolu hlobo baye bamisela ababingeleli neetitshala, ngokwezipho nobizo lukaThixo kubo abantu; kwaye babamisela ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, owaye ukubo.

## Moroni 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

## Moronayi 4

- 1 Uhlobo lwabadala babo nababingeleli benikela umzimba negazi likaKrestu kulo ibandla; kwaye bawunikela ngokwemiyalelo kaKrestu; ngako oko siyalwazi uhlobo ukuba luyinyani; kwaye abadala okanye ababingeleli baye bawunikela—
- 2 Kwaye baye baguqa phantsi kunye nebandla, baze bathandaze kuye uBawo egameni likaKrestu, besithi:
- 3 Owu Thixo, Bawo onguNaphakade, siyakucela egameni loNyana wakho, uYesu Krestu, ukuba usikelele kwaye ungcwalise esi sonka kuyo imiphefumlo yabo bonke abathi bathabathe kuso; ukuze babe nokutya benenkumbulo yomzimba woNyana wakho, baze bangqine kuwe, Owu Thixo, Bawo onguNaphakade, okokuba bazimisele ukuthabathela kubo igama loNyana wakho, baze besoloko bemkhumbula, baze bayigcine imiyalelo yakhe athe wabanika yona, ukuze babenokusoloko benawo uMoya wakhe ukunye nabo. Amen.

## Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

## Moronayi 5

- 1 Uhlobo lokunikela iwayini—Qaphelani, bayithabatha indebe, baza bathi:
- 2 Owu Thixo, Bawo onguNaphakade, siyakucela, egameni loNyana wakho, uYesu Krestu, ukuba usikelele kwaye ungcwalise le wayini kuyo imiphefumlo yabo bonke abo baselayo kuyo, ukuze babe nokukwenza benenkumbulo yegazi loNyana wakho, elaphalalela bona; baze babe nokungqina kuwe, Owu Thixo, Bawo onguNaphakade, baze besoloko bemkhumbula, ukuze babenawo uMoya wakhe ukuba ube kunye nabo. Amen.

## Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

## Moronayi 6

- 1 Kwaye ngoku ndithetha ngokunxulumene nobhaptizo. Qaphelani, abadala, ababingeleli, neetitshala babhaptizwa; kwaye babengabhaptizwa ngaphandle kokuba bazise ngaphambili iziqhamo ezifanelekileyo zokokuba babekufanele.
- 2 Bengamkeli namnye elubhaptizweni ngaphandle kokuba beze ngaphambili benentliziyo eyaphukileyo nomoya otyumkileyo, baze bangqine kulo ibandla okokuba baguquke ngokwenene kuzo zonke izono zabo.
- 3 Kwaye kwakungamkelwa namnye elubhaptizweni ngaphandle kokuba bathabathela kubo igama likaKrestu, benokuzimisela ukuba bamkhonze kuye esiphelweni.
- 4 Kwaye emva kokuba bamkelwe elubhaptizweni, kwaye bephenjelelwe baze behlanjululwe ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, babebalelwa phakathi kwabantu bebandla likaKrestu; kwaye amagama abo ayethatyathwa, ukuze babenokukhunjulwa baze bondliwe ngelizwi elilungileyo likaThixo, ukuba bagcinwe endleleni elungileyo, ukubagcina ngamaxesha onke bekuphaphela ukuthandaza, bexhomekeke kuphela kwizenzo ezilungileyo zikaKrestu, owaye eyimbangi nomgqibelelisi wokholo lwabo.
- 5 Kwaye ibandla laye lahlangana kunye rhoqo, ukuzila ukutya nokuthandaza, nokuthetha omnye kunye nomnye malunga nentlalo-ntle yemiphefumlo yabo.
- 6 Kwaye baye bahlangana kunye rhoqo ukuze bathabathe badle kuso isonka newayini, ukukhumbula iNkosi uYesu.
- 7 Kwaye babengqongqo ukuqaphela okokuba makungabikho bugwenxa phakathi kwabo; kwaye nabani na owayefunyaniswe esenza ubugwenxa, kwaye amangqina amathathu ebandla athi abagwebe phambi kwabadala, kwaye ukuba abaguquki, bangavumi, amagama abo ayecinywa, kwaye babengabalelwa phakathi kwabantu bakaKrestu.
- 8 Kodwa ngokuguquka kwabo rhoqo baze bafune ukuxolelwa, ngenjongo yokwenene, babexolelwa.

## Moroni 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 Kwaye iintlanganiso zabo zaziqhutywa libandla ngokohlobo lokusebenza koMoya, nangamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; kuba njengokuba amandla oMoya oyiNgcwele wawubakhokela apho mabashumayele khona, okanye ukuyala, okanye ukuthandaza, okanye ukubongoza, okanye ukucula, kwangokunjalo kwakusenziwa.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

## Moronayi 7

- 1 Kwaye ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndibhala ambalwa kumazwi kabawo uMormoni, awathi wawathetha malunga nokholo, ithemba, nothando lwenene; kuba waye wathetha ngolu hlobo kubo abantu, njengokuba wayebafundisa endlwini yesikhungo ababeyakhele ukuba ibe yeyokunqula.
- 2 Kwaye ngoku mna, Mormon, ndithetha nani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo; kuba kungobabalo lukaThixo uBawo, neNkosi yethu uYesu Krestu, nentando yakhe engcwele, ngenxa yesipho sobizo lwakhe kum, ukuze ndivunyelwe ukuba ndithethe ngalo eli lixa.
- 3 Ngako oko, ndiza kuthetha nani nina ningabebandla, abangabalandeli abanoxolo bakaKrestu, nabazuze ithemba elaneleyo abanokuthi ngalo bangene ekuphumleni kweNkosi, ukususela kweli lixa ukuya phambili bade babe baya kuphumla kunye naye ezulwini.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku bazalwana bam, ndiyanigweba ngezi zinto ngenxa yokuhamba kwenu okunoxolo kunye nabantwana babantu.
- 5 Kuba ndiyalikhumbula ilizwi likaThixo elithi ngemisebenzi yenu niya kubazi; kuba ukuba imisebenzi yenu ibilungile, ngoko balungile nabo kanjalo.
- 6 Kuba qaphelani, uThixo wathi umntu ongendawo akanako ukwenza oko kulungileyo; kuba ukuba unika isipho, okanye uthandaza kuThixo, ngaphandle kokuba uya kukwenza oko ngenjongo yokwenene oko akumncedi nto.
- 7 Kuba qaphelani, akubalelwa kuye njengobulungisa.
- 8 Kuba qaphelani, ukuba umntu ongendawo unika isipho, enze ngokukrokra; ngako oko kubalelwa kuye ngokufanayo nokungathi ubesigcinile isipho; ngako oko ubalelwa njengongendawo phambi koThixo.
- 9 Kwaye ngokufanayo kanjalo kubalelwa njengobubi kuye umntu, ukuba uya kuthandaza kodwa kungengayo injongo yokwenene yentliziyo; ewe, kwaye ayimncedi nto, kuba uThixo akamkeli namnye onjalo.

## Moroni 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

- 10 Ngako oko, umntu ongendawo akanako ukwenza oko kulungileyo; engenako nokunika isipho esilungileyo.
- 11 Kuba qaphelani, umthombo okrakra awunako ukuvelisa amanzi alungileyo; ungenako nomthombo olungileyo ukuvelisa amanzi akrakra; ngako oko, umntu osisicaka sikamtyholi akanako ukumlandela uKrestu; kwaye ukuba ulandela uKrestu akanako ukuba sisicaka sikamtyholi.
- 12 Ngako oko, zonke izinto ezilungileyo zivela kuThixo; kwaye oko kubi kuvela kumtyholi; kuba umtyholi ulutshaba kuye uThixo, kwaye ulwa ngokuchasene naye ngamaxesha onke, kwaye umema aze alukuhlele ukwenza isono, nokwenza okubi ngamaxesha onke.
- 13 Kodwa qaphelani, oko kukokukaThixo kumemela kwaye kulukuhlele ekwenzeni okulungileyo ngamaxesha onke; ngako oko, yonke into ethi imemele kwaye ilukuhlele ekwenzeni okulungileyo, nokumthanda uThixo, nokumkhonza, iphenjelelwa nguThixo.
- 14 Ngako oko, lumkani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ukuze ningakuthathi oko kubi ngokungathi kokukaThixo, okanye oko kulungileyo nokukaThixo ngokungathi kokukamtyholi.
- 15 Kuba qaphelani, bazalwana bam, kunikiwe kuni ukuba nigwebe, ukuze nibe nokwazi okulungileyo kokubi; kwaye indlela yokugweba icace ngokunjalo, ukuze nibe nokwazi ngolwazi olugqibeleleyo, njengokuba imini injalo kubusuku obumnyama.
- 16 Kuba qaphelani, uMoya kaKrestu unikiwe kuye wonke umntu, ukuze abe nokukwazi okulungileyo kokubi; ngako oko, ndiyanibonisa indlela yokugweba; kuba yonke into ememela ukwenza okulungileyo, nethundeza ukukholelwa kuKrestu, ithunyelwe ngamandla nesipho sikaKrestu, ngako oko unokuyazi ngolwazi olugqibeleleyo ukuba yekaThixo.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.



17 Kodwa nantoni na ethundeza abantu ukuba benze okubi, kwaye bangakholelwa kuKrestu, baze bamkhanye, baze bangamkhonzi uThixo, ke ninokwazi ngolwazi olugqibeleleyo iyekamtyholi; kuba umtyholi uthi asebenze ngolu hlobo, kuba akathundezi mntu ukuba enze okulungileyo, hayi, namnye; nazingelosi zakhe; ingengabo nabo bazizisa phantsi kolawulo lwakhe.

18 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, nibona nje okokuba niyakwazi ukukhanya eninokuthi nibe nokugweba ngako, ukukhanya oko okukukukhanya kukaKrestu, bonani okokuba anigwebi ngokuphosakeleyo; kuba kwangeso sigwebo nigweba ngaso nani kanjalo niya kugwetywa ngaso.

19 Ngako oko, ndiyanibongoza, bazalwana bam, okokuba nize niphanda ngenkuthalo ekukhanyeni kukaKrestu ukuze nibe nokwazi okulungileyo kokubi; kwaye ukuba niya kubambelela kuyo yonke into elungileyo, nize ningayigwebi, ngokuqinisekileyo niya kuba ngabantwana bakaKrestu.

20 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam, kunokwenzeka njani ukuba nibambelele kuyo yonke into elungileyo?

21 Kwaye ngoku ndiza kolo kholo, endithe ndiza kuthetha ngalo; kwaye ndiza kunixelela indlela eninokuthi ngayo nibe nokubambelela kuyo yonke into elungileyo.

22 Kuba qaphelani, uThixo esazi zonke izinto, esuka kunaphakade ukuya kunaphakade, qaphelani, wathumela iingelosi ukuba zilungiselele kubo abantwana babantu, ukubonakalisa malunga nokuza kukaKrestu; kwaye kuKrestu kuya kuza yonke into elungileyo.

23 Kwaye uThixo kanjalo wavakalisa kubo abaprofeti, ngowakhe umlomo, okokuba uKrestu umele afike.

24 Kwaye qaphelani, kwakukho iindlela ezahlukeneyo awathi wazibonakalisa ngayo izinto kubo abantwana babantu, ezaye zilungile; kwaye zonke izinto ezilungileyo zivela kuKrestu; ngenye indlela abantu babewile, kwaye akunakubakho nto ilungileyo iza kubo.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

- 25 Ngako oko, ngokulungiselela kweengelosi, nangalo lonke ilizwi eliza liphuma emlonyeni kaThixo, abantu baqalisa ukulusebenzisa ukhulo lwabo kuKrestu; kwaye njalo ngokholo, baye babambelela kuyo yonke into elungileyo; kwaye lwaba njalo kwada kwaba kukufika kukaKrestu.
- 26 Kwaye emva kokuba efikile abantu kanjalo basindiswa ngokholo egameni lakhe; kwaye ngokholo, basuka baba ngoonyana bakaThixo. Kwaye ngokuqinisekileyo njengokuba uKrestu ephila wawathetha la mazwi kubo obawo, esithi: Nantonina eniya kuyicela kuBawo egameni lam, elungileyo, ngokholo nikholelwa ukuba niya kuyifumana, qaphelani, iya kwenziwa kuni.
- 27 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ingaba imimangaliso iphezile ngenxa yokuba uKrestu enyukele ezulwini, kwaye ehleli phantsi ngasekunene kukaThixo, ukuze abange kuBawo iimfanelo zakhe zenceba anayo kubantwana babantu?
- 28 Kuba uzizalisekisile iimfuno zomthetho, kwaye uyababanga bonke abo banokholo kuye; kwaye abo banokholo kuye baya kunamathela kuyo yonke into elungileyo; ngako oko uyayithethelela injongo yabantwana babantu; kwaye uhleli ngonaphakade emazulwini.
- 29 Kwaye ngenxa yokuba ekwenzile oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ingaba imimangaliso iphezile? Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi; zingaphezanga neengelosi ukulungiselela kubo abantwana babantu.
- 30 Kuba qaphelani, ziphantsi kolawulo lwakhe, ukuba zilungiselele ngokwelizwi lomyalelo wakhe, zizibonakalisa kwabo banokholo olomeleleyo nengqiqo ezinzileyo kulo lonke uhlobo lobuthixo.
- 31 Kwaye ubizo lobulungiseleli babo kukubizela abantu enguguqukweni, nokuzalisekisa nokwenza umsebenzi womnqophiso kaBawo, athe wawenza kubo abantwana babantu, ukuba alungiselele indlela phakathi kwabantwana babantu, ngokuvakalisa ilizwi likaKrestu kuzo izitya ezonyuliweyo zeNkosi, ukuze zinike ubungqina ngaye.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

- 32 Kwaye ngokwenza njalo, iNkosi uThixo ilungiselela indlela yokokuba intsalela yabantu ibe nokuba nokholo kuKrestu, ukuze uMoya oyiNgcwele ube nokuba nendawo ezintliziyweni zabo, ngokwamandla wawo; kwaye ngolu hlobo wenza kwenzeke uBawo, iminqophiso awathi wayenza kubo abantwana babantu.
- 33 Kwaye uKrestu wathi: Ukuba niya kuba nokholo kum niya kuba namandla okwenza nantoni na eyimfuneko kum.
- 34 Kwaye wathi: Guqukani nonke nina ziphelo zomhlaba, kwaye nize kum nize nibhaptizwe egameni lam, nize nibe nokholo kum, ukuze nibe nokusindiswa.
- 35 Kwaye ngoku, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ukuba kunjalo ukuba ezi zinto ziyinyani endizithethileyo kuni, kwaye uThixo uya kunibonisa, ngamandla nozuko olukhulu ngomhla wokugqibela, okokuba ziyinyani, kwaye ukuba ziyinyani ingaba umhla wemimangaliso uphelele?
- 36 Okanye ingaba iingelosi ziphezile ukubonakala kubo abantwana babantu? Okanye ingaba uwabambile amandla oMoya oyiNgcwele kubo? Okanye ingaba uya kwenza njalo, kangangokuba ilixa liya kubakho, okanye umhlaba uya kuma, okanye kuya kubakho umntu omnye phezu kobuso bawo ukuba asindiswe?
- 37 Qaphelani ndithi kuni, Hayi, kuba kungokholo ukuze imimangaliso yenziwe; kwaye kungokholo ukuze iingelosi zibonakale kwaye zilungiselele kubo abantu; ngako oko, ukuba ezi zinto ziphezile yeha kubo abantwana babantu, kuba kungenxa yokungakholwa, kwaye konke kulilize.
- 38 Kuba akukho mntu unokusindiswa, ngokwamazwi kaKrestu, ngaphandle kokuba baya kuba nokholo egameni lakhe; ngako oko, ukuba ezi zinto ziphezile, ke nokholo luphezile kanjalo; kwaye iyoyikeka imeko yomntu, kuba kufana nokungathi akuzange kubekho nkululeko ngokuhlawulelwa eyenziwayo.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

39 Kodwa qaphelani, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndigweba izinto ezilunge kakhulu ngani, kuba ndigweba okokuba ninokholo kuKrestu ngenxa yobulali benu; kuba ukuba aninalo ukholo kuye ke anikulungelanga ukubalelwa phakathi kwabantu bebandla lakhe.

40 Kwaye kwakhona, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ndinga ndingathetha nani malunga nethemba. Kukanjani ukuba ningafikelela kulo ukholo, ngaphandle kokuba niya kuba nethemba?

41 Kwaye ingaba yintoni eniya kuba nethemba layo? Qaphelani nditsho kuni ukuthi niya kuba nethemba ngentlawulelo kaKrestu namandla ovuko lwakhe, lokuvukela kubomi obungunaphakade, kwaye oku kungenxa yokholo lwenu kuye ngokwesithembiso.

42 Ngako oko, ukuba umntu unokholo kufuneka abe nethemba; kuba ngaphandle kokholo akunakubakho naliphina ithemba.

43 Kwaye kwakhona, qaphelani nditsho kuni ukuthi akanako ukuba nokholo nethemba ngaphandle kokuba uya kuba nobulali aze athobeke entliziyweni.

44 Ukuba kunjalo, ukholo lwakhe nethemba lililize, kuba akukho namnye owamkelekayo phambi koThixo, ngaphandle kwaba nobulali nabathobekileyo entliziyweni, kwaye ukuba umntu unobulali kwaye uthobekile entliziyweni, aze avume ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele okokuba uYesu unguKrestu, kuyimfuneko ukuba abe nothando lwenene; kuba ukuba akanalo uthando lwenene akanto yanto; ngako oko kufuneka abe nothando lwenene.

45 Kwaye uthando lwenene luzeka kade umsindo, kwaye lunobubele, kwaye alunamona, kwaye alukhukhumali, alufuni okukokwalo kodwa, kwaye alucatshukiswa lula, alucingi bubi, kwaye aluvuyiswa bubugwenxa kodwa luvuyiswa yinyaniso, luthwala zonke izinto, lukholelwa zonke izinto, luthemba zonke izinto, lunyamezela zonke izinto.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

46 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ukuba aninalo uthando lwenene, aninto yanto, kuba uthando lwenene aluze lutshitshe. Ngako oko, namathelani kulo uthando lwenene, oluyinto enkulu ngaphezu kwazo zonke, kuba zonke izinto kufuneka zitshitshe—

47 Kodwa uthando lwenene luthando olumsulwa lukaKrestu, kwaye lunyamezela ngonaphakade; kwaye nabani na ofunyenwe enalo ngomhla wokugqibela, kuya kulunga kuye.

48 Ngako oko, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, thandazani kuye uBawo ngawo onke amandla entliziyo, ukuze nibe nokuzaliswa ngolu thando, olo lunikwe phezu kwabo bonke abangabalandeli bokwenyani boNyana wakhe, uYesu Krestu; ukuze nibe nokuba ngoonyana bakaThixo; ukuze xa sukuba eya kubonakala siya kuba njengaye, kuba siya kumbona njengokuba enjalo; ukuze sibe nokubanalo eli themba; ukuze sibe nokuhlanjululwa kwananjengokuba ehlambulukile. Amen.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.

## Moronayi 8

- 1 Incwadi kabawo uMormoni, ebhalelwe mna, Moronayi; kwaye yayibhalwe kwakamsinyane emva kobizo lwam kubulungiseleli. Kwaye ngale ndlela waye wandibhalela, esithi:
- 2 Nyana wam othandekayo, Moronayi, ndivuya ngokugqithisileyo ukuba iNkosi yakho uYesu Krestu ikunyamekele, kwaye ikubizele kububingeleli bayo, nakuwo umsebenzi wayo ongcwele.
- 3 Ndikunyamekele ngalo lonke ixesha emithandazweni yam, ndithandaza ngamaxesha onke kuye uThixo uBawo egameni loMntwana wakhe oNgcwele, uYesu, kuba yena, ngokulunga kwakhe okungenasiphelo nobabalo, uya kukulondoloza ngonyamezelo lokholo egameni lakhe kuye esiphelweni.
- 4 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndithetha kuwe ngokunxulumene noko kundihlungisa ngokugqithisileyo; kuba kuyandihlungisa ukuba kubekho iimpikiswano ezivukayo phakathi kwenu.
- 5 Kuba, ukuba ndifumanise inyaniso, okokuba bekukho iimpikiswano phakathi kwenu ngokunxulumene nobhaptizo lwabantwana benu abancinane.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, ndinqwenela okokuba ungasebenza ngenkuthalo, ukuze le mpazamo imbi kakhulu ingasuswa ingabikho phakathi kwenu, kuba kungale njongo ukuba ndibhale le ncwadi.
- 7 Kuba ngoko nangoko emva kokuba ndifumanise ezi zinto ngani ndibuzile eNkosini ngokunxulumene nalo mcimbi. Laza ilizwi leNkosi lafika kum ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele, lisithi:
- 8 Waphulaphuleni amazwi kaKrestu, uMkhululi wenu, iNkosi yenu noThixo wenu. Qaphelani, ndeza ehlabathini ingekuko ukubizela amalungisa kuyo inguquko kodwa aboni; abaphilileyo abanamfuno yagqirha, kodwa abo bagulayo; ngako oko, abantwana abancinane baphilile, kuba abanako ukwenza isono, ngako oko isiqalekiso sika-Adam sisusiwe kubo ngam, ukuze singabi namandla phezu kwabo; nomthetho wolwaluko ubhangisiwe ngam.

## Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

- 9 Kwaye ngolu hlobo wathi uMoya oyiNgcwele walithyila ilizwi likaThixo kum; ngako oko, nyana wam othandekayo, ndiyazi okokuba kuyimpoxo embi kakhulu phambi koThixo, ukuba niya kubhaptiza abantwana abancinane.
- 10 Qaphelani nditsho kuni ukuthi le nto niya kuyifundisa—inguquko nobhaptizo kwabo banako ukuziphendulela kwaye banako ukwenza isono; ewe, bafundiseni abazali okokuba kufuneka baguquke kwaye babhaptizwe, baze bazithobe njengabantwana babo abancinane, kwaye baya kusindiswa bonke kunye nabantwana babo abancinane.
- 11 Kwaye abantwana babo abancinane abanamfuneko yanguquko, nabhaptizo. Qaphelani, ubhaptizo luya kwinguquko ekuzalisekiseni imiyalelo ukuya kuxolelo lwezono.
- 12 Kodwa abantwana abancinane baphilile kuKrestu, kwanokususela kwisiseko sehlabathi; ukuba akunjalo, uThixo unguThixo onomkhethe, kananjalo noThixo ojika-jikayo, nongumkhetibuso babantu; kuba bangaphi abantwana abancinane abafe bengenalobhaptizo!
- 13 Ngako oko, ukuba abantwana abancinane babengenako ukusindiswa bengenalobhaptizo, ababanokuba baye kwisihogo esingenasiphelo.
- 14 Qaphela nditsho kuwe, ukuthi lowo ucinga okokuba abantwana abancinane banemfuno yobhaptizo ukuyo inyongo yobukrakra nakumakhamandela obugwenxa; kuba akanalukholo, ithemba, naluthando lwenene; ngako oko, umele ukusikelwa ngaphandle esekuyo le ngcinga, kufuneka ehlele ezantsi esihogweni.
- 15 Kuba iyoyikeka inkohlakalo yokucinga okokuba uThixo usindisa umntwana omnye ngenxa yobhaptizo, aze omnye kufuneke atshabalale ngenxa yokuba engenalobhaptizo.
- 16 Yeha kubo abo baya kugqwetha iindlela zeNkosi ngolu hlobo, kuba baya kutshabalala ngaphandle kokuba bayaguquka. Qaphela, ndithetha ngenkalipho, ndinegunya elivela kuThixo; kwaye andoyiki nto anokuthi umntu ayenze; kuba uthando olugqibeleleyo lukhuphela ngaphandle lonke uloyiko.

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

- 17 Kwaye ndizaliswe luthando lwenene, olu luthando lwanaphakade; ngako oko, bonke abantwana bayafana kum; ngako oko, ndibathanda abantwana abancinane ngothando olugqibeleleyo; kwaye bonke bayafana kwaye ngabaxhamli bosindiso.
- 18 Kuba ndiyazi okokuba uThixo akanguye uThixo onomkhethe, namntu ojika-jikayo; kodwa akajika-jiki ukusela kunaphakade wonke ukuya kunaphakade wonke.
- 19 Abantwana abancinane abanako ukuguquka; ngako oko, kuyinkohlakalo eyoyikekayo ukubandeza iinceba ezimsulwa zikaThixo kubo, kuba bonke bayaphila kuye ngenxa yenceba yakhe.
- 20 Kwaye lowo uthi abantwana abancinane banemfuno yobhaptizo ukhanyela iinceba zikaKrestu, kwaye uyithabatha njengento engento intlawulelo yakhe namandla enkululeko yakhe.
- 21 Yeha kwabanjalo, kuba basengozini yokufa, isihogo, nentuthumbo engenasiphelo. Ndikuthetha ngenkalipho; uThixo undiyalele. Mamelani kuwo, kwaye ninike inyameko, okanye aya kuma ngokuchasene nani esihlalweni-sokugweba sikaKrestu.
- 22 Kuba qaphelani okokuba abantwana abancinane bayaphila kuKrestu, kananjalo nabo bonke abo bangenawo umthetho. Kuba amandla enkululeko afika kubo bonke abo bangenawo umthetho; ngako oko, lowo ungagwetywanga, okanye lowo ungekho phantsi kwesigwebo, akanako ukuguquka; kwaye kwabanjalo ubhaptizo alubenzeli nto—
- 23 Kodwa kuyimpoxo phambi koThixo, ukukhanyela iinceba zikaKrestu, namandla oMoya wakhe oyiNgcwele, nokubeka ithemba kwimisebenzi efileyo.
- 24 Qaphela, nyana wam, le nto akufanelekanga ukuba yenzeke; kuba inguquko yeyabo baphantsi kwesigwebo naphantsi kwesiqalekiso somthetho owaphuliweyo.
- 25 Kwaye iziqhamo zokuqala zenguquko lubhaptizo; kwaye ubhaptizo luza ngokholo ekuzalisekiseni kwemiyalelo; kwaye ukuzalisekiswa kwemiyalelo kuzisa uxolelo lwezono;

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;



- 26 Kwaye uxolelo lwezono luzisa ubulali, nokuthobeka kwentliziyo; kwaye ngenxa yobulali nokuthobeka kwentliziyo kuza ukuvelelwa ngoMoya oyiNgcwele, uMonwabisi lowo ozalisa ngethemba nothando olugqibeleleyo, uthando olo olunyamezela ngenkuthalo ekuthandazeni kude kube isiphelo siya kuza, xa bonke abangcwele beya kuhlala noThixo.
- 27 Qaphela, nyana wam, ndiza kukubhalela kwakhona ukuba andiphumi kwakamsinyane ngokuchasene namaLeymenayithi. Qaphela, ikratshi lesi sizwe okanye abantu bamaNifayithi libonakalise intshabalalo yaso ngaphandle kokuba siya kuguquka.
- 28 Bathandazele, nyana wam, ukuze inguquko ifike kubo. Kodwa qaphela, ndinoloyiko hleze uMoya ube uphezile ukuzama-zamana nabo; kwaye kulo mmandla welizwe bazama kanjalo ukuwisa onke amandla negunya elivela kuThixo; kwaye bayawukhanyela uMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 29 Kwaye emva kokwala ulwazi olukhulu kangaka, nyana wam, kufuneka batshabalale kwakamsinya, ekuzalisekiseni kweziprofetho ezazithethwe ngabaprofeti, ngokunjalo namazwi oMsindisi wethu ngokwakhe.
- 30 Sala kakuhle, nyana wam, ndide ndikubhalele, okanye ndiya kuhlangana nawe kwakhona. Amen.

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

## Moronayi 9

- 1 Nyana wam othandekayo, ndikubhalela kwakhona ukuze ube nokwazi okokuba ndisaphila; kodwa ndibhala nje noko ngoko kuhlungisayo.
- 2 Kuba qaphela, ndibe nedabi elibuhlungu kunye namaLeymenayithi, esithe kulo asoyisa; kwaye uArkheyantasi uwe ngekrele, kananjalo noLurami noEmroni; ewe, kwaye silahlekelwe linani elikhulu lamadoda ethu akhethekileyo.
- 3 Kwaye ngoku qaphela, nyana wam, ndinoloyiko hleze amaLeymenayithi abe aya kubatshabalalisa aba bantu; kuba abaguquki, kwaye uSathana uyabavuselela ngamaxsha onke emsindweni omnye kunye nomnye.
- 4 Qaphela, ndisebenza kunye nabo ngamaxsha onke; kwaye xa sukuba ndithetha ilizwi likaThixo kabukhali bayangcangcazela kwaye babenomsindo ngokuchasene nam; kwaye xa sukuba ndingasebenzisi bukhali bayaziqaqadekisa iintliziyo zabo ngokuchasene nalo; ngako oko, ndinoloyiko hleze uMoya weNkosi ube uphezile ukuzamazamana nabo.
- 5 Kuba babanomsindo ngokugqithisileyo kangangokuba kukhangeleka kum ngokungathi abanalooyiko lakufa; kwaye baphulukene nothando lwabo, omnye ngakomnye; kwaye banxanelwe igazi nempindezelo lonke ixesha.
- 6 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam othandekayo, nangona beqaqadekile, masisebenze ngenkuthalo; kuba ukuba singapheza ukusebenza, singaziswa phantsi kokugwetywa; kuba sinomsebenzi ekufuneka siwenze ngeli lixa sikulo mnquba womdongwe, ukuze sibe nokuloyisa utshaba lobulungisa bonke, size siyiphumze imiphefumlo yethu kubukumkani bukaThixo.
- 7 Kwaye ngoku ndibhala nje noko ngokunxulumene neembandezelo zaba bantu. Kuba ngokolwazi endilufumeneyo ku-Amoroni, qaphela, amaLeymenayithi anamabanjwa amaninzi, athe awathabatha enkochoyini kaSheriza; kwaye bekukho amadoda, abafazi, nabantwana.

## Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

- 8 Kwaye abayeni noyise babobafazi nabantwana ababebabulele; baza bondla abafazi ngenyama yabayeni babo, nabantwana ngenyama yoyise babo; kwaye kungekho manzi ngaphandle nje kwentwana, ababanika yona.
- 9 Kwaye nangona kukho eli sikizi likhulu lamaLeymenayithi, alilogqithi elo labantu bethu eMoriyantam. Kuba qaphela, ezininzi iintombi zamaLeymenayithi bazithabatha zaba ngamabanjwa, kwaye emva kokuba bebahluthe oko kwakuthandeka ngakumbi kwaye kunexabiso ngaphezu kwazo zonke izinto, ezibubunyulu nesidima—
- 10 Kwaye emva kokuba beyenzile le nto, baye bababulala ngolona hlobo lukhohlakele kakhulu, bethuthumbisa imizimba yabo kwanokuya ekufeni; baza emva kokuba bekwenzile oku babimbithela inyama yabo ngokungathi zizilwanyana zasendle, ngenxa yokuqadeka kweentliziyo zabo; kwaye bakwenza oku njengomqondiso wobukrothi.
- 11 Owu nyana wam othandekayo, kungani na ukuba abantu babenako ukuba nje, ngokungathi abanankcubeko—
- 12 (Kwaye kuphela yiminyakana embalwa edluleyo, kwaye babengabantu abachubekileyo nabathandekayo)
- 13 Kodwa Owu nyana wam, kungani na ukuba abantu babenako ukuba nje, abavuyo lwabo lukwisikizi elingaka—
- 14 Singanako njani na ukulindela ukuba uThixo uya kusibamba isandla sakhe ngesigwebo ngokuchasene nathi?
- 15 Qaphela, intliziyo yam iyadanduluka: Yeha kubo aba bantu. Phuma ngesigwebo, Owu Thixo, uze uzifihle izono zabo, nenkohlakalo, namasikizi zisuke phambi kobuso bakho!
- 16 Kwaye kwakhona, nyana wam, baninzi abahlolokazi neentombi zabo abasele eSheriza; kwaye naloo nxalenye yemiphako amaLeymenayithi angazange ayithuthe, qaphela, umkhosi kaZenifayi uyithuthile, waza wabashiya ukuze babhadule naphina apho banganako ukufuna ukutya; kwaye abafazi abadala bawa isiqaqqa ecaleni kwendlela baze bafe.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightsome people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

17 Kwaye umkhosi okunye nam ubuthathaka; kwaye imikhosi yamaLeymenayithi iphakathi kweSheriza kunye nam; kwaye kangangobuninzi babo abasabela kumkhosi ka-Aron bawele ekubeni ngamaxhoba engcwangu yabo eyoyikekayo.

18 Owu ububi babantu bam! Abanacwangco kwaye abananceba. Qaphela, ndingumntu nje kuphela, kwaye ndinokomelela nje komntu kuphela, kwaye andisenako nokunyanzelisa imiyalelo yam.

19 Kwaye basuke bomelela ekugqwethekeni kwabo; kwaye banobungcwangu ngokufanayo, bengasindisi namnye, nomdala noselula; kwaye bavuyiswa yiyo yonke into ngaphandle kwaleyo ilungileyo; kwaye imbandezelo yabafazi bethu nabantwana bethu phezu kwabo bonke ubuso belizwe yogqitha yonke into; ewe, ulwimi alunako ukuyichaza, ingenako nokubhalwa.

20 Kwaye ngoku, nyana wam, andisaphindi ndihlale kulo mbono woyikekayo. Qaphela, uyayazi inkohlakalo yaba bantu; uyayazi okokuba abanawo umgaqo wokuziphatha, kwaye bangaphaya kokuvakalelwa; kwaye nenkohlakalo yabo iyayogqitha leyo yamaLeymenayithi.

21 Qaphela, nyana wam, andinako ukubathethelela kuye uThixo hleze andibethe.

22 Kodwa qaphela, nyana wam, ndiya kuthethelela kuye uThixo kwaye ndinethemba kuKrestu ukuba uya kusindiswa; kwaye ndiyathandaza kuye uThixo ukuba aze abusindise ubomi bakho, ukuze ukungqine ukubuyela kwabantu bakhe kuye, okanye intshabalalo yabo ephелеleyo; kuba ndiyayazi okokuba kufuneka batshabalale ngaphandle kokuba bayaguquka kwaye babuyele kuye.

23 Kwaye ukuba bayatshabalala kuya kuba njengamaYeredayithi, ngenxa yeminqweno yeentliziyo zabo, yokuzungula igazi nempindezelo.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

24 Kwaye ukuba kuyenzeka ukuba batshabalale, siyazi okokuba abaninzi kubazalwana bethu bakrequele ngaphaya kuwo amaLeymenayithi, kwaye nabanye abangakumbi baza kukreqela ngaphaya kuwo; ngako oko, bhala nje noko izinto ezimbalwa, ukuba usindile kwaye mna ndiya kutshabalala kwaye ndingakuboni; kodwa ndiyathemba okokuba ndingakubona kamsinyane; kuba ndineembali ezingcwele endifuna ukuzinikezela kuwe.

25 Nyana wam, nyaniseka kuKrestu; kwaye inga izinto endizibhalileyo azingekuhlungisi, zikusinde uze ufe; kodwa inga uKrestu angakuphakamisa, kwaye inga iimbandezelo zakhe nokufa, nokubonisa kwakhe umzimba wakhe kubo oobawo, nenceba yakhe nokuzeka kade umsindo, nethemba lobuqaqawuli bakhe nelobomi obungunaphakade, zingaphumla engqondweni yakho ngonaphakade.

26 Kwaye lwanga ubabalo lukaThixo uBawo, otrone yakhe iphezulu emazulwini, neNkosi yethu uYesu Krestu, ohleli ngasekunene kwamandla akhe, zide zonke izinto zibe phantsi kolawulo lwakhe, lube, kwaye luhlale kunye nawe ngonaphakade. Amen.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.

## Moronayi 10

- 1 Ngoku mna, Moronayi, ndibhala nje noko endikubona kulungile, kwaye ndibhalela abazalwana bam, amaLeymenayithi; kwaye ndinga bangazi okokuba engaphezulu kunamakhulu amane anamashumi amabini iminyaka idlule okoko umqondiso wawunikiwe wokuza kukaKrestu.
- 2 Kwaye ndizitywinela phezulu ezi mbali, emva kokuba ndithethe amazwi ambalwa ngenjongo yokuniyala.
- 3 Qaphelani, ndiyaniyala okokuba xa sukuba niya kuzifunda ezi zinto, ukuba kububulumko kuThixo ukuba ningazifunda, okokuba nize nikhumbule indlela ebinenceba ngayo iNkosi kubo abantwana babantu, ukususela ekudalweni kuka-Adam kwanokuhla kude kube lilixa eniya kuthi nizifumane ezi zinto, kwaye niziguquguqule ezintliziyweni zenu.
- 4 Kwaye xa sukuba niya kuzifumana ezi zinto, ndiza kuniyala okokuba nize nibuze kuThixo, uBawo onguNaphakade, egameni likaKrestu, ukuba ezi zinto aziyonyani kusini na; kwaye ukuba niya kubuza ngentliziyo enyanisekileyo, ngenjongo yokwenene, ninokholo kuKrestu, uya kubutyhila ubunyani bazo kuni, ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele.
- 5 Kwaye ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele ninokwazi ubunyani bazo zonke izinto.
- 6 Kwaye nantoni na elungileyo ilungile kwaye iyinyani; ngako oko, ayikho into elungileyo emkhanyelayo uKrestu, kodwa iyavuma okokuba ukho.
- 7 Kwaye ninokwazi okokuba ukho, ngamandla oMoya oyiNgcwele; ngako oko ndiya kuniyala okokuba ningawakhanyeli amandla kaThixo; kuba usebenza ngamandla, ngokokholo lwabantwana babantu, ngokufanayo namhla nangomso, nangonaphakade.
- 8 Kwaye kwakhona, ndiyaniyala, bazalwana bam, okokuba ningazikhanyeli iziphho zikaThixo, kuba zininzi; kwaye zivela kwakulo Thixo mnje. Kwaye kukho iindlela ezahlukeneyo ezinikelwa ngayo; kodwa ikwa nguThixo mnje osebenza kuko konke; kwaye zinikwa ngokutyhilwa nguMoya kaThixo ebantwini, ukuze bancedakale.

## Moroni 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

9 Kuba qaphelani, komnye kunikwa ngoMoya kaThixo, ukuze abe nokufundisa ilizwi lobulumko;

10 Kwaye komnye, ukuze abe nokufundisa ilizwi lolwazi kwangalo Moya;

11 Kwaye komnye, ukhohlo olunamandla ngokugqithisileyo; kwaye komnye, izipho zokuphilisa kwangawo lo Moya;

12 Kwaye kwakhona, komnye, ukuze abe nokusebenza imimangaliso enamandlakazi;

13 Kwaye kwakhona, komnye, ukuze abe nokuprofetha ngokunxulumene nazo zonke izinto;

14 Kwaye kwakhona, komnye, ukubona iingelosi noomoya abalungiselelayo;

15 Kwaye kwakhona, komnye, zonke iindidi zeelwimi;

16 Kwaye kwakhona, komnye, ukutolikwa kweelwimi neendidi ezahlukeneyo zeelwimi.

17 Kwaye zonke ezi zipho ziza ngoMoya kaKrestu; kwaye ziza kuye wonke umntu ngokwahlukeneyo, ngokwentando yakhe.

18 Kwaye ndiza kuniyala, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ukuba nikhumbule okokuba sonke isipho esilungileyo sivela kuKrestu.

19 Kwaye ndiza kuniyala, bazalwana bam abathandekayo, ukuba nikhumbule okokuba ikwanguye izolo, namhlanje, nangonaphakade, nokokuba zonke ezi zipho endithe ndathetha ngazo, ezizozomoya, azisokuze zibhangiswe, kwanakangangoko ihlabathi liya kuma, kuphela nje ngokungakholelwa kwabantwana babantu.

20 Ngako oko, kufuneka kubekho ukhohlo; kwaye ukuba kufuneka kubekho ukhohlo kufuneka kanjalo kubekho ithemba; kwaye ukuba kufuneka kubekho ithemba kufuneka kanjalo kubekho uthando lwenene.

21 Kwaye ngaphandle kokuba nibe nothando lwenene aninako nangayiphina indlela ukusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo; ningenako nokusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo ukuba aninalo ukhohlo; ningenako ukuba aninalo ithemba.

22 Kwaye ukuba aninalo ithemba kufuneka nibe nilahlekelwe lithemba; kwaye ukulahlekelwa lithemba kuza ngenxa yobugwenxa.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

- 23 Kwaye uKrestu ngokwenene wathi kubo oobawo: Ukuba ninalo ukholo ninako ukwenza zonke izinto eziyimfuneko kuni.
- 24 Kwaye ngoku ndithetha kuzo zonke iziphelo zomhlaba—ukuthi ukuba umhla uyafika wokokuba amandla neziphopho zikaThixo ziya kubhangiswa phakathi kwenu, kuya kuba kungenxa yokungakhohwa.
- 25 Kwaye yeha kubo abantwana babantu ukuba kunjalo; kuba akusayi kubakho namnye owenza okulungileyo phakathi kwenu, hayi namnye. Kuba ukuba kukho omnye phakathi kwenu owenza okulungileyo, uya kusebenza ngamandla neziphopho zikaThixo.
- 26 Kwaye yeha kubo abo baya kuzibhangisa ezi zinto baze bafe, kuba bafela ezonweni zabo, kwaye abanako ukusindiswa ebukumkanini bukaThixo; kwaye ndizithetha ngokwamazwi kaKrestu; kwaye andixoki.
- 27 Kwaye ndiyaniyala ukuba nizikhumbule ezi zinto; kuba ilixa liyeza ngokukhawulezileyo lokokuba niya kwazi okokuba andixoki, kuba niya kundibona kuso isihlalo-sokugweba sikaThixo; kwaye iNkosi uThixo iya kuthi kuni: Andizange na ndiwavakalise amazwi am kuni, awayebhalwe yile ndoda, njengalowo obedanduluka ephuma kwelabafuleyo, ewe, kwananjengothetha ephuma eluthulini?
- 28 Ndizivakalisa ezi zinto ukuze kuzalisekisewe iziprofetho. Kwaye qaphelani, ziya kuza ngaphambili ziphuma emlonyeni kaThixo ongunaphakade; kwaye ilizwi lakhe liya kuba likhwelo eliya phambili ukusuka kwisizukulwana ukuya kwisizukulwana.
- 29 Kwaye uThixo uya kunibonisa, okokuba oko ndikubhalileyo kuyinyani.
- 30 Kwaye kwakhona ndiza kuniyala ukuba nize kuKrestu, kwaye nibambebele kuso sonke isiphopho esilungileyo, kwaye ningasichukumisi isiphopho esibi, nanto eyinqambi.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.



- 31 Kwaye vuka, uze uphakame eluthulini, Owu Yerusalem; ewe, kwaye uzivathe iingubo zakho ezintle, Owu ntombi yeZiyon; kwaye uzomeleze izibonda zakho kwaye uyandise imida yakho ngonaphakade, ukuze ungabe uphinde ubhidaniswe, ukuze iminqophiso kaBawo onguNaphakade athe wayenza kuwe, Owu ndlu kaSirayeli, ibe nokuzalisekiswa.
- 32 Ewe, yizani kuKrestu kwaye ukuba niyazilumla kuko konke ukungahloneli Thixo; nize nigqibelele kuye, ukuba niyazilumla kuko konke ukungahloneli Thixo, nize nimthande uThixo ngawo onke amandlakazi enu, ingqondo, nokomelela, ke ubabalo lwakhe lunanele, ukuze ngobabalo lwakhe nibe nokugqibelela kuKrestu; kwaye ukuba ngobabalo lukaThixo nigqibelele kuKrestu, aninako nangayiphi na indlela ukuwakhanyela amandla kaThixo.
- 33 Kwaye kwakhona, ukuba nina ngobabalo lukaThixo nigqibelele kuKrestu, nize ningawakhanyeli amandla akhe, ke ningcwalisiwe kuKrestu ngobabalo lukaThixo, ngokuphalala kwegazi lika Krestu, ekukuwo umnqophiso kaBawo osa ekuxolelweni kwezono zenu, ukuze nisuke nibengcwele, ningabi nachaphaza.
- 34 Kwaye ngoku ndiyani bulisa nonke, salani kakuhle. Kwakamsinyane ndiya kuphumla kuyo iparadesi kaThixo, kude kube umoya wam nomzimba ziya kuthi kwakhona zimanyane, ndize ndiziswe ngaphambili ngomoya ndoyisile, ukuze ndihlangane nani phambi kwesihlalo sokugweba esikholisayo sikaYehova onobungangamsha, uMgwebi onguNaphakade wabo kunye abaphilayo nabafileyo. Amen.

*Isiphelo*

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

*The End*